

## **Outlines of zoology / by J. Arthur Thomson.**

### **Contributors**

Thomson, John Arthur, Sir, 1861-1933.  
Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh

### **Publication/Creation**

Edinburgh : Pentland, 1899.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/fbufbyxb>

### **Provider**

Royal College of Physicians Edinburgh

### **License and attribution**

This material has been provided by This material has been provided by the Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh. The original may be consulted at the Royal College of Physicians of Edinburgh. where the originals may be consulted.

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>









*B.*  
*of*  
*mo*

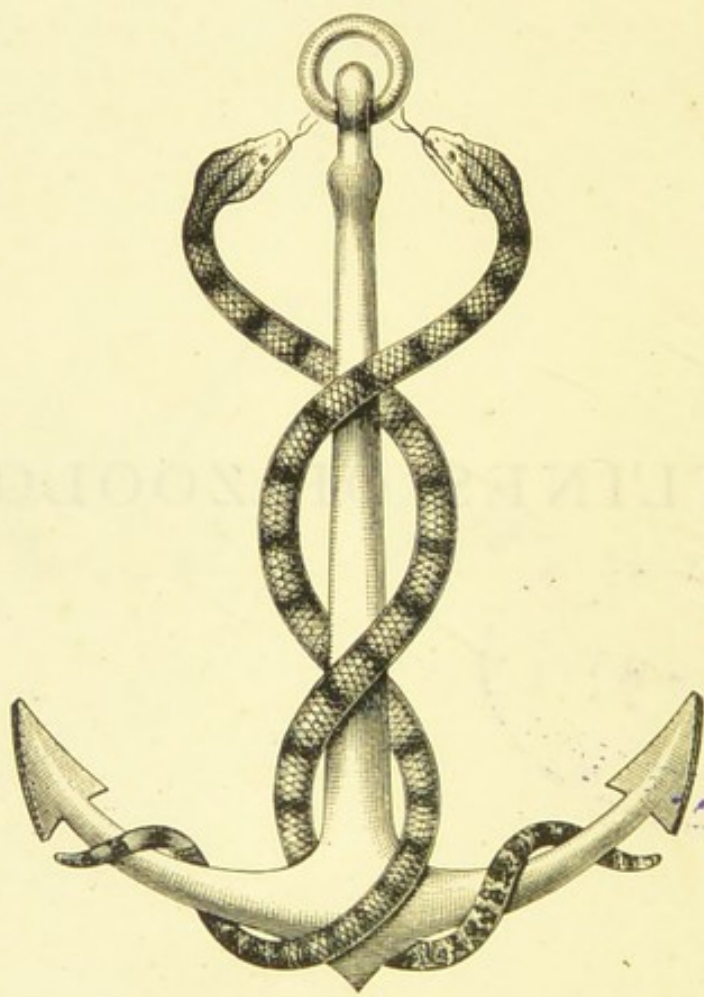
15/-

S. 5. 44



*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*

OUTLINES OF ZOOLOGY.



NUNQUAM ALIUD NATURA, ALIUD SAPIENTIA DICIT.

# OUTLINES OF ZOOLOGY

BY

J. ARTHUR THOMSON, M.A.

REGIUS PROFESSOR OF NATURAL HISTORY IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF ABERDEEN



*THIRD EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED,  
WITH 332 ILLUSTRATIONS.*

EDINBURGH AND LONDON:  
YOUNG J. PENTLAND.

1899.

# OUTLINES OF ZOOLOGY

J. ARTHUR THOMSON, M.A.

EDINBURGH: PRINTED FOR YOUNG J. PENTLAND, 11 TEVIOT PLACE, AND  
38 WEST SMITHFIELD, LONDON, E.C., BY MORRISON AND GIBB LIMITED

EDINBURGH AND LONDON:  
YOUNG J. PENTLAND.

[*All rights Reserved.*]



## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THE favourable reception granted to the former editions of this book has already led to a demand for a third. I have again endeavoured to take advantage of the suggestions of kindly critics, especially Professor W. C. M'Intosh, Dr. Ramsay Traquair, Dr. John Beard, and Dr. Arthur Masterman. I must also acknowledge gratefully that in the revision I have had throughout the able assistance of Miss Marion Newbigin, D.Sc., who has also written the chapter on Comparative Physiology.

The book is intended to serve as a manual which students of Zoology may use in the lecture room, museum, and laboratory, and as an accompaniment to several well-known works, cited in the Appendix, most of which follow other modes of treatment.

To numerous authorities I acknowledge an obvious indebtedness, a detailed recognition of which would be out of place in a book of this kind.

Many new figures have been added, and I wish to express my thanks to my artist friends, Mr. William Smith and Miss Florence Newbigin, for the carefulness with

which they have done their work. I am also indebted to Dr. Traquair for allowing me to figure some of the specimens in the Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art. In regard to the illustrations, I may further say that in almost every case they have either been derived from original memoirs and works of reference, or drawn from specimens. Of course, no one who has worked with such excellent practical books as that by Marshall and Hurst or Parker's Zootomy, can help being assisted by them in preparing analogous diagrams; but I have refrained from incurring any but an absolutely necessary debt.

J. A. T.

SCHOOL OF MEDICINE,

EDINBURGH, *April* 1899.

# CONTENTS.



## GENERAL.

### CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
GENERAL SURVEY OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM . . . . .	I

### CHAPTER II.

PHYSIOLOGY . . . . .	18
----------------------	----

### CHAPTER III.

MORPHOLOGY . . . . .	32
----------------------	----

### CHAPTER IV.

EMBRYOLOGY . . . . .	49
----------------------	----

### CHAPTER V.

PALÆONTOLOGY . . . . .	73
------------------------	----

### CHAPTER VI.

DOCTRINE OF DESCENT . . . . .	80
-------------------------------	----



## INVERTEBRATES.

## CHAPTER VII.

PROTOZOA . . . . .	PAGE 84
--------------------	------------

## CHAPTER VIII.

SPONGES . . . . .	113
-------------------	-----

## CHAPTER IX.

CœLENTERA . . . . .	125
---------------------	-----

## CHAPTER X.

UNSEGMENTED "WORMS" . . . . .	155
-------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XI.

SEGMENTED WORMS OR ANNELIDS . . . . .	181
---------------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XII.

ECHINODERMS . . . . .	223
-----------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XIII.

CRUSTACEANS . . . . .	247
-----------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XIV.

PERIPATUS, MYRIOPODS, AND INSECTS . . . . .	281
---	-----

## CHAPTER XV.

ARACHNOIDEA AND PALÆOSTRACA . . . . .	322
---------------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XVI.

MOLLUSCS . . . . .	337
--------------------	-----

## VERTEBRATES.

## CHAPTER XVII.

	PAGE
HEMICHORDA . . . . .	387

## CHAPTER XVIII.

UROCHORDA . . . . .	396
---------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XIX.

CEPHALOCHORDA . . . . .	411
-------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XX.

STRUCTURE AND DEVELOPMENT OF VERTEBRATES . . . . .	425	A
--	-----	---

## CHAPTER XXI.

CYCLOSTOMATA . . . . .	469
------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXII.

FISHES . . . . .	480	L
------------------	-----	---

## CHAPTER XXIII.

AMPHIBIA . . . . .	530	X
--------------------	-----	---

## CHAPTER XXIV.

REPTILES . . . . .	560	X
--------------------	-----	---

## CHAPTER XXV.

BIRDS . . . . .	593	X
-----------------	-----	---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

MAMMALS . . . . .	632	X
-------------------	-----	---

## GENERAL.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

	PAGE
COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY . . . . .	737

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

DISTRIBUTION . . . . .	757
------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XXIX.

ETIOLOGY . . . . .	769
--------------------	-----

APPENDIX ON BOOKS . . . . .	777
-----------------------------	-----

INDEX . . . . .	783
-----------------	-----

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.



FIG.		PAGE
1.	Duckmole ( <i>Ornithorhynchus</i> ) . . . . .	2
2.	<i>Phenacodus</i> , a primitive extinct Mammal (Cope) . . . . .	3
3.	Extinct moa and modern kiwi (Carus Sterne) . . . . .	3
4.	Crocodiles . . . . .	4
5.	Salamander, an Amphibian . . . . .	5
6.	Queensland dipnoan ( <i>Ceratodus</i> ) . . . . .	5
7.	<i>Amphioxus</i> (Haeckel) . . . . .	6
8.	Ascidian or sea-squirt (Haeckel) . . . . .	7
9.	Cephalopod (paper nautilus, female) . . . . .	9
10.	Fresh-water crayfish ( <i>Astacus</i> ), a Crustacean (Huxley) . . . . .	9
11.	<i>a</i> , Caterpillar; <i>b</i> , pupa; <i>c</i> , butterfly . . . . .	9
12.	Spider . . . . .	10
13.	Crinoid or feather-star . . . . .	10
14.	Earthworm . . . . .	11
15.	Bladderworm stage of a Cestode (Leuckart) . . . . .	11
16.	Sea-anemones on back of hermit-crab (Andres) . . . . .	12
17.	Fossil Foraminifera, Nummulites . . . . .	13
18.	Diagrammatic expression of classification in a genealogical tree . . . . .	15
19.	Structure of the cell (Carnoy) . . . . .	44
20.	Fertilised ovum of <i>Ascaris</i> (Boveri) . . . . .	45
21.	Diagram of cell division (Boveri) . . . . .	45
22.	Karyokinesis (Flemming) . . . . .	47
23.	Diagrammatic expression of alternation of generations . . . . .	54
24.	Diagram of ovum, showing diffuse yolk granules . . . . .	56
25.	Forms of spermatozoa (not drawn to scale) . . . . .	57
26.	Diagram of maturation and fertilisation. (From "Evolution of Sex") . . . . .	58
27.	Spermatogenesis and polar bodies (Hertwig and Weismann) . . . . .	60
28.	Fertilisation in <i>Ascaris megalocephala</i> (Boveri) . . . . .	61
29.	Modes of segmentation . . . . .	63
30.	Life history of a coral, <i>Monoxenia darwinii</i> (Haeckel) . . . . .	65
31.	Embryos—(1) of bird; (2) of man (His) . . . . .	68
32.	Gradual transitions between <i>Paludina neumayri</i> ( <i>a</i> ) and <i>Paludina harnesi</i> ( <i>j</i> ) (Neumayr) . . . . .	76



FIG.	PAGE
33. Life history of <i>Amœba</i> . . . . .	86
34. End-to-end union of Gregarines (Frenzel) . . . . .	87
35. Life history of <i>Gregarina</i> (Bütschli) . . . . .	88
36. Life history of <i>Monocystis</i> (Bütschli) . . . . .	89
37. <i>Paramœcium</i> (Bütschli) . . . . .	90
38. Conjugation of <i>Paramœcium aurelia</i> —four stages (Maupas)	91
39. Diagrammatic expression of process of conjugation in <i>Paramœcium aurelia</i> (Maupas) . . . . .	91
40. <i>Vorticella</i> (Bütschli) . . . . .	93
41. <i>Volvox globator</i> (Cohn) . . . . .	95
42. Diagram of <i>Protomyxa aurantiaca</i> (Haeckel) . . . . .	97
43. Formation of shell in a simple Foraminifer (Dreyer) . . . . .	98
44. A Foraminifer ( <i>Polystomella</i> ) showing shell and pseudopodia (Schultze) . . . . .	99
45. A pelagic Foraminifer— <i>Hastigerina</i> ( <i>Globigerina</i> ) <i>murrayi</i> (Brady) . . . . .	100
46. Optical section of a Radiolarian ( <i>Actinomma</i> ) (Haeckel) . . . . .	101
47. A colonial flagellate Infusorian— <i>Proterospongia haeckelii</i> (Saville Kent) . . . . .	101
48. Simple sponge ( <i>Ascetta primordialis</i> ) (Haeckel) . . . . .	114
48A. A sponge colony (Haeckel) . . . . .	114
49. Section of a sponge (F. E. Schulze) . . . . .	115
50. Diagram showing types of canal system (Korschelt and Heider) . . . . .	116
51. Development of <i>Sycandra raphanus</i> (F. E. Schulze) . . . . .	120
52. Diagrammatic representation of development of <i>Oscarella</i> <i>lobularis</i> (Heider) . . . . .	121
53. A. Young <i>Dicyema</i> (Whitman). B. Female Orthonectid ( <i>Rhopalura giardii</i> ) (Julin) . . . . .	123
54. <i>Salinella</i> (Frenzel) . . . . .	123
55. Diagram of Cœlenterate structure, endoderm darker through- out . . . . .	127
56. <i>Hydra</i> hanging from water-weed (Greene) . . . . .	130
57. Minute structure of <i>Hydra</i> (T. J. Parker and Jickeli) . . . . .	133
58. Development of <i>Hydra</i> (Brauer) . . . . .	135
59. Surface view of <i>Aurelia</i> (Romanes) . . . . .	140
60. Vertical section of <i>Aurelia</i> (Claus) . . . . .	141
61. Diagram of life history of <i>Aurelia</i> (Haeckel) . . . . .	142
62. <i>Lucernaria</i> (Korotneff) . . . . .	144
63. External appearance of <i>Tealia crassicornis</i> . . . . .	145
64. Vertical section of a sea-anemone (Andres) . . . . .	146
65. Cross-section through sea-anemone (Andres). . . . .	147
66. Z, Diagrammatic section of Zoantharian; A, of Alcyonarian (Chun) . . . . .	149
67. Diagram of a gymnoblastic Hydromedusa (Allman) . . . . .	150
68. Diagrammatic figure of a simple Turbellarian . . . . .	157
69. Diagrammatic figure of part of the structure of a simple Turbellarian . . . . .	157
70. Structure of liver-fluke (Sommer) . . . . .	159
71. Reproductive organs of liver-fluke (Sommer) . . . . .	160



FIG.	PAGE
72. Life history of liver fluke (Thomas) . . . . .	162
73. Diagram of reproductive organs in Cestode joint (Leuckart) . . . . .	166
74. Life history of <i>Tenia solium</i> (Leuckart) . . . . .	167
75. Diagrammatic longitudinal section of a Nemertean, <i>Amphiporus lactifloreus</i> , dorsal view (M'Intosh) . . . . .	169
76. Transverse section of a Nemertean, <i>Drepanophorus latus</i> (Bürger) . . . . .	171
77. Transverse section of a simple Nemertean, <i>Carinella</i> (Bürger) . . . . .	172
78. The structure of a Nematode, <i>Oxyuris</i> (Galeb) . . . . .	176
79. Trichinæ in muscle, about to be encapsuled (Leuckart) . . . . .	179
80. Do., encapsuled (Leuckart) . . . . .	179
81. Anterior region of earthworm (Hering) . . . . .	184
82. Transverse section of earthworm (Claparède) . . . . .	187
83. Reproductive organs of earthworm (Hering) . . . . .	189
84. Stages in the development of earthworm (Wilson) . . . . .	191
85. <i>Arenicola marina</i> . . . . .	195
86. Anterior part of nervous system in <i>Arenicola</i> (Vogt and Yung) . . . . .	196
87. Dissection of lob-worm from dorsal surface . . . . .	197
88. Cross-section of <i>Arenicola</i> (Cosmovici) . . . . .	198
89. Development of <i>Polygordius</i> (Fraipont) . . . . .	201
89A. Parapodium of "Heteronereis" of <i>Nereis pelagica</i> (Ehlers) . . . . .	203
90. Free-living Polychæte, <i>Nereis cultrifera</i> . . . . .	205
91. Transverse section of leech (Bourne) . . . . .	210
92. Alimentary system of leech (Moquin Tandon) . . . . .	211
93. Dissection of leech (Bourne) . . . . .	212
94. Nephridium of leech (Bourne) . . . . .	213
95. Development of <i>Sagitta</i> (O. Hertwig) . . . . .	217
95. Actinotrocha or larva of <i>Phoronis</i> (Masterman) . . . . .	220
97. Interior of Brachiopod shell, showing calcareous support for the "arms" (Davidson) . . . . .	221
98. Pluteus larva with rudiment of adult (Johannes Müller) . . . . .	224
99. Alimentary system of starfish (Müller and Troschel) . . . . .	227
100. Diagrammatic cross-section of starfish arm (Ludwig) . . . . .	229
101. Ventral surface of disc of an Ophiuroid, <i>Ophiothrix fragilis</i> (Gegenbaur) . . . . .	231
102. Diagram of sea-urchin, <i>Echinus</i> (Huxley) . . . . .	233
103. Dissection of Holothurian, <i>Holothuria tubulosa</i> , from the ventral surface . . . . .	238
104. Diagrammatic vertical section through disc and base of one of the arms of <i>Antedon rosacea</i> (Milnes Marshall) . . . . .	240
105. Stages in development of Echinoderms (Selenka) . . . . .	242
106. Appendages of Norway lobster . . . . .	253
106A. Section of compound eye of <i>Mysis vulgaris</i> (Grenacher) . . . . .	254
106B. A single eye element or ommatidium of the lobster (G. H. Parker) . . . . .	255
107. Longitudinal section of lobster, showing some of the organs . . . . .	256
108. Male reproductive organs of crayfish (Huxley) . . . . .	259
109. Female reproductive organs of crayfish (Suckow) . . . . .	260
110. Section through the egg of <i>Astacus</i> after the completion of segmentation (Reichenbach) . . . . .	261



FIG.	PAGE
111. Longitudinal section of later embryo of <i>Astacus</i> (Reichenbach)	262
112. Embryo of crayfish, flattened out, with removal of yolk (greatly magnified) (Reichenbach)	263
113. Dorsal surface of <i>Astus cancriformis</i> (Bronn's "Thierreich")	265
114. Acorn-shell ( <i>Balanus tintinnabulum</i> ) (Darwin)	268
115. Development of <i>Sacculina</i> (Delage)	269
116. An Amphipod ( <i>Caprella linearis</i> )	272
117. Schizopod ( <i>Mysis flexuosa</i> ), from side	273
118. Nervous system of shore-crab ( <i>Carcinus manas</i> ) (Bethe)	274
119. Zoæa of common shore-crab ( <i>Carcinus manas</i> ) (Faxon)	277
120. External form of <i>Peripatus</i> (Balfour)	282
121. Dissection of <i>Peripatus capensis</i> (Balfour)	284
122. Embryos of <i>Peripatus capensis</i> , showing closure of blastopore and curvature of embryo (Korschelt and Heider)	285
123. A millipede	287
124. A centipede	287
125. Female cockroach ( <i>Periplaneta orientalis</i> )	289
126. Male cockroach ( <i>P. orientalis</i> )	289
127. Leg of cockroach	291
128. Mouth appendages of cockroach (Dufour)	291
129. Transverse section of insect (Packard)	292
130. Head and mouth-parts of bee (Cheshire)	296
131. Nervous system of bee (Cheshire)	297
132. Food canal of bee (Cheshire)	298
133. One of the Thysanura, <i>Camptodea staphylinus</i> (Lubbock)	300
134. Young may-fly or ephemerid (Eaton)	302
135. Diagrammatic cross-section of an Invertebrate, with the coelom (bc.) shaded (Ziegler)	308
136. Diagrammatic cross-section of an Invertebrate, with a coelom and a hæmocœl (Ziegler)	309
137. Diagrams of Insect embryo (Korschelt and Heider)	312
138. Life history of the silk-moth, <i>Bombyx mori</i>	315
139. Development of blow-fly, <i>Calliphora erythrocephala</i> (Thompson Lowne)	316
140. Scorpion	323
141. Dissection of <i>Mygale</i> from the ventral surface (Cuvier)	327
142. Section of Lung-book (Macleod)	328
143. <i>Limulus</i> or king-crab	333
144. Young <i>Limulus</i> (Walcott)	334
145. Trilobite, <i>Conocephalites</i> (Barrande)	335
146. Vertical cross-section of a Trilobite, <i>Calymene</i> (Walcott)	336
147. Sea-spider, <i>Pycnogonum littorale</i> , from the dorsal surface	336
148. Ideal mollusc (Ray Lankester)	338
149. Stages in Molluscan development	338
150. Dissection of <i>Helix pomatia</i> (Leuckart)	345
151. Diagram of larva of <i>Paludina</i> (Erlanger)	346
152. Nervous system of Molluscs	349
153. Structure of <i>Anodonta</i> (Rankin)	351
154. Development of <i>Anodonta</i> (Goette)	354
155. External appearance of a cuttlefish	356



FIG.		PAGE
156.	Diagram of the structure of <i>Sepia</i> (Pelseneer)	360
157.	Diagram of circulatory and excretory systems in a Decapod, like <i>Sepia</i> (Pelseneer)	362
158.	Common Buckie, <i>Buccinum undatum</i>	364
159.	Bivalve, <i>Panopæa norvegica</i> , showing siphons	365
160.	Nudibranch, <i>Dendronotus arborescens</i> , showing dorsal outgrowths forming adaptive gills	366
161.	Ventral surface of <i>Patella vulgata</i> (Forbes and Hanley)	366
162.	<i>Chiton</i> (Prêtre)	370
163.	Dorsal view of nervous system of <i>Chiton</i> (Pelseneer)	370
164.	<i>Proneomenia</i> . Nervous system (Hubrecht)	370
165.	Anatomy of <i>Chiton</i>	371
166.	Stages in Molluscan development	376
167.	Section of shell of <i>Nautilus</i> (Lendenfeld)	382
168.	The Pearly <i>Nautilus</i> , <i>Nautilus pompilius</i> (Owen)	383
169.	Male of <i>Balanoglossus kowalevskii</i> (Bateson)	388
170.	Transverse section through gill-slit region of <i>Ptychodera minuta</i> (Sprengel)	390
171.	Development of <i>Balanoglossus</i> (Bateson)	391
172.	Tornaria larva, from the side (Sprengel)	392
173.	Dissection of Ascidian (Herdman)	398
174.	Do. Do.	401
175.	Young embryo of Ascidian, <i>Clavelina</i> (Van Beneden and Julin)	403
176.	Embryo of <i>Clavelina</i> (Seeliger)	404
176A.	"Nurse" of <i>Doliolum mülleri</i> (Uljanin)	407
176B.	Sexual individual of <i>Doliolum mülleri</i> (Uljanin)	407
176C.	Anatomy of <i>Appendicularia</i> (Herdman)	408
177.	Lateral view of <i>Amphioxus</i> (Ray Lankester)	412
178.	Transverse section through pharyngeal region of <i>Amphioxus</i> (Ray Lankester)	413
179.	Development of atrial chamber in <i>Amphioxus</i>	416
180 and 181.	The nephridia of <i>Amphioxus</i> (Boveri)	418
182.	Early stages in the development of <i>Amphioxus</i> (Hatschek)	421
183.	Sections through embryos of <i>Amphioxus</i> , to illustrate development of body cavity	422
184.	Transverse section through an Elasmobranch embryo (diagrammatic) (Ziegler)	430
185 and 186.	Ideal fore- and hind-limb (Gegenbaur)	437
187.	Longitudinal section of brain of young dog-fish (diagrammatic) (Gaskell)	439
188.	Origin of pineal body (Beard)	440
189.	Diagram of the parts of the brain in Vertebrates (Gaskell)	441
190.	Diagrammatic section of spinal cord	445
191.	Diagram of the eye	449
192.	Development of the eye (Balfour and Hertwig)	450
193.	Origin of lungs, liver, and pancreas in the chick (Göette)	454
194.	Transverse section through a Teleostean embryo (diagrammatic) (Ziegler)	456
195.	Diagram of circulation (Leunis)	459



FIG.		PAGE
196.	Development of excretory system of Vertebrata (Boveri)	462
197.	Urogenital system	464
198.	Mammalian ovum (Hertwig)	467
199.	Median longitudinal section of anterior end of <i>Myxine</i> (Retzius)	471
200.	Respiratory system of hag, from ventral surface	472
201.	Longitudinal vertical section of anterior end of larval lamprey (Balfour)	475
202.	Restored skeleton of <i>Palaeospondylus</i> (Traquair)	479
203.	Under surface of skull and arches of skate (W. K. Parker)	484
204.	Side view of skate's skull (W. K. Parker)	485
205.	Skeleton of skate	486
206.	Dissection of nerves of skate	490
207.	Side view of chief cranial nerves of Elasmobranchs (Cossar Ewart)	492
208.	Spiral valve of skate (T. J. Parker)	493
209.	Upper part of the dorsal aorta in the skate (Monro)	494
210.	Heart and adjacent vessels of skate (Monro)	495
211.	Urogenital organs of male skate	496
212.	Urogenital organs of female skate (Monro)	497
213.	Elasmobranch development (Balfour)	498
214.	External characters of a Teleostean—a carp (Leunis)	500
215.	Caudal vertebra of haddock	501
216.	Disarticulated skull of cod	502
217.	Pectoral girdle and fin of cod	503
218.	Diagram of Teleostean circulation (Nuhn)	505
219.	Young skate (Beard)	516
220.	Lateral view of dog-fish, <i>Scyllium catulus</i>	517
221.	Outline of <i>Acanthodes subcatus</i> (Traquair)	517
222.	Sturgeon ( <i>Acipenser sturio</i> ) from side	518
223.	<i>Pterichthys milleri</i> , lateral view (Traquair)	519
224.	Skeleton of <i>Ceratodus</i> fin (Gegenbaur)	523
225.	Head region of <i>Protopterus</i> (W. N. Parker)	524
226.	Vertebral column and pelvic girdle of bull-frog	533
227.	Skull of frog—upper and lower surface (W. K. Parker)	534
228.	Pectoral girdle of <i>Rana esculenta</i> (Ecker)	537
229.	Side view of frog's pelvis (Ecker)	537
230.	Brain of frog (Wiedersheim)	538
231.	Nervous system of frog (Ecker)	539
232.	Arterial system of frog (Ecker)	543
233.	Venous system of frog (Ecker)	544
234.	Urogenital system of male frog (Ecker)	548
235.	Urogenital system of female frog (Ecker)	548
236.	Division of frog's ovum (Ecker)	550
237.	Gastrula stage of newt (Hertwig)	551
238.	Dissection of tadpole (Milnes Marshall and Bles)	552
239.	Life history of a frog (Brehm)	555
240.	Cæcilian ( <i>Ichthyophis</i> ) with eggs (Sarasin)	558
241.	External appearance of tortoise	563
242.	Carapace of tortoise	564



FIG.	PAGE
243. Internal view of skeleton of turtle . . . . .	565
244. Dissection of Chelonian heart (Huxley) . . . . .	565
245. Heart and associated vessels of tortoise (Nuhn) . . . . .	566
246. Lateral view of brain of <i>Hatteria punctata</i> (Osawa) . . . . .	567
247. <i>Hatteria</i> or <i>Sphenodon</i> (Hayek) . . . . .	568
248. Side view of skull of <i>Lacerta</i> (W. K. Parker) . . . . .	571
249. Heart and associated vessels of a lizard (Nuhn) . . . . .	573
250. Lung of <i>Chamaeleo vulgaris</i> , showing air sacs (Wiedersheim) . . . . .	575
251. Snake's head (Nuhn) . . . . .	578
252. Skull of grass snake (W. K. Parker) . . . . .	580
253. Lower surface of skull of a young crocodile . . . . .	582
254. Crocodile's skull from dorsal surface . . . . .	584
255. Half of the pelvic girdle of a young crocodile . . . . .	585
256. Origin of amnion and allantois (Balfour) . . . . .	588
257. Comparison of pelvic girdles . . . . .	591
258. Position of organs in a bird (Selenka) . . . . .	595
259. Diagrammatic section of young bird (Gadow) . . . . .	596
260. Entire skeleton of condor, showing the relative positions of the chief bones . . . . .	600
261. Disarticulation of bird's skull (Gadow) . . . . .	601
262. Under surface of gull's skull . . . . .	602
263. Wing of dove . . . . .	603
264. Side view of pelvis of cassowary . . . . .	604
265. Bones of hind-limb of eagle . . . . .	605
266. Brain of pigeon . . . . .	606
267. Diagrammatic section of cloaca of male bird (Gadow) . . . . .	607
268. Heart and arterial system of pigeon . . . . .	610
268A. Heart and venous system of pigeon . . . . .	611
269. Female urogenital organs of pigeon . . . . .	613
269A. Male urogenital organs of pigeon . . . . .	613
270. Pectoral girdle and sternum of swan . . . . .	615
271. Position of wings in pigeon at maximum elevation (Marey) . . . . .	616
272. Wings coming down (Marey) . . . . .	617
273. Wings completely depressed (Marey) . . . . .	617
274. Diagrammatic section of egg (Allen Thomson) . . . . .	623
275. Stages in development of chick (Marshall) . . . . .	624
276. Diagrammatic section of embryo within egg (Kennel) . . . . .	626
277. Side view of rabbit's skull . . . . .	641
278. Dorsal view of rabbit's skull . . . . .	642
279. Under surface of rabbit's skull . . . . .	643
280. Rabbit's fore-leg . . . . .	644
281. Rabbit's hind-leg . . . . .	645
282. Dorsal view of rabbit's brain, with most of cerebellum cut away (Krause) . . . . .	648
283. Under surface of rabbit's brain (Krause) . . . . .	648
284. Diagram of cæcum in rabbit . . . . .	650
285. Duodenum of rabbit (Krause) . . . . .	651
286. Circulatory system of the rabbit (Parker and Krause) . . . . .	652
287. Vertical section through rabbit's head . . . . .	655
288. Urogenital organs of male rabbit . . . . .	657

FIG.	PAGE
289. Urogenital organs of female rabbit . . . . .	657
290. Segmentation of rabbit's ovum (Van Beneden) . . . . .	666
291. Development of hedgehog. Three early stages (Hubrecht). . . . .	667
292. Embryo of <i>Perameles</i> with its foetal membranes (Hill). . . . .	668
293. Two stages in segmented ovum of hedgehog (Hubrecht) . . . . .	669
294. Development of foetal membranes (Hertwig) . . . . .	670
295. Diagram of foetal membranes (Turner) . . . . .	671
296. View of embryo, with its foetal membranes (Kennel) . . . . .	675
297. Pectoral girdle of <i>Echidna</i> . . . . .	681
298. Pelvis of <i>Echidna</i> . . . . .	683
299. Urogenital organs of male duckmole (Owen) . . . . .	684
300. Urogenital organs of female duckmole (Owen) . . . . .	684
301. Lower jaw of kangaroo . . . . .	686
302. Foot of young kangaroo . . . . .	690
303. Foot of ox . . . . .	697
304. Fore-leg of pig . . . . .	697
305. Side view of sheep's skull, with roots of back teeth exposed . . . . .	698
306. Stomach of sheep (Leunis) . . . . .	699
307. Side view of calf's fore-leg . . . . .	700
308. Side view of lower part of pony's fore-leg . . . . .	702
309. Side view of ankle and foot of horse . . . . .	702
310. Side view of horse's skull, roots of teeth exposed . . . . .	703
311. Feet of horse and its progenitors (Neumayr) . . . . .	704
312. External appearance of common porpoise . . . . .	708
313. Left fore-limb of <i>Balenoptera</i> . . . . .	709
314. Fore-limb of whale, <i>Megaptera longimana</i> (Struthers). . . . .	710
315. Pelvis and hind-limb of Greenland whale, <i>Balæna</i> (Struthers) . . . . .	711
316. Vertebra, rib and sternum of <i>Balenoptera</i> . . . . .	713
317. Skull of tiger, lateral view . . . . .	715
318. Lower surface of dog's skull . . . . .	716
319. The common seal . . . . .	721
320. Skeleton of fox-bat, <i>Pteropus</i> . . . . .	725
321. Skull of Orang-Utan . . . . .	731
322. Skull of gorilla . . . . .	732
323. Skeleton of male gorilla . . . . .	733



OUTLINES OF ZOOLOGY.

VERTEBRATES.	CŒLOMATA.	BIRDS.		MAMMALS.	
		Flying Birds. Running Birds.		Placentals. Marsupials. Monotremes.	
		Snakes. Lizards. REPTILES. Crocodiles. Tortoises.			
		Dipnoi. Bony Fishes. Ganoids. Elasmobranchs.		AMPHIBIANS. Newt. Frog.	
		FISHES.		CYCLOSTOMATA. Lamprey. Hag-fish.	
INVERTEBRATES.	CŒLOMATA.	LANCELET.		TUNICATES.	
		BALANOGLOSSUS.		Cuttlefish. Gasteropods. MOLLUSCS. Bivalves.	
		ANNELIDS.			
		Insects. Arachnids. Myriopods. Peripatus. ARTHROPODS. Crustaceans.		Feather-stars. Brittle-stars. Star-fish. ECHINODERMS. Sea-urchins. Sea-cucumbers.	
		“WORMS.”			
		UNSEGMENTED WORMS.		Ctenophores. Jelly-fish. Sea-anemones. Corals. CŒLENTERA. Medusoids and Hydroids.	
		SPONGES.			
		Infusorians. Rhizopods. Gregarines. SIMPLEST ANIMALS.			
				PROTO-ZOA.	



# OUTLINES OF ZOOLOGY.



## CHAPTER I.

### GENERAL SURVEY OF THE ANIMAL KINGDOM.

IN beginning the study of Zoology, it seems useful to take a general survey of the "Animal Kingdom." Without some such bird's-eye view—necessarily superficial—one is apt to lose sight of the plan in studying the details. But the survey can be of little service unless the student has the actual animals before him, or in his mind's eye.

#### VERTEBRATES, OR BACKBONED ANIMALS.

**Mammals.**—We naturally begin a survey with the animals which are anatomically most like man—the monkeys. But neither we nor the monkeys are separated by any structural gulf from the other four-limbed, hair-bearing animals, to which Lamarck gave the name of Mammals. For although there are many different types of Mammals—such as monkeys and men; horses, cattle, and other hoofed quadrupeds; cats, dogs, and bears; rats, mice, and other rodents; hedgehogs, shrews, and moles, and so on—the common possession of certain characters unites them all in one class, readily distinguishable from Birds and Reptiles.

These distinctive characters include the milk-giving of the mother mammals, the growth of hair on the skin, the



general presence of convolutions on the front part of the brain, the occurrence of a muscular partition or diaphragm between the chest and the abdomen, and so on, as we shall afterwards notice in detail. Most mammals are suited for life on land, but diverse types, such as seals, whales, and sea cows, have taken to the water, while the bats are as markedly suited for aerial life.

Among the mammalian characteristics of great importance are those which relate to the bearing of young, and even a brief consideration of these shows that some mammals are distinguished from others by differences deeper than those which separate whales from carnivores, or rodents from bats. These deep differences may be



FIG. 1.—Duckmole (*Ornithorhynchus*).

stated briefly as follows:—(a) Before birth most young mammals are very closely united (by a complex structure called the placenta) to the mothers who bear them. (b) But this close connection between mother and unborn young is of rare occurrence, or only hinted at, in the pouched animals or Marsupials, which bring forth their young in a peculiarly helpless condition, as it were prematurely, and in most cases place them in an external pouch, within which they are sheltered and nourished. (c) In the Australian duckmole and its two relatives, the placental connection is quite absent, for these animals lay eggs as birds and most reptiles do. These differences and others relating to structure warrant the division of Mammals into three sub-classes:—



- (a) Eutheria, Monodelphia, or Placentals—those in which there is a close (placental) union between the unborn embryo and its mother, *e.g.* Ungulates, Carnivores, Monkeys.
- (b) Metatheria, Didelphia, or Marsupials—the prematurely bearing, usually pouch-possessing kangaroos, opossums, etc.



FIG. 2.—Phenacodus, a primitive extinct Mammal.—After Cope.

- (c) Prototheria, Ornithodelphia, or Monotremes—the egg-laying duckmole (*Ornithorhynchus*), *Echidna*, and *Proechidna*.

**Birds.**—There can be no hesitation as to the class which ranks next to Mammals. For Birds are in most respects as highly developed as Mammals, though in a different direction. They are characterised by their feathers and wings, and many other adaptations for flight, by their high temperature, by the frequent sponginess and hollowness of their bones, by the tendency to fusion in many parts of the skeleton, by the absence of teeth in modern forms, by the fixedness of the lungs and their association with numerous air sacs, and so on.



FIG. 3.—Extinct moa and modern kiwi.—After Carus Sterne.



But here again different grades must be distinguished—(1) There is the vast majority—the flying birds, with a breast-bone keel or carina, to which the muscles used in flight are in part attached (*Carinatae*); (2) there is the small minority of running birds (ostriches, emu, cassowary, kiwi, and extinct moa), with wings incapable of flight, and with no keel (*Ratitae*); and (3) there is an extinct type, *Archæopteryx*, with markedly reptilian affinities.

**Reptiles.**—There are no close relationships between Birds and Mammals, but the old-fashioned Monotremes have some markedly reptilian features, and so have some aberrant living birds, such as the Hoatzin and the Tinamou. Moreover, when we consider the extinct Mammals and Birds, we perceive other resemblances linking the two highest classes to the Reptiles.

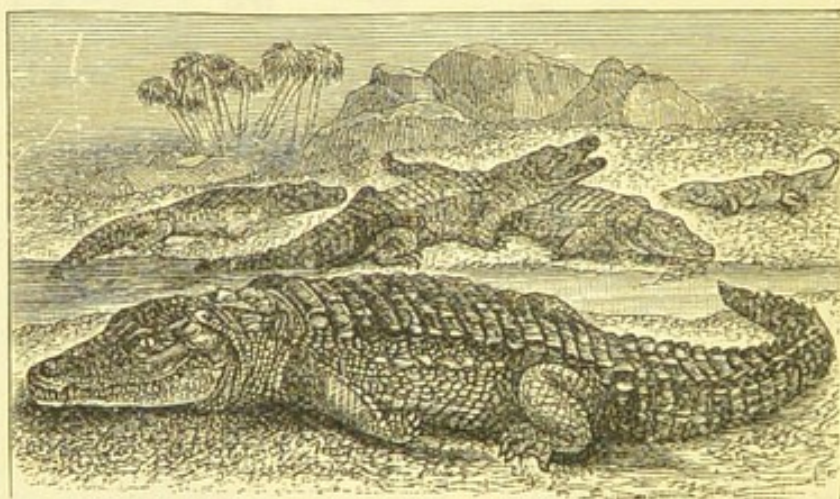


FIG. 4.—Crocodiles.

Reptiles do not form a compact class, but rather an assemblage of classes. In other words, the types of Reptile differ much more widely from one another than do the types of Bird or Mammal. Nowadays there are five distinct types:—the crocodilians, the unique New Zealand “lizard” (*Hatteria*), the lizards proper, the snakes, and the tortoises. But the number of types is greatly increased when we take account of the entirely extinct saurians, who had their golden age in the inconceivably distant past.

The Reptiles which we know nowadays are scaly-skinned animals; they resemble Birds and Mammals in having during embryonic life two important “foetal membranes” (the amnion and the allantois), and in never having gills;



they differ from them in being "cold-blooded," and in many other ways.

**Amphibians.**—The Amphibians, such as frogs and newts, were once regarded—*e.g.* by Cuvier—as naked Reptiles, but a more accurate classification has linked them rather to the Fishes. Thus Huxley grouped Birds and Reptiles together as Sauropsida ; Amphibians and Fishes together as



FIG. 5.—Salamander, an Amphibian.

Ichthyopsida—for reasons which will be afterwards stated. Amphibians mark the transition from aquatic life, habitual among Fishes, to terrestrial life, habitual among Reptiles, for while almost all Amphibians have gills—in their youth at least—all the adults have lungs, and some retain the gills as well. In having limbs which are fingered and toed, and thus very different from fins, they resemble Reptiles. But the two foetal membranes characteristic of the embryonic life of higher Vertebrates are not present in Amphibian embryos, and the general absence of an exoskeleton in modern forms is noteworthy.

**Fishes.**—The members of this class are as markedly adapted to life in the water as birds to life in the air. The



FIG. 6.—Queensland dipnoan (*Ceratodus*).

tail usually forms the locomotor organ, and the limbs are fins. There are also unpaired median fins supported by fin rays. All have permanent gills borne by bony or gristly



arches. There is an exoskeleton of scales, and the skin also bears numerous glandular cells and sensory structures.

In many ways Fishes are allied to Amphibians, especially if we include among Fishes three peculiar forms, known as Dipnoi, which show hints of a three-chambered heart, and have a lung as well as gills. Other Fishes have a two-chambered heart, containing only impure blood, which is driven to the gills, whence, purified, it passes directly to the body.

Apart from the divergent Dipnoi, there are three great orders of Fishes—the cartilaginous Elasmobranchs, such as shark and skate; the Ganoids, such as sturgeon and bony pike; and the Teleosteans or bony fishes, such as cod, herring, salmon, eel, and sole.

**Primitive Vertebrates.**—Under this title we include—(1) the class of Roundmouths or Cyclostomata; (2) the class represented by the lancelets; (3) the class of Tunicates,

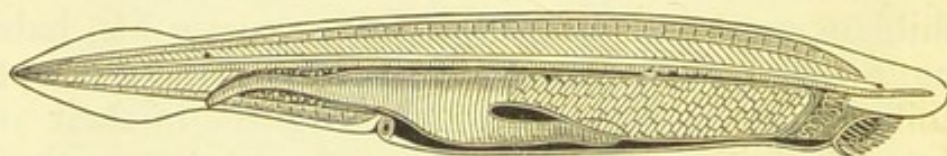


FIG. 7.—*Amphioxus*.—After Haeckel.

some of which are called sea-squirts; and (4), with much hesitation, several strange forms, especially *Balanoglossus*, which exhibit structures suggestive of affinity with Vertebrates.

The Cyclostomata, represented by the lamprey (*Petromyzon*) and the hag (*Myxine*), and some other forms, probably including an interesting fossil known as *Palæospondylus*, are sometimes ranked with fishes under the title Marsipobranchii. But they have no definitely developed jaws, no paired fins, no scales, and are in other ways more primitive.

The lancelet (*Amphioxus*), for which the class Cephalochorda has been erected, is even simpler in its general structure. Thus there is an absence of limbs, skull, jaws, well-defined brain, heart, and some other structures. The vertebral column is represented by an unsegmented (or unvertebrated) rod, called the notochord, which in higher



animals (except Cyclostomata and some fishes) is a transitory embryonic organ afterwards replaced by a backbone.

The Tunicata or Urochorda form a class of remarkable forms, the majority of which degenerate after larval life. In the larvæ of all, and in the few adults which are neither peculiarly specialised nor degenerate, we recognise some of the fundamental characters of Vertebrates. Thus there is a dorsal supporting axis (or notochord) in the tail region, a dorsal nervous system, gill-clefts opening from the pharynx to the exterior, a simple ventral heart, and so on.

Of *Balanoglossus* and its allies, for which the class Hemichorda or Enteropneusta has been established, it is still difficult to speak with confidence. The possession of gill-clefts, the dorsal position of an important part of the nervous system, the occurrence of a short supporting structure on the anterior dorsal surface of the pharynx, and other features, have led many to place them at the base of the Vertebrate series.

At this stage, having reached the base of the Vertebrate series, we may seek to define a Vertebrate animal, and to contrast it with Invertebrate forms.

The distinction is a very old one, for even Aristotle distinguished mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, and fishes as "blood-holding," from cuttle-fish, shell-bearing animals, crustaceans, insects, etc., which he regarded as "bloodless." He was, indeed, mistaken about the bloodlessness, but the distinctiveness of the higher animals first mentioned has been recognised by all subsequent naturalists, though it was first precisely expressed in 1797 by Lamarck.

Yet it is no longer possible to draw a boundary line between Vertebrates and Invertebrates with that firmness of hand which characterised the early or, indeed, the pre-Darwinian classifications. We now know—(1) that Fishes and Cyclostomata do not form the base of the Vertebrate series, for the lancelet and the Tunicates must also be included in the Vertebrate alliance; (2) that *Balanoglossus*, *Cephalodiscus*, and some other forms, have several Vertebrate-like characteristics; (3) that some of the Invertebrates, especially the Chætopod worms, show some hints of affinities with Vertebrates. The limits of the

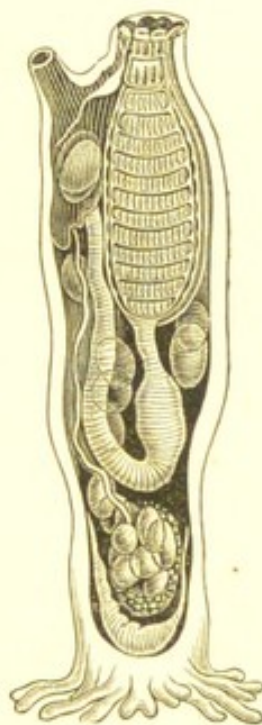


FIG. 8. — Ascidian or sea-squirt. — After Haeckel.



Vertebrate alliance have been widened, and though the recognition of their characteristics has become more definite, not less so, the apartness of the sub-kingdom has disappeared.

It does not matter much whether we retain the familiar title Vertebrata, or adopt that of Chordata, provided that we recognise—(1) that it is among Fishes first that separate vertebral bodies appear in the supporting dorsal axis of the body; (2) that, *as a characteristic*, the backbone is less important than the notochord, which precedes it in the history alike of the race and of the individual. Nor need we object to the popular title backboned, if we recognise that the adjective “bony” is first applicable among Fishes, and not even to all of these.

The essential characters of Vertebrates may be summed up in the following table, where they are contrasted, somewhat negatively, with what is true of Invertebrates:—

“BACKBONELESS,” INVERTEBRATE OR NON-CHORDATE.	“BACKBONED,” VERTEBRATE OR CHORDATE.
The greater part of the nervous system is on the <i>ventral</i> surface. No corresponding structure is known.	The central nervous system—brain and spinal cord—is <i>dorsal</i> and <i>tubular</i> . There is a dorsal supporting axis or notochord, which is in most cases replaced by a backbone.
No corresponding structures are known with any certainty.	Gill-slits or visceral clefts open from the sides of the pharynx to the exterior. In fishes, and at least young amphi- bians, they are associated with gills, and are useful in respiration; in higher forms they are transitory and functionless, except when modified into other structures.
The eye is usually derived directly from the skin. The heart, if present, is dorsal.	The essential parts of the eye are formed by an outgrowth from the brain. The heart is ventral.

#### INVERTEBRATES, OR BACKBONELESS ANIMALS.

**Molluscs.**—This series of forms includes Bivalves, such as cockle and mussel, oyster and clam; Gasteropods, such as snail and slug, periwinkle and buckie; Cephalopods, such as octopus and pearly nautilus. They may be placed highest among Invertebrates, since many of them exhibit a concentration of the nervous system greater than occurs elsewhere.

Unlike Vertebrates, and such Invertebrates as Insects and Crustaceans, Molluscs are without segments and without appendages. A muscular protrusion of the ventral surface, known as the “foot,” serves in the majority as an organ of locomotion. In most cases a single or double fold of skin, called the “mantle,” makes a protective shell.





FIG. 9.—Cephalopod (paper nautilus, female).

The nervous system has three chief pairs of nerve centres or ganglia. In many cases the larval stages are very characteristic.

**Arthropods.**—This large series includes Crustaceans

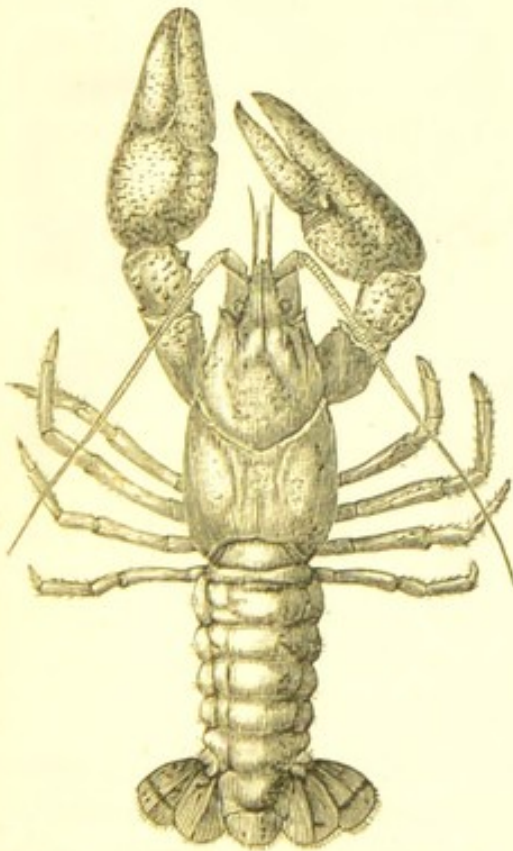


FIG. 10.—Fresh-water crayfish (*Astacus*), a Crustacean.—  
After Huxley.



FIG. 11.—*a*, Caterpillar ; *b*, pupa ; *c*, butterfly.



Myriopods, Insects, Spiders, and other forms, which have segmented bilaterally symmetrical bodies and jointed appendages. The skin produces an external cuticle, the organic part of which consists of a substance called chitin, associated in Crustaceans with carbonate of lime. The nervous system consists of a dorsal brain, connected, by a nerve-ring around the gullet, with a ventral chain of ganglia.



FIG. 12.—Spider.

**Echinoderms.**—This is a well-defined series, including star-fishes, brittle-stars, sea-urchins, sea-cucumbers, and feather-stars. The symmetry of the adult is usually radial, though that of the larva is bilateral. A peculiar system, known as the water-vascular system, is characteristic, and is turned to various uses, as in locomotion and respiration. There is a marked tendency to deposition of lime in the tissues. The development is strangely circuitous or “indirect.”

**Segmented “worms.”**

—It is hopeless at present to arrange with any definiteness those heterogeneous forms to which the title “worm” is given. For this title is little more than a name for

a *shape*, assumed by animals of varied nature who began to move head foremost and to acquire sides. There is no class of “worms,” but an assemblage—a mob—not yet reduced to order. It seems useful, however, to separate those which are ringed or segmented, from those which

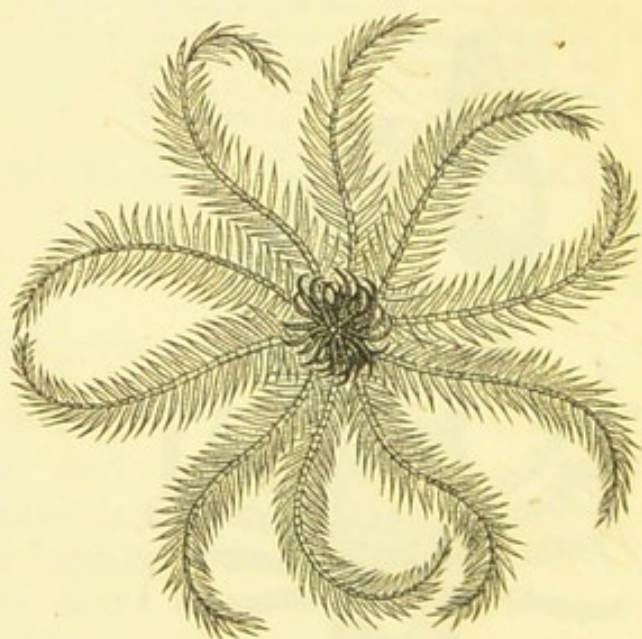


FIG. 13.—Crinoid or feather-star.



are unsegmented. The former are often called Annelids, and include—



FIG. 14.—Earthworm.

Chætopoda or Bristle-footed worms, *e.g.* earthworm and lob-worm; and

Hirudinea or Leeches; and some smaller classes.

**Unsegmented "worms."**—These differ from the higher "worms" in the absence of true segments and appendages, and resemble them in their bilateral symmetry. The series includes Turbellarians or Planarians; the parasitic Trematodes or Flukes; the parasitic Cestodes or Tape-worms; the Nemerteans or Ribbon-worms; the frequently parasitic Nematodes or Thread-worms; and several smaller classes.

As to certain other forms, such as the sea-mats (Polyzoa or Bryozoa), the lamp-shells (Brachiopoda), and the worm-like Sipunculids, it seems best, at this stage, to confess that they are *incertæ sedis*.

But the general fact is not without interest, that in the midst of the well-defined classes of Invertebrates there lies, as it were, a pool from which many streams of life have flowed; for among the heterogeneous "worms" we detect affinities with Arthropods, Molluscs, Echinoderms, and even Vertebrates.

At this stage we may notice that in all the above forms the typical symmetry is bilateral (see p. 33) (in Echinoderms, the radial symmetry

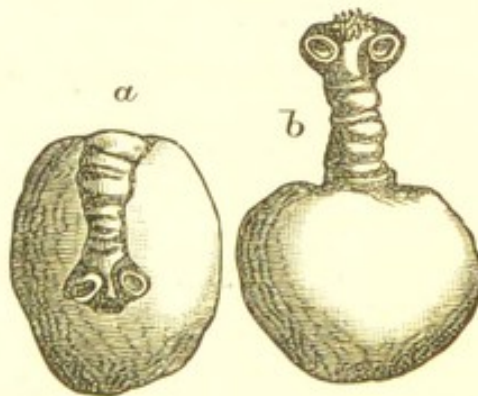


FIG. 15.—Bladderworm stage of a Cestode.—After Leuckart.

*a*, Early stage with head inverted.  
*b*, Later stage with head everted.



belongs only to the adults); that in most types a body-cavity or *cœlom* is developed; that the embryo consists of three germinal layers (external ectoderm or epiblast, internal endoderm or hypoblast lining the gut, and a median mesoderm or mesoblast lining the body-cavity). In the next two classes (*Cœlentera* and Sponges) the conditions are different, as may be expressed in the following table, though it is open to question whether the contrast is quite so great as it seems:—

SPONGES AND CŒLENTERA.	HIGHER ANIMALS (CŒLOMATA).
There is no body cavity. There is but one cavity, that of the food canal.	There is a body cavity or <i>cœlom</i> between the food canal and the walls of the body. But this is often incipient, or degenerate.
There is no definite middle layer of cells (mesoderm), but rather a middle jelly (mesoglœa).	There is a distinct middle layer of cells (mesoderm) between the external ectoderm and the internal endoderm.
The radial symmetry of the gastrula embryo is retained in the adult, and the longitudinal (oral-aboral) axis of the adult corresponds to the long axis of the gastrula.	The longitudinal axis of the adult does not correspond to the long axis of the gastrula embryo.

**Cœlentera.**—This series includes jelly-fishes, sea-anemones, corals, zoophytes, and the like, most of which are equipped

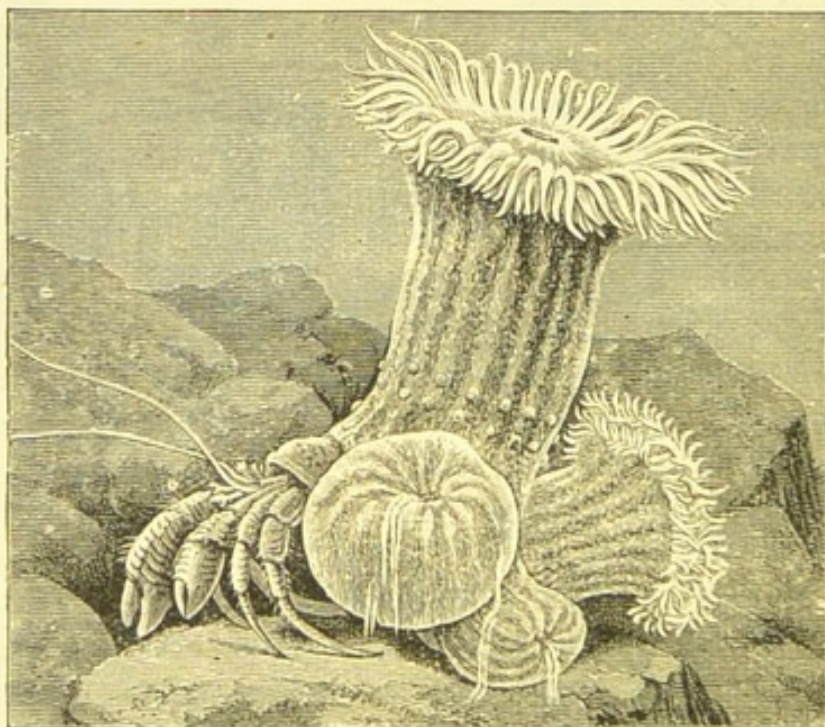


FIG. 16.—Sea-anemones on back of hermit-crab.  
—After Andres.

with stinging cells, by means of which they paralyse their prey. All but four or five are marine. The body may



be a tubular polype, or a more or less bell-like "medusoid," and in some cases the two forms are included in one life cycle. Budding is very common, and many of the sedentary forms—"corals"—have shells of lime.

**Porifera.**—Sponges, or Porifera, are the simplest many-celled animals. In the simplest forms, the body is a tubular, two-layered sac, with numerous inhalant pores perforating the walls, with a central cavity lined by cells bearing lashes or flagella, and with an exhalant aperture. But budding, folding, and other complications arise, and there is almost always a skeleton, calcareous, siliceous, or "horny," or both siliceous and horny at once. Water passes in by the small inhalant pores, and out by the exhalant aperture. With few exceptions they are marine.

All the animals hitherto mentioned have *bodies* built up of many cells or unit masses of living matter; but there are other animals, each of which consist of a single cell. These simplest animals are called Protozoa.

Every animal hitherto mentioned, from mammal or bird to sponge, develops, when reproduction takes its usual course, from a fertilised egg cell. This egg cell or ovum divides and redivides, and the daughter cells are arranged in various ways to form a "body." But the Protozoa form no "body"; they remain single cells, and when they divide, the daughter cells almost invariably go apart as independent organisms.

Here, then, is the greatest gulf which we have hitherto noticed—that between multicellular animals (Metazoa) and unicellular animals (Protozoa). But the gulf was bridged, and traces of the bridge remain. For—(a) there are a few Protozoa which form loose colonies of cells, and (b) there are multicellular animals of great simplicity.

**Protozoa.**—The Protozoa remain single cells, with few exceptions. Thus they form no "body"; and necessarily, therefore, they have no organs, nor sexual reproduction in the ordinary sense of the phrase. The series includes—

(a) Infusorians, with actively moving lashes of living matter.

(b) Rhizopods, with outflowing threads or processes of living matter, e.g. the chalk-forming Foraminifera (Fig. 17).

(c) Sporozoa, parasitic forms, without either lashes or outflowing processes.

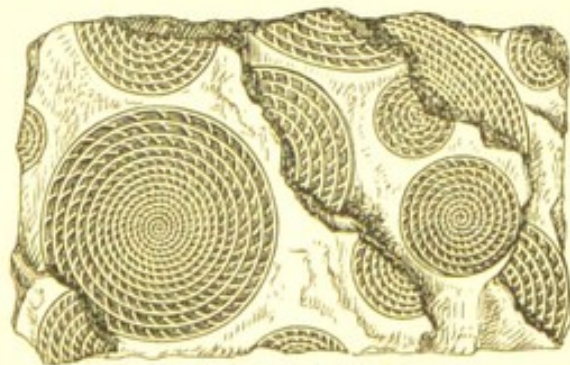


FIG. 17.—Fossil Foraminifera, Nummulites.



*Note on Classification.*

We naturally group together in the mind those impressions which are like one another. In this lies the beginning of all classification, whether that of the child, the savage, or the zoologist. For there are many possible classifications, varying according to their purpose, according to the points of similarity which have been selected as important. Thus we may classify animals according to their habitats or their diet, without taking any thought of their structure.

But a strictly zoological classification is one which seeks to show the natural relationships of animals, to group together those which resemble one another in their real nature or structure. It must, therefore, be based on the results of comparative anatomy—technically speaking, on “homologies,” or real resemblances of structure. Whales must not be ranked with fishes, nor bats with birds.

To a classification based on structural resemblances, two corroborations are necessary, from embryology and from palæontology. On the one hand, the development of the forms in question must be studied: thus no one dreamed that a Tunicate was a Vertebrate until its life-history was worked out. On the other hand, the past history must be inquired into: thus the affinity between Birds and Reptiles is confirmed by a knowledge of the extinct forms.

In classification it is convenient to recognise certain grades or degrees of resemblance, which are spoken of as species, genera, families, orders, classes, and so on.

To give an illustration, all the tigers are said to form the species *Felis tigris*, of the genus *Felis*, in the family Felidæ, in the order Carnivora, within the class Mammalia. The resemblances of all tigers are exceedingly close; well marked, but not so close, are the resemblances between tigers, lions, jaguars, pumas, cats, etc., which form the genus *Felis*; broader still are the resemblances between all members of the cat family Felidæ; still wider those between cats, dogs, bears, and seals, which form the order Carnivora; and lastly, there are the general resemblances of structure which bind Mammals together in contrast to Birds or Reptiles, though all are included in the series or phylum Vertebrata.

It must be understood that the real things are the individual animals, and that a species is a subjective conception within which we include all those individuals who resemble one another so closely that we feel we need a specific name applicable to them all. And as resemblances which seem important to one naturalist may seem trivial to others, there are often wide differences of opinion as to the number of species which a genus contains. In a handful of small shells the “splitters” may recognise 20 species, while the “slumpers” see only 3. Thus Haeckel says of calcareous sponges that, as the naturalist likes to look at the problem, there are 3 species, or 21, or 289, or 591!

But while no rigid definition can be given of a species, seeing that the conception is one of practical convenience and purely relative, there are certain common-sense considerations to be borne in mind:—

1. No naturalist now believes, as Linnæus did, in the fixity of species; we believe, on the contrary, that one form has given rise to another. At the same time, the common characteristic on the strength of which



we deem it warrantable to give a name to a group of individuals, must not be markedly fluctuating. The specific character should exhibit *a certain degree of constancy from one generation to another.*

2. Sometimes a minute character, such as the shape of a tooth or the marking of a scale, is so constantly characteristic of a group of indi-

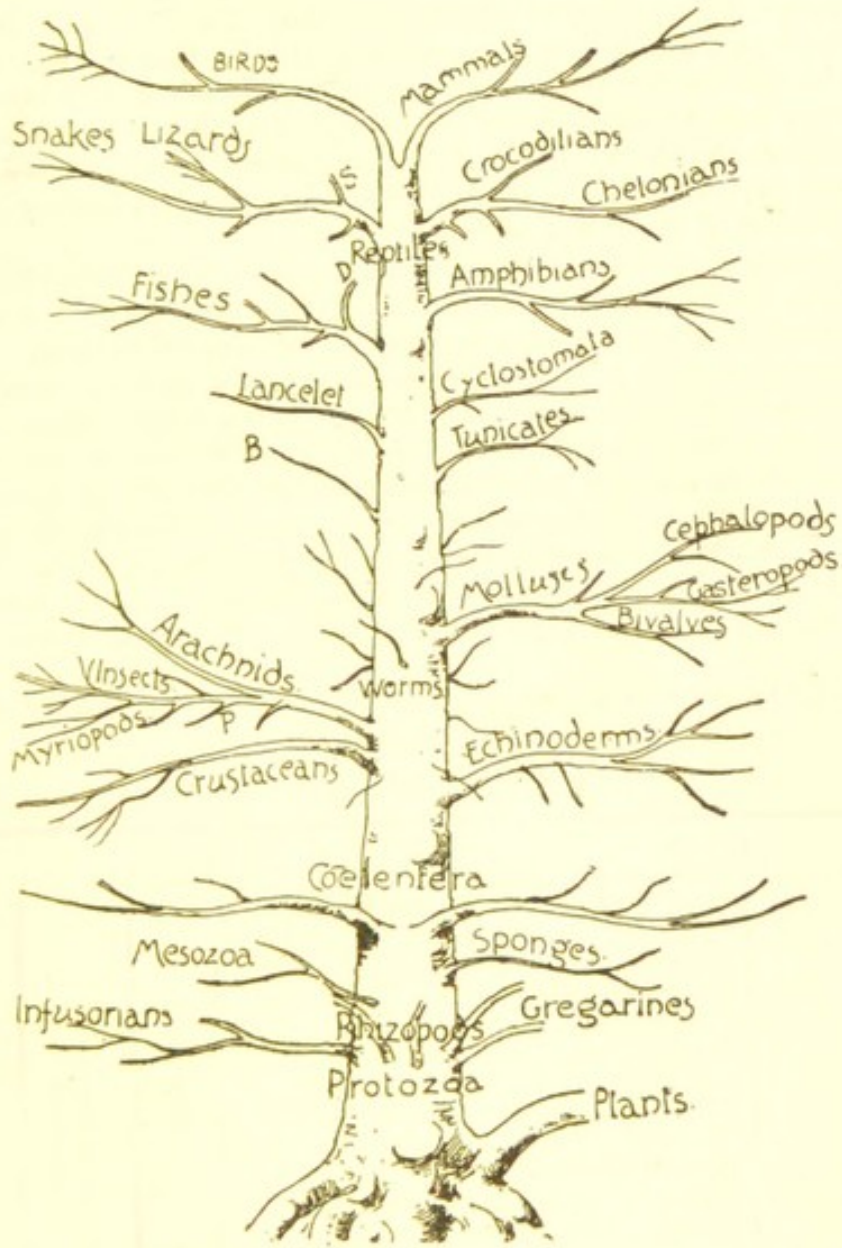


FIG. 18.—Diagrammatic expression of classification in a genealogical tree. B indicates possible position of Balanoglossus, D of Dipnoi, S of Sphenodon or Hatteria.

viduals, that it may be safely used as the index of more important characters. On the other hand, *the distinction between one species and another should always be greater than any difference between the members of a family* (using the word family here to mean the progeny of a pair). For no one would divide mankind into species according to the colour of eyes or hair, as this would lead to the absurd conclusion that two



brothers belonged to different species. Thus it is often doubly unsatisfactory when a species is established on the strength of a single specimen—(a) because the constancy of the specific character is undetermined; (b) because the variations within the limits of the family have not been observed. Indeed, it has happened that one species has been made out of a male, and another out of its mate. But the characters of a single specimen are sometimes so distinctive that the zoologist is safe in making it the type of a new species, or even of a new genus.

3. Although cases are known where members of different species have paired and brought forth fertile hybrids, this is not usual. *The members of a species are fertile inter se, but not usually with members of other species.* In fact, the distinctness of species has largely depended on a restriction of the range of fertility.

To sum up, a species is but a relative conception, convenient when we wish to include under one title all the members of a group of individuals who resemble one another in certain characters. There is no absolute constancy in these specific characters, and one species often melts into another, with which it is connected by intermediate varieties. At the same time, the characters, on account of which the naturalist gives a specific name to a group of individuals, should be greater than those which distinguish the members of any one family, should show a relative constancy from generation to generation, and should be associated with reproductive peculiarities which tend to restrict the range of mutual fertility to the members of the proposed species.

TABULAR SURVEY OF CHIEF CLASSES.—(*For Future Reference*).

METAZOA CHORDATA.

MAMMALIA.	{ Eutheria. Metatheria. Marsupials. Prototheria. Monotremes. Oviparous. }	Mammalia.	Gnathostomata (i.e. jawed).	Craniota (with skulls).
AVES.	{ Carinatae. Keeled flying birds. Ratitae. Keel-less running birds. Extinct reptile-like birds. }	Sauropsida.		
REPTILIA.	{ Crocodilia. Crocodiles and alligators. Ophidia. Snakes. Lacertilia. Lizards. Rhynchocephalia. <i>Sphenodon</i> . Chelonia. Tortoises and turtles. Extinct Classes. }	Sauropsida.		
AMPHIBIA.	{ Anura. Tail-less frogs and toads. Urodela. Tailed newts. Gymnophiona, e.g. <i>Cæcilia</i> . Labyrinthodonts and other extinct Amphibians. }	Ichthyopsida.		
PISCES.	{ Dipnoi. Mud-fishes. Teleostei. Bony fishes. Ganoidei, e.g. Sturgeon. Elasmobranchii. Cartilaginous fishes. }	Ichthyopsida.		
CYCLOSTOMATA.	{ Hag-fish ( <i>Myxine</i> ), and Lamprey ( <i>Petromyzon</i> ). }			
CEPHALOCHORDA.	<i>Amphioxus</i> .		Acrania (without skulls).	
UROCHORDA.	Tunicates.			
HEMICHORDA.	<i>Balanoglossus</i> , <i>Cephalodiscus</i> .			



METAZOA NON-CHORDATA.

MOLLUSCA.	{ Cephalopoda. Cuttle-fishes. Gasteropoda. Snails. Lamellibranchiata. Bivalves.
ARTHROPODA.	{ Arachnoidea. Spiders, scorpions, mites. Insecta. Myriopoda. Centipedes and millipedes. Prototracheata. <i>Peripatus</i> . Crustacea.
ECHINODERMA.	{ Crinoidea. Feather-stars. (Cystoids and Blastoids, extinct.) Ophiuroidea. Brittle-stars. Asteroidea. Star-fishes. Echinoidea. Sea-urchins. Holothuroidea. Sea-cucumbers.
" WORMS."	{ { Chætopoda. Bristle worms. } Annelids or { Discophora. Leeches. } Annulates.
	{ Brachiopoda. Lamp-shells. Polyzoa, <i>e.g.</i> Sea-mat ( <i>Flustra</i> ). Sipunculoidea, <i>e.g.</i> <i>Sipunculus</i> .
	Nematoda. Thread-worms. Nemertea. Ribbon-worms.
	{ Cestoda. Tape-worms. Trematoda. Flukes. } Platyhelminthes. Turbellaria. Planarians.
CÆLENTERA.	{ Ctenophora, <i>e.g.</i> <i>Beroë</i> . Scyphozoa. Jelly-fishes and sea-anemones. Hydrozoa. Zoophytes and medusoids.
PORIFERA.	Sponges.

PROTOZOA.

INFUSORIA. RHIZOPODA. SPOROZOA.  
Simplest forms of animal life.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FUNCTIONS OF ANIMALS.

(PHYSIOLOGY.)

MOST animals live an active life, in great part ruled by the two motives of love and hunger in their widest sense; they are busy finding food, avoiding enemies, wooing mates, making homes, and tending the young. These and other forms of activity depend upon internal changes within the body. Thus the movements of all but the very simplest animals are due to the activity of contractile parts known as muscles, which are controlled by nervous centres and by impulse-conducting fibres, and the energy involved in these movements, and in most other vital activities, is supplied by the oxidation or combustion of the complex carbon-compounds which form a substantial part of the various organs.

The work done means expenditure of energy, and is followed by exhaustion (muscular, nervous, etc.), so that the necessity for fresh supplies of energy is obvious. This recuperation is obtained through food, but before this can restore the exhausted parts to their normal state, or keep them from becoming, in any marked degree, exhausted, it must be rendered soluble, diffused throughout the body, and so chemically altered that it is readily incorporated into the animal's substance. In other words, it has to be digested. A fresh supply of oxygen and a removal of waste are also obviously essential to continued activity.

We may say, then, that there are *two master activities* in the animal body, those of muscular and those of nervous parts. To these the other internal activities are subsidiary



conditions, turning food into blood and thus repairing the waste of matter and energy, keeping up the supply of oxygen and the warmth of the body, sifting out and removing waste products, and so on.

Besides the more or less constantly recurrent activities or functions, there are the processes of growth and reproduction. When income exceeds expenditure in a young animal, growth goes on, and the inherited qualities of the organism are more and more perfectly developed. At the limit of growth, when the animal has reached "maturity," it normally reproduces, that is to say, liberates parts of itself which give rise to new individuals.

**Living and not living.**—Although no one is wise enough to tell completely what is meant by the simple word alive, it is safe to say that active life involves the following facts:—

(a) The living organism *grows* at the expense of material different from itself, while the crystal—one of the few dead things which can be said to grow—increases only at the expense of material chemically the same as itself.

(b) The living organism is subject to ceaseless chemical change (metabolism), and yet it has the power of retaining its integrity, of remaining more or less the same for prolonged periods.

(c) The living organism resembles an engine, in being a material system adapted to transform matter and energy from one form to another; but it must be granted that it is a self-stoking, and, within limits, a self-repairing engine, and that it is able to do what no engine can effect, namely, reproduce. From a physical standpoint it differs from an inanimate system in this, that the transfer of energy into it is attended with effects conducive to further transfer and retardative of dissipation, while the very opposite is true of an inanimate system.

(d) A living organism exhibits five everyday activities—contractility (the power of movement), irritability (the power of feeling in the wide sense), nutrition or utilisation of food, respiration, and excretion, besides the periodic activities of growth and reproduction.

**Division of labour.**—All the ordinary functions of life are exhibited by the simple unicellular animals or Protozoa.



Thus the Amœba moves by contracting its living substance, draws back sensitively from hurtful influences, engulfs and digests food, gets rid of waste, and absorbs oxygen.

But all these activities occur in the Amœba within the compass of a unit mass of living matter,—a single cell, physiologically complete in itself.

In all other animals, from Sponges onwards, there is a “body” consisting of hundreds of unit masses or cells. It is impossible for these to remain the same, for some are internal and others external, nor would it be well for the organism that all its units should retain the primitive and many-sided qualities of Amœbæ. Division of labour, consequent on diversity of conditions, is thus established in the organism. In some cells one kind of activity predominates, in others a second, in others a third. And this division of labour is associated with that complication of structure which we call differentiation.

Thus in the fresh-water *Hydra*, which is one of the simplest many-celled animals, the units are arranged in two layers, and form a tubular body. Those of the outer layer are protective, nervous, and muscular; those of the inner layer absorb and digest the food, and are also muscular.

In worms and higher organisms, there is a middle layer in addition to the other two, and this middle layer becomes, for instance, predominantly muscular. Moreover, the units or cells are not only arranged in strands or tissues, each with a predominant function, but become compacted into well-defined parts or organs. None the less should we remember that each cell remains a living unit, and that, in addition to its principal activity, it usually retains others of a subsidiary character.

**Plants and animals.**—Before we give a sketch of the chief functions in a higher animal, let us briefly consider the resemblances and differences between plants and animals.

(a) *Resemblance in function.*—The life of plants is essentially like that of animals, as has been recognised since Claude Bernard wrote his famous book, *Phénomènes de la vie communs aux animaux et aux végétaux*. The beech-tree feeds and grows, digests and breathes, as really as does



the squirrel on its branches. In regard to none of the main functions is there any essential difference. Many simple plants swim about actively; young shoots and roots also move; and there are many cases in which even the full-grown parts of plants exhibit *movements*. Moreover, the tendrils of climbers, the leaves of the sensitive plant, the tentacles of the sundew, the stamens of the rock-rose, the stigma of the musk, are but a few instances of the numerous plant structures which exhibit marked *sensitiveness*.

(b) *Resemblance in structure*.—The simplest plants (Protophyta), like the simplest animals (Protozoa), are single cells; the higher plants (Metaphyta) and higher animals (Metazoa) are built up of cells and various modifications of cells. In short, all organisms have a cellular structure. This general conclusion is part of the Cell Theory or Cell Doctrine.

(c) *Resemblance in development*.—When we trace the beech-tree back to the beginning of its life, we find that it arises from a unit element or egg cell, which is fertilised by intimate union with a male element derived from the pollen-grain. When we trace the squirrel back to the beginning of its life, we find that it also arises from a unit element or egg cell, which is fertilised by intimate union with a male cell or spermatozoon. Thus all the many-celled plants and animals begin as fertilised egg cells, except in cases of virgin birth (parthenogenesis) or of asexual reproduction. From the egg cell, which divides and redivides after fertilisation, the body of the plant or animal is built up by continued division, arrangement, and modification of cells. Thus plants and animals resemble one another in their essential functions, in their cellular structure, and in their manner of development.

*Contrasts*.—But while there is no absolute distinction between plants and animals, they represent divergent branches of a V-shaped tree of life. It is easy to distinguish extremes like bird and daisy, less easy to contrast sponge and mushroom, well-nigh impossible to decide whether some very simple forms, which Haeckel called “protists,” have a bias towards plants or towards animals. We cannot do more than state *average* distinctions. The food which most plants absorb is cruder or chemically simpler than that



which animals are able to utilise. Thus most plants derive the carbon they require from the carbonic acid gas of the air, while only a few (green) animals have this power; all the others depend for their carbon supplies on the sugar, starch, and fat already made by other animals, or by plants. As regards nitrogen, most plants take this from nitrates and the like, absorbed along with water by the roots; whereas animals obtain their nitrogenous supplies from the complex proteids formed within other organisms. Most plants, therefore, feed at a lower chemical level than do animals, and it is characteristic of them that, in the reduction of carbonic acid, and in the manufacture of starch and proteids, the kinetic energy of sunlight is transformed by the living matter into the potential chemical energy of complex food stuffs. Animals, on the other hand, get their food ready made; they take the pounds which plants have, as it were, accumulated in pence, and they spend them. For it is characteristic of animals that they convert the potential chemical energy of food stuffs into the kinetic energy of locomotion and other activities. In short, the great distinction—an average one at best—is that most animals are more active than most plants. The time-honoured “distinctions between plants and animals” may be condensed in the opposite table.

**Chief functions of the animal body.**—We have seen that there are two master activities in animals, those of muscular and of nervous structures, and that the other vital processes, always excepting growth and reproduction, are subservient to these. Let us now consider the various functions, as they occur in some higher organism, such as man, reserving comparative treatment for a subsequent chapter.

*Nervous activities.*—Life has been described as consisting of action and reaction between the organism and its environment, and it is evident that an animal must in some way become aware of surrounding influences. In a higher animal there are always parts which are specially excitable. These are the sensory end-organs: the retina of the eye for light, certain parts of the ear for sound, papillæ on the tongue for taste, part of the lining of the nasal chamber for smell, tactile corpuscles of the skin for pressure and temperature.

All these end-organs are associated with nerves which



SOME EXCEPTIONS.	CHARACTERISTICS OF ANIMALS.	CHARACTERISTICS OF PLANTS.	SOME EXCEPTIONS.
Some Protozoa and parasites simply absorb.	They feed on more or less solid food.	They absorb soluble food.	
Some green Protozoa (etc.?) seem to be able to utilise carbonic acid as plants do.	They obtain the requisite carbon from starch, sugar, fat, etc., made by plants or by other animals.	They obtain the requisite carbon from carbonic acid gas in the air or water.	Carnivorous plants, Fungi, and some parasites, find other sources of carbon-supply.
Again, some Protozoa are probably able to feed like plants.	They obtain the requisite nitrogen from nitrogenous compounds, not simpler than proteids, made by other organisms. Most of them are known to get rid of nitrogenous waste products.	They obtain the requisite nitrogen from simple nitrogenous compounds, especially the nitrates of the soil. They do not get rid of nitrogenous waste products.	Again, carnivorous plants, Fungi, and some parasites are in part exceptional in their nutrition.
A few, e.g. some Protozoa, the fresh-water sponge, <i>Hydra viridis</i> , have green pigment closely analogous or identical with chlorophyll.	They have very rarely any chlorophyll.	The majority possess chlorophyll, the green pigment by aid of which the living matter utilises the energy of sunlight, in reducing carbonic acid (with liberation of oxygen), and in building up complex substances.	Fungi and some parasites have no chlorophyll.
Cellulose seems to occur in some Infusorians, and forms most of the tunic or cuticle of the passive sea-squirts or ascidians.	The component cells often have no very definite cell walls, rarely have them of material demonstrably different from the cell substance, and almost never show any trace of cellulose.	The component cells are walled in by cellulose, a material chemically allied to starch.	Some simple plants have, for a time at least, naked cells.
	Marked division of labour among the cells is characteristic.	The cells exhibit, on an average, much less division of labour.	
	They utilise food material already worked up by plants or by other animals; they convert this potential energy into kinetic energy in locomotion and external work; they are characteristically oxidisers, are predominantly active, and show in the vital changes associated with their living matter or protoplasm, a <i>relative</i> preponderance of disruptive, down-breaking, or "katabolic" processes. See p. 31.)	They build up crude, chemically simple food material into living or complex substances; they convert the kinetic energy of sunlight into the potential chemical energy of these complex substances; they are characteristically reducers (of carbonic acid), expend comparatively little energy in motion or external work, are predominantly passive, and show in the vital changes associated with their living matter or protoplasm, a <i>relative</i> preponderance of constructive, up-building, or "anabolic" processes.	



are stimulated by the excitation of the end-organ, and conduct the stimulus inwards to what are called centres or ganglia.

In vertebrate animals the brain and spinal cord contain a series of such centres, some of which serve for the perception of the changes produced in the end-organs by the stimulus, while others preside over the activities of the muscles. As we ascend in the scale, we find that in addition the brain possesses, to an increasing extent, the power of correlating present and past experiences, and of originating or inhibiting action in accordance with the judgment formed.

Thus nervous activities involve—(a) end-organs or sense organs; (b) centres or ganglia; and (c) the conducting nerves, some of which are afferent (or sensory) passing from end-organs to ganglia, while others are efferent (or motor) passing from centres to muscles. And in whatever part there is activity, there is necessarily waste of complex substances and some degree of exhaustion.

It is interesting to notice, as a triumph of histological technique, that Hodge, Gustav Mann, and others have succeeded in demonstrating in nerve cells the structural results (cellular collapse, etc.) of fatigue, and that in such diverse types as bee, frog, bird, and dog.

*Muscular activity.*—The movements of a unicellular animal are due to the contractility of the living matter, or of special parts of the cell, such as cilia (see p. 102). In sponges there are often specially contractile cells; in most higher animals such cells are aggregated to form the muscles, on whose activity all movement depends.

In many of the lower animals, *e.g.* sea-anemones and sea-squirts, the contractile strands consist of long spindle-shaped cells which appear almost homogeneous; these are called smooth muscle fibres. They occur in certain parts of the body in higher vertebrates, *e.g.* on the wall of the urinary bladder. A more specialised kind of muscle, prevailing in active animals, consists of fibres which show alternate light and dark cross bands; these are called striped muscle fibres. The two kinds, unstriped and striped, may be seen to pass into one another in the same animal, and in a general way one may think of the former as slowly contracting, the latter as rapidly contracting.



A piece of living muscle consists of fine transparent tubes or fibres, each invested by a sheath or sarcolemma, while the whole muscle is surrounded by connective tissue. It usually runs from one part of the skeleton to another, and is fastened to the skeleton by tendons or sinews. It is stimulated by motor nerves, and is richly supplied with blood.

When a muscle contracts, usually under a stimulus propagated along a motor nerve, there is of course a change of shape—it becomes shorter and broader. The source of the energy expended in work done is the “chemical explosion” which occurs in the fibres, for the oxygen stored up (intramolecularly) in the muscle enters into rapid union with carbon compounds. Heat,  $\text{CO}_2$ , and water are produced as the result of this combustion, and lactic acid is also formed as a by-product. Besides the chemical change and the change of shape, there are also changes of “electric potential” associated with each contraction.

*Digestion.*—The energy expended in doing work or in growth is balanced by the potential energy of the food stuffs taken into the body. These consist of proteids, carbohydrates, fats, water, and salts, in varying proportions according to the diet of the animal. Oxygen may also be regarded as forming part of the food.

In some of the lower animals, such as sponges, the food particles are directly engulfed by some of the cells with which they come in contact. Within these cells they are dissolved: this is known as *intracellular digestion*. In most cases, however, the food is rendered soluble and diffusible *within the food canal*, by the action of certain ferments made by the cells which line the gut or form the associated glands. The great peculiarity of these fermenting substances is that a small quantity can act upon a large mass of material without itself undergoing any apparent change. But however digestion be effected, it means making the food soluble and diffusible. In a higher vertebrate there are many steps in the process.

(a) The first ferment to affect the food, masticated by the teeth and moistened by the saliva, is the *ptyalin* of the salivary juice, which



changes starch into sugar. The juice is formed or secreted by various salivary glands around the mouth.

(b) The food is swallowed, and passes down the gullet to the stomach, where it is mixed with the gastric juice secreted by glands situated in the walls. These walls are also muscular, and their contractions churn the food and mix it with the juice. In the juice there is some free hydrochloric acid and a ferment called pepsin: these act together in turning proteids into peptones. The juice has also a slight solvent effect on fat, and the acid on the carbohydrates.

(c) The semi-digested food, as it passes from the stomach into the small intestine, is called chyme, and on this other juices act. Of these the most important is the secretion of the pancreas, which contains various ferments, *e.g.* trypsin, and affects all the different kinds of organic food. It continues the work of the stomach, changing proteids into peptones; it continues the work of the salivary juice, changing starch into sugar; it also emulsifies the fat, dividing the globules into extremely small drops, which it tends to saponify or split into fatty acids and glycerine.

(d) Into the beginning of the small intestine the bile from the liver also flows, but it is not of great digestive importance, being rather of the nature of a waste product. It seems to have a slight solvent, emulsifying, and saponifying action on the fats; in some animals it is said to have slight power of converting starch into sugar; by its alkalinity it helps the action of the trypsin of the pancreas (which, unlike pepsin, acts in an alkaline fluid); it affects cell membranes, so that they allow the passage of small drops of fat and oil; and it is said to have various other qualities.

(e) In addition to the liver and the pancreas, there are on the walls of the small intestine a great number of small glands, which secrete a juice which probably seconds the pancreatic juice. The digested material is in part absorbed into the blood, and the mass of food, still being digested, is passed along the small intestine by means of the muscular contraction of the walls known as peristaltic action. It reaches the large intestine, and its reaction is now distinctly acid by reason of the acid fermentation of the contents. The walls of the large intestine contain glands similar to those of the small intestine, and the digestive processes are completed, while absorption also goes on; so that by the time the mass has reached the rectum, it is semi-solid, and is known as *fæces*. These contain the indigestible and undigested remnants of the food and the useless products of the chemical digestive processes.

*Absorption.*—But the food must not only be rendered soluble and diffusible, it must be carried to the different parts of the body, and there incorporated into the hungry cells. It is carried by the blood stream, and in part also by what are called lymph vessels, which contain a clear fluid resembling blood *minus* red blood corpuscles.

Absorption begins in the stomach by direct osmosis into the capillaries or fine branches of blood vessels in its walls, and a similar absorption,



especially of water, takes place along the whole of the digestive tract. But lining the intestines there are special hair-like projections called villi; they contain capillaries belonging to the portal system (blood vessels going to the liver), and small vessels known as lacteals connected with lymph spaces in the wall of the intestine. The lacteals lead into a longitudinal lymph vessel or thoracic duct, which opens into the junction of the left jugular and left subclavian veins at the root of the neck. The contents of the duct in a fasting animal are clear; after a meal they become milky; the change is due to the matters discharged into it by the lacteals. It is probable that nearly all the fat of a meal is absorbed from the intestines by the lacteals, but it is not certain in what measure, if at all, this is true of the other dissolved foodstuffs; the greater part certainly passes into the capillaries of the portal system, which are contained in the villi. The peptone or digested proteid, as it passes through the cells of the villi, is changed into other proteids nearly related to those of the blood, for no peptone is found in the portal vein.

*Function of the liver.*—We now know the fate of the fats, and of the proteids of the food, and the manner in which they pass into the blood; but we must follow the starchy material, or carbohydrates, a little further. The starch, we know, is converted into sugar, and this, with the sugar of the food, passes into the capillaries of the villi, and is carried to the liver. During digestion there is an increase of sugar in the blood vessel going to the liver from the intestine, that is, in the portal vein, but no increase in the hepatic veins, the vessels leaving the liver. The increase must therefore be retained in that organ, and we recognise as one of the functions of the liver, the regulation of the amount of sugar in the blood. There is no special organ for the regulation of the amount of fat; the drops pass through the walls of the capillaries, and are stored in connective tissue cells.

All the products of digestion, except the fat, pass through the liver, which receives everything before it is allowed to pass into the general circulation. Thus many poisons, such as metals, are arrested by the liver, and various harmful substances which are formed in the course of digestion are changed by the liver into harmless compounds. The excess of sugar, we have already noted, is stored in the liver. It is converted there into a substance called glycogen, which can be readily retransformed into sugar according to the needs of the system. Glycogen is stored in the muscles also, and forms an important part of the fuel for the



supply of muscular energy and of the warmth of the body. Thus, if an animal be subjected to a low temperature, the glycogen of the liver disappears just as it does during the performance of muscular work.

Another of the many functions of the liver is that in it nitrogenous waste products begin to be prepared for their final elimination by the kidneys.

*Respiration.*—There is another most important foodstuff to be noticed, namely, the oxygen which is absorbed from the air by the lungs. We may picture a lung as an elastic sponge-work of air chambers, with innumerable blood capillaries in the walls, enclosed in an air-tight box, the chest, the size of which constantly and rhythmically varies. When we take in a breath, the size of the chest is increased, the air pressure within is lowered, and the air from without rushes down the windpipe until the pressure is equalised. The oxygen of this air combines with a substance called hæmoglobin, contained in the red corpuscles of the blood, and is thus carried to all parts of the body. The protoplasm of the tissues having a stronger affinity for oxygen than the hæmoglobin has, removes as much as it requires. The carbonic acid gas formed as a waste product is absorbed by the serum of the blood, and so in time reaches the lungs. But as the partial pressure of the carbonic acid in the air is lower than it is in the serum, the gas escapes from the latter into the air chambers of the lungs. When the size of the chest is decreased, the pressure is increased, and the gas escapes by the mouth or nose until the pressure is equalised.

*Excretion.*—We have seen that the blood carries the digested food to the various parts of the body, and that it is also the carrier of oxygen and of the waste carbonic acid gas.

But there is much waste resulting from tissue changes, which is not gaseous. It is cast into the blood stream by the tissues, and has to be got rid of in some way. This is effected by the kidneys, which are really filters introduced into the blood stream. But they are the most marvellous filters imaginable, and give us a good example of the intricacy of life processes. For the kidneys not only take out of the blood all the waste products that result from



the metabolism of proteids, and contain nitrogen, but they maintain the composition of the blood at its normal, rejecting any stuffs that vary from that normal, either qualitatively or quantitatively, doing this work according to laws quite different from the simple ones of diffusion or solubility: thus sugar and urea are about equally soluble, and yet the sugar is kept in the body, while the urea is cast out. Even substances as insoluble as resins are removed from the blood by the living cells of the kidneys.

A considerable quantity of water, and traces of salts, fats, etc., leave the body by the skin, but its chief use is to protect and to regulate the temperature by variations in the size of its blood vessels.

This completes our sketch—(a) of the process by which the food becomes available for the organism as fuel for the maintenance of its life energies, and (b) of the removal of the waste products which are formed as the ashes of life.

There are indeed some organs which we have not mentioned, such as the spleen, which seems to be an area for the multiplication of blood corpuscles, and the thyroid gland, which seems to have to do with keeping the blood at a certain standard of efficiency; but what we have said is perhaps enough to convey a general idea of the processes of life in a higher animal.

In conclusion, it is perhaps useful to remark that when in the course of further studies the student meets with organs which are called by the same name as those found in man or in Mammals, as, for example, the "liver" of the Molluscs, he must be careful not to suppose that the function of such a "liver" is the same as in Mammals, for comparatively little investigation into the physiology of the lower types of animal life has as yet been made. At the same time, he must clearly recognise that the great internal activities are in a general way the same in all animals; thus respiration, whether accomplished by skin, or gills, or air-tubes, or lungs, by help of the red pigment (hæmoglobin) of the blood, or of some pigment which is not red, or occurring without the presence of any blood at all, always means that oxygen is absorbed almost like a kind of food by the tissues, and that the carbonic acid gas which results from the oxidation of part of the material of the tissues is removed.

#### MODERN CONCEPTION OF PROTOPLASM.

The activities of animals are ultimately due to physical and chemical changes associated with the living matter or



protoplasm. This is a mere truism. We do not know the nature of this living matter ; perhaps our most certain knowledge of it is, that in our brains its activity is associated with consciousness.

When more is known in regard to the chemistry and physics of living matter, it may be possible to bring vital phenomena more into line with the changes which are observed in inorganic things. At present, however, it is idle to deny that vital phenomena are things apart. Not even the simplest of them can be explained in terms of chemistry and physics. Even the passage of digested food from the gut to the blood vessels is more than ordinary physical osmosis ; it is modified by the fact that the cells are living.

But though we cannot analyse living matter, nor thoroughly explain the changes by which the material of the body breaks down or is built up, we can trace, by chemical analysis, how food passes through various transformations till it becomes a usable part of the living body, and we can also catch some of the waste products formed when muscles or other parts are active.

In this way we learn that waste products are invariably formed when work is done, and that living animals have a marvellous power of rapid repair, of ceaselessly changing, and yet remaining more or less the same. Theory begins when we attempt to make the general idea of waste and repair more precise. In the study of "protoplasm," both morphologist and physiologist have reached their strict limits. Further analysis becomes physical and chemical, and ends in the confession that protoplasm is a marvellous form of matter in motion, or a subtle kind of motion of which we can form only a very vague conception.

What is known in regard to the structure of protoplasm does not help the physiologist very much. As we shall afterwards see, the microscopists discover an intricate network which pervades each unit of living matter, but no physiologist dreams of explaining the life of a cell in terms of its microscopically visible structure. Yet, as Burdon Sanderson says, "we still hold to the fundamental principle that living matter acts by virtue of its structure, provided the term structure be used in a sense which carries it beyond the limits of anatomical investigation, *i.e.* beyond the knowledge which can be attained either by the scalpel or the microscope." But, in the end, this means that living



matter acts in virtue of its peculiar organisation, of which we can form only a hypothetical conception, and can give no scientific explanation.

One general idea, however, the study of structure has suggested, which the conclusions of physiologists corroborate. This idea is—that a cell consists of a relatively stable living framework, and of a changeful content enclosed by it.

Now, many physiologists regard the framework as the genuine living protoplasm, and the contents as the material upon which it acts. “The framework is the acting part, which lives, and is stable; the content is the acted-on part, which has never lived, and is labile, that is,—in a state of metabolism or chemical transformation.” This view naturally leads those who adopt it to regard protoplasm as a sort of ferment acting on less complex material which is brought to it, which forms the really changeful part of each cell. It may be recalled that the strange characteristic of a ferment is that it can act on other substances without being itself affected by the changes which it produces, and that it can go on doing so continuously with a power which has no direct relation to its amount. In these respects, therefore, living matter resembles a ferment.

Somewhat different, however, is another idea,—that the protoplasm is itself the seat of constant change; that it is constantly being unmade and remade. On the one hand, more or less crude food passes into life by an ascending series of assimilative or constructive chemical changes, with each of which the material becomes molecularly more complex and more unstable. On the other hand, the protoplasm, as it becomes active or a source of energy, breaks down in a descending series of disruptive or destructive chemical changes ending in waste products.

The former view, which considers protoplasm as a sort of ferment, restricts the metabolism to the material on which the protoplasm acts. The second view regards protoplasm as the climax or central term of the constructive and disruptive metabolism.

It may be, however, that there is no such substance as protoplasm, and that vital phenomena depend upon the interactions of several complex substances.

Generalising from his studies on colour sensation, Professor Hering was led to regard all life as an alternation of two kinds of activity, both induced by stimulus, the one tending to storage, construction, assimilation of material, the other tending to explosion, disruption, disassimilation.

Generalising from his studies on nervous activities, Professor Gaskell was led to regard all life as an alternation of two processes, one of them a running down or disruption (katabolism), the other a winding up or construction (anabolism).

All physiologists are agreed that in life there is a twofold process of waste and repair, of discharge and restitution, of activity and recuperative rest. But there is no certainty as to the precise nature of his twofold process.



## CHAPTER III.

### THE ELEMENTS OF STRUCTURE.

#### (MORPHOLOGY.)

ANIMALS may be studied alive or dead, in regard to their activities or in regard to their parts. We may ask how they live, or what they are made of; we may investigate their functions or their structure. The study of life, activity, function, is physiology; the study of parts, architecture, structure, is morphology.

The first task of the morphologist is to describe structure (descriptive anatomy); the second is to compare the parts of one animal with those of another (comparative anatomy); the third is to try to state the "principles of morphology," or the laws of vital architecture.

But just as the physiologist investigates life or activity at different levels, passing from his study of the animal as a unity with certain habits, to consider it as an engine of organs, a web of tissues, a city of cells, and a whirlpool of living matter; so the morphologist has to investigate the form of the whole animal, then in succession its organs, their component tissues, their component cells, and finally, the structure of protoplasm itself. The tasks of morphology and of physiology are parallel.

Morphology thus includes not only the description of external form, not only the anatomy of organs, but also that minute anatomy of tissues and cells and protoplasm which we call histology. Moreover, there is no real difference between studying fossil animals which died and were buried countless years ago, and dissecting a modern frog. The anatomical palæontologist is also a student of morphology.



Finally, as the greater part of embryology consists in studying the anatomy and histology of an organism at various stages of its development, the work of the embryologist is also in the main morphological, though he has also to inform us, if he can, about the physiology of development.

Morphology has been defined by Geddes as "the study of all the statical aspects of organisms," in contrast to physiology, which is concerned with their vital dynamics. In this chapter we shall follow the historical development of morphology, and work from the outside inwards.

**I. Form and symmetry.**—The form of an animal is due to the interaction of two variables—the protoplasmic material which composes the organism, and the environment which plays upon it. In fact, an animal takes definite form just as a mineral does: in both the shape is determined by the nature of the stuff and by the surrounding influences. Activity, or function, also affects form; but function is merely action and reaction between the animal and its surroundings. Such statements, however, are platitudes; we are far from being able to explain the conditions of growth which lead to this shape or that.

As regards symmetry, animals may be distinguished in an elementary way, as—

- (a) Radially symmetrical; or
- (b) Bilaterally symmetrical; or
- (c) Asymmetrical.

In a radially symmetrical animal, such as a jelly-fish, the body can be halved by a number of vertical planes—it is symmetrical around a median vertical axis. That is, it is the same all round, and has no right or left side. In a bilaterally symmetrical body, such as our own, there is but one plane through which the body can be halved. In an asymmetrical animal, such as a snail, accurate halving is impossible.

Radial symmetry is illustrated by simple Sponges, most Cœlentera, and by many *adult* Echinoderms. As it is the rule in the two lowest classes of Metazoa, and as it is characteristic of the very common embryonic stage known as the gastrula (an oval or thimble-shaped sac consisting of two layers of cells), it is probably more primitive than the bilateral symmetry characteristic of most animals above Cœlentera. Radial symmetry seems best suited for sedentary life, or for aimless floating and drifting. Bilateral symmetry probably arose as it became advantageous for animals to move energetically and in definite directions, to pursue their prey, avoid their enemies, and seek their mates. Among many-celled animals, some worm type probably deserves the



credit of beginning the profitable habit of moving head-foremost ; had some one not taken this step, we should never have known our right hand from our left.

**II. Organs.**—We give this name to any well-defined part of an animal, such as heart or brain. The word suggests a piece of mechanism ; but the animal is more than a complex engine, and many organs have several different activities to which their visible structure gives little clue.

*Differentiation and integration of organs.*—When we review the animal series, or study the development of an individual, we see that organs appear gradually. The gastrula cavity—the future stomach—is the first acquisition, though some would make out that it was primitively a brood-chamber. To begin with, it is a simple sac, but it soon becomes complicated by digestive and other out-growths. The progress of the individual, and of the race, is from apparent simplicity to obvious complexity. We also notice that before definite nervous organs appear there is diffuse irritability, before definite muscular organs appear there is diffuse contractility, and so on. In other words, functions come before organs. The attainment of organs implies specialisation of parts, or concentration of functions in particular areas of the body.

If we contrast a frog with *Hydra*, one of the great facts in regard to the evolution of organs is illustrated. Among the living units which make up a frog, there is much more division of labour than there is among those of *Hydra*. An excised representative sample of *Hydra* will reproduce the whole animal, but we cannot do this with the frog. The structural result of this physiological division of labour is *differentiation*. The animal, or part of it, becomes more complex, more heterogeneous.

If we contrast a bird and a sponge, another great fact in regard to the evolution of organs is illustrated. The bird is more of a unity than a sponge ; its parts are more closely knit together and more adequately subordinate to the life of the whole. This kind of progress is called *integration*. Differentiation involves the acquisition of new parts and powers, these are consolidated and harmonised as the animal becomes more integrated.

*Correlation of organs.*—It is of the very nature of an



organism that its parts should be mutually dependent. The organs are all partners in the business of life, and if one member changes, others also are affected. This is especially true of certain organs which have developed and evolved together, and are knit by close physiological bonds. Thus the circulatory and the respiratory systems, the muscular and the skeletal systems, the brain and the sense organs, are very closely united, and they are said to be *correlated*. A variation, for better or worse, in one system often brings about a *correlated variation* in another, though we cannot always trace the physiological connection.

*Homologous organs*.—Organs which arise from the same primitive layer of the embryo (see Chapter IV.) have something in common. But when a number of organs arise in the same way, from the same embryonic material, and are at first fashioned on the same plan, they have still more in common. Nor will this fundamental sameness be affected though the final shape and use of the various organs be very different. We call organs which are thus structurally and developmentally similar, *homologous*. Thus the nineteen pairs of appendages on a crayfish are all homologous; the three pairs of "jaws" in an insect are homologous with the insect's legs; and it is also true that the fore-leg of a frog, the wing of a bird, the flipper of a whale, the arm of a man, are all homologous. On the other hand, the wing of a bird and the wing of an insect, which resemble one another in being organs of flight, are not the least alike in structure; this is expressed by saying that they are only *analogous*. Yet two organs may be both homologous and analogous, e.g. the wing of a bird and the wing of a bat, for both are fore-limbs, and both are organs of flight. Sometimes two organs or two organisms—deeply different in structure—have a marked superficial resemblance, simply because both have arisen in relation to similar conditions of life. Thus a burrowing amphibian, a burrowing lizard, and a burrowing snake resemble one another in being limbless, but this "convergence," or "homoplasy," of form does not indicate any relationship between them.

*Change of function*.—Division of labour involves restriction of functions in the several parts of an animal, and no higher Metazoa could have arisen if all the cells had



remained with the many-sided qualities of *Amœbæ*. Yet we must avoid thinking about organs as if they were necessarily active in one way only. For many organs, *e.g.* the liver, have several very distinct functions, and we know how wondrously diverse are the activities in our brains. In addition to the main function of an organ, there are often secondary functions; thus the wings of an insect may be respiratory as well as locomotor, and part of the food canal of Tunicates and *Amphioxus* is almost wholly subservient to respiration. Moreover, in organs which are not very highly specialised, it seems as if the component elements retained a considerable degree of individuality, so that in course of time what was a secondary function may become the primary one. Thus Dohrn, who has especially emphasised this idea of function change, says: "Every function is the resultant of several components, of which one is the chief or primary function, while the others are subsidiary or secondary. The diminution of the chief function and the accession of a secondary function changes the total function; the secondary function becomes gradually the chief one; the result is the modification of the organ." Thus it may be noticed that the structure known as the allantois is an unimportant bladder in the frog, that in Birds and Reptiles it forms a foetal membrane (chiefly respiratory) around the embryo, and that in most Mammals it forms part of the placenta which effects vital connection between offspring and mother.

*Substitution of organs.*—The idea of several changes of function in the evolution of an organ, suggests another of not less importance which has been emphasised by Kleinenberg. An illustration will explain it. In the early stages of all vertebrate embryos, the supporting axial skeleton is the notochord,—a rod developed along the dorsal wall of the gut. From Fishes onwards, this embryonic axis is gradually replaced in development by the vertebral column or backbone; the notochord does not become the backbone, but is replaced by it. It is a temporary structure, around which the vertebral column is constructed, as a tall chimney may be built around an internal scaffolding of wood. Yet it remains as the sole axial skeleton in *Amphioxus*, persists in great part in hag and lamprey, but becomes less and less persistent in Fishes and higher



Vertebrates, as its substitute, the backbone, develops more perfectly. Now, what is the relation between the notochord and its substitute the backbone, seeing that the former does not become the latter? Kleinenberg's suggestion is that the notochord supplies the stimulus, the necessary condition, for the formation of the backbone. Of course we require to know more about the way in which an old-fashioned structure may stimulate the growth of its future substitute, but the general idea of one organ leading on to another is suggestive. It is consistent with our general conception of development—that each stage supplies the necessary stimulus for the next step; it also helps us to understand more clearly how new structures, too incipient to be of use, may persist.

*Rudimentary organs.*—In many animals there are structures which attain no complete development, which are rudimentary in comparison with those of related forms, and seem retrogressive when compared with their promise in embryonic life. But it is necessary to distinguish various kinds of rudimentary structures. (a) As a pathological variation, probably due to some germinal defect, or to the insufficient nutrition of the embryo, the heart of a mammal is sometimes incompletely formed. Other organs may be similarly spoilt in the making. They illustrate *arrested development*. (b) Some animals lose, in the course of their life, some of the prominent characteristics of their larval life; thus parasitic crustaceans at first free-living, and sessile sea-squirts at first free-swimming, always undergo *degeneration*. The retrogression can be seen in each lifetime. But the little kiwi of New Zealand, with mere apologies for wings, and many cave fishes and cave crustaceans with slight hints of eyes, illustrate degeneration, which has taken such a hold of the animals that the young stages also are degenerate. The retrogression cannot be seen in each lifetime, evident as it is when we compare these degenerate forms with probable ancestors. (c) But among “rudimentary organs” we also include structures somewhat different, *e.g.* the gill-clefts which persist in embryonic reptiles, birds, and mammals, though they serve no obvious purpose, or the embryonic teeth of whalebone whales. These are “*vestigial structures*,” traces of ancestral history, and intelligible on no



other theory. The gill-clefts are used for respiration in all vertebrates below reptiles; the ancestors of whalebone whales doubtless had functional teeth. In regard to these persistent vestigial structures, it must also be recognised that we are not warranted in calling them useless. Though they themselves are not functional, they may sometimes be, as Kleinenberg suggests, necessary for the growth of other structures which are useful.

*Classification of organs.*—We may arrange the various parts of the body physiologically, according to their share in the life. Thus some parts have most to do with the *external* relations of the animals; such as locomotor, prehensile, food-receiving, protective, aggressive, and copulatory organs. Of *internal* parts, the skeletal structures are passive; the nervous, muscular, and glandular parts are active. The reproductive organs are distinct from all the rest. They are often called “gonads,” and should never be called glands. For by a gland we mean an organ which secretes, an organ whose cells produce and liberate some definite chemical substance, such as a digestive ferment; whereas the gonads are organs in which certain cells, kept apart from the specialisation characteristic of most of the “body cells” or “somatic” cells, are multiplied.

Another classification of organs is embryological, *i.e.* according to the embryonic layer from which the various parts arise. Thus the outer layer of the embryo (the ectoderm or epiblast) forms in the adult—(1) the outer skin or epidermis; (2) the nervous system; (3) much at least of the sense organs: the inner layer of the embryo (the endoderm or hypoblast) forms at least an important part (the “mid-gut”) of the food canal, and the basis of outgrowths (lungs, liver, pancreas, etc.) which may arise therefrom, and also the notochord of Vertebrates; the middle layer of the embryo (the mesoderm or mesoblast) forms skeleton, connective swathings, muscle, etc.

It is important to adopt *some* order of description, and in the descriptions of animals given in this book, we shall follow, almost consistently, this order of treatment:—Mode of life, form, external appendages, skin, skeleton, muscle, nervous system, sense organs, food canal, body cavity, vascular system, respiratory system, excretory system, reproductive system, development.

**III. Tissues.**—Zoological anatomists, of whom Cuvier may be taken as a type, analyse animals into their component organs, and discover the homologies between one animal and another. But as early as 1801, Bichât had published his “Anatomie générale,” in which he carried the analysis further, showing that the organs were composed of *tissues*, contractile, nervous, glandular, etc. In 1838-39, Schwann and Schleiden formulated the “cell theory,” in



which was stated the result of yet deeper analysis—that all organisms have a *cellular* structure and origin. The simplest animals (Protozoa) are typically single cells or unit masses of living matter ; as such all animals begin ; but all, except the simplest, consist of hundreds of these cells united into more or less homogeneous companies (tissues), which may be compacted, as we have seen, into organs. If we think of the organism as a great city of cells, the tissues represent streets (like some of those in Leipzig), in each of which some one kind of function or industry predominates.

Since Leydig gave a strong foundation to comparative histology in his remarkable “*Lehrbuch der Histologie des Menschen und der Thiere*” (Frankfurt, 1857), the study has been prosecuted with great energy, and has been constantly stimulated by improvements in microscopic apparatus and technique.

The student should read the introductory chapters in one of the numerous works on histology, so as to gain a general idea of the characters of the different tissues.

There are four great kinds,—epithelial, connective, muscular, and nervous.

(a) *Epithelial tissue* is illustrated by the external layer of the skin (epidermis), the internal (endothelial) lining of the food canal and its outgrowths, the lining of the body-cavity, etc. ; by the early arrangements of cells in all embryos ; and by the simplest Metazoa, such as *Hydra*, whose tubular body is lined by two layers of epithelium. Embryologically and historically, epithelium is the most primitive kind of tissue. It may be single layered or stratified ; its cells may be columnar, scale-like, or otherwise. The cells may be close together, or separated by intercellular spaces, and they are often connected by bridges of living matter. Nor are the functions of epithelium less diverse than its forms, for it may be ciliated (effecting locomotion, food-wafting, etc.), or sensitive (and as such forming sense organs), or glandular (liberating certain products or even the whole contents of its cells), or pigmented (and thus associated with respiration, excretion, and protection), or covered externally with a sweated-off cuticle, susceptible of many modifications (especially of protective value).

(b) *Connective tissue*.—This term is somewhat like the title “worms.” It includes too many different kinds of things to mean much. It represents a sort of histological lumber-room.

The embryologists help us a little, for they have shown that almost all forms of connective tissue are derived from the mesoderm or middle layer of the embryo. As this mesoderm usually arises in the form of outgrowths from the gut, or from (“mesenchyme”) cells liberated at an early stage from either (?) of the two other layers of the embryo



(ectoderm or endoderm), we may say that connective tissue is primarily derived from epithelium.

The general function of "connective tissue" is to enswathe, to bind, and to support, but the forms assumed are very various.

(a) The cells may be close together, without any intercellular "mortar" or matrix. They may contain large vacuoles, and thus produce the appearance of a network, or they may be laden with fat or with pigment.

(b) In other cases the cells of the connective tissue lie in a matrix, which they exude, or into which they in part die away. Such cells are very often irregular in outline, and give off, in most cases, fine processes, which traverse the matrix as a network. The fibrous tissue of tendons and the different kinds of gristle or cartilage illustrate connective tissue with much matrix. Cartilage is sometimes hardened by the deposition of lime salts in its substance, and then has a slight resemblance to another kind of "connective tissue"—bone. But bone, which is restricted to Vertebrate animals, is quite different from the cartilage which it often succeeds and replaces. It is made by strands or layers of special bone-forming cells (osteoblasts), which may rest on a cartilage foundation, or may be quite independent. These osteoblasts form the bone matrix, and some of them are involved in it, and become the permanent bone cells. These have numerous radiating branches, and are arranged in layers, usually around a cavity or a blood vessel. (There are no blood vessels in cartilage.) The matrix becomes very rich in lime salts (especially phosphate); and the cartilage foundation, if there was one, is quite destroyed by the new formation. Here we may also note two important fluid tissues, the floating corpuscles or cells of the blood, and those of the body cavity or "perivisceral" fluid, which is often abundant and important in backboneless animals.

(c) *Muscular tissue*.—The single-celled *Amœba* moves by flowing out on one side and drawing in its substance on another. It is diffusely contractile, and it has also sensitive, digestive, and other functions.

In *Hydra* and some other Cœlentera the bases of some of the epithelial cells which form the outer and inner layers are prolonged into contractile roots. Here, then, we have cells of which a special part discharges a contractile or muscular function, while the other parts retain other powers.

In other Cœlentera the muscular cells are still directly connected with the epithelium, but become more and more exclusively contractile. In all other animals the muscular tissue is derived from the mesoderm, which, as we have already mentioned, is not distinctly present in Cœlentera. In the majority, the muscle cells arise on the walls of the body-cavity, and their origin may often at least be described as epithelial. But in other cases the muscles arise from those wandering "mesenchyme" cells to which we have already referred.

Smooth or unstriped muscle fibres are elongated contractile cells, externally homogeneous in appearance. They are especially abundant in sluggish animals, *e.g.* Molluscs, and occur in the walls of the gut, bladder, and blood vessels of Vertebrates. They are less perfectly differentiated than striped muscle fibres, and usually contract more slowly.



A striped muscle fibre is a cell the greater part of which is modified into a set of parallel longitudinal fibrils, with alternating "clear and dark" transverse stripes. A residue of unmodified cell substance, with a nucleus or with many, is often to be observed on the side of the fibre, and a slight sheath or sarcolemma forms the "cell wall." Many muscle fibres closely combined, and wrapped in a sheath of connective tissue, form a muscle, which, as every one knows, can contract with extreme rapidity when stimulated by a nervous impulse.

(d) *Nervous tissue*.—Beginning again with the *Amœba*, we recognise that it is diffusely sensitive, and that a stimulus can pass from one part of the cell to another.

In some Cœlentera some of the external cells seem to combine contractile and nervous functions. Therefore they are sometimes called "neuro-muscular."

But in *Hydra* there are special nervous cells, whose basal prolongations are connected with the contractile roots already described. This is a neuro-muscular apparatus of the simplest kind. The nerve cells probably receive impressions from without, and transmit them as stimuli to the contractile elements.

In sea-anemones and some other Cœlentera there is an interesting complication, withal very simple. There are superficial sensory cells, connected with subjacent nerve- or ganglion-cells, from which fibres pass to the contractile elements.

In higher animals the sensory cells are integrated into sense organs, the ganglionic cells into ganglia, while the delicate fibres which form the connections between sensory cells and ganglionic cells, and between the latter and muscles, are represented by well-developed nerves.

So far as we know, nervous tissue always arises from the outer or ectodermic layer of the embryo, as we would expect from the fact that this is the layer which, in the course of history, has been most directly subjected to external stimulus.

Let us consider first the ganglionic cells which receive stimuli and shunt them, which regulate the whole life of the organism, and are the physical conditions of "spontaneous" activity and intelligence. The simplest are prolonged at one pole into an outgrowth which branches into an afferent and efferent nerve fibre. Most, however, give off outgrowths from two poles or on all sides. Internally they consist in great part of a network or coil of fine fibrils, amid which lies the usual cell kernel or nucleus. Ganglionic cells, aggregated to form ganglia, generally lie embedded in a fibrous cellular substance called neuroglia, usually regarded as an ensheathing and supporting material.

In all but a few of the simplest Metazoa, the nerve fibres are surrounded by a sheath called the neurilemma, said to be formed by adjacent connective tissue. Several nerve fibres may combine to form a nerve, but each still remains ensheathed in its neurilemma. In Vertebrate animals each nerve fibre usually consists of an internal "axis cylinder," the important part, and an external unessential medullary sheath. But even in the higher Vertebrates, "non-medullated" or simply contoured nerve fibres are found in the sympathetic and olfactory nerves, and this simpler type alone occurs in hag, lamprey, and lancelet, as well as in all the Invertebrates with distinct nerves. Furthermore,



nerves are usually surrounded by an enveloping nucleated layer called Schwann's sheath, or else by neuroglia.

A nerve fibre consists of numerous fibrils like those seen within a ganglion cell. These are regarded by some as the essential elements in conducting stimuli, while others maintain that the essential part is the less compact, sometimes well-nigh fluid stuff between the fibrils, or that the fibrils are but the walls of tubes within which the essentially nervous stuff lies.

According to some authorities, the nerve fibres arise as extensive prolongations of the ganglion cells; according to others, the neuroglia or other ensheathing elements contribute to the extension of the nerve fibres, or rather special neuroblast cells make both sheath and fibre.

**IV. Cells.**—In discussing tissues, it was necessary to refer to the component cells. Let us now consider the chief characteristics of these elements.

A cell is a unit mass of living matter. Most of the simplest animals and plants (Protozoa and Protophyta) are single cells; eggs and male elements are single cells; in multicellular organisms the cells are combined into tissues and organs.

Most cells are too small to be distinguished except through lenses; many Protozoa, *e.g.* large Amœbæ, are just visible to our unaided eyes; the chalk-forming Foraminifera are single cells, whose shells are often as large as pin-heads, and some of the extinct kinds were as big as half-crowns (*see* Fig. 17); the bast cells of plants may extend for several inches; the largest animal cells are eggs distended with yolk.

The typical and primitive form of cell is a sphere,—a shape naturally assumed by a complex coherent substance situated in a medium different from itself. Most egg cells and many Protozoa retain this primitive form, but the internal and external conditions of life (such as nutrition and pressure) often evolve other shapes,—oval, rectangular, flattened, thread-like, stellate, and so on.

*As to the structure of a cell, we may distinguish—*

(a) The general cell substance or cytoplasm, which consists partly of genuinely living stuff or protoplasm, and partly of complex materials not really living;

(b) A specialised kernel or nucleus, with a complex structure, and important, but hardly, as yet, definable functions;

(c) One or more specialised bodies called central



corpuscles or centrosomata, which seem to be centres of activity during cell division ;

(*d*) A cell wall, which occurs in very varied form, or may be entirely absent.

(*a*) *As to the cell substance*, it often appears at first sight almost homogeneous, but higher magnification shows considerable structural complexity. It is certainly not like white of egg, but shows a reticular, fibrillar, or vacuolar structure. It is usually slightly fluid, but it may be firm and compact in passive cells. It is usually translucent, but there are often obscuring granules of different kinds.

In thinking of the cell substance or cytoplasm, we may distinguish the genuinely living protoplasm, of whose nature we know almost nothing, from associated substances, such as proteids, carbohydrates, fats, pigments, etc., whose chemical composition can be ascertained. But it may be that what we call protoplasm is a mixture of proteids and other complex substances.

(*b*) *As to the nucleus*, one at least is present in almost every cell. It used to be said that some very simple animals, which Haeckel called Monera, had no nuclei, but in many cases the nuclei have now been demonstrated. In other cases, *e.g.* some Infusorians, the nuclear material seems to be diffused in the cell substance. The red blood cells of Mammals seem to be distinctly nucleated in their early stages, but there is no trace of a nucleus in those which are full grown.

The nucleus is a very important part of the cell, but it is not yet possible to define precisely what its importance is. In fertilisation an essential process is the union of the nucleus of the spermatozoon or male cell with the nucleus of the ovum or female cell (Fig. 20). In cell division the nucleus certainly plays an essential part. Cells bereft of their nuclei die, or live for a while a crippled life. According to some, the nucleus is important in connection with the nutrition of the cell, and it is generally believed that there are complex actions and reactions between the living matter of the nucleus and that of the cytoplasm. Perhaps we may venture to say that cytoplasm and nucleoplasm form a "cell firm," potent only in their mutual dependence.

The nucleus often lies within a little nest in the midst of



the cell substance, but it may shift its position from one part of the cell to another. It has a definite margin, but this may be lost, *e.g.* before cell division begins. Internally, it is anything but homogeneous; at any rate, homogeneous nuclei are rare. Usually there is a network of fine, strongly stainable (chromatin) strands, with less stainable (achromatin) substance in the meshes. But in other cells, or at another time in the same cell, the nucleus is seen to contain a coiled (chromatin) thread, or a number of chromatin loops (Fig. 19). Weismann and others believe that these chromatin elements or chromosomes are made up of hypothetical bodies whose properties are supposed to determine the nature of an organism and its life. Many nuclei also contain one or more little round bodies or

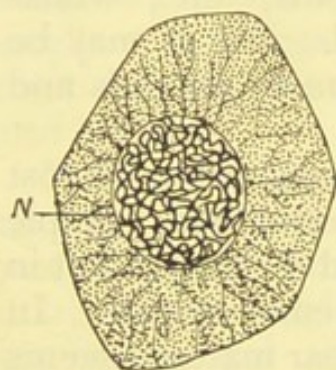


FIG. 19. — Structure of the cell.—After Carnoy.

*N*, Nucleus with chromatic coil; note protoplasmic reticulum.

nucleoli, apparently of less importance. The term is applied somewhat vaguely to little aggregations of chromatin, and more properly to vacuole-like bodies, in which some believe that the waste products of the nucleus are collected. Within the nucleolus an "endo-nucleolus" has been discovered. Though the nuclei of different cells differ in details, there is a fundamental sameness, both of structure and activity, throughout the world of cells.

(*c*) *As to the centrosomes*, it may be noted that when an animal cell divides, these bodies play an important part. The chromatin elements of the nucleus are divided, and separate to form the two daughter nuclei. In this separation extremely fine "archoplasmic" threads pass from the centrosomes to the chromosomes. These centrosomes are therefore regarded as "division organs," or as "dynamic centres." They also occur, in most cases singly, in resting cells, and it seems likely that they are present in most animal cells, at least in those which retain the power of division.

(*d*) *As to the cell wall*, it seemed of much moment to the earlier histologists, who often spoke of cells as little bags or boxes. It is, however, the least important part of the cell.



In plant cells there is usually a very distinct wall, consisting of cellulose. This is a product, not a part, of the protoplasm, though some protoplasm may be intimately associated with it as long as its growth continues. In animal cells there is rarely a very distinct wall chemically distinguishable from the living matter itself. But the margin is often different from the interior, and a slight wall may be formed by a superficial compacting of the threads of the cell network, or by a physical alteration of the cell substance, comparable to the formation of a skin on cooling porridge. In other cases, especially in cells which are not very active, such as ova and encysted Protozoa, a more definite sheath is formed around the cell substance. Again, animal cells may secrete a superficial "cuticle," e.g. the chitin formed by the ectoderm cells in Insects, Crustaceans, and other Arthropods.

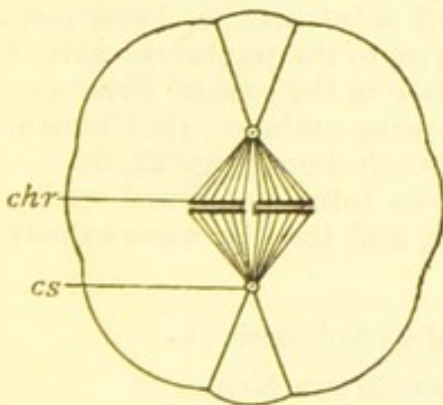


FIG. 21.—Diagram of cell division.—After Boveri.

*chr.*, Chromosomes forming an equatorial plate; *cs.*, centrosoma.

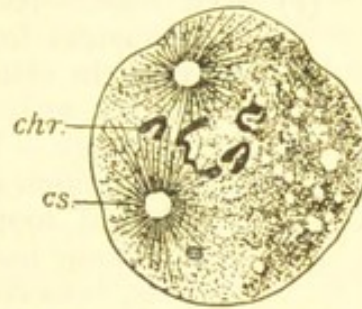


FIG. 20.—Fertilised ovum of *Ascaris*.—After Boveri.

*chr.*, Chromatin elements, two from ovum nucleus and two from sperm nucleus; *cs.*, centrosoma from which "archoplasmic" threads radiate, partly to the chromosomes.

In animals, as well as in plants, adjacent cells are often linked by intercellular bridges of living matter.

*In regard to cell division*, the most important facts are the following:—There is a striking similarity in most cases, and the nucleus plays an essential part in the process. The dividing nucleus usually passes through a series of complex changes known as karyokinesis or mitosis, and these are much the same everywhere,

though different kinds of cells have their specific peculiarities. Occasionally, however, both in Protozoa and Metazoa, the nucleus divides by simple constriction (direct or amitotic division).



The eventful changes of karyokinesis are as follows :—

- (a) The *resting stage* of the nucleus shows a network or complete coil of filaments (chromatin elements) (Fig. 19).
- (b) *First stage*.—As division begins, the membrane separating the nucleus from the cell substance disappears, and the chromatin elements are seen as a tangled or broken coil (Fig. 22, 1).
- (c) *Astroid stage*.—The chromatin elements bend into looped pieces, which are disposed in a star, the free ends of the U-shaped loops being directed outwards. Meanwhile a centrosome has appeared and divided into two separating halves, between which a spindle of fine achromatin threads is formed. This seems to form (at least part of) what is called the nuclear spindle. The centrosomes separate until one lies at each pole of the cell, surrounded by radiating “archoplasmic” threads, which become attached to the chromosomes (Fig. 22, 2).
- (d) *Division and separation of the loops*.—Each of the loops which make up the star divides *longitudinally* into two, and each half separates from its neighbour. They lie at first near the equator of the cell, but they are apparently drawn, or driven, to the opposite poles (Fig. 22, 2-4).
- (e) *Diastroid*.—The single star thus forms two daughter stars, which separate further and further from one another towards the opposite poles of the cell, remaining connected, however, by delicate threads (Fig. 22, 3-5).
- (f) Each daughter star is reconstituted into a coil or network for each daughter cell, for the cell substance has been constricted meanwhile at right angles to the transverse axis of the spindle. The halves separate in the case of Protozoa, but in most other cases, *e.g.* growing embryos, they remain adjacent, with a slight wall between them (Fig. 22, 6).
- (g) Each daughter nucleus then passes into the normal resting phase. The spindle disappears, and the centrosomes may also vanish.

Flemming gives the following summary of karyokinesis :—

MOTHER NUCLEUS (progressive changes).	DAUGHTER NUCLEUS (regressive changes).
a Resting stage.	Resting stage. <i>g</i> ↑
b Coil.	Coil. <i>f</i> ↑
c Astroid.	Diastroid. <i>e</i> ↑
—→ d Division of Astroid and its loops	—→
(Prophases)	(Metakinesis) (Anaphyses).

We are far from being able to give even an approximate account of the “mechanism” of cell division. Rapidly progressive research has disclosed many mysteries, but it does not explain them. The nucleus is resolved into a chromatin framework and an achromatin matrix, but we know the nature of neither. The longitudinal division of each



loop shows how thorough is the partition of the chromatin substance. The "central corpuscles," recently discovered, act like centres of force, and the indescribably fine threads, which pass from around these to the chromatin loops, have been credited with motive powers. Similarly the threads of the nuclear spindle are believed by some to draw or drive the chromosomes. But we do not know. The whole process is vital, and therefore inexplicable in terms of matter and motion, so long, at least, as we do not know the secret of protoplasm.

On the other hand, Leuckart and Spencer have given a general rationale of cell division. Why do not cells grow much larger? why do they almost always divide at a definite

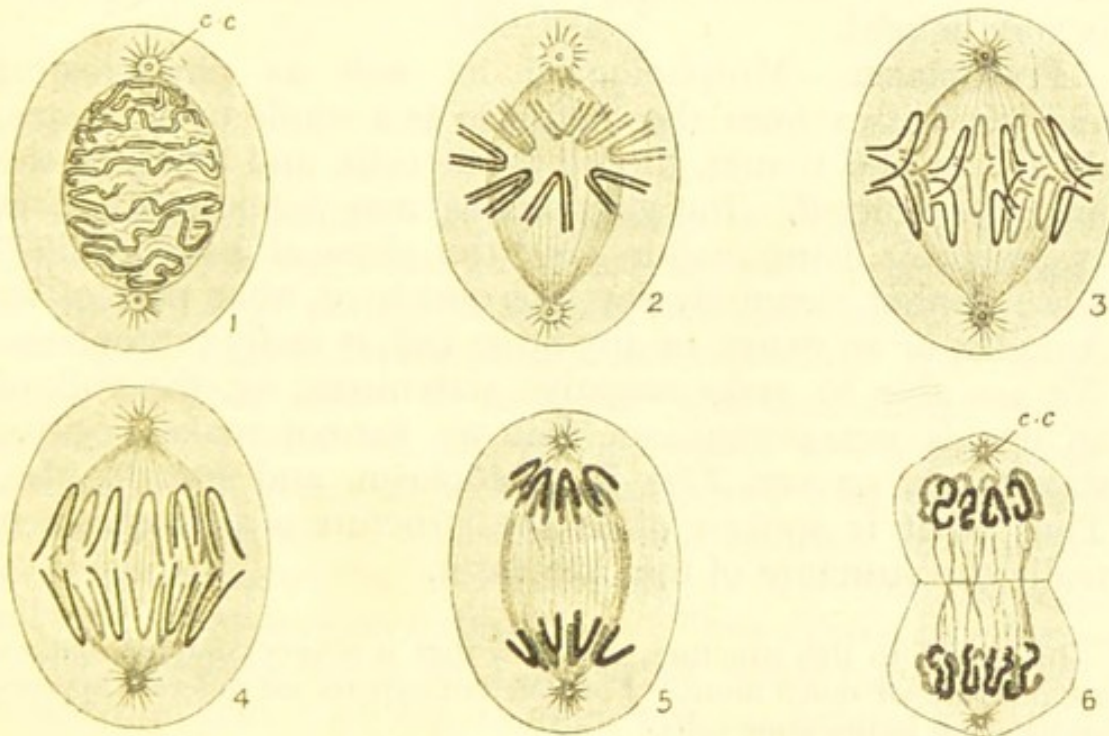


FIG. 22.—Karyokinesis.—After Flemming.

1. Coil stage of nucleus; *c.c.*, central corpuscle.
2. Division of chromatin elements into U-shaped loops, and longitudinal splitting of these (astroid stage).
- 3, 4. Recession of chromatin elements from the equator of the cell (diastroid).
5. Nuclear spindle, with chromatin elements at each pole, and achromatin threads between.
6. Division of the cell completed.

limit of growth? The answer is as follows :—Suppose a young cell has doubled its original mass, that means that there is twice as much living matter to be kept alive. But the living matter is fed, aërated, purified through its surface, which, in growing spherical cells, for instance, only increases as the square of the radius, while the mass increases as the



cube. The surface growth always lags behind the increase of mass. Therefore, when the cell has, let us say, quadrupled its original mass, but by no means quadrupled its surface, difficulties set in, waste begins to gain on repair, anabolism loses some of its ascendancy over katabolism. At the limit of growth the cell divides, halving its mass and gaining new surface. It is true that the surface may be increased by out-flowing processes, just as that of leaves by many lobes ; and division may occur before the limit of growth is reached, but, as a general rationale, applicable to organs and bodies as well as to cells, the suggestion of Leuckart and Spencer is very helpful.

**Protoplasm.**—Morphological as well as physiological analysis passes from the organism as a whole to its organs, thence to the tissues, thence to the cells, and finally to the protoplasm itself. But although we may define protoplasm as genuinely living matter—as “the physical basis of life”—we cannot definitely say how much or what part of an *Amœba*, or an ovum, or any other cell, is really protoplasm. We are able to make negative statements, *e.g.* the yolk of an egg is not protoplasm, but we cannot make positive statements, or say, *This* is protoplasm, and nought else. Thus what is spoken of as the structure of protoplasm is really the structure of the cytoplasm.

In regard to this structure, we know that it is very complex, but we are not sure of much more. For different experts see different appearances, even in the same cells.

Thus some, *e.g.* Frommann, describe a network or reticulum, with less stable material in the meshes ; others, *e.g.* Flemming, describe a manifold coil of fibrils ; and others, *e.g.* Bütschli, describe a foam-like or vacuolar structure. It seems likely that the structure is different at different times, or in different cells.

Professor Bütschli's belief that the cytoplasm has a vacuolar structure is corroborated by his interesting experiments on microscopic foams. Finely powdered potassium carbonate is mixed with olive oil which has been previously heated to a temperature of 50°–60° C., an acid from the oil splits up the potassium carbonate, liberates carbon dioxide, and forms an extremely fine emulsion. Drops of this show a structure like that of cytoplasm, exhibit movements and streamings not unlike those of *Amœbæ*, and are, in short, mimic cells. Just as a working model may help us to understand the circulation, so these oil emulsions may help us to understand the living cell, by bringing the strictly vital phenomena into greater prominence.



## CHAPTER IV.

### THE REPRODUCTION AND LIFE HISTORY OF ANIMALS.

#### I. REPRODUCTION.

IN the higher animals the beginnings of individual life are hidden, within the womb in Mammals, within the egg-shell in Birds. It is natural, therefore, that early preoccupation with those higher forms should have hindered the recognition of what seems to us so evident, that almost every animal arises from an egg cell or ovum which has been fertilised by a male cell or spermatozoon. The exceptions to this fact are those organisms which multiply by buds or detached overgrowths, and those which arise from an egg cell which requires no fertilisation. Thus *Hydra* may form a separable bud, much as a rose-bush sends out a sucker; thus drone-bees "have a mother, but no father," for they arise from parthenogenetic eggs which are not fertilised. Apart from these and similar cases, the "ovum theory," which Agassiz called "the greatest discovery in the natural sciences in modern times," is true—that each organism begins from the division of a fertilised egg cell.

**Sexual reproduction.**—There is apt to be a lack of clearness in regard to sexual reproduction, because the process which we describe by that phrase is a complex result of evolution. It involves two distinct facts—(a) the liberation of special germ cells from which new individuals arise; (b) the occurrence of two different kinds of germ cells, ova and spermatozoa, which come to nothing unless they unite (fertilisation). Furthermore, these dimorphic reproductive cells are produced by two different kinds of individuals



(females and males), or from different organs of one individual, or at different times within the same organ (hermaphroditism).

It is conceivable that organisms might have gone on multiplying asexually, by detaching overgrown portions of themselves which had sufficient vitality to develop into complete forms. But a more economical method is the liberation of special germ cells, in which the qualities of the organism are inherent. This is the primary characteristic of sexual, as opposed to asexual, multiplication.

It is also conceivable that organisms might have remained approximately like one another in constitution, and at all times very nearly the same, and that they might have liberated similar germ cells capable of immediate development. Such a race would have illustrated the one characteristic of sexual reproduction, the liberation of special germ cells; but it would have been without that other characteristic of sexual reproduction—the existence of dimorphic germ cells, of different kinds of sexual organs, or of male and female individuals.

**Liberation of special germ cells.**—One must think of this as an economical improvement on the method of starting a new life by asexual overgrowth or by the liberation of buds. Asexual reproduction, as Spencer and Haeckel point out, is a mode of growth in which the bud, or whatever it is, becomes distinct or discontinuous from the parent. The buds of a sponge, of a coral, of a sea-mat, or of many Tunicates, remain attached to the parent. If there be a keen struggle for subsistence, this may be disadvantageous; but in some cases, doubtless, the colonial life which results is a source of strength. In the case of *Hydra*, however, the buds are set adrift; the same is true of not a few worms. This liberation of buds takes us nearer the sexual process of liberating special germ cells. But unless the organism is in very favourable nutritive conditions, in which overgrowth is natural, the liberation of buds is evidently an expensive way of continuing the life of a species. Not only so, but we can hardly think of budding even as a possibility in very complex organisms, like snails or birds, in which there is much division of labour. Moreover, the peculiarity of true germ cells is that they do not share in building up the



"body," and that they retain an organisation continuous in quality with the original germ cell from which the parent arose; they are thus not very liable to be tainted by the mishaps which may befall the "body" which bears them. And, finally, in the mixture of two units of living matter which have had different histories, the possibility of permutations and combinations, in other words, of *variation*, is evidently supplied. Thus it is not surprising to find that the asexual method of liberating buds has been replaced in most animals by the more economical and advantageous process of sexual reproduction.

## SUMMARY OF MODES OF REPRODUCTION.

### A. *In Single-celled Animals (Protozoa).*

- (1) The almost mechanical rupture of an amœboid cell, which has become too large for physiological equilibrium.
- (2) The discharge of numerous superficial buds at once (*e.g.* *Arcella* and *Pelomyxa*).
- (3) The formation of one bud at a time (very common).
- (4) The ordinary division into two daughter cells at the limit of growth.
- (5) Repeated divisions within limited time and within limited space (a cyst). This results in what is called spore-formation, "free-cell formation," "endogenous multiplication" (*e.g.* in Gregarines).

### B. *In Many-celled Animals (Metazoa).*

#### (Asexual.)

- (a) The separation of a clump of body cells, *e.g.* from the surface of some Sponges. (A crude form of budding.)
- (b) The formation of definite buds which may or may not be liberated; and other forms of asexual multiplication.

#### (Sexual.)

- (a) The liberation of cells from a simple Metazoon, in which there is so little division of labour that the distinction between body cells and reproductive cells is not marked. (Hypothetical.)
- (b) The liberation of special reproductive or germ cells, which have not taken part in the formation of the body, and which retain, more or less unaltered, the inherent qualities of the original germ cell from which the parent arose. These special reproductive cells—the ova and spermatozoa—are normally united in fertilisation, but some animals have (parthenogenetic) ova which develop without being fertilised.



**Evolution of sex.**—A further problem is to account for the two facts—(a) that most animals are either males or females, the former liberating actively motile male elements or spermatozoa, the latter forming and usually liberating more passive egg cells or ova; and (b) that these two different kinds of reproductive cells usually come to nothing unless they combine.

The problem is partly solved by a clear statement of the facts. Begin with those interesting organisms which are on the border line between Protozoa and Metazoa, the colonial Infusorians of which *Volvox* is a type (see p. 94.) The adults are balls of cells, and the component units are connected by protoplasmic bridges. From such a ball of cells reproductive units are sometimes set adrift, and these divide to form other individuals without more ado. In other conditions, however, when nutrition is checked, a less direct mode of reproduction occurs. Some of the cells become large, well-fed elements, or ova; others, less successful, divide into many minute units or spermatozoa. The large cells are fertilised by the small. Here we see the formation of dimorphic reproductive cells in different parts of the same organism. But we may also find *Volvox* balls in which only ova are being made, and others with only spermatozoa. The former seem to be more vegetative and nutritive than the latter; we call them female and male organisms respectively; we are at the foundation of the differences between the two sexes.

All through the animal series, from active Infusorians and passive Gregarines to feverish Birds and more sluggish Reptiles, we read antitheses between activity and passivity, between lavish expenditure of energy and a habit of storing. The ratio between disruptive (*katabolic*) processes and constructive (*anabolic*) processes in the protoplasmic metabolism varies from type to type. We believe that the contrast between the sexes is another expression of this fundamental alternative of variation.

This theory may be confirmed in many ways, *e.g.* by contrasting the characteristic products of female life,—passive ova, with the characteristic products of male life,—active spermatozoa; or by comparing the complex conditions (such as abundant food, favourable temperature) which



favour the production of female offspring, with the opposite conditions which favour the production of males; or by contrasting the secondary sexual characters of the two sexes.

**Stages in the history of fertilisation.**—While it is not difficult to see the advantage of fertilisation as a process which helps to sustain the standard or average of a species and as a source of new variations, we can at present do little more than indicate various forms in which the process occurs.

- (a) *Formation of Plasmodia*, the flowing together of numerous feeble cells, as seen in the life-history of those very simple Protozoa called *Proteomyxa*, *e.g.* *Protomyxa*, and *Mycetozoa*, *e.g.* flowers of tan (*Æthaliium septicum*).
- (b) *Multiple conjugation*, in which more than two cells unite and fuse together, as in some Gregarines and in the sun-animalcule (*Actinosphærium*).
- (c) *Ordinary conjugation*, in which two similar cells fuse together, observed in Gregarines and Rhizopods. In ciliated Infusorians, the conjugation may be merely a temporary union, during which nuclear elements are interchanged.
- (d) *Dimorphic conjugation*, in which two cells different from one another fuse into one, a process well illustrated in *Vorticella* and related Infusorians, where a small, active, free-swimming (we may say, male) cell unites with a fixed individual of normal size, which may fairly be called female (see Fig. 40, p. 93).
- (e) *Fertilisation*, in which a spermatozoon liberated from a Metazoon unites intimately with an ovum liberated from another individual normally of the same species.

**Divergent modes of sexual reproduction.**—(a) *Hermaphroditism* is the combination of male and female sexual functions in varying degrees within one organism. It may be demonstrable in early life only, and disappear as maleness or femaleness predominates in the adult. It may occur as a casualty or as a reversion; or it may be normal in the adult, *e.g.* in some Sponges and Coelentera, in many “worms,” such as earthworm and leech, in barnacles and acorn-shells, in one species of oyster, in the snail, and in many other Bivalves and Gastropods, in Tunicates and in the hag-fish. In most cases, though these animals are bisexual, they produce ova at one period and spermatozoa at another (dichogamy). It rarely occurs (*e.g.* in some parasitic worms) that the ova of a hermaphrodite are fertilised by the sperms of the same animal. Certain facts, such as the occurrence of hermaphrodite organs as a transitory stage in the development of the embryos of many



unisexual animals (e.g. frog and bird), suggest that hermaphroditism is a primitive condition, and that the unisexual condition of permanent maleness or femaleness is a secondary differentiation. Other facts, such as the hermaphroditism of many parasites, where cross-fertilisation would be difficult, suggest that the bisexual condition may have arisen as a secondary adaptation. It seems likely that there is both primitive and secondary hermaphroditism.

(b) *Parthenogenesis*, as we know it, is a degenerate form

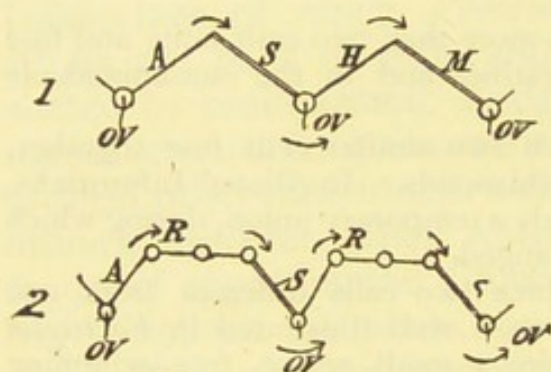


FIG. 23.—Diagrammatic expression of alternation of generations.

1. *Hydromedusæ*.

ov. Fertilised ovum gives rise to an asexual form *A*, which, by budding, produces sexual form or forms *S*; in the case of *Hydromedusæ*, *A* is represented by hydroid (*H*), and *S* by medusoid (*M*).

2. *Liver Fluke*.

ov. Fertilised ovum gives rise to asexual stages (*A*), which, from special spore-like cells (*R*), produce eventually the sexual fluke (*S*).

of sexual reproduction, in which ova produced by female organisms develop without being fertilised by male elements. It is well illustrated by Rotifers, in which fertilisation is the exception (in some genera males have never been found); by many small Crustaceans whose males are absent for a season; by Aphides, from among which males may be absent for the summer (or in artificial conditions for several years) without affecting the rapid succession of female generations; by the production of drones in the bee-hive, from eggs which are never fertilised.

(c) *Alternation of generations*.—A fixed asexual hydroid or zoophyte (campanularian or tubularian) often buds off and liberates sexual medusoids or swimming-bells, whose fertilised ova develop into embryos which become fixed and grow into hydroids (Fig. 67, p. 150). This is the simplest illustration of alternation of generations, which may be defined as the alternate occurrence in one life-cycle of two (or more) different forms differently produced (Fig. 23).

The liver-fluke (*Distomum hepaticum*) of the sheep produces



eggs which, when fertilised, grow into embryos. Within the latter, certain cells (which can hardly be called eggs) grow into numerous other larvæ of a different form. Within these the same process is repeated, and finally the larvæ thus produced grow (in certain conditions) into sexual flukes (Fig. 72, p. 162). In this case, reproduction by special cells, like undifferentiated precocious ova, alternates with reproduction by ordinary fertilised egg cells. So, too, the vegetative sexless "fern-plant" gives rise to special spore cells, which develop into an inconspicuous bisexual "prothallus," from the fertilised egg cell of which a "fern-plant" springs.

Various kinds of alternation are seen in the life-cycle of the fresh-water sponge, in the stages of the jelly-fish *Aurelia*, in the history of some "worms" and Tunicates. They illustrate a rhythm between asexual and sexual multiplication, between parthenogenetic and normal sexual reproduction, between vegetative and animal life, between a relatively "anabolic" and a relatively "katabolic" preponderance.

## II. EMBRYOLOGY.

**Egg cell or ovum.**—Apart from cases of asexual reproduction and parthenogenesis, every multicellular animal begins life as an egg cell with which a male cell or spermatozoon has entered into intimate union.

The most important characteristic of the reproductive cells, whether male or female, is that they retain the essential qualities of the fertilised ovum from which the parent animal was developed.

The ovum has the usual characters of a cell; its substance is traversed by a fine protoplasmic network; its nucleus or germinal vesicle contains the usual chromatin elements; it has often a store reserve of material or yolk, and a distinct sheath representing a cell wall (Fig. 24)

In Sponges the ova are well-nourished cells in the middle stratum of the body; in Coelentera they seem to arise in connection with either outer or inner layer (ectoderm or endoderm); in all other animals they arise in connection with the middle layer or mesoderm, usually on an area of the epithelium lining the body cavity. In lower animals they often arise somewhat diffusely; in higher animals their



formation is restricted to distinct regions, and usually to definite organs—the ovaries.

The young ovum is often amœboid, and that of *Hydra* retains this character for some time (Fig. 58, p. 135). The ovum grows at the expense of adjacent cells, or by absorbing material which is contributed by special yolk glands or supplied by the vascular fluid of the body.

The yolk or nutritive capital may be small in amount, and distributed uniformly in the cell, as in the ova of Mammals, earthworm, starfish, and sponge; or it may be more abundant, sinking towards one pole as in the egg of

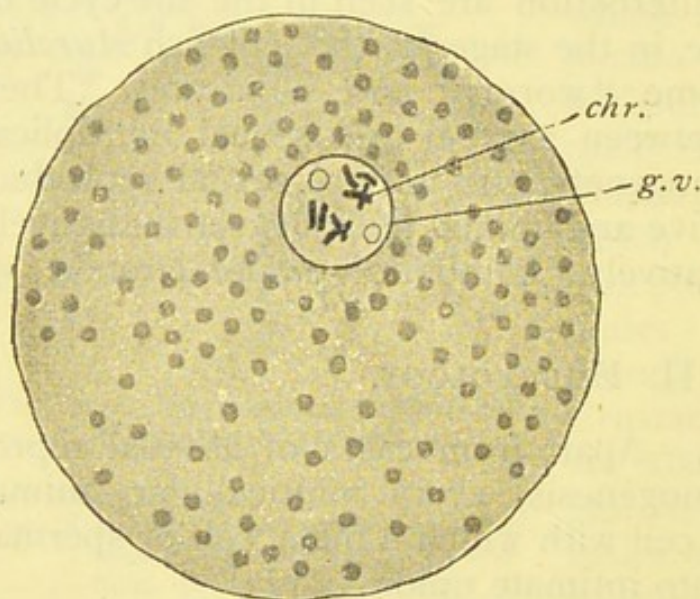


FIG. 24.—Diagram of ovum, showing diffuse yolk granules.

*g.v.*, Germinal vesicle or nucleus; *chr.*, chromatin elements.

the frog, or accumulated in the centre as in the eggs of Insects and Crustaceans; or it may be very copious, dwarfing the formative protoplasm, as in the eggs of Birds, Reptiles, and most Fishes (Fig. 29).

Round the egg there are often sheaths or envelopes of various kinds—(a) made by the ovum itself, and then very delicate (*e.g.* the vitelline membrane); (b) formed by adjacent cells (*e.g.* the follicular envelope); or (c) formed by special glands or glandular cells in the walls of the oviducts (*e.g.* the “shells” of many eggs). The envelope is often firm, as in the chitinous coat around the eggs of many Insects, and in these cases there is often a little aperture (micropyle) through which alone the spermatozoon can enter. The hard calcareous shells round the eggs of Birds and Tortoises, or the mermaid’s purse enclosing the egg of a skate, are of course formed after fertilisation. Egg-shells must be distinguished from egg capsules or cocoons, *e.g.* of the



earthworm, in which several eggs are wrapped up together.

**Male cell or spermatozoon.**—This is a much smaller and usually a much more active cell than the ovum. In its minute size, locomotor energy, and persistent vitality, it resembles a flagellate monad, while the ovum is comparable to an *Amœba* or to one of the more encysted Protozoa.

A spermatozoon has usually three distinct parts: the essential "head," consisting mainly of nucleus, and the mobile "tail," which is often fibrillated, and a small middle portion between head and tail, which is said to be the bearer

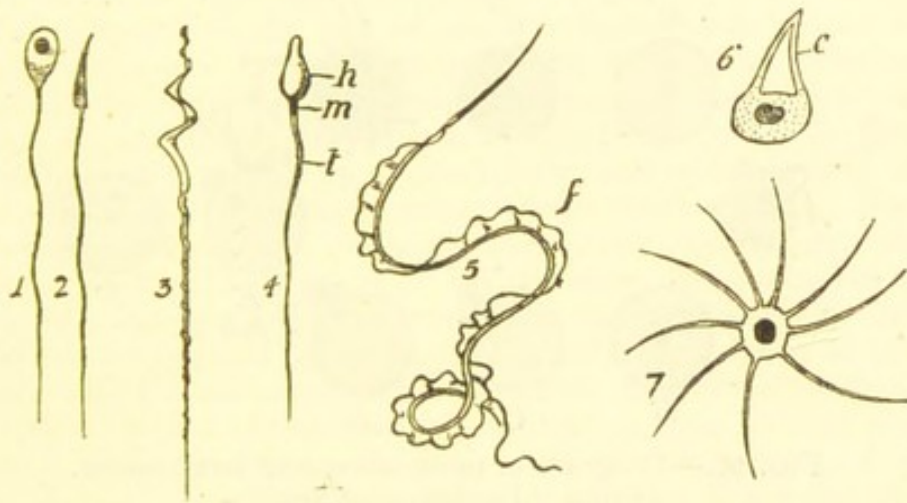


FIG. 25.—Forms of spermatozoa (not drawn to scale).

1 and 2. Immature and mature spermatozoa of snail; 3. of bird; 4. of man (*h.*, head; *m.*, middle portion; *t.*, tail); 5. of salamander, with vibratile fringe (*f.*); 6. of *Ascaris*, slightly amœboid with cap (*c.*); 7. of crayfish.

of the centrosome. The spermatozoa of Thread-worms and Crustaceans are sluggish, and inclined to be amœboid (Fig. 25 (6, 7)).

Both ova and spermatozoa are true cells, and they are complementary, but the spermatozoon has a longer history behind it (Fig. 27). The homologue of the ovum is the mother sperm cell or spermatogonium. This segments much as the ovum does, but the cells into which it divides have little coherence. They go apart, and become spermatozoa. There is a striking resemblance between the different ways in which a mother sperm cell divides and the various kinds of segmentation in a fertilised ovum. In most cases the



spermatogonium divides into spermatocytes, which usually divide again into spermatides or young spermatozoa.

**Maturation of ovum.**—When the egg cell attains its definite size or limit of growth, it bursts from the ovary or from its place of formation, and in favourable conditions meets either within or outside the body with a spermatozoon from another animal. Before the union between ovum and spermatozoon is effected, generally indeed before it has begun, the nucleus or germinal vesicle of the ovum moves to the periphery and divides twice. This division results in the formation and extrusion of two minute cells or polar

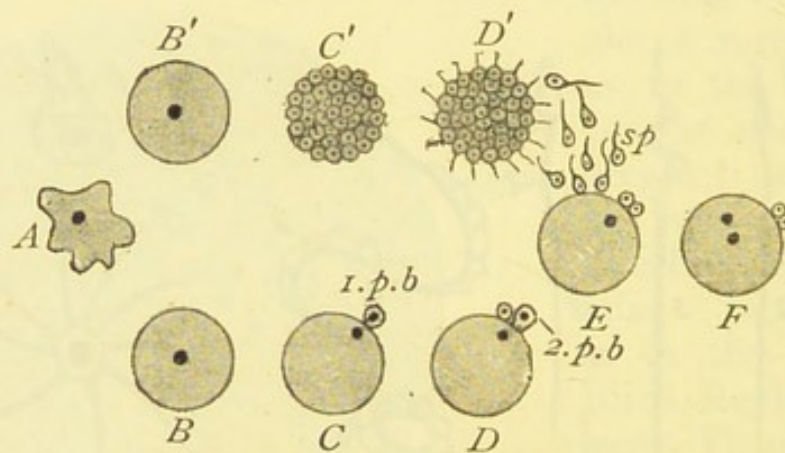


FIG. 26.—Diagram of maturation and fertilisation.  
(From "Evolution of Sex.")

- A. Primitive sex cell, supposed to be amœboid.  
B. Ovum; C. formation of first polar body (1. p.b.); D. formation of second polar body (2. p.b.).  
B'. Mother sperm cell; C'. the same divided (sperm-morula).  
D'. Ball of immature spermatozoa; *sp.*, liberated spermatozoa.  
E. Process of fertilisation; F. approach of male and female nuclei within the ovum.

bodies, the first containing half, the second a quarter of the nuclear material which composed the germinal vesicle. The second division follows the first without the intervention of the "resting stage" which usually succeeds a nuclear division. Moreover, there is this important difference between the formation of polar bodies and ordinary cell division, that the number of nuclear rods or chromosomes suffers reduction, whereas in ordinary karyokinesis the daughter nuclei have as many nuclear rods as the original cell. The extruded polar bodies come to nothing, though they may linger for a time in the precincts of the ovum, and may even divide. The extrusion of polar globules from



mature ova seems to be almost universal; but observations are lacking in regard to Birds and Reptiles. Moreover, Weismann and Ischikawa have shown that in all parthenogenetic ova which they have examined, only one polar body is formed. It is said, however, that in the parthenogenetic eggs which become drones (Blochmann), and in those of a moth called *Liparis* (Platner), two polar bodies are formed. But in neither of these two exceptional cases is the parthenogenesis habitual; thus many of the eggs which the queen-bee lays are fertilised, and give rise to queens and workers.

One of the most important results of recent investigations as to polar bodies is due to O. Hertwig and others. It may be briefly stated with particular reference to the ova of *Ascaris megalocephala*—the thread-worm of the horse. In one variety of this worm (var. *bivalens*) the germinal vesicle of the ovum contains four nuclear rods, chromosomes, or idants. By doubling, these increase to eight (Fig. 27, B); the first polar body goes off with four (Fig. 27, C), and the second with two (Fig. 27, D); leaving two. Two “reducing divisions” have thus occurred. Similarly, the homologue of the ovum, the sperm mother cell, contains four chromosomes in its nucleus (Fig. 27, A'). By doubling, these increase to eight (Fig. 27, B'), and by division the cell forms four spermatozoa, each with two. When fertilisation takes place (Fig. 28), the nucleus of the spermatozoon, with two chromosomes, unites with the reduced nucleus of the ovum, also with two chromosomes; and the number is thus raised to four, the normal number in the body-cells of this variety of *Ascaris megalocephala*. There is thus a striking parallelism in the history of the two nuclei which unite in fertilisation: both have been subjected to reducing divisions. Other cases are not so clear as that of the thread-worm, but a process of “reducing division” seems to be of general occurrence in the maturation of sex cells. If reducing division did not occur, each fertilisation would involve a doubling of the number of chromosomes. Weismann interprets the whole process as an arrangement by which the combinations and permutations of nuclear rods and their vital qualities are increased so as to give rise to new variations.

There are, indeed, other interpretations, and the facts are difficult to understand on any theory. Thus Minot, Balfour, Van Beneden, and others have suggested that the polar bodies are extrusions of male substance from the ovum. Bütschli, Giard, and others interpret the premature division of the ovum as the survival of an ancient habit, and regard the polar bodies as rudimentary or abortive ova.

It may be possible to combine various interpretations: (1) the ovum divides, like any other cell—like the Protozoon ancestors—at its limit of growth; (2) the extrusion does in some way differentiate the ovum, and renders fertilisation possible or more profitable; (3) the peculiar reduction involved in the process makes the origin of new variations more certain.

**Fertilisation.**—In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, some naturalists, nicknamed “ovists,” believed that



the ovum was all-important, only needing the sperm's awakening touch to begin unfolding the miniature model

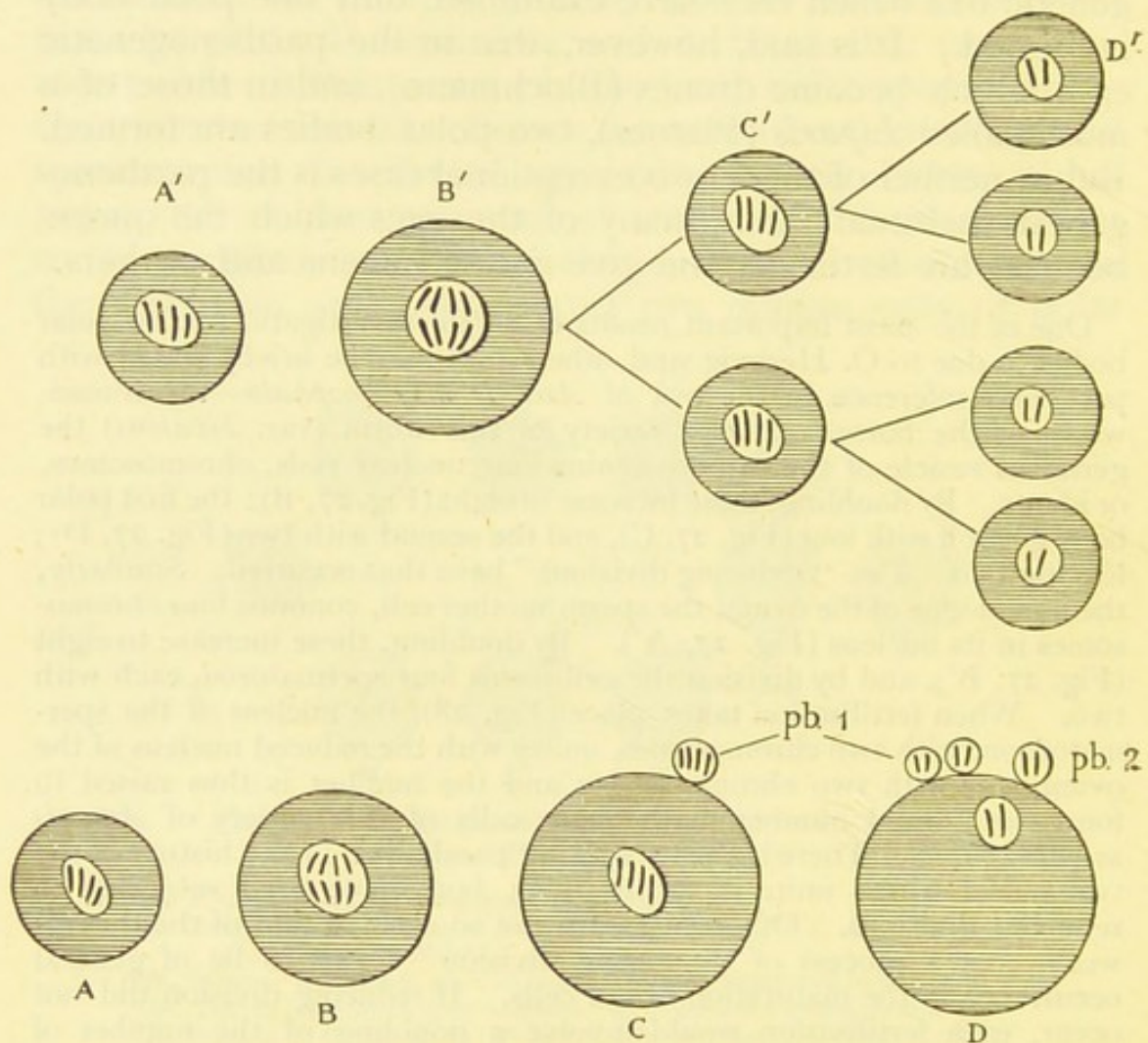


FIG. 27.—Spermatogenesis and polar bodies.—After Hertwig and Weismann.

- A'. Primitive germ cell of *Ascaris megalocephala*, var. *bivalens* (4 chromosomes).
- B'. Sperm mother cell (8 chromosomes).
- C'. Two spermatocytes formed, each with 4 chromosomes (first reducing division).
- D'. Four spermatozoa formed, each with 2 chromosomes (second reducing division).
- A. Primitive germ cell (4 chromosomes).
- B. Fully developed ovum (8 chromosomes).
- C. Formation of first polar body (*pb.1*) (first reducing division).
- D. Formation of second polar body (*pb.2*) (second reducing division). First polar body may divide into two.

which it contained. Others, nicknamed “animalculists,” were equally confident that the sperm was essential, though



it required to be fed by the ovum. Even after it was recognised that both kinds of reproductive elements were essential, many thought that their actual contact was unnecessary, that fertilisation might be effected by an *aura seminalis*. Though spermatozoa were distinctly seen by Hamm and Leeuwenhoek in 1679, their actual union with ova was not observed till 1843, when Martin Barry detected it in the rabbit.

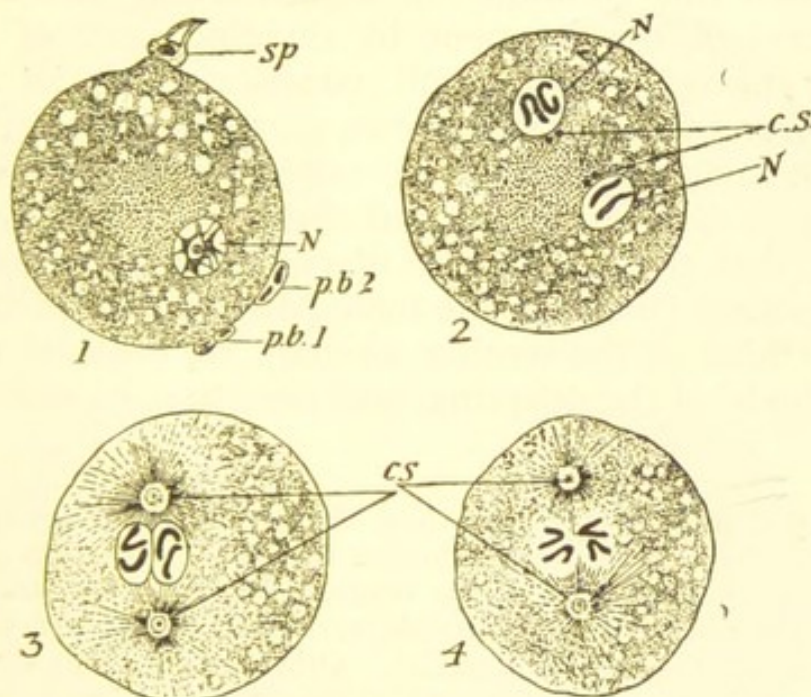


FIG. 28.—Fertilisation in *Ascaris megalocephala*.  
—After Boveri.

1. Spermatozoon (*sp.*) entering ovum, which contains reduced nucleus (*N*), having given off two polar bodies (*p.b.* 1 and 2).
2. Sperm nucleus (the upper), and ovum nucleus (*N*), each with two chromatin elements or idants, and with centrosomes (*c.s.*).
3. Centrosomes (*c.s.*) with "archoplasmic" threads radiating outwards in part to the chromosomes of the two approximated nuclei.
4. Segmentation spindle before first cleavage.

Of the many facts which we now know about fertilisation, the following are the most important:—

(1) Apart from the occurrence of parthenogenesis in a few of the lower animals, an ovum begins to divide only after a spermatozoon has united with it. After one spermatozoon has entered the ovum, the latter ceases to be receptive, and other spermatozoa are excluded. If, as rarely happens, several spermatozoa effect an entrance into the



ovum, the result is usually some abnormality. It is said, however, that the entrance of numerous spermatozoa (polyspermy) is frequent in insects and Elasmobranch fishes.

(2) The union of spermatozoon and ovum is very intimate; the nucleus of the spermatozoon and the reduced nucleus of the ovum approach one another, combining to form a single nucleus.

(3) When this combined or segmentation nucleus begins the process of development by dividing, each of the two daughter nuclei which result consists partly of material derived from the sperm nucleus, partly of material derived from the ovum nucleus. In other words, the union is orderly as well as intimate, and the subsequent division is so exact, that the qualities so marvellously inherent in the sperm nucleus (those of the male parent), and in the ovum nucleus (those of the mother animal), are diffused throughout the body of the offspring, and persist in its reproductive cells.

As to the interpretation of these facts, Weismann maintains the importance of the quantitative addition which the sperm nucleus makes to the diminished nucleus of the ovum. At the same time, he finds an important source of transmissible variations in the mingling of the two nuclear substances (amphimixis). Others believe that the mingling diminishes the risk of unfavourable idiosyncrasies being transmitted from parents to offspring. Others emphasise the idea that the sperm supplies a vital stimulus to the ovum.

**Segmentation.**—The different modes of division exhibited by fertilised egg cells depend in great measure on the quantity and disposition of the passive and nutritive yolk material, which is often called deutoplasm, in contrast to the active and formative protoplasm. The pole of the ovum at which the formative protoplasm lies, and at which the spermatozoon enters, is often called the animal pole; the other, towards which the heavier yolk tends to sink, is called the vegetative pole. In the floating ova of some fish, however, the yolk is uppermost, and the embryonic area lowest.

In contrasting the chief modes of segmentation, it should be recognised that they are all connected by gradations.



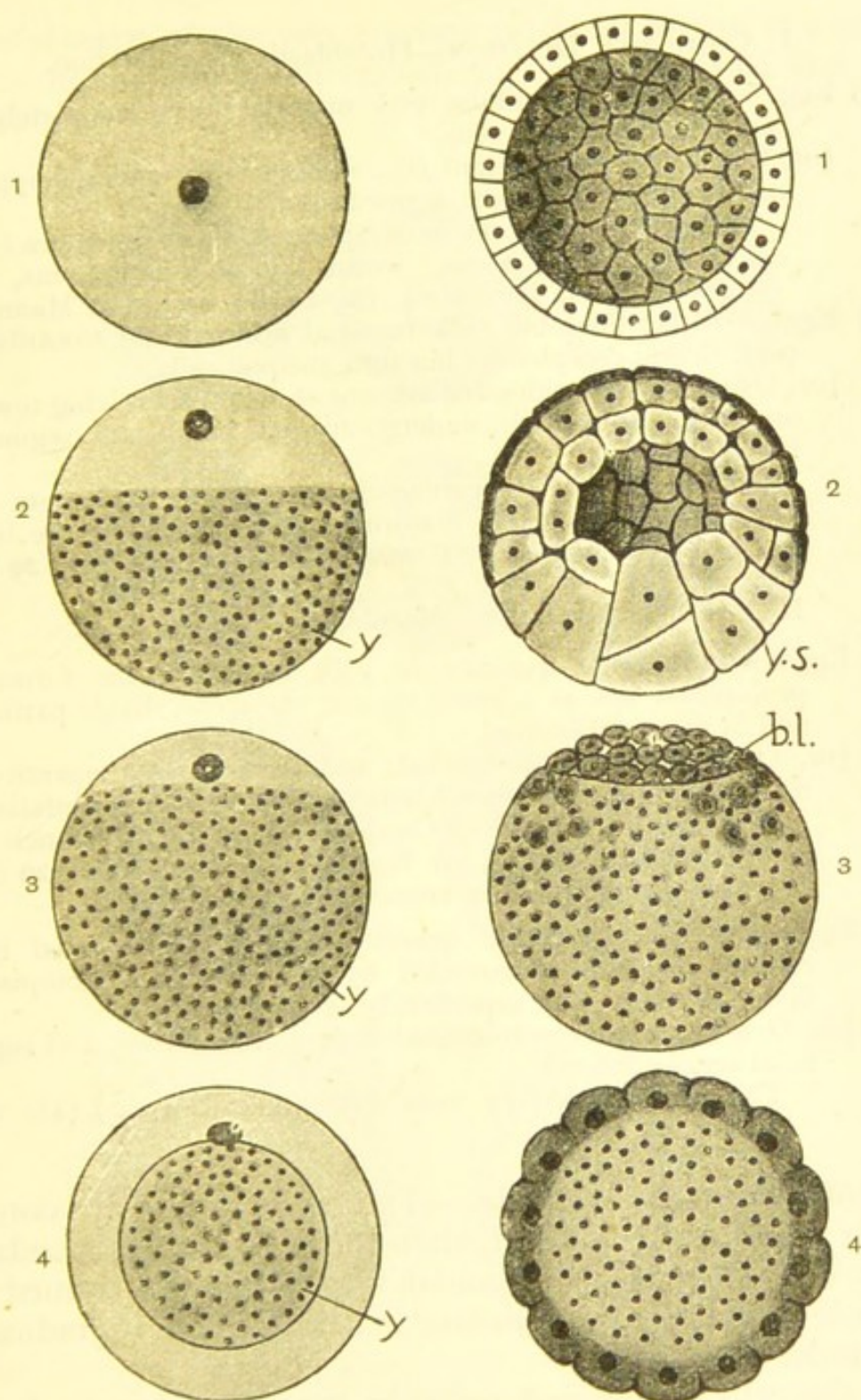


FIG. 29.—Modes of segmentation.

1. Ovum, with little yolk, segments totally and equally into a blastosphere, *e.g.* *Hydra*.
2. Ovum, with considerable yolk (*y.*) at lower pole, segments totally but unequally, *e.g.* frog; (*y.s.*) larger yolk-laden cells.
3. Ovum, with much yolk (*y.*) at lower pole, segments partially and discoidally, forming blastoderm (*bl.*), *e.g.* bird.
4. Ovum, with central yolk (*y.*), segments partially and peripherally, *e.g.* crayfish.



## A. COMPLETE DIVISION—Holoblastic Segmentation.

- (1) Eggs with little and diffuse yolk material divide completely into approximately equal cells,  
 [or, Ova which are alecithal (*i.e.* without yolk) undergo approximately equal holoblastic segmentation].

This is illustrated in most Sponges, most Coelentera (Figs. 29 (1) and 30), some "worms," most Echinoderms, some Molluscs, all Tunicates, *Amphioxus*, and most Mammals.

- (2) Eggs with considerable yolk material accumulated towards one pole, divide completely, but into unequal cells,  
 [or, Ova with a considerable amount of deutoplasm lying towards one pole (telolecithal), undergo unequal holoblastic segmentation].

This is illustrated in some Sponges, some Coelentera (*e.g.* Ctenophora), some "worms," many Molluscs, the lamprey, Ganoid Fishes, *Ceratodus*, Amphibians (Fig. 29 (2)).

## B. PARTIAL DIVISION—Meroblastic Segmentation.

- (3) Eggs with a large quantity of yolk on which the formative protoplasm lies as a small disc at one pole, divide partially, and in discoidal fashion,

[or, Ova which are telolecithal, and have a large quantity of deutoplasm, undergo meroblastic and discoidal segmentation].

This is illustrated in all Cuttle-fishes, all Elasmobranch and Teleostean Fishes, all Reptiles and Birds (Fig. 29 (3)), and also in the Monotremes or lowest Mammals.

- (4) Eggs with a considerable quantity of yolk accumulated in a central core and surrounded by the formative protoplasm, divide partially, and superficially or peripherally,

[or, Ova which are centrolecithal undergo meroblastic and superficial segmentation].

This is illustrated by most Arthropods (Fig. 29 (4)), and by them alone.

**Blastosphere and morula.**—The result of the division is usually a ball of cells. But when the yolk is very abundant (3), a disc of cells—a discoidal blastoderm—is formed at one pole of the mass of nutritive material, which it gradually surrounds.

As the cells divide and redivide, they often leave a large central cavity—the segmentation cavity—and a hollow ball of cells—a blastosphere or blastula—results.

But if the so-called "segmentation cavity" be very small or absent, a solid ball of cells or morula, like the fruit of bramble or mulberry, results.

**Gastrula.**—The next great step in development is the



establishment of the two primary germinal layers, the outer ectoderm and the inner endoderm, or the epiblast and the hypoblast.

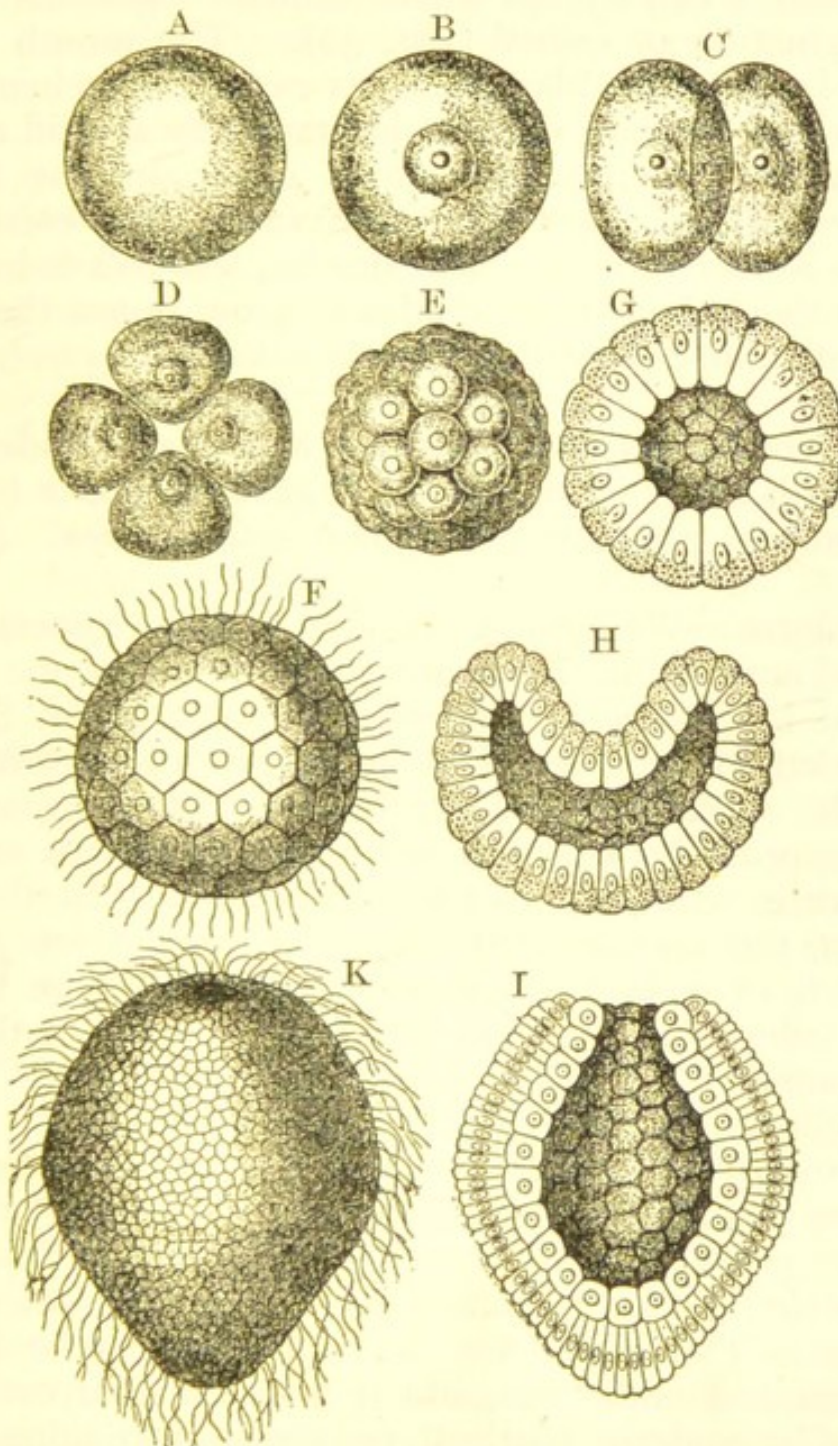


FIG. 30.—Life history of a coral, *Monoxenia Darwinii*.  
—From Haeckel.

A, B, Ovum. C, Division into two. D, Four-cell stage. E, Blastula. F, Free-swimming blastula with cilia. G, Section of blastula. H, Beginning of invagination. I, Section of completed gastrula, showing ectoderm, endoderm, and archenteron. K, Free-swimming ciliated gastrula.



One hemisphere of the hollow ball of cells may be apparently dimpled into the other, as we might dimple an india-rubber ball which had a hole in it. Thus out of a hollow ball of cells, a two-layered sac is formed—a gastrula formed by invagination or *embolé* (Fig. 30). The mouth of the gastrula is called the blastopore, its cavity the archenteron.

But where the ball of cells is practically a solid morula, the apparent in-dimpling cannot occur in the fashion described above. Yet in these cases the two-layered gastrula is still formed. The smaller, less yolk-laden cells, towards the animal pole, gradually grow round the larger yolk-containing cells, and a gastrula is formed by overgrowth or *epibolé*.

In various ways the ectoderm and the endoderm are established, either by some form of gastrulation, or by some other process, such as that called *delamination*. (See p. 148.)

**Mesoderm.**—We are not yet able to make general statements of much value in regard to the origin of the middle germinal layer—the mesoderm or mesoblast. In Sponges and Coelentera it is less distinct than in higher forms, and is usually represented by a gelatinous material (*mesoglæa*) which appears between ectoderm and endoderm, and into which cells wander from these two layers. In the other Metazoa, the middle layer may arise from a few *primary mesoblasts* or cells which appear at an early stage between the ectoderm and endoderm (*e.g.* in the earthworm's development); or from numerous "*mesenchyme*" immigrant cells, which are separated from the walls of the blastula or gastrula (*e.g.* in the development of Echinoderms); or as *cælom pouches*—outgrowths from the endodermic lining of the gastrula cavity (*e.g.* in *Sagitta*, *Balanoglossus*, *Amphioxus*); or by combinations of these and other modes of origin. The mesoderm lies or comes to lie between ectoderm and endoderm, and it lines the bodycavity, one layer of mesoderm (parietal or somatic) clinging to the ectodermic external wall, the other (visceral or splanchnic) cleaving to the endodermic gut and its outgrowths.

**Origin of organs.**—From the outer ectoderm and inner endoderm, those organs arise which are consonant with the position of these two layers, thus nervous system from the



ectoderm, digestive gut from the endoderm. The middle layer, which begins to be developed in "worms," assumes some of the functions, *e.g.* contractility, which in Sponges and Cœlentera are possessed by ectoderm and endoderm, the only two layers distinctly represented in these classes.

In a backboned animal the embryological origin of the organs is as follows:—

- (a) *From the ectoderm or epiblast* arise the epidermis and epidermic outgrowths, the nervous system, the most essential parts of the sense-organs, infoldings at either end of the gut (fore-gut or stomodæum and hind-gut or proctodæum).
- (b) *From the endoderm or hypoblast* arise the mid-gut (mesenteron) and the foundations of its outgrowths (*e.g.* the lungs, liver, allantois, etc., of higher Vertebrates), also the axial rod or notochord. According to some authorities, the blood and the vascular system of Vertebrates are in the main endodermic in origin.
- (c) *From the mesoderm or mesoblast* arise all other structures, *e.g.* dermis, muscles, connective tissue, bony skeleton, the lining of the body cavity, and perhaps the vascular system. This layer aids in the formation of organs originated by the other two. With it the reproductive organs are associated.

*Physiological embryology.*—Of the physiological conditions of development we know relatively little. To investigate them is one of the tasks of the future. Why does an egg cell form polar bodies, how is the sperm attracted to the ovum, why does the fertilised egg cell divide, how does the yolk affect segmentation, what are the conditions of the infolding which forms the endoderm, and of the outfolding which makes the cœlom pouches, and what do the numerous larval stages mean?

**Generalisations.**—(1) *The ovum theory or cell theory.*—All many-celled animals, produced by sexual reproduction, begin at the beginning again. "The Metazoa begin where the Protozoa leave off"—as single cells. Fertilisation does not make the egg cell double; there is only a more complex and more vital nucleus than before. All development takes place by the division of this fertilised egg cell and its descendent cells.



(2) *The gastræa theory*.—As a two-layered gastrula stage occurs, though sometimes disguised by the presence of much yolk, in the development of the majority of animals, Haeckel concluded that it represents the individual's recapitulation of an ancestral stage. He suggested that the simplest stable, many-celled animal was like a gastrula, and this hypothetical ancestor of all Metazoa he called a *gastræa*. The gastrula is, on this view, the individual animal's recapitulation of the ancestral gastræa. Rival suggestions have been made: perhaps the original Metazoa were balls of cells like *Volvox* (Fig. 41), with a central cavity in which reproductive cells lay; perhaps they were like the *planula* larvæ

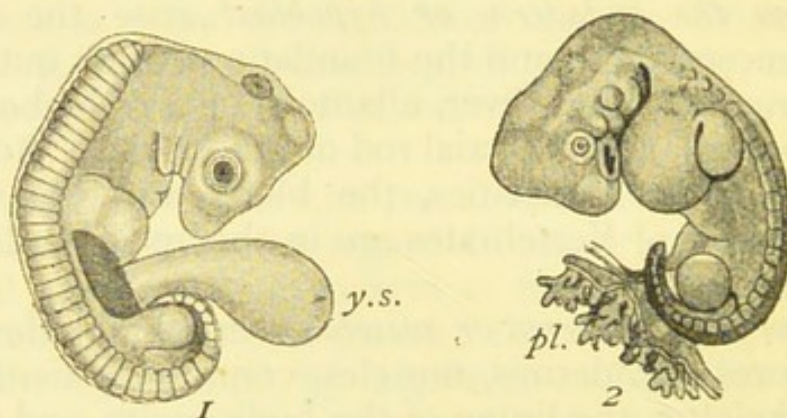


FIG. 31.—Embryos—(1) of bird; (2) of man.—After His.  
The latter about twenty-seven days old.

y.s., Yolk-sac; pl., placenta.

of some Cœlentera—two-layered, externally ciliated, oval forms without a mouth.

(3) *The fact of recapitulation*.—It is a matter of experience that we recapitulate in some measure the history of our ancestors. Embryologists have made this fact most vivid, by showing that the individual animal develops along a path the stations of which correspond to some extent with the steps of ancestral history.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) The simplest animals are single cells (Protozoa).                     | (1) The first stage of development is a single cell (fertilised ovum). |
| (2) The next simplest are balls of cells (e.g. <i>Volvox</i> ).           | (2) The next is a ball of cells (blastula or morula).                  |
| (3) The next simplest are two-layered sacs of cells (e.g. <i>Hydra</i> ). | (3) The next is a two-layered sac of cells (gastrula).                 |



Von Baer, one of the pioneer embryologists, acknowledged that, with several very young embryos of higher Vertebrates before him, he could not tell one from the other. Progress in development, he said, was from a general to a special type. In its earliest stage every organism has a great number of characters in common with other organisms in their earliest stages; at each successive stage the series of embryos which it resembles is narrowed. The rabbit begins like a Protozoon as a single cell; after a while it may be compared to the young stage of a very simple vertebrate; afterwards, to the young stage of a reptile; afterwards, to the young stage of almost any mammal; afterwards, to the young stage of almost any rodent; eventually it becomes unmistakably a young rabbit.

Herbert Spencer expressed the same idea, by saying that the progress of development was from homogeneous to heterogeneous, through steps in which the individual history was parallel to that of the race. But Haeckel has illustrated the idea more vividly, and summed it up more tersely, than any other naturalist. His "fundamental biogenetic law" reads: "Ontogeny, or the development of the individual, is a shortened recapitulation of phylogeny, or the evolution of the race."

It is hardly necessary to say that the young mammal is never like a worm, or a fish, or a reptile. It is at most like the *embryonic* stages of these, and it may also be noticed that, as our knowledge is becoming more intimate, the individual peculiarities of different embryos are becoming more evident. Thus Professor Sedgwick has recently said that a blind man could distinguish the early stages of Elasmobranch and Bird embryos. But this need not lead us to deny the *general* resemblance.

Moreover, the individual life history is much shortened compared with that of the race. Not merely does the one take place in days, while the other has progressed through ages, but stages are often skipped, and short cuts are discovered. And again, many young animals, especially those "larvæ" which are very unlike their parents, often exhibit characters which are secondary adaptations to modes of life of which their ancestors had probably no experience. In



short, the individual's recapitulation of racial history is general, but not precise.

But we do not understand how the recapitulation is sustained. Has the protoplasm of the embryo some unconscious memory of the past? Have the protoplasmic molecules, as Haeckel puts it, learned long since some rhythmic dance which they cannot forget? And, to what extent must there be similarity of external conditions if the recapitulation, "the perigenesis of the plastidules," is to be sustained?

(4) *Organic continuity between generations.—Heredity.*—Everyone knows that like tends to beget like, that offspring resemble their parents, and sometimes their ancestors (atavism). Not only are the general characteristics transmitted, but minute features, idiosyncrasies, pathological conditions, innate or congenital in the parents, may be transmitted to the offspring.

Many attempts have been made to explain this, but the first suggestion with any scientific pretensions was that the reproductive cells, which may become offspring, consist of samples accumulated from the different parts of the body.

This was a very old idea, but Herbert Spencer and Charles Darwin gave it new life. According to Darwin's "provisional hypothesis of pangenesis," the reproductive cells accumulate gemmules liberated from all parts of the body. In development these gemmules help to give rise to parts like those from which they originated. This hypothesis has been repeatedly modified, but except in the general sense that the body *may* influence its reproductive cells, "pangenesis" is discredited by most biologists.

The idea which is now accepted with general favour is, that the reproductive cells which give rise to the offspring are more or less directly continuous with those which gave rise to the parent. This idea, suggested by Owen, Haeckel, Rauber, Galton, Jäger, Brooks, Nussbaum, and especially emphasised by Weismann, is fundamentally important.

At an early stage in the development of the embryo the future reproductive cells of the organism are distinguishable from those which are forming the body. These, the somatic cells, develop in manifold variety, and, as division of labour is established, they lose their likeness to the fertilised ovum of which they are the descendants. The future reproductive cells, on the other hand, are not implicated in the formation



of the "body," but, remaining virtually unchanged, continue the protoplasmic tradition unaltered, and are thus able to start an offspring which will resemble the parent, because it is made of the same protoplasmic material, and develops under similar conditions.

A fertilised egg cell with certain characters ( $a, b, c$ ), develops into an organism in which these characters are variously expressed; but if, at an early stage, certain cells are set apart, retaining the characters  $a, b, c$ , in all their entirety, then each of these cells will be on the same footing as the original fertilised egg cell, able to give rise to an organism, almost necessarily to a similar organism.

An *early* isolation of reproductive cells, directly continuous and therefore presumably identical with the original ovum, has been observed in the development of some "worm types"—(*Sagitta*, Thread-worms, Leeches, Polyzoa), and of some Arthropods (*e.g.* *Moina* among Crustaceans, *Chironomus* among Insects, Phalangidæ among Spiders), in *Micrometrus aggregatus* among Teleostean fishes, and with less distinctness in some other animals.

In many cases, however, the reproductive cells are not recognisable until a relatively late stage in development, after differentiation has made considerable progress. Weismann gets over this difficulty by supposing that the continuity is sustained by a specific nuclear substance—the germ-plasm—which remains unaltered in spite of the differentiation in the body. But it is perhaps enough to say that, as all the cells are descendants of the fertilised ovum, the reproductive cells are those which retain intact the qualities of that fertilised ovum, and that this is the reason why they are able to develop into offspring like the parent.

Finally, it may be noticed in connection with heredity, that there is great doubt to what extent the "body" can definitely influence its own reproductive cells. Animals acquire individual bodily peculiarities in the course of their life, as the result of what they do or refrain from doing, or as dints from external forces. The "body" is thus changed, but there is much doubt whether the reproductive cells within the "body" are affected by such changes. Weismann denies the transmissibility of any characters except



those inherent or congenital in the fertilised egg cell, and therefore denies that the influences of function and environment are, or have been, of direct importance in the evolution of many-celled animals. Such influences affect the *body*, but do not reach its reproductive cells, and are therefore non-transmissible. Many of the most authoritative biologists are at present of this opinion. On the other hand, many still maintain that profound changes due to function or environment may saturate through the organism, and affect the reproductive cells in such a way that the changes or modifications in question are in some measure transmitted to the next generation. The question remains under discussion.



## CHAPTER V.

### PAST HISTORY OF ANIMALS.

#### PALÆONTOLOGY.

IN the two preceding chapters we have noticed two of the great records of the history of animal life,—that preserved in observable structures, and the modified recapitulation discernible in individual development; in this we turn to the third—the geological record. From Morphology many conclusions as to the course of evolution have been drawn; the study of form must indeed, by itself, in time have led to the doctrine of evolution,—that the present is the child of the past. In the early days of the Evolution theory the modern science of Embryology was still in its infancy, and could furnish few arguments, and it was the opponents of the new theory rather than its supporters who appealed to Palæontology. They asserted that the palæontological facts refused to lend the support which the theory demanded. To their attacks the evolutionists then chiefly sought to reply by pointing out that the geological record was very incomplete. The numerous investigations which have since been carried on on all sides now show conclusively that it was imperfection rather of knowledge than of the record which produced the negative results. We must, however, still acknowledge that, except in a relatively few cases, little is known of the ancestors of living animals, and seek for reasons to explain this.

**“Imperfection of the geological record.”**—If we remember the rule of modern Geology, that the past is to be interpreted by the aid of the present, there can be no difficulty in realising that the chances against the preserva-



tion of any given animal are very great. Many are destroyed by other living creatures, or obliterated by chemical agencies. Except in rare instances, only hard parts, such as bones, teeth, and shells, are likely to be preserved, and this at once greatly limits the evidential value of fossils. The primitive forms of life would almost certainly be without hard parts, and have left no trace behind them. A number of extremely interesting forms, such as many worms and the Ascidians, are, for the same reason, almost unrepresented in the rocks. Finally, we cannot suppose that such an external structure as a shell can always be an exact index of the animal within. Some shells, such as *Nautilus* and some of the Brachiopods, occur as fossils from remote Palæozoic ages onward, but it is impossible to believe that the animal within has never varied during this period, though we cannot now learn either the nature or the amount of the variation.

After fossilisation has taken place, the rock with its contents may be entirely destroyed by subsequent denudation, or so altered by metamorphic changes that all trace of organic life disappears. Of those fossils which have been preserved only a small percentage are available, for vast areas of fossiliferous rocks are covered over by later deposits, or now lie below the sea or in areas which have not yet been explored.

With all these causes operating against the likelihood of preservation, and of finding those forms that may have been preserved, it is little wonder if the geological record is incomplete; but such as it is, it is in general agreement with what the other evidence, theoretical and actual, leads us to expect as to the relative age of the great types of animal life. Further, those specially favourable cases which have been completely worked out have yielded results which strongly support the general theory.

**Probabilities of "fossils."**—But it will be useful to note the probabilities of a good representation of extinct forms in the various classes of animals. Thus among the Protozoa the Infusoria have no very hard parts, and have therefore almost no chance of preservation, and the same may be said of forms like Amœbæ; while the Foraminifera and the Radiolaria, having hard structures of lime or silica, have been well preserved. The Sponges are well represented by their spicules and skeletons. Of the Cœlentera, except an extinct order known as



Graptolites, only the various forms of coral had any parts readily capable of preservation, and remains of these are very abundant in the rocks of many ancient seas. But, strange as it may seem, some beautiful vestiges of jelly-fish have been discovered.

Of the great series of "worms," only the tube-makers have left actual remains; the others are known only by their tracks, while of any that may have lived on the land there is no evidence.

The Echinoderms, because of their hard parts, are well represented in all their orders, except the Holothurians, where the calcareous structures characteristic of the class are at a minimum.

The Crustacea, being mostly aquatic, and in virtue of their hard shells, are fossilised in great numbers.

The Arachnida and the Insects, owing to their air-breathing habit, are chiefly represented by chance individuals that have been drowned, or enclosed within tree-stumps and amber.

The Molluscs and Brachiopods are perhaps better preserved than any other animals, since nearly all of them are possessed of a shell specially suitable for preservation.

Among the Vertebrates some of the lowest are without scales, teeth, or bony skeleton; such forms have therefore left almost no traces.

Fishes, which are usually furnished with a firm outer covering, or with a bony internal skeleton, or with both, are well represented.

The primitive Amphibians were furnished with an exoskeleton of bony plates, and are fairly numerous as fossils. The bones and teeth of the others have been fossilised, though more rarely. Of some the only record is their footprints.

The traces of Reptilia depend upon the habits of the various orders, those living in water being oftenest preserved, but the strange flying Reptiles have also left many skeletons behind them.

Of the Birds, the wingless ones are best represented, and then those that lived near seas, estuaries, or lakes.

The history of Mammals is very imperfect, for most of them were terrestrial. But the discoveries of Marsh, Cope, and others show how much may be found by careful search. The aquatic Mammals are fairly well preserved.

**"Palæontological series."**—In spite of the imperfection of the "geological record," in spite of the conditions unfavourable to the preservation of many kinds of animals, it is sometimes possible to trace a whole series of extinct forms through progressive changes. Thus a series of fossilised fresh-water snails (*Planorbis*) has been worked out; the extremes are very different, but the intermediate forms link them indissolubly by a marvellously gradual series of transitions. The same fact is well illustrated by another series of fresh-water snails (*Paludina*, Fig. 32), and not less strikingly among those extinct Cuttle-fishes which are known as Ammonites, and have perfectly preserved shells. Similarly,



though less perfectly, the modern crocodiles are linked by many intermediate forms to their extinct ancestors, for it is impossible not to call them by that name, and the modern horse to its entirely different progenitors. In short, as knowledge increases, the evidence from Palæontology becomes more and more complete.

In a general way it is true that the simpler animals precede the more complex in history as they do in structural rank, but the fact that all the great Invertebrate groups are represented in the oldest distinctly stratified and fossiliferous rocks—the Cambrian system—shows that this correspondence is only roughly true. To account for this, we must

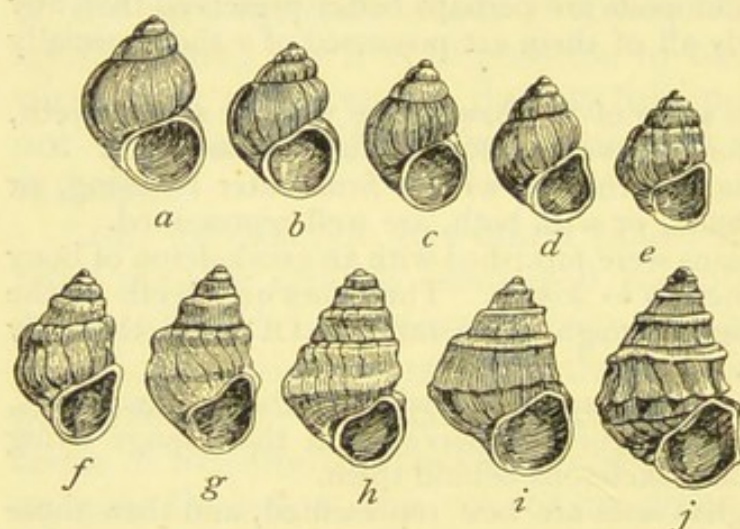


FIG. 32.—Gradual transitions between *Paludina Neumayri* (a) and *Paludina Hærnesi* (j).—From Neumayr.

remember that the whole mass of the oldest rocks, known as Archæan or Pre-Cambrian, have been so profoundly altered, that, as a rule, only masses of marble and carbonaceous material are left to indicate that forms of life existed when these rocks were laid

down. What these early forms of life were it seems impossible for us to find out, although recent discoveries, for instance, of “annelid tracks” in rocks of possible Pre-Cambrian age in N.-W. Scotland, suggest that patient investigation may yet do much towards the solving of the problem.

**Extinction of types.**—Some animals, such as some of the lamp-shells or Brachiopods, have persisted from almost the oldest ages till now, and most fossilised animals have modern representatives which we believe to be their actual descendants. That a species should disappear need not surprise us, if we believe in the “transformation” of one species into another. The disappearance is more apparent



than real: the species lives on in its modified descendants, "different species" though they be.

But, on the other hand, there are not a few fossil animals which have become wholly extinct, having apparently left no direct descendants. Such are the ancient Trilobites (perhaps remotely connected with our king-crab), their allies the Eurypterids, two classes of Echinoderms (Cystoids and Blastoids), many giant Reptiles, and some Mammals.

It is almost certain that there has been no sudden extinction of any animal type. There is no evidence of universal cataclysm, though local floods, earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions occurred in the past, as they do still, with disastrous results to fauna and flora. In many cases the waning away of an order, or even of a class of animals, may be associated with the appearance of some formidable new competitors; thus cuttle-fish would tend to exterminate Trilobites, just as man is rapidly and often inexcusably annihilating many kinds of beasts and birds. Apart from the struggle with competitors, it is conceivable that some stereotyped animals were unable to accommodate themselves to changes in their surroundings, and also that some fell victims to their own constitutions, becoming too large, too sluggish, too calcareous,—in short, too extreme.

*Appearance of animals in time.*—Such tables as those given here are apt to be misleading, in that they convey the impression that the great types of structure have appeared suddenly. It must be noted that any apparent abruptness is merely due to incompleteness of knowledge or inaccuracy of expression. The table is a mere list of a few important historical events, but one must fully realise that they are not isolated facts, that the present lay hidden in the past and has gradually grown out of it. Of the relative length of the periods represented here we know almost nothing, and we are also ignorant of the earliest ages in which life began. But the general result is clear. We find that in the Cambrian rocks, before Fishes appeared, the great Invertebrate classes were represented, though as yet but feebly. As we pass upwards they increase in number and in differentiation. Again, Fishes precede Amphibians, Amphibians are historically older than Reptiles, and many types of Reptiles are much older than Birds. In short, in the course of the ages life has been slowly creeping upwards.

[TABLES.







		Cœlentera.		Echinoderma.		Arthro- poda.		Cephalopoda.	
Tertiary or Cainozoic.	Quaternary or Post-Tertiary.								
	Pliocene.								
	Miocene.								
	Eocene.								<i>Sepia</i> and recent forms.
Secondary or Mesozoic.	Cretaceous.								
	Jurassic.			Crinoids.	Asteroids.	Ophiuroids.	Limulus.	Leptostraca.	Ammonites.
	Triassic.								Belemnites.
	Permian.							Nautiloidea.	
Primary or Paleozoic.	Carboniferous.		Corals.	Blastoids.					
	Devonian or Old Red Sandstone.								
	Silurian.		Cystoids.			Trilobites.	Eurypterids.		
	Ordovician.	Graptolites.							
	Cambrian.								
	Pre-Cambrian or Archæan.								



## CHAPTER VI.

### THE DOCTRINE OF DESCENT.

WHEN we ask, as we are bound to ask, how the living plants and animals that we know have come to be what they are—very numerous, very diverse, very beautiful, marvellous in their adaptations, harmonious in their parts and qualities, and approximately stable from generation to generation—we may possibly receive three answers. According to one, the plants and animals that we know have always been as they are ; but this is at once contradicted by the record in the rocks, which contain the remains of successive sets of plants and animals very different from those which now live upon the earth. According to another, each successive fauna and flora was destroyed by mundane cataclysms, to be replaced in due season by new creations, by new forms of life which arose after a fashion of which the human mind can form no conception. Of such cataclysms there is no evidence, and if it be enough to postulate one creation, we need not assume a dozen. The third answer is, that the present is the child of the past in all things : that the plants and animals now existing arose by a natural evolution from simpler pre-existing forms of life, these from still simpler, and so on back to a simplicity of life such as that now represented by the very lowest organisms.

This third theory is really an old one ; it is merely man's application of his idea of human history to the world around him. It was maintained with much concreteness and power by Buffon (1749), by Erasmus Darwin (1794), and by Lamarck (1801). Yet in spite of the labours of these thoughtful naturalists and of many others, the general idea of the natural descent of organisms from simpler ancestors was not received with favour until Darwin, in his "Origin



of Species" (1859), made it current intellectual coin. By his work and by that of Spencer, Wallace, Haeckel, and many others, the doctrine of descent, the general fact of evolution, has been established, and is now all but universally recognised.

The chief arguments which Darwin and others have elaborated in support of the doctrine of descent, according to which organisms have been naturally evolved from simpler forms of life, may be ranked under three heads—(a) structural, (b) physiological, (c) historical.

**Evidences of evolution.**—(a) *Structural*.—Some say that there are over a million living animals of different species. In any case, there are many myriads. These species are linked together by varieties which make strict severance often impossible (Fig. 32); they can be rationally arranged in genera, orders, families, and classes, between which there are not a few remarkable connecting links; there is a gradual increase of complexity from the Protozoa upwards along various lines of organisation; it is possible to rank them all on a hypothetical genealogical tree (Fig. 18). A little practical experience makes one feel that the facts of classification favour the idea of common descent.

Throughout vast series of animals we find in different guise essentially the same parts twisted into most diverse forms for different uses, but yet referable to the same fundamental type. It is difficult to understand this "adherence to type," this "homology" of organs, except on the theory of natural relationship.

There are many rudimentary organs in animals, especially in the higher animals, which remain very slightly developed, and which often disappear without having served any apparent purpose. Such are the "gill-slits" or "visceral-clefts" in Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals, the teeth of young whalebone whales, the pineal body (a rudimentary eye) in Vertebrates. Only on the theory that they are vestiges of structures which were of use in ancestors are these rudiments intelligible. They are relics of past history, comparable, as Darwin said, to the unpronounced letters in many words.

(b) *Physiological*.—Observation shows that animals are to some extent plastic. In natural conditions they vary in



the course of several generations, or even in a lifetime. This is especially the case if one section of a species be in any way isolated from the rest, or if the animals be subjected in the course of their wanderings to novel conditions of life. Even apart from markedly changed circumstances, moreover, animals exhibit variations from generation to generation.

The evidence from domesticated animals is very convincing. By careful interbreeding of varieties which pleased his fancy or suited his purpose, man has produced numerous breeds of horses, cattle, sheep, and dogs, which are often distinguished from one another by structural differences more profound than those which separate two natural species. In great measure, however, domestic breeds are fertile with one another, while different species rarely are. The numerous and very diverse breeds of domestic pigeons, which are all derived from the rock-dove (*Columba livia*), vividly illustrate the plasticity or variability of organisms.

It sometimes happens that the offspring of an animal resemble not so much the parent as some other form believed or known to be ancestral. Thus a blue pigeon like the ancestral *Columba livia* may be hatched in the dovecot, a foal may appear with zebra-like stripes, and in times of famine children may be born who are in some ways ape-like. Such atavisms or reversions are not readily intelligible except on the theory of descent.

(c) *Historical*.—Among the extinct animals disinterred from the rocks, many form series by which those now existing can be linked back to simpler ancestors. Thus the ancient history of horses, crocodiles, and cuttle-fish is known with a degree of completeness which makes it almost certain that the simpler extinct forms were in reality the ancestors of those which now live. Moreover, that many connecting links have been discovered in the rocks, and that the higher animals appear gradually in successive periods of the earth's history, are strong corroborations of the theory.

It is less easy to state in a few words how the facts of geographical distribution, or the history of the diffusion of animals from centres where the presumed ancestral forms are or were most at home, favour the doctrine of descent.



The individual life history of an animal—often strangely circuitous or indirect—is interpretable as a modified recapitulation of the probable history of the race. The embryo mammal is at one stage somewhat like an embryonic fish, at another like an embryonic reptile; even in details the recapitulation, if such we may term it, is sometimes faithful.

Such, in merest outline, is the nature of the evidence which leads us to conclude that the various forms of life have descended or have been evolved from simpler ancestors, and these from still simpler, and so on, back to the mist of life's beginnings. None of the evidence is logically demonstrative; we accept the evolution idea because it is a plausible interpretation which is applicable to many orders of facts, and is contradicted by none.

In accepting the evolutionist interpretation naturalists are unanimous; but in regard to the manner in which the modification of species or the general ascent of life has been brought about, there is much difference of opinion. The fact of evolution is admitted; debate goes on with regard to the factors (see Chapter XXIX.).



## CHAPTER VII.

### PROTOZOA—THE SIMPLEST ANIMALS.

CHIEF CLASSES—(1) RHIZOPODS ; (2) SPOROZOA ;  
(3) INFUSORIA.

THE Protozoa are the simplest animals, and they are of peculiar interest on this account. They throw light upon the beginnings of organic structure and vital activity, and they give us hints as to the nature of the first forms of life, of which we can know nothing directly. Almost all the Protozoa are single cells, unit masses of living matter ; and in virtue of their simplicity, they are in some measure exempt from natural death, which is "the price paid for a body." In their variety they exhibit, as it were, a natural analysis of the higher animals, which are built up of many diverse cells.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The Protozoa, the simplest and most primitive animals, are usually very small single cells. Most of them feed on small plants or on other Protozoa, or on debris, and not a few are parasitic. Most of them live in water, but many can endure dryness for some time. In one set (Rhizopods) the living matter is without any rind, and flows out in more or less changeful threads and lobes, by the movements of which the animals engulf their food and glide along. The others have a definite rind, which in a large number (Infusorians) bears motile cilia or flagella, but in the others (Sporozoa) is without any obvious locomotor structures. But these three phases may occur in the life of one form ; in fact, each of the*



three great classes is marked by the predominant, and not by the exclusive occurrence of the Rhizopod-like, or the Infusorian-like, or the Sporozoon-like phase of cell life. Many have a skeletal framework of lime, flint, or other material, while within the cell there is a special kernel or nucleus, or there may be several. There are also other less constant structures. A Protozoon multiplies by dividing into two daughter units, or into a large number; and two individuals often unite, temporarily or permanently, in conjugation, which is analogous to the union of ovum and spermatozoon in higher animals. A few types, instead of remaining single cells, form by division or budding loose colonies, taking a step, as it were, towards the Metazoa.

#### *First Type of Protozoa—AMÆBA.*

*Amæba*, a type of Rhizopods, especially of those in which the outflowing processes of living matter (*pseudopodia*) are blunt and finger-like (*Lobosa*).

**Description.**—*Amæba proteus* and some other species are found in the mud of ponds; *A. terricola* occurs in damp earth. Some are just large enough to be seen with the unaided eye. The diameter is often about one-hundredth of an inch. Each is like a little sac of jelly, and glides over the surface of stone and plant by protruding and retracting the pseudopodia. As they move the shape constantly changes, whence the old (1755) name of "Proteus animalcule." Round the margin, which may show an apparent radial striation, the cell-substance is firmer and clearer than it is in the interior, where it is more fluid, but contains very abundant granules, some of which are of a proteid, and others of a fatty nature. According to Professor Ray Lankester, the formation of pseudopodia is due to the outflowing of the central fluid substance at places where the outer pellicle has been temporarily ruptured. In the centre of the cell lies the usually single nucleus, but *Amæba princeps* has numerous nuclei. The food consists of minute Algæ, such as diatoms, or of vegetable débris. It is surrounded by the finger-like processes, and engulfed along with drops of water, which form food vacuoles in the cell-substance. After the digestible



parts of the food have been absorbed, the undigested residue is got rid of at any point of the protoplasm. One or more contractile vacuoles are visible in the cell-substance. They have an excretory function, and serve to get rid of the finer waste products.

**Life history.**—In favourable nutritive conditions the *Amœba* grows. At the limit of growth it reproduces by dividing into two. In disadvantageous conditions, such as drought, it may become globular, and, secreting a cell-wall or cyst, lie dormant for a time. The cyst-wall is said to be chitinoid. With the return of favourable conditions the *Amœba* revives, and, bursting from the cyst with renewed

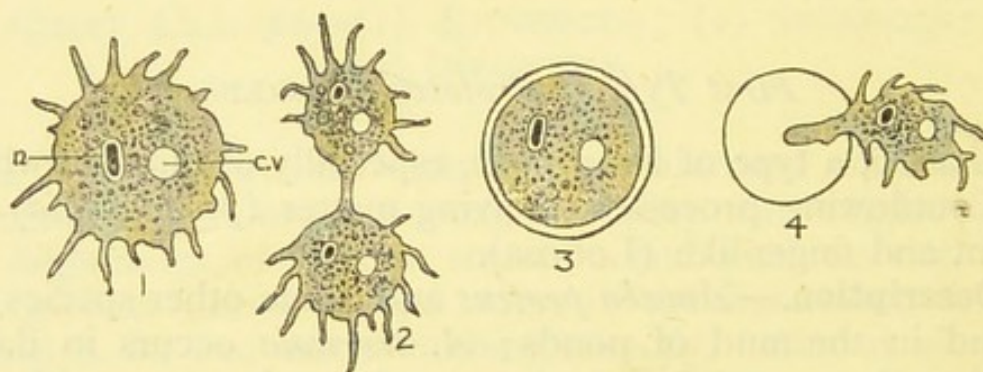


FIG. 33.—Life history of *Amœba*.

1. *Amœba* with pseudopodia; *n.*, nucleus; *c.v.*, contractile vacuole. 2. Division in two. 3. Encystation. 4. Escape of *Amœba* from its cyst.

energy recommences the cell-cycle. The conjugation of two *Amœbæ* has been observed, and spore formation occasionally occurs.

### *Second Type*—GREGARINA.

*Gregarina*, a type of those Sporozoa in which the cell is divided into two regions by a partition.

**Description.**—Various species occur in the intestine of the lobster, cockroach, and other Arthropods. When young they are intracellular parasites, but later they become free in the gut. They feed by absorbing diffusible food stuffs, such as peptones and carbohydrates, from their hosts, and store up glycogen within themselves. In many the size is about one-tenth of an inch. There is a firm cuticle of “protoelastin,” which grows inwards so as to divide the



cell into a larger nucleated posterior region and a smaller anterior region, and also, in the young stage, forms a small anterior cap. The cell-substance is divided into a firmer cortical layer and a more fluid central substance. The protoplasm often presents a delicate fibrillar appearance, suggesting that of striated muscle. The nucleus is very distinct, but there are no vacuoles. We may associate the absence of locomotor processes, "mouth," and contractile vacuoles, as well as the thickness of the cuticle and the general passivity, with the parasitic habit of the Gregarines. It is not clearly understood how these and other intestinal parasites have become habituated to resist the action of digestive juices.

**Life history.**—The young Gregarine is parasitic in one of the lining cells of the gut; it grows, and, leaving the cell, remains for a time still attached to it by the cap (Fig. 35, *a.*, *yg.*); later this is cast off, and the individual becomes free in the gut, while still increasing in size. Two or more individuals attach themselves together end to end, but the meaning of this is obscure. Encystation occurs, involving a single unit or two together, and from the division of the encysted cell or cells, spores are formed. All the protoplasm is not always used up in forming the spores, but a residue may remain, which forms a network of threads supporting the spores. The cyst is sometimes (as in *G. blattarum*) complex, with "ducts" serving for the exit of the spores, each of which is surrounded by a firm case. Eventually the cyst bursts, the spore-cases are liberated, and from within each of these the single spore emerges to become a cellular parasite. The spore of *G. gigantea* is at first non-nucleated; it gives off two processes, one of which becomes detached, vibratile, and nucleated, while the other seems to come to nothing (Fig. 35, *sp*<sup>2</sup>). The adult of this species is sometimes three-quarters of an inch in length—enormous for a Protozoon.



FIG. 34.—End-to-end union of Gregarines. —After Frenzel.



*Third Type—MONOCYSTIS.*

*Monocystis*, a type of those Sporozoa in which the cell is *not* divided into two parts by a partition.

**Description.**—Two species (*M. agilis* and *M. magna*) infest the male reproductive organs of the earthworm almost

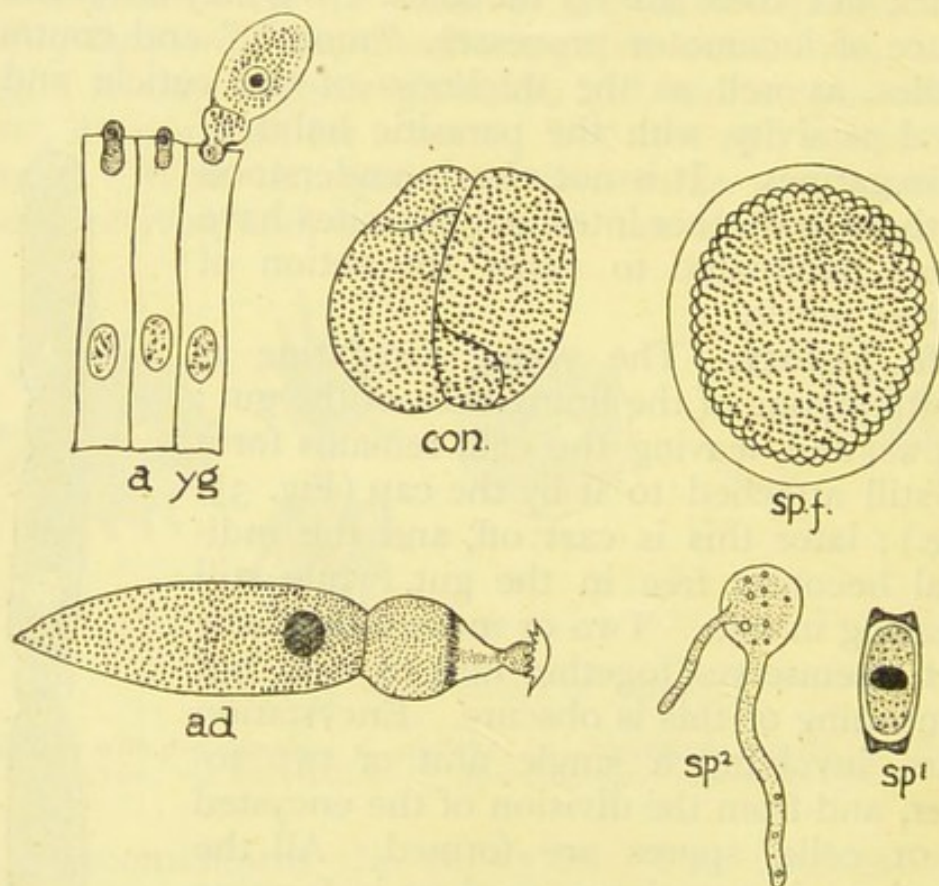


FIG. 35.—Life history of *Gregarina*.—After Bütschli.

*a.yg.* Young forms emerging from intestinal cells.

*ad.* Adult with deciduous head-cap and a cuticular partition dividing the cell into two.

*con.* Two forms conjugating (*G. blattarum*).

*sp.f.* Spore formation.

*sp1.* Ripe spore of *G. blattarum*, within spore-case.

*sp2.* Spore of *G. gigantea*, after escaping from the spore-case, showing long vibratile part which breaks off and develops into the adult.

constantly. The full-grown adults are visible to the naked eye. They are usually flattened worm-like cells, but the shape alters considerably during the sluggish movements. There is a definite contractile rind, which is sometimes fibrillated, and a more fluid medullary substance, in which the large nucleus floats. In one species there is an anterior



projection which resembles the cap of *Gregarina*, otherwise unrepresented in *Monocystis*. As in *Gregarina*, and many other parasitic forms, a contractile vacuole is absent.

**Life history.**—The young form is parasitic within one of the reproductive cells of the earthworm. It grows, and becomes free from the cell. In the free stage, two individuals may unite in the curious end-to-end manner observed also in *Gregarina*. Encystation occurs, involving either a single individual or two together. Within the rounded cyst, orderly nuclear division results in the formation of spore-forming masses. These form elliptical spore-cases, or “pseudonavicellæ,” enclosed in a firm sheath, and each spore-case seems to contain several, usually eight,

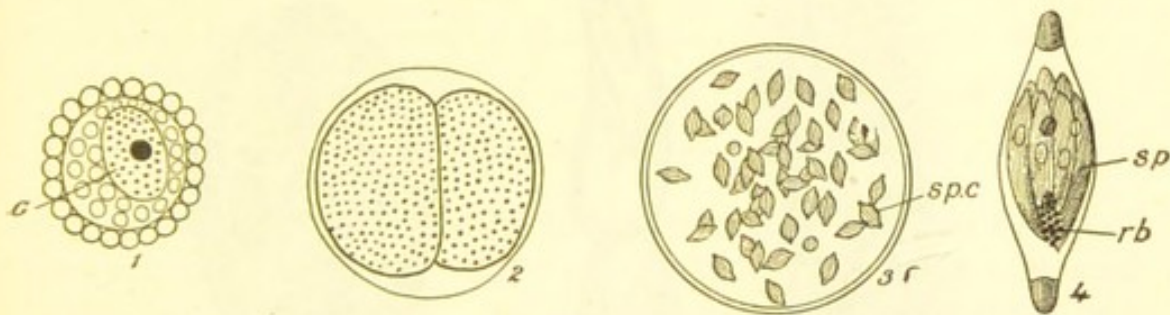


FIG. 36.—Life history of *Monocystis*.—After Bütschli.

1. Gregarine lying within a sperm mother cell of earthworm.
2. Conjugation of two Gregarines within a cyst.
3. Numerous spore-cases (*sp.c.*, pseudonavicellæ) within a cyst.
4. A spore-case with eight spores (*sp.*) and a residual core (*rb.*)

spores, lying around a residual core. The spores are considerably larger than those of *Gregarina*. Eventually the cyst bursts, the spore-cases are extruded, the spores emerge from their firm chitinoid cases. The young spore is like a bent spindle (falciform), and seems next door to being flagellate. It bores into a mother sperm cell, and from this it afterwards passes as an adult into the cavity of the seminal vesicles. In some allied Sporozoa the young form is first flagellate, and then amœboid, before it becomes the sluggish adult. Intracellular parasitism and copious food naturally act as checks to activity.

The species of *Monocystis* occur chiefly in “Worms” and Tunicates; none are known in Arthropods, Molluscs, or Vertebrates.



*Fourth Type*—PARAMÆCIUM.

*Paramæcium*, a type of Infusorians, especially of those which are uniformly covered with short cilia (Holotricha).

**Description.**—Specimens of *Paramæcium* may be readily and abundantly obtained by leaving fragments of hay to soak for a few days in a glass of water. A few individuals have been lying dormant about the plant; they revive and multiply with extraordinary rapidity. They are also abundant in most stagnant pools, and are just visible when

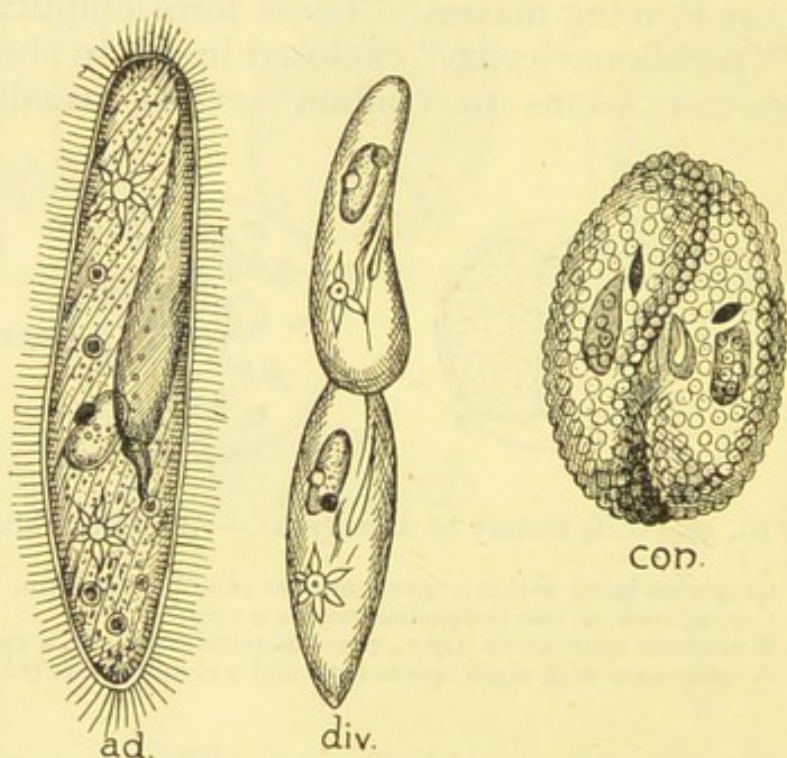


FIG. 37.—*Paramæcium*.—After Bütschli.

*ad.* Adult form, showing cilia, "mouth," contractile vacuoles, etc.  
*div.* Transverse division.  
*con.* Conjugation.

a test-tube containing them is held between the eye and the light. Their food consists of small vegetable particles.

The form is a long oval, with the blunter end in front; the outer portion of the cell-substance is differentiated into a dense rind or cortex, with a delicate external cuticle, perforated by cilia. There is a definite opening, the so-called mouth, which serves for the ingestion of food particles; and there is also a particular anal spot posterior to the mouth, from which undigested residues are got rid of.



The surface is covered with cilia, in regular longitudinal rows; these serve both for locomotion and for driving food particles towards the mouth. Among the cilia there are small cavities in the cortex, in which lie fine protrusible threads ("trichocysts"). These, though parts of a cell,

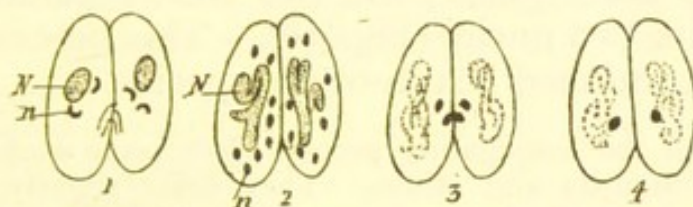


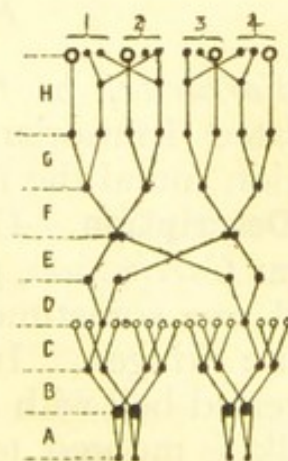
FIG. 38.—Conjugation of *Paramæcium aurelia*—four stages.—After Maupas.

1. Shows macronucleus (*N*) and two micronuclei (*n*) in each of the two conjugates.
2. Shows breaking up of macronucleus, and multiplication of micronuclei to eight.
3. Shows the fertilisation in progress; the macronucleus is vanishing.
4. Shows a single (fertilised) micronucleus in each conjugate.

suggest the thread cells of Cœlentera, and are probably of the nature of weapons. The cortical layer is contractile, and is distinctly fibrillated. In the substance of the cell lie two nuclei, the smaller "micronucleus" lying by the side of the larger "macronucleus." Food vacuoles occur as in the

FIG. 39.—Diagrammatic expression of process of conjugation in *Paramæcium aurelia*.—After Maupas.

- A. The two micronuclei enlarge.
- B. Each divides into two.
- C. Eight micronuclei result.
- D. Seven disappear; one (darkened) divides into two.
- E. An interchange and fusion occurs, and the conjugates separate.
- F. The fertilised micronucleus divides into two.
- G. Each conjugate begins to divide, the micronucleus of each half dividing into two, one of which becomes the macronucleus, while the others form the two normal micronuclei. The top line represents four individuals, each with a macronucleus and two micronuclei.



*Amæba*. There are two contractile vacuoles, from which fine canals radiate into the surrounding protoplasm; these discharge into the vacuole, which then bursts to the exterior.

**Life history.**—Growth is followed by obliquely transverse



division into two (Fig. 37, *div.*). One-half includes the "mouth," the other has to make one. As well as this simple fission, a process of transient conjunction also occurs. Two individuals approach one another closely, the two nuclei of each break up, an exchange of pieces of the micronucleus takes place; the two then separate, each to reconstruct its two nuclei (Fig. 38). This process is necessary for the continued health of the species.

The details of the conjugating process have been worked out with great care by Maupas and others. They differ slightly in different species; what occurs in *P. aurelia* is summarised diagrammatically in Fig. 39.

The micronuclear elements are represented by two minute bodies. As conjugation begins, these separate themselves from the macronucleus. The macronucleus degenerates, and each micronucleus increases in size (A). Each divides into two (B); another division raises their number to eight (C); seven of these seem to be absorbed and disappear, the remaining eighth divides again into what may be called the male and female elements (D); for mutual fertilisation now occurs (E). After this exchange has been accomplished, the Infusorians separate, and nuclear reconstruction begins. The fertilised micronucleus divides into two (F), and each half divides again (G), so that there are four in each cell. Two of these form the macronuclei of the two daughter cells into which the Infusorian proceeds to divide (H); the other two form the micronuclei, but before another division occurs each has again divided. Thus each daughter cell contains a macronucleus and two micronuclei.

#### *Fifth Type*—VORTICELLA.

*Vorticella*, or the bell-animalcule, is a type of those ciliated Infusorians in which the cilia are restricted to a region round the mouth (Peritricha).

**Description.**—Groups of *Vorticella*, or of the compound form *Carchesium*, grow on the stems of fresh-water plants, and are sometimes readily visible to the unaided eye as white fringes. In *Vorticella* each individual suggests an inverted bell with a long flexible handle. The base of the stalk is moored to the water-weed, the bell swings in the water, now jerking out to the full length of its tether, and again cowering down with the stalk contracted into a close and delicate spiral. In *Carchesium* the stalk is branched, and each branch terminates in a bell. Up the stalk there runs, in a slightly wavy curve, a contractile filament, which, in shortening, gives the non-contractile sheath a spiral form.



This contractile filament, under a high power, may exhibit a fine striation. (A similar striated structure is seen in some Amœbæ, Gregarines, spermatozoa, etc., and above all in striped muscle fibres. It seems to be some structural adaptation to contractility.) The bell has a thickened margin, and within this lies a disc-like lid; in a depression on the left side, between the margin and the disc, there is

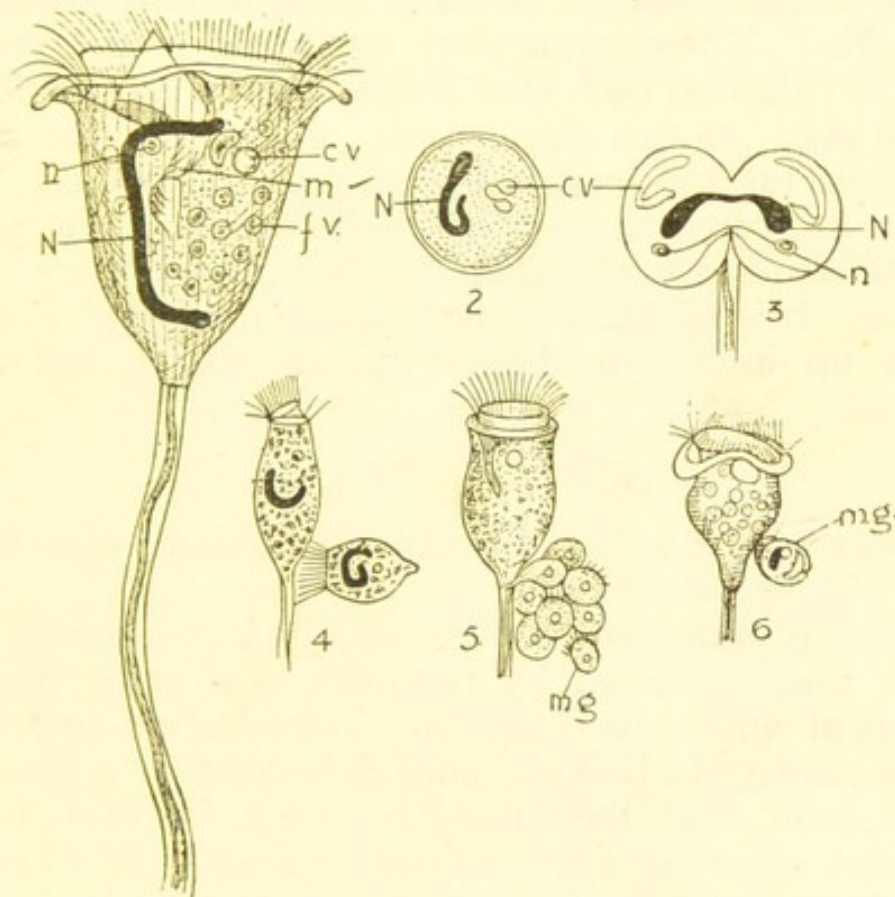


FIG. 40.—*Vorticella*.—After Bütschli.

1. Structure. *N.*, Macronucleus; *n.*, micronucleus; *cv.*, contractile vacuole; *m.*, mouth; *fv.*, food vacuole; *v.*, vestibule.
2. Encysted individual. 3. Division.
4. Separation of a free-swimming unit—the result of a division.
5. Formation of eight minute units (*mg.*).
6. Conjugation of microzooid (*mg.*) with one of normal size.

an opening, the mouth, which leads by a distinct passage into the cell. On the side of this passage there is a weak spot, the potential anus, by which useless débris is passed out. The cilia are arranged so as to waft food-particles into the mouth and down the passage. There is a large and horseshoe-shaped macronucleus, and a small micronucleus. Food vacuoles and contractile vacuoles are present as usual.



Sometimes a *Vorticella* bell jerks itself off its stalk and swims about ; in other conditions it may form a temporary cyst ; normally, the cilia are very active, and the movements of the stalk frequent and rapid. Multiplication may take place by longitudinal fission—a bell divides into similar halves, one of these acquires a basal circlet of cilia and goes free, ultimately becoming fixed. Or the division may be unequal, and one, or as many as eight, microzooids may be set free. These swim away by means of the posterior girdle of cilia, and each may conjugate with an individual of normal size. In this case a small active cell (like a spermatozoon) fuses intimately with a larger passive cell, which may be compared to an ovum. The details of the process of fertilisation are analogous to those described in *Paramecium*. It is said that in some cases an encysted *Vorticella* breaks up into a number of minute spores, but this is doubtful.

#### *Sixth Type—VOLVOX.*

*Volvox* is a type of flagellate Infusorians, especially of those with flagella of equal size.

*Volvox* is found, not very commonly, in fresh-water pools, and is usually classed by botanists as a green Alga. It consists of numerous biflagellate individuals, connected by fine protoplasmic bridges, and embedded in a gelatinous matrix, from which their flagella project, the whole forming a hollow, spherical, actively motile colony. In *V. globator* the average number of individuals is about 10,000 ; in *V. aureus* or *minor*, 500–1000. The individual cells are stellate or amoeboid in *V. globator*, more spherical in *V. aureus* ; each contains a nucleus and a contractile vacuole. At the anterior hyaline end, where the flagella are inserted, there is a pigment spot ; the rest of the cell is green, owing to the presence of chlorophyll corpuscles. In consequence of the presence of these, *Volvox* is *holophytic*, i.e. it feeds as a plant does.

In its method of reproduction *Volvox* is of much biological interest and importance. As Klein, one of its best describers, says, it is an epitome of the evolution of sex. Some of the colonies are asexual. In these a limited number of cells possess the power of dividing up to form little clusters of cells, these clusters escape from the envelope of



the parent colony, and form new free-swimming colonies. In other colonies there are special reproductive cells, which may be called ova and spermatozoa.

In *V. globator* the two kinds of reproductive cells are usually formed in the same colony, the formation of spermatozoa generally preceding that of the ova. Technically the colony may then be described as a protandrous hermaphrodite.

In *V. aureus* the colony is oftenest unisexual or dioecious, *i.e.* either male or female. But it may be monœcious or hermaphrodite, and is then generally protogynous, *i.e.* producing eggs first.

Whether in a hermaphrodite or in a unisexual colony, the sex cells appear among the ordinary vegetative units; the ova are distinguishable

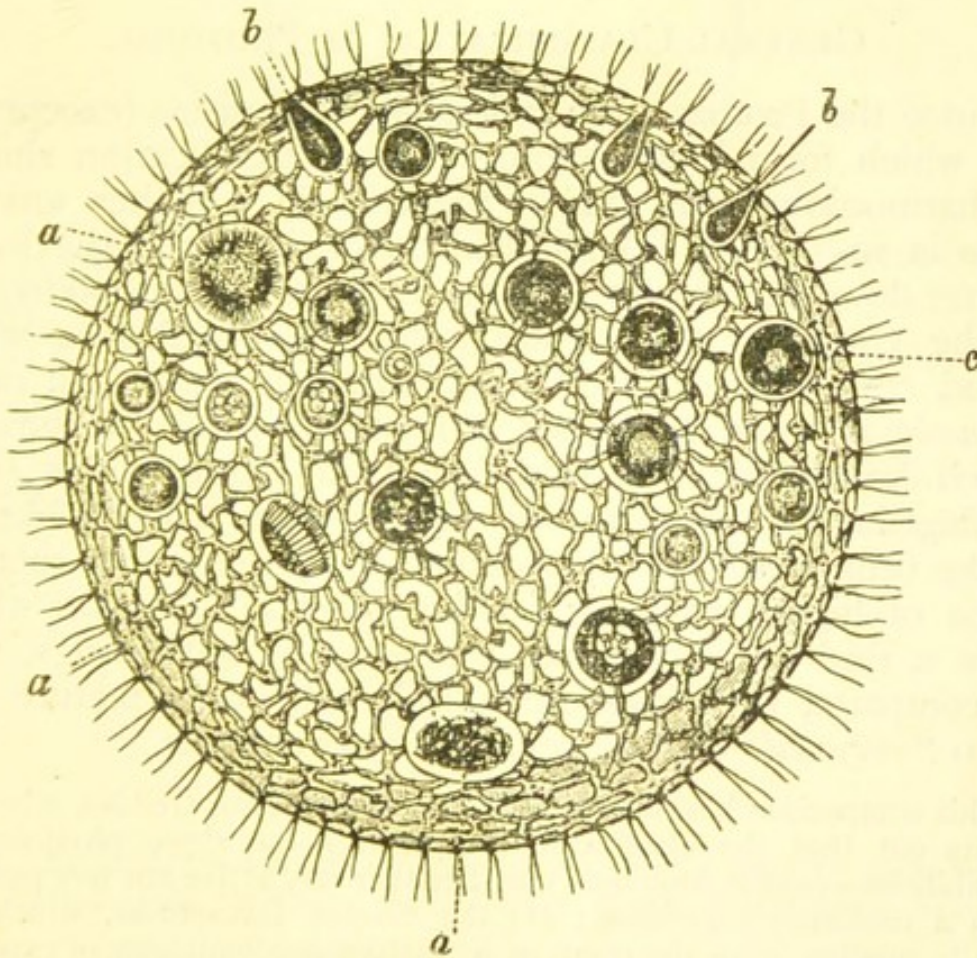


FIG. 41.—*Volvox globator*.—After Cohn.

*a.*, Balls of sperms; *b.*, immature ova; *c.*, ripe ova.

by their larger size, the “sperm mother cells” divide rapidly and form numerous (32–100 or more) slender spermatozoa, each with two cilia. In *V. globator* their bundles may break up within the parent colony; or, as always occurs in *V. aureus*, they may escape intact, and swim about in the water. In any case, an ovum is fertilised by a spermatozoon, and, after a period of encystation and rest, segments to form a new colony. Occasionally, however, this organism, so remarkable a



condensation of reproductive possibilities, may produce ova which develop parthenogenetically.

Here, then, we have an organism, on the border line between plant and animal life, just across the line which separates the unicellular from the multicellular, illustrating the beginning of that important distinction between *somatic* or body cells and *reproductive* cells, and occurring in asexual, hermaphrodite, and unisexual phases. Klein records no less than twenty-four different forms of *V. aureus* from the purely vegetative and asexual to the parthenogenetic, for there may be almost entirely male colonies, almost entirely female colonies, and other interesting transitional stages. Klein has also succeeded to some extent in showing that the occurrence of the various reproductive types depends on outside influences.

### GENERAL CLASSIFICATION OF PROTOZOA.

Since the Protozoa are unicellular organisms (except the few which form loose colonies), their classification should be harmonious with that of the cells in a higher animal. This is so. Thus (*a*) the Rhizopods, in which the living matter flows out in changeful threads or "pseudopodia," as in the common *Amæba*, are comparable with the white blood corpuscles or leucocytes, many young ova, and other "*amæboid*" cells of higher animals; (*b*) the Infusorians, which have a definite rind and bear motile lashes (cilia or flagella), *e.g.* the common *Paramæcium*, may be likened to the cells of *ciliated* epithelium, or to the active spermatozoa of higher animals; (*c*) the parasitic Sporozoa, which have a rind and no motile processes or outflowings, may be compared to degenerate muscle cells, or to mature ova, or to "*encysted*" passive cells in higher animals.

This comparison has been worked out by Professor Geddes, who also points out that the classification represents the three physiological possibilities—(*a*) the Amœboid units, neither very active nor very passive, form a median compromise; (*b*) the ciliated Infusorians, which are usually smaller, show the result of a relative predominance of expenditure; (*c*) the encysted Gregarines represent an extreme of sluggish passivity.

But, as Geddes and others have shown, the cells of a higher animal often pass from one phase to another,—the young Amœboid ovum accumulating yolk becomes encysted, the ciliated cells of the windpipe may, to our discomfort, sink into amœboid forms. The same is true of the Protozoa; thus in various conditions the ciliated or flagellate unit may become encysted or amœboid, while in some of the simplest forms, such as *Protomyxa*, there is a "cell-cycle" in which all the phases occur in one life history.

It is also important to notice Professor Ray Lankester's division of



the Protozoa into naked and corticate forms (Gymnomyxa and Corticata). The Gymnomyxa include the primitive forms and the Rhizopods; the Corticata include the two extremes—Gregarines and Infusorians.

# CLASSIFICATION OF PROTOZOA.

(CORTICATA.)	(GYMNOXYXA.)	(CORTICATA.)
Predominantly ciliated and active. INFUSORIANS.	Predominantly amœboid. RHIZOPODS.	Predominantly encysted and passive. SPOROZOA.
ACINETARIA.	RADIOLARIA.	
CILIATA.	FORAMINIFERA.	SPOROZOA
RHYNCHOFLLAGELLATA	LABYRINTHULIDEA.	OR
DINOFLAGELLATA.	HELIOZOA.	GREGARINIDA.
FLAGELLATA.	LOBOSA.	
	PROTEOMYXA and MYCETOZOA. PRIMITIVE FORMS.	

## SYSTEMATIC SURVEY.

**A. Primitive forms.**—Under this heading may be included (1) the Proteomyxa, primitive, insufficiently known forms often without a



FIG. 42.—Diagram of *Protomyxa aurantiaca*.—After Hæckel.

1. Encysted; 2. Dividing into spores; 3. Escape of spores, at first flagellate, then amœboid; 4. Plasmodium, formed from fusion of small amœbæ.

nucleus, and (2) the Mycetozoa, organisms with somewhat complex fructifications, often classed as plants allied to Fungi. As examples of



the Proteomyxa, we have the interesting *Protomyxa* in four phases: (a) encysted and breaking up into spores, which (b) are briefly flagellate, (c) sink into amœboid forms, and (d) flow together into a composite "plasmodium"; *Vampyrella*, parasitic on fresh-water Algæ; and many others.

The Mycetozoa are well illustrated by *Fuligo* or *Æthaliium septicum*, "flowers of tan," found in summer as a large plasmodium on the bark of the tan-yard. The coated spores are formed in little capsules which rise from the surface of the plasmodium. The spores may be first

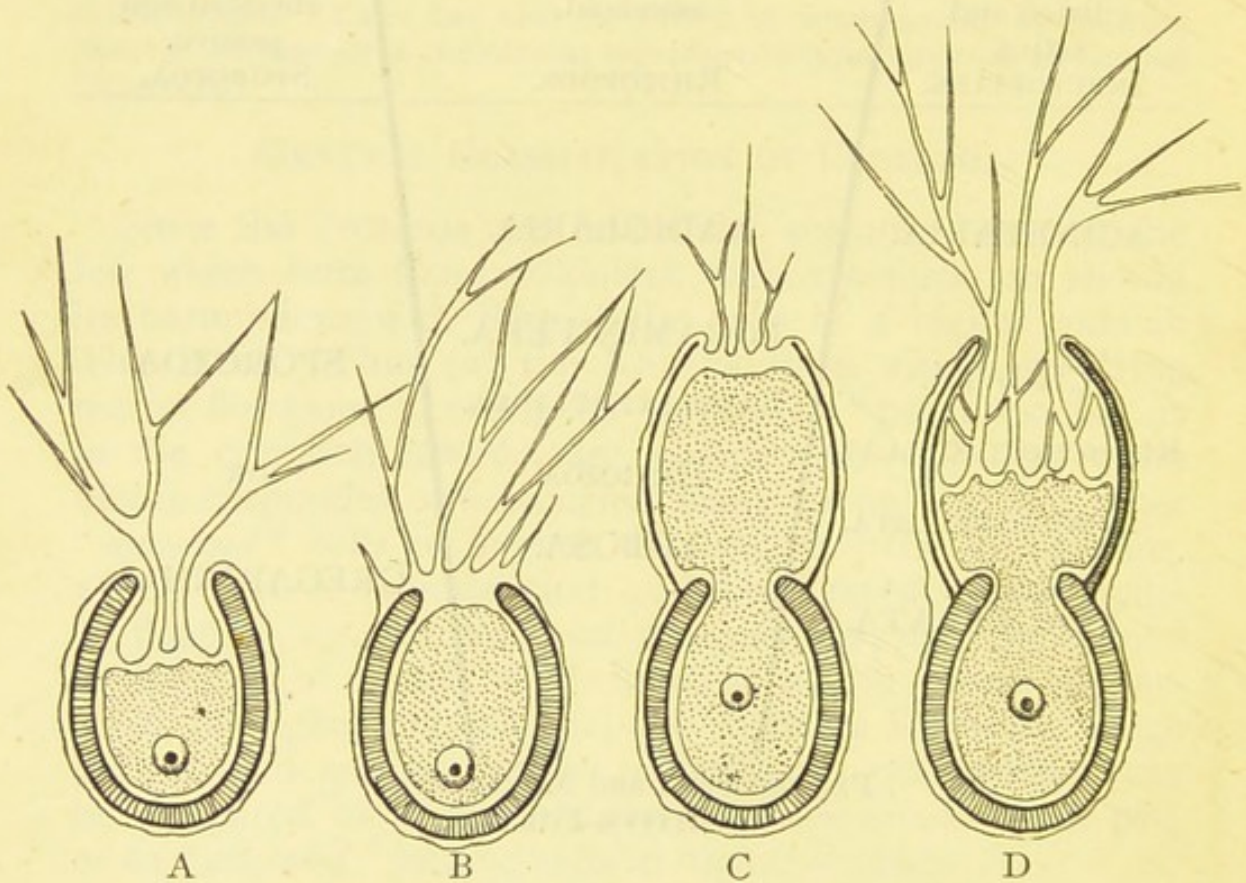


FIG. 43.—Formation of shell in a simple Foraminifer.  
—After Dreyer.

In A the shell has one chamber; B, C, and D show the formation of a second. Note outflowing pseudopodia and the enclosure of the shell by a thin layer of protoplasm; note also the nucleus in the central protoplasm.

flagellate, then amœboid, or amœboid from the first; the characteristic plasmodium is formed by the fusion of the amœbæ.

**B. Predominantly Amœboid Protozoa-Rhizopoda.**—The simplest Rhizopods generally resemble *Amœba*, and are classified as (3) Lobosa. They may reproduce simply by division, as does *Amœba* itself, or may liberate several buds at once (*Arcella*), or more rarely from spores (*Pelomyxa*). Various forms, such as *Arcella*, are furnished with a shell. In *Magosphæra* (*Catallacta*), described by Haeckel, the life history is complex. It appears as—(a) an encysted form; (b) a free-swimming colony of ciliated cells (like the embryos of some sponges);



(c) as ciliated units produced by the breaking up of (b); and (d) as amœboid forms resulting from the modification of the active units.

(4) The Labyrinthulideæ are represented by forms like *Labyrinthula* on Algæ, and *Chlamydomyxa* on bog-moss, which consist of a mass of protoplasm spread out into a network, and of numerous spindle-shaped units, which travel continually up and down the threads of the living net.

As (5) Heliozoa are classified the sun-animalcules (*Actinosphærium*, *Actinophrys sol*), and others, in which there are stiff processes radiating from a spherical body. Reproduction may be by division or by spore formation; skeletal structures may be represented by spicules.

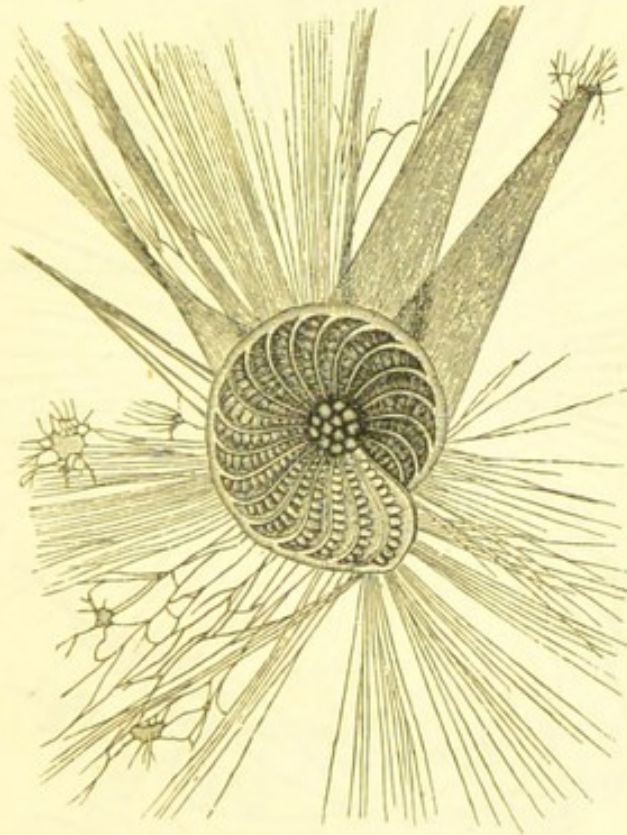


FIG. 44.—A Foraminifer (*Polystomella*) showing shell and pseudopodia.  
—After Schultze.

The (6) Foraminifera or Reticularia include an interesting series of shelled forms in which the peripheral protoplasm forms a mass of interlacing threads. Most are marine, the shell is usually calcareous, more rarely arenaceous or chitinous, and encloses the central mass only. Foraminifera are common as fossils from Silurian rocks onwards, and at the present day are very important in the formation of calcareous ooze; in this respect *Globigerina*, with a chambered shell, is especially important; others are *Gromia*, found in both fresh and salt water; *Haliphysema*, a form utilising sponge-spicules to cover itself, once mistaken for a minute sponge, or for a very simple many-celled animal.

Most kinds of chalk consist mainly of the shells of Foraminifera



accumulated on the floor of ancient seas; *Nummulites* (Fig. 17) and related fossil forms were as large as shillings or half-crowns.

More complex are the (7) Radiolaria, which are divided by a membrane into an inner central capsule (with one or more nuclei), and an outer portion, giving off radiating thread-like pseudopodia. There is usually a skeleton in the form of a siliceous shell outside the central capsule, but in some cases the shell is formed of a horn-like substance called acanthin. Most Radiolarians include unicellular Algæ (yellow

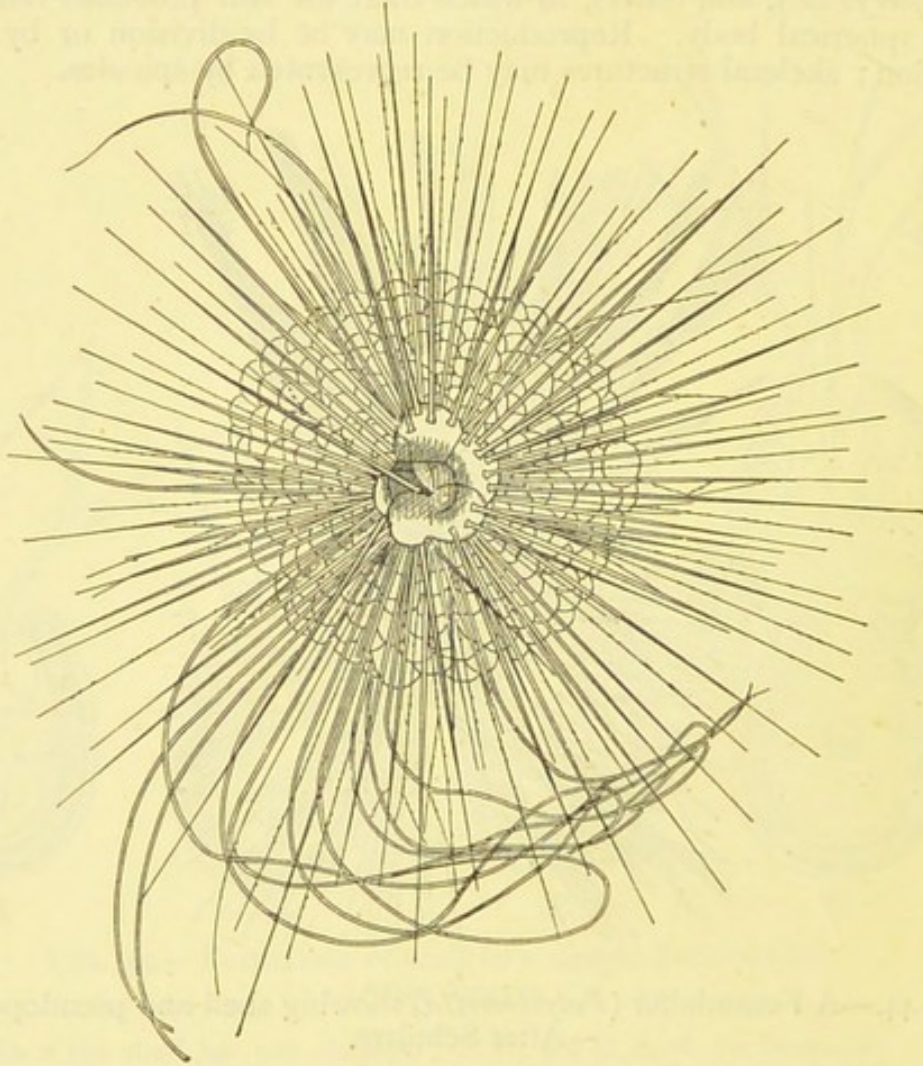


FIG. 45.—A pelagic Foraminifer—*Hastigerina* (*Globigerina*) *Murrayi*.—After Brady.

Note central shell, projecting calcareous spines with a protoplasmic axis; also fine curved pseudopodia and vacuolated protoplasm.

cells), with which they live in intimate mutual partnership (symbiosis). They are abundant as fossils, and of much importance in the formation of the ooze of great depths.

*Examples.*—*Thalassicola*, *Eucyrtidium*, and the colonial *Collozoum* and *Sphærozoum*.

**C. Predominantly encysted Protozoa-Sporozoa.**—Forms like *Gregarina* and *Monocystis* are included as (8) Sporozoa or Gregarinida.



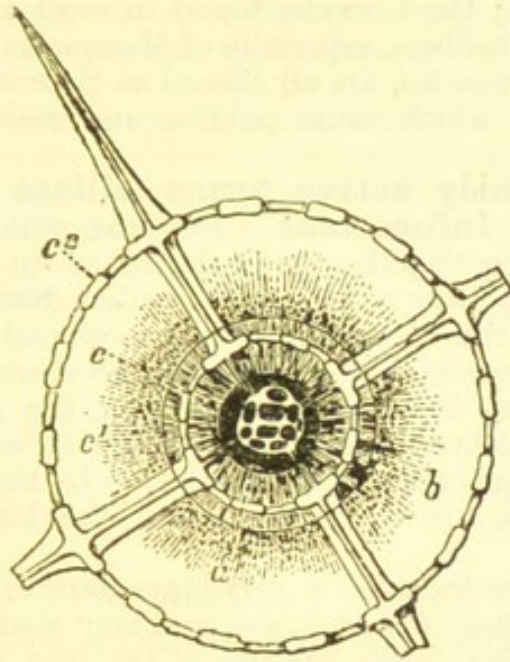


FIG. 46.—Optical section of a Radiolarian (*Actinomma*).  
—After Haeckel.

*a.*, Nucleus; *b.*, wall of central capsule; *c.*, siliceous shell within nucleus; *c*<sup>1</sup>, middle shell within central capsule; *c*<sup>2</sup>, outer shell in extra-capsular substance. Four radial spicules hold the three spherical shells together.

The others mostly resemble these types, but some, like *Coccidium*, are permanent cell-parasites. Gregarines are parasitic in many different kinds of animals, including vertebrates. The Myxosporidia peculiarly

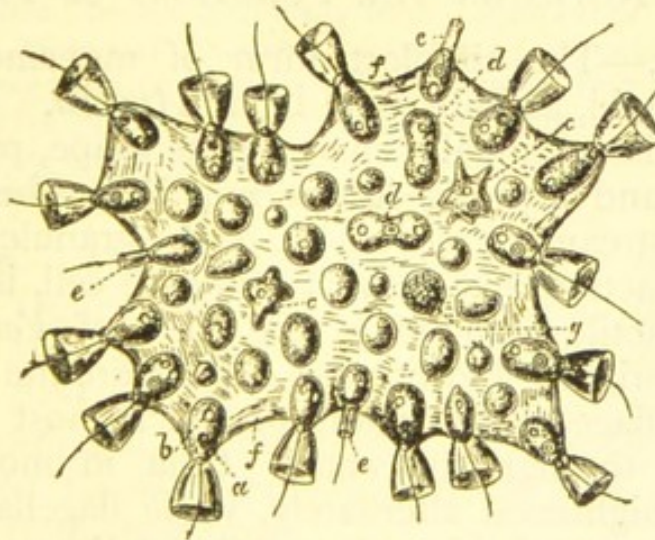


FIG. 47.—A colonial flagellate Infusorian—*Proterospongia Haeckelii*.—After Saville Kent.

There are about 40 flagellate individuals. *a.*, nucleus; *b.*, contractile vacuole; *c.*, amœboid unit in gelatinous matrix; *d.*, division of an amœboid unit; *e.*, flagellate units with collars contracted; *f.*, hyaline outer membranes; *g.*, unit forming spores.



abundant in Fishes; the Coccidia found in most animals; the Sarcosporidia inside muscle fibres, especially of Mammals; the Hæmosporidia inside red blood corpuscles, are all classed as Sporozoa. It is probable that the organisms which cause pebrine and malaria are classifiable here.

**D. Predominantly active forms (ciliate and flagellate), generally called Infusorians.**—Protozoa, with a definite rind and with 1–3 undulating flagella, are included as (9) Flagellata, a very large group, among which are such familiar forms as the common *Euglena* of ponds; the Monads; *Volvox*, a colonial form; *Codosiga*, a colony in which the individual cells are furnished with a collar.

Modified flagellate forms are included in the groups (10) Dinoflagellata and (11) Rhynchoflagellata, in both of which there are two flagella, differently placed in the two cases. In the first are included *Peridinium* and *Ceratium*; in the latter, the large phosphorescent *Noctiluca*.

As (12) Ciliata are included a very large number of forms, more or less closely resembling *Paramæcium*, and very abundant in infusions; some, such as *Opalina*, in the intestine of the frog, are parasitic. The cilia often vary in size and distribution, and constitute a basis of classification.

As specially modified Ciliata are included (13) Acinetaria, highly specialised forms, ciliated when young, but usually furnished when adult with suckorial tentacles. They are fixed in adult life, and feed on other Protozoa. As examples may be given *Acineta*; *Dendrosoma*, forming branched colonies; and *Ophryodendron*, without suckorial tentacles. Some, like *Sphærophrya*, are minute and parasitic.

#### GENERAL NOTES ON THE FUNCTIONS OF PROTOZOA.

**Movement.**—The simplest form of movement is that termed amœboid, as illustrated by an *Amœba*. In ordinary conditions it is continually changing its shape, putting forth blunt lobes and drawing others in. With this is usually associated a streaming movement of the granules. A more defined contraction, like that of a muscle cell, is illustrated in the contractile filament of the stalk of *Vorticella* and similar Infusorians; and not less definite are the movements of cilia and flagella, by means of which most Infusorians travel swiftly through the water. Cilia in movement are bent and straightened alternately, while flagella, which are usually single mobile threads, exhibit lashing movements to and fro.

Considered generally, the movements are of two kinds: either (1) reflex, *i.e.* responses to external stimulus, as when the Protozoon moves towards a nutritive substance; or (2) automatic, *i.e.* such movements as



*appear to* originate from within, without our being able to point to the immediate stimulus, *e.g.* the rhythmical pulsations of contractile vacuoles.

While all vital activity or life must remain inexplicable in lower terms until we know the chemical nature of protoplasm, it is useful to compare the movements of *Amœbæ* with the movements of drops of fine emulsion, as Professor Bütschli has done in great detail. For in this way the strictly vital may be distinguished from what depends on known physical conditions.

Dr. Verworn has speculatively suggested that the substance of the amœboid cell is drawn out towards oxygen in the medium, that the chemically satisfied particles make way for their unsatisfied neighbour particles, that external stimulus provokes a molecular disruption, and that the exhausted particles have then to retreat to the nucleus, which he regards as a trophic centre.

**Sensitiveness.**—The *Amœba* is sensitive to external influences. It shrinks from strong light and obnoxious materials ; it moves towards nutritive substances. This sensitiveness is, so far as we know, diffuse,—a property of the whole of the cell-substance ; but the pigment spots of some forms are specialised regions.

Many Protozoa well illustrate a strange sensitiveness to (the physical and chemical stimuli of) objects or substances with which they are not in contact. Thus the simple amœboid *Vampyrella* will, from a considerable distance, creep directly towards the nutritive substance of an Alga, and the plasmodium of a Myxomycete will move towards a decoction of dead leaves, and away from a solution of salt. The same sensitiveness, technically termed *chemotaxis*, is seen when micro-organisms move towards nutritive media or away from others, when the spermatozoon (of plant or animal) seeks the ovum, or when the phagocytes (wandering amœboid cells) of a Metazoon crowd towards an intruding parasite or some irritant particle.

**Nutrition.**—The *Amœba* expends energy as it lives and moves ; it regains energy by eating and digesting food particles. Most of the free Protozoa live in this manner upon solid food particles ; a few, such as *Volvox*, in virtue of their chlorophyll, are holophytic, *i.e.* they feed like plants ; the parasitic forms usually absorb soluble and diffusible substances from their hosts.

**Respiration.**—Like all living creatures, the *Amœba* respire, that is, its complex substance is continually undergoing a process of oxidation, carbon dioxide being produced as a waste product. Without oxygen none of the activities can be efficiently performed, and if it is long withheld death



ensues. In all Protozoa oxygen is simply taken up by the general protoplasm from the surrounding medium, into which the waste carbonic acid is again passed. The bubbles which enter with the food particles assist in respiration. In parasitic forms the method of respiration must be the same as that of the tissue cells of the host.

**Excretion.**—Of the details of this process little is certainly known, but the contractile vacuoles are, without doubt, primitive excretory appliances. In the more specialised forms they appear to drain the cell-substance by means of fine radiating canals, and then to burst to the exterior. Uric acid and urates are said to be demonstrable as waste products.

**Colour.**—Pigments are not infrequently present in the Protozoa. We have already noticed the presence of chlorophyll in some forms; with Radiolarians the so-called "yellow cells" are found almost constantly associated. Each of these cells consists of protoplasm, surrounded by a cell-wall, and containing a nucleus. The protoplasm is impregnated with chlorophyll, the green colour of which is obscured by a yellow pigment. Starch is also present. The cells multiply by fission, and continue to live after isolation from the protoplasm of the Radiolarian. All these facts point to the conclusion that the cells are symbiotic Algæ, so-called *Zoochlorella*. According to some, the "chlorophyll corpuscles" seen in the primitive *Archerina*, in some flagellate forms, as *Euglena*, and in many Ciliata, as *Stentor*, *Stylonichia*, one species of *Paramæcium*, *Volvox* and the allied forms, are also symbiotic Algæ, which have lost the power of independent existence. The evidence for this is, however, insufficient, and this explanation will not apply in cases like that of *Vorticella viridis*, where the green colouring matter is uniformly distributed through the protoplasm. In many cases there is, besides the chlorophyll, a brown pigment, identical with the *diatomin* of Diatoms. In many of the Flagellata there are one or more bright pigment spots at the anterior end of the cell; these may be specially sensitive areas. In some of the simpler Gregarines the medullary protoplasm is coloured with pigment which is apparently a derivative of the hæmoglobin of the host.

**Psychical life.**—Protozoa often behave in a way which suggest conscious control and intelligence, but as cut-off fragments also act with apparent reasonableness, and as the nucleus cannot be regarded as a brain, there seems no reason to credit them with more than that diffuse consciousness which is possibly co-extensive with life. Verworn has decided, after much labour, that the Protozoa do not exhibit what even the most generous could call intelligence; but this



is no reason why he or any other evolutionist should doubt that they have in them the indefinable rudiments of thought.

#### GENERAL NOTES ON THE STRUCTURE OF PROTOZOA.

The Protozoa are sometimes called "structureless," but they are only so relatively. For though they have not stomachs, hearts, and kidneys, as Ehrenberg supposed, they are not like drops of white of egg.

The cell-substance consists of a living network or foam, in the meshes or vacuoles of which there is looser material. Included with the latter are granules, some of which are food fragments in process of digestion, or waste products in process of excretion.

The cell-substance includes one or more nuclei, specialised areas which are essential to the life and multiplication of the unit. In the Protozoa there are several conditions under which the nucleus may exist :—

(1) In some adult forms, and in many spores or young forms, no nucleus has yet been discovered. It is, however, unnecessary to preserve the term "Monera" for such simple forms, as it is probable that nuclear material does exist in some form even in these cases.

(2) In some of the Ciliata the nucleus is *diffuse*, that is, it exists in the form of a powder scattered through the medullary protoplasm, and is only discernible after death by means of careful staining. In *Opalinopsis* the fine powder sometimes coalesces into a single nucleus.

(3) In the majority of cases, notably in the Gregarines, the nucleus is single, often large, and placed centrally. From a consideration of the cells of Metazoa we may call this the typical case.

(4) In many of the Ciliata, *e.g.* *Paramecium*, the nucleus is double. There is a large oblong nucleus, and beside it a smaller spherical one.

(5) In *Opalina*, from the intestine of the frog, and a few other forms, there are very numerous nuclei, arranged in a symmetrical manner in the cell-substance. In some cases these isolated nuclei have been observed to unite to form one large nucleus just before binary fission takes place. Of these various cases the diffuse condition is apparently very primitive.

The nucleus, when stained and examined under high powers, is observed to be complex in structure. It consists of a nuclear network, or a coil of chromatin threads. In the division of many Protozoa, as in the cells of higher animals, it plays an important part. During division it passes from the resting to the active condition. The nuclear threads, or "chromatin filaments," loosen themselves from their coiled state,



and arrange themselves in a star at the equator of the cell, whence they divide into two groups, which retreat from one another, and become the daughter nuclei of two daughter cells. In short, karyokinesis has been observed here as elsewhere (see p. 46).

While we cannot at present define the physiological import of the nucleus, we must recognise its importance. Thus Bruno Hofer has shown that when an *Amæba* is cut in two, the part with the nucleus lives and grows normally, while the part without any nucleus sooner or later dies; and Balbiani has observed that in the case of Infusorians cut into pieces, those parts which have nuclei survive, while if no nucleus is present in the fragment, the wound may remain unhealed, and death ensues. There seems no reason why one may not combine the view of Weismann, that the nucleus bears the essential hereditary substances, with the view that it is a trophic, or, at any rate, a vital centre in the cell.

In naked Protozoa the outer part of the cell-substance ("ectoplasm") is often clearer and less granular than the inner part ("endoplasm"), but this difference is a physical one of little importance. In corticate Protozoa there is a more definite rind or thickened margin of cell-substance. Outside this there may be a "cuticle" distinct from the living matter, sometimes consisting of chitin, or gelatin, or rarely of cellulose. The cuticle may form a cyst, which is either a protection during drought, or a sheath within which the unit proceeds to divide into numerous spores. Moreover, the cuticle may become the basis of a shell formed from foreign particles, or made by the animal itself of lime, flint, or "horny" material.

In the cell-substance there may be bubbles of water taken in with food particles (food vacuoles), contractile vacuoles, fibres which seem to be specially contractile (in Gregarines), spicules of flint or threads of horn-like material, which may build up a connected framework, and the pigments already mentioned.

#### REPRODUCTION OF PROTOZOA.

Growth and reproduction are on a different plane from the other functions. Growth occurs when income exceeds expenditure, and when constructive or anabolic processes are in the ascendant. Reproduction occurs at the limit of growth, or sometimes in disadvantageous conditions, when disruptive or katabolic processes gain some relative predominance.



As it is by cell division that all embryos are formed from the egg, and all growth is effected, the beginnings of this process are of much interest. (a) Some very simple Protozoa seem to reproduce by what looks like the rupture of outlying parts of the cell-substance. (b) The production of a small bud from a parent cell is not uncommon, and some Rhizopods (*e.g.* *Arcella*, *Pelomyxa*) give off many buds at once. (c) Commoner, however, is the definite and orderly process by which a unit divides into two—ordinary cell division. (d) Finally, if many divisions occur in rapid succession or contemporaneously, and usually within a cyst enclosing the parent cell, *i.e.* in narrowly limited time and space, the result is the formation of a considerable number of small units or spores. In the great majority of cases, each result of division is seen to include part of the parent nucleus.

A many-celled animal multiplies in most cases by liberating reproductive cells—ova and spermatozoa—different from the somatic cells which make up the “body.” A Protozoon multiplies by dividing wholly into daughter cells. This difference between Metazoa and Protozoa in their modes of multiplication is a consequence of the difference between multicellular and unicellular life. Each part of a divided Protozoon is able to live on, and will itself divide after a time, whereas the liberated spermatozoa and ova of a higher animal die unless they unite.

By sexual reproduction we mean—(a) the liberation of special reproductive cells from a “body,” and (b) the fertilisation of ova by spermatozoa. It is obvious that unicellular Protozoa can show nothing corresponding to sexual reproduction in the first sense. Moreover, Protozoa can live on, dividing and multiplying, for prolonged periods without the occurrence of anything like fertilisation.

So it is often stated as a characteristic of Protozoa, that “they have no sexual reproduction.” But if this mean that the unicellular Protozoa have no special reproductive cells, then it is a truism. If, however, the statement mean that the Protozoa are without anything corresponding to fertilisation, then it is not true. For in many of the Protozoa there occurs at intervals a process of “conjugation” in which two individuals unite either permanently or temporarily. This is an incipiently sexual process; it is the analogue of the fertilisation of an ovum by a spermatozoon.

(1) It is one of the recurrent phases in the life history of some of the simplest Protozoa (*Proteomyxa* and *Mycetozoa*) (see p. 97), that a



number of amœboid units flow together into a composite mass, which has been called a "*plasmodium*."

(2) It is known that more than two individual Gregarines and other forms occasionally unite. To this the term "multiple conjugation" has been applied.

(3) Commonest, however, is the union of two apparently similar individuals, either permanently, so that the two fuse into one, or temporarily, so that an exchange of material is effected. Permanent conjugation has been observed in several Rhizopods, Infusorians, and Gregarines. Temporary conjugation is well known in not a few ciliated Infusorians, and it is possible that a curious end-to-end union of certain Gregarines is of the same nature, or it may be of the nature of a "*plasmodium*" formation.

(4) There are some cases where one of the conjugating individuals is larger and less active than the other. Thus in *Vorticella*, a small free-swimming form unites and fuses completely with a stalked individual of normal size. To call this "dimorphic conjugation" is hardly necessary, since it is evidently equivalent to the fertilisation of a passive ovum by an active spermatozoon, one of the well-known characteristics of reproduction in the Metazoa.

In *Volvox* this is even more obvious, for the small and active cells, both in shape and method of formation, recall the spermatozoa of higher forms. The conjugation of ciliated Infusorians, such as *Paramecium*, has been studied with great care by Gruber, Maupas, R. Hertwig, and others, and though their results are not quite harmonious, the main facts are secure. In many ciliated Infusorians there are two nuclear bodies—one large, the other small. The smaller micronucleus lies by the side of the larger macronucleus. The micronucleus divides into parts, while the macronucleus degenerates. Two individual Infusorians (A and B) lie side by side in close contact, a portion of the micronucleus of A passes into B, and fuses with a portion of the micronucleus of B, similarly a portion of the micronucleus of B passes into A, and fuses with a portion of the micronucleus of A. In short, mutual fertilisation occurs, the conjugating individuals separate, a new micronucleus and a new macronucleus are established in each.

The precise interpretation of the process is to some extent a matter of mere opinion. We may regard it as a mutual rejuvenescence, each unit supplying some substances or qualities which the other lacks; or we may regard it rather as a process by which the average character of the species is sustained, peculiarities or pathological variations of one individual being counteracted by other characters in the neighbour (apparently no near relation) with which it conjugates; or we may see in it a source of variation as the result of new combinations among the essential hereditary substances. The researches of M. Maupas have thrown much light on the facts, and some of his results deserve summary.

It has been often alleged that the subsequent dividing is accelerated by conjugation; but Maupas finds that this is by no means the case. The reverse in fact is true. While a pair of Infusorians (*Onychodromus grandis*) were engaged in conjugation, a single individual had, by ordinary asexual division, given rise to a family of from forty thousand



to fifty thousand individuals. Moreover, the intense internal changes preparatory to fertilisation, and the general inertia during subsequent reconstruction, not only involve loss of time, but expose the Infusorians to great risk. Conjugation seems to involve danger and death rather than to conduce to multiplication and birth.

The riddle was, in part at least, solved by a long series of careful observations. In November 1885, M. Maupas isolated an Infusorian (*Stylonichia pustulata*), and observed its generations till March 1886. By that time there had been two hundred and fifteen generations produced by ordinary division, and since these lowly organisms do not conjugate with near relatives, there had been no conjugation.

What was the result? At the date referred to, the family was observed to have exhausted itself. The members were being born old and debilitated. The asexual division came to a standstill, and the powers of nutrition were lost.

Meanwhile, before the generations had exhausted themselves, several of the individuals had been restored to their natural conditions, where they conjugated with unrelated forms of the same species. One of these was again isolated, and watched for five months. In this case, up till the one hundred and thirtieth generation, it was found that on removal to fresh conditions the organisms were capable of conjugating with unrelated forms. Later this power was lost, and at the one hundred and eightieth generation the individuals of the same family were observed making vain attempts to conjugate with each other.

We thus see that without normal conjugation the whole family becomes senile, degenerates both morphologically and physiologically. Morphologically, the individuals decrease in size, until they measure only a quarter of their original proportions, the micronucleus atrophies completely or partially, the chromatin of the macronucleus gradually disappears, other internal structures also degenerate. Physiologically, the powers of nutrition, division, and conjugation come to a standstill, and this senile decay of the isolated individuals or family inevitably ends in death.

The general conclusion is evident. Sexual union in those Infusorians, dangerous, perhaps, for the individual life, and a loss of time so far as immediate multiplication is concerned, is absolutely necessary for the species. The life runs in strictly limited cycles of asexual division. Conjugation with allied forms must occur, else the whole life ebbs. Without it, the Protozoa, which some have called "immortal," die a natural death. Conjugation is the necessary condition of their eternal youth.

**Bionomics.**—Many Protozoa raise organic débris once more into the circle of life, and many form part of the food of higher animals. Thus those pelagic Foraminifera and Radiolarians, which dying sink to the great oceanic depths, form along with more substantial débris the fundamental food supply in that plantless world. Fundamental, since it is plain that the deep-sea animals cannot all be living on one another.



Almost every kind of nutritive relation occurs among the Protozoa. Predatory life is well illustrated by most Infusorians, and thoroughgoing parasitism by the Gregarines; *Opalina* in the rectum of the frog may serve as a type of those which feed on decaying débris, and *Volvox* of those which are holophytic. Radiolarians, with their partner Algæ, exhibit the mutual benefits of symbiosis, the plants utilising the carbon dioxide of their transparent bearers, the animals being aërated by the oxygen which the plants give off in sunlight, and probably nourished by the carbohydrates which they build up. Some of the parasitic forms, especially among the Sporozoa, are of serious importance to higher animals.

Though Protozoa may be seriously infected by Bacteria, by *Acineta* parasites, by some fungi, like *Chytridium*, etc., fatal infection is rare, because of the power of intracellular digestion which most Protozoa possess. "The parasite," Metchnikoff says, "makes its onslaught by secreting toxic or solvent substances, and defends itself by paralysing the digestive and expulsive activity of its host; while the latter exercises a deleterious influence on the aggressor by digesting it and turning it out of the body, and defends itself by the secretions with which it surrounds itself." With this struggle should be compared that between phagocytes and Bacteria in most multicellular animals.

Few Protozoa come into direct touch with human life, but man has several Protozoon parasites, e.g. *Amœba coli*, associated with inflammation of the intestinal mucous membrane; *Coccidium oviforme*, a Sporozoon affecting the liver; and various Infusorians.

**History.**—Of animals so small and delicate as Protozoa, we do not expect to find distinct relics in the much-battered ancient rocks. But there are hints of Foraminifer shells even in the Cambrian; more than hints in the Silurian and Devonian; and an abundant representation in rocks of the Carboniferous and several subsequent epochs. The shells of calcareous Foraminifera form an important part of chalk deposits. The famous *Eozoon canadense* of Cambrian rocks is regarded by most as a purely mineral formation.

There seem at least to be sufficient relics to warrant Neumayr's generalisation in regard to Foraminifera, that the earliest had shells of irregularly agglutinated particles (*Astrorhizidæ*), that these were succeeded by forms with regularly agglutinated shells, exhibiting types of architecture which were subsequently expressed in lime.



Relics of siliceous Radiolarian shells are also known from Silurian strata onwards, with, perhaps, the exception of the Devonian. Best known are those which form the later Tertiary deposits of Barbados earth, from which Ehrenberg described no fewer than two hundred and seventy-eight species.

**General zoological interest.**—The Protozoa illustrate, in free and single life, forms and functions like those of the cells which compose the many-celled animals. Typically, they show great structural or morphological simplicity, but great physiological complexity. Within its single cell the Protozoon discharges all the usual functions, while in a higher animal distinct sets of cells have been specialised for various activities, and each cell has usually one function dominant over the others. The Metazoan cells, in acquiring an increased power of doing one thing, have lost the Protozoan power of doing many things.

The Protozoa remain at the level represented by the reproductive cells of higher forms, and are comparable to reproductive cells which have not formed bodies. In the sexual colonies of *Volvox*, however, we see the beginning of that difference between reproductive cells and body cells which has become so characteristic of Metazoa. The Protozoa are self-recuperative, and in normal conditions they are not so liable to "natural death" as are many-celled animals. Weismann and others maintain that they are physically immortal.

They illustrate—(a) the beginnings of reproduction, from mere breakage to definite division, either into two, as in fission, or in limited time and space into many units, as in the formation of spores within a cyst; (b) the beginnings of fertilisation, from "the flowing together of exhausted cells" and multiple conjugation, to the specialised sexual union of some Infusorians, where two individuals become closely united; (c) the beginnings of sex, in the difference of size and of constitution sometimes observed between two conjugating units; (d) the beginnings of many-celled animals in the associated groups or colonies which occur in several of the Protozoan classes. These colonies show a gradation in complexity. *Raphidiophrys* and other Heliozoa form loose colonies, which arise by the want of separation of the products of fission. Among the Radiolarians there are



several colonial forms ; in these the individuals are united by their extra-capsular protoplasm, but are all equivalent. In *Proterospongia* the cells show considerable morphological distinctiveness ; some are flagellate, some amœboid, some encysted and spore-forming. Again, in *Volvox*, as we noticed above, the cells of the colonies show a distinction into nutritive and reproductive units.

Lastly, in their antithesis of passivity and activity, constructive and destructive preponderance, anabolism and katabolism, the Protozoa illustrate the phases of the cell-cycle, and so furnish a key to the variation of higher animals.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### PORIFERA—SPONGES.

- A. Calcarea (Calcispongiæ).
- B. Non-Calcarea. 

{	Hexactinellida.	{	Monaxonida.
{	Demospongiæ.	{	Tetractinellida.

SPONGES seem to have been the first animals to attain marked success in the formation of a "body." For though their details are often complex, their general structure is simpler than the average of any other class of Metazoa, and some of the simplest forms do not rise high above the level of the gastrula embryo. A "body" has been gained, but it shows relatively little division of labour or unified life; it is a community of cells imperfectly integrated. There are no definite organs, and the tissues are, as it were, in the making. Sponges are passive, vegetative animals, and do not seem to have led on to anything higher; but they are successful in the struggle for existence, and are strong in numbers alike of species and of individuals.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Sponges are diploblastic (two-layered) Metazoa, the middle stratum of cells, the mesogloea, not attaining to the definiteness of a proper mesoderm. There is no cœlom or body cavity. The longitudinal axis of the body corresponds to that of the embryo; in other words, the general symmetry of the gastrula is retained. In these three characters the Sponges agree with the Cœlentera, and differ from higher (triploblastic and cœlomate) Metazoa.*

*The body varies greatly in shape, even within the same*



species. It is traversed by canals, through which currents of water bear food inwards and waste outwards. Numerous minute pores on the surface open into afferent canals, leading into a cavity or cavities lined by endoderm cells, many or all

of which are flagellate. To the activity of the flagella the all-important water currents are due. The endodermic or gastric cavity may be a simple tube, or it may have radially outgrowing chambers, or it may be represented by branched spaces, from which efferent canals lead to the exterior. Where there is a distinct central cavity there is usually but one large exhalant aperture (osculum), but in other cases there are many exhalant apertures.

The ectoderm is the least developed layer; it covers the body, and is perhaps continued into the afferent canals. The endoderm lines most of the internal cavities, and is typically flagellate. The intervening mesoglaea contains a skeleton of lime, flint, or spongin; amœboid cells or phagocytes, important in digestion and excretion; reproductive cells, and other elements.

Budding is very common, and in a few cases buds are set adrift. Both hermaphrodite and unisexual forms occur. The sexually-produced embryo is almost always developed within the mesoglaea, and leaves the sponge as a ciliated larva. With the exception of one family, all are marine.

**Description of a simple sponge.**—A very simple sponge, such as *Ascetta*, is a hollow vase, moored at one end to rock or seaweed, with a large exhalant aperture at the opposite pole, and with numerous minute inhalant pores penetrating the walls. These walls con-

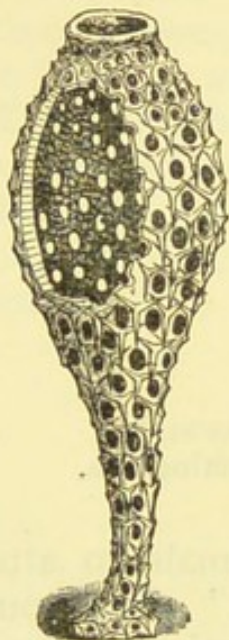


FIG. 48. — Simple sponge (*Ascetta primordialis*).—After Haeckel.

Note the vase-like form, the apical osculum, the inhalant pores in the walls.

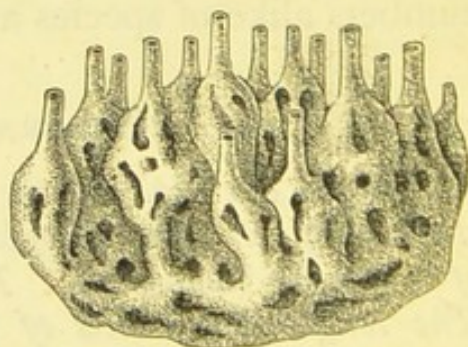


FIG. 48A.—A sponge colony.



sist of—(1) a flat ectoderm; (2) a mesogloea containing triradiate calcareous spicules, phagocytes, and reproductive elements; and (3) an endoderm lining the central cavity, and composed of collared flagellate cells, almost exactly like some of the monad Infusorians. This simple sponge is not much above the gastrula level; it agrees generally with a simple Cœlenterate, such as *Hydra*, but differs from it in the absence of tentacles and stinging cells, and in the greater development of the mesogloea.

**More complicated forms.**—But a description of a simple sponge like *Ascetta* conveys little idea of the structure of a complex form such as the bath-sponge (*Euspongia*). Let us consider the origin of complications.

(a) Sponges—long regarded as plants—are plant-like in being sedentary and passive. They seem also to feed easily and well. Like plants, they form buds, the outcome of surplus nourishment. These buds, like the suckers of a rose-bush, often acquire some apparent independence, and the sponge looks like many vases, not like one. Moreover, as they grow these buds may fuse, like the branches of a tree tied closely together. Thus the structure becomes more intricate.

(b) In the simple sponge the gastric cavity of the vase is completely lined by the collared endoderm cells (*Ascon* type). But the endoderm may grow out into radial chambers, and the walls of these may also be folded into side aisles (*Sycon* type). The outgrowing of the endoderm into the mesogloea may be continued even further, and the cells may become pavement-like, except in the minute flagellate chambers, where the characteristic collared type is retained (*Leucon* type). (See Fig. 50.)

[Speculatively, it may be suggested that the characteristic folding or outgrowth of the endoderm is necessitated by the

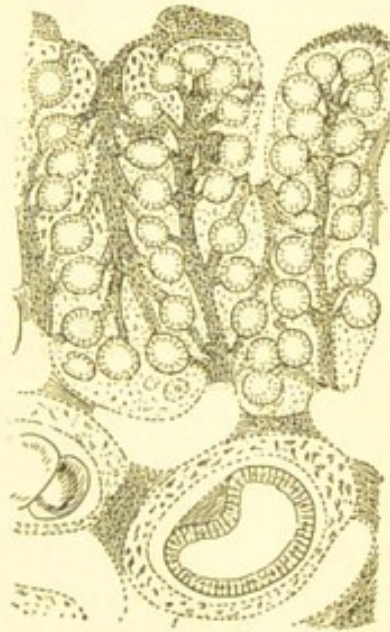


FIG. 49.—Section of a sponge.—After F. E. Schulze.

Showing inhalant canals, flagellate chambers, a gastrula forming in the mesogloea, etc.



fact that the endoderm cells are better nourished and multiply more rapidly than those of the ectoderm, which

thus fails to keep pace with the inner layer.]

(c) By infoldings of the skin—ectoderm and a subjacent sheath of mesogloea—subdermal spaces may be formed; an outer cortex may be distinctly differentiated from the internal region in which the flagellate chambers occur; the pores may collect into sieve-like areas, which open into dome-like cavities; these and many other complications are common.

(d) The *ectoderm* is usually described as a covering layer of flat epithelium, but flask-shaped cells have also been observed (Bidder). It may be folded inwards, as we have noticed, and, according to some, it also lines the incurrent or afferent canals in whole or in part. In a few cases, e.g. *Oscarella lobularis*, it is ciliated, and its cells may also exhibit contractility, as around the osculum of *Ascetta clathrus*, though the contractile elements usually belong to the mesogloea.

The *endoderm* consists typically of collared flagellate cells, but in the more complex sponges these are replaced, except

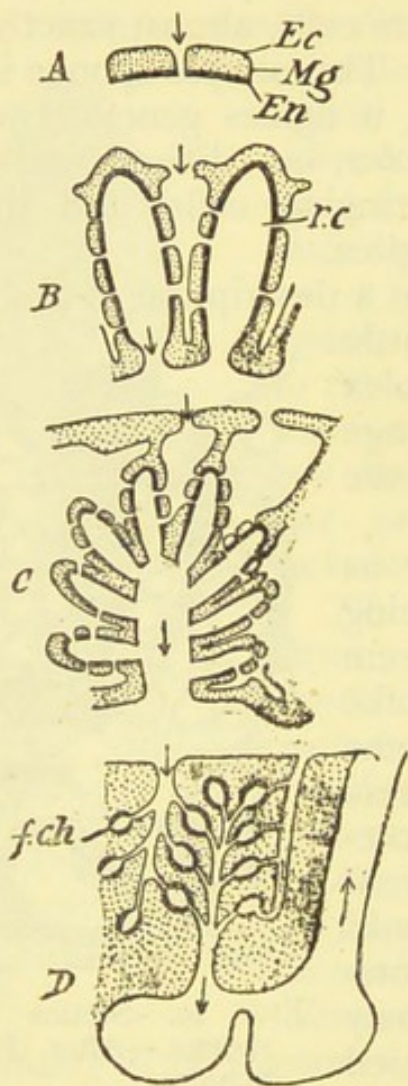


FIG. 50.—Diagram showing types of canal system.—After Korschelt and Heider. The flagellate regions are dark throughout, the mesogloea is dotted, the arrows show the direction of the currents. All the figures represent cross-sections through the wall.

- A. Simple *Ascon* type (*Ec.*, ectoderm; *En.*, endoderm; *Mg.*, mesogloea).
- B. *Sycon* type, with flagellate radial chambers (*r.c.*).
- C. *Leucon* type, with flagellate side aisles on the main radial chambers.
- D. Still more complex type, with small flagellate chambers (*f.ch.*).



in the flagellate chambers, by flat epithelial cells, with or without flagella.

The *mesoglæa* contains very varied elements, and illustrates the beginnings of different kinds of tissue. Thus there are migrant amoeboid cells (phagocytes); irregular connective tissue cells embedded in a little jelly; spindle-shaped connective tissue cells, united into fibrous strands; contractile cells, *e.g.* those forming a sphincter around the oscula of some forms, such as *Pachymatisma*; skeleton-making cells; pigment-containing cells; supposed nerve cells, projecting on the surface, and believed to be connected internally with multipolar (ganglion?) cells; and lastly, the reproductive cells, which are connected by transitional forms with the ordinary phagocytes.

(*e*) The skeleton consists of calcareous or siliceous spicules, or of spongin fibres, or of combinations of the two last. A calcareous spicule is formed of calcite, with a slight sheath and core of organic matter; a siliceous spicule is formed of colloid silica or opal; the spongin is chemically somewhat like silk. Uniradiate, biradiate, triradiate, quadri-radiate, sexradiate, and multiradiate spicules occur, and in a general way it may be said that they are arranged so that they give most architectural stability. Each is formed within a single cell, and may be speculatively regarded as an organised excretion. "During its growth," Professor Sollas says, "the spicule slowly passes from the interior to the exterior of the sponge, and is finally (in at least some sponges—*Geodia*, *Stelletta*) cast out as an effete product." The fibres of spongin are formed as the secretions of mesoglæa cells, known as spongioblasts.

**Ordinary functions.**—Excepting the fresh-water Spongillidæ, all Sponges are marine, occurring from between tide marks to great depths. After embryonic life is past, they live moored to rocks, shells, seaweeds, and the like. Their motor activity is almost completely restricted to the lashing movements of the flagella, the migrations of the phagocytes, and the contraction of muscular mesoglæal cells, especially around the exhalant apertures. In the closure of the inhalant pores, sponges show sensitiveness to injurious influences, but how far this is localised in specialised cells is uncertain.



The most important fact in the life of a Sponge is that which Robert Grant first observed,—that currents of water pass gently in by the inhalant pores, and more forcibly out by the exhalant aperture or apertures. This may be demonstrated by adding powdered carmine to the water. The instreaming currents of water bear dissolved air and supplies of food, such as Infusorians, Diatoms, and particles of organic débris. The outflowing current carries away waste. When a sponge is fed with readily recognisable substances, such as carmine or milk, and afterwards sectioned, the grains or globules may be found—(a) in the collared endoderm cells; (b) in the adjacent phagocytes of the mesogloea; (c) in the phagocytes surrounding the subdermal spaces, if these exist. It is uncertain whether the epithelium of the subdermal spaces or the collared endoderm is the more important area of absorption, but it is certain that the phagocytes play an important part in engulfing and transporting particles, in digesting those which are useful, and in getting rid of the useless. In an extract of several sponges, Krukenberg found a (tryptic) digestive ferment, probably formed within the phagocytes, but digestion is wholly intracellular.

Many sponges contain much pigment; thus the lipochrome pigment (see Chap. XXVIII.) zoonerythrin is common, and, like some others, such as floridine, is regarded as helping in respiration. The green pigment of the fresh-water sponge is closely analogous, if not identical, with chlorophyll, and probably renders some measure of holophytic nutrition possible.

**Reproduction.**—If a sponge be cut into pieces, these may regenerate the whole—a fact which illustrates the relatively undifferentiated state of the sponge body. It is possible that fission may sometimes occur naturally.

The frequent budding is merely a kind of continuous growth, but when buds are set adrift, as sometimes happens, we have discontinuous growth or asexual reproduction.

In the fresh-water Spongillidæ there is a peculiar mode of reproduction by statoblasts or gemmules. A number of mesogloéal cells occur in a clump, some forming an internal mass, others a complex protective capsule, with capstan-like spicules, known as amphidiscs. According to W. Marshall, the life history is as follows:—In autumn the sponge



suffers from the cold and the scarcity of food, and dies away. But throughout the moribund parent gemmules are formed. These survive the winter, and in April or May they float away from the dead parent, and develop into new sponges. Some become short-lived males, others more stable females. The ova produced by the latter, and fertilised by spermatozoa from the former, develop into a summer generation of sponges, which, in turn, die away in autumn, and give rise to gemmules. The life history thus illustrates what is called alternation of generations (see p. 54). Interpreted from a utilitarian point of view, the formation of gemmules is a life-saving expedient. As Professor Sollas says, "the gemmules serve primarily a protective purpose, ensuring the persistence of the race, while as a secondary function they serve for dispersal."

All Sponges produce sex cells, which seem to arise from amœboid mesogloea cells retaining an embryonic character. In the case of the ovum, the amœboid cell increases in size, and passes into a resting stage; in the case of the male elements, the amœboid cell divides into a spherical cluster of numerous minute spermatozoa. The similar origin of the ova and spermatozoa is of interest. Most sponges are unisexual, but many are hermaphrodite. In the latter case, however, either the production of ova or the production of spermatozoa usually preponderates, probably in dependence on nutritive conditions.

**Development.**—It is not surprising to find that there is great variety of development in the lowest class of Metazoa; it seems almost as if numerous experiments had been made, none attended with progressive success.

The minute ovum, without any protective membrane, usually lies near one of the canals, and is fertilised by a spermatozoon borne to it by the water. It exhibits a certain power of migration, as in some Hydroids. Previous to fertilisation, the usual extrusion of polar bodies has been observed in a few cases, and is doubtless general. Segmentation is total and usually equal, and results in a spherical or oval embryo more or less flagellate. This leaves the parent sponge, swims about for a time, then settles down, and undergoes a larval metamorphosis often difficult to understand. It is peculiarly difficult to bring the history of the germinal layers in Sponges into line with that in other Metazoa.

(a) In the small calcareous sponge *Sycandra raphanus* (Fig. 51), as described by F. E. Schulze, the segmentation results in a hollow ball of



cells—the *blastula*. A few cells at the lower pole remain large, and are filled with nutritive granules; the other cells divide rapidly and become small, clear, columnar, and flagellate. The large granular cells become temporarily invaginated, forming what is called a "*pseudo-gastrula*." This leaves the parent and the granular cells right themselves, forming the posterior hemisphere of the embryo, now called an *amphi-blastula*. It swims for a time actively, but the flagellate cells of the anterior hemisphere are invaginated into or overgrown by the large granular cells, and thus what is generally called the *gastrula* stage results. This

soon settles down, on rock or seaweed, with the blastopore or gastrula mouth downwards, and is moored by amoeboid processes from the granular cells, which likewise obliterate the blastopore. The granular cells lose their granules, for the larva is not yet feeding; the now internal flagella disappear in the absence of the stimulating water; a mesogloea with spicules begins to be formed between the inner and outer layer, probably by migrants from the latter. But this disadvantageous state of affairs cannot last. Pores open through the walls, the entrance of water enables the inner cells to recover their flagella, and an exhalant aperture is ruptured at the upper pole. The young sponge is now in an *Ascon* stage, from which, by the outgrowth (?) of the inner layer into radial chambers, it passes into the permanent *Sycon* form, grows into a cylinder, and becomes differentiated in detail (Fig. 51).

(b) In *Oscarella* (*Halisarca*) *lobularis* (Fig. 52), a sponge without any

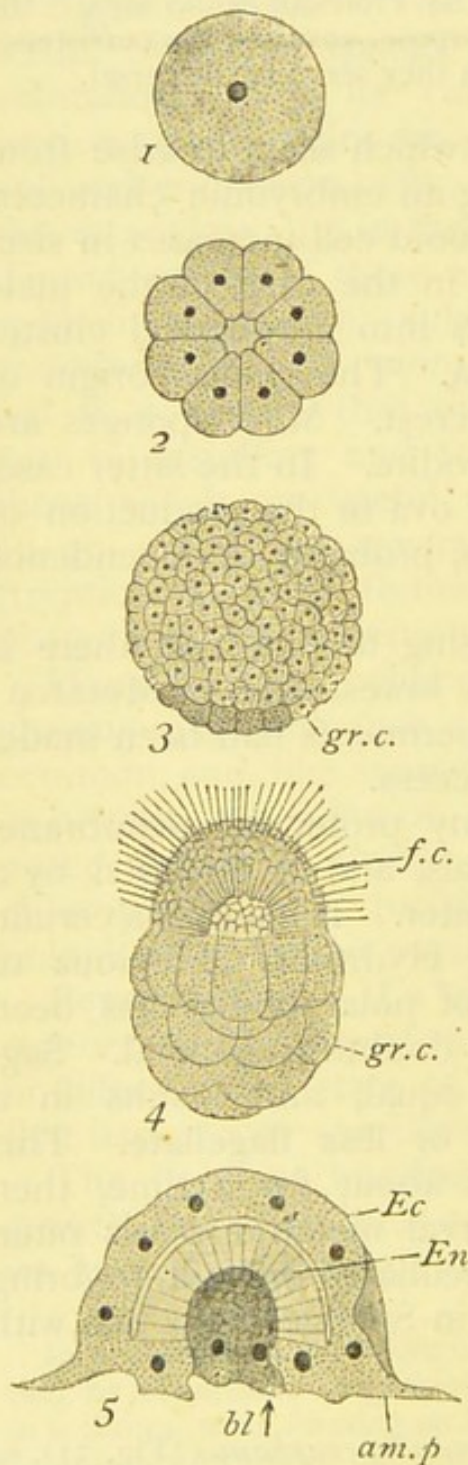


FIG. 51.—Development of *Sycandra raphanus*.—After F. E. Schulze.

1. Ovum.
2. Section of 16 cell stage.
3. Blastula with 8 granular cells (*gr.c.*) at lower pole.
4. Free-swimming amphiblastula, with upper hemisphere of flagellate cells (*f.c.*), and lower hemisphere of granular cells.
5. Gastrula stage settled down. *Ec.*, outer layer (ectoderm?); *En.*, inner layer (endoderm?); *bl.*, closing blastopore; *am.p.*, mooring amoeboid processes.



skeleton, the ovum segments equally into a blastula, which is flagellate all over. This free-swimming stage may be invaginated from either pole to form a hemispherical gastrula, which settles mouth downwards. Pores, an osculum, and the mesogloea are formed as before, and the inner layer becomes folded into flagellate chambers.

(c) Another type, seen for instance in a horny sponge, *Spongelia*, results in a flagellate larva, whose cavity is filled up with what may be called gelatinous connective tissue, from which mesogloea and endoderm are subsequently differentiated. Such a larva is called a *parenchymula*.

As these are not all the types of development which occur among sponges, the general fact is impressive, that in this lowest class of Metazoa there has been considerable plasticity in development.

### Classification.—

*A. Porifera Calcareo*, with skeleton of calcareous spicules:—

Order I.—Homocœla.—Endoderm wholly composed of collared flagellate cells, *e.g.* *Ascetta*, *Leucosolenia*.

Order II.—Heterocœla.—Endoderm consists of collared flagellate cells in radial tubes or chambers, and of flat epithelium elsewhere, *e.g.* *Grantia*, *Sycon*.

*B. Porifera non-Calcareo*, skeleton of silica or of spongin, or of both.

(1) Hexactinellida, with sexradiate siliceous spicules, canal system usually simple, with *Sycon* chambers. The members live chiefly in deep water, *e.g.* Venus Flower-Basket (*Euplectella*) and the Glass-Rope Sponge (*Hyalonema*).

(2) Monaxonida, with siliceous spicules (which are not quadri- or sex-radiate), or with “horny” skeleton, or with both.

Order I.—Monaxona, with spicules only, *e.g.* Mermaid’s Gloves (*Chalina oculata*), Crumb-of-Bread Sponge (*Halichondria* or *Amorphina panicea*), Fresh-Water Sponge (*Spongilla*).

Order II.—Ceratoso, “horny” sponges with or without spicules, *e.g.* the Bath-Sponge (*Euspongia*).

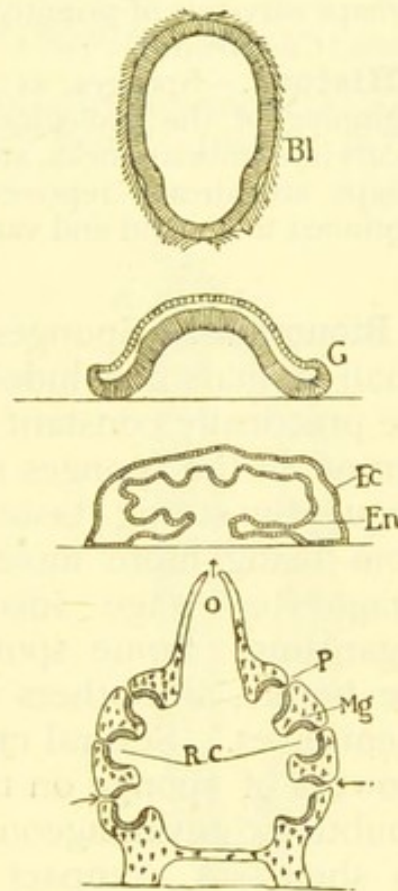


FIG. 52.—Diagrammatic representation of development of *Oscarella lobularis*.—After Heider.

*Bl.*, Free-swimming blastula with flagella; *G.*, gastrula settled down.

Next figure shows folding of endoderm (*En.*); *Ec.*, ectoderm. Lowest figure shows radial chambers (*R.C.*); Mesogloea (*Mg.*); inhalant pore (*P.*); exhalant osculum (*O.*).



- (3) Tetractinellida, mostly with quadriradiate spicules, or with triænes, in which a main shaft bears at one end three branches diverging at equal angles, *e.g.* *Geodia*, *Pachymatisma*, *Plakina*.

There are also a few sponges (Myxospongiæ) without any skeleton, perhaps survivals of primitive types (*Oscarella*, *Halisarca*) or degraded forms (*Chondrosia*).

**History.**—Sponges, as one would expect, date back almost to the beginning of the geological record. Thus the siliceous *Protospongia* occurs in Cambrian rocks, and in the next series—the Silurian—the main groups are already represented. From that time till now they have continued to abound and vary.

**Bionomics.**—Sponges are living thickets in which many small animals play hide-and-seek. Many of the associations are practically constant and harmless, but some burrowing worms do the sponges much damage. The spicules and a frequently strong taste or odour doubtless save sponges from being more molested than they are; the numerous phagocytes wage successful war with intruding micro-organisms. Some sponges, such as *Clione* on oyster-shells, are borers, and others smother forms of life as passive as themselves. Several crabs, such as *Dromia*, are masked by growths of sponge on their shells, and the free transport is doubtless advantageous to the sponge till the crab casts its shell. A compact orange-coloured sponge (*Suberites domuncula*) of peculiar odour often grows round a whelk-shell tenanted by a hermit-crab, and gradually eats into the shell-substance. Within several sponges minute Algæ live, like the "yellow cells" of Radiolarians, in mutual partnership or symbiosis. Finally, sponges deserve mention as factors in human civilisation.

**General zoological interest and position.**—Sponges have this great interest, that they form the first successful class of Metazoa. They illustrate the beginnings of a "body," and the beginnings of tissues. Along with the Coelentera, from which it is the almost unanimous opinion that they must be held distinct, they differ markedly from the triploblastic, Coelomate Metazoa, which do not retain the radial symmetry of the gastrula.

Their origin is wrapped in obscurity, though there is much to be said for the view that they are the non-progressive descendants of primitive gastrula-like ancestors of



sluggish constitution. It does not seem likely that they have led on to anything higher, they rather represent a by-road in Metazoan evolution.

# INCERTÆ SEDES. MESOZOA.

The title Mesozoa was applied by Van Beneden to some very simple organisms which appear to occupy a very humble position in the

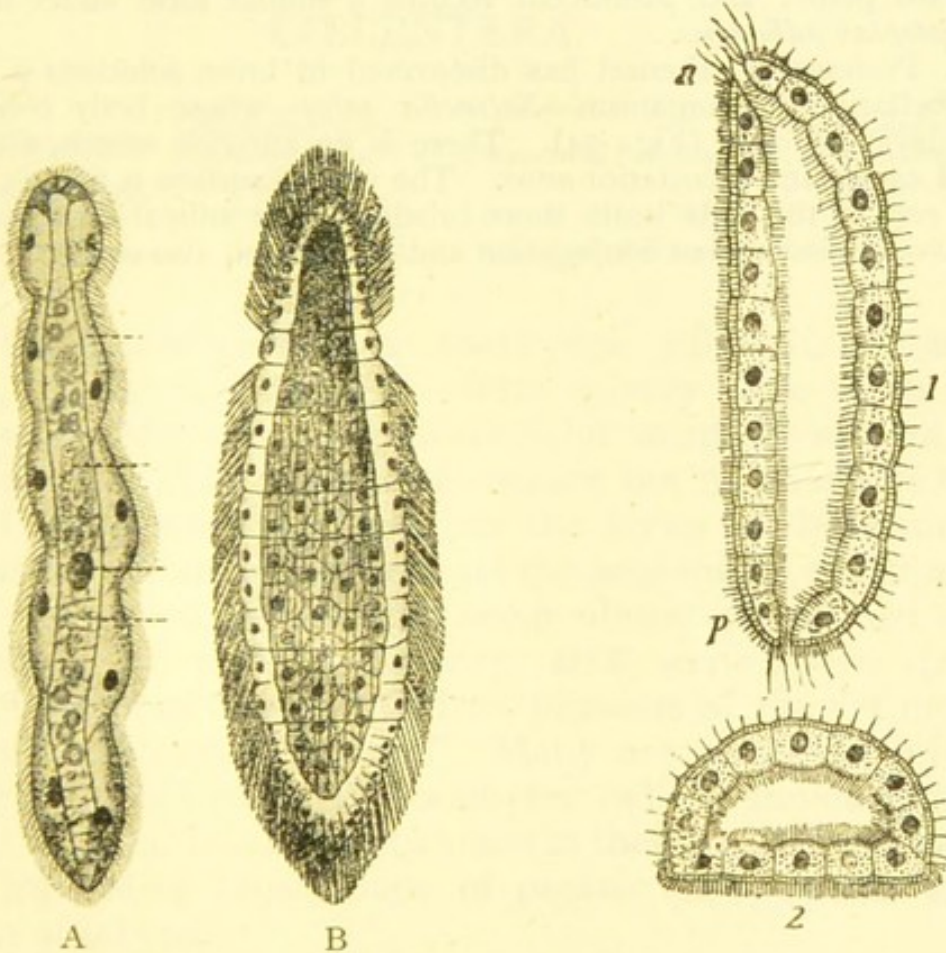


FIG. 53.—A. young *Dicyema*.—After Whitman. B. Female Orthonectid (*Rhopalura Giardii*).—After Julin.

*e.*, Ectoderm; *en.*, inner endoderm cell with nucleus (*n.*); and embryo (*em.*). Note the segmentation and the fibrillation supposed to be muscular.

FIG. 54.—*Salinella*.—After Frenzel.

1. Longitudinal section—*a.*, anterior; *p.*, posterior.
2. Transverse section.

Metazoan series. He regarded them as intermediate between Protozoa and Metazoa; but others have remarked on their resemblance to Platyhelminthes, and especially to the sporocysts of certain Flukes. They may perhaps be regarded as precociously reproductive sporocysts. It will be enough here merely to notice four types:—



1. Dicyemidæ (type *Dicyema*) occur as parasites in Cephalopods; the body consists of a ciliated outer layer, enclosing a single multinucleate inner cell, within which egg-like germs develop, apparently without fertilisation, into dimorphic embryos (see Fig. 53, A).

2. Orthonectidæ (type *Rhopalura*) occur as parasites in Turbellarians, Brittle-stars, and Nemerteans; the body is slightly ringed, and consists of a ciliated outer layer, a subjacent sheath of contractile fibres, and an internal mass of cells, among which ova and spermatozoa appear. The sexes are separate and dimorphic (see Fig. 53, B).

3. Professor F. E. Schulze has discovered a small marine organism—*Trichoplax adhærens*—in the form of a thin, three-layered, externally ciliated plate; and Monticelli records a similar form under the title *Treptoplax adhærens*.

4. Professor J. Frenzel has discovered in brine solutions a minute Turbellarian-like organism—*Salinella salve*—whose body consists of one layer of cells (Fig. 54). There is an anterior mouth, a ciliated food canal, and a posterior anus. The ventral surface is finely ciliated, the rest of the cells bears short bristles. The animal reproduces by transverse fission, but conjugation and encystation also occur.



## CHAPTER IX.

### CŒLENTERA.

Class 1. HYDROZOA	{ Hydromedusæ. Siphonophora.	or Class 1. HYDROZOA	{ Hydromedusæ. Siphonophora.
Class 2. SCYPHOZOA	{ Acraspeda. Actinozoa.	Class 2. ACTINOZOA.	{ Scyphomedusæ.
Class 3. CTENOPHORA.		Class 3. CTENOPHORA.	

THE Cœlentera—including zoophytes, jelly-fish, sea-anemones, corals, and the like—form a very large series of Accelomate Metazoa, *i.e.* multicellular animals without a body cavity. Their simplest forms are not much above the level of the simplest sponges, but the series has been more progressive. Thus many illustrate the beginnings of definite organs. In their variety they seem almost to exhaust the possibilities of radial symmetry, and some types (*e.g.* Ctenophora) may be regarded as pioneers of the yet more progressive bilateral “worms.” Many are very vegetative, deserving the old name of zoophytes (which should rather be read backwards—Phytozoa), and in their budded colonies afford interesting illustrations of organic co-operation and division of labour.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The Cœlentera are simple, almost wholly marine, forms in which the primary long axis of the gastrula becomes the long axis of the adult, which is almost always radially symmetrical about this axis. There is no body cavity or cœlom, distinct from the primitive digestive cavity (enteron) and its outgrowths. In the lower members of the series, the primary opening of this cavity becomes the mouth of the adult, but in the more specialised types there is an (ectodermic) oral invagination,*



*which forms a gullet-tube. Between the ectoderm and endoderm of the body wall there is a supporting layer, or mesoglæa, of jelly-like consistency. In the simplest cases this is quite devoid of cells, but secondarily, they may migrate into it from the endoderm. Stinging cells of varying complexity are almost invariably present, but in almost all the Ctenophora their place is taken by adhesive cells.*

*The Cælentera exhibit two divergent types of structure, which recur constantly, in modified forms, throughout the group, and may even be both present in the course of one life history, when they illustrate the phenomenon of alternation of generations or metagenesis. Of the two, the more primitive type is the sessile tubular hydroid, which may be compared to a gastrula fixed by one end, and furnished with a crown of tentacles placed round the central aperture of the other pole. The other derived form, which has become specialised in various directions, is the active medusoid or jelly-fish type. In several divisions the formation of a calcareous "skeleton" by the hydroid type may result in the production of "corals." Multiplication by budding is common, and often results in the formation of colonies, some of which show considerable division of labour.*

*The preservation of the primary axis, the absence of true mesoderm and of a cælom, are often said to distinguish Cælentera and Sponges from the other Metazoa (Cælomata), but the results of recent researches on the nature of the mesoderm seem to rob this distinction of part of its precision.*

#### GENERAL SURVEY.

The Cœlentera or "Stinging animals" include a large number of familiar and beautiful forms. The graceful zoophytes which fringe shells and stones, and the tiny transparent bells which float in the pools; the sea-anemones which cluster in the nooks of the rocks, and the active jelly-fish which swim on the waves, are but different expressions of the antithesis so characteristic of the series, and illustrate, the former in the class Hydrozoa, the latter in the Scyphozoa, the two physiological tendencies of the Cœlentera. The delicate iridescent globes, which represent the third class, the Ctenophora, illustrate the climax of



activity, for among them there is no sessile hydroid type.

In our survey of the series, however, we must pass over these familiar types, and begin with the little fresh-water *Hydra* (Fig. 56), which is often to be found attached to the stems and leaves of water-plants. The structure here is extremely simple, but the simplicity is probably due to

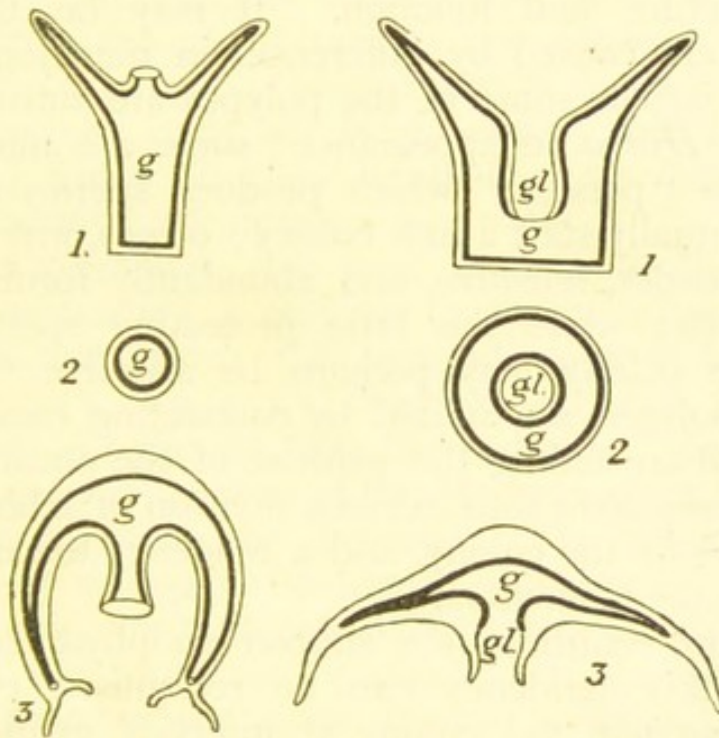


FIG. 55.—Diagram of Coelenterate structure, endoderm darker throughout.

1. To left, shows longitudinal section of *Hydra*; to right, of sea-anemone. *g.*, gut; *gl.*, incipient gullet.
2. To left, shows cross-section of *Hydra*; to right, of sea-anemone, in the region of the gullet.
3. To left, shows vertical section of Craspedote Medusoid (with velum); to right, of Acraspedote Medusa, without velum. *g.*, gut; *gl.*, gullet.

Note anatomical correspondence of the polypoid and medusoid forms.

degeneration. In favourable conditions the polype may give off daughter buds, which remain for a time attached to the parent, and then separate as independent *Hydræ*. The bud itself, before leaving the parent, may also bud, so that three generations are present. If we picture this process of gemmation, but with imperfect separation of the units, continued indefinitely, we can understand the formation of hydroid colonies, such as the zoophytes.



In such cases the colony is usually supported by an organic sheath of varying complexity.

The members of such a colony would, however, with an exception which we will consider later, be all similar and equivalent, and this is by no means true of all hydroid colonies. In *Hydractinia*, for example, which is common on shells at the shore, the colony consists of polypes of varied structure and function. It may be that these differences are caused by differences in nutrition, the fact at any rate is that some of the polypes are nutritive "persons," like *Hydra* in appearance; some are mouthless (?) reproductive "persons," which produce sperms and eggs, and so eventually start a new colony; others, with a mouth, are long, slender, sensitive, and abundantly furnished with stinging cells; while the little protecting spines at the base of the colony may perhaps be abortive "persons." All these polypes are united by connecting canals at the base, and all are fed at the expense of the nutritive "persons." *Hydractinia* thus exhibits division of labour among the members of the colony, and a tendency towards this is common in the Cœlentera.

If we now return to the simpler zoophyte colony, we find that this tendency can be recognised even here. Like *Hydractinia*, the colony at intervals exhibits reproductive "persons," different from the ordinary polypes. These, as in *Hydractinia*, may be sessile and mouthless, or they may after a time become detached and float away as delicate, pulsating swimming-bells. These swimming-bells are male and female, they give rise to male and female elements, and so to embryos, which, after a time, settle down and form new zoophyte colonies. This is an instance of alternation of generations (see p. 54).

Again, just as the predominance of passivity is exhibited in *Hydractinia* and some zoophytes, where the active swimming-bell stage is left out of the life history, so the predominance of activity is exhibited in the permanent medusoids, e.g. *Geryonia*, where the colonial hydroid stage is omitted, and the embryo becomes at once medusoid. Finally, the medusoids themselves may become colonial, and we have active floating colonies, like those of the



Portuguese man-of-war, which show, on a different plane, as much division of labour as *Hydractinia*.

The same general conclusions apply to the jelly-fish and sea-anemones. The jelly-fish present a strong resemblance to the medusoids, but are distinguished from them by their usually greater size, as well as by greater complexity and distinct anatomical differences. It is in accordance with this increased complexity that the alternation of active and passive forms, though as real, is less obvious. But even here we find one type (*Pelagia*) always locomotor, another (*Aurelia*) whose early life is sedentary, and others (Lucernarians) which in their adult life are predominantly passive, and attach themselves by a stalk.

The sea-anemones and their numerous allies may be regarded as bearing a relation to the jelly-fish, somewhat similar to that which the hydroid polypes bear to the swimming-bells (Fig. 55). They are, however, much more complicated in structure than the hydroids. Solitary forms are much commoner than in the Hydrozoa, but the colonial type is nevertheless very frequent. The colonies may be supported by an organic framework only, but very commonly there is a tendency to accumulate lime in the tissues, which results in the formation of corals. It should be noted, however, that various quite distinct polypoid types may form corals. Thus, while the most important reef-building corals are included in the Scyphozoa, the Millepores among the Hydrozoa also form very considerable calcareous colonies.

Finally, as the corals are predominantly passive, so there is a climax of activity in the Ctenophores, which move by cilia united into combs, and often shine with that "phosphorescence" which is an expression of intensity of life in many active animals. The origin of the Ctenophores is still obscure; Gøtte believes that they have arisen from a scyphula, the hypothetical ancestor of the Scyphozoa.

As to diet, the active Ctenophores are carnivorous, attaching themselves by adhesive cells to one another, or to other small animals; many of the larger forms, *e.g.* sea-anemones and jelly-fish, are able to engulf booty of considerable size; the majority, however, feed on small organisms, in seizing and killing which the tentacles and stinging cells are actively used.



Stinging cells or cnidoblasts are so characteristic of Cœlentera that they deserve particular notice. They occur in all Cœlentera except the Ctenophores, and even there they have been detected in *Euchlora rubra*. They also occur in some Turbellarian worms, and in the papillæ of Æolid nudibranchs among molluscs. Each cnidoblast contains a capsule or nematocyst, which encloses a coiled lasso lying in an irritant gelatinous substance. The nematocyst fills most of the cell, but there is a nucleus, etc., besides. At the distal end there may be a trigger-like cnidocil or a fringe of bristles, etc. At the proximal end there may be fixing processes. In some Anthozoa the coiled lasso is simply ruptured out, but in most cases it is evaginated. The basal part of the lasso is often stronger than the rest, and may bear stilets; spirally arranged roughnesses and bristles are also frequent on the thread itself. The explosion of the cnidoblast is believed by most authorities to be due to an entrance of water, which causes the gelatinous substance to swell up. According to others, the cnidoblast contracts as a whole. The action of the threads is both mechanical and chemical. They are fixed, e.g. by help of the stilets, into the victim, and the irritant substance poisons the wound, causing paralysis or death in small animals.

#### TYPES OF CŒLENTERA.

*First Type.*—HYDRA, illustrative of the Class HYDROZOA.

**General life.**—The genus *Hydra* is represented by several species, e.g. the green *Hydra viridis* and the brownish *Hydra fusca*, both widely distributed in fresh water. They are among the simplest of Cœlentera, for the body is but a two-layered tube, with a crown of (6–10) hollow tentacles around the mouth, and with no organs except those concerned in reproduction. The body is usually fixed by its base to some aquatic plant, often to the underside of a duckweed. It may measure  $\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$  in. in length, but it is as thin as a needle, and contracts into a minute knob.

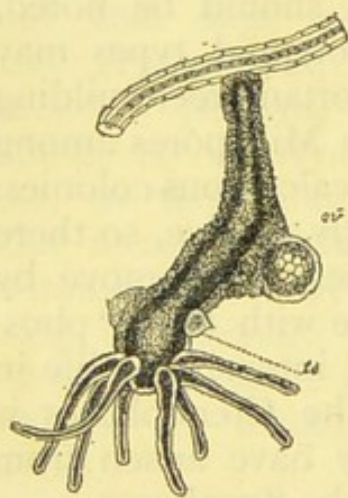


FIG. 56.—Hydra hanging from water-weed.  
—After Greene.

ov., Ovary; t., testes.

The animal sways its body and tentacles in the water, and it can also loosen its base, lift itself by its tentacles, stand on its head, or creep by looping movements. According to some observers, its movements may be helped by fine pointed pseudopodia protruded from the ectoderm



cells of the tentacles, etc. Usually, however, the *Hydra* prefers a quiet life. It feeds on small organisms, which are paralysed or killed by stinging cells on the tentacles, and are swept into the tubular cavity of the body by the action of flagella on the internal cells. Sometimes animals as large as water-fleas (*e.g.* *Daphnia*) are caught, and in part digested. Infusorians (*Euplotes*, etc.) are often seen wandering to and fro on the surface of the *Hydra*, but these wonted visitors do not seem to provoke the stinging cells to action.

So simple is *Hydra*, that a cut-off fragment, containing samples of the various kinds of cells in the body, and not too minute, may grow into an entire animal. Thus the *Hydra* may be multiplied by being cut in pieces. If the animal be turned inside out (a delicate operation), the *status quo* is soon restored. The Abbé Trembley, who first made this experiment, thought that the out-turned inner layer or endoderm assumed the characters of the outer layer or ectoderm, and that the inturned ectoderm assumed the characters of endoderm. But this is not the case. Either the animal rapidly rights itself by turning outside in, or, if this be prevented, the inturned ectoderm disappears internally, and, by growing over the out-turned endoderm, from the lips downwards, restores the normal state.

In favourable nutritive conditions, the *Hydra* forms buds, and on these a second generation of buds may be developed. A check to nutrition or some other influence causes the buds to be set adrift. Besides this asexual mode of multiplication, the usual sexual reproduction occurs.

**General structure.**—The tubular body consists of two layers of cells, *i.e.* the animal is diploblastic. The cavity is the gut, and it is continued into the hollow tentacles. These, when fully extended, may be longer than the body. The mouth is slightly raised on a disc or hypostome. Of the two layers of cells, the outer or ectoderm is transparent, the inner or endoderm usually contains abundant pigment. On the tentacles especially, even with low power, one can see numerous clumps of clear stinging cells. The male organs appear as ectodermic protuberances a short distance below the bases of the tentacles; the ovary, with a single ovum, is a larger bulging further down. Both male and



female organs may occur on the same animal, either at one time or at different times, but often they occur on different individuals. The buds have the same structure as the parent body, but in origin they appear to be wholly ectodermic.

**Minute structure.**—The outer layer or ectoderm includes the following different kinds of cells:—

(1) Large covering or epithelial cells, within or between some of which lie the stinging cells. The epithelial cells are somewhat conical, broader externally than internally, and in the interspaces lie interstitial cells. By certain methods, a thin shred can be peeled off the external surface of the ectoderm cells. This is a *cuticle*, *i.e.* a pellicle no longer living, produced by the underlying cells.

(1a) Many of these large cells have contractile basal processes, or roots, running parallel to the long axis of the body, and lying on a middle lamina which separates ectoderm from endoderm (Fig. 57, E). The cells themselves are contractile, but there is special contractility in the roots. Like the muscle cells of higher animals, they contract under certain stimuli, and are often called "neuro-muscular." But the discovery of special nerve cells (Jickeli) shows that even in *Hydra* there is a differentiation of the two functions of contractility and irritability.

(2) Small stinging cells or cnidoblasts occur abundantly on the upper parts of the body, especially on the tentacles. Each contains a protrusible nematocyst. This consists of a sac, the neck of which is doubled in as a pouch, usually bearing internal barbs, and prolonged into a long, hollow, spirally coiled filament, or lasso. This lasso is bathed in a fluid, presumably poisonous. On its free surface the stinging cell usually bears a delicate trigger hair or cnidocil. Under stimulus, whether directly from the outside or from a nerve cell, the cnidoblast explodes and the nematocyst is thrown out. Besides the ordinary stinging cells, there are others of small size which do not seem to explode.

(3) Scattered about there are minute nerve cells, with fine connections, especially with the muscular and the stinging cells (Fig. 57, B).

(4) Small interstitial or indifferent units fill up chinks in the ectoderm, and seem to grow into reproductive, stinging, and other cells.

(5) Granular glandular cells on the basal disc or "foot" probably secrete a glutinous substance. They are also said to put out pseudopodia, and so move the animal slowly.

The inner layer or endoderm is less varied in structure, as is to be expected from the fact that it is not, like the ectoderm, exposed to the varying action of the environment. Its cells are pigmented, often vacuolated, and most of them are either flagellate or amoeboid. The pigment bodies in *H. viridis* seem comparable to the chlorophyll corpuscles of plants; in *H. fusca* they are brownish and without chlorophyll. The active lashing of the flagella causes currents which waft food in and waste out. If some small animal, stung by the tentacles, is thus wafted in, it may be directly engulfed by the amoeboid processes



of some of the cells, and it has been noticed that the same cell may be at one time flagellate and at another time amœboid (cf. the cell-cycle, p. 96). After this direct absorption the food is digested within the cells, and while some of the dark granules seen in these cells may be decomposed pigment bodies, others seem to be particles of indigestible débris. Thus *Hydra* illustrates what is called intracellular digestion, such as occurs in Sponges, some other Cœlentera, and some simple "worms." But experiments show that some of the food may be

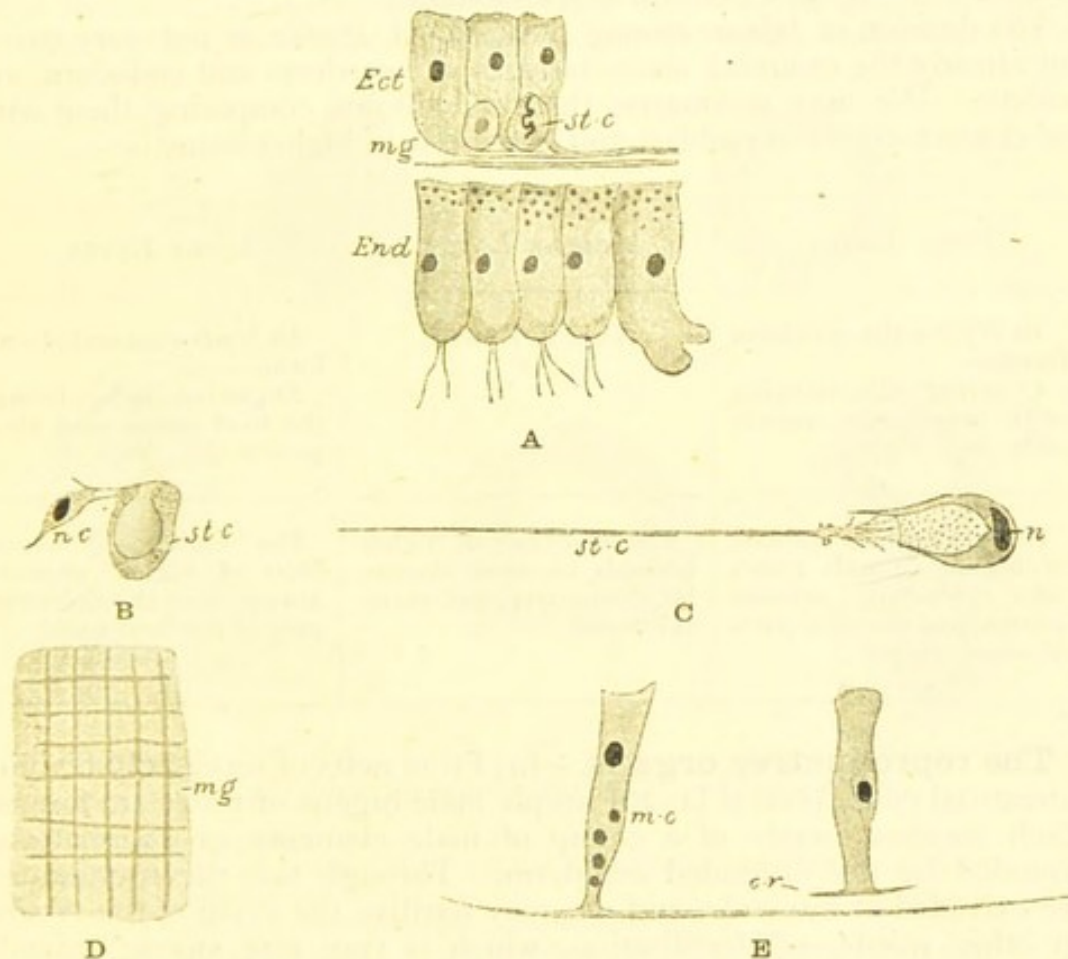


FIG. 57.—Minute structure of *Hydra*.—After T. J. Parker and Jickeli.

- A. *Ect.*, ectoderm; *mg.*, mesogloal plate; *st.c.*, stinging cell; *End.*, endoderm with flagella and amœboid processes.
- B. *nc.*, nerve cell, and *st.c.*, stinging cell.
- C. Stinging cell with everted thread; *n.*, nucleus.
- D. Mesogloal plate (*mg.*) with contractile roots resting on it.
- E. *m.c.*, muscular cell with contractile roots, *c.r.*

digested in the gut cavity, and subsequently absorbed. Thus it seems that both intracellular and extracellular digestion occur.

Some of the endoderm cells have muscular roots like those of the ectoderm. They lie on the inner side of the middle lamina, in a transverse or circular direction. A few cells near the mouth and base are described as glandular, and the presence of a few stinging cells has been recorded, though some suggest that the last are discharged ectodermic nematocysts which have been swallowed.



The middle lamina, representing the mesogloea, is a thin homogeneous plate, on each side of which lie the muscular roots of ectodermic and endodermic cells (Fig. 57, D).

It is historically interesting to notice the important step which was made when, in 1849, Huxley definitely compared the outer and inner layers of the Cœlentera with the epiblast and hypoblast which embryologists were beginning to demonstrate in the development of higher animals. Not long afterwards, Allman applied to the two layers of Hydroids the terms ectoderm and endoderm.

The division of labour among the cells of *Hydra* is not very strict, but already the essential characteristics of ectoderm and endoderm are evident. We may summarise these as follows, comparing them with the characteristics of epiblast and hypoblast in higher animals :—

OUTER LAYER.	MEDIAN LAYER.	INNER LAYER.
In <i>Hydra</i> the ectoderm forms— Covering cells, stinging cells, nerve cells, muscle cells, etc.	None in <i>Hydra</i> .	In <i>Hydra</i> the endoderm forms— Digestive cells lining the food canal, and also muscle cells, etc.
The embryonic epiblast of higher animals grows into epidermis, nervous system, and essential parts of sense organs.	The mesoblast of higher animals becomes muscular, connective, and skeletal tissue.	The embryonic hypoblast of higher animals always lines the digestive part of the food canal.

**The reproductive organs.**—(a) From nests of repeatedly-dividing interstitial cells, several (1–20) simple male organs or testes are formed. Each consists merely of a clump of male elements or spermatozoa, bounded by the distended ectoderm. Through this the spermatozoa are extruded at intervals, and one may fertilise the ovum of the *Hydra*. In other words, self-fertilisation, which is very rare among animals, may occur. The spermatozoon is a motile cell, with a minute cylindrical “head” consisting of nucleus, a more minute middle piece, and a long thread-like vibratile tail (Fig. 58, 1).

(b) Usually there is but one female organ or ovary, but in *H. fusca* as many as eight have sometimes been observed. The ovary arises like the testes from a nest of interstitial cells, one of which becomes the ovum. In rare cases there are two ova. The ovum is at first amœboid and transparent, but, like many other ova, it feeds on its neighbours, loses its amœboid form, and becomes rich in nutritive material and in pigment. The same process of exploitation is well seen in the oogenesis of *Tubularia larynx*, a common marine polype. It illustrates the struggle for existence among germ cells.

**Development.**—The ovum of *Hydra* is the successful central cell in the ovary. It is at first amœboid, and becomes more and more rich at the expense of its neighbours. Their remains (perhaps nuclei) accumulate within the ovum as “yolk spherules” or “pseudo-



cells." With increase of size the ovum changes its form from amœboid to cake-like, and from that to spherical. Around the spherical ovum a gelatinous sheath is formed. When the limit of growth is reached, the nucleus or germinal vesicle divides twice in the usual way, and two polar bodies are extruded at the distal pole. Thereafter the ectoderm of the parent *Hydra* yields to the increasing strain put upon it, and ruptures, allowing the ovum to protrude. By a broad base it still remains, however, attached to the parent, and in this state it is fertilised, the spermatozoon entering by the distal pole (Fig. 58, 4).

The segmentation which follows is total and equal, and results in the

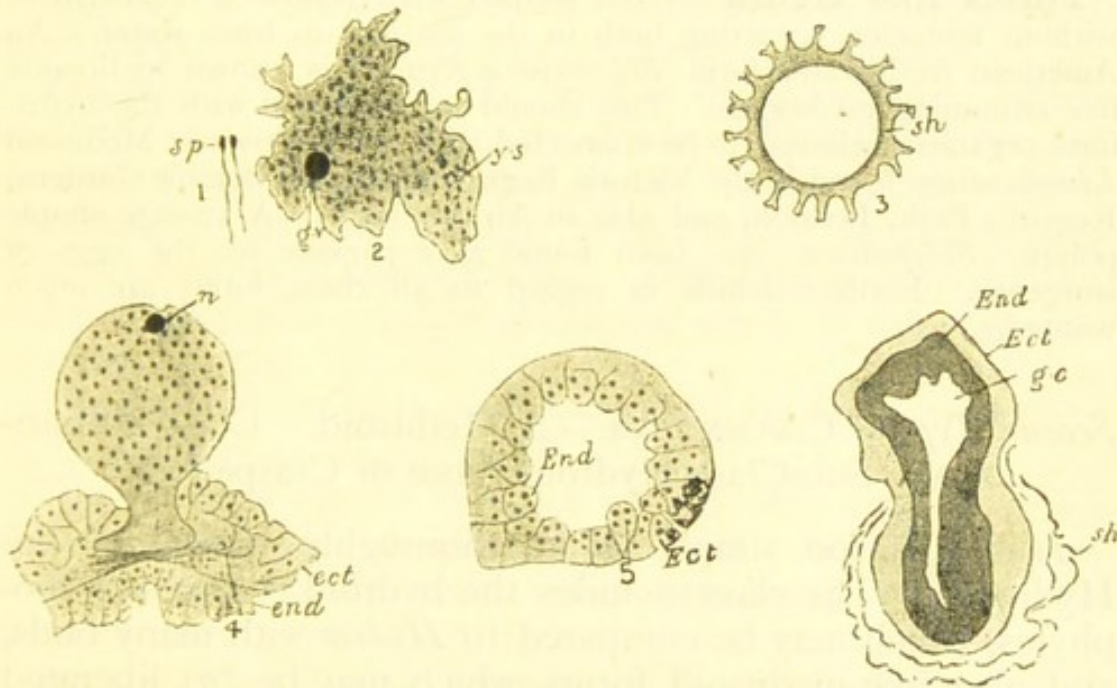


FIG. 58.—Development of *Hydra*.—After Brauer.

1. *sp.*, spermatozoa.
2. Amœboid ovum; *g.v.*, germinal vesicle or nucleus; *y.s.*, yolk spherules.
3. Ovum with lobed envelope (*sh*) around it.
4. Ovum protruding; *n*, the nucleus; *ect.*, the ruptured ectoderm; *end.*, the endoderm.
5. Section of blastosphere—*Ect.*, ectoderm; *End.*, endoderm—being formed.
6. Section of larva. *Ect.*, ectoderm; *End.*, endoderm; *g.c.*, gut cavity; *sh.*, ruptured envelopes.

formation of a blastosphere (Fig. 58, 5). By inwandering, or by division of the cells of the blastosphere, an internal endoderm is formed, and this formation takes place on all sides. In a word, it is multipolar. The segmentation cavity of the blastosphere is thus filled up, and the two layers become differentiated from one another.

The outer or ectodermic layer forms—(a) an external "chitinoïd" shell of several layers; (b) an internal membrane, homogeneous, thin, and elastic; and (c) the future ectoderm of the adult. In *Hydra fusca* the egg is separated from the parent before the shell is formed, and is fastened by its gelatinous sheath to aquatic plants; in *H. viridis* and *H. grisea* the egg falls off after the outer shell has been formed. In



all species the separation from the parent appears to be followed by a period of quiescence lasting from one to two months.

Within the shell differentiation at length recommences, but it proceeds slowly. Interstitial cells arise in the ectoderm; a middle lamella is formed; a gastric cavity begins to appear in the midst of the endoderm. Thereafter the shell bursts, and development proceeds more rapidly. The embryo elongates, acquires a mouth by rupture at the distal (sometimes called vegetative) pole. The inner sheath is also lost, and the young *Hydra* fixes itself and begins to live as its parent or parents did.

**Forms like *Hydra*.**—Even simpler than *Hydra* is *Protohydra*, without tentacles, occurring both in the sea and in fresh water. An American fresh-water form (*Microhydra Ryderi*) is known to liberate free-swimming medusoids. This should be compared with the hydri-form organism believed to be connected with the fresh-water Medusoid *Limnocoedium* found in the Victoria Regia tanks in the Botanic Gardens, Regent's Park, London, and also in African lakes. A strange simple polype—*Polypodium*—has been found as a parasite on the eggs of sturgeons. Further details in regard to all these forms are much wanted.

*Second Type of CÆLENTERA.*—A Medusoid. Class HYDROZOA. Sub-Class Hydromedusæ or Craspedota.

*Hydra* is too simple to be thoroughly typical of the Hydrozoa. The class includes the hydroid colonies or zoophytes, which may be compared to *Hydræ* with many buds, and also free medusoid forms, which may be (*a*) liberated members of a hydroid colony, or (*b*) independent organisms. Besides these there are complex colonies of medusoid forms (Siphonophora).

The hydroid type, except in minor details, usually resembles *Hydra*. In some cases the tentacles are solid, instead of hollow as in *Hydra*, and they may be arranged in two circles,—an outer and an inner (*Tubularia*). In some of the hydroid colonies, notably the Millepores and *Hydractinia*, the polypes are very dissimilar to one another, and have become specialised for the performance of different functions.

The medusoid type is like an inflated hydroid adapted for swimming. It is bell-shaped, and down the middle of the bell hangs a prolongation—the manubrium—which terminates in the mouth. Around the margin of the bell there is a little shelf, the velum or craspedon, which projects inwards, and is furnished with muscle cells. The margin of



the bell also bears tentacles, usually hollow, and abundantly furnished with stinging cells (Fig. 55, 3).

On the convex surface of the bell the ectoderm forms simply an epithelial layer; on the concave surface it is differentiated into muscle cells on the velum, the manubrium, and the tentacles, nerve cells at the base of the velum, and stinging cells on the tentacles. The endoderm is ciliated; it lines the food space, and extends also into the tentacles. The mesogloea forms a thickened jelly, present more especially on the convex (ex-umbrellar) surface.

The mouth opens into the canal of the manubrium, which leads to the central cavity of the dome. With this a varying number of unbranched radial canals communicate; these open into a marginal circular vessel, which communicates with the cavities of the tentacles. Digestion is intracellular, and probably goes on throughout the whole of this "gastro-vascular" system.

The movements of the bell are caused by the contractions of the ectodermic muscle cells.

The nervous system consists of a double ring of nerve fibres around the margin of the bell. With these are associated ganglionic cells, which apparently control the muscular contractions.

Sense organs may be present, in the form of "eyes," at the base of the tentacles (Ocellatæ), or in the form of "auditory" vesicles developed as pits in the velum (Vesiculatæ).

The reproductive organs develop either in the manubrium or on the radial canals. The products always (?) ripen in the ectoderm, and often seem to arise there; but Weismann and others have shown that the reproductive cells of a medusoid derived from a hydroid, or of the reduced and fixed reproductive persons of many hydroids, have considerable powers of migration, and may originate (sometimes in the endoderm) in the hydroid colony at some distance from the place where they are matured within the medusoid bud. The sexes are usually separate. The commonest kind of free-swimming larva is the planula, which is oval, ciliated, and diploblastic, devoid of an opening, and usually without a central cavity. In the case of those medusoids which arise as liberated sexual members of



a fixed asexual hydroid colony, the planula settles down, loses its cilia, buds out tentacles, and develops into a new hydroid.

In many Hydrozoa, as has been already noticed, the sexual persons are not set free, but remain as buds attached to the parent hydroid. These fixed "gonophores" show many stages of degeneration; some, notably in the floating colonies of Siphonophora, differ little structurally from true medusoids, while others, as in *Hydractinia*, are simply small closed sacs enclosing the genital products (Fig. 67).

*Third Type of CÆLENTERA.*—The common Jelly-fish — *Aurelia aurita*. Class SCYPHOZOA. Sub-Class Scyphomedusæ or Acraspeda.

This Medusa is almost cosmopolitan, and in the summer months occurs abundantly around the British coasts. It swims by pulsating its disc, and also drifts along at rest without any pulsations. They often occur in great shoals, and hundreds may be seen stranded on a small area of flat sandy beach. The glassy disc usually measures about four inches in diameter, but may be twice as large. The jelly-fish feeds on small animals, such as copepod crustaceans, which are entangled and stung to death by the long lips.

**External appearance.**—The animal consists of a gelatinous disc, slightly convex on its upper (ex-umbrellar) surface, and bearing on the centre of the other (sub-umbrellar) surface a four-cornered mouth, with four long much-frilled lips. The circumference of the disc is fringed by numerous short hollow tentacles, by little lappets, and by a continuation of the sub-umbrella forming a delicate muscular flap or *velarium*. Conspicuously bright are the four reproductive organs, which lie towards the under surface. Nor is it difficult to see the numerous canals which radiate from the central stomach across the disc, the eight marginal sense organs, and the muscle strands on the lower surface (Fig. 59).

**The three layers.**—The ectoderm which covers the external surface bears stinging cells, sensory and nerve cells, and muscle cells. According to some, the ectoderm lines part of the mouth-tube or manubrium. The endoderm lines the



digestive cavity, is continued out into its radiating canals, and is ciliated throughout. The mesogloea is a gelatinous coagulation containing wandering amœboid cells from the endoderm. The whole animal is very watery; indeed, the solid parts amount to not more than ten per cent. of the total weight.

**Nervous system.**—The nervous system consists—(a) of a special area of nervous epithelium, associated with each of the eight sense organs, and (b) of numerous much-elongated bipolar ganglion cells lying beneath the epithelium on the under surface of the disc. This condition should be contrasted with that in Craspedote medusoids, but too much must not be made of the contrast, for a nerve-ring is described in Cubomedusæ, one of the orders of Acraspedote jelly-fish. In *Aurelia* the sense organs are less differentiated than in many other jelly-fish. Each of the eight organs, protected in a marginal niche, consists of a pigmented spot, a club-shaped projection with numerous calcareous “otoliths” in its cells, and a couple of apparently sensitive pits or grooves. The sense organs arise as modifications of tentacles, and are often called “tentaculocysts” or “rhopalia.” Their cavities are in free communication with branches of the radial canals.

**Muscular system.**—Between the plexus of nerve cells and the sub-umbrellar mesogloea there are cross-striped muscle fibres, each of which has a large portion of non-contractile cell substance attached to it. They lie in ring-like bundles, and by their contractions the medusa moves. Unstriped muscle fibres are found about the tentacles and lips.

**Alimentary system.**—The four corners of the mouth are extended as four much-frilled lips, each with a ciliated groove and stinging cells, and with an axis of mesogloea. They exhibit considerable mobility. Their crumpled and mobile bases surround and almost conceal the mouth. A short tube, the “manubrium” or gullet, connects the mouth with the central digestive cavity, which occupies the centre of the disc. From this central chamber sixteen gastro-vascular canals of approximately equal calibre radiate to the circumference, where they open into a circular canal, with which the hollow tentacles are connected. Eight of the



radial canals are straight, but the other eight are branched, and thus in an adult *Aurelia* the total number of canals is large. These canals are really due to a partial obliteration of the gastric cavity by a fusion of its ex-umbrellar and sub-umbrellar walls along definite lines. They are all lined by ciliated endoderm.

Where the manubrium or tube from the mouth passes into the central digestive cavity, there are four strong pillars of thickened sub-umbrellar material. Outside each of these

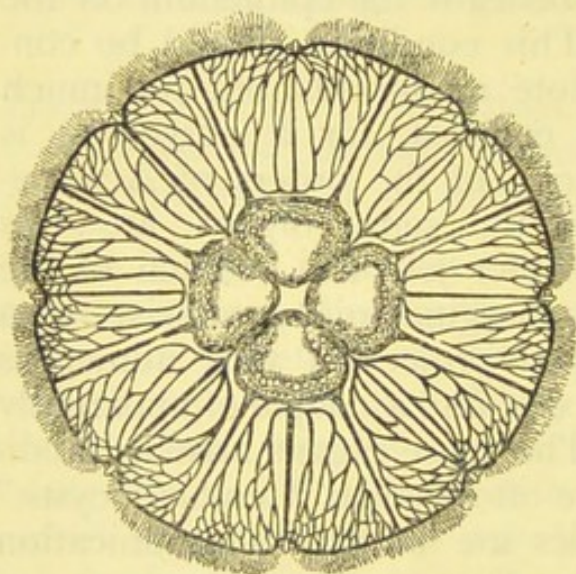


FIG. 59.—Surface view of *Aurelia*.—  
From Romanes.

Showing four genital pockets in centre, much branched radial canals, eight peripheral niches for sense organs, and peripheral tentacles.

pillars, and still near the base of the manubrium, there are four patches where the sub-umbrellar surface remains thin. These are the gastro-genital membranes, lined internally by germinal epithelium (Fig. 60, *R'*).

To the inside of these genital organs, within the digestive cavity, are four groups of mobile gastric filaments (*g.f.*, Fig. 60), which are very characteristic of jelly-fish. In appearance these are very similar to the small tentacles of the margin, and,

like them, are hollow. They are covered with endoderm—with ciliated, glandular, muscular, and stinging cells.

The body is mapped out into regions by the following convention:—The first tentacles to appear in the larva are four in number, and correspond to the four angles of the mouth; the radii on which they appear are called “perradial.” Halfway between these, four “interradials” are then developed. Then eight “adradials” may follow, between perradii and interradii.

**Reproductive system.**—The sexes are separate. The reproductive organs—ovaries or testes—consist of plaited ridges of germinal epithelium, situated on the four patches already mentioned, within sacs which are derived from and



communicate with the floor of the gastric cavity. They are of a reddish violet colour, and at first of a horseshoe shape, with the closed part of the curve directed outwards. Afterwards the ridges become circular, and extend all round the walls of the sacs in which they lie. But the sub-umbrellar surface is modified beneath each genital sac in such a way that the sac comes to lie in a sub-genital cavity communicating with the exterior (*g.p.*, Fig. 60). The contractions of the umbrella produce a rhythmic movement of the water which enters the sub-genital sacs, and this constant renewal of the water suggests some respiratory significance for the sacs. It must be understood that the genital sacs containing the plaited ridges of germinal epithelium communicate with the gastric cavity only, while the sub-genital cavities containing water and enveloping the genital sacs communicate with the exterior only.

The ova and spermatozoa pass from the frills of germinal epithelium into the sacs, and thence into the gastric cavity.

They find exit by the mouth, but young embryos may be found swimming in the gastro-vascular canals, and also within the shelter of the long lips.

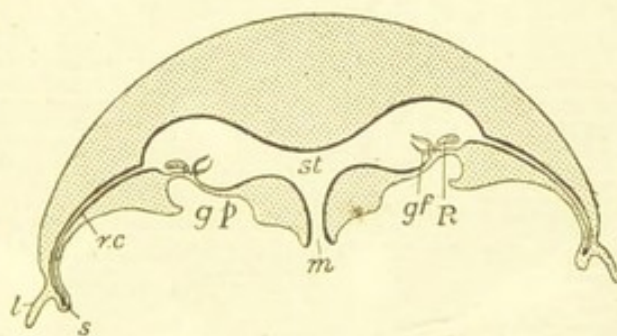


FIG. 60.—Vertical section of *Aurelia*.—  
After Claus.

*m.*, Mouth; *st.*, stomach; *r.c.*, radial canal; *R.*, reproductive organs; *g.f.*, gastric filaments; *g.p.*, genital pocket; *l.*, marginal tentacle; *s.*, sense organ; the shaded part is mesogloea.

**Life history of *Aurelia*.**—The fertilised ovum divides completely, but not quite equally, to form a blastosphere, with a very narrow slit-like cavity. From the larger-celled hemisphere, single cells migrate into the cavity, and fill this up with a solid mass of endoderm. The archenteron arises as a central cleft in this cell mass, and opens to the exterior temporarily by the primitive mouth. During these processes the embryo elongates, the outer cells become ciliated, and the mouth closes. Thus the embryo becomes a free-swimming oval *planula*.

After a short period of free life, this planula settles down on a stone or seaweed, attaching itself by the pole where the mouth formerly opened. At a very early stage the mesogloea appears between the two layers. At the free pole an ectodermic invagination next occurs, an opening breaks through at its lower end, and thus a gullet lined with



ectoderm<sup>1</sup> is formed, which hangs freely in the general cavity. During this process there are formed first two and then four diverticula of the general cavity, which are arranged round the gullet above, and open freely into the digestive cavity below. In the gullet region these are separated by broad septa, which are continued into the lower region of the body as four interradiial ridges or *tæniolæ*. The tentacles bud out from the region of the mouth, the first four corresponding in position to the four pouches. Interradially above the four septa, four narrow funnel-shaped invaginations arise; these are produced by the ingrowth of ectoderm, which then forms the muscle fibres which run down the

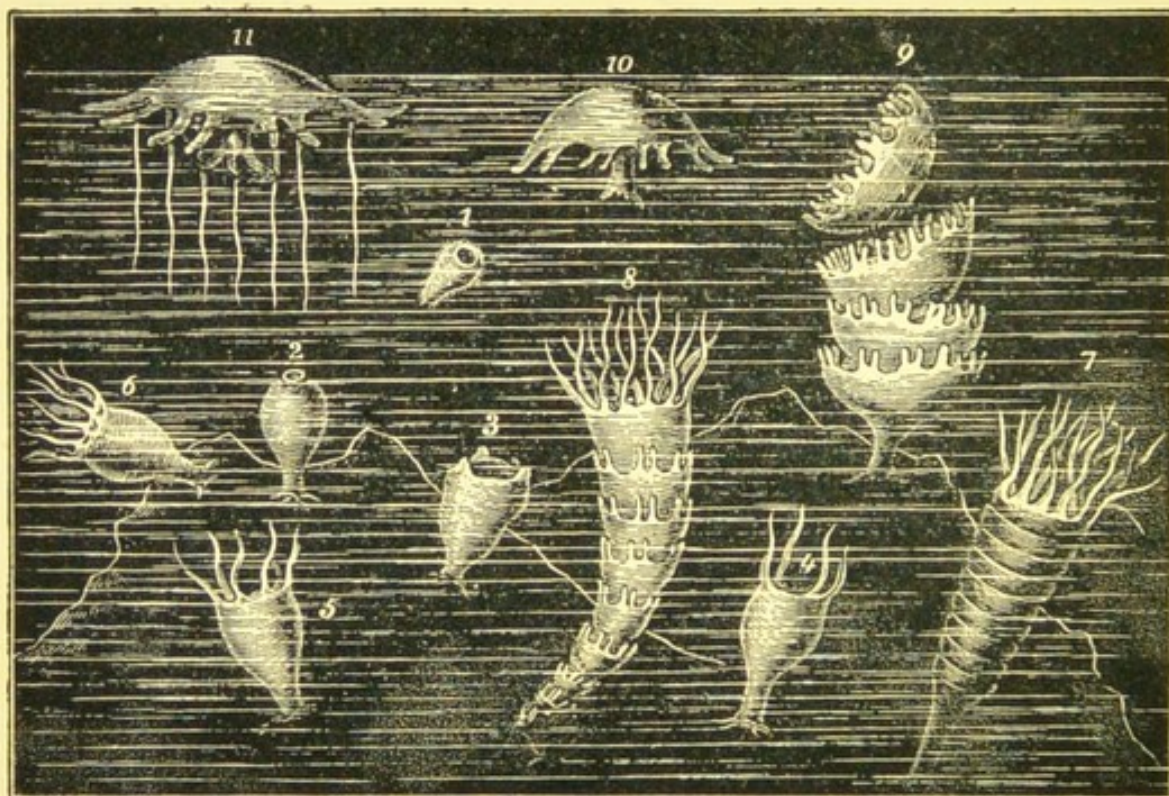


FIG. 61.—Diagram of life history of *Aurelia*.—After Haeckel.

- 1, Free-swimming embryo; 2-6, various stages of Hydra-tuba; 7, 8, Strobila stage; 9, liberation of Ephyrae; 10, 11, growth of Ephyrae into Medusae.

*tæniolæ* (contrast the *endodermic* muscles of Anthozoa). In contrasting this development with that of the hydroid polype, Gœtte specially emphasises the fact that the radial symmetry is first indicated by the gut pockets, and the tentacles are late in development. Gœtte describes a quite similar process of development in certain sea-anemones, and claims to have found there rudiments of septal pockets

<sup>1</sup> The statement as to the ectodermic gullet is due to Gœtte (1887); its existence is denied by Claus, who is followed by Chun.



and ectodermal muscles, thus confirming his view of the intimate relation between the Actinozoa and Scyphomedusæ.

The larva now forms a "Hydra-tuba" or "Scyphistoma"; it is about an eighth of an inch in height. By lateral budding, or by the formation of creeping stolons, it may give rise to larvæ like itself. The gradual widening of the central cavity renders the gullet tube less obvious, and results in an increasing resemblance to the medusa type.

In late autumn, however, a more fundamental change occurs in the history of the Hydra-tuba. (a) Occasionally, as has been observed by Haeckel, the Scyphistoma becomes detached and converted into a free-swimming Ephyra, which in turn becomes a jelly-fish. (b) Sometimes, in unfavourable conditions, a furrow appears round the upper region of the Scyphistoma, the upper portion is converted into an Ephyra, and floats away, while the lower portion reforms its oral region by regeneration, and produces another Ephyra. (c) In ordinary conditions the Scyphistoma elongates, and displays a succession of annular constrictions. This stage, often compared to a pile of discs or saucers, is called a Strobila. Each disc is separated off in its turn as a free-swimming Ephyra, which becomes a jelly-fish. The still undivided basal portion may rest for a time, and then undergo further constriction. This is probably an abbreviation of the primitive mode of development.

In the conversion of the Scyphistoma into the Ephyra, the diverticula coalesce into a general cavity, the entrances to the septal invaginations probably persist as the sub-genital pits, the gastric filaments sprout out from the remains of the septa, and so mark the place where the ectodermal gullet passed into the endodermal cavity.

The first Ephyra differs from those which come after it in bearing the original tentacles of the Hydra-tuba. From its margin eight bifid lobes grow out, each embracing the base of a perradial or interr radial tentacle. The bases of these eight tentacles become the sense organs or rhopalia. The other eight adradial tentacles atrophy. On the Ephyra which follow there are at first no tentacles, only the eight bifid marginal lobes which bear the sense organs in their niches.

This development illustrates alternation of generations. From the fertilised ovum a fixed asexual Scyphistoma results. This grows into a Strobila, from which transverse buds or Ephyrae are liberated. Each of these grows into a sexual jelly-fish, producing ova or spermatozoa. The first two cases mentioned (a and b) show how readily this alternation might pass into a "direct" development.

**Relatives of Aurelia.**—The Medusæ, or true jelly-fish, include forms which agree with the Anthozoa, in relative complexity of structure as compared with Hydrozoa, and in the possession of an ectodermal gullet (see footnote on p. 142), but differ in possessing ectodermal septal muscles and in some histological features. If Goette's discovery of rudimentary ectodermal muscles in the larvæ of certain sea-anemones be confirmed, however, it would greatly increase the probability of a close relationship between the two sets. Among the Scyphomedusæ closely allied to *Aurelia*, some, e.g. *Pelagia*, have a direct development without the intervention of Scyphistoma or Strobila stages, but this may occur



exceptionally in *Aurelia*. *Cyanea* is often very large, "it may measure 7½ ft. across the bell, with tentacles 120 ft. long." *Chrysaora* is hermaphrodite, and has diffuse sperm sacs even upon the arms. In the

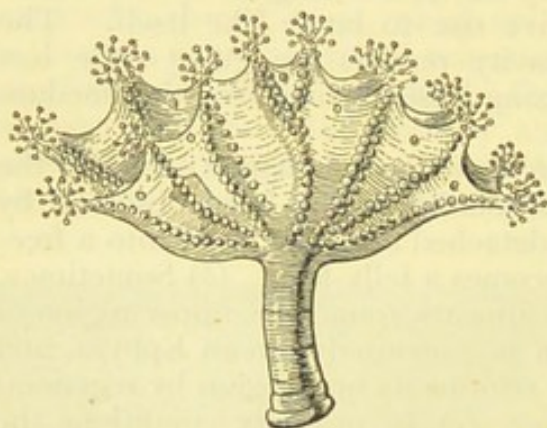


FIG. 62.—*Lucernaria*.—After Korotneff.

Rhizostomæ, e.g. *Cassiopeia* and *Pilema*, the mouth is obliterated, and replaced by numerous small pores on the four double arms. *Lucernaria* and its allies are interesting sessile forms which have been compared to sexual Scyphistomas, that is, are regarded as persistently larval forms.

We may note here that Chun, while agreeing provisionally to the separation of the Acraspeda from the Hydrozoa, strongly opposes their association with the Anthozoa, basing his opposition

especially on the existence of Scyphistomas of great simplicity (e.g. *Spongicola*).

### *Contrast between Hydrozoon Medusoids and Scyphozoon Medusæ.*

HYDROZON. (CRASPEDOTA.)	SCYPHOZON. (ACRASPEDA.)
The majority are small "swimming bells."	Many are large "jelly-fish."
A flap or velum (craspedon) projects inwards from the margin of the bell.	No velum. (The velarium of <i>Aurelia</i> is a mere fringe, very inconspicuous in the adult, and not inturned.)
No tæniolæ, nor gastric filaments.	In the Scyphistoma there are four tæniolæ, from part of which the gastric filaments of the adult grow.
A double nerve-ring around the margin.	Eight separate nervous centres beside the sense organs, and a sub-umbrellar nervous plexus.
Naked sense organs either optic or auditory. They are usually derived from the skin, but the auditory sacs may be modified tentacles.	Sense organs are modified tentacles, and probably have almost always a triple function. They are usually protected by a hood.
Reproductive organs on the radial canals or by the side of the manubrium. The reproductive cells are usually derived from the ectoderm.	Reproductive organs in special pockets on the floor of the gastric cavity. The reproductive cells arise in the endoderm.
With the exception of the Trachymedusæ, all arise as the liberated reproductive persons of Hydroid colonies.	Have no connection with hydroids, but may have a small sedentary polype stage (or Scyphistoma) in the course of their life history.
True Hydrozoa.	Probably more nearly related to Anthozoa than to Hydrozoa.



*Fourth Type of CŒLENTERA.*—A Sea-Anemone, such as *Tealia crassicornis*. Class SCYPHOZOA. Sub-Class Anthozoa or Actinozoa.

Most sea-anemones live fixed to the rocks about low-water mark. All these fixed forms have a distinct basal disc, and may, like *Tealia crassicornis*, be half buried in sand and gravel; others, without a basal disc, are loosely inserted in the sand, e.g. *Edwardsia* and *Cerianthus*, but all are able to shift their positions by short stages. They feed on small animals,—molluscs, crustaceans,

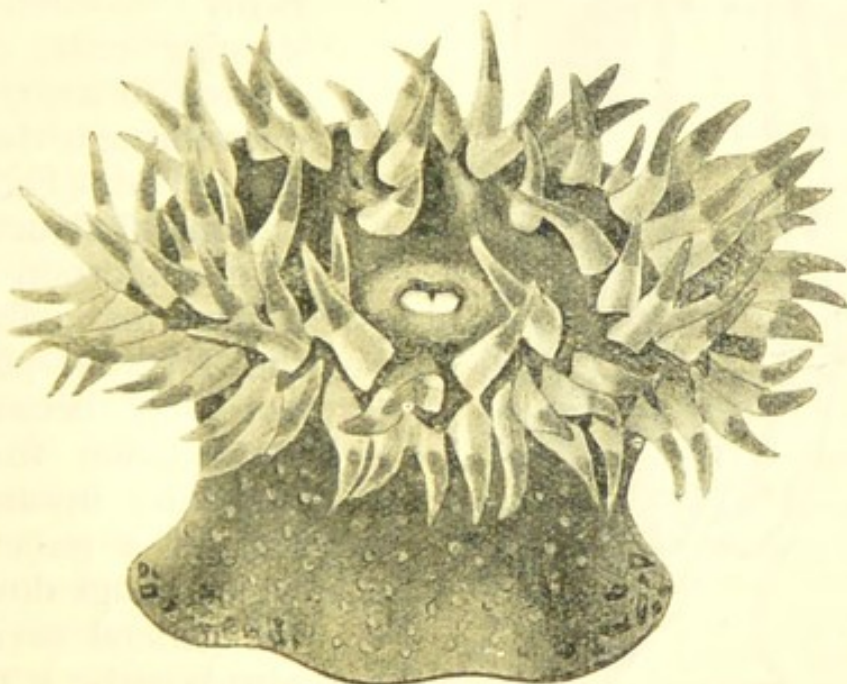


FIG. 63.—External appearance of *Tealia crassicornis*.

worms, which are caught and stung by the tentacles; but many depend largely on minute organisms, while others may be seen trying to engulf molluscs decidedly too large for them. A few anemones, without pigment or with little, have symbiotic Algæ in their endoderm cells; the bright pigments of many others seem to help in respiration. Besides the sexual reproduction (in which the young are sometimes developed within the parent), some sea-anemones also multiply asexually by detaching portions from near the base, and fission occurs in a few forms.

**External appearance of a fixed Anemone.**—The cylindrical body is fixed by a broad base; it bears whorls



of hollow tentacles around the oral disc; the mouth is usually a longitudinal slit. The tentacles are contracted when the animal is irritated, and the whole body can be much reduced in size. Just below the margin of the oral disc there is a powerful sphincter muscle; this contracts, and pulls together the body-wall over the mouth and retracted tentacles.

Water may pass out gently or otherwise by a pore at the tip of each tentacle, and long white threads, richly covered with stinging cells, can be ejected in many anemones through the walls of the body (Fig. 64).

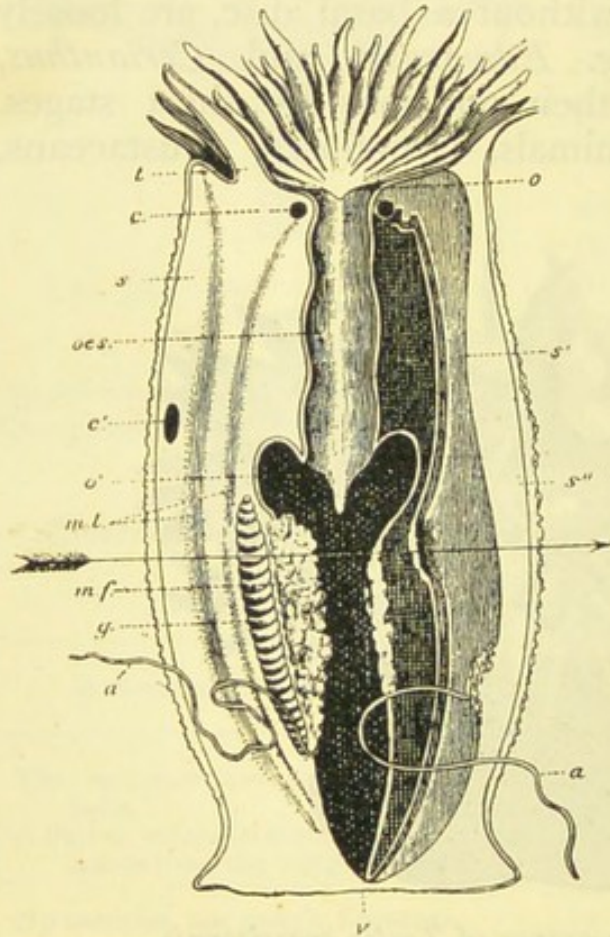


FIG. 64.—Vertical section of a sea-anemone.—After Andres.

*t.*, Tentacles; *o.*, mouth; *oes.*, oesophagus; *c.*, *c'*, apertures through a mesentery; *a.*, *a'*, acontia; *g.*, genital organs on mesentery; *m.f.*, mesenteric filaments; *m.l.*, longitudinal muscles; *s.*, primary septum or mesentery; *s'*, secondary septum; *s''*, tertiary septum; *v.*, basal disc.

**General structure.**—The Anthozoon polype differs markedly from the Hydroid polype—not only because an invagination from the oral disc inwards has formed a gullet tube, which hangs down into the general cavity, but also because a number of partitions or mesenteries extend from the body wall towards this gullet. Some of the partitions are “complete,” *i.e.* they reach the gullet; others are “incomplete,” *i.e.* do

not extend so far inwards. The complete mesenteries are attached to the oral disc above, to the side of the gullet, and to the base, and all the mesenteries are ingrowths of the body wall. The cavity of the anemone is thus divided into a number (some multiple of six) of radial chambers. These are in communication at the base,



so that food particles from the gullet may pass into any of the chambers between the partitions. Moreover, each partition is perforated, not far from the mouth, by a pore, besides which there is often another nearer the body wall. The tentacles are continuous with the cavities between the mesenteries, and thus all the parts of the body are in communication. The mouth is usually a longitudinal slit, and its two corners are often richly ciliated. The gullet is marked with longitudinal grooves, two of which, the

"siphonoglyphes," correspond to the corners of the mouth, and are especially broad and deep. Along these two grooves, and by these two corners, food particles usually pass in; but in some, one side is an incurrent, the other an excurrent channel. Occasionally only one corner of the mouth and side of the gullet is thus modified. The gullet often extends far down into the cavity of the anemone. It admits of a certain amount of extrusion. The mesenteries bear—(a) mesenteric filaments; (b) retractor muscles; (c) ridges of reproductive cells, almost always

either ova or spermatozoa, rarely both; and (d) in some cases offensive threads or acontia. The mesenteric filaments seem to be closely applied to the food, and perhaps secrete digestive juice. Intracellular digestion also occurs. Sea-anemones have no sense organs; the sapphire beads, which are so well seen at the bases of the outermost tentacles of the common *Actinia mesembryanthemum*, are batteries of stinging cells. The nervous system is uncentralised, and consists of superficial sensory cells connected with a plexus of sub-epithelial ganglion cells.

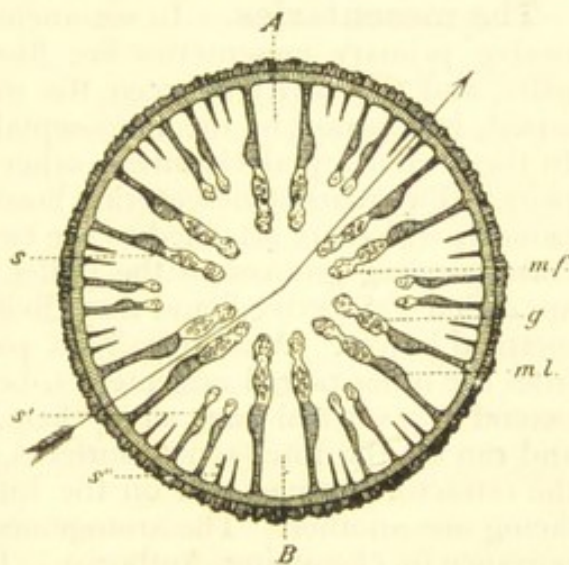


FIG. 65. — Section through sea-anemone (across arrow in Figure 64).—After Andres.

A, B, directive septa; m.f., mesenteric filaments; g., genital organs; m.l., longitudinal muscles; s., primary septum; s\', secondary septum; s'', tertiary septum. The arrow enters between two primary septa (an intra-septal cavity), and passes out between two tertiary septa.



**The layers of the body.**—The ectoderm which clothes the exterior is continued down the inside of the gullet. The endoderm lines the whole of the internal cavity, including mesenteries and tentacles. The mesogloea is a supporting plate between these two layers, and forms a basis for their cells.

The ectoderm consists of ciliated, sensory, stinging, and glandular cells, and also of sub-epithelial muscle and ganglion cells based on the mesogloea, but mainly restricted to the circumoral region.

The endoderm consists mainly of flagellate cells, with muscle fibres at their roots. These form the chief muscle bands of the wall, the mesenteries, and the gullet. Nor are glandular and even sensory cells wanting in the endoderm.

**The mesenteries.**—In sea-anemones and nearly related Anthozoa, twelve primary mesenteries are first formed. These are grouped in pairs, and the cavity between the members of a pair is called intra-septal, in contrast to the inter-septal cavities between adjacent pairs. In these inter-septal chambers other mesenteries afterwards appear in pairs. Two pairs of mesenteries, however, differ from all the rest—those, namely, which are attached to the two corners of the mouth and to the corresponding grooves of the gullet. These two pairs of mesenteries are called “directive,” and they divide the animal into bilaterally symmetrical halves. Anatomically, a pair of directive mesenteries differs from the other paired mesenteries, because the retractor muscles which extend in a vertical ridge along them, are turned away from one another, and run on the inter-septal surfaces, whereas in the other mesenteries the retractor muscles run on the intra-septal surface—those of a pair facing one another. The arrangement of these muscles is of great importance in classifying Anthozoa. It is possible that the mesenteries are homologous with the tæniolæ of jelly-fish, and the mesenteric with the gastric filaments.

From the above description it will be noticed that the fundamental radial symmetry of the Cœlentera has here become profoundly modified.

**Development.**—Comparatively little is known in regard to the early stages of development in sea-anemones. From the fertilised ovum a blastosphere may result which by invagination becomes a gastrula. In some cases the ovum segments into a solid morula; this becomes a free planula, in which a cylindrical depression at one pole forms the mouth and gullet. Or the two layers may be established by a process known as delamination, in which a single layer of cells is divided into an inner endodermic and an outer ectodermic layer. According to Goette, the development is in essentials the same as that of the *Hydra-tuba*.

**Related forms.**—The sea-anemones are classified in the sub-class Anthozoa or Actinozoa, and along with many corals are distinguished as Zoantharia or Hexacoralla from the Alcyonaria or Octocoralla, like *Alcyonium* and the related forms. This contrast is not very satisfactory, but it rests on such distinctions as the following :—



ANTHOZOA OR ACTINOZOA.

ZOANTHARIA, HEXACORALLA, <i>e.g.</i> SEA-ANEMONE.	ALCYONARIA, OCTOCORALLA, <i>e.g.</i> DEAD-MEN'S-FINGERS.
<p>Many are simple, many colonial.</p> <p>Tentacles usually simple, usually some multiple of six, often dissimilar.</p> <p>Mesenteries usually some multiple of six, complete and incomplete.</p> <p>Retractor muscles never as in Alcyonaria.</p> <p>Two gullet grooves or siphonoglyphes, or only one.</p> <p>Dimorphism only in some Antipatharia, and in one Madreporia coral.</p> <p>Calcareous skeleton, if present, is derived from the basal ectoderm.</p> <p><i>Types.</i></p> <p>Actiniaria. Sea-anemones.</p> <p>Madreporaria. Reef-building corals.</p> <p>Antipatharia. Black corals.</p>	<p>All colonial, except a small family including <i>Monoxenia</i> and <i>Haima</i>.</p> <p>Tentacles eight, feathered, uniform.</p> <p>Mesenteries eight, complete.</p> <p>Retractor muscles always on one (ventral) side of each mesentery (see Fig. 66).</p> <p>One (ventral) gullet groove or siphonoglyphe, or none.</p> <p>Occasional dimorphism among members of a colony.</p> <p>There are usually calcareous spicules (of ectodermic origin) in the mesogloea.</p> <p><i>Examples.</i></p> <p><i>Alcyonium</i> (Dead-men's-fingers), with diffuse spicules of lime.</p> <p><i>Tubipora</i> (Organ-pipe coral), with spicules fused into tubes and transverse platforms.</p> <p><i>Corallium rubrum</i> (Red coral), with an axis of fused spicules.</p> <p><i>Isis</i>, with an axis of alternately limy and "horny" joints.</p> <p><i>Pennatula</i> (Sea-pen), a free phosphorescent colony, with a "horny" axis, possibly endodermic.</p> <p><i>Heliopora</i>, blue coral.</p>

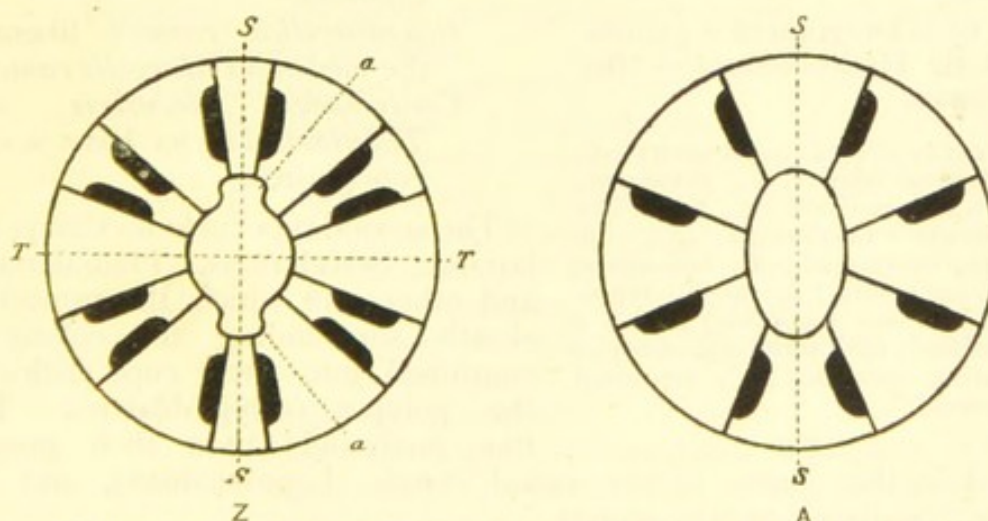


FIG. 66.—Z, Diagrammatic section of Zoantharian; A, of Alcyonarian.—After Chun.

The line S-S in Z is through the siphonoglyphes (*a*), the line T-T passes through two interseptal spaces. The retractor muscles are represented by dark thickenings on the mesenteries—all on one (the ventral) side in the Alcyonarian. The line S-S in A represents the axis of symmetry.



## SYSTEMATIC SURVEY.

## A. Class HYDROZOA.

There are two types, polypoid and medusoid, which may be combined in one life history. The mouth leads directly into the gastric cavity. The mesogloea is simple, and without migrant cells. The reproductive cells seem to be usually ectodermic.

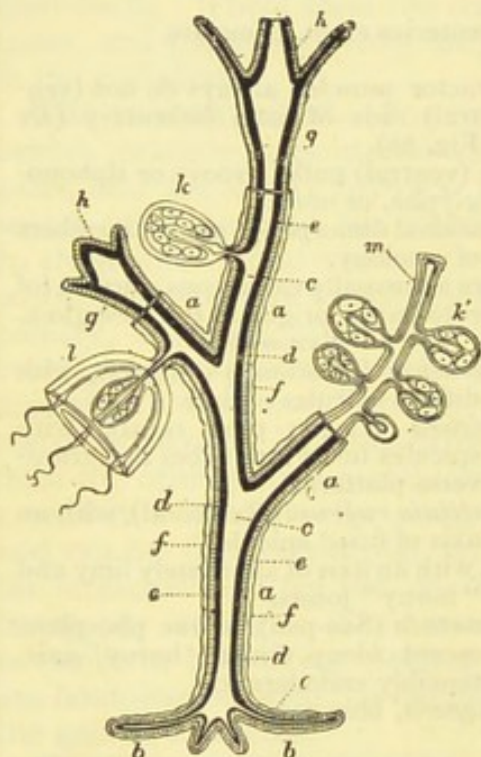


FIG. 67.—Diagram of a gymnoblastic Hydromedusa.—After Allman.

a., Stem; b., root; c., gut cavity; d., endoderm (dark); e., ectoderm; f., horny perisarc; g., hydra-like "person" (hydranth); g', the same, contracted; h., hypostome bearing mouth; k., sac-like reproductive bud (sporosac); m., a modified hydranth (blastostyle) bearing sporosacs; l., medusoid "person."

1. Order Hydromedusæ.—Simple or colonial forms in which the sexually reproductive persons are either liberated as free-swimming medusoids or are sessile gonophores.

(a) Hydrophora.—Two types are included here. The first includes the Tubularians, *Hydractinia*, and other forms in which the polypes are not enclosed in the protective sheath which often surrounds the colony (gymnoblastic), and in which the free medusoid forms, when present, have their genital organs placed in the wall of the manubrium (Anthomedusæ), and are furnished with ocelli placed at the base of the tentacles. *Hydra* and its allies may be included here.

Examples:—

*Syncoryne sarsii*, the free medusoid of which is called *Sarsia tubulosa*.

*Bougainvillea ramosa* liberates the medusoid *Margelis ramosa*.

*Cordylophora lacustris* and *Tubularia larynx* have sessile gonophores.

The second type includes Campanularians, Sertularians, Plumularians, and others, in which the protective sheath surrounding the colony is continued into little cups enclosing the polypes (calyptoblastic). The free medusoids have their gonads

placed in the course of the radial canals (Leptomedusæ), and are either "ocellate" or "vesiculate."

Examples:—

*Plumularia* and *Sertularia* have sessile gonophores.

*Campanularia geniculata* liberates the medusoid *Obelia geniculata*.

(b) Hydrocorallinæ.—Colonial forms which suggest the *Hydractiniae* in their polymorphism and division of labour, but are distinguished by



their power of taking up lime, and so forming "corals." The colonies are complex and divergent, the reproductive persons are probably sessile gonophores, but a simple male medusoid has been described. *Millepora*, *Stylaster*.

(c) Trachymedusæ.—These exist only in the medusoid form, and are divided into two groups, Trachomedusæ and Narcomedusæ, according to the position of the gonads.

*Geryonia*, *Carmarina*, *Cunina*, *Aeginopsis*.

2. Order Siphonophora.—Free-swimming colonies of modified medusoid persons (medusomes), with much division of labour.

*Physalia* (Portuguese man-of-war), *Diphyes*, *Velella*, *Porpita*.

## B. Class SCYPHOZOA.

There are two types—polypoid and medusoid—very rarely occurring in one life history. The gastric cavity has partitions with gastric or mesenteric filaments, and there is an ectodermic gullet. The mesogloea generally contains migrant cells. The reproductive cells are endodermic.

### I. Sub-class Scyphomedusæ or Acraspeda—

Jelly-fish with gastric filaments, sub-genital pits, and no velum—

- (1) Lucernariæ.—Sessile forms. *Lucernaria*.
- (2) Discomedusæ.—Active forms, often with complicated life history. *Aurelia*, *Pelagia*, *Cyanea*, *Rhizostoma*.
- (3) Cubomedusæ.—Forms with broad pseudo-velum, and other peculiar features. *Charybdea*.
- (4) Peromedusæ.—Forms with four tentaculocysts only. *Pericalpa*.

### II. Sub-class Anthozoa, or Actinozoa—

Polypoid forms with well-developed gullet and septa, and circumoral tentacles.

- (1) Zoantharia or Hexacoralla.
  - (a) Actiniaria. Sea-anemones.  
*Actinia*, *Anemonia*, *Tealia*, *Cerianthus*.
  - (b) Madreporaria. Stone or reef corals.  
*Astræa*, *Madrepora*, *Fungia*, *Mæandrina*.
  - (c) Antipatharia. "Horny" black corals, with an axial skeleton, and occasional dimorphism between nutritive and reproductive "persons."  
*Antipathes*.
- (2) Alcyonaria or Octocoralla.  
*Alcyonium* (Dead-men's-fingers), *Tubipora* (Organ-pipe coral), *Corallium* (Red coral), *Gorgonia*, *Penatula* (Sea-pen), *Monoxenia* (non-colonial).

## C. Class CTENOPHORA.

Delicate free-swimming organisms, generally globular in form, moving by means of eight meridional rows of ciliated plates, or comb-



like combinations of cilia. The stinging cells are almost always replaced by "adhesive cells." The mouth is at one pole, and leads into an ectodermic gullet. The gastric cavity is usually much branched. The mesenchyme is very well developed, and includes muscular and connective cells. At the aboral pole there is a sensory organ, including an "otolith," which seems of use in steering. Here, also, there are two excretory apertures. Except in *Beroë* and its near relatives, there are two retractile tentacles. All are hermaphrodite. The development is direct. They are pelagic, very active in habit, carnivorous in diet, and often phosphorescent. According to Lang, they have affinities with Planarian "worms," but this is very uncertain.

Examples :—

- (a) With tentacles, *Cydippe* and the ribbon-shaped Venus' Girdle (*Cestum Veneris*).
- (b) Without tentacles, *Beroë*.

**History of Cœlentera.**—Of corals, as we would expect, the rocks preserve a faithful record, and we know, for instance, that in the older (Palæozoic) strata they were represented by many types. We often talk of the imperfection of the geological record, and rightly, for much of the library has been burned, many of the volumes are torn, whole chapters are wanting, and many pages are blurred. But this imperfect record sometimes surprises us, as in the quite distinct remains of ancient jelly-fish, which animals, as we know them now, are apparently little more than animated sea water. We should also grasp the conception, with which Lyell first impressed the world, of the uniformity of natural processes throughout the long history of the earth. Thus in connection with Cœlentera we learn that there were great coral reefs in the incalculably distant past, just as there are coral reefs still. So in the Cambrian rocks, which are next to the oldest, there are on sandy slabs markings exactly like those which are now left for a few hours when a large jelly-fish stranded on the flat beach slowly melts away. On the other hand, some forms of life which lived long ago, seem to have been very different from any that now remain, as is well shown by the abundant Graptolite fossils, which, though probably Cœlentera, do not fit well into any of the modern classes.

As to the pedigree of the Cœlentera, the facts of individual life history, and the scientific imagination of naturalists, help us to construct a genealogical tree—a hypothetical statement of the case. Thus it seems very likely that the ancestral many-celled animals—ancestral to Sponges, Cœlentera, and all the rest—were small two-layered tubular or oval forms. The many-celled animals must have begun as clusters of cells; the question is, what sort of clusters—spheres of one layer of cells, or mouthless ovals, or little discs of cells, or two-layered thimble-like sacs? Possibly there were many forms, but Haeckel and other naturalists were led to fix their attention especially on the two-layered sac or *gastrula*, because this form keeps continually cropping up as an embryonic stage in the life history of animals, whether sponge or coral, earthworm or starfish, mollusc or even vertebrate, and also because this is virtually the form which is exhibited by the simplest sponges



(Ascones), the simplest Cœlentera (*Hydra*), and even by the simplest "worms" (Turbellarians).

If we begin in our survey with such a gastrula-like ancestor, the probabilities are certainly in favour of the supposition that it was a free-swimming organism. A gradual perfecting of the locomotor characteristics might yield the two medusoid types of which we have already spoken. But we know that the common jelly-fish *Aurelia* has a

## GENERAL SCHEME OF CŒLENTERA.

PREDOMINANTLY PASSIVE.		PREDOMINANTLY ACTIVE.	
		C. CTENOPHORA, <i>e.g.</i> Beroë, Venus' Girdle. (Active climax.)	
B. SCYPHO- ZOA.	II. Anthozoa or Actinozoa. (Zoantharia) Sea-anemones and related corals. (Alcyonaria) Dead-men's- fingers and related corals.	The embryos are free-swimmers, and a few adults also are locomotor.	
	I. {Scyphomedusæ or Acraspeda. c. Adult Lucernarians usually attached. b. Sedentary larval stage. a. No fixed stage.	c. Free embryos. b. Aurelia type of jelly-fish. a. Pelagia type of jelly-fish.	
ANCESTRAL		GASTRÆA.	
A. HYDRO- ZOA	1. No fixed stage. 2. No fixed stage. 3. Many Hydroid colonies. (Campanularians and Tubularians.) 4. Many Hydroid colonies, whose reproductive per- sons are not liberated. 5. Coralline Millepores. 6. Hydra without any specially locomotor stage.	1. Trachymedusæ (always locomotor). 2. Siphonophora (locomotor colonies of modified medusoids). 3. Liberated reproductive "persons" of these colonies. 4. No free stage, except as embryos. 5. A male medusoid is known.	

prolonged larval stage which is sedentary, vegetative, and prone to bud. If we suppose with W. K. Brooks that many forms, less constitutionally active than others, relapsed into this sedentary state, with postponed sexuality, and with a preponderant tendency to bud, we can understand how polypes arose, and these of two types, one nearer the jelly-fish and Lucernarians and leading on to sea-anemones and corals, the other nearer the swimming bell type and leading on to a terminus in *Hydra*.



It is certainly suggestive that we have jelly-fish wholly free (*Pelagia*), jelly-fish with a sedentary larval life (*Aurelia*), jelly-fish predominantly passive (*Lucernaria*), and related polypes (Sea-anemones, etc.), which only occasionally rise into free activity; while in the other series we have medusoid types always free (Trachymedusæ), others which are liberated from (Campanularian and Tubularian) sedentary hydroids, other (Sertularian and Plumularian) zoophytes whose buds though often medusoid-like are not set free, and finally *Hydra*, which, though it may creep on its side, or walk on its head, is predominantly a sedentary animal, without any youthful free-swimming stage. It must be noticed that the most frequent larval form is the planula, so that, if we regard the gastrula as the ancestral type, the life history is not here a recapitulation of the race history.

**Bionomics.**—The Cœlentera are almost all marine. In fresh water we find the common *Hydra*, the minute *Microhydra* without tentacles, the strange *Polypodium*, which in early life is parasitic on sturgeons' eggs, the compound *Cordylophora*, occurring in canals and in brackish water, and the fresh-water Medusoid (*Limnocodium*) found in a tank in the Regent's Park Botanic Gardens, and another similar form recently discovered in Africa. Most of the active swimmers are pelagic, but there are also a few active forms in deep water. Many polypes anchor upon the shells of other animals, which they sometimes mask, and there are most interesting constant partnerships between hermit-crabs and sea-anemones, e.g. between *Pagurus prideauxii* and *Adamsia palliata*.

The hermit-crab is masked by the sea-anemone, and may be protected by its stinging powers; the sea-anemone is carried about by the hermit-crab, and may get crumbs from its abundantly supplied table. This illustrates a mutually beneficial partnership or commensalism, which, however, in some other animals may degenerate into parasitism. (See Fig. 16).



## CHAPTER X.

### UNSEGMENTED "WORMS."

CHIEF CLASSES	{	A. TURBELLARIA, TREMATODA, and CESTODA (the Platyhelminth or Flat-worm Series).
		B. NEMERTEA or NEMERTINI.
		C. NEMATODA, GORDIACEA, and ACANTHO- CEPHALA (the Nematohelminth or Round- worm Series).

THE title "worms" is hardly justifiable except as a convenient name for a shape. The animals to which the name is applied form a heterogeneous mob, including about a dozen classes whose relationships are imperfectly known.

But the zoological interest of the diverse types of "worms" is great. For amid the diversity we discern affinities with Coelentera, Echinoderms, Arthropods, Molluscs, and Vertebrates.

Moreover, it is likely, as has been already noted, that certain "worms" were the first animals definitely to abandon the more primitive radial symmetry, to begin moving with one part of the body always in front, to acquire head and sides. And if one end of the body constantly experienced the first impressions of external objects, it seems plausible that sensitive and nervous cells would be most developed in that much-stimulated, over-educated, head region. But a brain arises from the insinking of ectodermic cells, and its beginning in the cerebral ganglion of the simplest "worms" is thus in part explained.

Again, it may be noted that worm types begin the series of *triploblastic coelomate* animals, *i.e.* of those which have a



well-defined mesoderm, and a coelom or body cavity lined with mesoderm and distinct from the gut. It must be noted, however, that the appearance of a well-developed coelom and mesoderm is very gradual; thus there is practically no coelom in the Platyhelminthes, and the mesoderm is only represented by "mesenchymatous" cells, comparable to those of Ctenophora.

Class TURBELLARIA. Planarians, etc.

*Turbellarians are unsegmented "worms," living in fresh, brackish, or salt water, or in moist earth. Almost all are carnivorous, a few are parasitic. They represent the beginning of definite bilateral symmetry.*

*The ectoderm is ciliated, and contains peculiar rod-like bodies (rhabdites), and occasionally stinging cells. A pair of ganglia in the anterior region give off lateral nerve cords, and there are usually simple sense organs. The food canal has a protrusible muscular pharynx, is often branched, and is always blind. There are no special respiratory or circulatory organs; the body cavity is represented at most by small spaces; the excretory system usually consists of two longitudinal canals, whose branches end internally in ciliated (flame) cells. Excepting two genera, the Turbellarians are hermaphrodite; and the reproductive organs usually show some division of labour, e.g. in the development of a yolk gland, which may have arisen as an over-nourished (hypertrophied) part of the ovary. The eggs are usually enclosed in shells or cocoons, and the development may include a metamorphosis.*

The Turbellarian worms form an exceedingly interesting group; they are often beautiful, and the ciliated ectoderm enables them to move with singular grace. Although the lateral symmetry and the distinction of anterior and posterior ends is quite marked, the "mouth" or single opening of the food canal is often near the middle of the ventral surface. The anterior region is usually furnished with tactile processes. The shape of the body in the aquatic forms is flattened and leaf-like, as in the delicate *Leptoplana*, the "living film" found on the shore-rocks. Fresh-water forms are usually small and often minute, but those living in the sea may attain a length of six inches. Land Planarians are elongated and more worm-like in shape; they may measure a foot or more in length, and are most abundant in tropical countries.

There seems little doubt that the next two classes (Trematoda and



Cestoda) have arisen from Turbellarian-like ancestors, which adopted parasitic habits, as a few marine Turbellaria have done.

**Classification.** — A. Rhabdocœlida. — Small fresh-water and marine forms. The food canal is very slightly branched, or quite straight, or absent.

(1) Accœla. Without intestine, *e.g.* *Convoluta*, which contains green cells, regarded by some as symbiotic Algæ.

(2) Rhabdocœla. With straight intestine, *e.g.* *Vortex*; *Microstoma*,

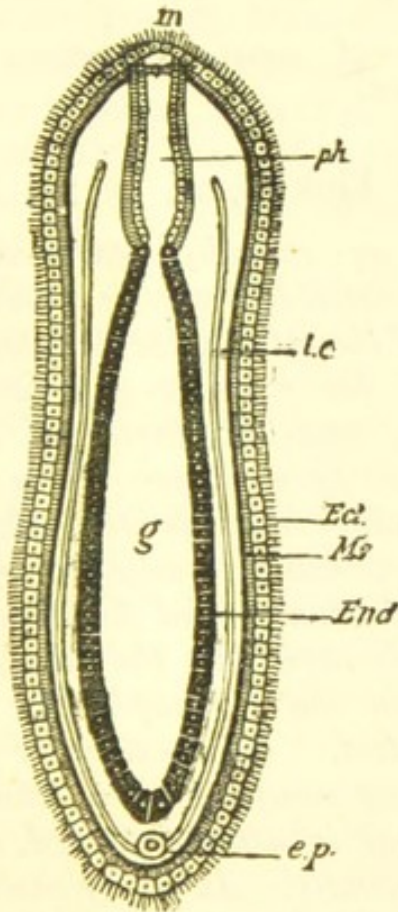


FIG. 68.—Diagrammatic figure of a simple Turbellarian.

*m.*, Mouth; *ph.*, pharynx; *g.*, digestive part of gut; *l.e.*, longitudinal excretory vessels; *e.p.*, excretory pore; *Ect.*, ciliated ectoderm; *Ms.*, mesoderm; *End.*, endoderm.

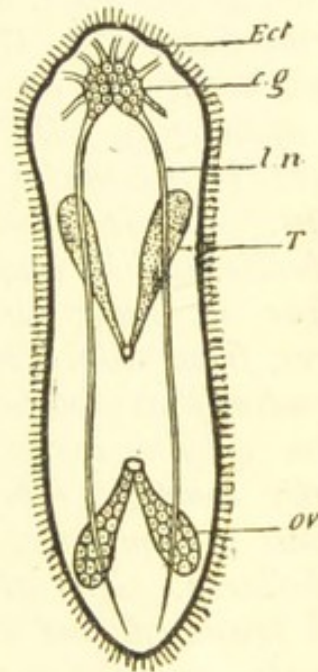


FIG. 69.—Diagrammatic figure of part of the structure of a simple Turbellarian.

*Ect.*, Ciliated ectoderm; *c.g.*, cerebral ganglion; *l.n.*, lateral nerve; *T.*, testes; *ov.*, ovary.

a unisexual fresh-water genus, with stinging cells, which forms temporarily united asexual chains, sometimes of sixteen individuals, suggesting the origin of a segmented type; *Graffilla* and *Anoplodium*, parasitic (cf. next class).

(3) Alloiocœla. With lobed or irregular gut. All marine except one from Swiss lakes (*Plagiostoma Lemani*).

B. Tricladida. Elongated flat "Planarians"; the mouth and tubular pharynx lie behind the middle of the body; intestine with three



main branches, themselves branched; two ovaries, numerous yolk glands and testes, a common genital aperture, *e.g.* *Planaria* and *Dendrocalum* (in fresh water), the former sometimes divides transversely; *Gunda segmentata* (marine), showing hints of internal segmentation; *Geodesmus* and *Bipalium* (in damp earth); *Bipalium kewense* is an import often found in Britain.

C. Polycladida. Large leaf-like marine "Planarians," with numerous intestinal branches diverging from a central stomach; with numerous ovaries and testes, without yolk glands, mostly with two genital apertures.

*e.g.* *Cycloporus* (showing beginning of anus), *Leptoplana* (not uncommon on the seashore), *Thysanozoon*.

#### Class TREMATODA. Flukes, etc.

The Trematodes are leaf-like, or roundish external or internal parasites. With their parasitic life may be associated the absence of cilia on the surface of the adults, the well-formed and apparently cellular "cuticle," the presence of attaching suckers (occasionally with hooks), and the rarity of sense organs. It is likely that they have arisen from free Turbellarian-like ancestors, and they resemble the Turbellarians in being unsegmented, in having anterior nerve centres, from which nerves pass backward and forward, in the rudimentary nature of the body cavity, in the ramifying system of fine excretory canals, in the hermaphrodite and usually complex reproductive system. The excretory and nervous systems are, however, more complex than those of Turbellaria. The alimentary canal is usually forked, often much branched, and always ends blindly. In many cases the animals are self-impregnating, but cross-fertilisation also occurs. The development of the external parasites is usually direct, of the internal parasites usually indirect, involving alternation of generations. They occur on or in all sorts of Vertebrates, but those which have an indirect development, and require two hosts to complete their life-cycle, often pass part of their life in some Invertebrate.

Type, The Liver Fluke (*Distomum hepaticum* or *Fasciola hepatica*).

The adult fluke lives as a parasite in the bile ducts of the sheep. It sometimes occurs in cattle, horses, and other domestic animals, rarely in man. In the sheep it



causes the serious disease called liver rot. The animal is flat, oval, and leaf-like, measures almost an inch in length by half an inch across the broadest part, varies from reddish brown to greyish yellow in colour. As the word *Distomum* suggests, there are two suckers,—an anterior, perforated by the mouth; a second, imperforate, a little further back on the mid-ventral line.

There is a muscular pharynx and a blind alimentary canal which sends branches throughout the body. The nervous system consists of a ganglionated collar round the pharynx, from which nerves go forward and backward; of those which run backward, the two lateral are most important. Although the larva has eye spots to start with, there are no sense organs in the adult. The body cavity is represented by a few small spaces. Into these there open the internal ciliated ends of much-branched excretory tubes, which unite posteriorly in a terminal vesicle opening to the exterior.

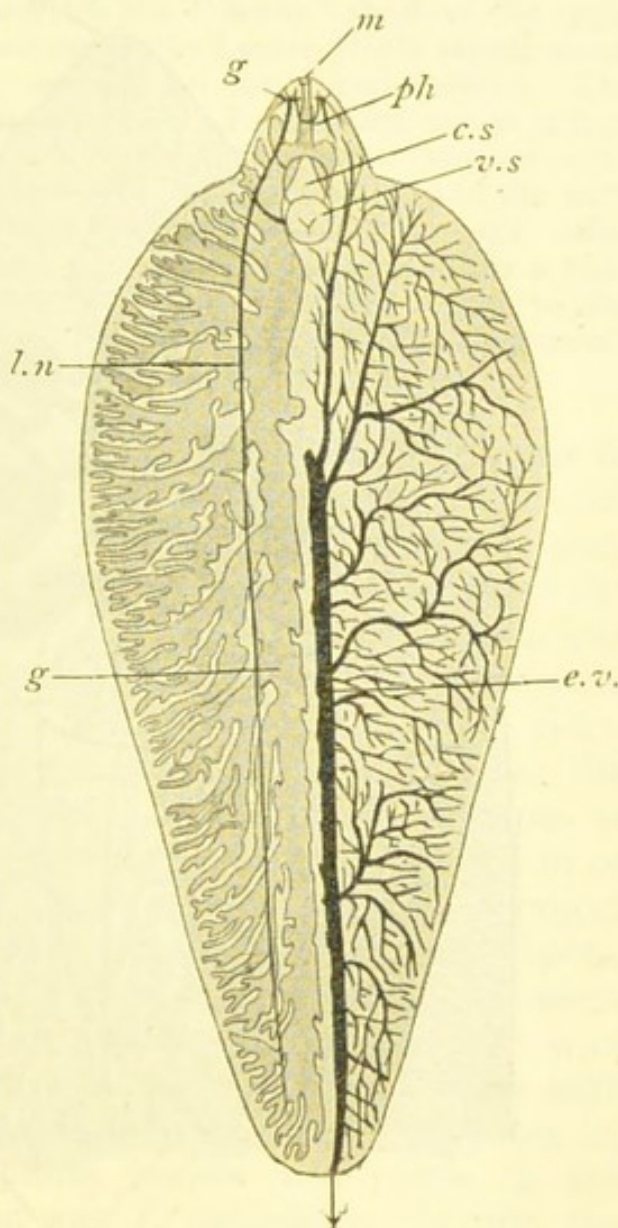


FIG. 70.—Structure of liver fluke.—After Sommer. From ventral surface. The branched gut (*g.*) and the lateral nerve (*l.n.*) are shown to the left, the branches of the excretory vessel (*e.v.*) to the right.

*m.*, Mouth; *ph.*, pharynx; *g.*, lateral head ganglion; *v.s.*, ventral sucker; *c.s.*, position of cirrus sac; an arrow indicates the excretory aperture.

The reproductive system is hermaphrodite and complex. From much-branched testes, spermatozoa pass by a pair of ducts (vasa deferentia) into a seminal vesicle lying in front of the ventral sucker.



Thence they are expelled by an ejaculatory duct, which passes through a muscular protrusible penis. The retracted penis and the seminal

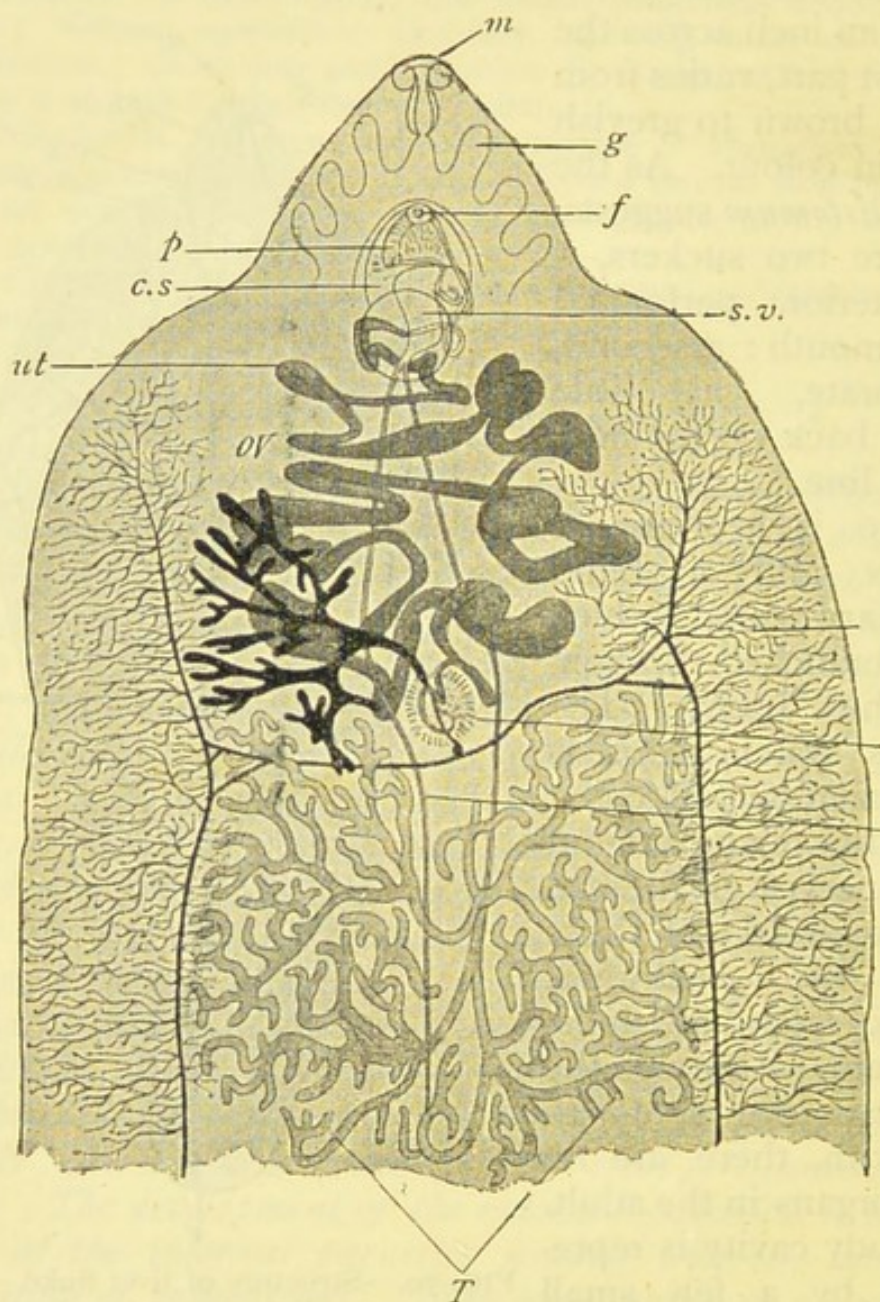


FIG. 71.—Reproductive organs of liver fluke.  
—After Sommer.

*f.* Female aperture.  
*s.v.* Seminal vesicle.  
*y.gl.* Diffuse yolk glands.  
*sh.g.* Shell gland.  
*v.d.* Vas deferens.  
*T.* Testes (anterior).

*ov.* Ovary (dark).  
*ut.* Uterus.  
*c.s.* Cirrus sac.  
*p.* Penis.  
*m.* Mouth.  
*g.* Anterior lobes of gut.

vesicle lie in a space or "cirrus sac" between the ventral sucker and the external male genital aperture. The ovary is also branched, but less so than the testes. The ova pass from its tubes into an ovarian



duct. Nutritive cells are gathered from very diffuse yolk glands, collected in a reservoir, and pass by a duct into the end of the aforesaid ovarian duct. At the junction of the yolk duct and the ovarian duct there is a shell gland, which secretes the "horny" shells of the eggs, and from near the junction a fine canal (the Laurer-Stieda canal) seems to pass direct to the exterior, opening on the dorsal surface. The meaning of this is still somewhat uncertain. In some flukes it is said to be a copulatory duct; in others it is regarded as a safety valve for overflowing products. From the junction of the ovarian duct and the duct from the yolk reservoir, the eggs (now furnished with yolk cells, accompanied by spermatozoa, and encased in shells) pass into a wide convoluted median tube, the oviduct or uterus, which opens to the exterior at the base of the penis. Self-fertilisation is probably normal, but in some related forms cross-fertilisation has been observed.

**Life history.**—The fertilised and segmented eggs pass in large numbers from the bile duct of the sheep to the intestine, and thence to the exterior. A single fluke may produce about half a million embryos, which illustrates the prolific reproduction often associated with the luxurious conditions of parasitism, and almost essential to the continuance of species whose life-cycles are full of risks. Outside of the host, but still within the egg-case, the embryo develops for a few weeks, and eventually escapes at one end of the shell. Those which are not deposited in or beside pools of water must die. The free embryo is conical in form, covered with cilia, provided with two eye spots, and actively locomotor. By means of its cilia it swims actively in the water for some hours, but its sole chance of life depends on its meeting a small amphibious water-snail (*Limnæus truncatulus* or *minutus*), into which it bores its way. In an epidemic among horses and cattle in the Hawaiian Islands, the host was *L. cahuensis*. Within the snail, e.g. in the pulmonary chamber, the embryo becomes passive, loses its cilia, increases in size, and becomes a *sporocyst*. Sometimes this sporocyst divides transversely (Fig. 72 (4)).

Within the sporocyst certain cells behave like parthenogenetic ova. Each segments into a ball of cells or morula, which is invaginated into a gastrula, and grows into another form of larva—the *redia*. These rediæ burst out of the sporocyst, and migrate into the liver or some other organ, killing the snail if they are very numerous. Indeed, the death of the snail is probably necessary for the escape of



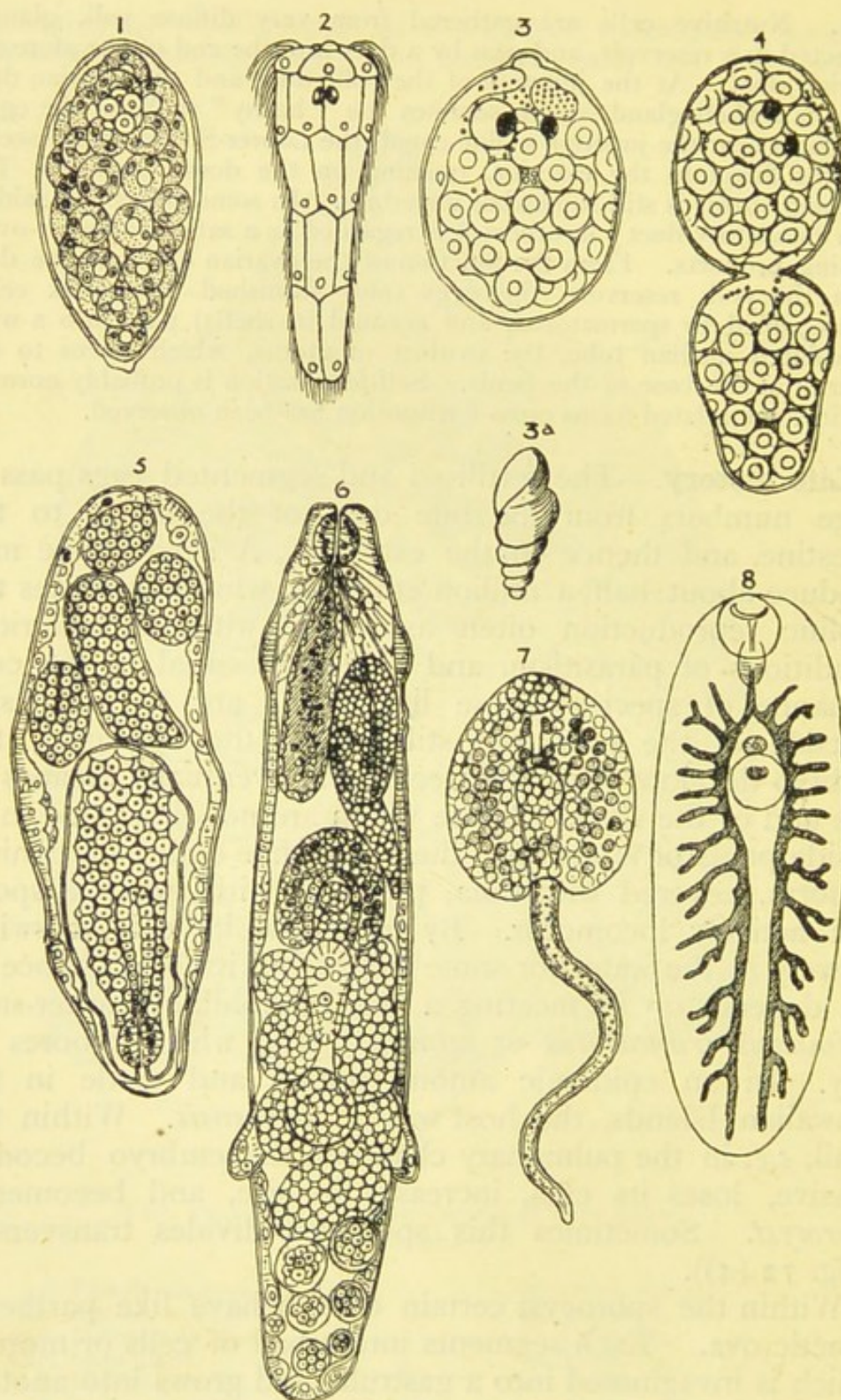


FIG. 72.—Life history of liver fluke.—After Thomas.

1. Developing embryo in egg-case; 2. free-swimming ciliated embryo;
3. sporocyst; 3a. Shell of *Limnaeus truncatulus*; 4. division of sporocyst;
5. sporocyst with rediae forming within it; 6. redia with more rediae forming within it;
7. tailed cercaria; 8. young fluke.



the final larvæ. Each redia is a cylindrical organism with a short alimentary canal (Fig. 72 (6)).

Like the sporocysts, the rediæ give rise internally to more embryos, of which some are simply rediæ over again, while the last set are quite different,—long-tailed *cercariæ*, with two suckers and a forked food canal. These emerge from the rediæ, wriggle out of the snail, pass into the water, and moor themselves to stems of damp grass. There they lose their tails and become encysted. If the encysted cercaria on the grass stem be eaten by a sheep, it grows, in about six weeks, into the adult sexual fluke.

It will be noted that the sporocyst is the modified embryo, but that it has the power of giving rise asexually to rediæ. These develop, however, from special cells of the sporocyst, which we may compare to spores or to precociously developed parthenogenetic ova. Though the reproduction is asexual, it is not comparable to budding or division. The same power is possessed by the rediæ, and there are thus several (at least two) asexual generations between the embryo and the adult.

The disease of liver rot in sheep is common and disastrous. It has been known to destroy a million sheep in one year in Britain alone; and in the winter 1879–80 the mortality attributed to fluke disease was estimated at three millions. It is especially common after wet seasons, and in damp districts.

**Classification.**—Trematodes may be conveniently arranged, though not exactly classified, according to their mode of development.

A. Trematodes with direct development—Monogenetic.

*e.g. Polystomum integerrimum.* This form with many suckers is often found in the bladder of the frog. It attaches itself in its youth to the gills of tadpoles, passes thence through the food canal to the bladder, where it develops slowly for years.

*Gyrodactylus*, found on the gills and fins of fresh-water fishes. It is viviparous, but the embryo, before it is extruded, itself contains an embryo, and this in turn another, so that three generations of embryos are represented simultaneously.

*Diplozoon paradoxum* consists of two individuals united. The single embryo (*Diporpa*) is at first free-swimming, but becomes a parasite on the gills of a minnow, and there two individuals unite very closely and permanently.

*Tristomum*, with three suckers, is not uncommon on the skin of some marine fishes.

B. Trematodes with indirect development—Digenetic.

*e.g. Distomum*, with numerous species.

*Bilharzia hæmatobius*, a dangerous parasite of man, widely distributed in Africa, *e.g.* in Egypt. It infests the urinary and abdominal blood vessels, causing inflammation,



hæmaturia, etc. The sexes are separate, and the male (about half an inch in length) carries the more thread-like female (about an inch in length) inserted in a groove or gynæcophoric canal. Man is probably infected from bad water, but the history of the parasite is still uncertain. The embryos are passed out in the urine.

*Monostomum*, with one sucker, adults in ducks, young in *Planorbis*.

The relationships of the class are on the one hand with the free-living Turbellarians, on the other hand with the parasitic Cestodes.

A few interesting simple forms like *Temnocephala* found in Crustacea and Vertebrates, seem not to be truly parasitic, for they live on minute organisms and only receive shelter from the host. In the ciliation of the ectoderm and in some other respects these forms closely resemble Turbellaria.

### Class CESTODA. Tape-worms.

The Cestodes are internal parasites, whose life history includes a bladder-worm (*prosclex*) and a tape-worm (*strobila*) stage, the former in a Vertebrate or Invertebrate host, the latter (with one exception) in a Vertebrate. In a few cases the body is unsegmented, e.g. *Archigetes* and *Caryophyllæus*, with one set of gonads; in a few others, e.g. *Ligula*, there is a serial repetition of gonads without distinct segmentation of the body; in most cases, e.g. *Tænia* and *Bothriocephalus*, the body of the tape-worm forms a chain of numerous joints or proglottides, each with a set of gonads. Thus the class includes transitions from unsegmented to segmented forms, but the latter are imperfectly integrated. The general form of the body is tape-like and bilaterally symmetrical, with hooks, grooves, or suckers ensuring attachment to the gut of the host. The body-wall consists of a cuticle and a well-innervated epidermis, within which there is parenchymatous connective tissue, often with cortical deposits of lime, and at least two sets (longitudinal and transverse) of unstriped muscles. The nervous system consists of two or more longitudinal nerve-strands and anterior ganglionated commissures; there are no special sense organs. There is no alimentary system; the parasite floating in the digested food of its host absorbs soluble material by its general surface. There is no vascular nor respiratory system, and a body cavity is represented merely by irregular spaces in the solid parenchymatous tissue. In some of these spaces there are "flame cells," which lie at the ends of



*the fine branches of longitudinal excretory tubes, which are united in a ring in the head, are connected transversely at each joint, and open terminally by one or more pores. All tape-worms are hermaphrodite, and most, if not all, are probably self-fertilising. The male reproductive organs include diffuse testes, a vas deferens, and a protrusible terminal cirrus. The female organs include a pair of ovaries, yolk glands, a shell gland, a vagina by which spermatozoa enter, a receptacle for storing spermatozoa, and a uterus in which the ova develop. The embryo develops within another host into a proscolex or bladder-worm stage, which forms a "head" or scolex. When the host of the bladder-worm is eaten by the final host, the scolex develops into an adult sexual tape-worm. With the conditions of endoparasitic life may be associated the occurrence of fixing organs, the absence of sense organs, the low though somewhat complex character of the nervous system, the entire absence of a food canal, and the prolific reproduction.*

**Life history of *Tænia solium*.**—This is one of the most frequent of the tape-worms infesting man. In its adult state it is often many feet in length, and is attached by its "head" to the wall of the intestine. The head bears four suckers and a crown of hooks, and buds off a long chain of joints, which develop complex reproductive organs as they get shunted further and further from the head. The last of the joints or *proglottides* is liberated (singly or along with others), and passes down the intestine of its host to the exterior. It has some power of muscular contraction, and is distended with little embryos within firm egg-shells. When the proglottis ruptures, these egg-cases are set free.

In certain circumstances, the embryos, within their firmly resistant egg-shells, may be swallowed by the omnivorous pig. Within the alimentary canal of this animal the egg-shells are dissolved, and embryos bearing six anterior hooks are liberated. They bore their way from the intestine into the muscles or other structures, and there encyst. They lose their hooks, increase in size, and become passive, vegetative, asexual "bladder-worms." A bud from the wall of the bladder or *proscolex* grows into the cavity of the same, and forms the future "head" or *scolex*. This is afterwards everted, and then the bladder-worm consists of a small head attached by a short neck to a relatively large bladder. But



this remains quiescent, and without power of further development, unless the pig be eaten by some other Vertebrate.

When man unwittingly eats "measly" pork, that is pork infested with bladder-worms, an opportunity for further

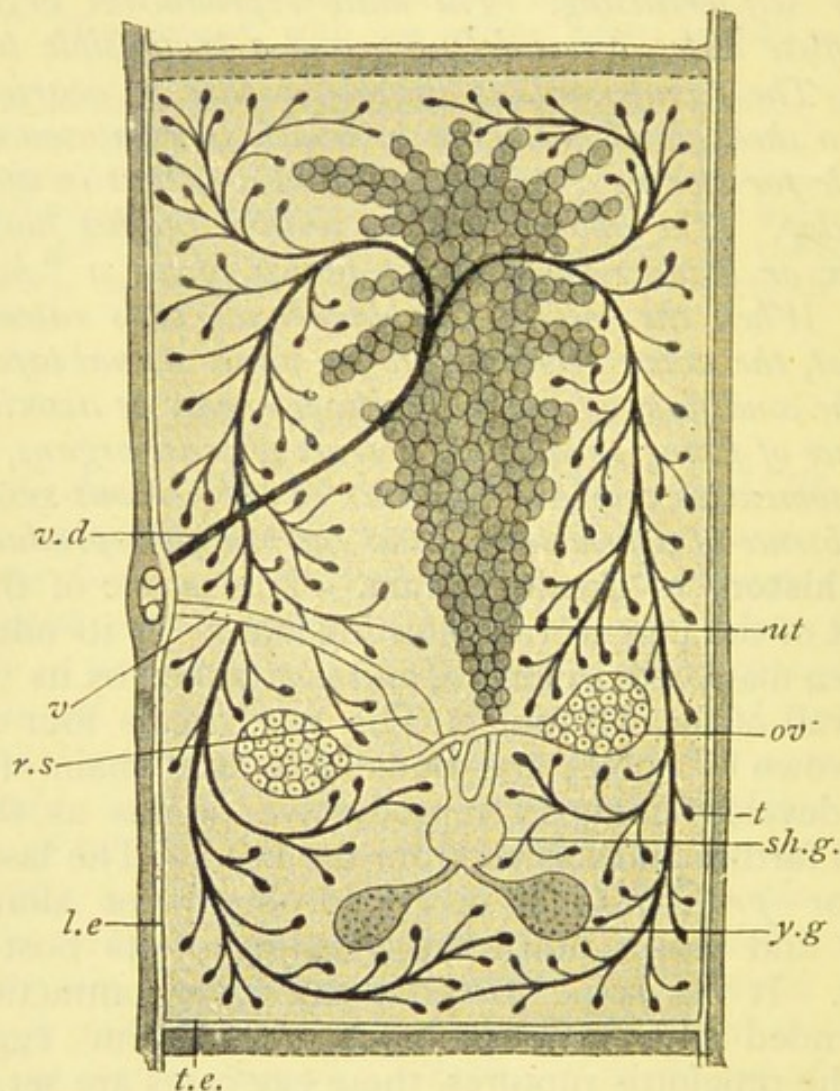


FIG. 73.—Diagram of reproductive organs in Cestode joint.  
—Constructed from Leuckart.

*ov.*, Ovary, with short oviduct; *ut.*, "uterus;" *t.*, diffuse testes; *sh.g.*, shell gland; *y.g.*, yolk gland; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *v.*, vagina; *r.s.*, receptaculum seminis; *l.e.*, longitudinal excretory ducts; *t.e.*, transverse bridges connecting these.

The dotted lines above and below represent the anterior and posterior borders of the proglottis. Note that the so-called uterus is blind; it opens to the exterior in a few tape-worms, and is perhaps the homologue of the Laurer-Stieda canal of Trematodes.

development is afforded. The bladder is lost, and is of no importance, but the "head" or scolex fixes itself to the wall of the intestine. There it is copiously and richly nourished, and buds off asexually a chain of joints.



As these joints are pushed by younger interpolated buds further and further from the head, they become sexually

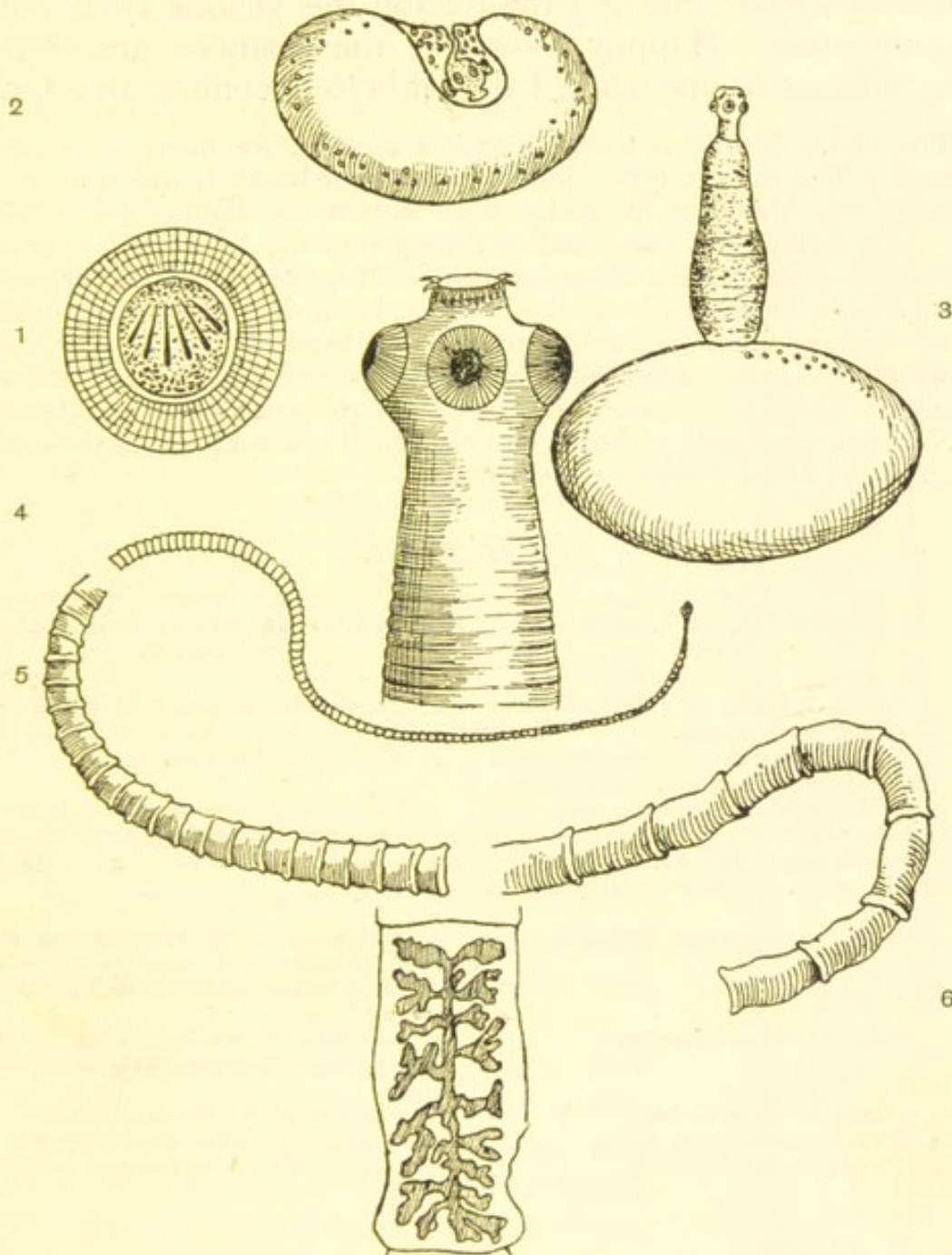


FIG. 74.—Life history of *Tænia solium*.—After Leuckart.

1. Six-hooked embryo in egg-case ; 2. prosclex or bladder-worm stage, with invaginated head ; 3. bladder-worm with evaginated head ; 4. enlarged head of adult, showing suckers and hooks ; 5. general view of the tape-worm, from small head and thin neck to the ripe joints ; 6. a ripe joint or proglottis with branched uterus (cf. Fig. 73) ; all other organs are now lost.

mature, developing complex hermaphrodite reproductive organs. The ova are fertilised, apparently by spermatozoa



from the same joints; the proglottis becomes distended with developing embryos. These ripe joints are liberated, the embryos are set free by rupture, and the vicious circle may recommence. Happily, however, the chances are thirty-five millions to one against the embryo becoming an adult.

The above history is true, *mutatis mutandis*, for many other tape-worms. The embryo grows into a *prosclex* or bladder, which buds off a *scolex* or head, which, in another host, buds off the chain of *proglottides*. As it is virtually the same animal throughout, the life history does not include an "alternation of generations." It is doubtful, however, what term should be applied to those cases in which the bladder-worm (*Cœnurus* and *Echinococcus*) forms not one head only but many, each of which is capable of becoming an adult tape-worm. The only known exception to the fact that sexual tape-worms are parasites of Vertebrates, is *Archigetes sieboldii*, a simple cestode which is sexual within the small fresh-water worm *Tubifex rivulorum*.

### Life Histories.

ADULT, SEXUAL, OR TAPE-WORM STAGE.	NON-SEXUAL, PROSCOLEX, OR BLADDER-WORM STAGE.
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Tænia solium</i>, in man, with four suckers and many hooks.</li> <li>2. <i>Tænia saginata</i> or <i>mediocanellata</i>, in man, with four suckers, but no hooks.</li> <li>3. <i>Bothriocephalus latus</i>, in man, with two lateral suckers, but no hooks, with less distinct separation of the proglottides than in <i>Tænia</i>. It may be 11 yards in length.</li> <li>4. <i>Tænia echinococcus</i>, in dog.</li> <li>5. <i>Tænia cœnurus</i>, in dog.</li> <li>6. <i>Tænia serrata</i>, in dog.</li> <li>7. <i>Tænia cucumerina</i>, in cat.</li> <li>8. <i>Tænia elliptica</i>, in dog.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <i>Cysticercus cellulosæ</i>, in muscles of the pig.</li> <li>2. Bladder-worm in cattle.</li> <li>3. The ciliated, free-swimming embryo becomes a parasite in the pike or burbot, but without a distinct bladder-like stage.</li> <li>4. <i>Echinococcus veterinorum</i>, in domestic animals, and sometimes in man, producing brood capsules, which give rise to many "heads."</li> <li>5. <i>Cœnurus cerebralis</i>, causing sturdie or staggers in sheep, producing numerous "heads."</li> <li>6. <i>Cysticercus pisiformis</i>, in rabbit.</li> <li>7. <i>Cysticercus fasciolaris</i>, in mouse.</li> <li>8. <i>Cysticercus</i>, in dog-louse or perhaps in flea.</li> </ol>

Zoologically the cestodes are interesting, on account of their life histories, the degeneration associated with their parasitism, the prevalence of self-impregnation, and the complexity of the reproductive organs. Practically they are of importance as parasites of man and domestic animals. The medical student should consult Leuckart's great work, "The Parasites of Man," part of which has been translated by W. E. Hoyle (Edin., 1886).

The three classes, Turbellaria, Trematoda, and Cestoda, taken together, constitute the Platyhelminthes or Flat-worms—an interesting group, because its members illustrate so well the progressive degener-



ation associated with increasing parasitism, and also because of the relatively great simplicity. The three classes are undoubtedly nearly related, for forms like *Temnocephala* connect Turbellaria and Trematoda, and the "monozoic" Cestodes like *Archigetes*, *Amphilina*, and *Caryophyllæus*, connect Trematoda and Cestoda.

Among the most striking of the Platyhelminth characters are the nature of the excretory and reproductive organs and the condition of the mesoblast. The excretory system, with its longitudinal trunks, its ramifying canals, and "flame cells," is eminently characteristic, though it occurs in more or less modified condition in higher forms. The reproductive organs are complex, show division of labour, and are furnished with ducts of their own, unconnected with the excretory system—a condition of affairs not common elsewhere. The presence of shells around the eggs is another point of interest. It becomes of great importance to the parasitic flukes and tape-worms, but occurs also in the free-living Turbellaria. There is no true body cavity, the space between gut and body-wall being filled with a packing tissue; the absence of an anus is also important in this connection, the two characters taken together being held to indicate affinity with the Ctenophora.

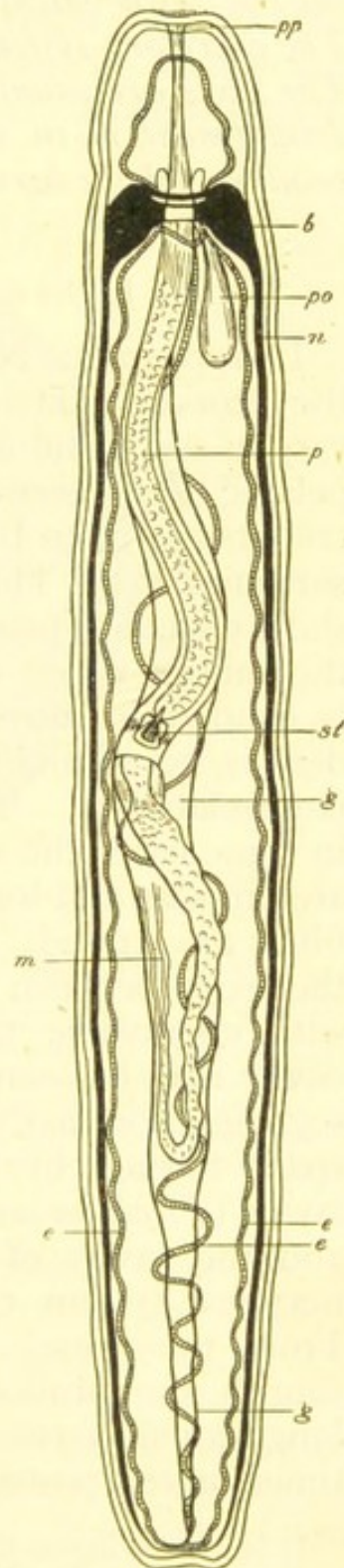
#### Class NEMERTEA. Nemertines.

*The Nemertines are worm-like animals, unsegmented and generally elongate in form; they are almost all marine, and most, if not all, are carnivorous.*

*The ectoderm is ciliated. There is a remarkable retractile proboscis, unconnected with the alimentary canal, and forming a tactile organ or a weapon. The nervous system consists of a brain,*

FIG. 75.—Diagrammatic longitudinal section of a Nemertean (*Amphiporus lactifloreus*), dorsal view.—After M'Intosh.

*pp.*, Proboscis pore; *b.*, brain giving off the lateral nerve-cords (*n.*); *po.*, œsophageal pocket; *p.*, proboscis lying within its sheath; *st.*, stilet of proboscis; *m.*, retractor muscles of proboscis; *g.*, gut shown in outline at the sides of the proboscis; *e.*, the three main longitudinal blood vessels which unite both anteriorly and posteriorly.





a commissure round the proboscis, and two lateral nerve-cords; in connection with the brain there is a pair of ciliated pits. The gut terminates in a posterior anus, and is furnished with lateral pockets. There is no body cavity in the adult, but the closed vascular system is probably of coelomic origin. The excretory system is apparently of the *Platyhelminth* type. The sexes are usually separate and the organs simple. The development is in some cases direct, while in others there is a peculiar pelagic larva.

#### GENERAL ACCOUNT OF NEMERTEA.

In appearance Nemertines are ribbon- or thread-like, and the cross-section is generally a flattened cylinder. They vary in size, from a *Lineus*, 12 or more feet in length, to the pelagic *Pelagonemertes*, which is under an inch. The colours are often bright, and tend to resemble those of the surroundings. The ectoderm is covered with numerous short cilia, and many of its cells are also glandular, secreting the mucus which often forms a tube around the animal, or is exuded in movement. Beneath the epidermis there is a dermis, consisting in part of connective tissue, and often in part gelatinous. The body is remarkably contractile, and in some cases the spasms result in breakage. The muscles are circular and longitudinal, and often also diagonal. The fibres are striped. In the adult there is no distinct coelom, the space between the gut and the body-wall being filled up with connective tissue. In the larvæ, however, a body cavity may be seen, either as an archicoele, *i.e.* the persistent segmentation cavity (*Lineus obscurus*), or as a schizocoele, *i.e.* a space formed by the cleavage of the mesoderm into two layers (*Pilidium*-larvæ). In the adult only the blood spaces and the cavity of the proboscis sheath are coelomic. The nervous system consists of a brain generally four-lobed. From the dorsal lobes a commissural ring rises and surrounds the proboscis sheath; from the lower lobes two longitudinal nerve-stems run along the sides, and are sometimes united posteriorly above the anus (Fig. 76, *l.n.*).

It is interesting to find that in *Drepanophorus* the lateral nerve-stems are approximated ventrally, and in *Langia*, dorsally; for these two approximations tend towards positions characteristic of the nervous



systems of Annelids and Arthropods on the one hand, and of Vertebrates on the other.

On each side of the head there is a ciliated pit communicating with the exterior through an open slit or groove, and communicating internally either with the brain itself or with adjacent nervous tissue. In those cases in which the development has been studied, these so-called lateral organs

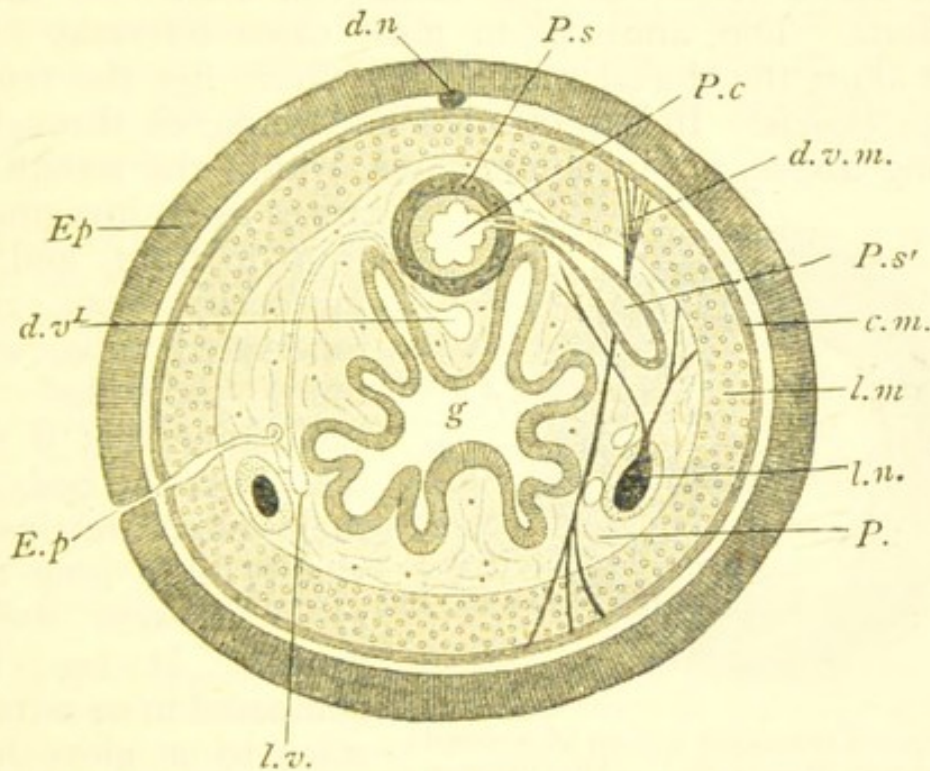


FIG. 76.—Transverse section of the Nemertean *Drepanophorus latus*.  
—After Bürger.

*d.n.*, Dorsal or proboscis nerve; *P.s.*, proboscis sheath; *P.c.*, proboscis cavity; *P.s'*, sac of proboscis cavity; *d.v.m.*, dorso-ventral muscles; *c.m.*, circular muscles; *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles; *l.n.*, lateral nerve with branches; *P.*, parenchyma; *g.*, gut; *l.v.*, lateral blood vessel, beside which lies an excretory vessel; *E.p.*, excretory pore; *d.v.*, dorsal blood vessel; *Ep.*, epidermis.

arise from epiblastic insinkings and œsophageal outgrowths. In the most primitive genus, *Carinella*, they are absent, except in one species. It has been suggested that they conduce to the respiration of the brain, which is rich in hæmoglobin, and they have even been compared with gill-slits. In some forms the groove through which they open to the exterior is rhythmically contractile. It has also been suggested that they are sensory. Apart from these organs, Nemertines are very sensitive, and in many this is associated



with a superficial nerve plexus. Tactile papillæ and patches are often present; eyes and eyespots are general; and in some there are otocyst-sacs. Apart from the cephalic slits, the head also bears sensory grooves and terminal sensory spots. The mouth is ventral, and leads into a plaited glandular fore-gut or œsophagus, which is followed by a straight, ciliated mid-gut or intestine, with regularly arranged lateral cæca. Between the cæca run transverse muscle partitions. The anus is in most cases terminal. In a cavity along the dorsal median line there lies the remarkable proboscis. It is protruded and retracted through an opening above, or, in a few cases, within the mouth. It

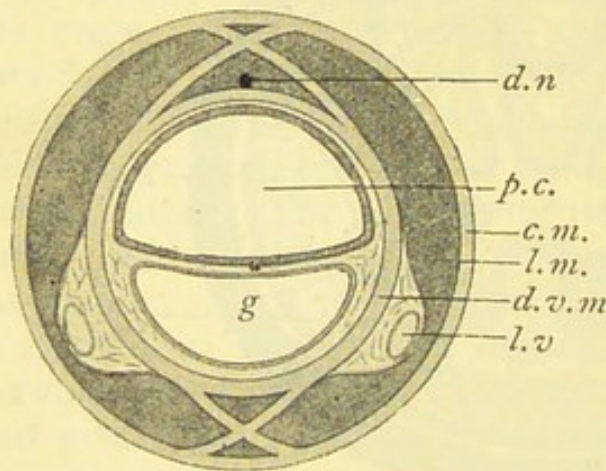


FIG. 77.—Transverse section of a simple Nemertean (*Carinella*).—After Bürger.

*d.n.*, Dorsal nerve; *p.c.*, proboscis cavity; *g.*, gut; *c.m.*, circular muscles; *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles; *d.v.m.*, dorso-ventral or diagonal muscles; *l.v.*, lateral blood vessel.

arises as an invagination from in front, and is a muscular, very richly innervated tube, sometimes protruded with such force that it separates from the body, and then often retains its vitality for a long time, as if it were itself a worm. It has been compared in its retracted state to a glove-finger drawn in by two threads attached to its tip, the threads being retractor muscles. But in front

of the attachment of the retractor muscles there is a non-eversible glandular region which secretes an irritant fluid. In many cases there are stilets at the tip of the eversible portion, and if these be absent, there are stinging cells or adhesive papillæ. There is a hint of a similar structure in some Turbellarians, and the organ may be interpreted as one which was originally tactile, but which has become secondarily aggressive. It is protruded by the muscular contraction of the walls of the proboscis sheath, which forms a closed cavity surrounding the proboscis, and containing a fluid with corpuscles (Fig. 75).

In the majority there are three longitudinal blood vessels



or spaces, a median and two laterals, which unite anteriorly and posteriorly, and also communicate by numerous transverse branches. The vessels or spaces are remnants of a cœlom. The blood is a colourless fluid, sometimes at least with nucleated elliptical corpuscles in which hæmoglobin may be present.

The excretory system is not fully known, but consists of two coiled ciliated canals opening in the anterior region by a varying number of ducts. They are said to divide up internally into numerous fine branches ending in flame cells, or in blind ampullæ embedded in the walls of the blood vessels.

The sexes are usually separate, and the reproductive organs are always simple. A few species (of *Geonemertes* and *Prosadenophorus*) are hermaphrodite, and some species of *Tetrastemma* are protandrous. The organs consist of simple sacs, arranged in a series on each side between the intestinal cæca, and communicating with the exterior by fine pores. The ova are often laid in gelatinous tubes, and are probably fertilised shortly before or at the time of excretion. In three or four forms (*Prosorhochmus*, a fresh-water *Tetrastemma*, a species of *Lineus*) known to be viviparous, the fertilisation must, of course, be internal.

Segmentation is total and almost always equal; a complete or partial gastrula is formed, and development may be direct or indirect.

(1) In *Cerebratulus*, etc., the larva is adapted for pelagic life, and is known as the Pilidium. "In external shape it resembles a helmet with spike and ear lobes, the spike being a strong and long flagellum or a tuft of long cilia, the ear lobes lateral ciliated appendages" (Hubrecht). Out of this, somewhat abruptly, the adult form arises. (2) In *Lineus* there is a sedentary larva, which has been interpreted as a reduced Pilidium, and is known as the "larva of Desor." (3) In *Hoploneurtea* the development is direct without metamorphosis.

**Relationships.**—The Nemertines are probably nearly related to Turbellaria, but show some very distinct marks of advance. Of these, the most noticeable are the presence of an anus, of a closed vascular system, of a cœlom at least in the larva. The recent discovery of flame cells in connection with the excretory system confirms the idea of Platyhelminth affinities; but it is to be noticed that apart from the points mentioned above, the reproductive system is strikingly different. Professor Hubrecht has suggested that Nemertines exhibit affinities with Vertebrates, comparing proboscis sheath with notochord, and so forth.



**Classification.**—

1. Palæonemertea : No deep head fissure ; no stilet ; mouth behind brain.  
*e.g. Carinella, Cephalothrix, Carinoma, Polia.*
  2. Schizonemertea : A deep head fissure with a ciliated duct to the brain ; lateral nerves between the longitudinal and inner circular muscles ; mouth behind brain.  
*e.g. Lineus, Cerebratulus, Langia.*
  3. Hoplonemertea : No deep head fissures ; lateral nerves inside the muscles ; stilet present ; mouth generally in front of brain.  
*e.g. Amphiporus, Nemertes, Drepanophorus, Malacobdella.*
- The last has no head fissures nor spines on the proboscis, but bears a posterior sucker.

**Habits.**—Most Nemertines are marine, creeping about in the mud, under stones, among seaweed, and the like ; many, *e.g. Cerebratulus*, are able to swim ; *Pelagonemertes* is pelagic ; four species of *Tetrahelminthia* live in fresh water ; seven species of *Geonemertes* are terrestrial ; *Malacobdella* and a few others live in the mantle-cavity of marine bivalves, and some others are found as commensals in Ascidians ; *Cephalothrix Galatheæ* destroys the eggs of its host—the crustacean *Galathea*. Most seem to be carnivorous, eating annelids, molluscs, and even small crustaceans. Many break readily into pieces when irritated, and the Schizonemertea are able to regenerate what they lose in this way.

## Series NEMATHELMINTHES.

Class Nematoda, *e.g. Ascaridæ.*

Class Gordiacea, *e.g. Gordiidæ, Nectonemidæ.*

Class Acanthocephala, *e.g. Echinorhynchus.*

## Class NEMATODA. Thread-worms, Hair-worms, etc.

*The Nematodes are unsegmented, more or less thread-like "worms," some of which are free-living and others parasitic. The body is covered by a cuticle, often thick ; cilia are totally absent, and the muscular system is very peculiar. From a nerve-ring around the gullet, six nerves go forwards and six backwards. The alimentary canal is usually well developed, has mouth and anus, and is divided into three regions. Vascular and respiratory systems are unrepresented ; there is a distinct body cavity which is not cœlomic, and the remarkable excretory system consists of two lateral canals opening to the exterior by a single pore. The sexes are usually separate and the organs simple ; there is distinct sexual dimorphism. The life history is often intricate.*



Type, *Ascaris* (e.g. *Ascaris megalocephala*, the Round-worm of the horse).

This round-worm occurs in the small intestine of the horse, while other species similarly infest man, the ox, pig, etc. The body is cylindrical in cross-section and tapering at each end. The colour is dead-white, the absence of pigment being very characteristic of Nematodes. At the anterior end is the mouth, furnished with three lips bearing sense papillæ; the anus is posterior and ventral. The male is smaller than the female, and has a recurved tail furnished with two horny spines and numerous sense papillæ. It is usually about seven inches long, while the female may be as much as seventeen.

(a) Most externally there is a thick chitinoid cuticle, perhaps of service in enabling the animals to resist the action of the digestive juices. With its presence may be associated the scarcity of cutaneous glands, and the entire absence of cilia. (b) Beneath this is the sub-cuticula or hypodermis, thickened along four longitudinal lines—median dorsal, ventral, and lateral, and consisting of a protoplasmic mass without distinct cell-limits. (c) Beneath the hypodermis is a layer of remarkable muscle cells, lying in groups defined by the lines mentioned above. Many of the Nematodes are very agile.

Around the pharynx there is a nerve-ring from which six nerves run forwards and six backwards. One of the latter runs along the median dorsal line—a unique position in an Invertebrate. Here and there on the ring and on the nerves there are ganglionic cells, but any aggregation of these into ganglia is rare. Sense organs are represented by the papillæ already mentioned.

As the food consists of juices from a living host, it is not surprising to find that the alimentary canal has but a narrow cavity. It consists of three parts, a fore-gut or œsophagus, lined by the inturned cuticle, a mid-gut or mesenteron of endodermic origin, and a usually short hind-gut or rectum, lined by the cuticle. When the external cuticle is shed, so is that of the fore-gut and hind-gut (cf. Crayfish).

There is a distinct space between gut and body-wall, but it is lined externally by the muscle cells, internally by the endoderm of the gut,



which has no mesoblastic coat; the space is therefore not strictly coelomic. It contains a clear fluid, which probably discharges some of the functions of the absent blood. There are *no amœboid phagocytes*.

Imbedded in each lateral line there is a longitudinal canal. These unite anteriorly, and open in a ventral excretory pore near the head. They seem to be associated internally with phagocytic cells. In the species discussed there are four giant cells situated anteriorly, which are especially connected with taking up foreign particles. The relation of this excretory system to that of other Invertebrates is unknown.

The sexes are separate. In the male the testis is unpaired—a coiled tube gradually differentiating into vas deferens, seminal vesicles, and ejaculatory duct. The genital aperture is close to the anus. The spermatozoa have not the typical form, and are sluggish. In the female the ovary is a paired tube, which passes gradually into an oviduct, a uterus, and a short vagina at each side. The genital aperture is ventral and anterior.

The ova meet the spermatozoa at the junction of uterus and oviduct. Segmentation is total, and results in the formation first of a blastula and then of a gastrula. The eggs pass out of the gut of the host and probably hatch in water, and are thus re-introduced. No intermediate host has yet been found.

*m.*, Mouth; *c.*, a cuticular ring; *æ.*, œsophagus; *B.*, bulb containing teeth; *i.*, intestine; *T.*, testis; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *sp.*, penial spine at anus.

on putrefying organic matter. Again, although the number of individuals which may infest one host shows how successful the parasitism is, yet Nematodes exhibit few of the ordinary adaptations to a parasitic life, and there is no sharp structural line of demarcation between free

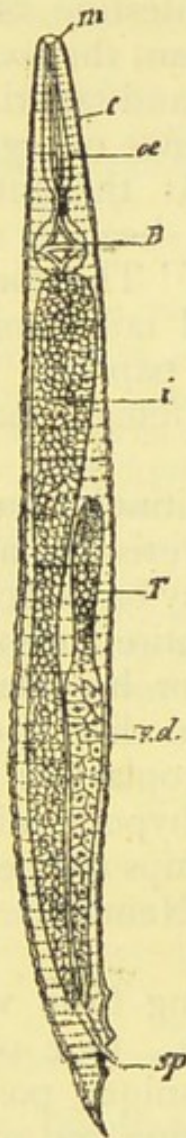


FIG. 78. — Illustrating the structure of a Nematode (*Oxyuris*). — After Galeb.

The Nematoda form an important group, interesting both on account of their parasitism and on account of their peculiarly isolated zoological position. Though parasitism is exceedingly common, many are free living for at least a part of the life-cycle, and feed



and parasitic forms. Among histological peculiarities, the absence of cilia—paralleled elsewhere only among the Arthropods—the nature of the muscle cells, the condition of the sub-cuticular layer, are to be noticed. Among the grosser structural peculiarities, the nature of the excretory system, of the body cavity, and of the nervous system, are worthy of special note. Sense organs are never well developed, but in the free-living forms simple eyes may occur. The alimentary canal is usually completely developed, but may, as in *Sphærulearia*, be degenerate. Of the relationships nothing is known.

### LIFE HISTORIES.

1. The embryo grows directly into the adult, and both live in fresh or salt water, damp earth, and rotting plants—Enoplidæ, *e.g.* *Enoplus*.
2. The larvæ are free in the earth, the sexual adults are parasitic in plants, or in Vertebrate animals, *e.g.* *Tylenchus scandens*, a common parasite on cereals; *Strongylus* and *Dochmius* in man.
3. The sexual adults are free, the larvæ are parasitic in insects, *e.g.* *Mermis*. The fertilised females of *Sphærulearia bombi* pass from the earth into the body cavity of humble-bee and wasp, whence their larvæ bore into the intestine and eventually emerge.
4. The larvæ are parasitic in one animal, the sexual adults in another which feeds on the first. Thus *Ollulanus* passes from mouse to cat, *Cucullanus* from *Cyclops* to perch.

There are other life histories, and many degrees of parasitism. The most remarkable form is *Angiostomum* (or *Ascaris* or *Leptodera*) *nigrovenosum*. In damp earth males and females occur, the progeny of which pass into the lungs of frogs and toads. There they mature into hermaphrodite animals (the only example among Nematodes), which produce first spermatozoa and then ova. They are self-impregnating, and the young pass out into the earth as males or females. Here there is alternation of generations; and a somewhat similar story might be told of *Rhabdonema strongyloides* from the intestine of man, and *Leptodera appendiculata* from the snail.

There are several quaint reproductive abnormalities, thus—the female *Sphærulearia bombi*, which gets into the body cavity of the humble-bee, has a prolapsed uterus, larger than itself; the male of *Trichodes crassicauda* passes into the uterus of the female.

TABLE.



*Some of the most Important Forms Parasitic in Man.*

NAME.	POSITION.	HISTORY.	RESULT ON HOST.
<i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i> (maw-worm) (common). <i>A. mystax</i> , common in dogs and cats, has also been found in man.	Usually in small intestine.	Repeated experiment has shown that infection results if the eggs (with their outer envelope entire) are swallowed along with vegetable food or otherwise. Von Linstow has suggested, on theoretical grounds, that two myriopods, <i>Julus guttulatus</i> and <i>Polydesmus complanatus</i> , may be intermediate hosts.	Commonest in children; rarely dangerous, unless very numerous, or through wandering into other parts of the body, such as respiratory tract, bile duct, vermiform appendix.
<i>Oxyuris vermicularis</i> (common).	From stomach to rectum, mostly in cæcum.	From food or water.	Rarely more than discomfort.
<i>Trichocephalus dispar</i> or whip-worm (common).	Cæcum and colon.	..	..
<i>Dochmius</i> ( <i>Anchylostoma</i> ) <i>duodenalis</i> (Europe, Egypt, Brazil). <i>Rhabdonema strongyloides</i> .	Small intestine.  Associated with <i>Dochmius</i> .	The larvæ seem to live freely in the earth.	Ulceration, hæmorrhage, and dangerous anæmia. It was common in the workers at the Mont Cenis Tunnel.
<i>Filaria sanguinis hominis</i> (Australia, China, India, Egypt, and Brazil).	Mature female in lymphatic glands, embryos in blood.	Larvæ in a Mosquito.	Elephantiasis and hæmaturia.
<i>Dracunculus</i> ( <i>Filaria</i> ) <i>medinensis</i> (Guinea-worm), in Arabia, Egypt, Abyssinia, etc.	The female is 1-6 ft. long, encysts beneath skin, especially of back or legs. The male is practically unknown.	Larvæ in a <i>Cyclops</i> .	Subcutaneous abscesses.
<i>Trichina spiralis</i> .	Becomes sexually mature in the intestine; embryos, produced rapidly and viviparously, find their way to muscles, and become encysted.	From "trichinosed" pig's muscle to man.	Inflammatory processes, often fatal, are brought about by the migration of the young worms from intestine to muscles.

*Trichina*.—The formidable *Trichina* deserves fuller notice. It is best known as a parasite in man, pig, and rat, but occurs also in hedgehog, fox, marten, dog, cat, rabbit, ox, and horse. The sexual forms live in the intestine, the female about 3 mm. in length, the male about half



as long. After impregnation the female brings forth numerous embryos viviparously, sixty to eighty at a time, and altogether about 1500. Most of these find their way through the wall of the intestine into blood vessels, and are swept along in the blood stream to the muscles; occasionally some seem to migrate actively, boring their way, especially through connective tissue, to the muscle fibres. There they grow, coil themselves spirally, and become encysted within a sheath, at first membranous and afterwards calcareous (Figs. 79 and 80). The cyst is partly due to the muscle, and partly to the parasite. In these cysts, which may be sometimes counted in millions, the young *Trichinæ* remain passive, unless the flesh of their host be eaten by another,—pig eating rat, man eating pig. In the alimentary canal of the new host the capsule is dissolved, the embryos are set free, and become rapidly reproductive.

Among the numerous other parasitic Nematodes the following may be noted:—The giant palisade worm (*Eustrongylus gigas*) occurs in the renal region of domestic animals, etc.; the female may be 3 ft. long. The



FIG. 79.—*Trichinæ* in muscle, about to be encapsuled.—After Leuckart.



FIG. 80.—*Trichinæ* in muscle, encapsuled.—After Leuckart.

armed palisade worm (*Strongylus armatus*) occurs in the intestine and intestinal arteries of horse, causing aneurisms, colic, etc. The young forms are swallowed from stagnant water, bore from gut into arteries, become adult, return to gut, copulate and multiply. Various other species of *Strongylus* occur in sheep, cattle, etc. Of the genus *Ascaris* alone, over 200 species have been found in all types of Vertebrates;—*A. megalocephala* in horses, *A. lumbricoides* in man, *A. mystax* in cats and dogs. *Syngamus trachealis* occurs in the trachea of birds, causing "gapes." Various species of *Tylenchus*, especially *T. devas-*



*tatrix* and *T. scandens* (or *T. tritici*), destroy cereal and other crops. Various species of *Heterodera* (especially *H. schachtii* and *H. radicola*) infest the roots of many cultivated plants, e.g. turnip, radish, cabbage.

### Class GORDIACEA.

The Gordiidæ (e.g. *Gordius aquaticus*—the horse-hair worm) and the Nectonemidæ are so different from true Nematodes that they must be ranked in a separate class. In the adult *Gordius* the mouth is shut and the food canal is partly degenerate. The adults live freely in fresh water; there are two larval forms, the first in aquatic molluscs, young insects, etc., the second in adult insects, fish, frog, etc.

### Class ACANTHOCEPHALA.

For a few genera, of which the best known is *Echinorhynchus*, whose larvæ live in Arthropods, and the adults in Vertebrates, a special class, ACANTHOCEPHALA, has been established. We may provisionally place these forms, of which there are several hundreds, beside Nematodes, but the relationship does not seem to be very close. Mouth and gut are absent. The anterior end bears a protrusible hooked proboscis.

*Echinorhynchus proteus* of pike, larva in the Amphipod *Gammarus pulex*.

„ *angustatus* of perch, larva in the Isopod *Asellus aquaticus*.

„ *gigas* of pig, larva in young cockchafers.



## CHAPTER XI.

### SEGMENTED WORMS OR ANNELIDA.

*Chief Classes* :—CHÆTOPODA, DISCOPHORA.

THE Annelids or Annulata include segmented "worms," in most of which the segmentation of the body is visible externally. There is usually a well-developed body cavity, which communicates with the exterior by paired nephridia. The nervous system consists typically of dorsal cerebral ganglia, a commissural ring round the gullet, and a ventral ganglionated chain. Not infrequently the nephridia function also as genital ducts. The development may be direct or indirect, and then includes a larval Trochosphere stage.

In habit, form, and structure, the Annelids exhibit much diversity. The Chætopods, represented on the one hand by the familiar earthworm, and on the other by the marine worms, best exhibit the structure upon which the Annelid type is founded. With these, however, may be included the aberrant Echiuridæ, *e.g.* *Echiurus* and *Bonellia*. A few primitive forms (Archi-Annelida), and the Myzostomata (parasitic on Crinoids), may also be appended to the Chætopod class. The leeches (Discophora) are probably Annelids which have diverged in consequence of a peculiar half-parasitic habit. Finally, some zoologists include *Sagitta* (Chætognatha) in this series as an Annelid with three segments, and also the Rotifers (Rotatoria), whose adult form somewhat resembles the Trochosphere larvæ of many Annelids.

Class CHÆTOPODA. Worms with Bristles.

*Segmented animals with setæ developed in little skin-sacs,*



either on a uniform body-wall or on special locomotor protrusions known as parapodia. The segments, indicated externally by rings, are often marked internally by partitions running across the body cavity, which is usually well developed. The nervous system generally consists of a double ventral chain of ganglia, connected with a pair of dorsal or cerebral centres, by means of a ring round the beginning of the gut. Two excretory tubes or nephridia are typically present in each segment, and they or their modifications may also function as reproductive ducts. The reproductive elements are formed on the lining membrane of the body cavity, and the development is either direct or with a metamorphosis.

The two prominent divisions of this class may be contrasted as follows :—

OLIGOCHÆTA, <i>e.g.</i> Earthworm.	POLYCHÆTA, <i>e.g.</i> <i>Nereis</i> .
With no parapodia, and with few setæ. Other external appendages are also wanting, except gills in a few forms. Hermaphrodite, with complex reproductive organs. Development direct. Living in fresh water or in the soil.	With parapodia and with numerous setæ. With antennæ, gills, and cirri. Sexes usually separate, and reproductive organs simple. A metamorphosis in development. Marine.

Type of OLIGOCHÆTA. The Earthworm (*Lumbricus*).

**Habits.**—Earthworms eat their way through the ground, and form definite burrows, which they often make more comfortable by a lining of leaves. The earth swallowed by the burrowers is reduced to powder in the gut, and, robbed of some of its decaying vegetable matter, is discharged on the surface as the familiar “worm-castings.” By the burrowing the earth is loosened, and ways are opened for plant-roots and rain-drops; the internal bruising reduces mineral matter to more useful form; while, in covering the surface with earth brought up from beneath, the earthworms have been ploughers before the plough. Darwin calculated that there were on an average over 53,000 earthworms in an acre of garden ground, that 10 tons of soil per acre pass annually through their bodies, and that they cover the surface with earth at the rate of 3 ins. in fifteen



years. He was therefore led to the conclusion that earthworms have been the great soil-makers, or, more precisely, that the formation of vegetable mould was mainly to be placed to their credit.

Though without eyes, earthworms are sensitive to light and persistently avoid it, remaining underground during the day, unless rain floods their burrows, and reserving their active life for the night. Then, prompted by "love" and hunger, they roam about on the surface, leaving on the moist roadway the trails which we see in the morning. More cautiously, however, they often remain with their tails fixed in their holes, while with the rest of their body they move slowly round and round. The nocturnal peregrinations, the labour of eating and burrowing, the transport of leaves to their holes, the collection of little stones to protect the entrance to the burrows, include most of the activities of earthworms, except as regards pairing and egg-laying, of which something will afterwards be said. When an earthworm is halved with the spade, it does not necessarily die, for the head portion may grow a new tail, while a decapitated worm may even grow a new head and brain. Leucocytes help as usual in the regeneration. The earthworm is much persecuted by numerous enemies, *e.g.* centipedes, moles, and birds. The male reproductive organs are always infested by unicellular parasites—Gregarines of the genus *Monocystis*; and little thread-worms (*Pelodera pello*) usually occur in the nephridia and body cavity, and often in the ventral blood vessels.

**Form and external characters.**—The earthworm is often about 6 ins. long, with a pointed head end, and a cylindrical body rather flattened posteriorly. The successive rings seen on the surface mark true segments. The mouth is overarched by a small lobe called the prostomium, and the food canal terminates at the blunt posterior end. The skin is covered by a thin transparent cuticle, traversed by two sets of fine lines, which break up the light and produce a slight iridescence. On a region extending from the 31st to the 38th ring, the skin of mature worms is swollen and glandular, forming the clitellum or saddle, which helps the worms as they unite in pairs, and perhaps forms the slimy stuff which hardens into cocoons. The middle line of the back is marked by a special redness of the skin. On the sides and ventral surface we feel and see four rows of tiny bristles or setæ, which project from little sacs, are worked by muscles, and assist in locomotion. These bristles are fixed like pins into the ground,



at times so firmly that even a bird finds it difficult to pull the worm

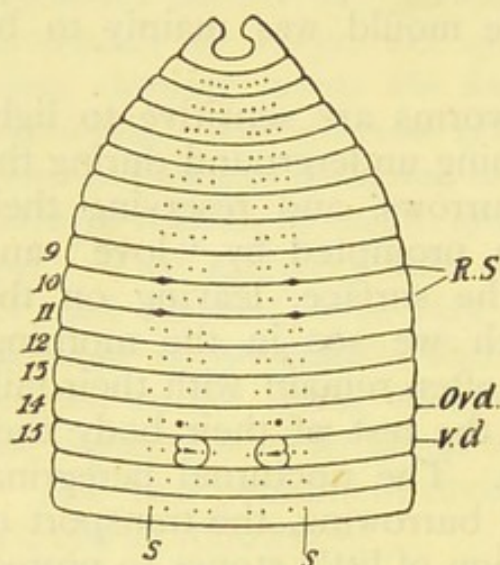


FIG. 81.—Anterior region of earthworm.—After Hering.

Note the eight setæ (s.) on each segment. R.S., Spots between 9-10, 10-11, indicate openings of receptacula seminis; Ovd., openings of oviducts on segment 14; v.d., openings of vasa deferentia on segment 15.

adjacent rings, there are minute pores, through which fluid from the body cavity may exude.

**Skin and bristles.**—The thin cuticle is produced by the cells which lie beneath, and is perforated by the apertures previously mentioned. The epidermis clothing the worm is a single layer of cells, of which most are simply supporting or covering elements, while many are slightly modified, as glandular or mucous cells, and as nervous cells. As the latter are connected with afferent fibres which enter the nerve-cord, the skin is diffusely sensitive. In a few species the skin is slightly phosphorescent. The bristles, which are longest on the genital segments, are much curved, and lie in small sacs of the skin, in which they can be replaced after breakage.

**Muscular system and body cavity.**—The earthworm moves by the contraction of muscle cells, which are arranged in hoops underneath the skin, and in longitudinal bands more internally. The special muscles above the mouth and pharynx have considerable powers of grasping,

from its hole. As each of the four longitudinal rows is double, there are obviously eight bristles to each ring. On the skin of the ventral surface there are not a few special apertures, which should be looked for on a full-grown worm; but careful examination of several specimens is usually necessary. Almost always plain on the 15th ring are the two swollen lips of the male ducts, less distinct on the 14th are the apertures of the oviducts through which the eggs pass, while on each side, between segments 9 and 10, 10 and 11, are the openings of two receptacula seminis or spermathecae into which male elements from another earthworm pass, and from which they again pass out to fertilise the eggs of the earthworm when these are laid. Each segment contains a pair of excretory tubes, which have minute ventral-lateral apertures, while on the middle line of the back, between every two



while less obvious muscular elements occur in the wall of the gut, in the partitions which run internally between the segments, and on the outermost portions of the excretory tubes.

Unlike the leech, the earthworm has a very distinct body cavity, through the middle of which the gut extends, and across which run the partitions or septa incompletely separating successive segments. In this cavity there is some fluid with cellular elements, of which the most numerous are yellow cells detached from the walls of the gut. Possible communications with the exterior are by the dorsal pores, and also by the excretory tubes, which open internally into the cavities of the segments.

**Nervous system.**—Along the middle ventral line lies a chain of nerve-centres or ganglia, really double from first to last, but compactly united into what to unaided eyes seems a single cord. As the segments are very short, the limits of the successive pairs of ganglia are not very evident, especially in the anterior region, but they are plain enough on a small portion of the cord examined with the microscope, when it may also be seen that each of the pairs of ganglia gives off nerves to the walls of the body. Anteriorly, just behind the mouth, the halves of the cord diverge and ascend, forming a ring round the pharynx. They unite above in two dorsal or cerebral ganglia, which are situated in the peristomium or first ring, and not, as in *Polychætes*, in the prostomium. These form the earthworm's "brain," and give off nerves to the adjacent pre-oral lobe or prostomium, on which are numerous sensitive cells. These, coming in contact with many things, doubtless receive impressions, which are transmitted by the associated nerves to the "brain." As Mr. Darwin observed that earthworms seized hold of leaves in the most expeditious fashion, taking the sharp twin leaves of the Scotch fir by their united base, we may credit the earthworms with some power of profiting by experience; moreover, as they deal deftly with leaves of which they have no previous experience, we may even grant them a modicum of intelligence. From the nerve-collar uniting the dorsal ganglia with the first pair on the ventral cord, nerves are given off to the pharynx and gut, forming what is called a "visceral system." The earth-



worm has no special sense organs, but there are abundant sensitive cells, especially on the head end. By them the animal is made aware of the differences between light and darkness, and of the approaching tread of human feet, not to speak of the hostile advances of a hungry blackbird. The sense of smell is also developed. The afferent or sensory nerve fibres from the nervous cells of the skin enter the nerve-cord and bifurcate into longitudinal branches, which end freely in the nearest ganglia. In this the earth-worm's nervous system suggests that of Vertebrates.

Two facts in regard to minute structure deserve attention. The nerve cells, instead of being confined to special centres or ganglia, as they are in Arthropods, also occur diffusely along with the nerve fibres throughout the course of the cord. Along the dorsal surface of the nerve-cord there run three peculiar tubular fibres, with firm walls and clear contents. These "giant fibres," which have been dignified by the name of neurochord, are probably comparable to the medullated nerve fibres of Vertebrates.

**Alimentary system.**—Earthworms eat the soil for the sake of the plant débris which it may contain, and also because one of the modes of burrowing involves swallowing the earth. In eating they are greatly helped by the muscular nature of the pharynx; from it the soil passes down the gullet or œsophagus, first into a swollen crop, then into a strong-walled grinding gizzard, and finally through a long digestive and absorptive stomach-intestine. On the gullet are three pairs of œsophageal or calciferous glands—the products of which are limy and able to affect the food chemically, probably counteracting the acidity of the decaying vegetable matter. The long intestine has its internal surface increased by a dorsal fold, which projects inwards along the whole length. In this "typhlosole," and over the outer surface of the gut, the yellow cells are crowded.

There is no warrant for calling the yellow cells hepatic or digestive. Structurally they are pigmented cells of the peritoneal epithelium, which here, as in most other animals, lines the body cavity and covers the gut. As to their function, we only know that they absorb particles from the intestine, and go free into the body cavity, whence, as they break up, their débris may pass out by the excretory tubes. When a worm has been made to eat powdered carmine, the passage of these useless particles from gut to yellow cells, from yellow cells to body cavity, and thence out by the excretory tubes, has been traced. Various ferments have been detected in the gut, a diastatic ferment turning the



starchy food into sugars, and others—peptic and tryptic—not less important. The wall of the stomach-intestine from without inwards, as may be traced in sections, is made up of pigmented peritoneum, muscles, capillaries, and an internal ciliated epithelium. In the other parts of the gut the innermost lining is not ciliated, but covered with a cuticle.

**Vascular system.**—The fluid of the blood is coloured red with hæmoglobin, and contains small corpuscles. Along the median dorsal line of the gut a prominent blood vessel

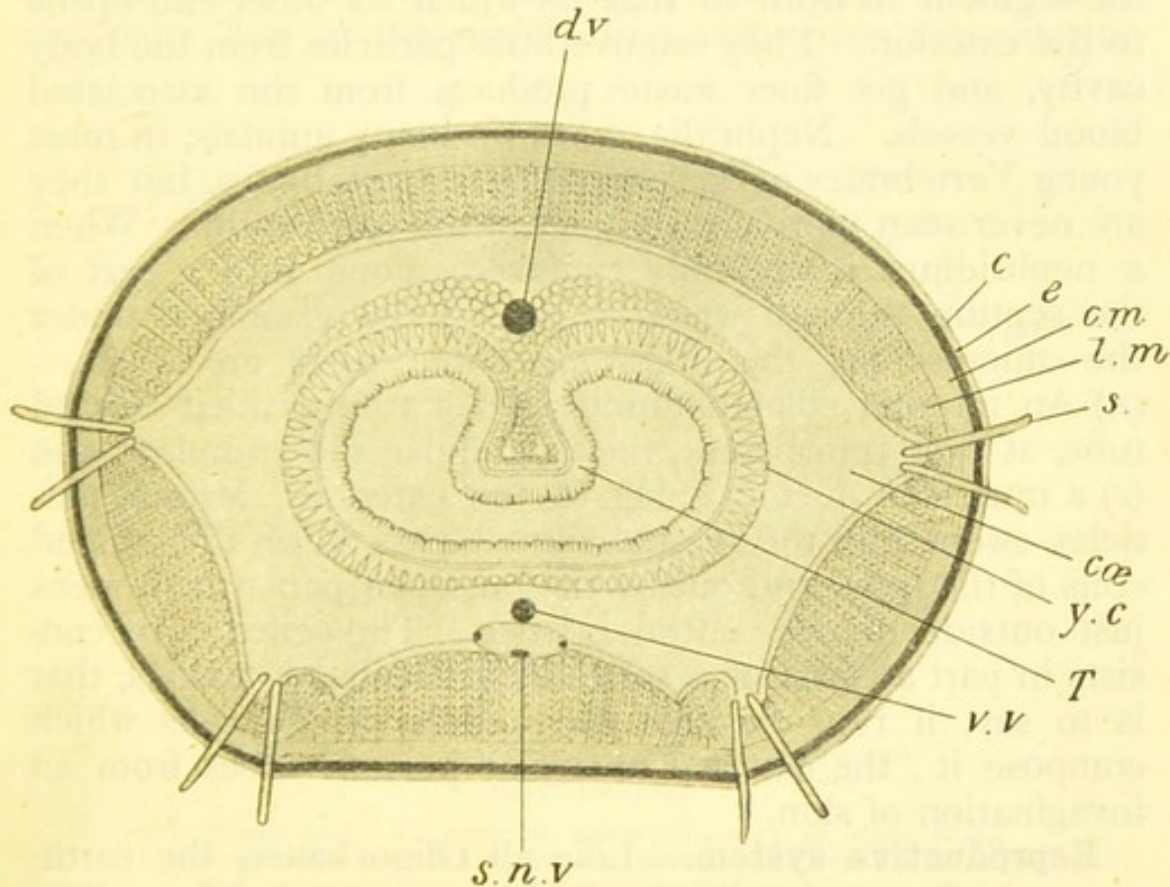


FIG. 82.—Transverse section of earthworm.—After Claparède.

*c.*, Cuticle; *e.*, epidermis; *c.m.*, circular muscles; *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles; *s.*, a seta; *cæ.*, cœlom; *y.c.*, yellow cells; *T.*, typhlosole; *v.v.*, supra-neural blood vessel; *s.n.v.*, sub-neural vessel; *d.v.*, dorsal vessel.

extends, another (supra-neural) runs along the upper surface of the nerve-cord, another (infra-neural) along the under surface, while two small latero-neurals pass along each side of this same cord. All these longitudinal vessels, of which the first three are most important, are parallel with one another; the first three meet in an anterior network on the pharynx; the dorsal and the supra-neural are linked together



in the region of the gullet by five or six pairs of contractile vessels or "hearts." The precise path of the blood is not known, but the distribution of vessels to skin, nephridia, and alimentary canal is readily seen.

**Respiration** is effected by the distribution of blood on the general surface of the skin.

**Excretory system.**—There is a pair of nephridia in each segment except the first four. Each opens internally into the segment in front of that on which its other end opens to the exterior. They remove little particles from the body cavity, and get finer waste products from the associated blood vessels. Nephridia occur in many animals, in most young Vertebrates as well as among Invertebrates, but they are never seen more clearly than in the earthworm. When a nephridium is carefully removed, along with a part of the septum through which it passes, and examined under the microscope, the following three parts are seen:—*(a)* An internal ciliated funnel; *(b)* a trebly coiled ciliated tube, at first transparent, then glandular and granular; and *(c)* a muscular duct opening to the exterior. Minute particles swept into the ciliated funnel pass down the ciliated coils of the tube, and out by the muscular part which opens just outside of the ventral bristles. The coiled tube consists in part at least of a series of intracellular cavities, that is to say, it runs through the middle of the cells which compose it; the external muscular portion arises from an invagination of skin.

**Reproductive system.**—Like all Oligochætes, the earthworm is hermaphrodite and the organs complex. The complexity is produced by the specialisation of certain of the nephridia to form genital ducts and accessory organs, and by the presence of chambers (seminal vesicles) connected with the testes, formed by the shutting off of portions of the body cavity.

The organs in the earthworm are difficult to dissect, and differ considerably in old and young specimens.

*(a)* The *Male Organs* consist of two pairs of testes, three pairs of seminal vesicles, and paired vasa deferentia.

*(1)* The testes, flattened lobed bodies, about  $\frac{1}{10}$  in. in size, arise from proliferations of the peritoneal lining of the body cavity, and are invested by a delicate membrane derived



therefrom; they lie near the nerve-cord, attached to the posterior surfaces of the septa between segments 9-10 and 10-11. They are minute, translucent, and difficult to see. In immature worms they lie exposed in the body cavity; in mature worms they are concealed by the great development of—

(2) The seminal vesicles, which are much-lobed structures, exceedingly prominent in dissection. Small and laterally placed in young worms, in the adult the anterior two pairs fuse in the middle line and cover the anterior

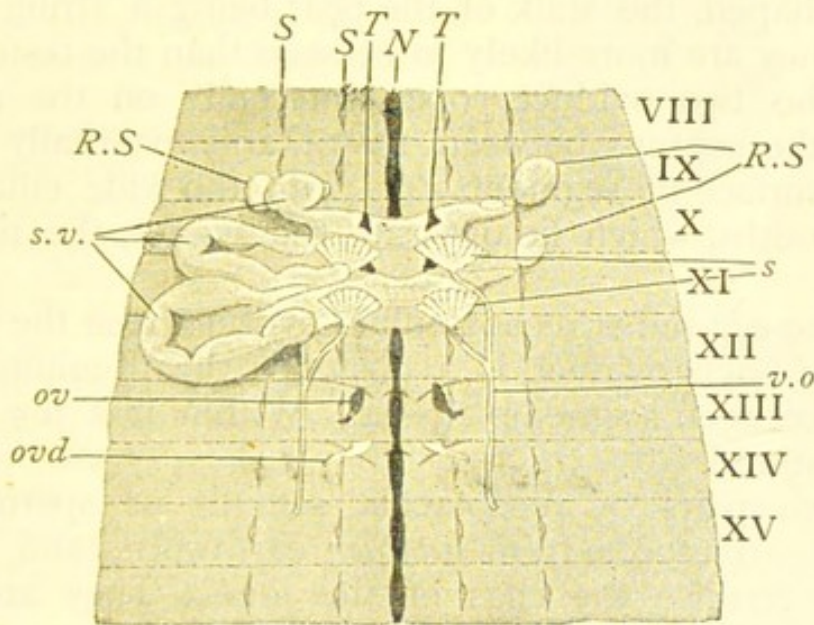


FIG. 83.—Reproductive organs of earthworm.

—After Hering.

*N.*, Nerve cord; *T.*, anterior testes; *S.*, sacs of setæ; *R.S.*, receptacula seminis; *s.*, seminal funnels; *v.o.*, vas deferens; *ovd.*, oviduct; *ov.*, ovary; *s.v.*, seminal vesicles cut open; *VIII.-XV.*, segments.

pair of testes and its ducts, while the posterior pair similarly conceals the second pair of testes with its ducts. Into the seminal vesicles mother-sperm-cells from the testes pass, and there divide up to form spermatozoa.

Development shows that the seminal vesicles arise as outgrowths of the septa of segments 9-12, and that their lumen is a portion of the body cavity. This is of importance, for in Polychætes the genital products mature in the general body cavity, just as the spermatozoa in the earthworm mature in the seminal vesicles.

(3) From the seminal vesicles the spermatozoa are carried



to the exterior by means of the vasa deferentia. The internal openings of these are large and funnel-shaped, and are concealed by the seminal vesicles. Each of the four funnels opens into a duct, and the two ducts unite at each side to form the two elongated vasa deferentia, which pass backwards to open externally on the 15th segment.

(b) *The Female Organs* consist of two ovaries and two oviducts, each of which has a side receptacle for the eggs.

(1) The two ovaries are small bodies situated near the nerve-cord on the septum between segments 12-13. Each is pear-shaped, the stalk of the pear being a string of ripe ova. They are more likely to be seen than the testes.

(2) The two oviducts open internally on the anterior face of the septum between 13-14, and externally on the ventral surface of segment 14. Into the wide ciliated internal mouths, which lie opposite the ovaries, the ripe eggs pass.

(3) The egg-sac or receptaculum ovarum, near the internal mouth of each oviduct, is a posterior diverticulum of the septum between segments 13-14. Within it a few mature ova are stored.

(c) Two pairs of receptacula seminis or spermathecæ receive spermatozoa from *another* earthworm, and liberate them to fertilise the eggs of this one. They are white globular sacs, opening in the grooves between segments 9-10 and 10-11, and probably, like the genital ducts, arise from modified nephridia. According to some, these spermathecæ not only receive and store spermatozoa, but make them into packets or spermatophores. Others say that the glands of the clitellum make these packets. At any rate, minute thread-like packets of spermatozoa are formed, and a pair of them may often be seen adhering to the skin of the earthworm about the saddle region.

When two worms unite sexually, they lie apposed in opposite directions, the head of the one towards the tail of the other. What happens is that the spermatozoa of the one pass into the receptacula of the other.

When the eggs of an earthworm are liberated, they are surrounded by a sheath of gelatinous stuff, said by some to be secreted by the saddle. As this is peeled off towards the head, a spermatophore is also enclosed.



**Development.** — Many cocoons are made about the same time, and each contains numerous ova, and also packets of sperms, so that fertilisation takes place outside the body. These cocoons are buried in the earth a few inches below the surface. They measure about a quarter of an inch in length.

The favourite time for egg-laying is during the spring and summer, though it may be continued throughout the whole year. The earthworm of the dungheap (*L. fetidus*) makes this a habit, induced probably by the warmth of its environment.

Of the many ova in the cocoon of *L. terrestris*, only one comes to maturity, while in *L. fetidus* a few, and in *L. communis* two may do so. But in the last species the two embryos are often twins formed from one ovum, separation taking place at the gastrula stage.

The whole process of growth, until leaving the egg, lasts from two to three weeks, the time varying, however, with the temperature.

The ovum is surrounded by a vitelline membrane, and is laden with yolk granules. Segmentation

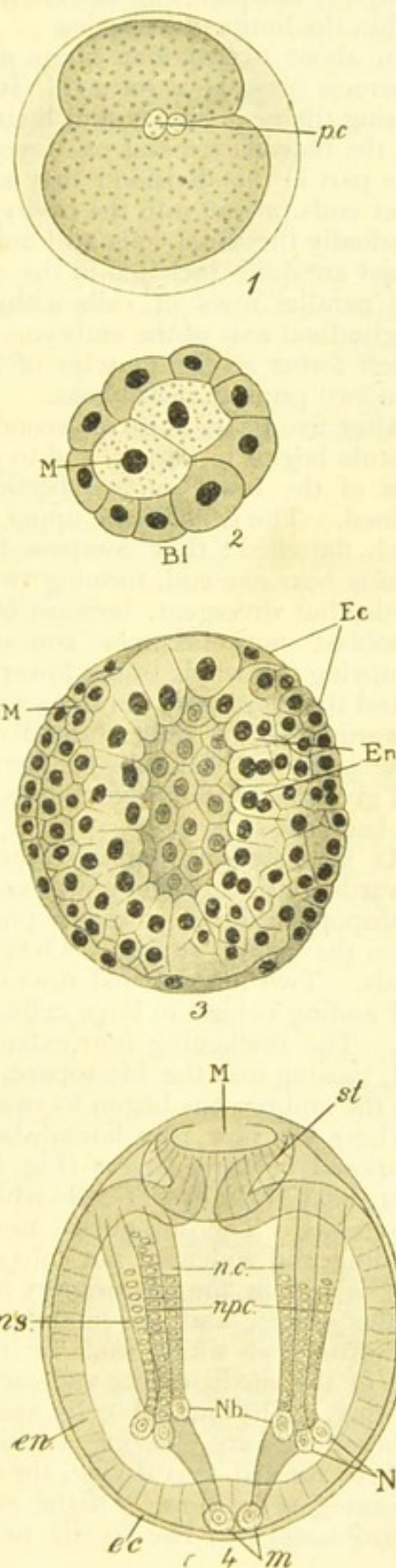


FIG. 84.—Stages in the development of earthworm. — After Wilson.

1. Two-celled stage; *p.c.*, polar bodies.
2. Blastula; *M.*, a primary mesoblast.
3. Gastrula stage; *Ec.*, ectoderm or epiblast; *En.*, endoderm or hypoblast, in process of being covered by the small ectoderm cells. Note the widely open blastopore; *M.*, mesoblast cells.
4. Longitudinal section in late gastrula stage, showing germ-bands; *ec.*, ectoderm; *en.*, endoderm; *M.*, mouth; *st.*, stomodæum; *ms.*, primary mesoblasts; *Nb.*, neuroblasts; *nc.*, nerve-cord; *N.*, nephridioblasts; *ms.*, mesoderm bands; *npc.*, incipient nephridia.



is slightly unequal (Fig. 84 (1)), and exhibits considerable variation even within the limits of a species.

In about twenty-four hours a nearly spherical, one-layered blastosphere or blastula is formed. It consists of only about thirteen cells. During the next twenty-four hours the cells increase in number rapidly, but the blastula remains one-layered. Two cells lying together do not take part in this division; they are rather larger than the rest, and their inner ends project into the cavity, and are soon cut off as daughter cells. Gradually the large cells still undergoing division begin to sink in, and at last are quite included in the cavity (Fig. 84 (2)). Thus there arise two parallel rows of cells within the blastula, and these define the longitudinal axis of the embryo. This is the beginning of the mesoblast which forms all the muscles of the trunk, and which thus takes origin from two primary mesoblasts.

After five to six pairs of secondary mesoblasts have been formed, the blastula begins to flatten, and to elongate, becoming an oval disc. The cells of the lower surface become clearer, and the hypoblast is thus defined. The cells of the upper surface are smaller, and become very much flattened; they compose the epiblast. The mesoblasts lie side by side near one end, forming two rows extending forwards and downwards, but divergent, because of the flattening of the blastula. The hypoblast now becomes concave, and thus the blastopore arises, occupying the whole of the lower surface (Fig. 84 (3)). The sides close in and the blastopore becomes a slit, which further closes from behind forwards, leaving only a small opening,—the future mouth. During these processes the cells at the anterior tip of the blastopore, which will give rise to the præoral lobe, undergo no change, but the mesoblast has been active.

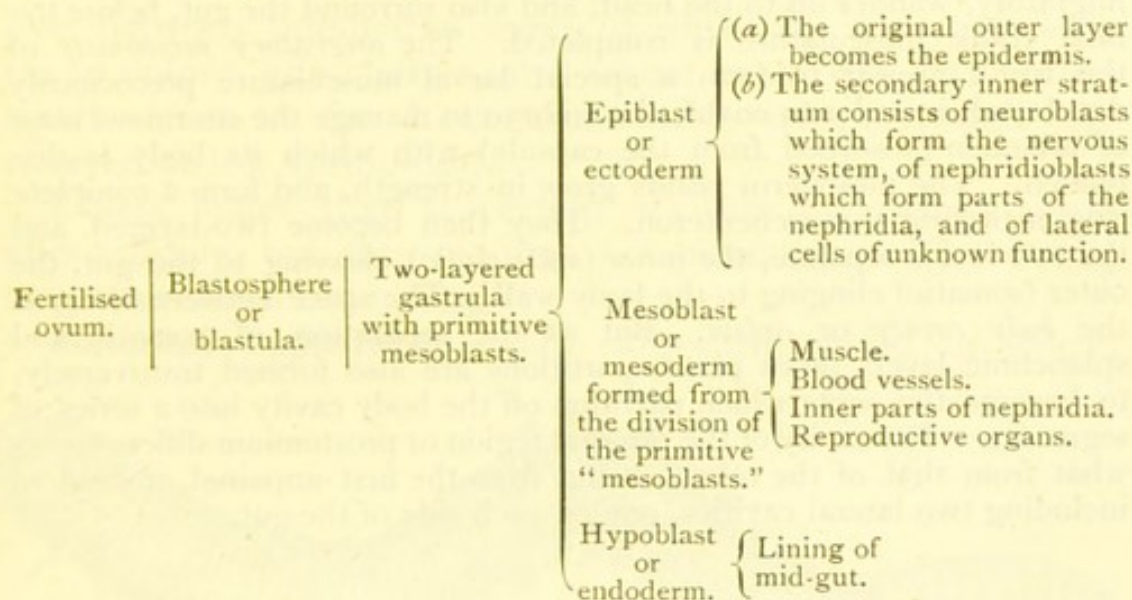
As gastrulation proceeds, the mesoblast rows grow forwards and upwards, until they come near each other above the anterior tip of the blastopore, while their middle portions are carried downwards until they lie on the ventral surface. Over them the epiblast is thickened in two bands. Two longitudinal rows of epiblast cells near the anterior end, and ending behind in large cells, sink in just as the primary mesoblasts did. The thickening now extends ventrally until the two bands meet, and, passing into the blastopore, forms the stomodæum. Even before this the embryo has begun to swallow the albumen in which it floats.

There are now two lateral bands of cells called the germ bands, composed of three layers (Fig. 84 (4)): outside is the thickened epiblast, next the rows of cells which sank in, and innermost the mesoblast rows. The mesoblast rows have met in the middle line by dividing and widening out into a pair of flattened plates, but they still end behind in the two primary mesoblasts. Cœlomic cavities develop in the plates, and the anterior ends meet above the mouth. The epiblastic rows which sank in (there were eight of them, four on each side of the median line, and each ending in a large mother cell) go on growing. The mother cells are apparently carried backwards as the embryo lengthens, leaving a trail of daughter cells behind them. The cells so formed also divide, the embryo rapidly lengthening and finally becoming vermiform. Of the eight rows the innermost on each side (neuroblasts) give rise to the nervous system, the next two rows on



either side (nephridioblasts) form parts of the nephridia (Fig. 84 (4)), while of the fourth row nothing definite is known. Each row, ending behind in a single cell, widens out and deepens as it is traced forwards. The neural and mesoblastic rows can be traced round the mouth, and help to form the prostomium; the others fade away at the sides of the stomodæum.

Let us sum up this complex history:—



*General development of the organs.*—The origin of the more important organs may be briefly noticed.

In the *nervous system*, while the ventral cord arises from the neuroblasts, the two cerebral ganglia originate, according to Kleinenberg, independently from a median unpaired apical plate of ectoderm, while, according to Wilson, they arise along with the ventral cord, and have their foundations in the thickened anterior end of each of the two neural rows.

The history of the *excretory system* is complex. (a) At the anterior end of young embryos a group of ectoderm cells, dorsal in position, forms a larval excretory organ, which wholly disappears in later stages. (b) Next appear two ciliated canals in the anterior region, closed internally, but opening externally on the head. These are known as "provisional nephridia" or "head kidneys." They degenerate as the permanent excretory organs develop. (c) The numerous permanent nephridia are for the most part ectodermic, arising from the rows of nephridial cells already described. Two parts of each nephridium, however, have a mesoblastic origin, viz. the innermost part or the ciliated funnel, and the peritoneal investment, which ensheaths the whole organ.

The gastrula cavity forms the archenteron—the future *mid-gut*,—and elongates with the growth of the embryo. To the completion of the entire alimentary canal, however, two other processes are necessary, an intucking of ectoderm from in front—the *stomodæum* or "*fore-gut*"—which pushes the archenteron backwards and forms the future pharynx, and a similar intucking of ectoderm from behind—the



*proctodæum* or "*hind-gut*" — which meets and fuses with the archenteron, and forms the anus and a small portion of the posterior gut.

The mesoderm begins with the *two primary mesoblasts* already described. These multiply and form *mesoderm bands*, which, insinuating themselves between ectoderm and endoderm, proceed to surround the gut. At the same time, some of the mesoderm cells become migratory, wander on to the head, and also surround the gut, before the final trunk musculature is completed. The *migratory mesoblasts* of the trunk appear to form a special larval musculature precociously developed, in order to enable the embryo to manage the enormous mass of albumen (absorbed from the capsule) with which its body is distended. The mesoderm bands grow in strength, and form a complete ring encircling the archenteron. They then become two-layered, and the two layers separate, the inner (splanchnic) cleaving to the gut, the outer (somatic) clinging to the body-wall. The space between them is the *body cavity* or *cælom*. But as the separation of somatic and splanchnic layers takes place, partitions are also formed transversely, to become the septa which partition off the body cavity into a series of segments. The cavity of the pre-oral region or prostomium differs somewhat from that of the others, being from the first unpaired, instead of including two lateral cavities, one on each side of the gut.

Type of POLYCHÆTA. The Lob-Worm (*Arenicola marina*).

**Habits.**—On the flat sandy beach uncovered at low tide, the "castings" of the lob-worm or lug-worm are very numerous. There the fishermen seek the worms for bait, and have to dig quickly, for the burrowers retreat one to two feet into the sand. The burrows are U-shaped tubes, lined by a yellowish green secretion from the animal's epidermis, and the surrounding sand is often discoloured by some change which the secretion effects on the iron oxides and other constituents. The tubes are at first vertical, afterwards oblique or horizontal, and then turn vertically upwards again.

The lob-worm burrows like the earthworm, not only forcing the anterior part of its body onwards, but eating the sand for the sake of the organic particles and small organisms which it contains. The sandy castings, which pass from the end of the food canal, and are got rid of at the mouth of the tube, fall into spiral coils. It has been calculated that in a year the average volume of sand per acre thus brought up in castings is about 1900 tons, representing a layer of 13 in. spread out over the



surface. This work, comparable to that of earthworms, tends to cleanse the sand and to reduce it to a finer powder. When getting rid of the casting, the worm lies with its tail upwards and its head downwards, or with its body bent like a bow; when the tide comes in, the mouth may protrude at the other end of the U-shaped tube. The worms that live between tide-marks seem to differ in many respects (as to colour, gills, habits, and sexual maturity) from those which occur in the Laminarian zone, which is only uncovered at low spring-tides.

Ehlers states that at certain seasons the adults swim about freely, but this requires corroboration. The young stages are for a time pelagic.

**External appearance.**—The lob-worm varies in length

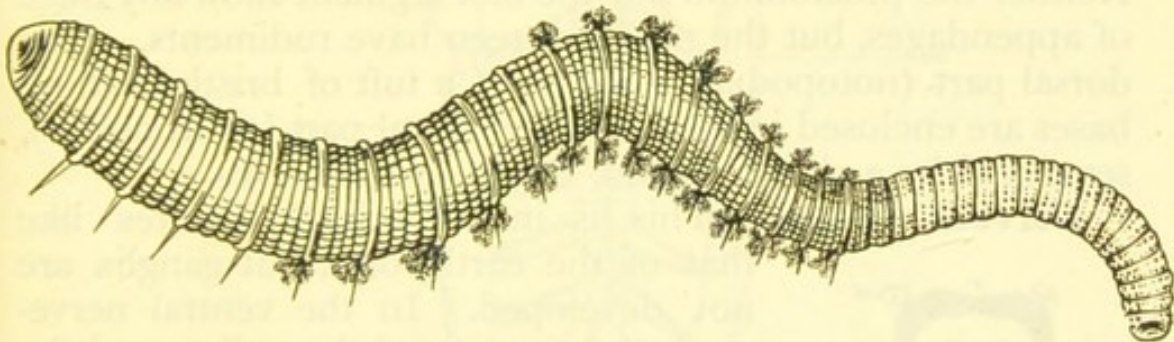


FIG. 85.—*Arenicola marina*.

Entire animal viewed slightly from left side. Note anterior mouth; setæ on anterior region; setæ and gills on median region; thinner tail region often longer than shown.

from 8 in. to a foot, and at its thickest part is about half an inch in diameter. There are three regions in the body:—(a) The anterior seven segments, of which all but the first have bristles; (b) the middle region of thirteen segments, with both gills and bristles; (c) the thinner posterior part of variable length, without either gills or bristles, and with an inconstant number of segments (up to about thirty). In the very front there is a head-lobe or prostomium, but there are no tentacles or eyes. Anteriorly a soft proboscis is often protruded from the gut. The anus is terminal.

**Skin, muscles, and appendages.**—Each segment is marked by about four superficial rings. The epidermis is pigmented and secretes mucus, and is divided into



numerous polygonal areas, separated by shallow grooves. Beneath the epidermis is a sheath of circular muscles, and then a layer of longitudinal muscles. Besides these there are (from the middle of the gullet to the beginning of the tail) thin oblique muscles arising from the sides of the nerve-cord, and dividing the body cavity longitudinally into a central and two lateral compartments. Other muscles control the prostomium, the proboscis, and the bristles. Unlike many of the marine Annelids, which have on each segment well-developed outgrowths or parapodia, divided into a dorsal notopodium and a ventral neuropodium, *Arenicola* has very rudimentary appendages. This reduction of appendages must be associated with the animal's mode of life; it occurs also in many tube-inhabiting worms. Neither the prostomium nor the first segment show any trace of appendages, but the next nineteen have rudiments. The dorsal part (notopodial) consists of a tuft of bristles, whose bases are enclosed in a sac;—the ventral part (neuropodial), separated by a short interval, bears several hooks.

**Nervous system.**—This is in its general features like

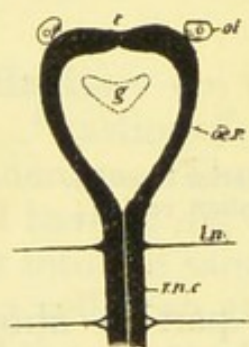


FIG. 86.—Anterior part of nervous system in *Arenicola*.—After Vogt and Yung.

c., Cerebral part on dorsal surface; a.r., oesophageal ring; g., gullet; v.n.c., ventral nerve-cord; l.n., lateral nerves; ot., otcyst.

that of the earthworm, but ganglia are not developed. In the ventral nerve-cord, the ring round the gullet, and the slight cerebral enlargement which represents a brain, nerve cells occur diffusely scattered among the nerve fibres. Along the dorsal surface of the nerve-cord, in the branchial region, there are two "giant fibres" like those in the earthworm; anteriorly and posteriorly there is only one.

The prostomial lobes are diffusely sensory, and bear also two ciliated, probably olfactory, pits—the "nuchal organs." Otherwise sense organs are represented only by a pair of otcyst sacs (Fig. 86), one on each side of the oesophageal nerve-ring. These sacs, like those which occur in many other Invertebrates, seem to

have to do rather with the direction of the animal's movements than with hearing. Professor Ehlers notes an interesting series:—In *A. Claparedii* there are simply two open grooves; in *A. marina* the sacs have open necks, and contain foreign particles; in *A. Grubii* and *A. antillensis* the sacs are closed, and contain intrinsic otoliths of lime.



**Food canal.**—(1) The buccal cavity is protrusible as a "proboscis" or introvert, which grips the sand, and bears

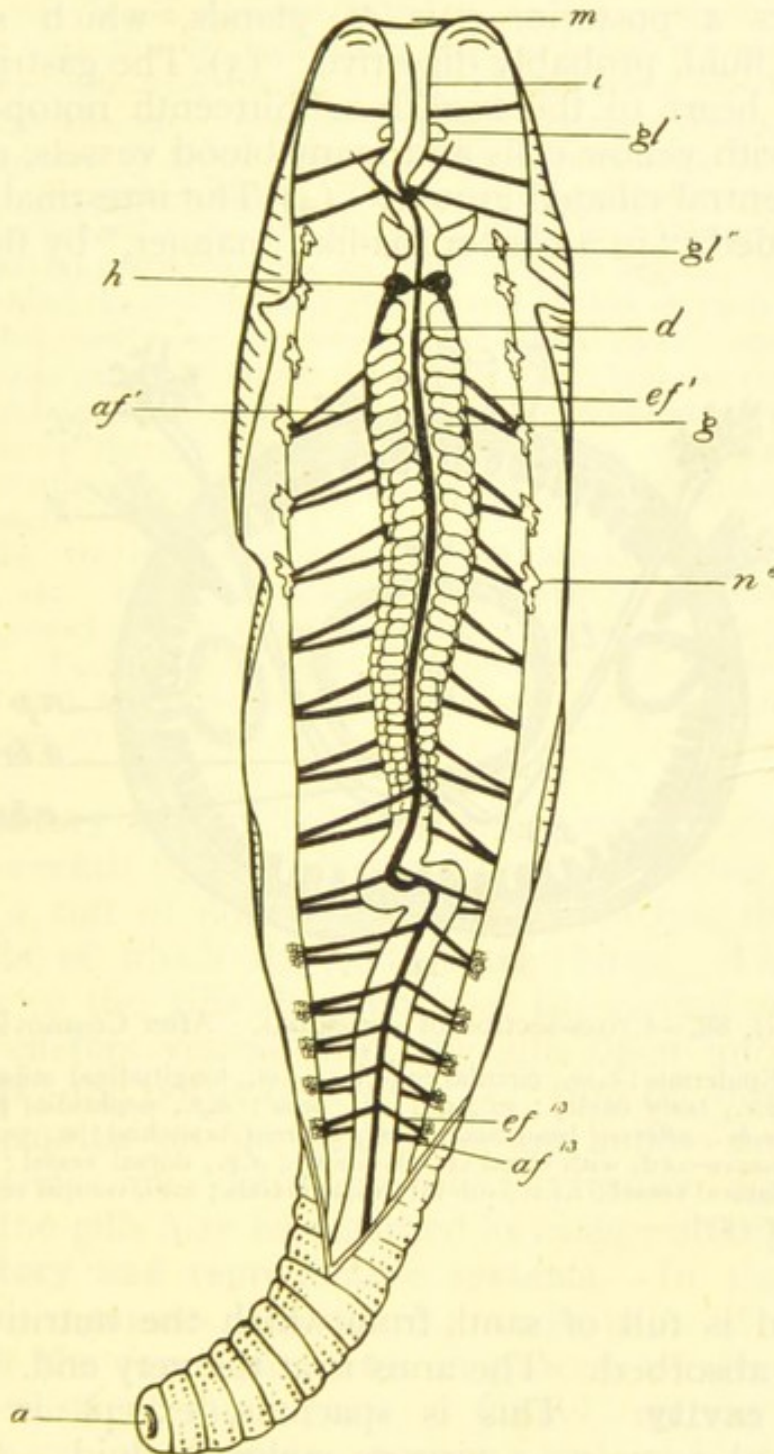


FIG. 87.—Dissection of lob-worm from dorsal surface.

*M.*, Opening of retracted buccal cavity; *i.*, gullet; *gl'*, diverticula on first diaphragm; *gl''*, oesophageal glands; *d.*, dorsal blood vessels; *ef'*, first efferent branchial; *g.*, stomach intestine; *n*<sup>6</sup>, sixth nephridium; *ef*<sup>13</sup>, thirteenth efferent branchial; *af*<sup>13</sup>, thirteenth afferent branchial; *a.*, anus; *af*<sup>1</sup>, first afferent branchial; *h.*, heart of left side.



internal papillæ with chitinous tips. The protrusion is due to the pressure of the coelomic fluid, while special muscles bring about retraction. (2) The gullet has smooth walls, and bears a posterior pair of glands, which secrete a yellowish fluid, probably digestive. (3) The gastric region, from the heart to the twelfth or thirteenth notopodium, is covered with yellow cells and many blood vessels, and has a median-ventral ciliated groove. (4) The intestinal region is much folded, "in a concertina-like manner," by the caudal

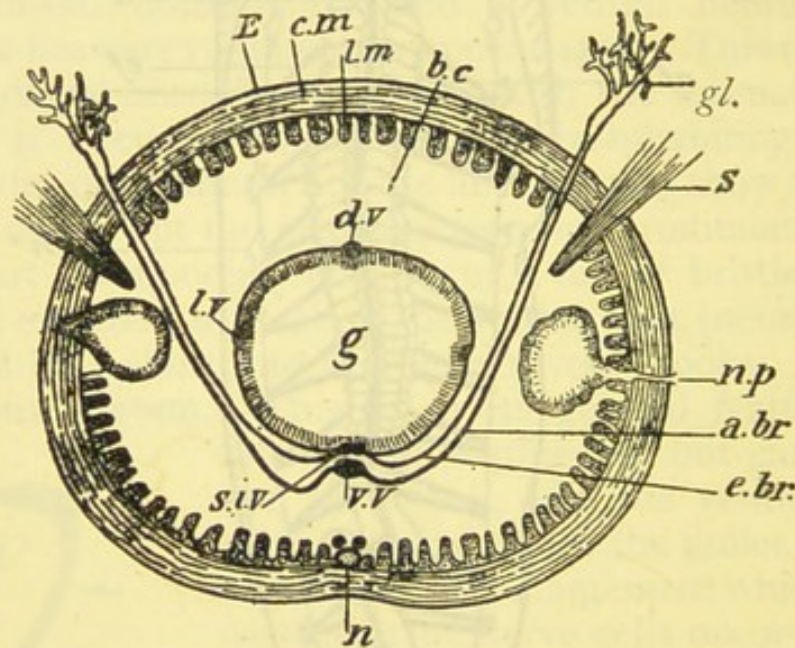


FIG. 88.—Cross-section of *Arenicola*.—After Cosmovici.

*E.*, Epidermis; *c.m.*, circular muscles; *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles; *b.c.*, body cavity; *gl.*, gill; *s.*, setæ; *n.p.*, nephridial pore; *a.br.*, afferent branchial; *e.br.*, efferent branchial; *n.*, ventral nerve-cord, with blood vessels above; *d.v.*, dorsal vessel; *l.v.*, lateral vessel; *s.i.v.*, sub-intestinal vessels; *v.v.*, ventral vessel; *g.*, gut.

septa, and is full of sand, from which the nutritive matter has been absorbed. The anus is at the very end.

**Body cavity.**—This is spacious, except in the tail region, and contains a viscous coelomic fluid. Anteriorly there are three transverse, partly muscular, septa or diaphragms, which moor the gullet. The first of these diaphragms bears a pair of small pouches. Behind the third diaphragm the gut swings freely until the beginning of the tail region, in which there are many septa.



**Vascular system.**—The blood has a bright red colour, and is rich in hæmoglobin. It flows in a very elaborate system of blood vessels, in regard to the details of which there is still some uncertainty. There is along the whole mid-dorsal line of the gut a contractile dorsal vessel, which carries blood *forwards* from the seven posterior gills, etc. Connected with this by capillaries, there is below the gut an equally long, feebly-contractile ventral vessel, which carries blood backwards to gills, nephridia, etc. Around the gastric region of the gut there is an elaborate plexus of blood vessels, which communicate by two lateral vessels with the paired heart. There are also two sub-intestinal vessels between the ventral vessel and the gut; these lead through the plexus into the lateral gastric vessels, and thus into the hearts. These organs lie just behind the œsophageal glands, and consist on each side—(a) of a thin-walled auricle, an expansion of the lateral gastric vessel; and (b) of a muscular ventricle, which drives the blood into the ventral vessel. Like the sub-intestinals, the dorsal vessel communicates with the heart only indirectly through the gastric plexus. The ventricle contains a spongy “cardiac body,” which probably prevents regurgitation from the ventral vessel.

From the ventral vessel arise afferent branchial vessels to gills, nephridia, etc. From the seven posterior gills efferent branches enter the dorsal vessel; while those from the six anterior gills join the sub-intestinals. Each efferent vessel gives off a branch to the skin, while the dorsal and sub-intestinal vessels give off numerous branches to the gastric plexus on the gut.

**Respiratory system.**—There are thirteen pairs of gills, on the seventh to the nineteenth bristle-bearing segments. Each is a tuft of hollow thread-like branches, through the thin walls of which the red blood shines. The afferent branches to the gills all come from the ventral vessel; the first six efferent vessels from the gills open into the sub-intestinals; the posterior seven open into the dorsal vessel. As the papillæ on the proboscis are hollow and contain vessels, they are doubtless of respiratory significance. Indeed, the gills may be regarded as exaggerated papillæ.

**Excretory and reproductive systems.**—In the anterior region, in segments 4–9, there are six pairs of nephridia, of which the foremost seems in process of degeneration. Each consists of three parts—a funnel opening into the body cavity, a glandular portion, and a bladder communicating with the exterior.

The sexes are separate and similar. The reproductive organs are very simple, and arise by proliferation of the peritoneal membrane beside the blood vessels supplying the funnels of the nephridia. The reproductive cells are



liberated into the body cavity, and there matured. They pass out by the nephridia, and may be temporarily stored in the bladder portions of all but the first. Little is known in regard to the development, beyond the fact that the young are for a time free-swimming pelagic forms.

**Development of Polychæta.**—As an example of the development of the marine Chætopods, we may take *Eupomatius*, which has been investigated by Hatschek. Here segmentation is complete, but somewhat unequal, and results in the formation of a blastula, with its upper hemisphere composed of small (ectodermic) cells, and the lower of large (endodermic) cells. Among these latter are two spherical cells—the primitive mesoblasts. Invagination takes place in the usual way to form a gastrula; the primitive mesoblasts divide and form mesoblastic bands. During these processes the external form has altered considerably. The apical (aboral) region of the gastrula becomes tilted forward, an ectodermic invagination arises posteriorly, and, uniting with the archenteron, produces hind-gut and anus, while a similar insinking anteriorly, in the region of the blastopore, forms fore-gut and mouth. The larval gut so formed has a distinct ventral curve. Cilia appear on the surface at an early stage, and now form a distinct pre-oral ring, and also a less constant post-oral ring. At the apex of the pre-oral region an ectodermic thickening takes place; this gives rise to an apical ganglion, with which sensory structures are often associated. The mesodermic bands give rise to muscle cells, used in swimming, and also to the “head kidneys”—a pair of larval excretory tubes. The larva so formed is a typical Trochosphere, such as occurs in the great majority of Polychæta, in a more or less modified guise in many other worm-types, and also in Molluscs. Its chief characters are the following:—

(1) There is a prominent pre-oral region, with an apical ganglion and a ring of cilia.

(2) The gut has a distinct ventral curve, and a threefold origin.

(3) The larval body cavity is simply the persistent segmentation cavity, and in it posteriorly lie the primitive mesoblasts.

The Trochosphere is a free-swimming pelagic larva, which, among worms, corresponds largely to the future head region of the adult. Its metamorphosis into the adult probably takes place in the most primitive fashion in the little worm *Polygordius*. We shall therefore follow it there (Fig. 89).

In the larva, which is a typical Trochosphere, the first sign of segmentation appears in the bands of mesoblast. These become divided into successive segments, while at the same time the posterior region of the larva elongates greatly, carrying the larval gut backwards with it. Meanwhile a cavity appears in each of the mesoblastic segments. These cavities, taken together, form the adult body cavity; the outer and inner walls form the somatic and splanchnic layers; the posterior and anterior walls of adjacent segments fuse to form the septa of the adult worm; the inner (splanchnic) walls of the primitive segments on each side fuse above and below the gut to form the dorsal and ventral supporting mesenteries of the gut. The head region is at first dispropor-



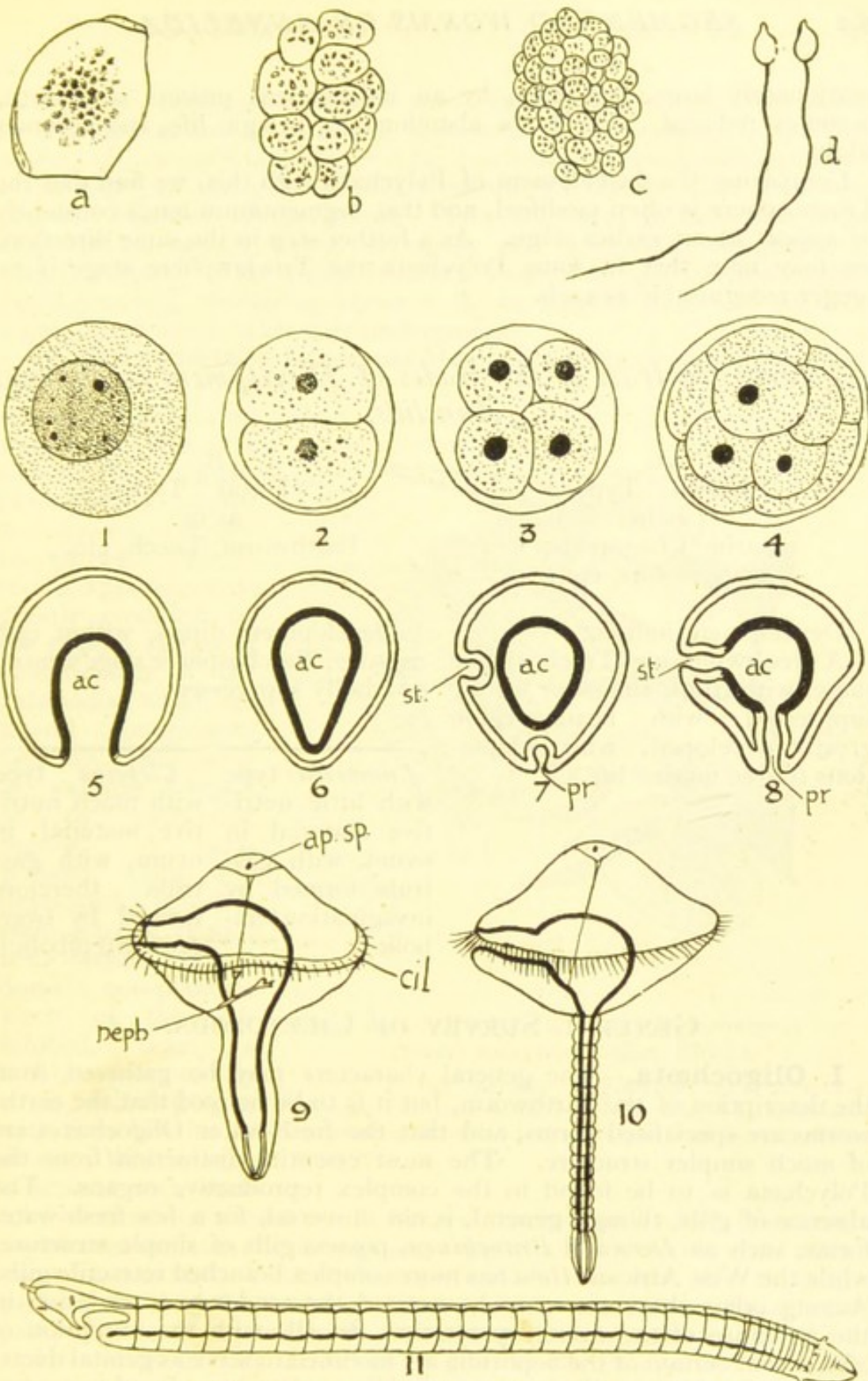


FIG. 89.—Development of *Polygordius*.—After Fraipont.

*a.*, Mother sperm cell; *b.*, *c.*, sperm morulae; *d.*, spermatozoa.  
 1. Ovum with large nucleus; 2. two-cell stage; 3. four-cell stage; 4. blastosphere; 5. gastrula; *ac.*, archenteron; 6. closure of gastrula mouth or blastopore; 7. formation of stomodæum (*st.*), and proctodæum (*pr.*), which invaginate to meet archenteron (*ac.*); 8. complete gut formed; 9. elongation of larva; *ap. sp.*, apical spot; *cil.*, ciliated ring; *neph.*, primitive nephridia; 10. formation of posterior segments; 11. form of adult *Polygordius*.



portionately large, but later, by an independent process of growth, becomes reduced. The larva abandons its pelagic life, and becomes adult.

Comparing the development of Polychæta with this, we find that the Trochosphere is often modified, and that segmentation tends constantly to appear at an earlier stage. As a further step in the same direction, we may note that in some Polychæta the Trochosphere stage is no longer recognisable as such.

### *A general Contrast of the Modes of Development in different Annelids.*

A. "Larval" Types, as in marine Chætopods, <i>Polygordius</i> , etc.	B. "Foetal" Types, as in Earthworm, Leech, etc.
Development indirect. A free-swimming Trochosphere stage, with trunk almost or wholly suppressed, with head region greatly developed, with adaptations to free marine life.	Development direct, within egg capsule; Trochosphere stage almost or wholly suppressed. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"><div><i>Lumbricus</i> type with little nutritive material in ovum, with gastrula formed by invagination (embolic).</div><div><i>Clepsine</i> type with much nutritive material in ovum, with gastrula therefore formed by overgrowth (epibolic).</div></div>

### GENERAL SURVEY OF CHÆTOPODA.

**I. Oligochæta.**—The general characters may be gathered from the description of the earthworm, but it is to be noticed that the earthworms are specialised forms, and that the fresh-water Oligochætes are of much simpler structure. The most essential distinction from the Polychæta is to be found in the complex reproductive organs. The absence of gills, though general, is not universal, for a few fresh-water forms, such as *Dero* and *Branchiura*, possess gills of simple structure, while the West African *Alma* has more complex branched retractile gills. Among other characters may be noticed the tendency to variation in the structure of the excretory system. In all, with the exception of *Æolosoma*, certain of the nephridia are modified to serve as genital ducts, while in the Megascolicidæ the nephridia tend to be reduced to a mass of minute tubules ramifying over the inner surface of the body-wall. In general the Oligochætes, however, show more uniformity of structure than their marine allies.

They may be divided into two main groups—(1) the Microdrili, and (2) the Megadrili. The first group includes the small aquatic



forms; of these most familiar are *Tubifex rivulorum*, often found in the mud of brooks, and the species of *Nais*, remarkable for their power of asexual budding. The leech-like *Branchiobdella*, which is parasitic on the gills of the fresh-water crayfish, is a somewhat aberrant member of the group. The Megadrili include the larger Oligochætes, mostly living in earth, and commonly designated as "earthworms." The largest form is a Tasmanian species (*Megascolides gippslandicus*), measuring about 6 ft. in length, and said to make a gurgling noise as it retreats underground.

**II. Polychæta.**—As contrasted with the more or less subterranean earth- and mud-worms, the marine Polychæta have a richer development of external structures and a more complex life history. The external appearance is greatly modified by the relative degree of development of the parapodia, which are lateral outgrowths typically functioning as walking "legs," or as swimming organs. A parapodium, when fully developed, is divisible into a ventral neuropodium and a dorsal notopodium. Each of these is bilobed, bears a tactile process or cirrus, and is fringed with firm bristles or setæ. Within the substance of each

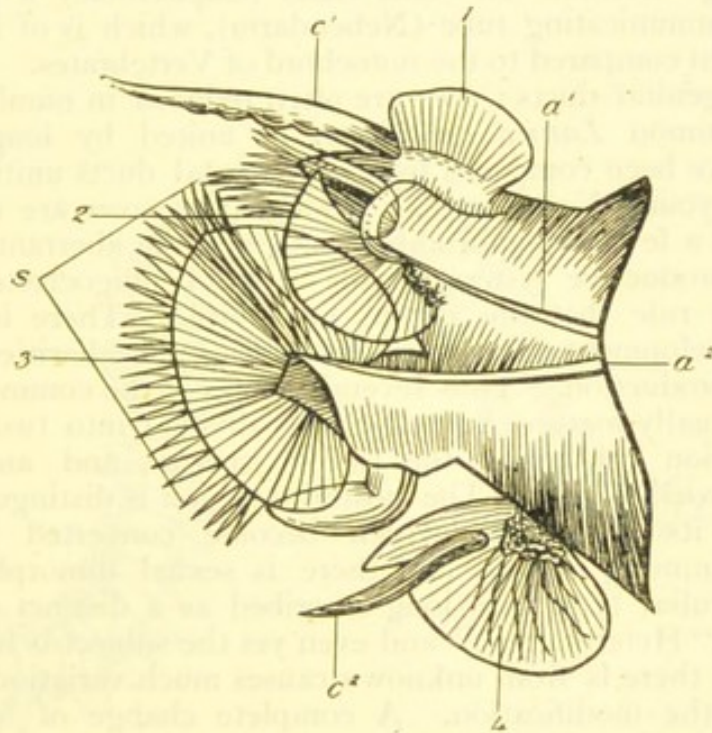


FIG. 89A.—Parapodium of "Heteronereis" of *Nereis pelagica*.—After Ehlers.

1, 2, 3, 4, the leaf-like outgrowths;  $c^1$ , notopodial cirrus;  $c^2$ , neuropodial cirrus;  $a^1$ ,  $a^2$ , acicula or supporting bristles of notopodium and neuropodium;  $s$ , setæ.

lobe is embedded a stout needle-shaped "aciculum," which functions as an internal skeleton, both by giving support and by serving as an attachment for muscles. With the notopodium, further, true gills containing prolongations of the body cavity are often associated. Such typical parapodia occur especially in the active free-living forms like *Nereis* and its allies, but in the order in general the parapodia show much variation, and may be almost suppressed, as in *Arenicola*. Parapodia are absent from the "prostomium," and are rarely fully developed on the first true segment or peristomium. In both cases, however, tactile cirri and tentacles are often present. The prostomium varies greatly in development and structure, and is of great systematic importance; it is frequently furnished with eyes and other sense organs, but these may



also occur in other regions of the body. Apart from the parapodia, the shape and appearance of the body are most affected by the condition of the septa. In the active free-living forms (Errantia) these are usually present throughout the body, and give a characteristic worm-like appearance. In burrowing and tubicolous forms (Sedentaria) the septa tend to be suppressed. Their absence facilitates burrowing, by permitting free movement of the coelomic fluid, and is often associated with a division of the body into regions, and a loss of the typical uniform shape (cf. *Arenicola*).

With regard to internal organs, the gut is frequently branched and of large calibre. In some cases (Capitellidæ) it possesses an accessory communicating tube (Nebendarm), which is of interest, because it has been compared to the notochord of Vertebrates. The nephridia function as genital ducts; they are often reduced in number, and may, as in the common *Lanice conchilega*, be united by longitudinal ducts, which have been compared to the segmental ducts uniting the excretory tubes of young Vertebrates. Though the sexes are usually separate, there are a few hermaphrodite forms, and the aberrant *Sternaspis*, where the reproductive system recalls that of Oligochætes, is an exception to the rule that the organs are simple. There is a metamorphosis in development, and some interesting peculiarities occur in regard to reproduction. Thus several species of the common genus *Nereis*, when sexually mature, have the body divided into two regions,—a posterior region containing the ova or sperms, and an anterior unmodified asexual region. The posterior region is distinguished by the structure of its parapodia, which become converted into broad, flattened swimming organs, and there is sexual dimorphism. Worms of this peculiar type were long described as a distinct genus under the name of "Heteronereis," and even yet the subject is imperfectly understood, for there is from unknown causes much variation as regards the extent of the modification. A complete change of habit at the spawning season is probably common here as elsewhere in marine Invertebrates. In the Syllidæ a phenomenon occurs similar to the formation of a "Heteronereis," but a process of fission may result in the division of the modified form into an anterior asexual zooid and a posterior sexual one. In this way a regular alternation of sexual and asexual generations may arise.

The Polychæta were formerly classified as active and sedentary forms, but few are permanently active, and the classification is now abandoned. It is, however, necessary to realise that while certain forms dwell habitually within tubes, others are at least at times active and free-living. The latter have usually well-developed parapodia and sense organs, the anterior part of the gut may be furnished with strong jaws, the body is more or less uniform, and the worms are carnivorous. These forms are all included in the sub-order Nereidiformia, which embraces such familiar animals as the common sea-mouse (*Aphrodite*), with its mass of iridescent bristles covering the dorsal surface, the species of *Nereis* and *Nephtys*, so common under stones on the shore, and others equally remarkable for beauty of colour. The bright colours may be due to the iridescent cuticle or to pigments.

The sedentary forms lead a sluggish life within various kinds of



tubes,—limy, sandy, papery, or gelatinous. They are not nearly related, but possess in common certain adaptive characters, such as the aggregation of gills, cirri, tentacles, and sense organs to the anterior exposed part of the body; the reduction of the parapodia, often used solely for clambering in the tube; the absence of "jaws," and the habit of feeding on minute Algae or other substances suspended in water. Among these are included *Serpula*, which forms twisted limy tubes outside shells and other marine objects; the aberrant *Sabellaria*, which often builds reefs of porous rock formed of the aggregated sandy tubes; the common *Terebella* or *Lanice conchilega*, with its tubes

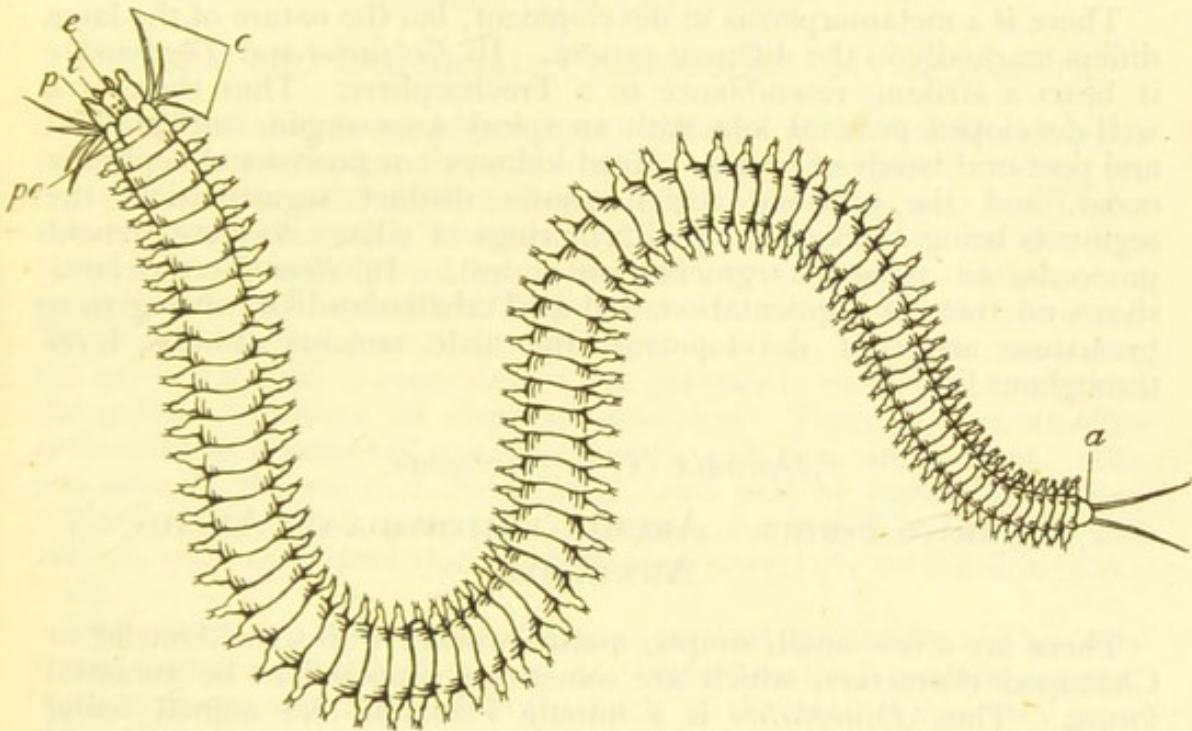


FIG. 90.—Free-living Polychæte (*Nereis cultrifera*).

Note, as compared with *Arenicola*, the absence of gills, and the well-developed parapodia which are absent from the peristomium (*pe.*), or first true segment. The prostomium bears eyes (*e.*), and the small tentacles (*t.*); *p.*, the large palps, *c.*; the four paired cirri borne by the peristomium; *a.*, the anus with two long cirri.

of glued sand particles; and the strange *Chætopterus*, found in deep water, within its yellow parchment-like tube.

**III. Echiuridæ.**—In holes in the rocks on the warmer coasts of Europe there lives a curious "worm"—*Bonellia viridis*, of a beautiful green colour, with a globular body, and a long, grooved, anteriorly forked, pre-oral protrusion. Such, at least, is the female; but the male is microscopic in size, lives in or on his mate, and is exceedingly degenerate. His gut is without mouth and anus, the surface is covered with cilia, and the body cavity almost obliterated. Related to *Bonellia*, but of less anomalous shape, are a few other forms, like *Thalassema* and *Echiurus*.

In all, the body in the adult shows mere traces of segmentation;



parapodia, cirri, and gills are absent, but except in the degenerate males a few setæ are always present. The most characteristic structure is the elongated solid proboscis, which has the mouth at its base. The nervous system consists of a gullet-ring and a ventral cord, but the latter is unsegmented, and there is no brain. The gut is coiled, and bears a curious adjacent tube known as the "collateral intestine," and a pair of excretory "anal vesicles," opening from gut to body cavity, and formed in development from nephridia. The anus is terminal, there is a closed vascular system, and one to three pairs of nephridia. The sexes are separate, the reproductive elements are formed on the walls of the body cavity, and are shed into it.

There is a metamorphosis in development, but the nature of the larva differs markedly in the different genera. In *Echiurus* and *Thalassema* it bears a striking resemblance to a Trochosphere. Thus there is a well-developed pre-oral lobe with an apical sense organ, and pre-oral and post-oral bands of cilia. "Head-kidneys" or provisional nephridia occur, and the post-oral region shows distinct segmentation, the segments being marked externally by rings of cilia. As development proceeds, all trace of segmentation is lost. In *Bonellia* the larva shows no trace of segmentation, and is Turbellarian-like; owing to a premature arrest of development, the male remains at this level throughout life.

#### *Appendix (I) to Chætopoda.*

#### Primitive Forms. ARCHI-CHÆTOPODA OR ARCHI-ANNELIDA.

There are a few small, simple, marine worms, with some Annelid or Chætopod characters, which are sometimes supposed to be ancestral forms. Thus *Dinophilus* is a minute Planarian-like animal found among weeds. In the young at least the body is distinctly segmented, but there are no bristles, gills, or tentacles. The nervous system consists of a brain and a ventral ganglionated cord, but it remains embedded in the epidermis.

More distinctly Annelid are the marine worms *Polygordius*, *Protodrilus*, and *Histiodrilus*.

The small body is segmented and uniform; there are no setæ, parapodia, cirri, or gills, but the head bears a few tentacles; the pre-oral region is small, and the segment around the mouth is large; the very simple nervous system is retained in the epidermis.

*Polygordius* (Fig. 89 (II)) is a thin worm, an inch or more in length, living at slight depths in sand or fine gravel, often along with the lancelet. It has a few external cilia about the mouth in a pair of head-pits, and sometimes on the body; it moves like a worm, but has no bristles. It feeds like an earthworm, or sometimes more discriminatingly on unicellular organisms. The females are usually larger than the males, and in some species break up at sexual maturity. The development includes a metamorphosis, and the larvæ seem to throw some light on the nature of the ancestral Annelids. They are ciliated, free-swimming, light-loving, surface animals, feeding on minute pelagic organisms,



seeking the depths as age advances. According to some, the larva represents a primitive unsegmented ancestral Annelid, with medusoid affinities; according to others, the larval characteristics are adaptive to the mode of life, and without historic importance.

*Protodrilus* is even smaller than *Polygordius*, with more cilia, mobile tentacles, and two fixing lobes on the posterior extremity; the movements are Turbellarian-like, the reproductive organs hermaphrodite, the development direct. *Histriodrilus* is parasitic on the eggs of the lobster, and its affinities are doubtful.

#### *Appendix (2) to Chætopoda.*

#### Parasitic and Degenerate Chætopods. MYZOSTOMATA.

The remarkable forms (*Myzostoma*) included in this small class, live parasitically on feather-stars, on which they form galls. They are regarded as divergent offshoots from primitive Annelids, the larval form showing some distinctly Chætopod characters. The minute disc-like body is unsegmented, and bears five pairs of parapodia, each with a grappling hook, with which four pairs of suckers usually alternate. There are also abundant cirri. The skin is thick, the body muscular, the nervous system is concentrated in a ganglionic mass, which encircles the gullet, and gives off abundant branches. There is a protrusible proboscis and a branched gut; the mouth and anus are ventral. The ova arise in the reduced body cavity, and pass by three meandering oviducts to the anal aperture. The testes are paired, branched, and ventral, with associated ducts, which open anteriorly on the side of the body.

The series are united, but there is marked protandry. The very young forms, originally described as "dwarf males," contain spermatozoa, and are often carried on the back of the mother; as they grow older they become hermaphrodite, and later the power of forming spermatozoa is lost and the animals become female.

It must be allowed, however, that all would not agree with the above summary. Thus Beard says: "The various kinds of parasitism presented by the numerous species of *Myzostoma*, have led in some cases to the preservation of the males, in others to their extinction, in yet others to their conversion into hermaphrodites." He distinguishes—

1. Purely diœcious forms with small males, *e.g.* *M. pulvinar*.
2. Hermaphrodite forms and true males, which remain males, *e.g.* *M. glabrum*.
3. Hermaphrodite forms and males, which, retaining their positions on the hermaphrodites, afterwards become female, *e.g.* *M. alatum*.
4. Hermaphrodite forms, in which the males have lost their dorsal position, and have either become extinct or converted into protandric hermaphrodites, *e.g.* *M. cirriferum*.



## Class HIRUDINEA OR DISCOPHORA. Leeches.

*This class includes forms in which the body is oval and flattened, usually devoid of setæ or gills, and marked externally by rings which are much more numerous than the true segments. The body cavity is much reduced, and may communicate indirectly with the well-developed vascular system. The nephridia are numerous and segmentally arranged. There are usually two suckers, one at each end of the body, the anterior being formed by the mouth. Almost all are hermaphrodite,—the male organs are numerous and segmentally arranged, and special genital ducts are present. The development is direct. Most live in fresh water or on land, but a few are marine.*

Type, the Medicinal Leech (*Hirudo medicinalis*).

**Habits.**—This is the commonest and most familiar of leeches, once so constantly used in the practice of medicine that leech became synonymous with physician. It lives in ponds and sluggish streams, and though not common in Britain, is abundant on the Continent, where leech farms, formerly of importance, are still to be seen. Leeches feed on the blood of fishes, frogs, and the like, and are still caught in the old fashion on the bare legs of the callous collector. As animals are naturally averse to bloodletting and hard to catch, leeches make the most of their opportunities. They gorge themselves with blood, and digest it slowly for many months, it may be indeed for a year. Watched in a glass jar, the leech is seen to move by alternately fixing and loosening its oral and posterior suckers, and, on some slight provocation, it will swim about actively and gracefully. At times it casts off from its skin thin transparent shreds of cuticle,—a process which, in natural conditions, usually occurs after a heavy meal, when the animal, as if in indigestion, spasmodically contracts its body, or rubs itself on the stems of water-plants. Numerous eggs are laid together in cocoons in the damp earth near the edge of the pool. Thence, after a direct development, the young leeches emerge and make for the water.

**External features.**—The leech usually measures from 2 to 6 ins. in length, and appears cylindrical or strap-like, according to its state of contraction. The slimy body shows over one hundred skin-rings;



its dorsal surface is beautifully marked with longitudinal pigmented bands, while the ventral surface is mottled irregularly; the suckorial mouth is readily distinguished from the unperforated hind-sucker, above which, on the dorsal surface, the alimentary canal may be seen to end.

According to Whitman's precise investigations, there are 102 skin-rings and 26 somites or true segments. These segments may be recognised externally by conspicuous pigment spots ("segmental papillæ"), which in the middle region of the body occur on every fifth ring. In type, therefore, five rings correspond to a segment, but at either end of the body the number of rings is abbreviated. In the head region a pair of "eyes" occurs on the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 5th, and 8th rings; these are homologous with "segmental papillæ," and therefore in this region eight rings correspond to five segments.

The penis is protruded on the middle ventral line between rings 30 and 31; the aperture of the female duct lies five rings further back. Also on the ventral surface there are seventeen pairs of small lateral apertures, through which a whitish fluid may be squeezed—the openings of the excretory organs. The skin of segments 9–11 is especially glandular, and forms the so-called clitellum or saddle, the secretion of which forms the cocoon for the eggs.

**Skin.**—Most externally lies the cuticle—a product of the epidermis—periodically shed, as we have already noticed. In this shedding some of the genuine epidermis cells are also thrown off. These are somewhat hammer-like units, with the heads turned outwards, while the spaces between the thick handles contain pigment and the fine branches of blood vessels. As the latter come very near the surface, a respiratory absorption of oxygen and outward passage of carbonic acid is readily effected. Opening between the epidermal elements, but really situated much deeper, are numerous long-necked, flask-shaped glandular cells, the contents of which form the mucus so abundant on the skin. Underneath the epidermis there is much connective tissue, and yellow and green, brown and black pigment.

**Muscular system and body cavity.**—The muscular system consists of spindle-shaped cells arranged externally in circular bands like the hoops of a barrel, internally in longitudinal strands like staves. Besides these there are numerous muscle bundles running diagonally through the body, or from dorsal to ventral surface, and there are other muscles associated with the lips, jaws, and pharynx. The body cavity, though distinct in the embryo, is almost obliterated in the adult leech, where the predominant connective tissue has filled up nearly every chink.



**Nervous system and sense organs.**—The nervous system mainly consists of a pair of dorsal ganglia lying above the pharynx, and of a double nerve-cord, with twenty-three ganglia, lying along the middle ventral line. The dorsal (or supra-oesophageal) ganglia are connected with the most anterior (or sub-oesophageal) pair on the ventral chain, by a

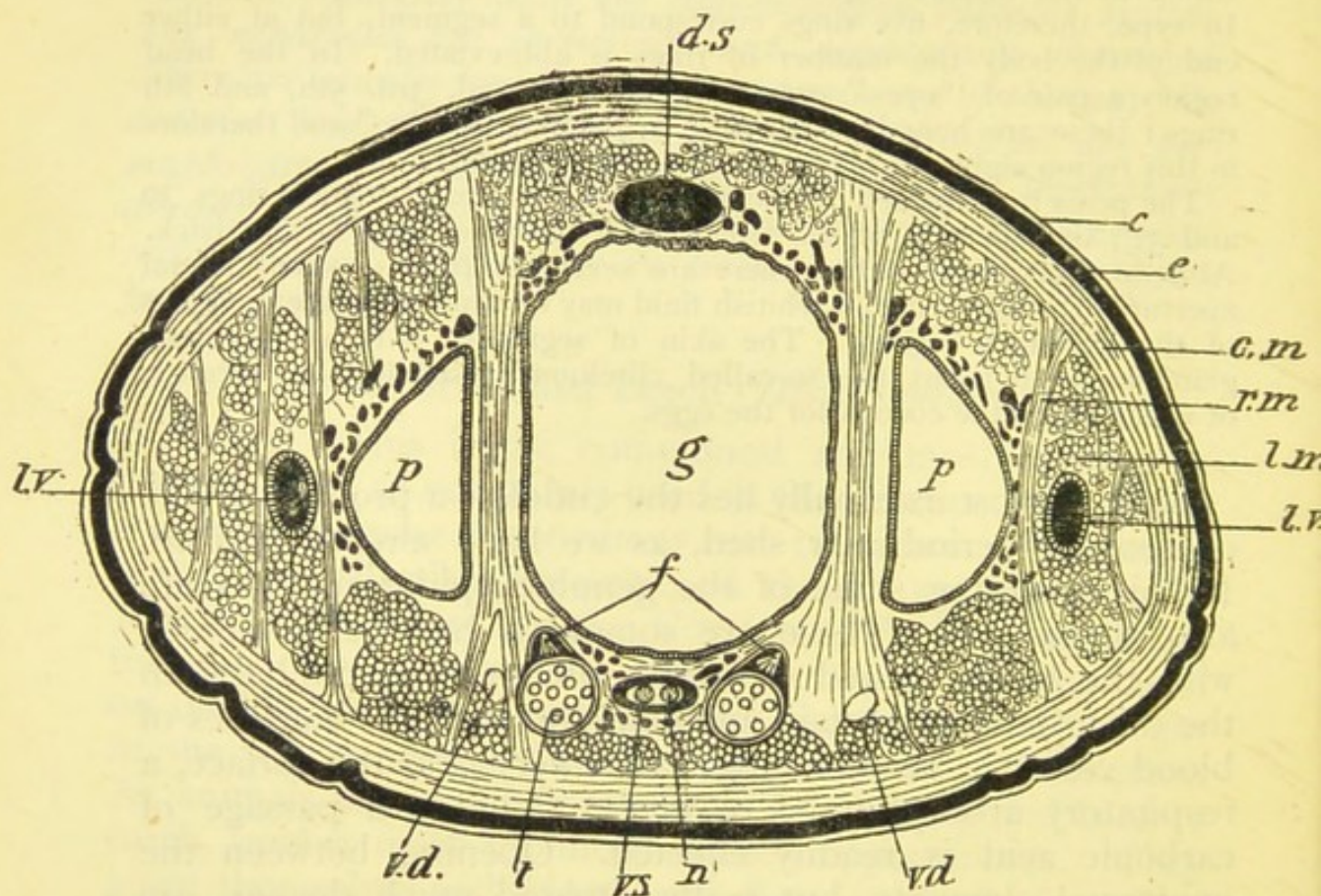


FIG. 91.—Transverse section of leech.—After Bourne.

*c.*, Cuticle; *e.*, epidermis; *c.m.*, dermis and outer muscles (circular and oblique); *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles (the peculiar connective tissue is hardly indicated); *r.m.*, radial muscles; *l.v.*, lateral blood vessel; *d.s.*, dorsal sinus; *v.s.*, ventral sinus enclosing nerve-cord (*n*); *g.*, median part of crop, with lateral pockets (*p.*); *t.*, testis; *f.*, nephridial funnels; *v.d.*, vas deferens.

narrow nerve-ring surrounding the beginning of the gut. From the dorsal centres nerves proceed to the "eyes" and anterior sense spots, from the ventral centres the general body is innervated, and from the beginning of the ventral chain special nerves supply the alimentary canal, forming what is called a visceral system.

The sense organs of the leech are ten so-called "eyes," besides numerous sense spots usually occurring on every



fifth skin-ring. The eyes are arranged round the edge of the mouth, and look like little black spots. Microscopic examination shows them to be definite cups, surrounded by connective tissue with black pigment, and containing clear strongly refracting cells, each in connection with a fibre of the optic nerve.

It has been shown (Whitman) that the eyes of leeches are serially homologous with the segmental sense organs. At the one extreme there are purely tactile organs, at the other extreme there are purely visual organs, and between these there are compound sense organs, in part tactile and in part visual,—a series which is full of suggestiveness in regard to the evolution of sense organs (cf. the series of sensitive setæ in the crayfish). The visual organs of the leech are not able to form images of external objects, but the animals are exquisitely sensitive to alterations of light.

**Alimentary system.**—When the leech has firmly fastened itself to its prey by the hind sucker, it brings its muscular mouth into action, pressing the lips tightly on the skin, and protruding three chitinous tooth-plates which lie within. Each of these tooth-plates is worked by muscles, and is like a semicircular saw, for the edge bears from 60 to 100 small teeth. Rapidly these saws cut a triangular wound, whence the flowing blood is sucked into the muscular pharynx. The process may be observed and felt by allowing a hungry leech to fasten on the arm. As the blood passes down the pharynx, it is influenced by the secretion of glandular cells which lie among the muscles of the seventh, eighth, and ninth segments, and exude a ferment which prevents the usual clotting. The blood greedily sucked in gradually fills the next region of the gut—the crop—which bears on each side eleven storing pockets. These become wider and

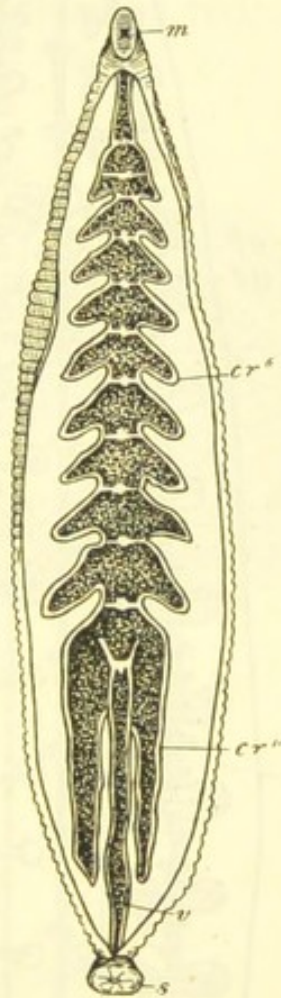


FIG. 92. — Alimentary system of leech.—After Moquin-Tandon.

*m.*, Mouth; *cr*<sup>6</sup>, sixth crop-pocket; *cr*<sup>11</sup>, last crop-pocket; *v.*, rectum; *s.*, posterior sucker.



more capacious towards the hind end, the largest terminal pair forming two great sacs on each side of the comparatively narrow posterior part of the gut. As all the pockets point

more or less backwards, it is evident that a leech to be emptied of the blood which it has sucked must be pressed from behind forwards. The pockets filled, the leech drops off its victim, seeks to retire into more private life, and digests at leisure. The digestion does not take place in the pockets, but in a small area just above the beginning of the terminal part or rectum. This rectum, running between the two last pockets, is separable from the true stomach just mentioned by a closing or sphincter muscle. It ends in a dorsal anus above the hind sucker.

**Vascular system.**—Two main lateral vessels run longitudinally, one on each side of the body. They are connected with one another by looping vessels, give off numer-

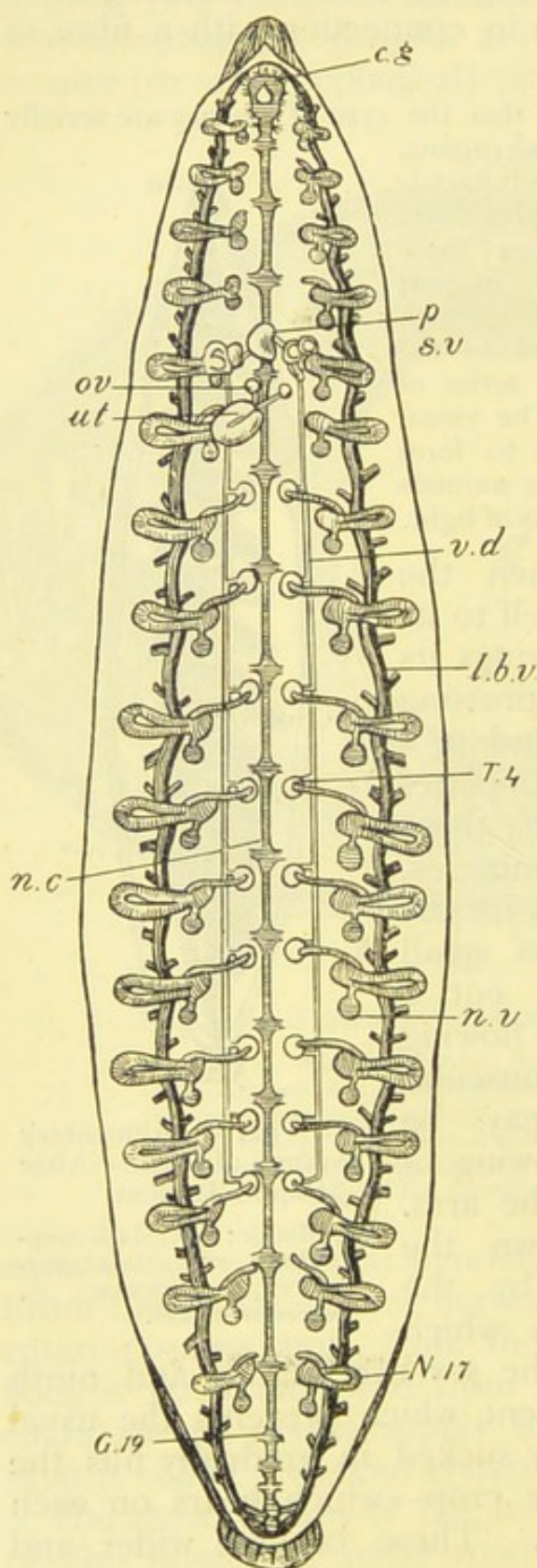


FIG. 93.—Dissection of leech.  
—After Bourne.

*c.g.*, Cerebral ganglia; *p.*, penis; *s.v.*, is opposite the seminal vesicle; *ov.*, ovary; *ut.*, uterus; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *l.b.v.*, lateral blood vessel; *T.4*, fourth testis; *n.v.*, nephridial vesicle; *N.17*, last nephridium; *G.19*, nineteenth pair of ganglia; *n.c.*, nerve-cord.



ous branches which riddle the spongy body, and have a definite muscular coat. On the dorsal surface and ventrally around the nerve-cord are two lacunar spaces, which are really portions of the true body cavity, and not parts of the vascular system. With those and similar spaces, however, the blood vessels are connected by means of a secondarily developed series of canals, roughly corresponding to the lymphatic vessels of Vertebrates. The blood is red, and contains colourless floating cells of diverse form.

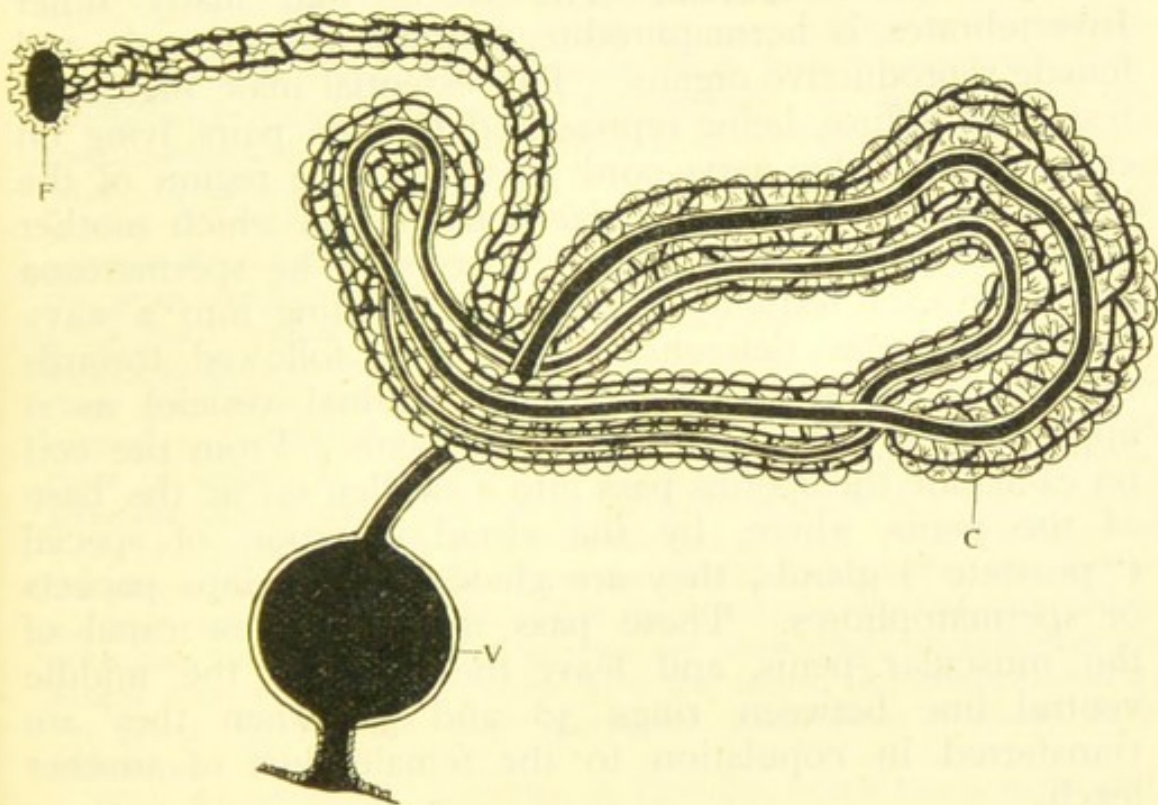


FIG. 94.—A nephridium of leech.—After Bourne.

*F.*, Internal terminal funnel; *C.*, glandular coil covered with blood vessels; *V.*, external terminal vesicle.

**Excretory system.** — There are seventeen pairs of excretory tubules or nephridia, from the second to the seventeenth segment inclusive. These open laterally on the ventral surface, voiding the waste products extracted from the blood vessels which cover their walls. From the seventh to the seventeenth, each nephridium ends internally in a ciliated “cauliflower” lobe, corresponding to the funnel of *Oligochæta*, and enclosed in a blood space, apparently part of the reduced coelom. In the first nine of these funnel-



bearing nephridia the terminal lobe lies close upon and dorsal to a testis, but there is no morphological meaning in this approximation. Each consists of two parts, a twisted horseshoe-shaped glandular region, where the actual excretory function is discharged, and a spherical, internally ciliated bladder opening to the exterior. Within the latter there is a whitish fluid with numerous waste crystals. The nephridia secrete a clear fluid which helps to keep the skin moist, and thus makes respiratory diffusion easier.

**Reproductive system.**—The leech, like many other Invertebrates, is hermaphrodite, containing both male and female reproductive organs. The essential male organs or testes are diffuse, being represented by nine pairs, lying on each side of the nerve-cord in the middle region of the body. Each is a firm globular body, within which mother sperm cells divide into balls of sperms. The spermatozoa pass from each testis by a short canal leading into a wavy longitudinal vas deferens. This duct, followed towards the head, forms a coil (so-called seminal vesicle) as it approaches the ejaculatory organ or penis. From the coil on each side the sperms pass into a swollen sac at the base of the penis, where, by the viscid secretion of special ("prostate") glands, they are glued together into packets or spermatophores. These pass up the narrow canal of the muscular penis, and leave the body on the middle ventral line between rings 30 and 31, when they are transferred in copulation to the female duct of another leech.

The female organs are more compact. The two small tubular and coiled ovaries are enclosed in spherical vesicles, the walls of which are continued as two oviducts, which unite together in a convoluted common duct. This is surrounded by a mass of glandular cells, which exude a glairy fluid into the duct. Finally, the duct leads into a relatively large muscular sac—the "uterus"—which opens through a sphincter muscle on the middle ventral line between rings 35 and 36.

The favourite breeding time is in spring. Two leeches inseminate one another, uniting in reverse positions, so that the penis of each enters the uterus of the other. Spermatophores are passed from one to the other, and the contained sperms



may remain for a long time within the uterus, or, liberated from their packets, may work their way up the female duct meeting the eggs at some point, or reaching them even in the ovaries.

The development is direct, and in many respects recalls that of the earthworm.

### GENERAL NOTES ON LEECHES.

The leeches constitute a relatively small class, whose structure has been insufficiently worked out. The presence of suckers, the parasitic habit, the reduction of the body cavity, have led many naturalists to associate them with Flat-worms, but all recent work goes to emphasise their affinity with Annelids, especially Oligochaetes. In leeches setæ are absent, except in *Acanthobdella*, which has paired segmentally arranged bristles in the anterior region; but it is to be noted that they are absent in some Oligochaetes. As in Oligochaetes, gills are usually absent, but occur in *Branchellion*. The condition of the body cavity affords one of the most striking contrasts to Oligochaetes; but in *Acanthobdella* the adult has a typical Annelid coelom divided into regions by septa. In others, in spite of the large amount of connective tissue in the adult, there are distinct traces of segmental septa. In *Hirudo* the reduction is carried so far that the coelom is represented merely by canals without trace of septa. In all cases, however, development shows that the reduction is secondary, and that in the embryo there is a true Annelid body cavity unconnected with the vascular system. The condition of the alimentary canal affords a basis for classification, for in one set the anterior region is protrusible, and in the other it is not, but is furnished with jaws or tooth-plates. The jaws are interesting, because they are absent from Oligochaetes, except in a few forms, like *Branchiobdella*; the jawed leeches are more specialised than those without these structures.

With regard to the nephridia, in *Clepsine*, which has a fairly well-developed body cavity, there is a direct communication between coelom and nephridia by means of a ciliated funnel of typical Annelid form. Where the coelom is much reduced, as in *Hirudo*, the funnel is represented by the blind ciliated "cauliflower lobe." In the reproductive system, apart from the numerous male organs, the leeches differ from the Oligochaetes in the apparent continuity of the organs and ducts; in the case of the ovaries at least, however, the connection is secondary. In the processes of fertilisation and egg-laying, in the formation of a cocoon, and in the development, the two groups show marked resemblance.

Most leeches are worm-like aquatic animals, with blood-sucking propensities; but some live in moist soil, and others keep to the open surface, while the parasitic "vampire" habit, familiarly illustrated by the apothecary's ancient panacea, is in many cases replaced by carnivorous habits and predatory life. The medicinal leech (*Hirudo*) is typical of the majority, for it lives in ponds and marshes, and sucks the blood of snails, fishes, frogs, or of larger available victims. The



giant leech (*Macrobdella valdiviana*), said to measure  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft. in length, though this is very doubtful, is subterranean and carnivorous; while the wiry land-leeches (*Hæmadipsa*, etc.), of Ceylon and other parts of the East, move in rapid somersaults along the ground, fasten on to the legs of man or beast, and gorge themselves with blood. The hungry horse-leeches are species of *Hæmopsis*, greedily suctorial, though the teeth, which occur in two rows, are too small and irregular to be useful in medicinal blood-letting; but the name is also applied to species of the common genus *Aulostoma*, which are carnivorous in habit. Other common leeches are species of *Nephelis*, predacious forms with indiscriminating appetites, and the little *Clepsine*, also common in our ponds, notable for its habit of carrying its young about on its belly. Numerous marine forms prey upon fishes and other animals, e.g. the "skate-sucker" (*Pontobdella muricata*), with a leathery skin rough with knobs. This form lays velvety eggs in empty mollusc shells, and mounts guard over them for more than a hundred days. The remarkable *Branchellion* on the Torpedo, has numerous leaf-like respiratory plates on the sides of its body. Perhaps the strangest habitat is that of *Lophobdella*, which lives on the lips and jaws of the crocodile.

#### Classification.—

1. Rhynchobdellidæ, in which the fore part of the pharynx can be protruded as a proboscis. There is an anterior as well as a posterior sucker. The blood plasma is colourless. The ova are large and rich in yolk; the embryos are hatched at an advanced stage, and soon leave the cocoon, which contains no albuminous fluid.

e.g. *Clepsine*, *Pontobdella*, *Branchellion*.

2. Gnathobdellidæ, in which there is no proboscis, but the pharynx usually bears three tooth-plates. The mouth is suctorial. The blood plasma is red. The ova are small and without much yolk; the embryos are hatched at an early stage, and swim about in the nutritive albuminous fluid of the cocoon.

e.g. *Hirudo*, *Hæmopsis*, *Hæmadipsa*, *Aulostoma*, *Nephelis*.

#### *Appendix (1) to Annelid Series.*

#### Class CHÆTOGNATHA. Arrow-Worms.

There are two little marine "worms," *Sagitta* and *Spadella*, which are so different from all others, that they have been placed in a class by themselves. It is possible to regard them as Annelids with three segments.

The translucent body, which may be nearly 3 in. long, but is usually much less, has three distinct regions,—a head bearing a ventral mouth with spines and bristles (whence the name Chætognatha), a median region with lateral fins, and a trowel-like tail. The nervous system consists of a supra-oesophageal ganglion in the head, a sub-oesophageal about the middle of the body, long commissures between them, and numerous nerves from both; it retains its primitive connection with the epidermis. There are two eyes and various patches



of sensitive cells. The food canal is complete and simple, and lies in a spacious ciliated body cavity. Corresponding to the external divisions, the cavities of the head, body, and tail are distinct, being separated from one another by septa; a longitudinal mesentery supports the gut and divides the cavities into lateral halves.

There is no vascular system, nor are there any certain nephridia. It is possible that the latter may be represented by the genital ducts.

The animals are hermaphrodite, and the simple reproductive organs lie near one another posteriorly. The two ovaries project into the body cavity, and their ducts open laterally where body and tail meet. The two testes project into the cavity of the tail; and their ducts have internal ciliated funnels, and open on the tail. Two reproductive cells are set apart at a very early stage, and each divides into the rudiment of an ovary and of a testis. The eggs undergo complete segmentation; a gastrula is formed by the invagination of the blastula; the

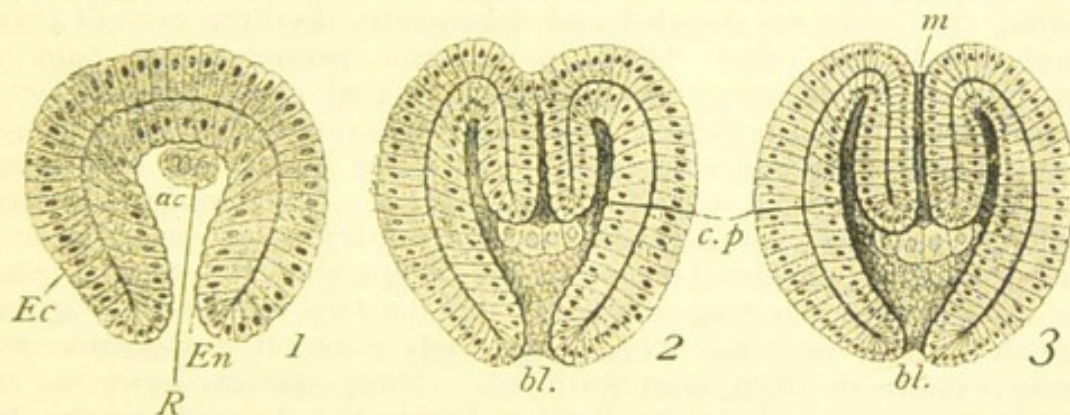


FIG. 95.—Development of *Sagitta*.—After O. Hertwig. Illustrating formation of a body cavity by pockets from the archenteron; also the early separation of reproductive cells.

*Ec.*, Ectoderm; *En.*, endoderm; *ac.*, archenteron; *R.*, reproductive cells; *bl.*, blastopore; *c.p.*, coelom pouches; *m.*, mouth; 1. section of gastrula; 2 and 3. origin of coelom pouches.

body cavity arises, in enterocoelic fashion, as two pockets from the archenteron. The young forms are like the adults.

#### *Appendix (2) to Annelid Series.*

### Class ROTATORIA. Rotifers.

Rotifers are beautiful minute animals, abundant in fresh water, also found in damp moss, and in the sea. They owe their name and the old-fashioned title of wheel animalcules to the fact that the rapid movements of cilia on their anterior end produce the appearance of a rotating wheel. The food seems to consist of small organisms and particles caught in the whirlpool made by the lashing cilia. The little animals are tenacious of life, and can survive prolonged drought. If they are left dry for long, however, they die, though the ova may survive and subsequently develop.

The body is usually microscopic, and is sometimes (*e.g.* in *Melicerta*



and *Floscularia*) sheltered within an external tube. There is no internal segmentation, but there are sometimes external rings, and the attaching outgrowth or "foot" is sometimes segmented. The anterior end bears, on a retractile ridge, the ciliated ring or "trochal apparatus."

The nervous system is a single dorsal ganglion with a few nerves. An unpaired eye and some tufts of sensory hairs are usually present.

The food canal extends along the body in a well-developed coelom, and the fore-gut contains a mill, in which two complex hammers beat upon an anvil. The canal ends posteriorly on the dorsal surface between the body and the foot, and as the terminal portion also receives the excretory canals and the oviduct, it is called a cloaca.

There is no vascular system, but a nephridial tube of a primitive type lies on each side of the body, and opens posteriorly into the cloaca.

The sexes are separate; the reproductive organs are simple. Except in the marine parasite *Seison*, in *Rhinops vitrea*, and two or three other forms, the males are dwarfed and degenerate, destitute even of a true food canal, and often "little more than perambulating bags of spermatozoa." In many cases at least, sexual union (effected by a penis) seems to be ineffective, and there is no doubt that many, if not most, Rotifers are parthenogenetic. No males have as yet been found in *Philodina*, *Rotifer*, *Callidina*, or *Adineta*. The females lay three different kinds of eggs, according to their conditions and constitution—either small ova, which become males, or thin-shelled "summer ova," or thick-shelled "resting or winter ova," the two last developing into females. The so-called winter eggs may occur at any season, and seem usually to have been fertilised. Many species, however, are viviparous. We include the Rotifers beside the Annelids proper, because it seems possible to regard them as derived from ancestors somewhat like Annelid larvæ.

Rotifers living in fixed tubes or envelopes,—*Melicerta*, *Floscularia*, *Stephanoceros*.

Free Rotifers,—*Notommata*, *Hydatina*, *Brachionus*.

Parasitic on the marine crustacean *Nebalia*,—*Seison*.

*Pedalion* occupies a unique position; it has hints of appendages and a peculiar jumping motion.

At this stage it may be mentioned that there are several sets of small worm-like animals of which we know very little. It is quite possible that some of them may become of great interest to the systematic zoologist, but we do not yet understand what places in the system they should occupy. Moreover, as they are small, unfamiliar, and unknown to myself, I shall simply refer the curious to what more complete works say about the Gasterotricha, Echinoderidæ, Demoscolecidæ, and Chætosomidæ.

#### *Appendix (3) to Annelid Series.*

A. Class SIPUNCULIDÆ, e.g. *Sipunculus*, and B. Class PRIAPULIDÆ, e.g. *Priapulus*.

These two classes were formerly united with the Echiuridæ as Gephyrea, but it is improbable that the three are nearly related. The



Echiuridæ are apparently modified Chætopods, while the position of the Sipunculidæ and Priapulidæ is quite uncertain.

Both include marine worms, living in the sand or mud upon which they feed, having unsegmented bodies with a capacious body cavity, and an anterior protrusible proboscis or introvert, which is moved by special retractor muscles, and bears the mouth at its tip. In most other respects the two classes differ markedly from one another.

In the Sipunculids, the large introvert terminates in a hollow tentacular fringe, within the cavity of which closed blood vessels run. The gut is much coiled, and the anus is dorsal and anterior. A nervous system with a distinct brain, a gullet-ring, and a ventral cord is present, but the ventral cord is unsegmented. Large nephridia or brown tubes, usually two in number, occur in the anterior region, and function also as genital ducts. The sexes are separate, and the reproductive cells develop on the lining of the body cavity. In the development, which includes a metamorphosis, several peculiarities are observable, tending to show that the animals are not primitive. The larva of *Sipunculus* is sometimes compared to a trochosphere, but differs from a typical trochosphere, notably in the total absence of segmentation, of "head-kidneys," of a pre-oral band of cilia, as well as in the position of mouth and anus, and the slight development of the pre-oral lobe.

The class includes eleven genera, which are widely distributed; many of the species are large and conspicuous. It should be noticed that while typically without trace of setæ [*Gephyrea Achæta*], some genera, e.g. *Phascolosoma*, have distinct hooks on the introvert.

The Priapulidæ include two genera—*Priapulus* and *Halicryptus*, both almost entirely confined to the northern hemisphere. They have no tentacles, no vascular system, no brown tubes, and no brain. The gut is straight, or has a single loop; the anus is posterior. A gullet-ring and ventral nerve-cord are present as in *Sipunculus*, but retain their primitive connection with the epidermis. There are complex genital ducts opening by a pore on each side of the anus, which in the young are connected with an excretory system of the Platyhelminth type, while in the adult they are overgrown and concealed by the reproductive cells. The development is unknown. In *Priapulus* there is a peculiar respiratory (?) appendage at the posterior end of the body.

#### *Appendix (4) to Annelid Series.*

Under the old term Molluscoidea are sometimes included the three classes—Phoronoidea, Polyzoa or Bryozoa, and Brachiopoda.

The Molluscoidea are characterised by the presence of a true coelom, formed in development by the folding off of pouches from the archenteron, and by the shortening of the dorsal region of the body, which results in the close approximation of mouth and anus. The mouth is typically furnished with ciliated tentacles, and is often overhung by an epistome; both tentacles and epistome, when present, contain spaces which are part of the body cavity. Except in the Ectoprocta among Polyzoa, two or four nephridia are present, and serve also as genital ducts. There is always a metamorphosis in development, and the larvæ are peculiar.



The development is in most cases insufficiently known, and it is probable that further knowledge of it will remove these sets of animals from their apparently anomalous position.

### Class PHORONOIDEA.

This class has been erected for the single genus *Phoronis*, which has been associated both with the Gephyrea and with Polyzoa. With the removal of *Cephalodiscus* and *Rhabdopleura* from the last-named group to the Hemichorda, *Phoronis* has been left in a somewhat isolated position. Recently it has been proposed by Mr. Masterman to re-associate it with these forms and with *Balanoglossus*, on account of certain Chordate affinities said to be exhibited by the larva. The point will be further discussed in the chapter on *Balanoglossus*.

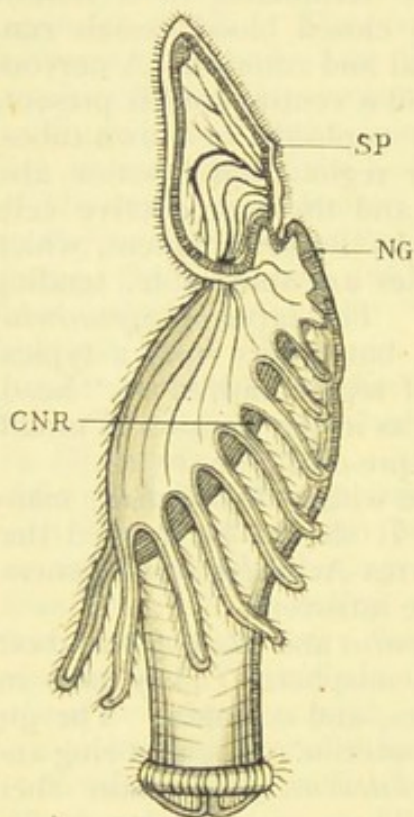


FIG. 96.—Actinotrocha or larva of *Phoronis*.—After Masterman.

The mouth is overhung by the prominent pre-oral hood; the anus is at the other end of the body. Behind the mouth is a ring of ciliated tentacles.

*SP.*, the nerve ganglion in the hood; *NG.*, the nerve ganglion of the region called collar region by Masterman; *CNR.*, nerve-ring at base of tentacles.

The genus *Phoronis* includes a few species of small marine worms, social in habit, and found enclosed in fixed leathery tubes often encrusted with foreign particles. Each individual is furnished with a horseshoe-shaped crown of tentacles, which are hollow and supported by an internal skeleton. The nervous system lies in the ectoderm—a very primitive character, and consists of a ring round the mouth, and of a cord down the left side of the body. An interesting point is the presence of a closed vascular system with nucleated red cells. The body cavity is well developed, and is divided into chambers. The sexes are united; and the larva, known as *Actinotrocha*, undergoes a remarkable metamorphosis in the course of its conversion into the adult.

### Class POLYZOA.

As usually defined, the class includes two sub-classes, the Ectoprocta and the

Entoprocta, but it seems almost certain that these are distinct classes.

The Ectoprocta include fresh-water and marine forms, in which the anus is outside the basis of the tentacles. The nervous system is represented by a ganglion placed between the mouth and anus. There is no vascular system. Nephridia are absent. All are colonial and bud very freely; the marine forms show considerable division of labour among the members of the colony.



(a) Tentacles in a crescent—Fresh water, *Cristatella*, *Lophopus*, etc.

(b) Tentacles in a circle—Marine, except *Paludicella*; *Flustra*, the common sea-mat; *Membranipora*, encrusting sea-weed, etc.; *Cellepora*, very calcareous; *Alcyonidium*, gelatinous.

The Entoprocta include the colonial *Pedicellina*, with a few allied genera, also the non-colonial *Loxosoma*, in which the buds separate as soon as they are formed. All the forms are stalked and minute. The anus is included within the tentacular circle. In the metamorphosis of *Pedicellina* there is an elongation of the dorsal region of the body, and a consequent approximation of the mouth and anus on the shortened ventral surface. There is no apparent body cavity in the adult, and the mesoderm arises from two primitive mesoblasts. The nephridia are anterior, minute, and do not serve as genital ducts, but resemble the "head kidneys" of Annelid trochospheres. They are said to terminate in flame cells like those of Platyhelminths. In all these three respects the Entoprocta differ from the Ectoprocta, and from the Molluscoidea generally; but the significance of this is uncertain.

### Class BRACHIOPODA.

The Brachiopods or Lamp-shells are quaint marine animals, once very numerous, but now decadent. The body is enveloped *dorsally* and *ventrally* by two folds of skin or mantle; these secrete a shell, usually of lime, but sometimes organic. The development of this shell has apparently modified both the position and the relations of the organs. There is no real resemblance between a Brachiopod shell and that of a bivalve Mollusc, except that both consist of two valves. In Brachiopods these lie dorsally and ventrally; in Lamellibranchs they are lateral; moreover, in Brachiopods the ventral valve is usually the larger. It is hardly necessary to say that the Brachiopod organism is not the least like a Mollusc.

A considerable part of the space between the valves of the shell is filled up by two long "arms," which are coiled in a spiral, and often supported by a calcareous skeleton. These arise in development from the specialisation of a horseshoe-shaped "lophophore," such as is characteristic of the Polyzoa. The mouth is placed between the arms, and opens into the ciliated food canal. This may end blindly, or may be furnished with an anus placed near the mouth; in *Crania* the anus is dorsal and posterior. The muscular system is well developed, the shell being both opened and closed by means of muscles. There is a nerve-ring round the gullet, with a slight brain and an inferior ganglion. Sensory structures in many cases perforate the valves. Above the gut lies the heart, which is connected with blood vessels. Two (or more, rarely four) nephridia open near the mouth, and serve also as genital

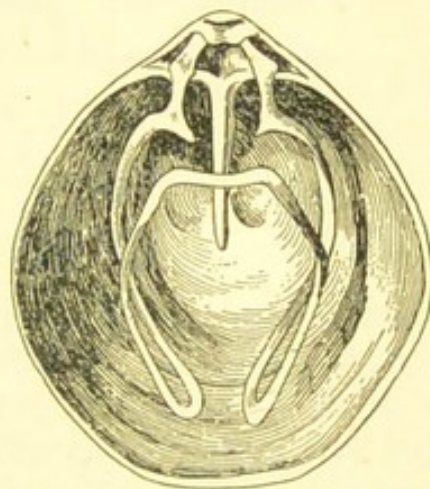


Fig. 97.—Interior of Brachiopod shell, showing calcareous support for the "arms."—After Davidson.



ducts. The posterior region of the body often forms a stalk by which the shell is moored, but in many this stalk is absent, and the animal is directly attached to the substratum. The sexes are sometimes separate, but perhaps some are hermaphrodite. There is a metamorphosis in the development, and the larvæ resemble those of Polyzoa. Of the details little is yet known.

TESTICARDINES.	ECARDINES.
<p>The valves are hinged.</p> <p>There is no anus.</p> <p><i>Terebratulæ. Waldheimia.</i></p>	<p>There is no hinge.</p> <p>There is an anus.</p> <p><i>Crania.</i></p> <p><i>Lingula</i>, persistent since Palæozoic ages.</p>



## CHAPTER XII.

### ECHINODERMA.

Class	1.	HOLOTHUROIDEA (Scytoderma).	Sea-Cucumbers.	
	„	2. ECHINOIDEA.	Sea-Urchins.	} ELEUTHEROZOA or ECHINOZOA.
	„	3. ASTEROIDEA.	Star-fishes.	
	„	4. OPHIUROIDEA.	Brittle-stars.	
	„	5. CRINOIDEA.	Feather-stars.	} PELMATOZOA.
	„	6. BLASTOIDEA.	Extinct.	
	„	7. CYSTOIDEA.	Extinct.	

IN contrast to the “worms,” the Echinoderms form a well-defined series. They may be described as sluggish marine animals, generally with superficially radial symmetry, with a tendency to form limy skeletons. The radial symmetry led the older zoologists to place the Echinoderma near Cœlentera, but the larval Echinoderm is more specialised than most of the larval “worms,” and is bilateral in its symmetry. It seems likely that the adult radial symmetry is an adaptation to sedentary life, and that the Echinoderms represent an offshoot of some “worm” stock. As in Cœlentera, the nervous system shows a marked absence of centralisation, which may be connected with the absence of a definite head region, and this again with the relatively sedentary habit.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The Echinoderms include forms in which the bilateral symmetry of the larva is replaced in the adult by radial symmetry. In addition to the dominant radial symmetry, the adults show to a varying extent a tendency towards the bilateral type, but this is never the same as that of the larva, nor is it equivalent in the different forms. Lime is always deposited in the mesodermic tissues (mesenchyme), and in con-*



sequence there is frequently a very complete skeleton. From the primitive gut of the larva, pouches grow out to form the usually spacious cœlom and the characteristic water vascular system, which may have locomotor or respiratory functions or both. The branches of this system, together with the nerves, exhibit in most cases a typical five-rayed arrangement. In addition to the water vascular system, there is a system of blood vessels. Well-defined excretory organs are absent. The sexes are almost always separate. There is usually a striking

circuitousness or indirectness in development. The diet is vegetarian (most sea-urchins), or carnivorous (star-fishes), or consists of the organic particles found in sand and mud, the *Holothurians* in particular practising this worm-like mode of nutrition.

Most *Echinoderms* have to a remarkable extent the power of casting off and regenerating portions of their body. This power is probably one of their means of defence, but they often mutilate themselves as a consequence of unfavourable conditions of life. This self-mutilation, or autotomy, seems to be reflex, and not voluntary.

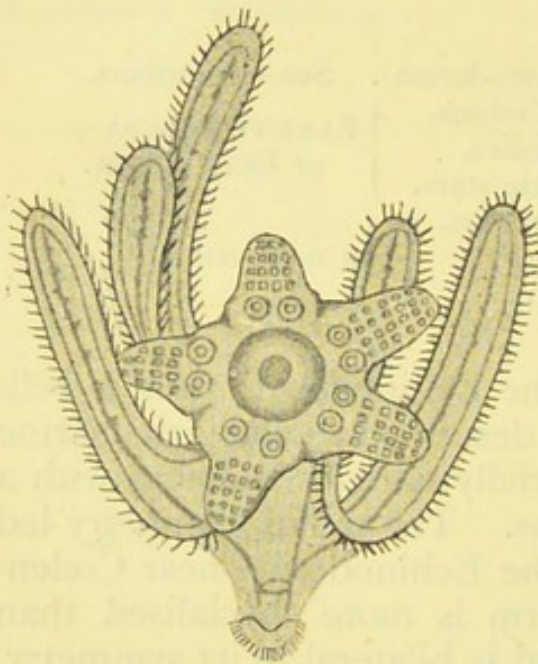


FIG. 98.—Pluteus larva with rudiment of adult. — After Johannes Müller.

#### GENERAL NOTES ON STRUCTURE.

The *Echinoderma*, in spite of the numerous fossil representatives, form an exceedingly well-defined group, showing no close relation to any other, and exhibiting certain striking peculiarities. The skeleton is generally well-developed; in *Holothurians* it consists of isolated spicules, but elsewhere of a series of plates which may be firmly united together, as in most sea-urchins, or may be capable of movement upon one another. Apart from the skeleton proper, lime may appear in almost any of the organs of the body, except heart and gonads. With this deep-seated tendency to form skeletal substance, may perhaps be associated the sluggish habit of the majority, and the absence of definite excretory organs. Except in *Holothurians*, where the calcareous plates are diffusely scattered, the parts of the skeleton show much regularity



of arrangement. The primitive skeleton is believed to have consisted of two series of plates, constituting respectively the oral and apical systems. These, especially the latter, were of much importance in the formation of the skeleton of the extinct Blastoids and Cystoids, but in modern Echinoderms they are absent or unimportant, and are functionally replaced by accessory plates, such as those which form the "test" of sea-urchins. The oral system consists of five plates surrounding the mouth, and in living forms it is fully developed only among Crinoids. The apical system in the Pelmatozoa typically forms a cup or calyx enclosing the viscera, and consists of a central plate to which a stalk may be attached, and three sets of plates arranged around this, five infra-basals, five basals, and five radials. In the larva of *Antedon* this apical system is fully represented, except that the infra-basals are reduced to three, but in other Crinoids and in the adult *Antedon* there tends to be reduction. Among other Echinoderms the apical system is best represented among sea-urchins, where there are often five basals and five radials arranged around the anus, but these tend to be reduced or lost among the modern irregular urchins. In Ophiuroids the apical system is sometimes represented both by basal and radial plates, but often only by radials; in star-fishes it is typically absent in the adult, though more or less clearly shown in the larva.

The other most striking characteristic of Echinoderms is the peculiar water vascular system. This arises in development from the coelom, and consists typically of the following parts:—An external opening or madreporite opens into a canal with calcified walls, called the stone-canal; this opens into a ring canal around the mouth, which has often connected with it little vesicles and glandular bodies; the ring canal opens into five radial canals which run in the radii of the body, and give off branches to the protrusible tube-feet which project on the surface of the body, and may be furnished with suckers; the radial canals are also often connected with internal reservoirs or ampullæ. The tube feet are very characteristic, and have different functions in the different classes. In Asteroids, in most Holothurians, and in part in Echinoids, they are primarily locomotor; in Ophiuroids, in Crinoids, and in part in Echinoids, they are respiratory, tactile, or used for food-catching. But there is great variety of structure and functions; thus in many Holothurians the tube-feet are represented only by a ring of tentacles around the mouth.

#### Class ASTEROIDEA. Star-fishes.

The description applies especially to the common five-rayed star-fish (*Asterias* or *Asteracanthion rubens*). It is often seen in shore pools exposed at low water, but its haunts are on the floor of the sea at greater depths. There it moves about sluggishly by means of its tube feet.

Each of the five arms bears a deep ventral groove in which the tube feet are lodged. The mouth is in the middle of the ventral surface, the food canal ends about



the centre of the dorsal disc. With this flat, five-rayed form, the 11-13 rayed sun-star (*Solaster*), the pincushion-like *Goniaster*, and the flat pentagonal *Palmipes*, should be contrasted. Between two of the arms lies the perforated madreporic plate, thus defining the *bivium*, while the three other arms constitute the *trivium*.

The body is covered by a ciliated ectoderm, beneath which lies a mesodermic layer. In association with the latter there is developed on the ventral surface of each arm a double series of sloping plates. These meet dorsally, like rafters, in the middle line of the arm, forming an elongated shed. The rafter-like plates are called *ambulacral ossicles*; the groove which they bound lodges the nerve-cord, the blood vessel, the water vessel, and the tube-feet of each arm.

In association with the outer mesodermic layer of the integument, numerous smaller plates are developed, e.g. the *adambulacrals*, which articulate with the outer lower ends of ambulacrals. The dorsal surface bears a network of little ossicles, and many of these bear spines. Peculiarly modified spines, known as *pedicellariæ*, look like snapping scissor-blades mounted on a single soft handle. They have been seen gripping Algæ and the like, and probably keep the surface of the star-fish clean.

A star-fish is not very muscular, but it often bends its arms upwards by means of a muscular layer in the body-wall. Other muscles affect the size of the ventral grooves, and muscular elements also occur on the protrusible part of the stomach, and in connection with the water vascular system.

Underneath the ciliated ectoderm lies a network of nerve fibrils, with some ganglionic cells. But besides these diffuse elements there is a pentagon around the mouth, and a nerve along each arm. The system is not separable from the skin.

A red eye spot, sensitive to light, lies on the terminal ossicle at the tip of each arm, and is usually upturned. It is a modified tentacle, bearing numerous little cups, lined by sensitive and pigmented cells, containing clear fluid, and covered by cuticle. The skin is diffusely sensitive. The terminal tube-foot of each ray seems to be olfactory.



The star-fish may be found with part of its stomach extruded over young oysters and other bivalves. This protrusible or cardiac portion of the stomach is glandular and sacculated, and bulges slightly towards the arms; it is followed by an upper or pyloric portion, giving off five branches, each of which divides into two large digestive

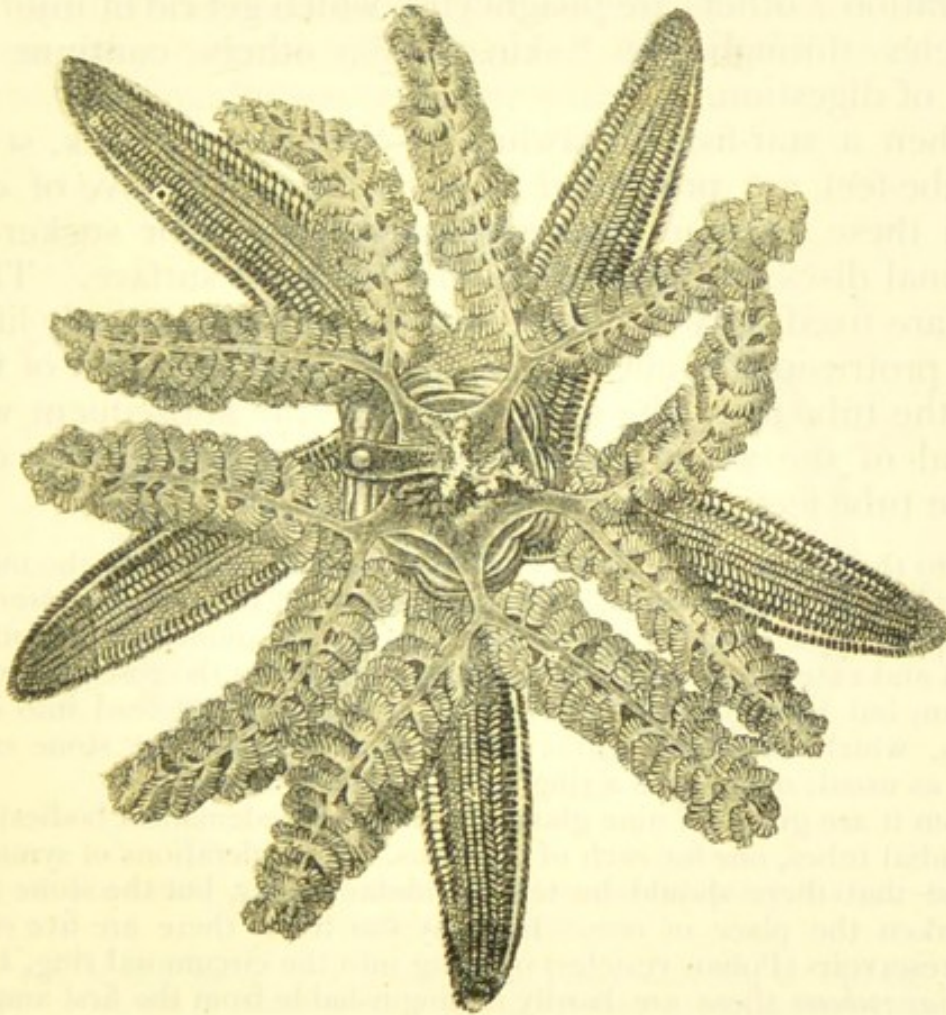


FIG. 99.—Alimentary system of star-fish.—After Müller and Troschel.

The dorsal surface has been removed; the digestive cæca and the stomach are shown. To the left lies the intestine ending in the anus.

cæca,—a pair in each arm (Fig. 99). These glands are comparable to a pancreas; their secretion contains three ferments, which convert proteids into peptones, starch into sugar, and break up fats into fatty acids and glycerine. From the short tubular intestine between the stomach and the almost central dorsal anus two little outgrowths are given off, perhaps homologous with the “respiratory trees”



of Holothurians (Fig. 103, *r.t.*). Some parts of the food canal are ciliated.

The coelom is distinct, though not much of it is left unoccupied either in the disc or in the arms. It is lined by ciliated epithelium, and contains a fluid with amœboid cells. A few of these have a pigment which probably aids in respiration; others are phagocytes, which get rid of injurious particles through the "skin-gills"; others continue the work of digestion.

When a star-fish is crawling up the side of a rock, scores of tube-feet are protruded from the ventral groove of each arm; these become long and tense, and their sucker-like terminal discs are pressed against the hard surface. There they are fixed, and towards them the star-fish is gently lifted. The protrusion is effected by the internal injection of fluid into the tube-feet; the fixing is due to the subsequent withdrawal of the water producing a vacuum between the ends of the tube-feet and the rock.

As to the course of the fluid, it is convenient to begin with the madreporic plate, which lies between the bases of two of the arms (the *bivium*). This plate is a complex calcareous sieve, with numerous perforating canals and external pores. It may be compared to the rose of a watering-can, but the holes are much more numerous, and lead into small canals, which converge into a main ciliated canal, the stone canal. This, as usual, opens into a ring canal around the mouth.

From it are given off nine glandular bodies (Tiedemann's bodies), and five radial tubes, one for each of the arms. Considerations of symmetry suggest that there should be ten glandular bodies, but the stone canal has taken the place of one. In many star-fishes there are five or ten little reservoirs (Polian vesicles) opening into the circumoral ring, but in *Asterias rubens* these are hardly distinguishable from the first ampullæ of the radial vessels. These run along the arms, and lie in the ambulacral groove beneath the shelter of the rafter-like ossicles. From them branches are given off to the bases of the tube-feet, but from each of these bases a canal ascends between each pair of ambulacral ossicles, and expands into an ampulla or reservoir on the dorsal or more internal side. (See Fig. 100.) The fluid in the system may pass from the radial vessels into the tube-feet, and from the tube-feet it can flow back, not into the radial vessel, but into the ampullæ. There are muscles on the walls of the tube-feet, ampullæ, and vessels. At the end of each arm there is a long unpaired tube-foot, which seems to act as a tactile tentacle, and has also olfactory significance.

With regard to the vascular system there is considerable uncertainty. It is well developed in certain Echinoderms, although there is no heart, but has not yet been properly worked out in Asteroids or Ophiuroids.



From the dorsal surface and sides of a star-fish in a pool, numerous transparent processes may be seen hanging out into the water. They are the simplest possible respiratory structures, contractile outgrowths of the skin with cavities continuous with the coelom, and are called "skin-gills." It is likely that pigmented cells of the body cavity fluid act like rudimentary red blood corpuscles; the water vascular system may help in aëration; and the whole body is, of course, continually washed with water.

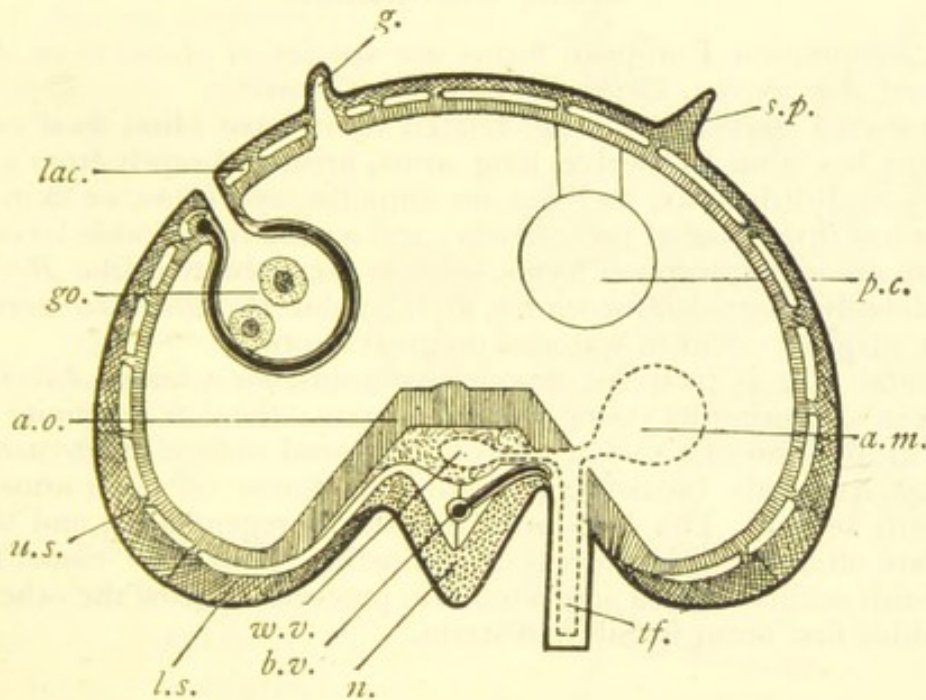


FIG. 100.—Diagrammatic cross section of star-fish arm.—  
After Ludwig.

*n.*, Radial nerve; *b.v.*, radial blood vessel according to Ludwig, septum in blood vessel according to others; *w.v.*, radial water-vessel; *a.m.*, ampulla; *tf.*, tube-foot; *p.c.*, a pyloric cæcum cut across; *s.p.*, a calcareous spine; *g.*, a skin-gill; *lac.*, spaces in the skin; *go.*, ova in ovary; *a.o.*, ambulacral ossicle.

The "skin-gills" are said to have an excretory function; for phagocytes, bearing waste, seem to traverse their walls. It may also be that excretion is somehow concerned in forming the carbonate of lime skeleton, but facts are wanting.

The sexes are separate, and they are like one another, both externally and internally. The organs develop periodically, and lie in pairs in each arm. Each is branched like an elongated bunch of grapes, and is surrounded by a blood sinus. Each has a separate duct, which opens on a porous



plate, between the bases of the arms on the dorsal surface. In *Asterina gibbosa*, however, the eggs are extruded ventrally. In the same species there is an interesting sexual variability: many are first males and then females (protandric), others are simply hermaphrodites, others seem exclusively of one sex. The eggs of star-fishes are fertilised in the water, and the free-swimming larva is known as a *Bipinnaria* or as a *Brachiolaria*.

### *Other Star-fishes.*

The commonest European forms are species of *Asterias* or *Asteracanthion*, *Astropecten*, *Cribrella*, *Solaster*, *Goniaster*.

*Astropecten* and most forms related to it have blind food canals; *Brisinga* has nine to twelve long arms, arising abruptly from a small disc, as in Brittle-stars, and has no ampullæ, eye spots, or skin-gills; *Luidia* has three-bladed pedicellariæ, and a very remarkable larva.

There are many deep-sea forms, such as the ophiuroid-like *Brisinga*, the widely-distributed *Hymenaster*, and the blue *Porcellanaster cæruleus*; but the majority occur in water of no great depth.

Parental care is incipient among Asteroids, for a large *Asterias* has been seen sheltering its young within its arms: there is a definite brood pouch in the form of a sort of tent on the dorsal surface of *Pteraster*.

Many Asteroids break very readily, or throw off their arms when these are seized. The lost parts are slowly regenerated, and strange forms are often found in process of regrowth. Thus the "comet form" of star-fish occurs when a separated arm proceeds to grow the other four. Asteroidea first occur in Silurian strata.

### Class OPHIUROIDEA. Brittle-stars, *e.g.* *Ophiopholis bellis*.

The body of a brittle-star differs from that of a star-fish in the abruptness with which the arms spring from the central disc (cf. *Brisinga*). These arms are muscular, and useful in wriggling and clambering; they do not contain outgrowths of the gut, nor reproductive organs. Moreover, there is no ambulacral groove, and the tube-feet which project on the sides are too small to be of locomotor service. The madreporic plate is situated on the ventral surface, usually on one of the plates around the mouth. The food canal ends blindly.

The reproductive organs lie in pairs between the arms, and open into pockets or bursæ formed from inturnings of the skin, which communicate with the exterior by slits opening at the bases of the arms. Water currents pass



in and out of these pockets, which probably have both respiratory and excretory functions.

The free-swimming larva is a *Pluteus*, very like that of Echinoids (see Fig. 98).

Ophiuroids are first found in Silurian strata.

### Classification.—

1. Euryalida. Skin without plates; arms simple or branched, and capable of being rolled up. *Astrophyton*; *Gorgonocephalus*.
2. Ophiurida. Skin with plates; arms simple.  
*Ophiopholis*,  
*Ophiocoma*,  
*Ophiothrix*, are common genera.  
*Amphiura squamata* is hermaphrodite.

Class ECHINOIDEA.  
 Sea-Urchins, e.g.  
 the common  
*Echinus edulis*,  
*Strongylocentrotus lividus*.

Most sea-urchins live off rocky coasts, and not a few shelter themselves sluggishly in holes. They move by means of their tube-feet and spines, and seem to feed on sea-weeds, and on the organic matter found in mud and other deposits. After the perils of youth are past, the larger forms have few formidable enemies.

The hard and prickly body is more or less spherical. The food canal begins in the middle of the lower surface; it ends at the opposite pole in the middle of an apical disc,

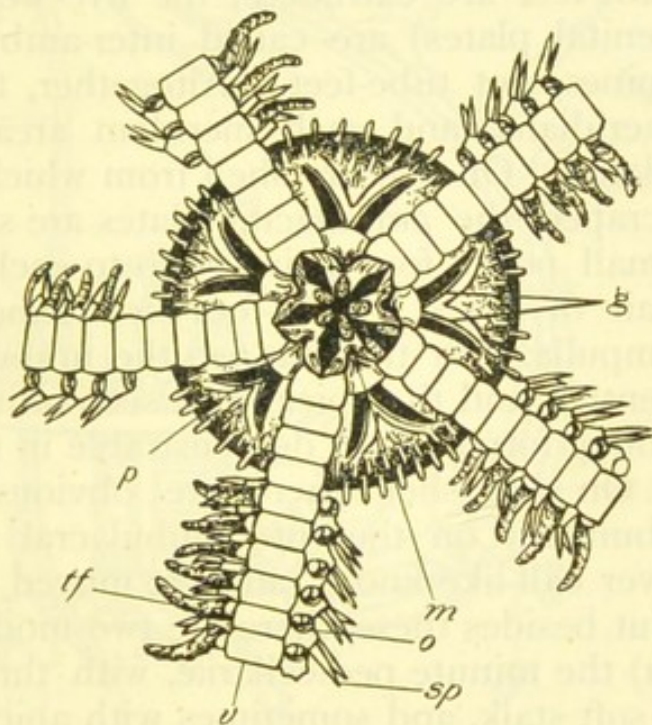


FIG. 101.—Ventral surface of disc of an Ophiuroid (*Ophiothrix fragilis*). — After Gegenbaur.

*g.*, Openings of genital pockets or bursæ; *m.*, mouth; *v.*, ventral plates of arms; *sp.*, spines of arms; *tf.*, tube-feet, at the right side these are represented as retracted; *o.*, the openings through which they are protruded; *p.*, plates around mouth bearing the so-called teeth; one of these plates is perforated, and functions as the madreporite.



formed in the young animal of a central plate surrounded by five "ocular" and five "genital" plates. In the adult the central plate is no longer distinct. The ocular or radial plates bear eye specks; the genital or basal plates bear the apertures of the genital ducts, but one of the five is modified as the madreporic plate. From pole to pole run ten meridians of calcareous plates, which fit one another firmly; five of these (in a line with the ocular plates) are known as ambulacral areas, for through their plates the locomotor tube-feet are extruded; the five others (in a line with the genital plates) are called inter-ambulacral areas, and bear spines, not tube-feet. Altogether, therefore, there are ten meridians, and each meridian area has a double row of plates. On the dry shell from which the spines have been scraped, the ambulacral plates are seen to be perforated by small pores, four pairs or so to each plate. Through each pair of pores a tube-foot is connected with an internal ampulla. In the star-fish the ambulacral areas are wholly ventral, and the apical area seen on the dorsal surface of the young forms is not demonstrable in the adult.

On the shell there are obviously many spines, most abundant on the inter-ambulacral areas. Their bases fit over ball-like knobs, and are moved upon these by muscles. But besides these, there are two modified forms of spines,—(a) the minute pedicellariæ, with three snapping blades on a soft stalk, and sometimes with apical glands; and (b) small globular sphæridia, which show some structural resemblances to otocysts. It is said that, like true otocysts, they are concerned with the perception of direction of motion.

In front of the mouth project the tips of five teeth, which move against one another, grasping and grinding small particles. They are fixed in five large sockets, and along with fifteen other pieces form "Aristotle's lantern," a complex masticating apparatus, of whose history we know little. It surrounds the pharynx, and is swayed about and otherwise moved by muscles, many of which are attached to five beams which project inward from the margin of the shell round about the mouth (Fig. 102).

As in other Echinoderms, the skeleton of lime is mesodermic. The shell is covered externally by a delicate ciliated ectoderm, beneath which, in a thin layer of con-



nective tissue, there is a network of nerve fibres, and some ganglion cells. Internally, there is another thin layer of connective tissue, and a ciliated epithelium lining the body cavity. The skeleton grows by the formation of new plates around the apical disc, and also by the individual increase of each. In a few forms the shell retains some plasticity.

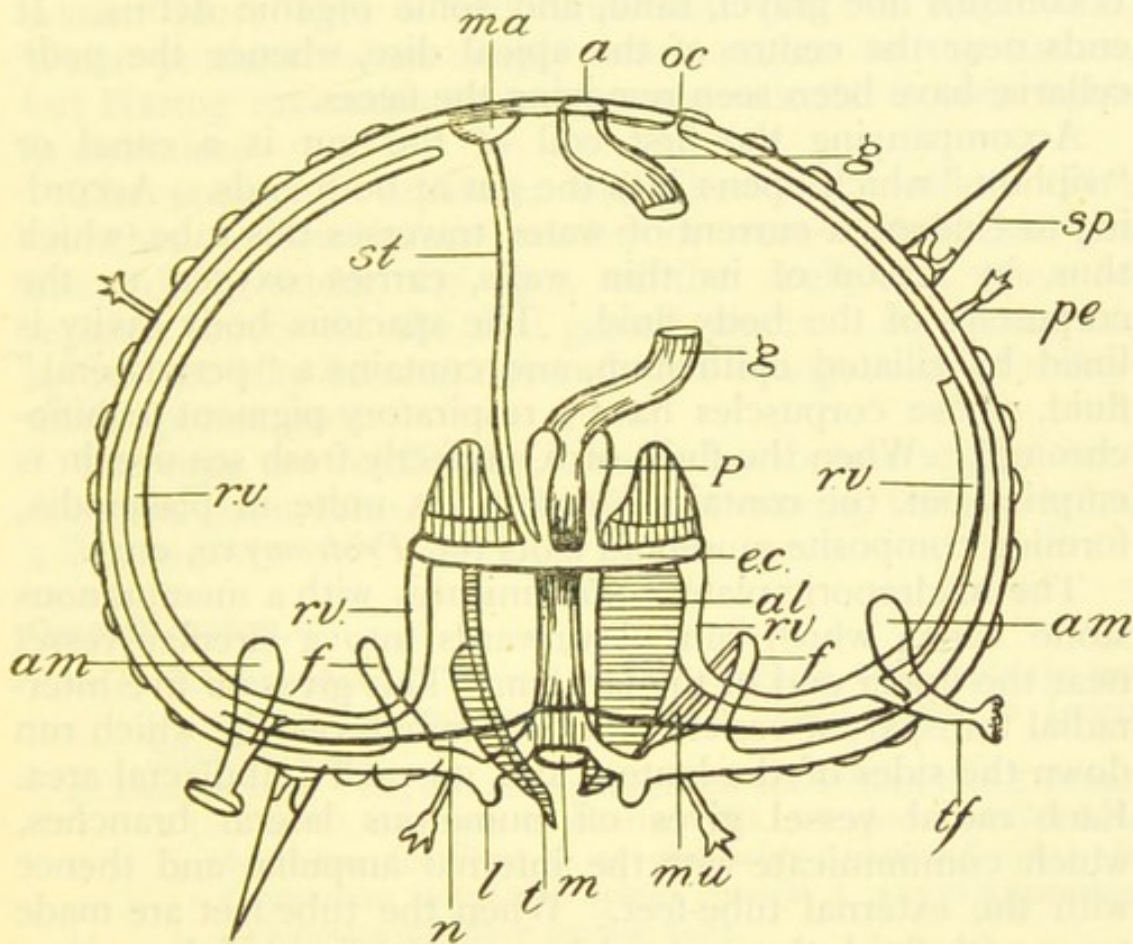


FIG. 102.—Diagram of sea-urchin (*Echinus*).—After Huxley, slightly modified.

*m.*, Mouth; *g.*, gut cut through, and with coils omitted; *a.*, anus; *ma.*, madreporite; *st.*, stone canal; *e.c.*, circular canal; *P.*, one of the Polian vesicles; *r.v.*, radial vessel; *am.*, ampulla of tube-foot; *tf.*, tube-foot ending in sucker; *n.*, radial nerve given off from nerve-ring; *al.*, alveolus, one of the parts of Aristotle's lantern, at the left the alveolus is removed to show one of the strong teeth (*t.*); *f.*, falces, to which the retractor muscles (*mu.*) of the lantern are attached; *sp.*, spines on surface of test; *pe.*, pedicellaria; *l.*, fleshy lobes or lips; *oc.*, one of ocular plates.

The nervous system consists of a ring around the mouth, of radial branches running up each ambulacral area, and of the superficial network. Tube-feet, sphæridia, pedicellariæ, and spines are all under nervous control, and each radial



nerve ends in the "eye specks" of the apical "ocular plates." It is probable that all the tube-feet are sensory, and this is certainly the main function of ten which lie near the mouth.

The alimentary canal passes through Aristotle's lantern, and the intestinal portion lies in two and a half coils around the inside of the shell, to which it is moored by mesenteries. It contains fine gravel, sand, and some organic débris. It ends near the centre of the apical disc, whence the pedicellariæ have been seen removing the fæces.

Accompanying the first coil of the gut is a canal or "siphon," which opens into the gut at both ends. According to Cuénot, a current of water traverses this tube, which thus, by reason of its thin walls, carries oxygen to the corpuscles of the body fluid. The spacious body cavity is lined by ciliated epithelium, and contains a "perivisceral" fluid, whose corpuscles have a respiratory pigment (echinochrome). When the fluid of a perfectly fresh sea-urchin is emptied out, the contained corpuscles unite in plasmodia, forming composite amœboid clots (cf. *Proteomyxa*, etc.).

The madreporic plate communicates with a membranous stone canal, which runs downwards into a circular vessel near the upper end of the lantern. This gives off five inter-radial transparent vesicles and five radial vessels, which run down the sides of the lantern and up each ambulacral area. Each radial vessel gives off numerous lateral branches, which communicate with the internal ampullæ and thence with the external tube-feet. When the tube-feet are made tense with fluid, they extend beyond the limit of the spines, and are attached to the surface of the rock over which the sea-urchin slowly drags itself. The sucker at the tip of each tube-foot bears small calcareous plates regularly arranged; indeed, there is hardly any part of an Echinoderm in which lime may not be deposited. Before bending upwards from the base of the lantern, each radial vessel gives off a branch to two large tentacle-like tube-feet without attaching discs. The five pairs lie near the mouth, and are sensitive.

The blood vascular system is not readily traced, and there is uncertainty as to many points. It seems to consist of a circular vessel around the gullet, connected both with five radial vessels and with two vessels lying respectively on the dorsal and ventral surfaces of the intestine, and forming a network over it. The fluid cannot be dis-



tinguished from that of the body cavity ; it contains corpuscles, some of which are pigmented.

On the area round about the mouth there are ten hollow outgrowths, which resemble the skin-gills of star-fishes. As already mentioned, the pigmented cells of the body cavity fluid seem able to absorb oxygen. The water vascular system plays here a very important part in respiration. Waste products seem simply to accumulate in the tissues, but Hartog maintains that the water vascular system helps in excretion.

The sexes are separate, and like one another. Five branched yellow-brown ovaries or rose-white testes lie interradially under the apex of the shell, and open by separate ducts on the five genital plates. In spring the apical disc may be seen covered with orange ova or milky-white spermatozoa.

The eggs are fertilised externally by sperms wafted from adjacent sea-urchins, and the free-swimming larva is called a Pluteus.

#### Classification.—

1. Palæoechinoidea. Extinct forms, apparently with a plastic test of overlapping and variable plates. They appear in Lower Silurian rocks.
2. Desmosticha. Regular and symmetrical sea-urchins like *Echinus*. In *Cidaris*, there are no external gills. A species of *Diadema* has been described as covered with compound eyes. In *Cyanosoma urens* the spines contain a poison apparatus. Echinothuridæ have flexible tests.
3. Clypeastroidea. Shield-shaped, and often flat. The food canal ends outside the apical disc on the posterior inter-radius.  
*e.g. Clypeaster.*
4. Petalosticha. Heart-shaped. The mouth is ex-centric, the food canal ends away from the apical disc. There are no masticating organs. On the dorsal surface the ambulacral areas dilate from the apex outwards, and contract again towards the margin in the form of "petals." The anterior area is often different from the other four.  
*e.g. Spatangus.* Some, *e.g. Hemiaster*, carry their young among their spines.

#### Class HOLOTHUROIDEA. Sea-Cucumbers.

The Holothurians do not at first sight suggest the other Echinoderms, for they are like plump worms, and the



calcareous skeleton is not prominent. But closer examination shows the characteristic pentamerous symmetry, and the occurrence of calcareous plates in the skin. These seem to be absent in the unique pelagic *Pelagothuria*.

Holothurians occur in most seas, from slight to very great depths. Their food consists of small animals, and of organic particles from the sand. Some of them catch these in their waving tentacles, which are then plunged into the pharynx. The muscles of a captured Holothurian often over-contract and eject the viscera at the ends or through a side rupture; in this way the animal may sometimes escape, and the viscera can be regrown.

In *Synapta* the rupture of the body takes place very rapidly, and is probably defensive, the anterior portion reforming a complete individual. In some forms of *Cucumaria planici* the body divides by stricture, torsion, or stretching into two or three equivalent parts, each of which may regenerate the whole. In this case the autotomy seems to be reproductive.

The worm-like body is often regular in form, with five equidistant longitudinal bands, along which tube-feet emerge. But three of these "ambulacral areas" may be approximated on a flattened ventral sole, leaving two on the convex dorsal surface, and there are other modifications of form. In many cases the tube-feet are irregularly scattered over the surface.

The walls of the body are tough and muscular, and a skeleton is represented by scales, plates, wheels, and anchors of lime scattered in the skin, and by plates around the gullet and on a few other regions.

The nervous system consists of a circumoral ring in which the five radial nerves running in the ambulacral areas unite, and from which nerves to the tentacles arise. Sense organs are represented by the tentacles, which sometimes have "ear-sacs" at their bases, and by tactile processes on the dorsal surface of some of the creeping forms.

From the terminal or ventral mouth, surrounded by five, ten, or more tentacles, the food canal coils to the opposite pole. There it expands in a cloacal chamber sometimes contractile, and from this are given off in many forms a pair of much branched "respiratory trees," which extend forward in the body cavity. These "trees" are supplied



with fresh water by means of the rhythmic contractions of the cloaca, and are respiratory, hydrostatic, and excretory. The body fluid sometimes contains a red pigment like hæmoglobin. Arising from the base of the left respiratory tree, in some Holothurians there are remarkable "Cuvierian organs," consisting of numerous tubes, in most cases glandular. The Holothurian can eject these tubes through the cloaca, the wall of which is apparently ruptured in the process. The tubes are very viscid, and seem to grow longer in the water; they will adhere to almost everything but the Holothurian itself. Those Holothurians in which the organs are well developed are often called "cotton-spinners," on account of the dense mass of viscid substance which they eject. A little fish, *Fierasfer*, introduces itself—tail first—into the cloaca of several Holothurians, and lives there as an innocent commensal.

The water vascular system shows many peculiarities. In what, by analogy with the other classes, may be described as the primitive condition, there is a ring canal round the mouth communicating with the exterior by a stone canal and a madreporite, with one or more Polian vesicles hanging in the body cavity, and with five radial canals. The radial canals, as in star-fishes and sea-urchins, are connected with internal ampullæ and external tube-feet. The anterior tube-feet are greatly enlarged and modified to form the tentacles which encircle the mouth. It is, however, only rarely that the water vascular system exhibits this primitive condition. In most cases the stone canal loses its original connection with the exterior and opens merely into the body cavity; often it is represented by numerous small canals, hanging freely in the body cavity (Fig. 103, *st.*). Certain of the tube-feet are always modified to form tentacles, and they may, as in *Synapta*, be the only representatives of the tube-feet. In regard to the function and degree of development of these, there is indeed much variation.

The blood vascular system is well developed, but here as elsewhere the vessels are lacunar and without endothelial linings, and tend to form ramifying networks over the surface of the organs. The arrangement of the vessels is in essence the same as in sea-urchins.

The sexes are usually separate. The reproductive organs do not exhibit radial symmetry, and are branched tubes which open within or just outside the circle of tentacles. They and other internal organs of Holothurians are often very brightly coloured. The larva is, in most cases, what is known as an *Auricularia*. Sometimes, however, the larval stage is skipped, as in *Cucumaria crocea*



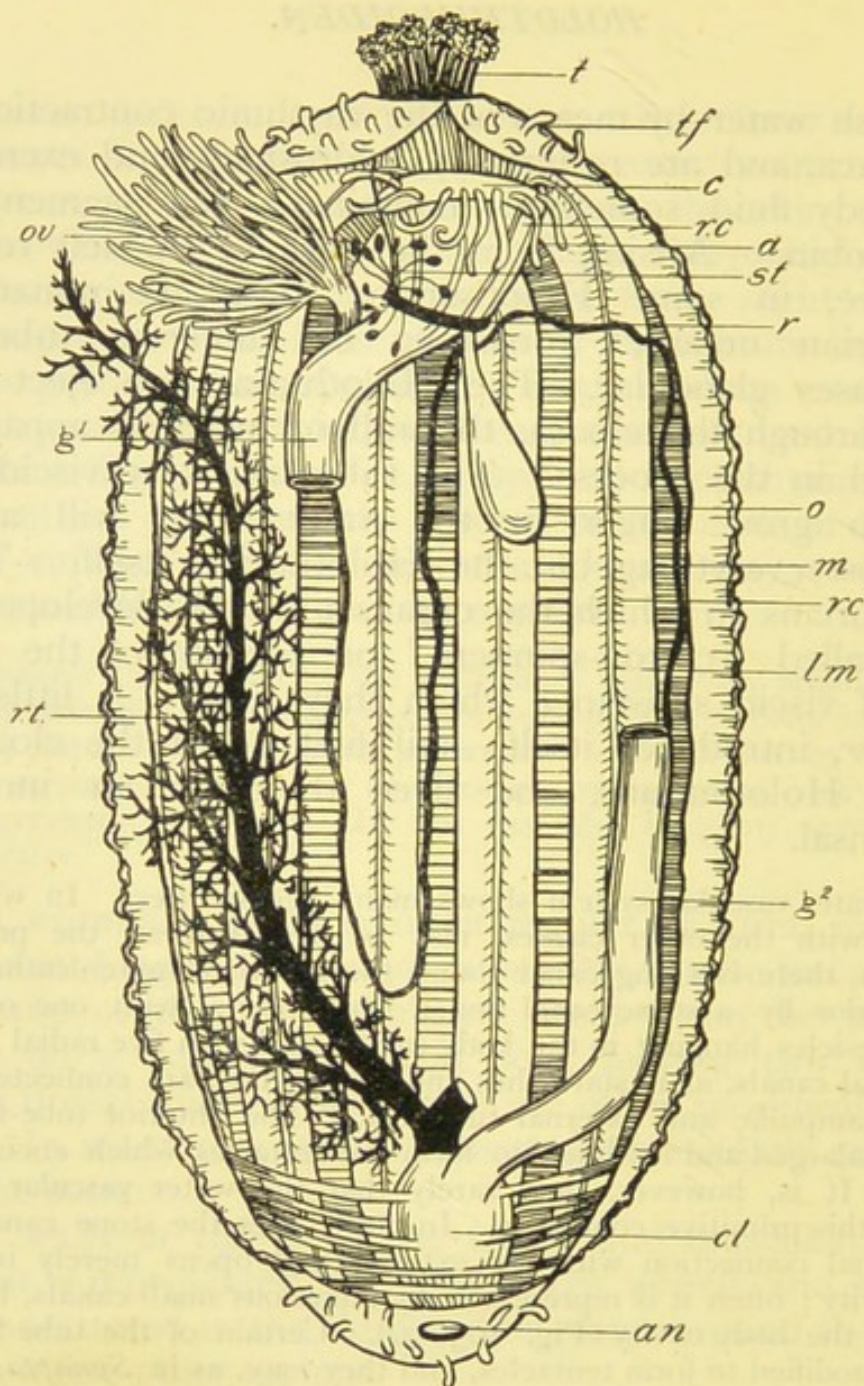


FIG. 103.—Dissection of Holothurian (*Holothuria tubulosa*) from the ventral surface.

*t.*, Tentacles surrounding the mouth; *tf.*, scattered tube-feet of ventral surface; *c.*, calcareous ring surrounding the food canal; *a.*, ampullæ of tentacles (modified tube-feet); *r.*, circular vessel surrounding the gullet, giving off the branched stone canal (*st.*), the single Polian vesicle (*o.*), and the five radial canals (*r.c.*) which run forwards, pass through the calcareous ring, and then curve outwards to run on the surface of the longitudinal muscles (*l.m.*) throughout the body. Of the five longitudinal muscles, one only is marked. *g*<sup>1</sup>., The gut cut through at the beginning of the first loop; *m.*, the mesentery which attaches the gut to the body-wall, showing the course of the gut; *g*<sup>2</sup>., the other end of the gut; *cl.*, the cloaca bound down by muscles; *an.*, the anus; *r.t.*, the right respiratory tree, the left is cut short close to its origin; *ov.*, the ovary. The blood vessels are not shown.



and *Psolus ephippiger*, where the eggs and young are attached to the back of the mother. In *Cucumaria lævigata* there is an invaginated brood-pouch; in *Synapta vivipara* and others the body cavity serves as a brood-pouch.

The calcareous plates of Holothurians are found as far back as Carboniferous strata.

As "trepang" or "bêche-de-mer," the Holothurians of the Pacific form an important article of commerce, being regarded as a delicacy by the Chinese.

#### Classification.—

1. Elaspoda: primitive deep-sea forms, bilaterally symmetrical, with tube-feet on the ventral surface only, and with papillæ on the back. The stone canal often opens externally by a pore. There are no respiratory trees or Cuvierian organs.

*e.g. Kolga, Elpidia.*

2. Pedata: with well-developed tube-feet and papillæ, usually with respiratory trees and Cuvierian organs.

*e.g. Holothuria, Cucumaria, Psolus. Pelagothuria*, a very remarkable form, is pelagic and free-swimming, and wholly without lime.

3. Apoda: without radial canals, tube-feet, or respiratory trees.

*e.g. Synapta*, a remarkable animal, especially apt to break in pieces; tentacles pinnate; hermaphrodite; with beautiful calcareous anchors and plates in the skin.

Semper has described a strange animal, *Rhopalodina lageniformis*, from the Congo coast. It is like a globular flask, with mouth and anus close together at the narrow end, with ten ambulacral areas.

#### Class CRINOIDEA. Feather-Stars.

The feather-stars or sea-lilies differ from other Echinoderms in being fixed permanently or temporarily by a jointed stalk. The modern Comatulids, *e.g.* the rosy feather-star (*Comatula* or *Antedon rosacea*) leave their stalk at a certain stage in life; but the other Crinoids, *e.g. Pentacrinus*, are permanently stalked, like almost all the extinct stone-lilies or encrinites, once so abundant. Most of them live in deep water, and many in the great abysses. An anchorage is found on rocks and stones, or in the soft mud, and great numbers grow together—a bed of sea-lilies. The free Comatulids swim gracefully by bending and straightening their arms, and they have grappling "cirri" on the aboral side, where the relinquished stalk was attached. By these cirri they moor themselves temporarily. Small organisms—



Diatoms, Protozoa, minute Crustaceans—are wafted down ciliated grooves on the arms to the central mouth, which is of course on the upturned surface. Some members of the class, e.g. *Comatula*, are infested by minute parasitic “worms” (Myzostomata) allied to Chætopods, which form galls on the arms. A lost arm can be replaced, and even the visceral mass may be regenerated completely within a

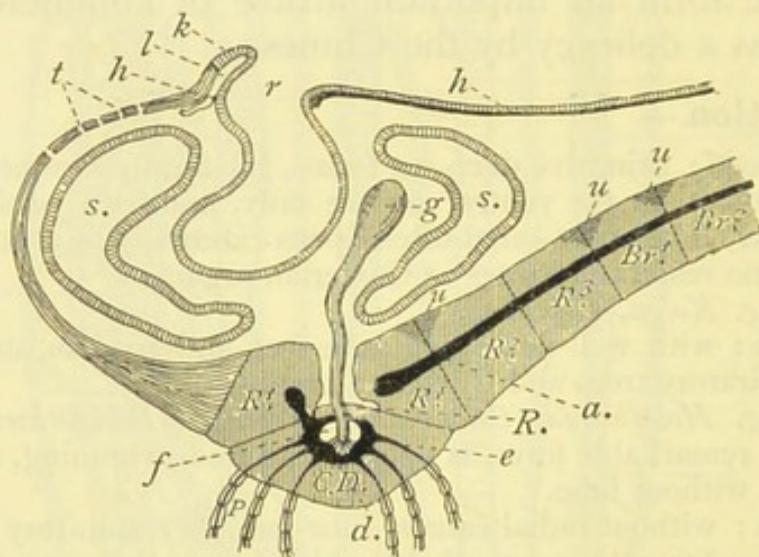


FIG. 104.—Diagrammatic vertical section through disc and base of one of the arms of *Antedon rosacea*.—After Milnes Marshall.

The section is interradiar on the left, radial on the right. *t*, Ciliated openings in body-wall; *h*, subepithelial ambulacral nerve; *l*, water vascular canal; *k*, tentacle; *r*, mouth; *s*, intestine; *g*, central plexus, with “chambered organ” at its base; *f*, coelom; *R*<sup>1</sup>–*R*<sup>3</sup>, radial plates; *Br*, brachial plates; *u*, muscle; *a*, axial nerve-cord; *d*, central capsule; *C.D.*, centro-dorsal plate; *p*, cirri; *e*, nerve branches from central capsule to cirri.

few weeks after it has been lost. It has been suggested that the occasional expulsion of the visceral sac frees the Crinoid from parasites (Dendy).

The animal consists of (1) a cup or calyx, (2) an oral disc forming the lid of this cup, (3) the radiating “arms,” and (4) the stalk supporting the whole.

The oral disc, turned upwards, is supported by plates. Here the anus also is situated. The arms usually branch in dichotomous fashion, and thus ten, twenty, or more may arise from the original five. But the growing point continues to fork dichotomously, like the leaf of many ferns, and as each alternate fork remains short, a double series of lateral “pinnules” results. The arms are supported by calcareous plates. The stalk usually consists of numerous joints, especially in extinct forms, in some of which it measured over fifty feet in length. Except in *Holopus*, and in the stalked stage of *Antedon*, the stalk bears lateral cirri.



Apart from the superficial epithelium, there are no sensory structures. The ciliated food canal descends from the mouth into the cup, and curves up again to the anus, which is usually ex-centric in position. The last part of the gut is expanded to form an anal tube, which during life is in constant movement, and has apparently a respiratory function. From the cup, where the body cavity is in great part filled with connective tissue and organs, four coelomic canals extend into each of the arms. They communicate at the apices of the arms and pinnules, and currents pass up one and down the other.

The blood vascular system consists of a circumoral ring, which is connected with a radial vessel under each ambulacral nerve, and with a circumoesophageal plexus.

The water vascular system consists as usual of a circumoral ring and radial vessels, but in several respects it shows remarkable modification. The madreporite of other forms is represented by fine pores which open from the surface of the calyx directly into the body cavity, and which may be very numerous; there are said to be 1500 in *Antedon rosacea*. By these pores water enters the body cavity, and from it enters the numerous stone canals which hang from the ring freely in the body cavity, and open into it near the pore canals. There are no Polian vesicles or ampullæ, the tube-feet are small, are arranged in groups of three, and are connected by delicate canals with the radial vessels. Certain of them form tentacles around the mouth, and these are supplied by canals coming off directly from the ring canal.

The sexes are separate, and a process suggestive of sexual union has been observed in *Antedon*. The reproductive organs extend as tubular strands from the disc along the arms, but are rarely functional except in the pinnules, from each of which the elements burst out by one duct in females, by one or two fine canals in males.

There are about 400 living species in twelve genera, but about 1500 species in 200 genera are known from the rocks. The class is obviously decadent. It is represented in the Cambrian, and attained its maximum development in Silurian, Devonian, and Carboniferous times.

The oval ciliated larva of *Antedon*, the only one known, is less quaint than that of other Echinoderms.

The classification is a matter of considerable difficulty, but the old division into Palæocrinoidea and Neocrinoidea must apparently be abandoned. The recent forms include the stalked *Pentacrinus*, *Rhizocrinus*, etc., and the free Comatulids, which pass through a stalked *Pentacrinus* stage, e.g. *Antedon*.

*Holopus* is a remarkable deep sea form, with direct ancestors in the Upper Silurian. *Marsupites* is an extinct Crinoid which had no stalk.

### Class BLASTOIDEA. Wholly extinct.

The Blastoids are first found in the Upper Silurian, later than Cystoids and Crinoids; they had their golden age in the Carboniferous and Devonian times, but then disappeared. Their body was ovate, with five ambulacral areas, with each groove of which jointed pinnules were associated.



## Class CYSTOIDEA. Wholly extinct.

The Cystoids are first found in the Lower Silurian rocks, had their golden age in Upper Silurian times, and died out in the Carboniferous period. Their body was ovate or globular, sessile or shortly stalked, covered with polygonal plates often irregularly arranged. Some (according to Bell, the more primitive) types were "never fixed, and had not fixed ancestors." They seem usually to have borne two to five feeble, unbranched arms.

## DEVELOPMENT OF ECHINODERMS.

The ovum undergoes total segmentation, and a hollow ball of cells or blastosphere results. Apart from two alleged cases of delamination, the gastrula is always formed by the invagination of this blastosphere. Ectoderm and endoderm, or epiblast and hypoblast, are thus established.

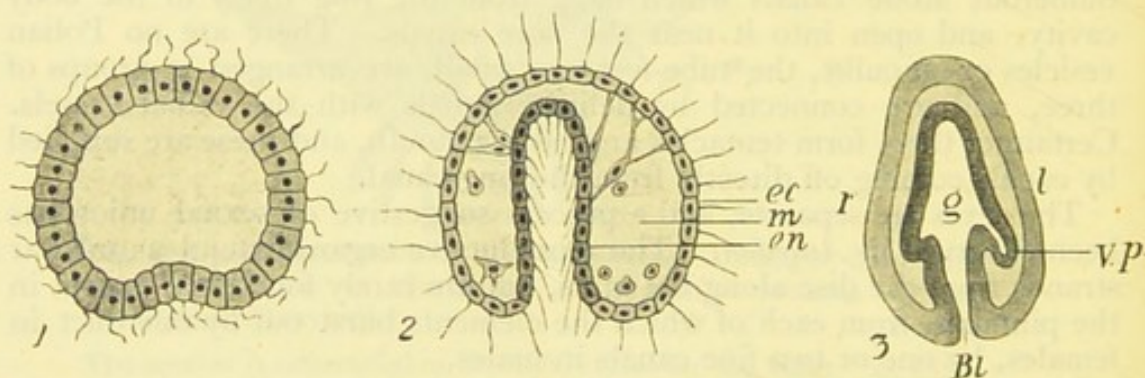


FIG. 105.—Stages in development of Echinoderms.—After Selenka.

1. Section of blastula of *Synapta digitata* (Holothuroid), with a hint of gastrulation.
2. Section of Gastrula of *Toxopneustes brevispinosus* (sea-urchin); *ec.*, ectoderm; *en.*, endoderm; *m.*, segmentation cavity with mesenchyme cells in it.
3. Section of larva of *Asterina gibbosa* (starfish); *Bl.*, blastopore; *g.*, archenteron; *v.p.*, vaso-peritoneal vesicle; *r.* and *l.*, right and left sides.

The mesoblast has a twofold origin: (*a*) from "mesenchyme" cells, which immigrate from the invaginated hypoblast into the segmentation cavity; (*b*) by the outgrowing of one or more coelom pouches from the gastrula cavity or archenteron. It is thus that the body cavity and the rudiments of the water vascular system arise.

According to Hertwig's fundamental thesis, this double origin is a primitive condition, and the mesenchyme here, as always, is non-epithelial, and gives rise to the connective tissues and to the vascular system. On the other hand, it has been asserted that in Echinoderms the mesenchyme is



not purely a "packing tissue," but may acquire a distinctly epithelial character. Many of the early mesenchyme cells are calciferous, combining to form the larval skeleton.

The larva is, first of all, a slightly modified, diffusely ciliated gastrula. In Holothuroids, Echinoids, Asteroids, and Ophiuroids, it becomes quaintly modified by the outgrowth of external processes, and the formation of special ciliated bands. The larva of Crinoids (*i.e.* of *Antedon* only) is not so divergent. In all cases the bilateral symmetry is preserved.

The larva does not grow directly into the adult. On the contrary, the adult arises, for the most part, from new growth within the larva. The structures peculiar to the larva are absorbed or in part thrown off. Only in a very few cases is the development direct.

The details of the development are so difficult that we can here only give a few notes. There is a close connection between the origin of the body cavity and that of the water vascular system. Both are the results of an outgrowth or of outgrowths from the gastrula cavity or archenteron, into the surrounding space between endoderm and ectoderm. As they have a common origin, the outgrowth or outgrowths which give rise to enterocœl and hydrocœl may be termed vaso-peritoneal.

The celebrated comparative anatomist and physiologist, Johannes Müller, was the first to show that the various types of Echinoderm larvæ might be derived from one fundamental form.

"This fundamental type is an elongated, oval, or pear-shaped larva, which is somewhat flattened on its ventral side. It has arisen from a gastrula whose blastopore has become the anus, while the archenteron is bent towards the ventral surface, where it communicates by the larval mouth with the exterior. Besides these two apertures, the larva has a third, namely, the dorsal pore of the water vascular system. The cilia, with which the larva was at first uniformly covered, partly disappear, and persist only in restricted regions or ciliated bands" (Korschelt and Heider).

*Crinoids*.—The simplest Echinoderm larva is that of *Antedon*, a somewhat modified oval, with five transverse rings of cilia (the most anterior is less distinct), and a posterior terminal tuft.

*Holothuroids*.—The larva of Holothuroids (an *Auricularia*) is much quainter. Its diffuse cilia are succeeded by a wavy longitudinal band, which in the *pupa* stage breaks into transverse rings, usually five in number. The pre-oral region becomes large.

*Asteroids*.—Nearest the *Auricularia* is the larva of starfishes, which has the same enlarged pre-oral region. There are *two* ciliated bands, of which the ad-oral is smaller, the ad-anal much larger. They are extended peripherally by the development of soft arms, and such a larva is known as a *Bipinnaria*. But this may be succeeded by a *Brachiolaria*



stage, in which three warty arms are formed at the anterior dorsal end, independently of the ciliated bands.

*Ophiuroids* and *Echinoids*.—In the *Pluteus* larvæ (Fig. 98) characteristic of these classes the pre-oral region remains small, while the post-anal region becomes large. There is one undulating ciliated band, the course of which is much modified by the growth of six long arms, with temporary calcareous supports. This quaint form is often compared to a six-legged easel.

The development of these larval forms into the adult is very intricate. The adult is a new formation within the larva, retaining the water vascular system and mid-gut, but absorbing or rejecting the provisional larval structures. As certain parts are broken down, others are built up, chiefly through the agency of the wandering amoeboid cells of the mesenchyme. The first steps in the upbuilding of the adult, and especially of its skeleton, are to some extent parallel in the five classes.

One of the most important changes is that from bilateral to radial symmetry. In connection with this, it has been conjectured that the primitive ancestor was bilaterally symmetrical, and that the radiate symmetry was acquired by early sessile or sedentary Echinoderms, such as the Cystoids. As we have already seen, the adults in the different classes tend to acquire an independent and secondary bilateral symmetry.

It is very difficult to compare the Echinoderm larvæ, even in their simplest form, with those of other animals. The nearest type is perhaps the *Tornaria* of *Balanoglossus*, but it again is very unique. One naturally tries to compare the Echinoderm larva with the Trochosphere of Annelids, but the differences are very marked. One of the most marked of these is the absence of the apical sense organ, so characteristic of the Trochosphere. The fact that this is represented in the larva of *Antedon* is regarded by many naturalists as a point of much importance.

#### RELATIONSHIPS OF ECHINODERMA.

The Echinoderms form an exceedingly interesting class. Well-defined as they are, the Holothurians especially show how many of the significant characters may be lost. In that group we see how the power of forming a calcareous skeleton, the characteristic tube-feet, and the greater part of the peculiar water vascular system, may all disappear; it is conceivable that further modification of the same kind might eliminate all the distinctively Echinoderm characters, and produce an organism whose systematic position would be very difficult to determine. This is important, because, as we have already seen, there are many "worm-like" types of whose affinities we know nothing. That some of these are related to Echinoderms has been tentatively suggested by many observers, and there is every reason to believe that the progress of research will remove the Echinoderms from their present isolated position.

Concerning the exact relationships of the different classes of Echinoderma, there is still considerable doubt. The following account is based upon the views set forth by Professor Jeffrey Bell; but the student will do well to realise that in this, as in most problems of phylogeny, there is little certainty :—



SOME COMPARATIVE DATA	HOLOTHUROIDEA.	ECHINOIDEA.	ASTEROIDEA.	OPHIUROIDEA.	CRINOIDEA.
	The body is elongated and worm-like, with a tough muscular skin, in which limy plates are embedded.	The body is globular, heart-shaped, or flattened. Limy plates form a usually rigid shell, and bear movable spines. Pedicellariae are present.	The body is flattened, pentagonal, or stellate. The arms have a deep ventral ambulacral groove. The skin bears many limy plates, tubercles, etc., and pedicellariae are present.	The body is a flat pentagonal disc, from which five plated arms, without any ambulacral groove, radiate abruptly.	A permanent or temporary jointed stalk bears a complex cup, from which branched arms with lateral pinnules spread outwards.
	They move partly by muscular writhings, partly by means of the tube-feet.	They move by means of the tube-feet, aided a little by the spines.	They move by means of the tube-feet.	They move by wriggling the muscular arms.	<i>Antedon</i> and other free comatulids swim gently, the others sway their arms on the top of stalks.
	There is a circumoral nerve-ring with radial branches. Sometimes there are "ear-sacs."	There is a circumoral nerve-ring, with radial branches. There are "eyes."	There is the usual ambulacral nervous system, and there are eyes at the tip of the arms.	There is the usual ambulacral nervous system; there are no special sense organs.	There is a motor and sensory ambulacral nervous system, and the usual ambulacral system, which is mainly sensory. No special sense organs.
	The mouth, surrounded by tentacles, is at or near one pole; the anus at or near the other.	The mouth is in the middle of the ventral surface; the anus is usually at or near the opposite pole.	The mouth is ventral and central; the anus, when present, dorsal. Extensions of the digestive tract lie in the arms.	The mouth is ventral and central; there is no anus.	Mouth and anus are near one another on the upturned surface.
	The madreporic plate may open into the body cavity, but is usually suppressed; the tube-feet are often restricted, and often mere papillae without terminal discs. Some are always modified to form the circle of tentacles which surround the mouth.	The madreporic opening is on one of the five genital plates in the apical disc. The tube-feet end in discs.	The madreporic plate is dorsal and interradial. The tube-feet end in discs.	The madreporic plate is ventral, usually on one of the oral plates. The tube-feet are pointed, lateral, and small.	The water vascular system communicates by several canals with the body cavity, into which water enters by numerous pores. The tube-feet are respiratory tentacles, and assist in food catching.
	The reproductive organs are branched tubes in the body cavity; they open near the base of the wreath of tentacles, and do not exhibit a five-rayed arrangement.	The reproductive organs lie under the apical region, and open on apical plates.	The reproductive organs lie in the arms, and open interradially.	The reproductive organs lie in the body, and open interradially at the bases of the arms.	The functional parts of the reproductive organs are restricted to the pinnules, and open there.
	Larva—an <i>Auricularia</i> .	Larva—a <i>Pluteus</i> .	Larva—a <i>Bipinnaria</i> or a <i>Brachiolaria</i> .	Larva—a <i>Pluteus</i> .	The larva of <i>Antedon</i> is barrel-shaped, with five transverse ciliated rings and a posterior tuft.



The Holothurians have no ab-oral system of plates, and the radial symmetry does not affect the reproductive organs. These two negative characters, combined with some positive ones, may indicate that the Holothurians are primitive, and, as is certainly suggested by their external appearance, have affinities with the supposed "worm-like" ancestors of Echinoderms.

Again, some members of the heterogeneous class of Cystoids are extremely primitive, but differ from the Holothurians in the possession of an ab-oral system of plates, alternately radial and inter-radial. From this primitive Cystoidean stock, two branches diverge. The one leads to the sessile Cystoids, Blastoids, and Crinoids (Pelmatozoa); the other to the free Echinoidea, Asteroidea, and Ophiuroidea. Of these, the existing Asteroidea and Ophiuroidea are late divergences from a common stock.



## CHAPTER XIII.

### CRUSTACEA (FIRST CLASS OF THE ARTHROPOD SERIES).

MORE than half the known species of animals are included in the Arthropod series, for of insects alone there are said to be more species than of all other animals taken together.

The Arthropods are in some ways like Annelids,—in the bilateral symmetry; in the division of the body into successive segments, some or all of which bear appendages; in the plan of the nervous system; and so on. Furthermore, *Peripatus*, which has air-tubes or tracheæ somewhat similar to those of Myriopods and Insects, has nephridia like those of some Annelids; and the biramose appendages of a simple Crustacean like *Apus* may be compared with the parapodia of an Annelid. But we cannot, as yet, do more than recognise certain possibilities of pedigree.

It is also difficult to discern the relationships of the various classes included in the Arthropod series. Crustaceans, most of which are aquatic and breathe by gills, are often opposed to the others (Prototracheata, Myriopoda, Insecta, and Arachnoidea), most of which are terrestrial or ærial, and breathe by tracheæ, or possible modifications of these. But besides the classes named there are three divergent types:—the King-crab (*Limulus*), and the extinct Eurypterids and Trilobites. These have been much bandied about from Crustaceans to Arachnoids, and it seems convenient to keep them in a separate class as Palæostraca.

*General Characteristics of Arthropods* (to which primitive, parasitic, and degenerate forms present exceptions).

*The body is bilaterally symmetrical, and consists of numerous segments variously grouped. Several or all of the segments*



bear paired jointed appendages not uniform in structure. The cuticle is chitinous. Ciliated epithelium is almost always absent. The dorsal brain is connected by a ring round the gullet with a double chain of ventral ganglia. Above the food canal lies the heart. The true or primitive cœlom is always small in the adult; the apparent body cavity is of secondary origin, and has in a great part a blood carrying or vascular function. The sexes are almost always separate, the reproductive organs and ducts are usually paired. There is often some metamorphosis in the course of development. In habit the Arthropods are predominantly active.

### Class CRUSTACEA.

*General Characteristics of Crustaceans* (to which primitive, parasitic, and degenerate forms offer exceptions).

*With the exception of the land-crabs, wood-lice, and sand-hoppers, the Crustaceans live in water and breathe by gills or through the skin. The head carries two pairs of antennæ in addition to other appendages; the thorax or median part of the body, sometimes distinct from, and sometimes fused to the head, also bears limbs; the posterior region or abdomen is usually segmented, and often furnished with appendages. The typical appendage consists of two branches and a basal portion, to which gills may be attached. To the chitin of the cuticle, carbonate of lime is added.*

### A Type of CRUSTACEA. The fresh-water Crayfish (*Astacus fluviatilis*).

(Most of the following description will apply also to the Lobsters *Homarus* and *Palinurus*, and to the Norway Lobster (*Nephrops Norvegicus*), often called a crayfish).

**Mode of life.**—The fresh-water crayfish lives in streams, and burrows in the banks. It is not found in Scotland, but occurs here and there in England and Ireland, and is common on the Continent. It is absent from districts where the water contains little lime. The food is very varied—from roots to water-rats; cannibalism also occurs. The animals swim backwards by powerful tail strokes, or creep forwards on their “walking legs.” Their life is tolerably



secure, but the frequent moultings during adolescence are expensive and hazardous. When hatched the young are like miniature adults; for a time they cling beneath the tail of the mother.

**External appearance.**—The head and thorax are covered by a continuous (cephalothoracic) shield; the abdomen shows obviously distinct segments movable upon one another. As indicated by the appendages, there are three groups of segments or metameres—five in the head, eight in the thorax, six in the abdomen, as well as an unpaired piece or telson on which the food canal ends. Each of the nineteen segments bears a pair of appendages. Among other external characters may be noticed the stalked movable eyes, the two pairs of feelers, the mouth with six pairs of appendages crowded round it, and the gills under the side flaps of the thorax.

- |                             |   |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| The BODY-WALL consists of — | { | <p>(1) The external shell or cuticle, composed of various strata of chitin, coloured with pigments, hardened with lime salts;</p> <p>(2) The ectoderm, epidermis, or hypodermis, which makes and remakes the cuticle;</p> <p>(3) An internal connective tissue layer or dermis, with pigment, blood vessels, and nerves. Internal to this lie the muscles.</p> |
|-----------------------------|---|--|

Between the rings and at the joints the cuticle contains no lime, and is therefore pliable. As a sacrificed product of epidermic cells, it is dead and cannot expand. Hence, as long as the animal continues to grow, periodic moulting is necessary. The old husk becomes thinner, a new one is formed beneath it, a split occurs across the back just behind the shield, the animal withdraws its cephalothorax and then its abdomen, and an empty but complete shell is left behind. The moulting is preceded by an accumulation of glycogen in the tissues, and this is probably utilised in the rapid growth which intervenes between the casting of the old and the hardening of the new shell.

How thorough the ecdysis or cuticle-casting is, may be appreciated from the fact that the covering of the eyes, the hairs of the ears, the lining of the fore-gut and hind-gut, the gastric mill, and the tendinous inward prolongations of the cuticle to which some of the muscles are attached, are all got rid of and renewed. The moults occur in the warm months, eight times in the first year, five times in the second,



thrice in the third, after which the male moults twice, the female once a year, till the uncertain limit of growth is reached. It is not clearly known in what form the animals procure the carbonate of lime which is deposited in the chitinous cuticle, but Irvine's experiments have shown that a carbonate of lime shell could be formed by crabs even when the slight quantity of carbonate of lime in sea water was replaced by the chloride. Moulting is an expensive and exhausting process, and great mortality is associated with the process itself or with the defenceless state which follows. The process is a disadvantage attendant on the advantage of armature. Inequalities in the legs are usually due to losses sustained in combat, but these are gradually repaired by new growth.

The surface of the body bears hairs or bristles of various kinds. These have their roots in the epidermis, and are made anew at each moult. There are simple glands beneath the gill-flaps, and on the abdomen of the female there are cement glands, the viscid secretion of which serves to attach the eggs.

**Appendages.**—The limbs of a Crustacean usually exhibit considerable diversity; in different regions of the body they are adapted for different work; yet all have the same typical structure, and begin to develop in the same way. In other words, they are serially *homologous organs*, illustrating division of labour. Typically each consists of a basal piece or *protopodite*, and two jointed branches rising from this—an internal *endopodite* and an external *exopodite*; but in many the outer branch disappears.

The protopodite has usually two joints—a basal or proximal coxopodite, and a distal basipodite; the five joints which the endopodite frequently exhibits are named from below upwards—ischio-, mero-, carpo-, pro-, dactylo-podites—details of some use in the comparison and identification of species.

The stalked eyes are not included in the above list, since their development is not like that of the other appendages; but cases where an excised eye has been replaced by an antenniform structure, suggest that the *eye-stalk* may be of the nature of an appendage. Though the two pairs of antennæ lie far in front of the mouth, it is possible that they were originally post-oral. With many of the thoracic appendages, gills, plate-like epipodites, and setæ are associated.

It is interesting to connect the structure of the appendages with their functions. Thus it may be seen that the great paddles are fully spread when the crayfish drives itself backwards with a stroke of its tail, while in straightening again the paddles are drawn inwards, and the outer joint of the exopodite bends in such a way that the friction is reduced.

It is likely that some of the crowded mouth parts, *e.g.* the first maxillæ, are almost functionless. The hard toothed knob which forms



THE APPENDAGES OF THE CRAYFISH.

	No.	NAME.	FUNCTION.	STRUCTURE.
Head (5).	1	Antennules (pre-oral?).	Tactile, olfactory, with ear - sac at base.	Two branches, but probably not homologous with endopodite and exopodite.
	2	Antennæ (pre-oral?).	Tactile, opening of kidney at base.	Small exopodite.
	3	Mandibles.	Masticatory.	Four joints, of which three form the palp (endopodite and upper joint of protopodite).
	4	1st Maxillæ.	?	Thin single-jointed protopodite, small endopodite, no exopodite.
	5	2nd Maxillæ.	Produces respiratory current.	Thin protopodite, filamentous endopodite; the "baler" is formed from the epipodite, probably along with the exopodite.
Thorax (8).	6	1st Maxillipedes (foot-jaws).	?	Thin protopodite, small endopodite, large exopodite.
	7	2nd Maxillipedes.	?	Two - jointed protopodite, five - jointed endopodite, long exopodite.
	8	3rd Maxillipedes.	Masticatory.	Two - jointed protopodite, large five-jointed endopodite with strong teeth on its ischiopodite, slender exopodite.
	9	Forceps (chelate).	Fighting, seizing.	No exopodite. In the claw the last joint bites against a prolongation of the second last.
	10	Walking Legs (chelate).	Walking.	"
	11	" "	Genital opening in female.	"
	12	"	"	Without chelæ.
	13	"	Genital opening in male.	"
	14	Modified swimmerets in male; in female, rudimentary.	{ Serve in the male as canals for the seminal fluid.	Protopodite and endopodite form a canal; no exopodite.
Abdomen (6).	15	Modified swimmerets in male, normal in female.	..	All the three parts.
	16	Swimmerets.	{ Move slightly like oars, and carry the eggs in the female.	"
	17	"		"
	18	"		"
	19	Great paddles.	Important in swimming.	"



the greater part of the mandible is obviously well adapted to its crushing work.

In connection with the skeleton, the student should also notice the beak (*rostrum*) projecting between the eyes; the triangular area (*epistoma*) in front of the mouth, and the slight upper and lower lips; and the lateral flaps of the body-wall which protect the gills. Each posterior segment consists of a dorsal arch (*tergum*), side flaps (*pleura*), a ventral bar (*sternum*), while the little piece between the *pleuron* and the socket of the limb is dignified by the name of *epimeron*. The hindmost piece (*telson*), on which the food canal ends ventrally, is regarded by some as a distinct segment. The most difficult fact to understand clearly, is that the cuticle of certain mouth parts (*e.g.* the mandibles), and of the ventral region of the thorax, is folded inwards, forming chitinous "tendons" or insertions for muscles, protecting the ventral nerve-cord and venous blood sinus, and, above all, constituting the complex, apparently, but not really, internal, "endophragmal" skeleton of the thorax.

**Muscular system.**—The muscles are white bundles of fibres, which on minute examination show clearly that transverse striping which is always well marked in rapidly contracting elements. The muscles are inserted on the inner surface of the cuticle, or on its internal foldings (*apodemata*). The most important sets are—(1) the dorsal extensors or straighteners of the tail; (2) the twisted ventral muscles, most of which are flexors or benders of the tail, which have harder work, and are much larger than their opponents; (3) those moving the appendages; (4) the bands which work the gastric mill.

**Nervous system.**—The supra-oesophageal nerve-centres or ganglia, forming the brain, have been shunted far forward by the growth of the pre-oral region. We thus understand how the nerve-ring round the gullet, connecting the brain with the ventral chain of twelve paired ganglia, is so wide.

The dorsal or supra-oesophageal ganglia are three-lobed, and give off nerves to eyes, antennules, antennæ, and food canal, besides the commissures to the sub-oesophageal centres. They act as a true brain.

The sub-oesophageal ganglia, the first and largest of the ventral dozen, innervate the six pairs of appendages about the mouth. There are other five ganglia in the thorax, and six more in the abdomen.

Though the ganglia of each pair are in contact, the ventral chain is double, and at one place, between the fourth and fifth ganglia, an artery (sternal) passes between the two



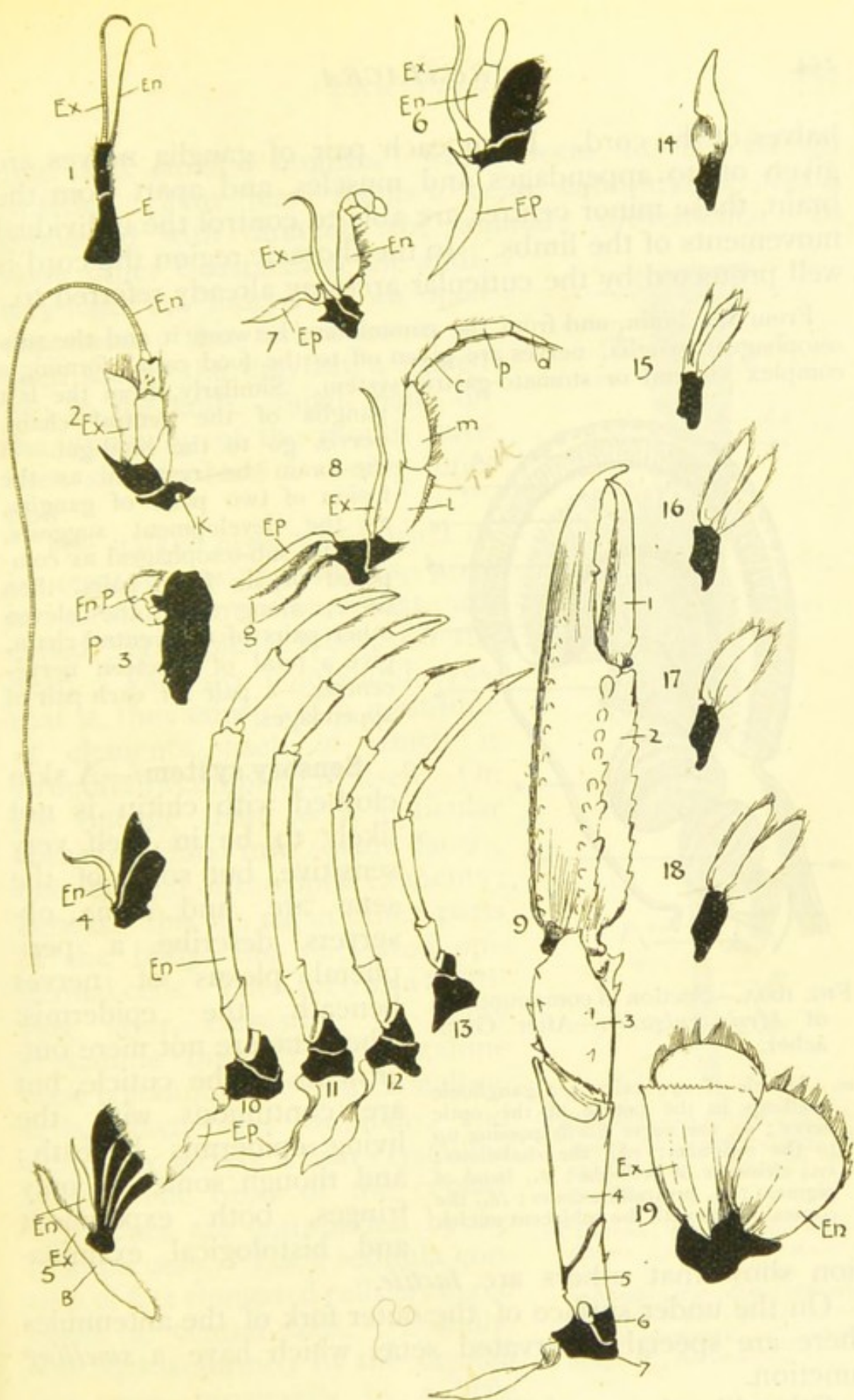


FIG. 106.—Appendages of Norway lobster.

*Ex.*, Exopodite; *En.*, endopodite; protopodite dark throughout; *Ep.*, epipodite.  
 1. Antennule—*E.*, position of ear; 2. antenna, *K.*, opening of kidney; 3. mandible—*P.*, palp; 4. first maxilla; 5. second maxilla—*B.*, baler; 6. first maxillipede; 7. second maxillipede; 8. third maxillipede—the basal joint of the protopodite is called coxopodite, the next basipodite; the five joints of the endopodite are called—ischiopodite (*i.*); meropodite (*m.*); carpopodite (*c.*); propodite (*p.*); dactylopodite (*d.*); 9. forceps—(7) coxopodite; (6) basipodite, the joints of the endopodite are numbered; 10-13. walking legs; 14. modified male appendage; 15-18. small swimmerets; 19. large paddles.



halves of the cord. From each pair of ganglia nerves are given off to appendages and muscles, and apart from the brain, these minor centres are able to control the individual movements of the limbs. In the thoracic region the cord is well protected by the cuticular archway already referred to.

From the brain, and from the commissure between it and the sub-oesophageal ganglia, nerves are given off to the food canal, forming a complex visceral or stomato-gastric system. Similarly, from the last

ganglia of the ventral chain, nerves go to the hind-gut. If the brain be regarded as the fusion of two pairs of ganglia, as the development suggests, and the sub-oesophageal as composed of six fused pairs, then these, along with the eleven other pairs of the ventral chain, give a total of nineteen nerve-centres,—a pair for each pair of appendages.

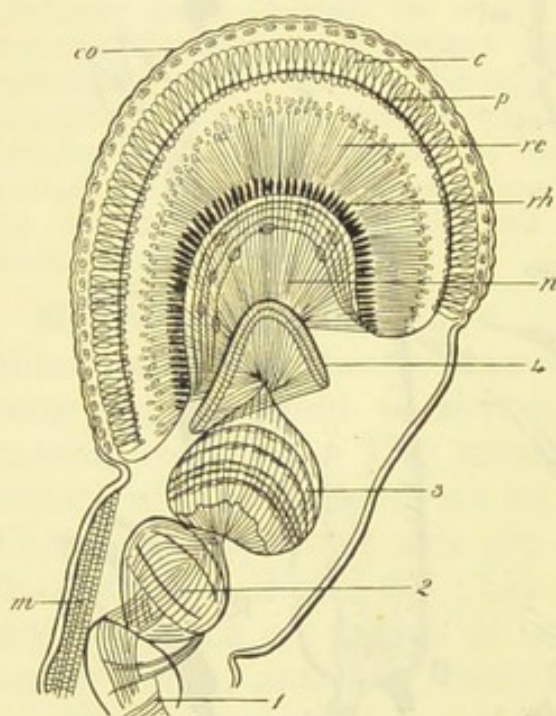


FIG. 106A.—Section of compound eye of *Mysis vulgaris*.—After Grenacher.

*m.*, Muscle of eye-stalk; 1-4 ganglionic swellings in the course of the optic nerve; *n.*, the nerve fibrils passing up to the retinulae; *rh.*, the rhabdome; *re.*, elements of retinulae; *p.*, band of pigment; *c.*, crystalline cones; *co.*, the corneal facets with the subjacent nuclei.

**Sensory system.**—A skin clothed with chitin is not likely to be in itself very sensitive, but some of the setæ are, and some observers describe a peripheral plexus of nerves beneath the epidermis. The setæ are not mere outgrowths of the cuticle, but are continuous with the living epidermis beneath; and though some are only fringes, both experiment and histological examination

show that others are *tactile*.

On the under surface of the outer fork of the antennules there are special innervated setæ, which have a *smelling* function.

Other likewise specialised hairs have sunk into a sac at the base of the antennules, and are spoken of as *auditory*. The sac opens by a bristle-guarded slit on the inner upper corner of the expanded basal joint, and contains a gelatinous



fluid and small "otoliths," which seem to be foreign particles. This "ear" seems to be an equilibrating organ, connected with directing the animal's movements. In some other Crustaceans the auditory hairs are lodged in an open depression; this has become an open sac in the crayfish, a closed bag in the crab. Small hairs on the upper lip of the mouth have been said to have a tasting function.

The stalked eyes, which used to be regarded as appendages, arise in development from what are called "procephalic lobes" on the head. They are compound eyes, that is, they consist of a multitude of elements, each of which is structurally complete in itself. On the outside there is a cuticular cornea, divided into square facets, one for each of the optic elements; beneath this lie, as in other parts of the body, the nucleated epidermal cells. Then follows a focusing layer, consisting of many crystalline cones. Each crystalline cone is composed of four crystalline cells, which taper internally, and externally secrete a firm crystalline body. The bases of the crystalline cones are surrounded by the retinula cells. Each retinula consists of five elongated cells arranged about a central axis. Distally, this axis is formed by the crystalline cone, proximally by a little rod or rhabdome. The rhabdome consists of four little red rods closely apposed together, and connected by a nerve-fibre with the optic ganglion, which lies at the end of the optic nerve. The proximal ends of the retinal cells are

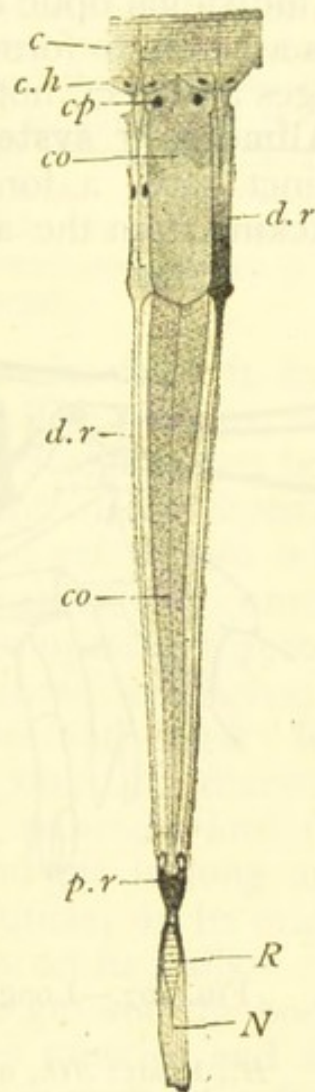


FIG. 106B.—A single eye element or ommatidium of the lobster.—After G. H. Parker.

*c.*, Cornea; *c.h.*, corneal hypodermis; *cp.*, cap of crystalline cone; *co.*, crystalline cone and body; *d.r.*, distal retinula elements; *p.r.*, proximal retinula elements; *R.*, rhabdome; *N.*, nerve-fibre.



deeply pigmented. Thus each element consists of corneal facet, crystalline cone, and retinula, and the retinula consists of internal rhabdome, and external retinula cells. Between the individual optic elements lie some pigment cells. The eyes are able to form images of external objects, and these images are erect, not inverted as in the eyes of Vertebrates.

**Alimentary system.**—The food canal consists of three distinct parts, a fore-gut or stomodæum developed by an intucking from the anterior end of the embryo, a hind-gut

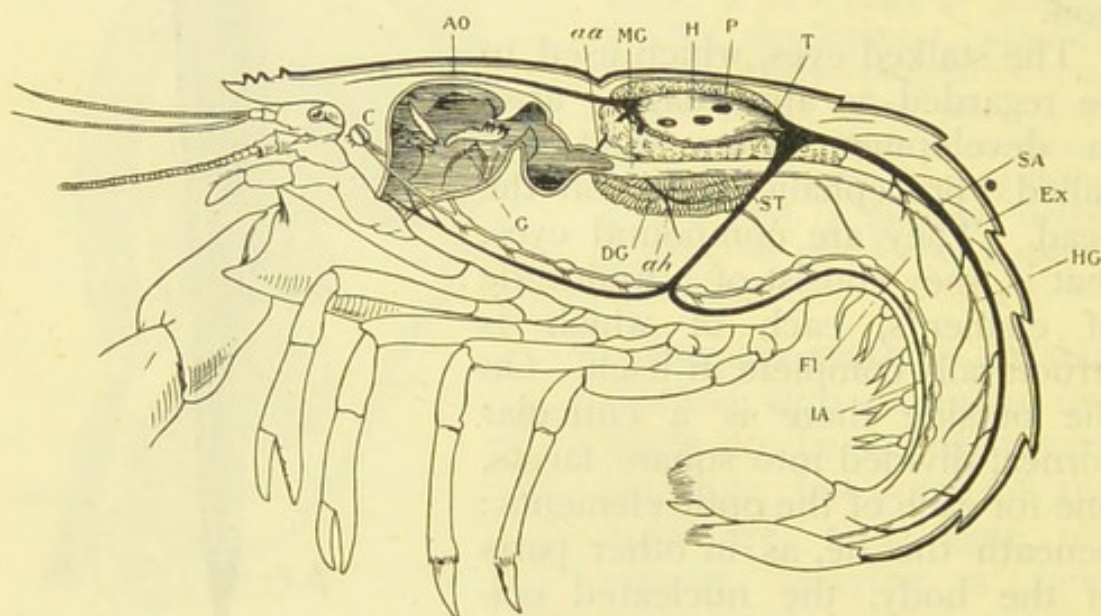


FIG. 107.—Longitudinal section of lobster, showing some of the organs.

*H.*, Heart; *AO.*, ophthalmic artery; *aa.*, antennary artery; *ah.*, hepatic artery; *ST.*, sternal artery; *SA.*, superior abdominal artery; *MG.*, mid-gut; *DG.*, digestive gland; *HG.*, hind-gut; *Ex.*, extensor muscles of the tail; *Fl.*, flexor muscles of the tail; *IA.*, inferior abdominal artery; *G.*, gizzard; *C.*, cerebral ganglia; *P.*, pericardium; *T.*, testes.

or proctodæum similarly invaginated from the posterior end, and a mid-gut or mesenteron, which represents the original cavity of the gastrula.

The mouth has been shunted backwards from the anterior end of the body, so that the antennules and antennæ lie far in front of it. The fore-gut, which is lined by a chitinous cuticle, includes a short "gullet," on the walls of which there are small glands, hypothetically called "salivary," and a capacious gizzard, which is distinctly divided into two regions.



In the anterior (cardiac) region there is a complex mill; in the posterior (pyloric) region there is a sieve of numerous hairs. The mill is very complex; there are supporting "ossicles" on the walls with external muscles attached to them, and internally projecting teeth which clash together and grind the food. Three of the teeth are conspicuous; a median dorsal tooth is brought into contact with two large laterals. On each side of the anterior part of the gizzard there are two limy discs or gastroliths, which are broken up before moulting, and though quite inadequate to supply sufficient carbonate of lime for the new skeleton, seem to have some relation to this process. The occurrence of chitinous cuticle, hairs, teeth, and gastroliths in the gizzard, is intelligible when the origin of the fore-gut is remembered, and so is the dismantled state of this region when moulting occurs.

The mid-gut is very short, but outgrowths from it form the large and complex digestive gland. The mid-gut, here as always, is the digestive and absorptive region, but both processes are carried on to a large extent in the digestive gland, which communicates with the mid-gut by two wide ducts. It is roughly three-lobed at both sides, and consists of an aggregated mass of cæca, closely compacted together. The gland is more than a "liver," more even than a "hepatopancreas." It absorbs peptones and sugar; like the Vertebrate liver, it makes glycogen; its digestive juices are comparable to those of the pancreas and the stomach of higher animals. The hind-gut is long and straight. It is lined by a chitinous cuticle, as its origin suggests. There are a few minute glands on its walls.

**Body cavity.**—The space between the gut and the body-wall is for the most part filled up by the muscles and the organs, but there are interspaces left which contain a fluid with amœboid cells. These interspaces seem to represent enlarged blood sinuses (a hæmocœle), rather than a true body cavity or cœlom. One of the spaces forms the blood-containing pericardium, or chamber in which the heart lies.

**Vascular system.**—Within this non-muscular pericardium, and moored to it by thin muscular strands, lies the six-sided heart, which receives pure blood from the gills (*viâ* the pericardium) and drives it to the body.

The arterial system is well developed. Anteriorly, the heart gives off a median (ophthalmic) artery to the eyes and antennules, a pair of (antennary) arteries to the antennæ, and a pair to the digestive gland (hepatic). Posteriorly there issues a single vessel, which at once divides into a



superior abdominal, running along the dorsal surface, and a sternal which goes vertically through the body. This sternal passes between the connectives joining the fourth and fifth ventral ganglia, and then divides into an anterior and posterior abdominal branch. All these arteries are continued into capillaries.

From the tissues the venous blood is gathered up in channels, which are not sufficiently defined to be called veins. It is collected in a ventral venous sinus, and passes into the gills. Thence purified by exposure on the water-washed surfaces, it returns by six vessels on each side to the pericardium. From this it enters the heart by six large and several smaller apertures, which admit of entrance but not of exit.

The blood contains amœboid cells, and the fluid or plasma includes a respiratory pigment, hæmocyanin (bluish when oxidised, colourless when deoxidised), and a lipochrome pigment, called tetronerythrin. Both of these are common in other Crustaceans.

**Respiratory system.**—Twenty gills—vascular outgrowths of the body-wall—lie on each side of the thorax, sheltered by the flaps of the shield. A current of water from behind forwards is kept up by the activity of the baling portion, or scaphognathite, of the second maxilla. Venous blood enters the gills from the ventral sinus, and purified blood leaves them by the six channels leading to the pericardium.

Observed superficially, the gills look somewhat like feathers with plump barbs, but their structure is much more complex. The most important fact is that they present a large surface to the purifying water, while both the stem and the filaments which spring from it contain an outer canal continuous with the venous sinus, and an inner canal communicating with the channels which lead back to the pericardium and heart.

Three sets of gills are distinguishable. To the basal joints of the six appendages from the second maxillipede to the fourth large limb inclusive, the *podobranchs* are attached. They come off with the appendages when these are pulled carefully away, and each of them bears, in addition to the feathery portion, a simple lamina or *epipodite*. The membranes between the basal joints of the appendages and the body, from the second maxillipede to the fourth large limb inclusive, bear a second set, the *arthrobranchs*, which have no epipodites. In



connection with the second maxillipede there is a single arthrobranch ; in connection with each of the five following appendages there are two ; so that there are eleven arthrobranches altogether. There remain three *pleurobranches*, one on the epimeron of the fifth large limb, and two others quite rudimentary on the two preceding segments. The bases of the podobranchs bear long setæ.

In *Nephrops*, the podobranchs are represented by a small rudiment on the second maxillipede, and by five well-developed gills on the next five appendages ; there are eleven arthrobranches, the most anterior being small ; and there are four large pleurobranches.

**Excretory system.**—A kidney or “green gland” lies behind the base of each antenna, and its opening is marked by a conspicuous knob on the basal joint of that appendage. Each kidney consists of a dorsal sac communicating with the exterior, and of a ventral coiled tube which forms the proper renal organ. The latter is supplied with blood from the antennary and abdominal arteries, and forms as waste products uric acid and greenish guanin. Each kidney may be regarded as homologous with a nephridium.

The crayfish has also, near the gills, small branchial glands which excrete carcinuric acid from the blood, and also help in phagocytosis, that important process in which wandering amœboid cells resist infection and help to repair injuries (cf. possible function of thymus in Fishes).

#### Reproductive organs.—

The male crayfish is distinguished from the female by his slightly slimmer build, and by the peculiar modification of the first two pairs of abdominal appendages. In both sexes the gonads are three-lobed, and communicate with the exterior by paired ducts.

The testes consist of two anterior lobes lying beneath and



FIG. 108.—Male reproductive organs of crayfish.—After Huxley.

*t.*, Testes ; *vd.*, vas deferens ; *vd'*, opening of vas deferens on last walking leg.



in front of the heart, and of a median lobe extending backwards. Each lobe consists of many tubules, within which the spermatozoa develop. From the junction of each of the anterior lobes with the median lobe, a genital duct or vas deferens is given off. This has a long coiled course, is in part glandular, and ends in a short muscular portion opening on the last thoracic limb. The spermatozoa are at first disc-like cells, they give off on all sides long pointed processes like those of a *Heliozoon*, and remain very sluggish. The seminal fluid is milky in appearance, and becomes thicker in its passage through the genital ducts.

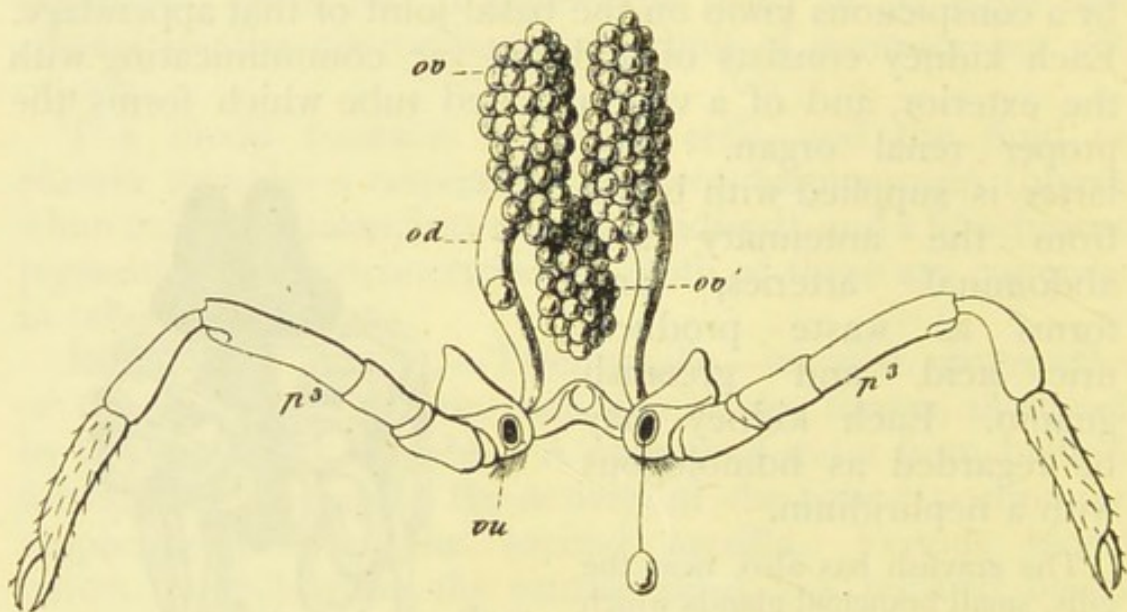


FIG. 109.—Female reproductive organs of crayfish.—  
After Suckow.

ov., Ovaries; ov', fused posterior part; od., oviduct; vu., female aperture on the second walking leg.

It is possible that the genital ducts represent modified nephridia, and that the cavities of the gonads are coelomic.

The ovaries are like the testes, but more compact. The eggs are liberated into the cavity of the organ, and pass out by short thick oviducts opening on the second pair of walking legs. As they are laid they seem to be coated with the secretion of the cement glands of the abdomen, and the mother keeps her tail bent till the eggs are glued to the small swimmerets.

Before this, however, sexual union has occurred. The male seizes the female with his great claws, throws her on



her back, and deposits the seminal fluid on the ventral surface of the abdomen. The fluid flows down the canal formed by his first abdominal appendages, and these seem to be kept clear by the movements of the next pair, which are also modified. On the abdomen of the female the

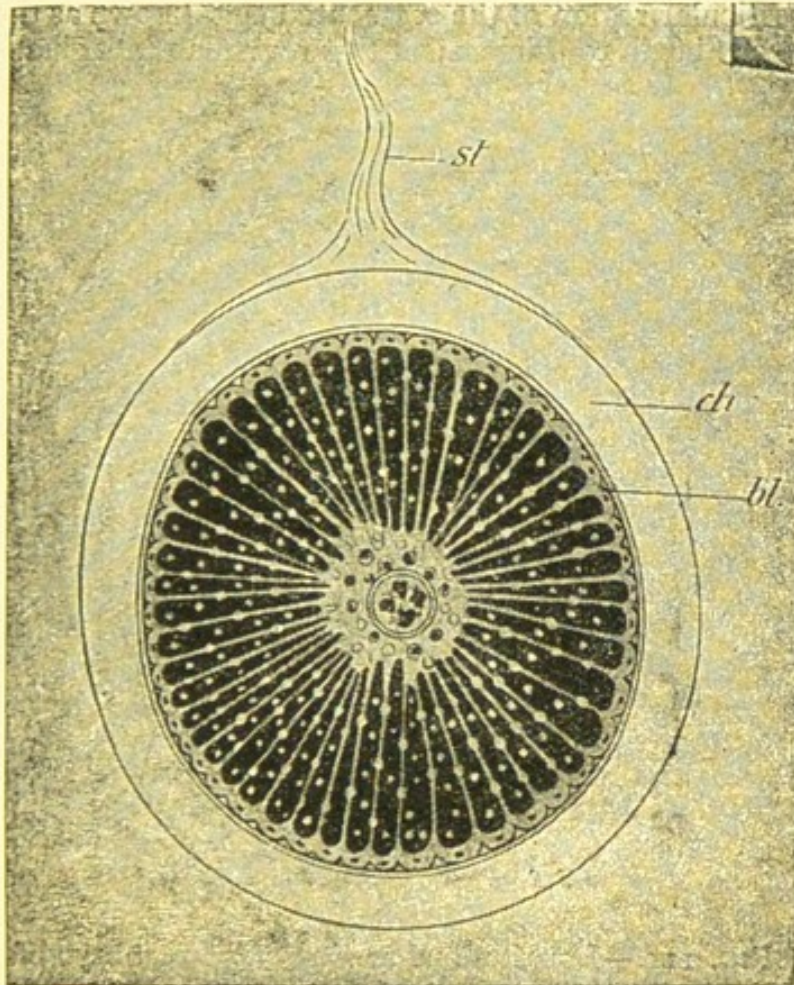


FIG. 110.—Section through the egg of *Astacus* after the completion of segmentation.—After Reichenbach.  
*st.*, Stalk of the egg; *ch.*, chorion envelope; *bl.*, peripheral blastoderm within which are the yolk pyramids (dark).

agglutinated spermatozoa doubtless remain until the eggs are laid, when fertilisation in the strict sense is achieved.

The *Development* has been very fully worked out, and is of interest in being direct, without the metamorphosis so common among the Arthropoda. The spherical ovum is surrounded by a cuticular vitelline membrane, and contains a considerable quantity of yolk. After fertilisation the segmentation nucleus divides in the usual way into two, four, eight, and so on, but this nuclear division is not followed by division of the



plasma. Eventually the nuclei, each surrounded by a small amount of protoplasm, approach the surface of the egg and arrange themselves regularly round it. The peripheral protoplasm then segments round these nuclei, and thus we have a central core of unsegmented yolk enveloped by a peripheral ring of rapidly dividing cells. In the central yolk, free nuclei are frequently found; these are the so-called yolk nuclei. Such a type of segmentation is called peripheral or centrolecithal, and is very characteristic of Arthropod eggs.

Over a particular region of the segmented egg, known as the "ventral plate," the cells begin to thicken; at this region an invagination occurs,

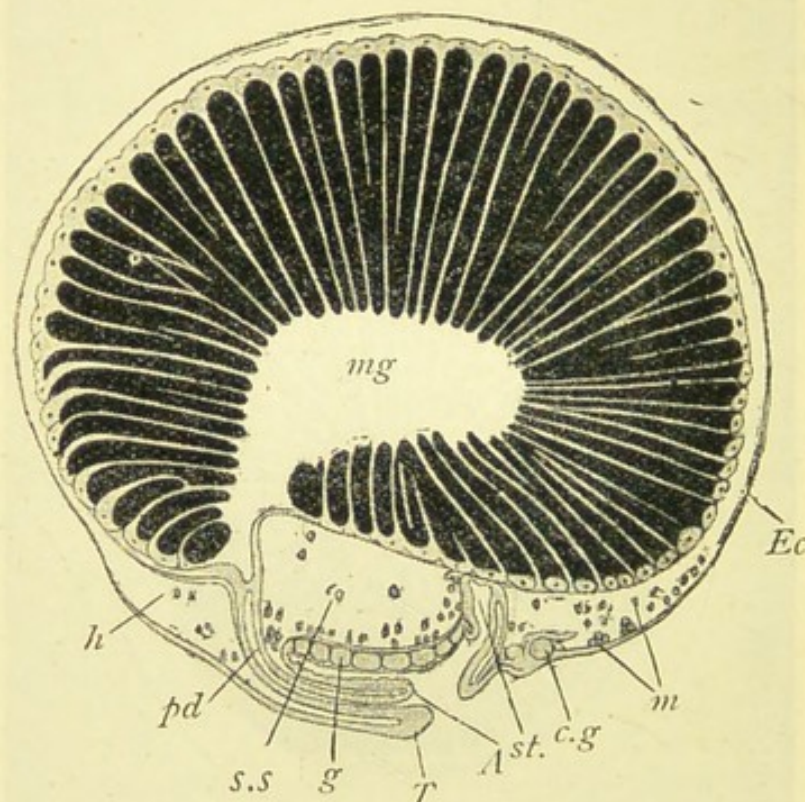


FIG. III.—Longitudinal section of later embryo of *Astacus*.—After Reichenbach.

*Ec.*, Ectoderm; *m.*, mesoderm cells; *c.g.*, cerebral ganglia; *st.*, stomodæum; *A.*, anus; *T.*, telson; *g.*, ventral ganglia; *s.s.*, sternal sinus; *pd.*, proctodæum; *h.*, heart; *mg.*, mid-gut; yolk pyramids dark.

which represents the gastrula. At the anterior lip of the blastopore the mesoderm appears, being many-celled from the first. Soon the blastopore closes; the cavity of the gastrula thus becomes a closed sac—the future mid-gut. The cells of this archenteron take up the core of yolk into themselves in a way which early suggests their future digestive function. On the surface of the egg there have already appeared ectodermic thickenings,—the so-called eye-folds,—rudiments of the appendages, and of the thoracic and abdominal regions.

In the later stages invaginations of the ectoderm form the fore- and hind-gut, which grow inward from opposite ends to meet the endoder-



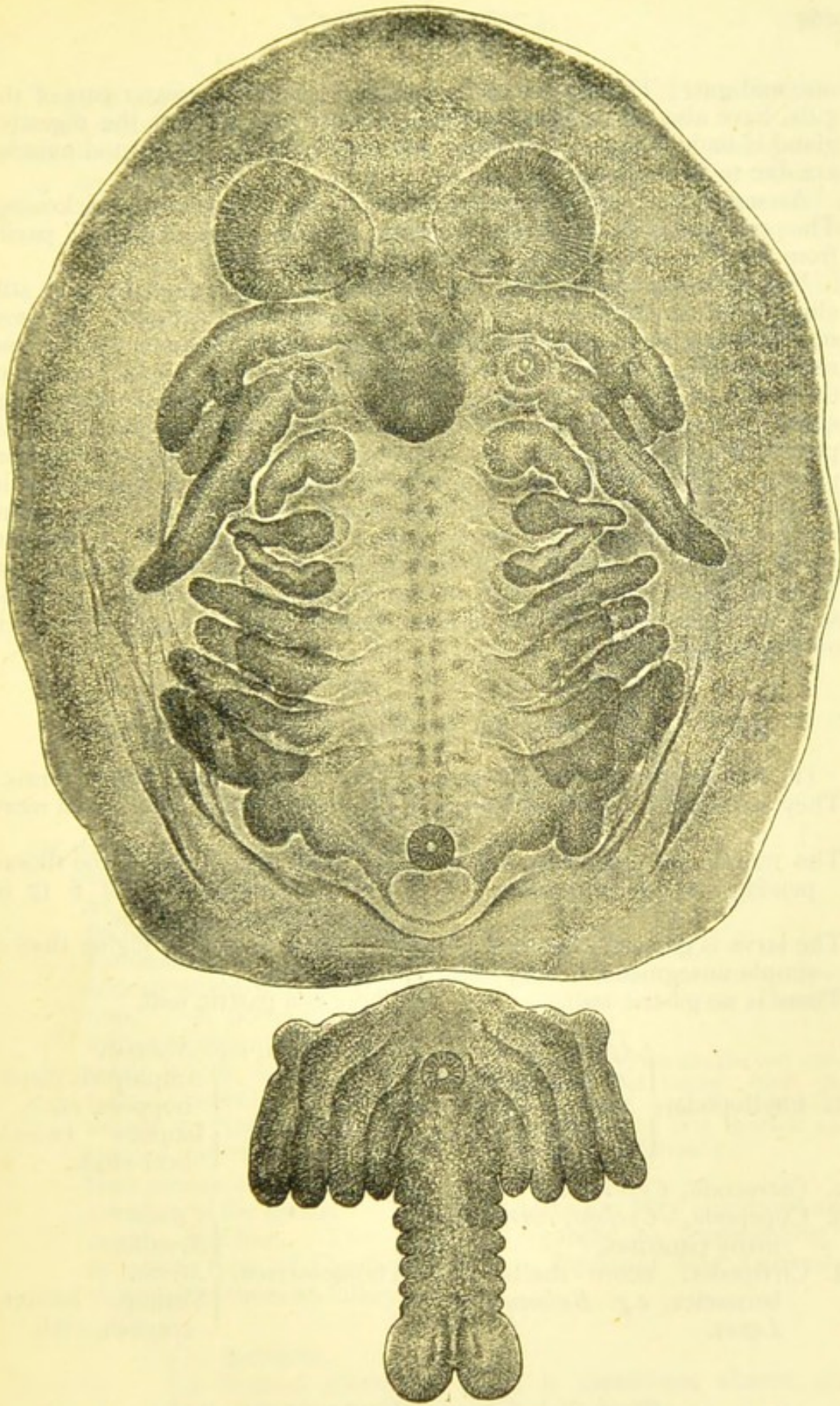


FIG. 112.—Embryo of crayfish, flattened out, with removal of yolk (greatly magnified).—After Reichenbach.

Note rudiments of eyes and appendages, and in the middle line the nervous system.



mic mid-gut. The ear-sac and green gland, and the greater part of the gills, have also an ectodermic origin. From the mid-gut the digestive gland is budded out. The heart, the blood vessels, blood, and muscles are due to the mesoderm.

As usual, the nervous system arises from an ectodermic thickening. The eye arises partly from the optic ganglia of the "brain," partly from the "eye-folds," and partly from the epidermis.

When the young crayfishes are hatched from the egg-shells, they still cling to these, and thereby to the swimmerets of the mother. In most respects they are miniature adults, but the cephalothorax is convex and relatively large, the rostrum is bent down between the eyes, the tips of the claws are incurved and serve for firm attachment, and there are other slight differences. The noteworthy fact is that the development is completed within the egg-case, and that it is continuous without metamorphosis. The shortened life history of the crayfish is interesting in relation to its fresh-water habitat, where the risks of being swept away by currents are obviously great; but it must also be remembered that the tendency to abbreviate development is a general one. There is some maternal care in the crayfish, for the young are said sometimes to return to the mother after a short exploration on their own account.

### SYSTEMATIC SURVEY OF THE CLASS CRUSTACEA.

<p>(1) Entomostriaca, lower forms. They are usually small and simple.</p> <p>The number of segments and appendages is very variable.</p> <p>The larva is generally hatched as a simple unsegmented <i>Nauplius</i>. There is no gastric mill.</p>	<p>(2) Malacostraca, higher forms. They are usually larger and more complex.</p> <p>The head consists of 5, the thorax of 8, the abdomen of 6 (7 in Leptostraca) segments.</p> <p>The larva is usually higher than a <i>Nauplius</i>. There is a gastric mill.</p>
<p>1. Phyllopoda, { <i>Apus</i>, <i>Branchiopus</i>, and <i>Artemia</i> (brine-shrimps), <i>Daphnia</i>, <i>Moina</i>, <i>Polyphemus</i>.</p> <p>2. Ostracoda, <i>Cypris</i>, <i>Cypridina</i>.</p> <p>3. Copepoda, <i>Cyclops</i>, <i>Argulus</i>, many parasites.</p> <p>4. Cirripedia, acorn-shells and barnacles, e.g. <i>Balanus</i> and <i>Lepas</i>.</p>	<p>Leptostraca, e.g. <i>Nebalia</i>.</p> <p>Arthrostraca, { Amphipods (sand-hoppers, etc.). Isopods (woodlice, etc.).</p> <p>Thoracostraca, { <i>Cuma</i>. <i>Squilla</i>. <i>Mysis</i>. Shrimp, lobster, crayfish, crab.</p>

### First Sub-Class. ENTOMOSTRACA.

Order I. Phyllopoda.—In these at least four pairs of swimming feet bear respiratory plates. The body is generally well segmented,



and is protected by a shield-like or bivalve shell. The mandibles are without palps, and the maxillæ are rudimentary.

(a) Branchiopoda. The body has numerous segments and (10-20 or more) appendages with respiratory plates. The shell is rarely absent, usually shield-like or bivalved. The heart is a long dorsal vessel with numerous openings. The eggs are able to survive prolonged desiccation in the mud.

*Branchipus*, a beautifully coloured fresh-water form, with hardly any shell.

*Artemia*. Brine-shrimps. Periodically parthenogenetic. By gradually changing the salinity of the water, Schmankewitsch was able, in the course of several generations, to modify *A. salina* into *A. milhausenii*, and *vice versa*. *Artemia fertilis* is one of the four animals known to occur in the dense waters of Salt Lake.

*Apus*, a fresh-water form with a large dorsal-shield. Periodically parthenogenetic. One species hermaphrodite.

Of these, *Apus* is certainly the most interesting. It is over an inch in length, and therefore a giant among Entomostraca. It has an almost world-wide distribution. "It possesses peculiarities of organisation which mark it out as an archaic form, probably standing nearer to the extinct ancestors of the Crustacea than almost any other living member of the group." The appendages are very numerous and mostly leaf-like. They may be regarded as representing a primitive type of Crustacean limb. Professor Ray Lankester enumerates them as follows:—

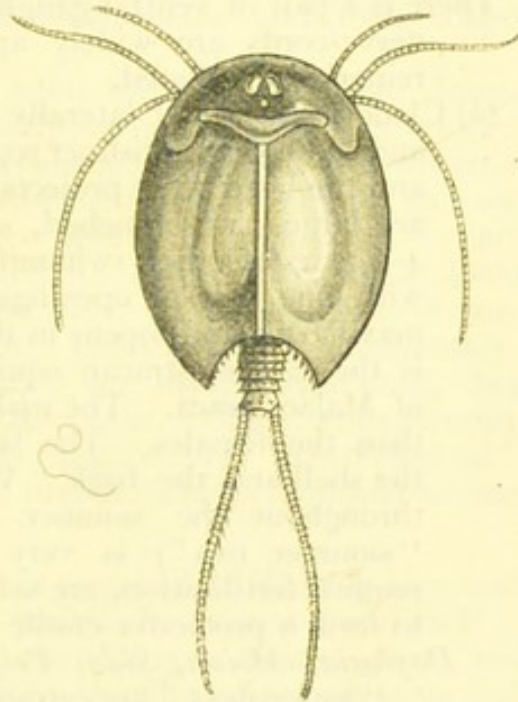


FIG. 113.—Dorsal surface of *Apus cancriformis*. — From Bronn's "Thierreich."

In the anterior region are the two compound eyes, and behind them the simple unpaired eye. The whip-like outgrowths of the first thoracic appendage project laterally.

- |           |   |  |
|-----------|---|--|
| Pre-oral. | { | 1. Antenna.  |
|           | { | 2. Second antenna. (This is sometimes absent, and apparently always in certain species.) |
| Oral.     | { | 3. Mandible.   |
|           | { | 4. Maxilla.  |
|           | { | 5. Maxillipede.  |



- |                 |   |  |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Thoracic        | { | 6. First thoracic foot (leg-like).   |
| (Pregenital).   |   | 7-16. Other ten thoracic feet (swimmers).  |
|                 | { | The 16th in the female carries an egg-sac or brood-chamber. There are eleven thoracic rings on the body. |
| Abdominal       |   | 17-68. Fifty-two abdominal feet, to which there corre-   |
| (Post-genital). | { | spond only seventeen rings on the body.  |

The large dorsal shield is not attached to the segments behind the one bearing the maxillipedes. Many of the thin limbs doubtless function as gills. The genital apertures are on the sixteenth appendages. The anus is on the last segment of the body.

There is a pair of ventral ganglia to each pair of limbs; the ventral nerve-cords are widely apart; and the cephalic ganglion is remarkably isolated.

- (b) Cladocera. Small laterally compressed "water-fleas," with few and somewhat indistinct segments. The shell is usually bivalved, and the head often projects freely from it. The second antennæ are large, two-branched, swimming appendages, and there are 4-6 pairs of other swimming organs. The heart is a little sac with one pair of openings. An excretory organ (the shell or maxillary gland) opens in the region of the second maxillæ. It is the Entomostracan equivalent of the antennary green gland of Malacostraca. The males are usually smaller and much rarer than the females. The latter have a brood-chamber between the shell and the back. Within this many broods are hatched throughout the summer. Periodic parthenogenesis (of the "summer ova") is very common. "Winter eggs," which require fertilisation, are set adrift in a part of the shell modified to form a protective cradle or ephippium.

*Daphnia*, *Moina*, *Sida*, *Polyphemus*, *Leptodora*, and many other "water-fleas," are extraordinarily abundant in fresh water, and form part of the food of many fishes. A few occur in brackish and salt water.

Order 2. Ostracoda.—Small Crustaceans, usually laterally compressed, with an indistinctly segmented or unsegmented body, rudimentary abdomen, and bivalve shell. There are only seven pairs of appendages.

Examples.—*Cypris* (fresh water), *Cypridina* (marine).

Order 3. Copepoda.—Elongated Crustaceans, usually with distinct segments. There is no dorsal shell. There are five pairs of biramous thoracic appendages, but the last may be rudimentary or absent. The abdomen is without limbs, and of its five segments the first two are sometimes united. The females carry the eggs in external ovisacs. Many are ecto-parasitic, especially on fishes ("fish-lice"), and are often very degenerate. The free living Copepods form an important part of the food-supply of fishes.

*Cyclops*, free and exceedingly prolific in fresh water. *Cetochilus*, free and abundant in the sea. *Sapphirina*, a broad flat marine form, about a quarter of an inch long, occasionally parasitic. The male is remarkable for its brilliant "phosphorescent"



colour. In *Chondracanthus*, as in many other cases, the parasitic females carry the pigmy males attached to their body. *Caligus*, a very common genus of "fish-lice."

*Lernæa*, *Penella*, etc. The adult females are parasitic, and almost worm-like. The males and the young are free. That the males are often free and not degenerate, while their mates are parasitic and retrogressive, may be understood by considering—(1) the greater vigour and activity associated with maleness; (2) the fact that parasitism affords safety and abundance of nutrition to the females during the reproductive period.

Order 4. Cirripedia.—Barnacles and acorn-shells, and some allied degenerate parasites.

Marine Crustaceans, which in adult life are fixed head downwards. The body is indistinctly segmented, and is enveloped in a fold of skin, usually with calcareous plates. The anterior antennæ are involved in the attachment; the posterior pair are rudimentary. The oral appendages are small, and in part atrophied. In most there are six (or less frequently four) pairs of two-branched thoracic feet, which sweep food particles into the depressed mouth. The abdomen is rudimentary. There is no heart. The sexes are usually combined, but dimorphic unisexual forms also occur. The hermaphrodite individuals occasionally carry pigmy or "complemental" males. The spermatozoa are mobile, which is unusual among Crustacea.

*Lepas*, the ship-barnacle, is as an adult attached to floating logs and ship-bottoms. The anterior end by which the animal fixes itself is drawn out into a long flexible stalk, containing a cement gland, the ovaries, etc., and involving in its formation the first pair of antennæ and the front lobe of the head. The second antennæ are lost in larval life. The mouth region bears a pair of small mandibles and two pairs of small maxillæ,—the last pair united into a lower lip. The thorax has six pairs of two-branched appendages, and from the end of the rudimentary abdomen a long penis projects. At the base of this lies the anus. Around the body there is a fold of skin, and from this arise five calcareous plates, an unpaired dorsal *carina*, two *scuta* right and left anteriorly, two *terga* at the free posterior end. The nervous system consists of a brain, an œsophageal ring, and a ventral chain of five or more ganglia. There is a fused pair of rudimentary eyes. No special circulatory or respiratory organs are known. Two excretory (?) tubes lead from (cœlomic) cavities to the base of the second maxillæ, and are probably comparable with shell-glands and with nephridia. There is a complete food canal and a large digestive gland. Beside the latter lie the branched testes, whose vasa deferentia unite in an ejaculatory duct in the penis. From the much-branched ovaries in the stalk, the oviducts pass to the first thoracic legs, where they open into a cement-making sac, opening to the exterior. The eggs are found in flat cakes between the external fold of skin and the body.

The life history is most interesting. Nauplius larvæ escape from the



egg-cases, and, after moulting several times, become like little Cyprid water-fleas. The first pair of appendages become suctorial, and, after a period of free-swimming, the young barnacle settles down on some floating object, mooring itself by means of the antennary suckers, and becoming firmly glued by the secretion of the cement glands. During the settling and the associated metamorphosis, the young barnacle fasts, living on a store of fat previously accumulated. Many important changes occur, the valved shell is developed, and the adult form is gradually assumed. While the early naturalists, such as Gerard (1597), regarded the barnacle as somehow connected with the barnacle-geese, and zoologists, before J. Vaughan Thompson's researches (1829), were satisfied with calling Cirripedes divergent Molluscs, we now know

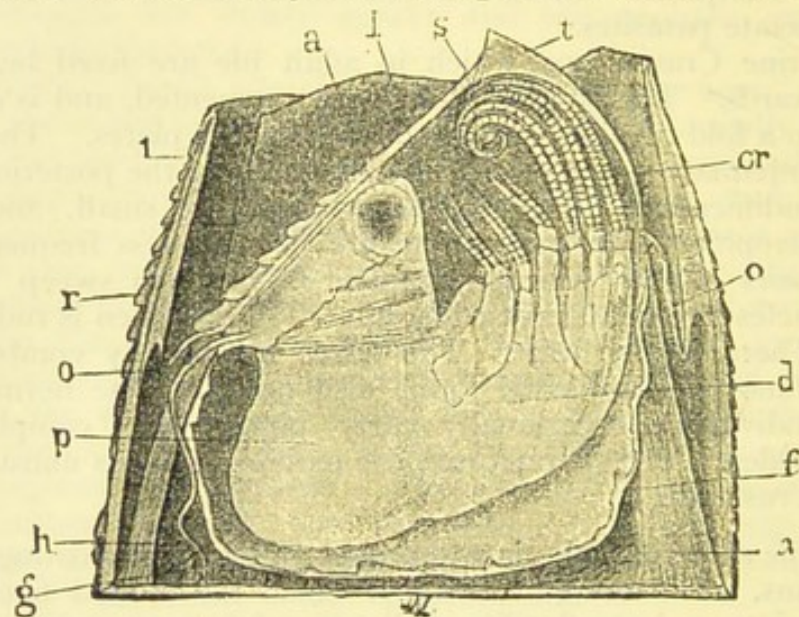


FIG. 114.—Acorn-shell (*Balanus tintinnabulum*).  
—After Darwin.

*l.*, Tergum; *s.*, scutum; *d.*, opening of oviduct, the aperture is not distinct; *f.*, mantle cavity; *x.*, depressor muscle of tergum; *g.*, depressor muscle of scutum; *h.*, oviduct; *r.*, outer shell in section; *a.*, adductor muscle of scuta; *cr.*, thoracic legs; *l.*, first plate of outer shell; *p.*, position of viscera.

clearly that they are somewhat degenerate Crustaceans. We do not know, however, by what constitutional vice, by what fatigue after the exertions of adolescence, they are forced to settle down to sedentary life.

The food consists of small animals, which are swept to the mouth by the waving of the curled legs. Growth is somewhat rapid, but the usual skin casting is much restricted, except in one genus. Neither the valves, nor the uniting membranes, nor the envelope of the stalk, are moulted, though disintegrated portions may be removed in flakes and renewed by fresh formations. In the allied genus *Scalpellum*, some are like *Lepas*, hermaphrodites, without complementary males (*Sc. balanoides*); others are hermaphrodite, with complementary males (*Sc. villosum*); and others are unisexual, but the males are minute and parasitic (*Sc. regium*).



*Balanus*, the acorn-shell, encrusts the rocks in great numbers between high and low water marks. It may be described, in Huxley's graphic words, as a crustacean fixed by its head, and kicking the food into its mouth with its legs. The body is surrounded, as in *Lepas*, by a fold of skin, which forms a rampart of six or more calcareous plates, and a fourfold lid, consisting of two *scuta* and two *terga*. When covered by the tide, the animal protrudes and retracts between the valves of the shell six pairs of curl-like thoracic legs. The structure of the acorn-shell is in the main like that of the barnacle, but there is no stalk.

The life history also is similar. A Nauplius is hatched. It has the usual three pairs of legs, an unpaired eye, and a delicate dorsal shield. It moults several times, grows larger, and acquires a firmer shield, a longer spined tail, and stronger legs. Then it passes into a *Cypris* stage, with two side eyes, six pairs of swimming legs, a bivalve shell, and other organs. As it exerts itself much but does not feed, it is not unnatural that it should sink down as if in fatigue. It fixes itself by its head and antennæ, and is glued by the secretion of the cement gland. Some of the structures, *e.g.* the bivalve shell, are lost; new structures appear, *e.g.* the characteristic Cirriped legs and the shell. Throughout this period, which Darwin called the "pupa stage," there is external quiescence, and the young creature continues to fast. The skin of the pupa moults off; the adult structures and habits are gradually assumed. At frequent periods of continued

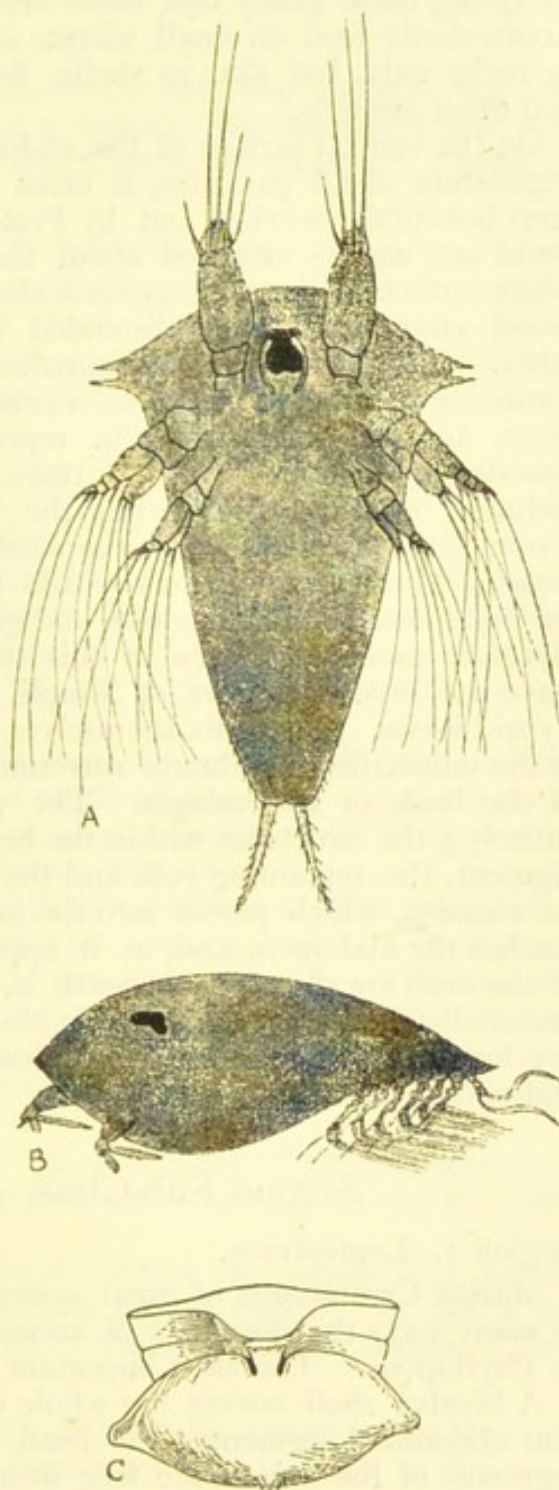


FIG. 115.—Development of *Sacculina*.  
—After Delage. (Not drawn to scale.)

A, Free-swimming Nauplius, with three pairs of appendages; B, pupa stage; C, adult protruding from the abdomen of a crab.



growth the lining of the shell and the cuticle of the legs are shed. In spring these glassy cast coats are exceedingly common in the sea. Acorn-shells feed on small marine animals. They fix themselves not to rocks only, but also to shells, floating objects, and even to whales and other animals.

On the ventral surface of the abdomen of crabs, *Sacculina*, the most degenerate of all parasites, is often found. Its complete history has been beautifully worked out by Professor Delage. It is in shape an ovoid sac, and is attached about the middle of a segment. On the lower surface of the sac there is a cloacal aperture, opening into a large brood-chamber, usually distended with eggs contained in chitinous tubes. The brood-chamber surrounds the central "visceral mass," consisting of a nerve ganglion, a cement gland which secretes the egg-cases, and the hermaphrodite reproductive organs; of digestive or vascular systems there is no trace. The parasite is attached by a peduncle, dividing up, within the body of the crab, into numerous "roots," which have been compared to the placenta of a mammalian foetus. The "roots" ramify within the body of the crab, and by them the *Sacculina* obtains nutrition and gets rid of its waste products; it is therefore practically, even at this stage, an *endoparasite*. The larvæ leave the brood-chamber as Nauplii; they moult rapidly and become Cyprid larvæ. These fix themselves by their antennæ to young crabs, at the uncalcified membrane surrounding the base of the large bristles of the back or appendages. The thorax and abdomen are cast off entirely; the structures within the head region contract; eyes, tendons, pigment, the remaining yolk and the carapace, are all lost; and a little sac remains, which passes into the interior of the crab. Eventually it reaches the abdomen, and, as it approaches maturity, the integuments of the crab are dissolved beneath it, and the sac-like body protrudes; essentially, however, *Sacculina* is always endoparasitic. It appears to live for three years, during which time the growth of its host is arrested, and no moult occurs.

## Second Sub-Class. MALACOSTRACA.

### Legion 1. Leptostraca.

Marine Crustaceans of great systematic interest, because they retain in many ways the simplicity of ancestral forms, and link Malacostraca to Phyllopods. The most important genus is *Nebalia*.

A bivalve shell covers the whole of the lank body, except the last four abdominal segments; the head is free from the thorax; the eight segments of the thorax are free from one another, and the plate-like appendages resemble those of Phyllopods; the abdomen has seven segments and a telson with two forks; the elongated heart extends into the abdomen, and has seven pairs of lateral apertures or ostia. *Nebalia* and its congeners are probably related to certain ancient fossil forms from Palæozoic strata—*Hymenocaris*, *Ceratiocaris*, etc.

### Legion 2. Arthrostraca. (Edriophthalmata, sessile-eyed.)

There is no shell-fold or shield, except in the order Anisopoda. The first thoracic segment (rarely with the addition of the second) is fused



to the head, the corresponding appendages serve as maxillipedes, the other thoracic segments (seven or six) are free. The eyes are sessile. The heart is elongated.

Order 1. Anisopoda.—The fusion of the first two thoracic segments to the head, the presence of a cephalothoracic shield, and other divergent features, distinguish *Tanais*, *Apseudes*, etc., from the Isopoda.

Order 2. Isopoda.—The body is flattened from above downwards. The first thoracic segment is fused to the head, while the other six or seven are free, and there is no cephalothoracic shield. The abdomen is usually short, and its appendages, usually overlapped by the first pair, are plate-like, and function in part as respiratory organs.

The "wood-lice" (*Oniscus*, *Porcellio*) are familiar animals which lurk in damp places under stones and bark, and devour vegetable refuse. Some related forms (*e.g.* *Armadillo*), which roll themselves up, are called "pill-bugs." In the terrestrial forms there is obviously a departure from the ordinarily aquatic habit of Crustaceans, and the exopodites of some of the abdominal appendages have tubular air-passages.

*Asellus* is a very common form, living in both fresh and salt water. *Idotea* is not uncommon among the shore rocks. The "gribble" (*Limnoria lignorum*) is a destructive marine Isopod which eats into wood.

Among the marine Cymothoidæ which are often parasitic on fishes, some, *e.g.* *Cymothoe*, are remarkable in their sexual condition, for they are hermaphrodites, in which the male organs mature and become functional when the oviducts are still closed, while at a later period in life the male organs are lost, and the animals become functionally female.

The Bopyridæ infest the gill-chambers of other Crustaceans, *e.g.* prawns. The pigmy males are usually carried about by their mates.

Among the parasitic Cryptoniscidæ we again find hermaphrodites with associated pigmy males. In not a few cases they seriously affect the reproductive organs of their male hosts.

Order 3. Amphipoda.—The body is laterally compressed. In most it is only the first thoracic segment which is fused to the head, in the "no-body-crabs" (*Caprellidæ*), and "whale-lice" (*Cyamidæ*), two segments are involved. The thoracic limbs bear respiratory appendages. Of the six pairs of legs which the abdomen usually bears, the anterior three are usually more strongly developed as swimmers, while the posterior three—directed backwards—are used in jumping.

*Gammarus pulex* is very common in fresh water. Other species occur on the seashore. There also the "Beach-fleas" (*Talitrus* and *Orchestia*) are exceedingly abundant.



On solid ground they move on their sides in a strange fashion, but they swim very swiftly.

*Hyperia*, *Phronima*, and many marine Amphipods, have a habit of living as commensals with other animals.

*Caprella*, a common marine gymnast on Hydroids, etc., has the trunk of the body reduced to the quaintest possible minimum. (Fig. 116.)

Legion 3. Thoracostraca. (Podophthalmata, with stalked eyes.)

Several or all of the thoracic segments are fused to the head, and there is a cephalothoracic shield overlapping the gills. The two eyes are stalked, except in Cumacea.

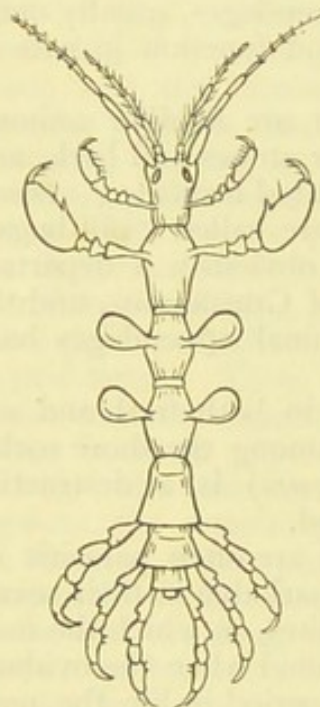


FIG. 116.—An Amphipod (*Caprella linearis*).

The two anterior thoracic segments are fused to the head; the abdomen is greatly reduced and without appendages; the fourth and fifth thoracic segments bear only respiratory plates.

Order 1. Cumacea.—The cephalothoracic shield is small, and four or five thoracic segments are left uncovered and free. The eyes are sessile, and adjacent or fused. There are two pairs of maxillipedes. The females have no abdominal appendages except on the last segment. The genera are marine, *e.g.* *Cuma* or *Diastylis*.

Order 2. Stomatopoda.—The shield is still small, and does not cover the three posterior thoracic segments. The body is somewhat flattened, the abdomen is very strong. Five anterior thoracic appendages are directed towards the mouth, and serve to catch food, and to clamber. The five anterior abdominal legs carry feathery gills, the sixth pair forming swimming-paddles. The elongated heart extends into the abdomen, which also contains the reproductive organs. The genera are marine, *e.g.* *Squilla*.

Order 3. Schizopoda.—A delicate shield covers the whole of the thorax, but there is still some freedom as to one or more of the posterior thoracic segments. The eight thoracic appendages are uniformly biramous, but the first two may serve as maxillipedes. The abdominal appendages of the male are strongly developed; those of the female are weak, except the last, which in both sexes form paddles. They are marine forms, *e.g.* *Mysis* (without gills on the thoracic legs), *Lophogaster*, and *Euphausia* (with gills on the thoracic legs). The last-named starts in life as a Nauplius. As an adult it has luminous organs on the eye-stalks, thoracic legs, and abdominal segments.



Order 4. Decapoda.—The shield is large and firm, and is fixed to the dorsal surface of all the thoracic segments. Of the thoracic appendages, the first three pairs are maxillipedes, the five other pairs are jointed walking legs (whence the term Decapod).

Sub-order 1. Macrura.—Abdomen long. *Homarus* (lobster); *Nephrops* (Norway lobster, sea crayfish); *Astacus* (fresh-water crayfish); *Palinurus* (rock lobster), whose larva was long known as the glass-crab (*Phyllosoma*); *Penæus*, a shrimp which passes through Nauplius, Zoëa, and Mysis stages; *Lucifer* and *Sergestes* are also hatched at a stage antecedent to the Zoëa; *Crangon vulgaris* (the British shrimp); *Palæmon*, *Pandalus*, *Hippolyte* (prawns); *Galathea* (with the abdomen bent inwards); *Pagurus*, *Eupagurus* (hermit crabs); *Birgus latro* (the terrestrial robber or palm crab), in which the upper

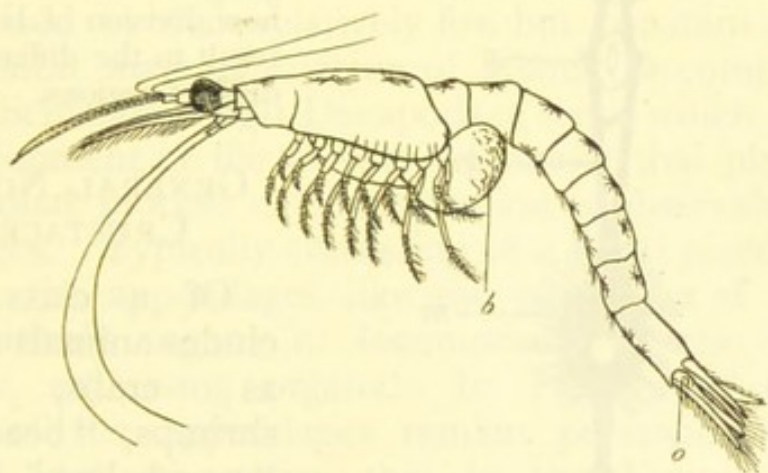


FIG. 117.—Schizopod (*Mysis flexuosa*), from side.

*b.*, Brood-pouch borne on posterior thoracic limbs; *o.*, otocyst in tail. Note eight pairs of similar biramose thoracic feet. The last two thoracic segments are not covered by the shield.

part of the gill-cavity is shut off to form a "lung," the walls having numerous vascular plaits.

Sub-order 2. Brachyura.—Abdomen short, and bent under the thorax. It is narrow in the male, and does not usually bear more than two pairs of appendages; it is broader in the female, and bears four paired appendages. The ventral ganglia have fused into an oval mass. *Cancer* (edible crab); *Carcinus mænas* (shore crab); *Portunus* (swimming crab); *Dromia* (often covered by a sponge); *Pinnotheres* (living inside bivalves); *Telphusa* (a fresh-water crab); *Gecarcinus* (land-crabs, only visiting the sea at the breeding season).

**History.**—Fossil Crustaceans are found in Cambrian strata, but the highest forms (Decapoda) were not firmly established till the Tertiary period. Some of the genera, *e.g.* the Branchiopod *Estheria*, living from Devonian ages till now, are remarkably persistent and successful. How the class arose we do not know; it is probable that types like *Nebalia*



give us trustworthy hints as to the ancestors of the higher Crustaceans ; it is likely that the Phyllopods, *e.g.* *Apus*, bear a similar relation to the whole series ; the Copepods also retain some primitive characteristics ; but it is difficult, apart from mere guessing, to say anything definite as to the more remote ancestry.

We naturally think of a segmented worm-type as a plausible starting-point for Crustaceans, and it is not difficult to understand how a

development of cuticular chitin would tend to produce a flexibly jointed limb out of an unjointed parapodium ; how the mouth might be shunted a little backwards, and two appendages and ganglia a little forwards ; and how division of labour would result in the differentiation of distinct regions.

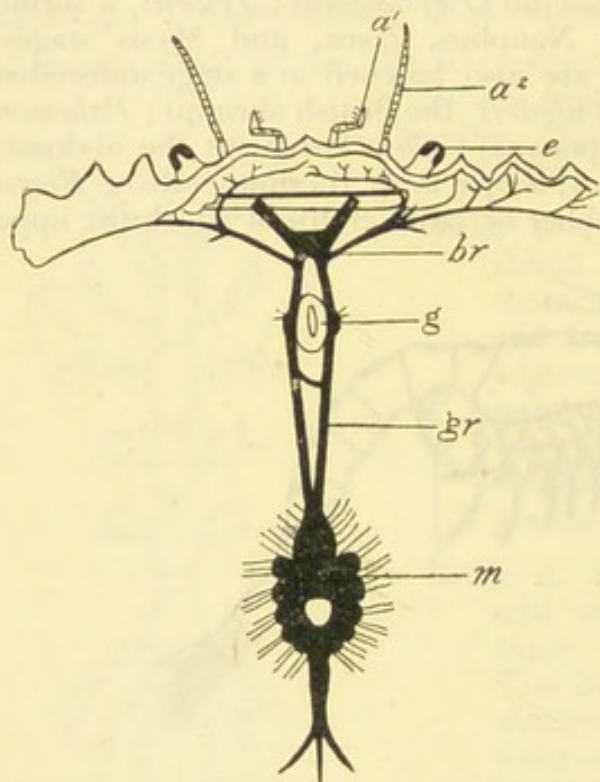


FIG. 118. Nervous system of shore crab (*Carcinus mænas*).—After Bethe.

*br.*, The supra-oesophageal mass ; *g.*, gullet surrounded by *gr.*, the gullet ring ; *m.*, the sub-oesophageal mass representing a fusion of the thoracic ganglia of the crayfish, and giving off nerves to the limbs ; behind it is a short strand representing the abdominal ganglia of the crayfish. *a¹.*, antennules ; *a².*, antennæ ; *e.*, eye.

#### GENERAL NOTES ON CRUSTACEANS.

Of a class that includes animals so diverse as crabs, lobsters, shrimps, "beach-fleas," "wood-lice," barnacles, acorn-shells, and "water-fleas," it is difficult to state general characteristics, other than those facts of structure which we have already summarised.

Admitting the parasitism of many Crustaceans,

and the sedentary life of barnacles and acorn-shells, we must still allow that great activity characterises the class. With this may be connected the brilliant colouring, the power of colour change, and the phosphorescence of many forms.

Except in the case of a few primitive and degenerate forms, the Crustacea are all segmented. In this, in the presence of hollow jointed appendages, in the reduction of the coelom, and in their firm chitinous cuticle, the Crustacea resemble other Arthropods ; as special characteristics we



notice the two pairs of antennæ, the presence of carbonate of lime in the cuticle, and the nature of the respiratory organs—these, with few exceptions, being adapted for breathing in water. While these characters remain constant throughout the group, there is an almost infinite variation in detail. In regard to the segmentation of the body, we notice that, apart from the general tendency to reduction which is so marked in many parasitic forms, the higher forms as compared with the lower show marked specialisation. In the primitive Phyllopods the body consists of a large but varying number of segments, remarkably uniform in structure. The higher Crustacea, on the other hand, are characterised by their relatively few but constant segments, which exhibit marked division of labour; a comparison of *Nebalia*, Schizopods and Decapods, a series which illustrates the development of the thorax, will make this plain. The same gradual process of specialisation is observable in the appendages. Typically consisting of a basal piece and two branches, the appendages, like the parapodia of Annelids, are primitively organs of locomotion; in the Crustacea especially, swimming organs. In Phyllopods the great majority of the appendages remain permanently at this level. It is worth notice that in the Nauplius and in Ostracods and the free-swimming Copepods, the antennæ themselves are swimming organs. Just as, however, in the Annelid head the locomotor function of the parapodia becomes subordinated to the sensory one, so also in Crustacea the anterior appendages of the head become specialised as sense organs. Again, the appendages in connection with the mouth become modified in connection with alimentation, and the further processes of specialisation which differentiate the regions of the body are reflected in the appendages of these regions. A comparison of *Nebalia*, Schizopods and Decapods, will again make this plain. It is this specialisation of certain appendages to function as masticatory organs which especially characterises Arthropods as compared with Annelids.

In the nervous system there is always a certain amount of fusion of ganglia—these never being so numerous as the segments—but the fusion is more marked in the more specialised forms. In the Crabs the ventral chain is repre-



sented by a lobed ganglionic mass in the thorax, connected with a mere rudiment, which corresponds to the abdominal portion of the cord in the crayfish (Fig. 118). Sense organs are usually well developed, and are not confined to the head region; thus many Schizopods have "auditory" organs in the tail (Fig. 117). The alimentary canal runs straight throughout the body; it consists of fore-gut, mid-gut, and hind-gut. The fore-gut and hind-gut are anterior and posterior invaginations of ectoderm, and are always large, especially in Malacostraca; in the Malacostraca the fore-gut is furnished with a gastric mill. The mid-gut or archenteron is always short, but has connected with it diverticula which form the so-called hepato-pancreas. In the Entomostraca there is usually only a single pair of outgrowths; in Schizopods, Cumacea, and larval Decapods there are three pairs; a process of rapid growth and branching converts these into the compact digestive gland of the adult Decapods. In connection with the posterior end of the mid-gut in Amphipods and some others, there are a pair of blind tubes functioning as excretory organs, and presenting an interesting similarity to the Malpighian tubes of insects, which, however, are in connection with the hind-gut. The body cavity is never large, being mainly filled up with muscles and organs, and, as in Arthropods in general, the true coelom is virtually absent. In the blood, hæmocyanin is the commonest pigment, but is not universal. Respiration is carried on in many different ways. In the simple forms it may be merely by the general surface, but in the majority of cases, certain portions of the limbs, or outgrowths of the limbs, constitute definite respiratory organs, often specialised to form gills. In the excretory system the numerous nephridia of Annelids are absent. The typical excretory organs of the Entomostraca are the "shell-glands"—paired coiled tubes opening on the second maxilla; of the Malacostraca, the antennary glands exemplified by the green glands of the crayfish. The genital ducts are probably modified nephridia, and the fact that they open on different segments in the two sexes, is regarded as evidence of the former existence of a series of nephridia like those of Annelids. The process of excretion in the Crustacea is not well understood; it is possible that shell-making



is an organised method of getting rid of some waste products.

There are many peculiarities connected with reproduction—thus parthenogenesis for prolonged periods is common among “water-fleas”; hermaphroditism is frequent, occurring, for example, in barnacles, acorn-shells, etc., and it is often complicated by the simultaneous existence of “pigmy” complemental males. When separate the two sexes are often very diverse. The spermatozoa are usually exceptional in being very slightly motile. In both sexes some appendages are often modified for copulation or for carrying the eggs.

**Development.** — The ova of most Crustacea show considerable similarity to those of *Astacus*, and the segmentation is typically of the kind already described. But while this is the most typical case for Crustacean, and, indeed, for Arthropod development, it is possible, within the limits of the class Crustacea, to trace out a complete series, in which the first term is a segmentation of the complete and equal type, like that of a worm, and the last the purely peripheral. In the same way, though gastrulation is usually much disguised, there are many modes, from an invagination of the simplest embolic type (*Lucifer*), and through the condition described for *Astacus*, to the formation of endoderm by the ingrowth of a solid plug of cells (Arthrostraca, etc.).

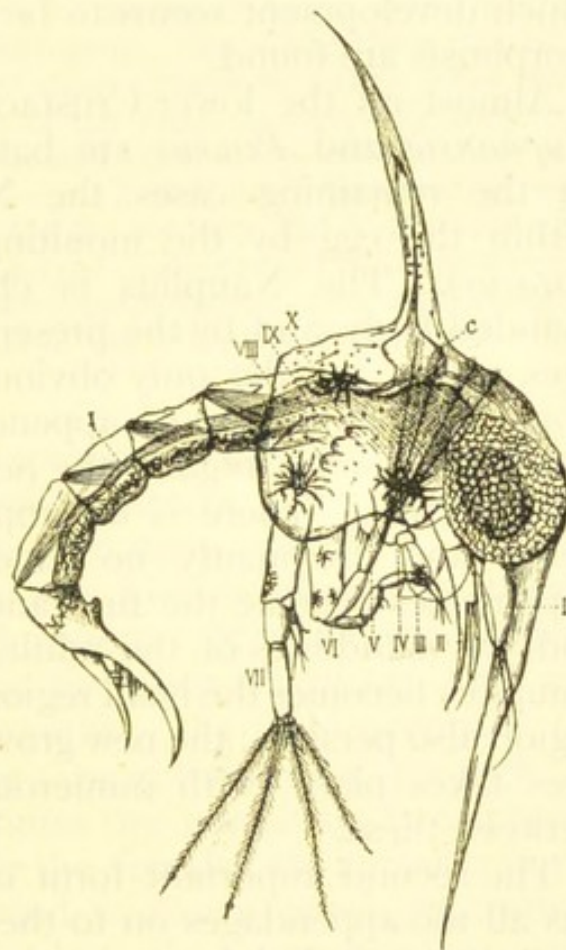


FIG. 119.—Zoea of common shore crab (*Carcinus menas*).—After Faxon. The appendages are numbered; *c.*, gills; *i.*, alimentary canal.



Compared with *Astacus*, however, the most important point we have to notice is the frequent occurrence of a very striking metamorphosis in the life history. In other words, the larva hatched from the egg is rarely like the parent, and only acquires the adult characters after a series of profound changes. In some cases (*Nebalia*, *Mysis*) a metamorphosis takes place within the egg-cases, and in the few forms in which development seems to be direct, slight traces of metamorphosis are found.

Almost all the lower Crustaceans and the higher forms *Euphausia* and *Penæus* are hatched in a Nauplius stage. In the remaining cases the Nauplius stage is indicated within the egg by the moulting of a larval cuticle (as in *Astacus*). The Nauplius is characterised by a typically rounded body, and by the presence of three pairs of appendages, which are the only obvious indications of segmentation. The first pair of appendages are unbranched and bear larval sense organs, the next two are biramose swimming organs. There is an unpaired median eye, but no heart, and frequently no hind-gut. The three pairs of appendages become the first and second pairs of antennæ and the mandibles of the adult. The head region of the Nauplius becomes the head region of the adult; the posterior region also persists; the new growth of segments and appendages takes place (with numerous moultings) in the region between these.

The second important form of larva is the Zoæa, which has all the appendages on to the last maxillipedes inclusive, an unsegmented abdomen, and two lateral compound eyes, in addition to the unpaired one of the Nauplius stage. Most Decapoda are hatched in the Zoæa stage.

- (a) The crayfish (*Astacus*) is hatched almost as a miniature adult. The development is therefore very direct in this case.
- (b) The lobster (*Homarus*) is hatched in a *Mysis* stage, in which the thoracic limbs are two-branched and used for swimming. After some moults it acquires adult characters.
- (c) Crabs are hatched in the *Zoæa* form, and pass with moults through a *Megalopa* stage, in which they resemble certain Hermit crabs. The abdomen is subsequently tucked in under the thorax.
- (d) *Penæus* (a kind of shrimp) is hatched as a *Nauplius*, becomes a *Zoæa*, then a *Mysis*, then an adult. Its relative *Lucifer* starts as a *Meta-Nauplius* with rudiments of three more appendages than the *Nauplius*. Another related form, *Sergestes*, is hatched



as a *Protozoæa*, with a cephalothoracic shield and an unsegmented abdomen. Thus there are two grades between Nauplius and Zoæa.

Three facts must be borne in mind in thinking over the life histories of crayfish, lobster, crab, and *Penæus*: (1) There is a general tendency to abbreviate development, and this is of more importance when metamorphosis is expensive and full of risks; (2) there is no doubt that larvæ exhibit characters which are related to their own life rather than to that of the adult; (3) it is a *general* truth, that in its individual development the organism recapitulates to some extent the evolution of the race, that ontogeny tends to recapitulate phylogeny. But while there can be no doubt that the metamorphosis of these Crustaceans is to some extent interpretable as a recapitulation of the racial history,—for there were unsegmented animals before segmented forms arose, and the *Zoæa* stage is antecedent to the *Mysis*, etc.,—yet it does not follow that ancestral Crustaceans were like Nauplii. On the contrary, the *Nauplius* must be regarded as a larval reversion to a type much simpler than the ancestral Crustacean. Moreover, the idea of recapitulation offers a philosophical rather than a material explanation of the facts, and holds good only in a very general way.

**Bionomics.**—Most Crustaceans are carnivorous and predatory; others feed on dead creatures and organic débris in the water; a minority depend upon plants.

Parasitism occurs in over 700 species, in various degrees, and, of course, with varied results. Most of the parasites keep to the outside of the host (*e.g.* Fish-lice), and suck nourishment by their mouths; the Rhizocephala (*e.g.* *Sacculina*) send ramifying absorptive roots through the body of the host. Sometimes the parasitism is temporary (*Argulus*); sometimes only the females are parasitic (*e.g.* in *Lernæa*). The parasites tend to lose appendages, segmentation, sense organs, etc., but the reproductive organs become more fertile. The hosts, *e.g.* crabs, infested by Rhizocephala, are sometimes materially affected, and even rendered incapable of reproducing.

Some Crustaceans live not as parasites, but as commensals with other animals, doing them no harm, though sharing their food. Thus there is a constant partnership between some hermit crabs and sea-anemones. The hermit crab is concealed and protected by the sea-anemone; the latter is carried about by the Crustacean, and gets fragments of food.

Masking is also common, especially among crabs. Some will cut the tunic off a sea-squirt and throw it over their own shoulders. Many attain a mask more passively, for they are



covered with hydroids and sponges, which settle on the shell. There is no doubt, however, that some actively mask themselves, for besides those known to use the Tunicate cloak, others have been seen planting sea-weeds on their backs. The protective advantage of masking both in offence and defence is very obvious.

The intelligence of crabs and some of the higher Crustaceans is well developed. Maternal care is frequent. Fighting is very common. The loss of limbs is readily repaired.

Deep-sea Crustaceans are very abundant, and often remarkable "for their colossal size, their bizarre forms, and brilliant red colourings"; some are blind, others are brilliantly phosphorescent. Yet more abundant are the pelagic Crustaceans (especially Entomostraca and Schizopods); they are often transparent except the eyes, often brightly coloured or phosphorescent. Many Crustaceans live on the shore, and play a notable part in the struggle for existence which is so keen in that densely-crowded region. The lower Crustaceans are abundantly represented in fresh water, in pools, streams, and lakes. A few, such as wood-lice and land-crabs, are terrestrial, and some blind forms occur in caves.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### PERIPATUS, MYRIOPODS, AND INSECTS.

ARTHROPODA. Sub-division TRACHEATA ANTENNATA.

Classes PROTOTRACHEATA.—*Peripatus*. MYRIOPODA.—Centipedes and Millipedes. INSECTA.—Insects.

THESE three classes form a series of which winged insects are the climax. The type *Peripatus* is archaic, and links the series to the Annelids; the Myriopods lead on to the primitive wingless insects. All breathe by tracheæ—tubes which carry air to the organs of the body—and all have antennæ; hence the title Tracheata Antennata.

First Class of Tracheata Antennata.—PROTOTRACHEATA.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The body is worm-like in form, soft skinned, and without external segmentation.*

*The appendages are—a pair of prominent pre-oral antennæ, a pair of jaws in the mouth, a pair of slime-secreting oral papillæ, which development shows to be true appendages, numerous pairs of short, imperfectly-jointed legs, each with two claws, and a pair of anal papillæ, which are rudimentary appendages. The legs contain peculiar (crural) glands.*

*Respiration is effected by numerous tracheæ with openings somewhat scattered on the surface of the body. The heart is simply an elongated dorsal vessel with valvular openings. There is a series of excretory tubes or nephridia. The halves of the ventral nerve-cord are widely separate.*



The species of *Peripatus*, which some refer to four genera, are numerous and widely distributed. In its possession of tracheæ and nephridia it is an interesting connecting link; in many ways it seems to be an old-fashioned survivor of an archaic stock.

The species of *Peripatus* are very beautiful animals. Mr. Sedgwick says: "The exquisite sensitiveness and continually changing form of the antennæ, the well-rounded plump body, the eyes set like small diamonds on the side of the



FIG. 120. — External form of *Peripatus*. — After Balfour.

Note antennæ and simple feet.

head, the delicate feet, and, above all, the rich colouring and velvety texture of the skin, all combine to give these animals an aspect of quite exceptional beauty." They are shy and nocturnal, hiding under stones and among rotting wood, feeding on insects and the like, which they catch by the ejection of slime from the oral papillæ. To their shy habits their persistence is possibly in part due. They are able to move quickly, somewhat after the fashion of Millipedes, especially like *Scolopendrella*. Young forms roll up when touched, and have been seen to climb up vertical glass plates.

About a score of species are known, from S. Africa, Australia, New Zealand, West Indies, S. America, etc., widely distributed like some other archaic types (cf. Dipnoi).

As the different species have similar habits, and live in very similar conditions, the differences between them probably illustrate purely constitutional variations.

### *A more Detailed Account of Peripatus.*

**Form.**—The body suggests an Annelid or a caterpillar, but, apart from the appendages, there is no external segmentation. Over the soft skin are numerous minute warts with small bristles. The mouth is ventral and anterior; the anus terminal and posterior.

**Appendages.**—The first are the large, ringed antennæ; then follow the sickle-like jaws in the mouth cavity; a little further back are two oral papillæ from which slime is exuded. Then there are the 14-42 stump-like legs, each with two terminal chitinous claws. In the young *P. capensis* the leg is said to be five-jointed, but in the adults there is



no trace of this. In respect to its legs, therefore, *Peripatus* is hardly an Arthropod.

**Skin.**—The chitinous cuticle, ordinarily thick in Arthropods, is delicate. The epidermis is a single layer of cells.

**Muscular system.**—Externally there is a layer of circular muscles; within this lies a double layer of diagonal fibres; internally there are strong longitudinal bundles. Finally, in connection with this internal layer, there are fibres which divide the apparent body cavity into a median and two lateral compartments. The median includes heart, gut, slime glands, reproductive organs; the laterals include the nerve-cords and salivary glands; the legs contain nephridia and coxal or crural glands. Striped, rapidly-contracting muscles are characteristic of Arthropods, but in *Peripatus* the muscles are unstriped, excepting those which work the jaws and are perhaps the most active. The true cœlom is represented in the embryo by the cavities of the mesoderm segments, which give origin to the muscular system.

**Nervous system.**—The dorsal brain is connected by an œsophageal ring with the two widely separate latero-ventral nerve-cords. These are connected transversely by numerous commissures, are slightly swollen opposite each pair of legs, to which they give off nerves, and are united posteriorly over the anus. There are only hints of ganglia, but there is a continuous layer of ganglionic cells. The brain is very homogeneous, simpler than that of most Insects. From the brain nerves pass to the antennæ, etc., and two viscerals or sympathetics, soon uniting, innervate the anterior part of the gut. Sense organs are represented by two simple eyes on the top of the head. These are most like the eyes of some marine Annelids. Behind each there lies a special optic lobe connected with the brain, but the eye itself arises as a dimple in the skin.

**Alimentary canal.**—Round about the mouth papillæ seem to have fused to form a "mouth cavity," which includes the mandibles, a median pad or tongue, and the opening of the mouth proper. The mouth leads into a muscular pharynx, into which opens the common duct of two large salivary glands, which extend far back along the body. Mouth, pharynx, and short œsophagus are lined by a chitinous cuticle, like that of the exterior. The long endodermic digestive region or mid-gut extends from the second leg nearly to the end of the body. Its walls are plaited. Finally, there is a short rectum or proctodæum, lined by a chitinous cuticle.

**Circulatory system.**—The dorsal blood vessel forms a long contractile heart. It lies within a pericardial space, and receives blood by segmentally arranged apertures with valves. The circulation is mostly in ill-defined spaces in the apparent body cavity or "hæmocœle."

**Respiratory system.**—Very long and fine unbranched tracheæ are widely distributed in the body; a number open together to the exterior in flask-like depressions. These openings or stigmata are diffuse and irregular in *Peripatus edwardsii*, but in *P. capensis* there is a dorsal and ventral row on each side. In *P. novæ zeelandiæ* the tracheæ are said to be branched.

**Excretory system.**—A pair of nephridia lie in each segment. Each consists of an internal mesodermic terminal funnel, a looped canal,



and a wide vesicle which opens near the base of each leg, the two last parts being invaginations of the ectoderm. This is the only certain case of their occurrence in a Tracheate. The salivary glands and the genital ducts are probably modified nephridia. It may be noted, too, that the same is perhaps true of the "coxal glands" of *Limulus* and of the antennary glands of Crustaceans.

*Crural Glands* lie in the legs and open to the exterior. Their meaning is uncertain, their occurrence is variable. Thus in *P. edwardsii* they occur in the males only, in *P. capensis* they are present in both sexes. In the male of *P. capensis* the last pair are very long (Fig. 121, *a.g.*). The large mucus glands, which pour forth slime from the oral papillæ, are regarded as modified crural glands.

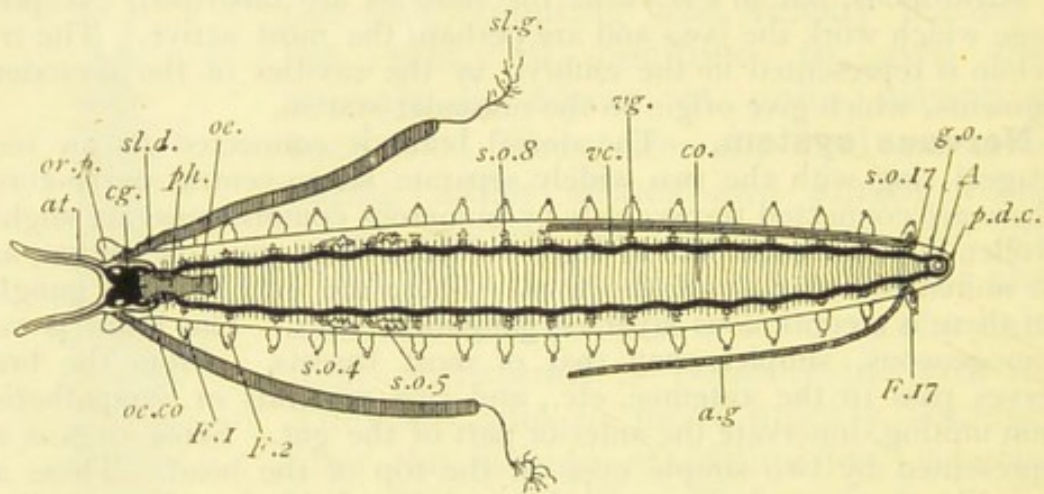


FIG. 121.—Dissection of *Peripatus capensis*.—  
After Balfour.

*at.*, Antennæ; *or.p.*, oral papillæ; *c.g.*, cerebral ganglia; *sl.d.*, duct of slime gland (*sl.g.*); *s.o.8*, eighth segmental organ or nephridium; *v.c.*, ventral nerve connected by transverse commissures (*co.*) with its fellow; *s.o.17*, seventeenth nephridium; *g.o.*, genital aperture; *A.*, anus; *p.d.c.*, posterior commissure; *F.17*, seventeenth appendage; *a.g.*, last crural gland, that of the opposite side is marked *v.g.*; *F.1*, *F.2*, first and second legs; *oe.co.*, œsophageal nerve commissure; *oe.*, œsophagus; *ph.*, pharynx, the remainder of the gut is removed.

**Reproductive system.**—(*a*) Female (of *P. edwardsii*).—From the two ovaries, which are surrounded by one connective tissue sheath, and arise, as usual, from the cœlomic epithelium, the ova pass by two long ducts leading to a common terminal vagina opening between the second last legs. These ducts are for the most part uteri, but on what may be called the oviduct portions adjoining the ovaries, there are two pairs of pouches—(*a*) a pair of receptacula seminis (for storing the spermatozoa received during copulation), and a pair of receptacula ovarum for storing fertilised eggs.

The eggs are hatched in the uteri, and all stages are there to be found in regular order. The young embryos seem to be connected to the wall of the uterus by what has been called a "placenta," so suggestive is it of mammalian gestation. The older embryos lose this "placenta," but



each lies constricted off from its neighbours. When born the young resemble the parents except in size and colour. In *P. novæ zealandiæ* the ova pass from the ovary into the uterus in December, and the young are born in July—a long period of gestation.

(b) Male (of *P. edwardsii*).—The male elements are produced in small testes, pass thence into two seminal vesicles, and onwards by two vasa deferentia into a long single ejaculatory duct, which opens in front of the anus. In the ejaculatory duct the spermatozoa are made into a long packet or spermatophore, which is attached to the female during copulation.

While it is characteristic of Arthropods, in which the development of chitin is so predominant, that ciliated epithelium is absent, it seems that in *Peripatus*, which is much less chitinous than the others, ciliated cells occur in some parts of the reproductive ducts, and perhaps also at the internal funnels of the nephridia. This is indeed what one would expect.

**Development.**—There is great variety of development in different species. Thus there is much yolk in the ovum of *P. novæ zealandiæ*, extremely little in that of *P. capensis*. In the former species the yolk has a manifold origin; it is said to arise in the protoplasm of the ovum itself from the breaking up of the germinal vesicle, from surrounding follicle cells, and from yolk present within the ovary. In *P. capensis* and *P. balfouri* spermatozoa reach the ovary, and there probably the ova are fertilised, but in *P. novæ zealandiæ* the spermatozoa are confined to the receptaculum seminis, near which fertilisation seems to occur. In the maturation of the ova of *P. capensis* and *P. balfouri* two polar bodies are extruded as usual, but none have been observed in the case of *P. novæ zealandiæ*.

In *P. capensis* the "segmentation" is remarkable, for true cleavage of cells does not occur. The fully "segmented" ovum does not exhibit the usual cell limits. It is a protoplasmic mass—or syncytium—with many nuclei. Even when the body is formed, the continuity of cells persists, nor does the adult lack traces of it. To Mr. Sedgwick this singular fact suggested the theory that the Metazoa may have begun as multinucleate Infusorian-like animals.

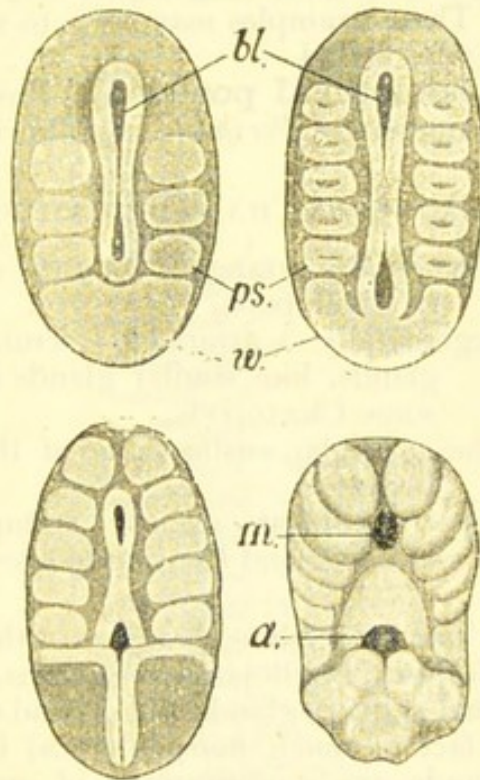


FIG. 122.—Embryos of *Peripatus capensis*, showing closure of blastopore and curvature of embryo.—After Korschelt and Heider.

*a.*, Anus; *bl.*, blastophore; *m.*, mouth; *p.s.*, primitive segments; *w.*, zone of proliferation.



The gut appears as a large vacuole within the multinucleated mass, and a gastrula stage is thus established.

In the ova of *P. novæ zealandiæ*, which have much yolk, a superficial multiplication of nuclei forms a sort of blastoderm, which spreads over almost the entire ovum. The segmentation in this case has been called centrolecithal (the type characteristic of Arthropods), but it is again true that for a long time the cells do not exist as well-defined units. It has been said, indeed, that "the embryo is formed by a process of crystallising out *in situ* from a mass of yolk, among which is a protoplasmic reticulum containing nuclei."

These examples may serve to show that the development of *Peripatus* is very varied.

**Zoological position.**—Professor Lang summarises the synthetic characters of *Peripatus* as follows :—

ANNELID CHARACTERISTICS.	TRACHEATE CHARACTERISTICS.
Segmentally arranged nephridia as in Chætopods.	The presence of tracheæ.
Segmentally arranged crural glands, like similar glands in some Chætopods.	The nature of the heart and the lacunar circulation.
The muscular ensheathing of the body.	The modification of appendages as mouth organs.
Less important are the stump-like legs and the simple eyes.	The form of the salivary glands.
	The smallness of the genuine body cavity or coelom.

The ladder-like character of the ventral nervous system (cf. primitive Molluscs, Phyllopod Crustaceans, and Nemerteans) is probably primitive. That salivary glands and genital ducts are homologous with nephridia, is a fact of much morphological interest. It is possible that the slime glands are modifications of crural glands, and that the latter are homologous with the parapodial glands of some Annelids. It is not certain that the antennæ, jaws, and oral papillæ of *Peripatus* precisely correspond to the antennæ, mandibles, and first maxillæ of Insects.

Our general conclusion is that *Peripatus* is an archaic type, a survivor of forms which were ancestral to Tracheata and closely related to Annelids.

## Second Class of Tracheata Antennata.—MYRIOPODA. Centipedes and Millipedes.

These animals retain a worm-like shape; the numerous rings of the body and the appendages they bear are very uniform; there is little division of labour. Simple wingless insects, known as Collembola and Thysanura, are closely approached by such Myriopods as *Scolopendrella*; and it is likely that Myriopods and Insects are divergent branches from a common stock.



Both centipedes and millipedes live on land, but two or three of the latter occur on the seashore. Most are very shy animals, lurking in dark places and avoiding the light.

The head bears a pair of antennæ, and two other pairs of appendages—mandibles and maxillæ. The limbs are six- or seven-jointed, clawed, and uniform. They have many more legs than insects, but they make less of them. The nervous system, heart, excretory tubules, etc., are like those of Insects.

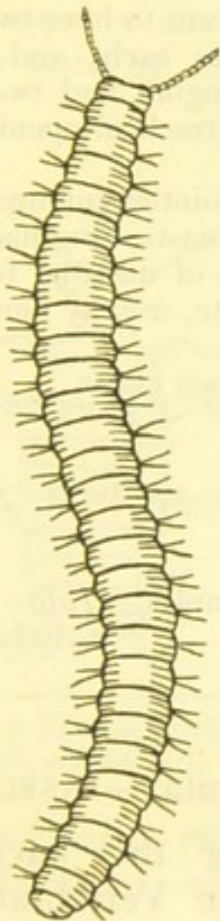


FIG. 123.—A millipede.

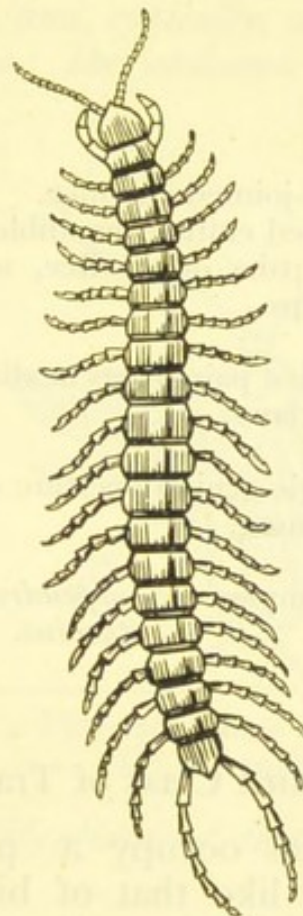


FIG. 124.—A centipede.

The development in many ways suggests and leads up to that of Insects. The two main sub-classes, which are very divergent, are contrasted in the following table :—

In reference to habitat, it is interesting to note that at least two myriopods—*Geophilus submarinus* and *Linotænia maritima*, occur on British coasts.

As distinct from the two chief sub-classes, it is perhaps necessary to recognise other two—Pauropoda, *e.g.* *Pauropus*, and Symphyla, *e.g.* *Scolopendrella*.



## MYRIOPODA.

CENTIPEDES. CHILOPODA.	MILLIPEDES. DIPLOPODA (or CHILOGNATHA).
<p>Carnivorous. Poisonous. Body usually flat.</p> <p>A pair of appendages to each segment.</p> <p>Many-jointed antennæ. Toothed cutting mandibles. Two pairs of maxillæ, usually with palps.</p> <p>The first pair of legs modified as poison claws.</p> <p>A single genital aperture on the last segment.</p> <p>Examples.—<i>Scolopendra</i>. <i>Lithobius</i>.</p>	<p>Vegetarian. Harmless. Body cylindrical.</p> <p>By the imperfect separation of the segments, all but the most anterior seem to have two pairs of appendages each, and also two paired ganglia, and two pairs of stigmata (tracheal openings).</p> <p>Seven-jointed antennæ. Broad masticating mandibles. A pair of maxillæ fused in a broad plate, usually four-lobed.</p> <p>No poison claws.</p> <p>Genital apertures open anteriorly.</p> <p>Examples.—<i>Julus</i>. <i>Geophilus</i>.</p>

## Third Class of Tracheata Antennata.—INSECTA.

Insects occupy a position among the backboneless animals like that of birds among the Vertebrates. The typical members of both classes have wings and the power of true flight, richly aërated bodies, and highly developed respiratory, nervous, and sensory organs. Both are very active and brightly coloured. They show parallel differences between the sexes, and great wealth of species within a narrow range.

## GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Like other Arthropods, Insects have segmented bodies, jointed legs, chitinous armature, and a ventral chain of ganglia linked to a dorsal brain. Compared with Peripatus and Myriopods,*



adult insects show concentration of the body segments, decrease in the number and increase in the quality of the appendages, and wings in the great majority.

Insects are terrestrial and aërial, and rarely aquatic animals; usually winged as adults, breathing by means of tracheæ, and often with a metamorphosis in the course of their life history.

The body is divided into three distinct regions,—head, thorax, and abdomen. The head bears a pair of pre-oral antennæ, and three pairs of mouth appendages; the thorax bears a pair of legs on each of its three segments, and, typically, a pair of wings on each of the posterior two; the abdomen has no

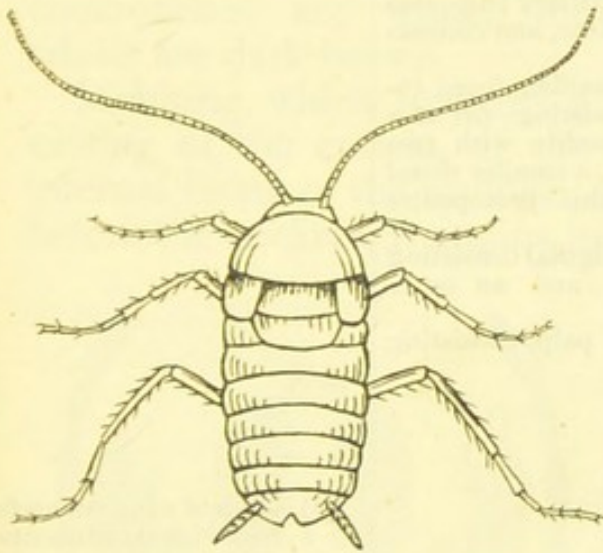


FIG. 125.—Female cockroach  
(*P. orientalis*).

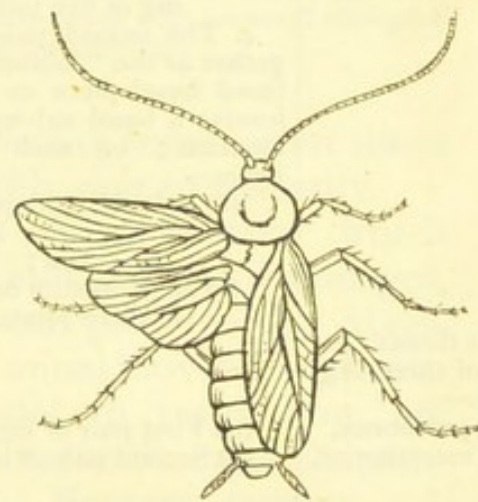


FIG. 126.—Male cockroach  
(*P. orientalis*).

appendages, unless rudimentary modifications of these be represented by stings, ovipositors, etc.

#### First Type of Insects, *Periplaneta* (or *Blatta*).— The COCKROACH.

**Habits.**—The cockroaches in Britain are immigrants from the East (*P. orientalis*), or from America (*P. americana*). They are omnivorous in their diet, active in their habits, hiding during the day and feeding at night. They are ancient insects, for related forms occurred in Silurian ages; they are average types, neither very simple nor very highly specialised. Their position is among the Orthoptera, in the



## EXTERNAL CHARACTERS.

REGION.	APPENDAGES.	OTHER STRUCTURES.
<p>The head is vertically elongated and separated from the thorax by a neck.</p> <p>The thorax consists of three segments—  (a) prothorax,  (b) mesothorax,  (c) metathorax.  (Each segment is bounded by a dorsal tergum, and ventral sternum.)</p> <p>The abdomen consists of 10 (or 11) distinct segments, with terga and sterna as in the thorax. The first sternum is rudimentary in both sexes, and in the female the eighth and ninth segments are concealed by the large seventh.</p>	<p>1. The antennæ (probably homologous with appendages), long, slender, many-jointed, tactile.</p> <p>2. A pair of stout toothed mandibles working sideways.</p> <p>3. The first maxillæ, each consisting—  (a) of a basal piece or protopodite with two joints: a basal cardo, a distal stipes;  (b) of a double endopodite borne by the basal piece, and consisting of an inner lacinia and a softer outer galea;  (c) of an exopodite or maxillary palp also borne by the basal piece, and consisting of five joints.</p> <p>4. The second pair of maxillæ, fused together as the "labium," consisting—(a) of a fused basal piece or protopodite with two joints: a basal sub-mentum, a smaller distal mentum; on each side this protopodite bears—  (b) a double endopodite (ligula) consisting of an inner lacinia, and an outer paraglossa;  (c) an exopodite or labial palp, consisting of three joints.</p> <p>(a) First pair of legs.  (b) Second pair of legs.</p> <p>(c) Third pair of legs. Each leg consists of many joints—a basal expanded "coxa" with a small "trochanter" at its distal end, a "femur," a "tibia," a six-jointed tarsus or foot ending in a pair of claws (Fig. 127).</p> <p>Two cigar-shaped tactile anal cerci, attached under the edges of the last tergum, are possibly relics of the last abdominal appendages.</p> <p>The ninth sternum of the male bears a pair of styles, possibly relics of appendages.</p> <p>Both sexes have complex hard structures (gonapophyses) beside the genital apertures. They are possibly relics of appendages.</p>	<p>The large black compound eyes.</p> <p>The "upper lip" or labrum, in front of the mouth.</p> <p>The white oval patches near the bases of the antennæ, possibly sensory.</p> <p>(b) A pair of wing-covers (modified wings) rudimentary in female of <i>P. orientalis</i>.</p> <p>(c) A pair of membranous wings, sometimes used in flight, folded when not in use, absent in female of <i>P. orientalis</i>.</p> <p>Between the segments of the thorax are two pairs of respiratory apertures or stigmata.</p> <p>A pair of stigmata occur between the edges of the terga and sterna in the first eight abdominal segments.</p> <p>The anus is terminal, beneath the tenth tergum of the abdomen; a pair of "podical plates" lie beside it.</p> <p>The genital aperture is on the eighth segment in the female, behind the ninth sternum in the male.</p> <p>The opening of the spermatheca—the female's receptacle for spermatozoa—lies on the ninth sternum of the abdomen.</p>



same order as locusts and grasshoppers. The young are hatched as miniature adults, except that wings are absent; in other words, there is no metamorphosis in development.

**Skin.**—There is an external chitinous cuticle and a subjacent cellular layer—the epidermis or hypodermis—from which the cuticle is formed. The newly hatched cockroaches are white, the adults are dark brown.

Moulting, which involves a casting of the cuticle, of the internal lining of the tracheæ, etc., occurs some seven times before the cockroach attains in its fifth year to maturity.

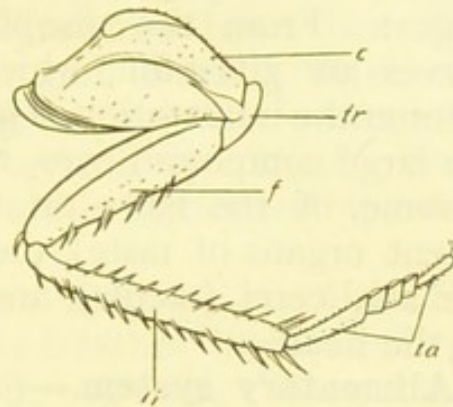


FIG. 127.—Leg of cockroach.

*c.*, Broad expanded coxa; *tr.*, trochanter; *f.*, femur; *ti.*, tibia; *ta.*, five-jointed tarsus with terminal claws and adhesive cushions.

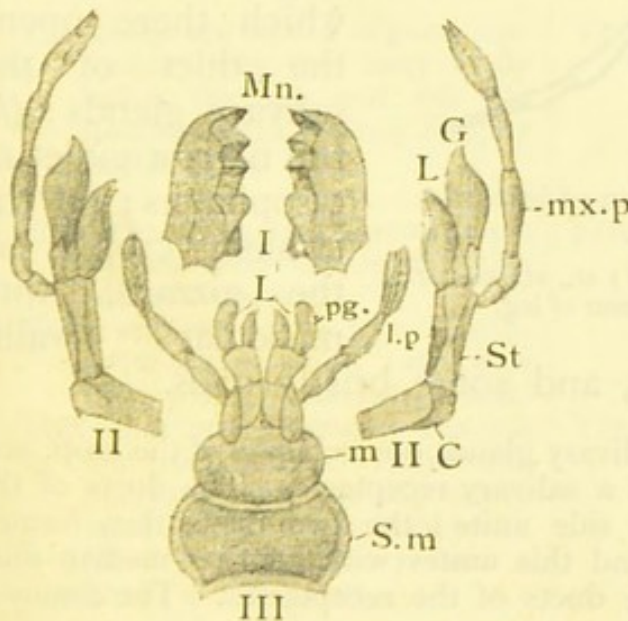


FIG. 128.—Mouth appendages of cockroach.—After Dufour.

I. *Mn.*, mandibles; II. first maxillæ; *C.*, cardo; *St.*, stipes; *L.*, lacinia; *G.*, galea; *mx.p.*, maxillary palp; III. second maxillæ or labium; *S.m.*, submentum; *m.*, mentum; *L.*, lacinia; *pg.*, paraglossa; *l.p.*, labial palp.

The *muscles* which move the appendages, and produce the abdominal movements essential to respiration, are markedly cross striped.

**Nervous system.**—A pair of supra-oesophageal or cerebral ganglia lie united in the head. As a brain they receive impressions by antennary and optic nerves. By means of a paired commissure surrounding the gullet, they are connected with a double ventral chain of ten ganglia. Of these, the first or sub-oesophageal pair are large, and

give off nerves to the mouth parts, etc.; from each of the ganglia of the thorax and the abdomen nerves are given off



to adjacent parts. There are three pairs of ganglia in the thorax, and six in the abdomen, of which the last is the largest. From the oesophageal commissures two visceral nerves are given off, which form in a somewhat complex manner the innervation of gullet, crop, and gizzard. Besides the large compound eyes, there are other sensory structures—some of the hairs on the skin, the maxillæ (to some extent organs of taste), the antennæ (tactile and olfactory), the anal cerci (tactile), and possibly the oval white patches on the head.

**Alimentary system.**—(1) The fore-gut (stomodæum) is lined by a chitinous cuticle continuous with that of the

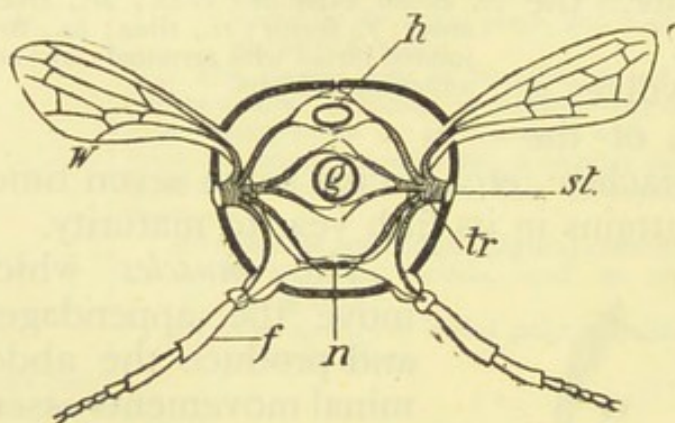


FIG. 129.—Transverse section of insect.—  
After Packard.

*h.*, Heart; *g.*, gut; *n.*, nerve-cord; *st.*, stigma; *tr.*, trachea; *w.*, wing; *f.*, femur of leg.

outer surface of the body. It includes—(a) the buccal or mouth cavity, in which there is a tongue-like ridge, and into which there opens the duct of the salivary glands; (b) the narrow gullet or oesophagus; (c) the swollen crop; (d) the gizzard, with muscular walls,

six hard cuticular teeth, and some bristly pads.

There is a pair of diffuse salivary glands on each side of the crop, and between each pair of glands a salivary receptacle. The ducts of the two salivary glands on each side unite; the two ducts thus formed combine in a median duct, and this unites with another median duct formed from the union of the ducts of the receptacles. The common duct opens into the mouth.

(2) The mid-gut (mesenteron) is lined by endoderm. It is short and narrow, and with its anterior end seven or eight club-shaped digestive (pancreatic) outgrowths are connected.

(3) The hind-gut (proctodæum) is lined by a chitinous cuticle. It is convoluted and divided into narrow ileum, wider colon, and dilated rectum with six internal ridges.

**Respiratory system.**—The tracheal tubes, which have



ten pairs of lateral apertures or stigmata, ramify throughout the body, and have a chitinous lining throughout.

**Circulatory system.**—The chambered heart lies along the mid-dorsal line of abdomen and thorax. It receives blood by lateral valvular apertures from the surrounding pericardial space, and drives it forwards by a slender aorta. The blood circulates, however, within ill-defined spaces in the body.

**Excretory system.**—There are sixty or so fine (Malpighian) tubules, which rise in six bundles from the beginning of the ileum, and twine through the "fatty body" and in the abdominal cavity. The absence of nephridia in insects has already been noted.

#### REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM.

OF THE MALE.	OF THE FEMALE.
<p>The testes are paired organs, surrounded by the fatty body below the 5th and 6th abdominal terga. They atrophy in the adult.</p> <p>From the testes, two narrow ducts or vasa deferentia lead to two seminal vesicles.</p> <p>These seminal vesicles (the "mushroom-shaped gland") open into the top of the ejaculatory duct.</p> <p>This duct opens between the 9th and 10th sterna. Beside the aperture, there are copulatory structures (gonapophyses). With the ejaculatory duct a gland is associated.</p>	<p>The ovaries are paired organs, in the posterior abdominal region, each consisting of eight ovarian tubes. These are bead-like strings of ova at various stages of ripeness.</p> <p>From the ovarian tubes of each side eight eggs pass at a time into a short wide oviduct.</p> <p>The two oviducts unite and open in a median aperture on the 8th abdominal sternum. Beside the aperture are hard structures (gonapophyses) which help in the egg-laying. Here also a pair of "colleterial" glands pour out their cementing secretion by two apertures. The spermatheca is a paired sac with a single aperture on the 9th abdominal sternum.</p>

Sixteen ova, one from each ovarian tube, are usually enclosed within each egg-capsule. The latter is formed



from the secretion of the colleterial glands. Each egg is enclosed in an oval shell, in which there are several little holes (micropyles), through one of which a spermatozoon enters. Spermatozoa, from the store within the spermatheca, are included in the egg-capsule. The development is similar to that of other insects, and it has already been mentioned that there is no metamorphosis.

At an early stage in development some cells associated with the mesoderm are set apart as reproductive cells, and originally these have a segmental arrangement as in Annelids; at a later stage other mesoderm cells join these, some forming ova, others epithelial cells around the latter. The distinction between truly reproductive cells and associated epithelial cells, which is said to be late of appearing in some of the higher insects, is established at a very early stage in the cockroach.

### Second Type of Insects.—The BRITISH HIVE-BEE (*Apis mellifica*).

This is a much more highly specialised type than the cockroach. It belongs to the order Hymenoptera.

**Habits.**—The Hive-Bee (*Apis mellifica*) is a native of this country, and is the species most commonly found domesticated. It is the only British representative of the genus *Apis*, and exhibits, in its most fully-developed form, the social life which is foreshadowed among the Humble-Bees. As a consequence of this social life, there is much division of labour, which expresses itself alike in habit and in structure. The males (drones) take no part in the work of the colony, and are wholly reproductive; the females include the queen-bees and the workers. In the workers, which perform all the work of the hive, the reproductive organs are normally abortive and functionless. In the queens, of which there is but one adult to each hive, the enormous development of the reproductive organs seems to act as a check upon the brain and other organs, which are less developed than in the workers. The workers are further divisible into nurses, which are young and do not leave the hive, being occupied with the care of the larvæ, and the older foraging bees which gather food for the whole colony.

In considering the relation between the life of the Hive-Bee and that of many allied forms (*Bombus*, etc.), it is



important to notice that the habit of laying up stores of food material for the winter enables the colony, and not merely an individual, to survive, and must thus have greatly assisted in the evolution of sociality.

**External features.**—The body shows the usual division into head, thorax, and abdomen, and varies considerably in the three different types, being smallest in the workers. It is entirely covered with hairs, some of which are sensitive, while others are used in pollen gathering, etc.

The head bears antennæ, which are composed of a long basal and numerous smaller joints. They are marvellously sensitive, serving to communicate impressions, and also containing organs of special sense. A pair of compound eyes, largest in the drones, and three median ocelli, are also present in the head region. Of the other appendages of the head, the mandibles are in the workers very powerful, and used for many purposes connected with comb-building. In the first maxillæ the maxillary palps are aborted, and the appendage consists of an undivided lamina at each side, borne on a basal piece consisting as usual of stipes and cardo. The second pair of maxillæ form as usual the labium or so-called lower lip, and are much modified. The united basal joints form the mentum and sub-mentum. From the mentum at either side springs the long labial palp, which represents the outer fork of the typical appendage. The endopodite at each side is divided into two parts, but the inner two (lacinia) are united, much elongated, and form the tongue or ligula of the bee. The outer halves form the paraglossæ, which are closely apposed to the base of the ligula. It is the great elongation of the ligula and labial palps which especially fits the bee for nectar-gathering. The three structures can be closely apposed to one another, and then form an air-tight tube, up which, by the action of the stomach, nectar is sucked. In many of our British bees the ligula is much shorter, and more or less trowel-like in shape, and is then used largely, as in wasps, in the operation of plastering the nest. In such cases the bee can only suck those flowers in which the nectar is superficial. The hive-bees and humble-bees, on the other hand, are specially modified to enable them to extract nectar from tubular flowers. When not in use the elongated mouth-parts are folded back upon themselves, not coiled as in butterflies and moths, where there is even greater elongation.

In the queen and in the drone the mouth-parts are shorter, and are not used in honey gathering.

The thoracic appendages consist as usual of three pairs of legs, which have the usual parts. On the first leg, at the junction of the tibia and the first tarsal joint, there is a complicated mechanism which is employed in cleaning the antennæ; this is present in all three forms, and varies with the size of the antennæ. In the workers the third leg is remarkably modified for pollen gathering purposes. The first tarsal joint bears regular rows of stiff straight hairs on which the pollen grains are collected; they are borne to the hive in the pollen basket, placed at the back of the tibia, and furnished with numerous hairs. In queen and drone, these special arrangements of hairs are absent.



The second and third thoracic segments bear each a pair of wings. These are largest in the drones and relatively smallest in the queen, who flies but seldom. At the base of each wing there is a respiratory spiracle.

In the adult queen and worker, the abdomen is divided into six segments; in the drone, into seven. There are no abdominal appendages. On the ventral surface in the worker, but not in the queen or

drone, there are four pairs of wax pockets or glands, which secrete the wax, which, after mastication with saliva, is employed in building the combs. The abdomen also bears in queen and worker five pairs of spiracles, but in the drone, on account of the additional segment, there are six pairs. The total number of spiracles is thus fourteen for queen and worker, and sixteen for the drone. The posterior region of the abdomen bears the complicated sting. In the worker this consists of a hard incomplete sheath, which envelops two barbed darts. The poison flows down a channel lying between the darts and the sheath. Ramifying through the abdomen are found the two slender coiled tubes which constitute the poison gland. At the posterior end of the body these unite and open into a large poison sac. When a bee uses its sting, the chitinous sheath first pierces the skin, and then the wound is deepened by the barbed and pointed darts, while at the same time poison is steadily pumped down the channel mentioned above, and pours out by minute openings at the bases of the darts.

The poison contains formic acid,

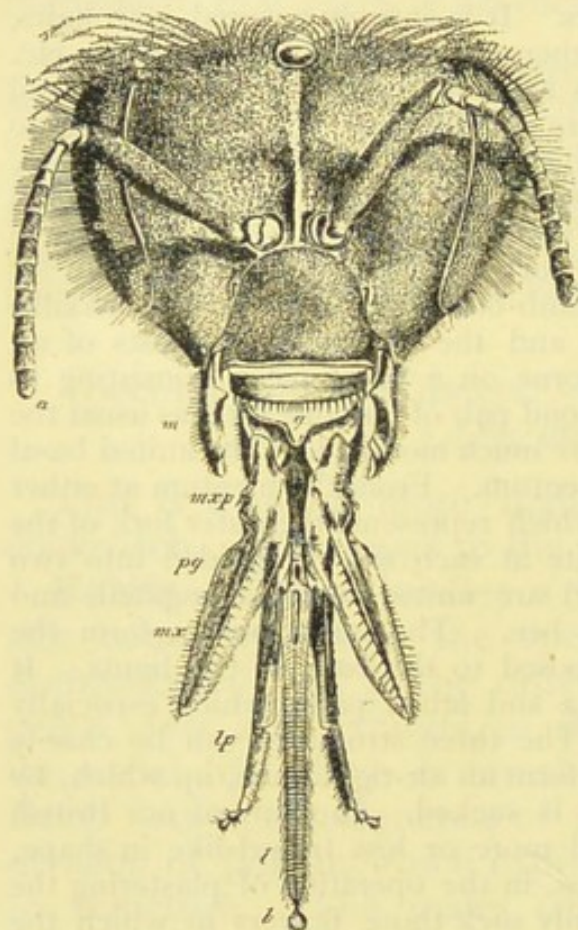


FIG. 130.—Head and mouth-parts of bee.—After Cheshire.

*a.*, Antenna; *m.*, mandible; *g.*, labrum or epipharynx; *mx.p.*, rudiment of maxillary palp; *mx.*, lamina of maxilla; *lp.*, labial palp; *l.*, ligula; *b.*, bouton at end. The paraglossæ lie concealed between the basal portions of the labial palps and the ligula.

and is fatal to the bee if directly introduced into its blood. Associated with the sting there are a pair of delicate tactile palps. In the queen the sting is curved and more powerful, but it is apparently only used in combat with a rival. In the worker the sting, and with it a portion of the gut, is usually lost after use, and, in consequence, death ensues; the queen, on the other hand, can withdraw her sting from the wound with considerable ease. The sting is really an ovipositor adapted to a new function. Naturally, therefore, there is no trace of it in the drones.



**Nervous system.**—In the adult this exhibits considerable fusion of parts. The supra-œsophageal ganglia are very large, and send large lateral extensions to the compound eyes. This “brain” is best developed in the active workers. The sub-œsophageal mass is formed by the fusion of three pairs of ganglia. In the thorax there are two pairs of ganglia, of which the second supplies the wings and the

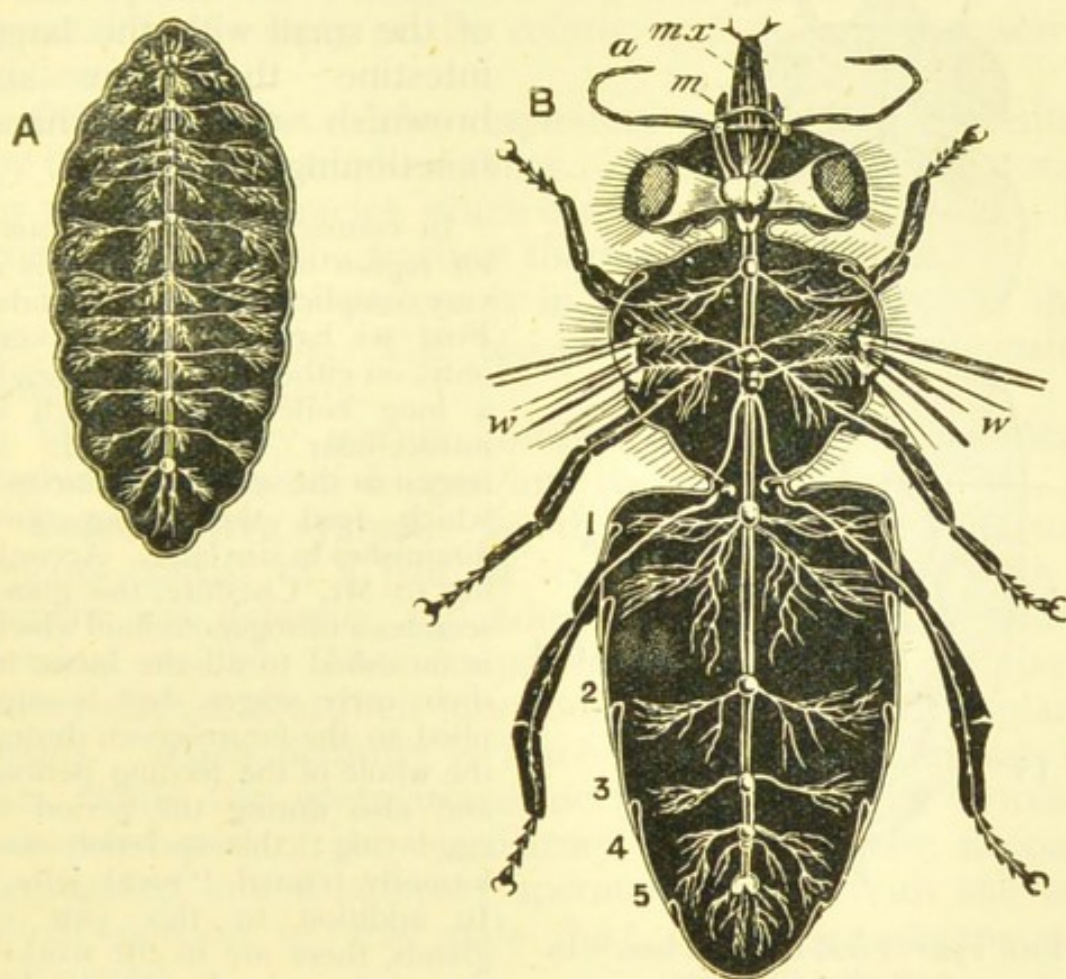


FIG. 131.—Nervous system of bee.—After Cheshire.

A, of larva. B, of adult; *a.*, antenna; *mx.*, maxilla; *m.*, mandible; *w.*, origin of wing; 1-5, abdominal ganglia.

two last pairs of legs. In the worker there are five pairs of abdominal ganglia, but in the queen and drone only four. The sense organs are the simple and compound eyes, and the antennæ, which are furnished with numerous sensitive structures.

**Alimentary system.**—The œsophagus is a narrow tube which runs down the thoracic region. In the abdominal region it expands into the crop or honey-sac. The crop



opens by a complicated orifice, with a remarkable stopper arrangement, into the digestive region or chyle stomach, which is separated by a pylorus from the coiled small intestine. The inner wall of the small intestine bears numerous rows of chitinous teeth set in longitudinal ridges,

and is perforated by the apertures of the excretory tubules. At the junction of the small with the large intestine there are six brownish plates, perhaps functioning as valves.

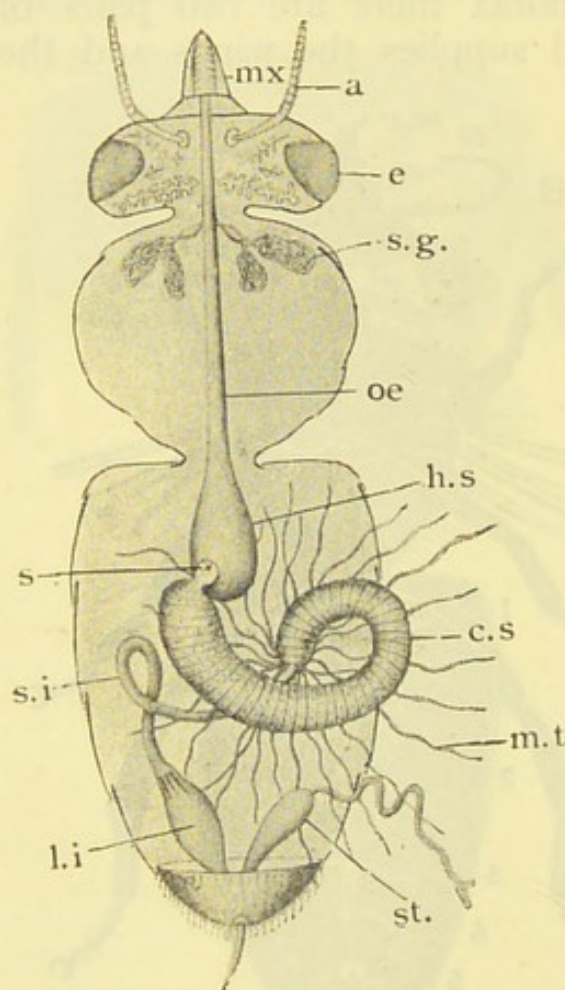


FIG. 132.—Food canal of bee.—In part after Cheshire.

*mx.*, Maxilla; *a.*, antenna; *e.*, eye; *s.g.*, salivary glands; *oe.*, oesophagus; *h.s.*, honey sac; *s.*, stopper; *cs.*, chylific stomach; *m.t.*, Malpighian tubules; *s.i.*, small intestine; *l.i.*, large intestine; *st.*, sting.

small, and the ducts open just within the mandible. The last three pairs of glands are found also in drone and queen.

The method of feeding in the bee differs considerably in the three types. In the worker, the honey sucked up from flowers is mixed with saliva, passes down the gullet into the crop, thence by the opening of the "stomach mouth" it

In connection with the anterior region of the gut there is a very complicated series of glands. First we have, in the workers only, on either side of the head, a long coiled gland which is intracellular in type. It is largest in the so-called "nurses" which feed the young, and diminishes in size later. According to Mr. Cheshire, this gland secretes a nitrogenous fluid which is furnished to all the larvæ in their early stages, but is supplied to the future queen during the whole of the feeding period, and also during the period of egg-laying; this secretion was formerly termed "royal jelly." In addition to this pair of glands, there are in the worker three other gland systems. Of these, the second and third pairs have a common central outlet on the mentum, and secrete the saliva which is plentifully mixed with the nectar during suction. The fourth pair is



may reach the true stomach and so be digested, or may be carried in the crop to the hive, and there emptied into the cells by regurgitation. The pollen, which is frequently mixed with the honey, is separated from the latter by means of the stomach mouth, and is digested. Before impregnation, the queen, like the worker, feeds on pollen and honey; after it, she is always fed by the attendant workers. The drones, like the young workers, avail themselves of the general food-supply of the colony, and do not themselves collect honey.

**Other systems.**—The respiratory system is represented by the ramifying tracheal tubes. They open to the exterior by the lateral spiracles, which can be completely closed. In connection with the tracheæ there are large air-sacs.

The circulatory system is in essentials the same as that of the cockroach. The blood contains a few nucleated amœboid corpuscles.

The excretory system consists of numerous fine Malpighian tubules which open into the small intestine.

**Reproductive system.**—In the drone the reproductive organs consist of a pair of testes, each furnished with a narrow vas deferens, expanding at its distal end into a seminal vesicle. The seminal vesicles open into the ejaculatory duct, and at their junction a large paired mucus gland opens. When maturity is reached, the testes diminish in size, while the spermatozoa accumulate in the terminal expanded part of the ejaculatory duct, and there become aggregated into a compact spermatophore. With the terminal portion of the male duct copulatory organs are associated.

Mating takes place only once in the life of the queen, and is followed by the death of the drone.

In the queen the large ovaries occupy considerable space in the abdominal region. As usual, each consists of numerous (100-150) ovarian tubes, containing ova in various stages of development. The ovarian tubes open into the right and left oviducts, which again unite to form the common oviduct. With the anterior portion of the common duct the globular spermatheca is associated. In connection with it there is a gland corresponding to the mucus gland of the male. The oviduct terminates in a copulatory pouch.

Previous to laying, the eggs are fertilised by sperms set free from the spermatheca. In the case of drone eggs, this liberation of spermatozoa



does not take place, and the eggs in consequence are parthenogenetic. Queens which have never mated, or which have exhausted their stock of male elements, habitually lay drone eggs, but those which are laying abundant fertilised eggs at times also lay unfertilised eggs. This withholding of spermatozoa is said to be "voluntary," and related to the needs of the colony, but the physiological reason is unknown.

The workers possess female organs similar in type to those of the queen, but of an extremely rudimentary nature.

The eggs are laid singly in the cells of the comb, at the rate of about two per minute, for weeks together. They are of the usual insect type. According to the size of the cell in which it is deposited, and the food with which it is furnished, the fertilised ovum develops into a worker or into a queen. The development takes place within the cell, and includes a complete metamorphosis.

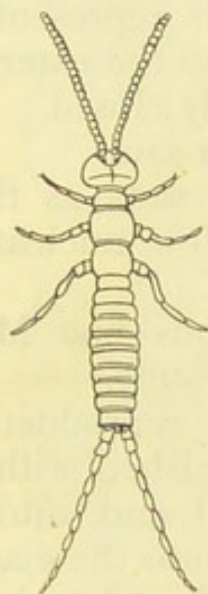


FIG. 133.—One of the Thysanura (*Campodea staphylinus*).—After Lubbock.

The hairs and bristles have been removed.

### CLASSIFICATION OF INSECTS.

- I. Primitive wingless insects, Apterygota or Aptera, including Thysanura, *e.g.* *Campodea*, *Lepisma*; Collembola; Spring-tails, *e.g.* *Podura*, *Sminthurus*.
- II. Winged insects, Pterygota (in some degenerate forms the wings have been lost).
  - A. With mouth-parts usually adapted throughout life for biting (Meno-gnathous), with no metamorphosis (Ametabolic) or with incomplete metamorphosis (Hemimetabolic).
 

*e.g.* Orthoptera (cockroach, locust, cricket, etc.); Corrodentia (Termites, bird - bee); Odonata (Dragon - flies); Ephemerida (May-flies); and Dermaptera (Ear-wigs).
  - B. With mouth-parts adapted in the main as suctorial organs (Menorhynchous), usually with no metamorphosis (Ametabolic).
 

*e.g.* Rhynchota or Hemiptera, *e.g.* Phylloxera, aphides, coccus insects; Cicadas; bugs; water-scorpions, lice.
  - C. With complete metamorphosis (Holometabolic), with mouth-parts always adapted for biting (Menognathous), or adapted at first for biting and afterwards for sucking (Metagnathous).
 

*e.g.* Coleoptera (beetles); Diptera (two-winged flies); Lepidoptera (butterflies and moths); Hymenoptera (ants, bees, and wasps).



## GENERAL NOTES ON INSECTS.

The main characteristics of insects have already been described in the two types chosen, but we here revise them in general terms.

**Form.**—The body of an adult insect may be divided into three distinct regions:—

1. The undivided head, which consists of at least three fused segments, as it bears three pairs of appendages besides the antennæ.
2. The median thorax, divided into pro-, meso-, and meta-thoracic segments, each with a pair of legs, the last two often with wings.
3. The abdomen with about eleven rings, usually without trace of limbs.

Within these limits there is great variety of form, *e.g.* the long dragon-fly with its large outspread wings, the compact cockchafer, the thin-waisted wasps and long-bodied butterflies, the house-fly and cricket, the large moths and beetles, and the almost invisible insect parasites.

**Appendages.** — Insects feel their way, test food, and apparently communicate impressions to one another, by means of the antennæ, which some authorities regard as pre-oral outgrowths, not as true appendages. Then follow the mandibles, first maxillæ, and second maxillæ, on the head; the three pairs of legs on the thorax; and sometimes vestiges of legs on the abdomen.

It was a step of some importance in morphology when Savigny showed that the three pairs of appendages about the mouth were homologous with the other appendages, *i.e.* were masticatory legs.

(1) Furthest forward lie two *mandibles*, the biting and cutting jaws. These are single-jointed, and thus differ from the organs of the same name in the crayfish, which bear a three-jointed palp in addition to the hard basal part. In those insects which suck and do not bite, *e.g.* adult butterflies, the mandibles are reduced.

(2) Next in order is the *first pair of maxillæ*. Each maxilla consists of a basal piece (protopodite), an inner fork (endopodite), and an outer fork (exopodite). The entomologists divide the protopodite into a lower joint the *cardo*, and an upper the *stipes*; the endopodite into an internal *lacinia*, and an external *galea*; while the exopodite is called the maxillary palp.

(3) The last pair of oral appendages or *second maxillæ* are partially fused, and form what is called the *labium*. The lower and upper joints of their fused protopodites are called *submentum* and *mentum*; the endopodites on each side are double, as in the first maxillæ, and consist of internal *lacinia* and external *paraglossa*; the exopodites are called the *labial palps*.

The three pairs of thoracic legs consist of many joints, are usually



clawed and hairy at their tips, and differ greatly according to their uses, as may be seen by comparing, for instance, the hairy feet by aid of which the fly runs up the smooth window pane, the muscular limbs of grasshoppers, the lank length of those which characterise "daddy-long-legs," the bees' legs with their pollen baskets, the oars of water-beetles.

**Wings.**—These arise as flattened hollow sacs, which grow out from the two posterior segments of the thorax. They are moved by muscles, and traversed by "veins" or "nervures,"

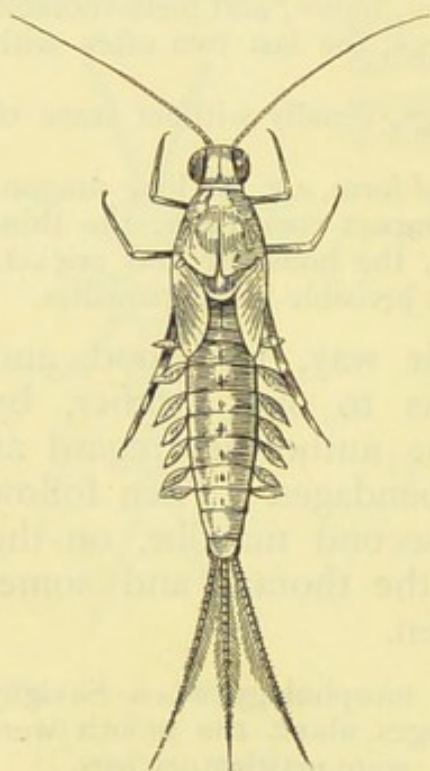


FIG. 134.—Young may-fly or ephemerid.—After Eaton.

Showing tracheal gills, and wings appearing in front of them.

which include air-tubes, nerves, and vessel-like continuations of the body cavity. Most insects have two pairs, but many sluggish females and parasites, like lice and fleas, have lost them. On the other hand, there is no reason to believe that the very simplest wingless insects, known as Collembola and Thysanura, ever had wings.

There are many interesting differences in regard to wings in the various orders of Insects. Thus in beetles the front pair form wing-covers or elytra; in the little bee parasites—Strepsiptera—they are twisted rudiments; in flies the posterior pair are small knobbed stalks (halteres or balancers); in bees the wings on each side are hooked together. When the insect is at rest the wings are usually folded neatly on the back; but dragon-flies and others keep them expanded; butterflies raise them like a single sail on the back; moths keep them flat. Many wings bear small scales or hairs, and are often brightly coloured. It is well known that the colours also vary with sex, climate, and surroundings. Most interesting are those cases in which the colours of an insect harmonise exactly with those of its habitat, or make it a mimetic copy of some more successfully protected neighbour.

As to the origin of wings, it may be remembered that in many cases they are of some use in respiration as well as in locomotion, and the theory seems plausible that wings were originally respiratory outgrowths, which by and by became useful for aerial locomotion. This view is consistent with an idea, which grows in favour with evolutionists, that new organs develop by the predominance of some new function in organs which had some prior significance. Moreover,



we can fancy that an increase in respiratory efficiency brought about by the outgrowths in question would quicken the whole life, and would tend to raise insects into the air, just as terrestrial insects can be made to frisk and jump when placed in a vessel with relatively more oxygen than there is in the atmosphere. Finally, we must note that the aquatic larvæ of some insects, *e.g.* may-flies, have a series of respiratory outgrowths from the sides of the abdomen, the so-called "tracheal gills," which in origin and appearance are like young wings (Fig. 134).

Insects excel in locomotion. "They walk, run, and jump with the quadrupeds; they fly with the birds; they glide with the serpents, and they swim with the fish." They beat the elastic air with their wings, and though there cannot be so much complexity or movement as in birds where the individual feathers move, the insect wing is no rigid plate, and its up-and-down motions are complex. They can soar rapidly, but their lightness often makes horizontal steering difficult. The wind often helps as well as hinders them; thus the insects which fly in and out of the windows of express trains are probably in part sucked along. Marey calculates the approximate number of wing strokes per second at 330 for the fly, 240 for the humble-bee, 190 for the hive-bee, 110 for the wasp, 28 for the dragon-fly, 9 for a butterfly. For short distances a bee can outfly a pigeon.

**Skin.**—As in other Arthropods, the epidermis (or hypodermis) of Insects forms a firm cuticle of chitin, which in the exigencies of growth has sometimes to be moulted. This cuticle is often finely marked, so that the animal seems iridescent; and there are many different kinds of scales, hairs, and spines. Chitin is not favourable to the development of skin glands. Most insects have "salivary glands" opening in or near the mouth. Bees have wax-making glands opening on the abdomen; aphides have glandular tubes; not a few have poison bags; and many larvæ besides silk-worms have organs from which are exuded the threads of which a cocoon is made.

**Muscular system.**—In very active animals like Insects, we of course find a highly developed set of rapidly contracting striped muscles. These work the wings, the legs, and the jaws. The resulting movements have this further significance, that they help in the respiratory interchange of gases, and in the circulation of the blood.

**Nervous system.**—It is often remarked as marvellous



that ants and bees, with brains smaller than pin-heads, should be so "clever." The more we know about an ant, "the more the wonder grows, so small a head should carry all it knows," or seems to know. But these statements imply forgetfulness of the relative size of brain to body, and tend, moreover, to exaggerate the importance of mere size. The complexity of a brain is the important fact, not its size, and the cleverer insects (ants, bees, and wasps) have more complex brains than the others. As in other Arthropods, the nervous system consists—(a) of a dorsal brain or supra-oesophageal ganglionic mass; and (b) of a double ventral nerve-cord with a number of paired ganglia, of which the most anterior (the sub-oesophageal) are linked to the brain by a ring commissure around the gullet; and (c) of nerves given off from the various ganglia to the sense organs, the alimentary canal, and the other organs. In many of the higher insects the ganglia of the ventral nerve-cord are in some degrees concentrated, and the adults are usually more centralised than the larvæ.

**Sensory structures.**—Animals so much alive as Insects, and in surroundings so stimulating as many of them enjoy, have naturally highly developed sense organs.

Two compound eyes are present on the head of all adults except the primitive Collembola, the degenerate lice, the likewise parasitic fleas, and blind insects which live in caves or other dark places. Each eye contains a large number of similar elements, in each of which we can distinguish—(1) a cuticular or corneal facet; (2) a glassy lens-like portion; (3) a retinal portion in association with which are fibres from the optic nerve, and there are also pigmented cells between the elements (cf. p. 255).

In addition to the compound eyes, simple eyes or ocelli are present in the adults of many insects, *e.g.* ants, bees, and wasps; they occur without the accompaniment of compound eyes in Collembola, lice, and fleas, and they are usually the only eyes possessed by larvæ. They have only one lens (monomeniscous), whereas the compound forms have many lenses (polymeniscous). Their structure varies greatly, and their use is very uncertain.

Auditory (or chordotonal) organs have been found in all orders of Insects (except as yet the Thysanoptera), and occur both in the larvæ



and in the adults. Their essential structure is as follows :—A nerve ends in a centre or ganglion near the skin ; some of the cells of this ganglion grow out into long sensitive rods enclosed in a tiny sheath ; the rods are directly or indirectly connected with the epidermis above them. “ They are found in groups of 2-200 in various parts of the body, antennæ, palps, legs, wings in the halteres of *Diptera*, and upon the dorsal aspect of the abdomen.” Quite different from these, and occurring in flies alone, on the hind end of the larva, or at the base of the adult’s feelers, are little bags with fluid in which clear globules float. We do not know how much or how little Insects hear, but the “ song ” of male *Cicadas* and crickets does not fall on deaf ears.

In addition to the “ eyes ” and “ ears,” there are innervated hairs (tactile, tasting, olfactory) on the antennæ and mouth-parts of many insects. Not a few have been shown to possess a diffuse or dermatoptic sense, by which, for instance, they can, when blinded, find their way out of a dark box.

Many Insects produce sounds which often express a variety of emotions. We hear the whirr of rapidly moving wings in flies ; the buzz of leaf-like structures near the openings of the air-tubes in many *Hymenoptera* ; the scraping of legs against wing ribs in grasshoppers ; the chirping of male crickets, which rub one wing against its neighbour ; the piping of male *Cicadas*, which have a complex musical instrument ; the voice of the death’s-head moth, which expels air forcibly from its mouth. The death-watch taps with its head on wooden objects, as if knocking at the door behind which his mate may be hidden. In some cases the sounds are simply automatic reflexes of activity ; in many cases they serve as alluring love calls, and they may also serve as expressions of fear and anger, or as warning alarms.

**Alimentary system.** — The diet of Insects is very varied. Some, such as locusts, are vegetarian, and destroy our crops ; others are carnivorous (we need not specify the homœopathist’s leech), and suck the blood of living victims, or devour the dead ; the bees flit in search of nectar from flower to flower, while the ant-lion lurks in his pit of sand for any unwary stumbler ; the termites gnaw decaying wood ; some ants keep aphides as cows (“*vaccæ formicarum*,” Linnæus called them), whose sweet juices they lick ; and a great number of larvæ devour the flesh and vegetables in which they are hatched.

It is important to have some vivid idea of the diversity of diet, for the many modifications of mouth organs, in beetle and bee, in caterpillar and butterfly, as well as differences in the alimentary canal itself, are associated with the way in which the insect feeds.

For purposes of classification, the following distinctions in regard to the mouth organs are useful :—



- (a) The mouth-parts may be similar in all stages of life, and adapted for biting. In this case the term *MENOGNATHA* (*i.e.* permanently jawed) is applied—*e.g.* to Orthoptera and Coleoptera.
- (b) The mouth-parts may be similar in all stages of life, and adapted for sucking. In this case the term *MENORHYNCHA* (*i.e.* permanently with a sucking proboscis) is applied—*e.g.* to bugs.
- (c) The mouth-parts may be adapted for biting in the larva, for sucking in the adult. In this case the term *METAGNATHA* (*i.e.* with changed jaws) is applied—*e.g.* to butterflies.

The alimentary canal consists of fore-gut, mid-gut, and hind-gut, but in many cases it seems very doubtful if the mid-gut has its typically endodermic character. It seems sometimes at least to arise from a gradual approximation of the other two regions, which are fore and hind invaginations of the ectoderm, and therefore lined by a chitinous cuticle.

The fore-gut conducts food, and includes mouth cavity, pharynx, and œsophagus, the latter being often swollen into a storing crop, or continued into a muscular gizzard with grinding plates of chitin.

The mid-gut is digestive and absorptive, often bearing a number of glandular outgrowths or cæca, and varies in length (in beetles at least) in inverse proportion to the nutritive and digestible quality of the food.

The hind-gut is said to be partly absorptive, but is chiefly a conducting intestine, often coiled and terminally expanded into a rectum with which glands are frequently associated.

In association with the alimentary canal are various glands:—

- (a) The salivary glands, which open in or near the mouth. They are usually paired on each side, and provided with a reservoir. They arise as invaginations of the ectoderm near the mouth. Their secretion is mainly diastatic in function, *i.e.* it changes starchy material into sugar by means of a ferment. Along with these may be ranked the "spinning glands" of caterpillars, etc., which also open at the mouth. They secrete material which hardens into the threads used for the cocoon.
- (b) From the beginning of the mid-gut blind outgrowths sometimes arise (in some Orthoptera, etc.), which are apparently digestive. They are sometimes called pyloric cæca. In other cases (some beetles) there may be more numerous and smaller glandular outgrowths resembling villi in appearance.
- (c) From the hind-gut arise numerous fine Malpighian tubes, which are excretory in function.



**Respiratory system.**—The body of an insect is traversed by a system of air-tubes (tracheæ), which open laterally by special apertures (stigmata), and by means of numerous branches conduct the air to all the recesses of the tissues. In animals which breathe by gills or lungs the blood is carried to the air; in insects the air permeates the whole body. But how does the air pass in and out? In part, no doubt, there is a slow diffusion; in part the movements of the wings and legs will help; but there are also special expiratory muscles. We see their action when we watch a drone-fly panting on a flower. Inspiration is passive, as in birds, and depends on the elasticity of the skin and of the tracheal walls; expiration is active, and depends upon these muscles. They are chiefly situated in the abdomen, but in some beetles (at least) they are also present in the metathorax.

The tracheæ seem to arise as tubular ingrowths of skin, and, primitively, each segment probably contained a distinct pair; but their number has been reduced, and they are often in part connected into a system. With the doubtful exception of one of the primitive *Collembola*, and the certain exception of caterpillars, no insects have any tracheal openings in the head region. There are rarely more than two pairs in the thorax; there are often six to eight pairs in the abdomen; the maximum total is ten pairs. Each trachea is kept tense throughout the greater part of its course by internal chitinous thickenings, which apparently have a spiral course. The branches of the tracheæ penetrate into all the organs of the body, carrying oxygen to every part. The very efficient respiration of insects must be kept in mind in an appreciation of the general activity of their life.

As the conditions of larval life are often different from those of the adult insects, the mode of respiration may also differ in details.

In insects without marked metamorphosis, and even in some beetles in which the metamorphosis is complete, the young insect and the adult both breathe by tracheæ with open stigmata. Both are said to be "holopneustic."

When the larvæ live in water, the tracheal system is closed, otherwise the creatures would drown. This closed condition is termed "apneustic." These larvæ (of dragon-flies, may-flies, and some others) breathe by "tracheal gills" (see Fig. 134)—little wing-like outgrowths from the sides of the abdomen, rich in tracheæ—or by tracheal folds.



within the rectum, in and out of which water flows. In either case, an interchange of gases between the tracheæ and the water takes place. In adult aerial life the tracheæ of the body acquire stigmata, and the insect becomes "holopneustic."

In most insects with complete metamorphosis, the larva (*e.g.* caterpillar or grub) has closed stigmata on the last two segments of the thorax (those which will bear wings), but there is a pair of open stigmata on the prothorax. In the adult the reverse is the case.

There are some other modifications—for instance, what obtains in the parasitic larvæ of some flies, *e.g.* gadflies. In these the stigmata are open only at the end of the body. In all cases, however, the stigmata of the adult are already present as rudiments in the larva, though they may not open till adolescence is over.

**Circulatory system.**—As the respiratory system is very efficient, establishing the possibility of gaseous interchange

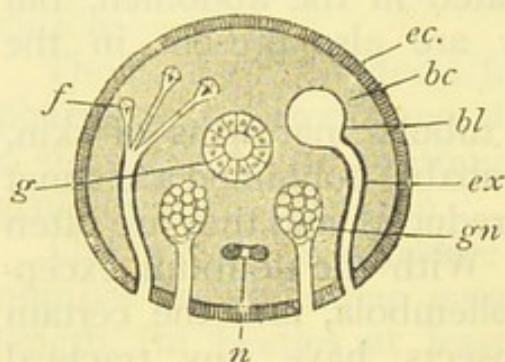


FIG. 135.—Diagrammatic cross-section of an Invertebrate, with the coelom (*bc.*), shaded.—After Ziegler.

*ec.*, Ectoderm; *bl.*, bladder of nephridium (as in Crustaceans); *ex.*, excretory duct; *gn.*, genital organ; *n.*, ventral nerve-cord; *g.*, gut; *f.*, funnels of nephridia (as in worms).

between the inmost recesses of the body and the external medium, it is natural that the blood vascular system should not be highly developed. Within a dorsal part of the body cavity, known as the pericardium, the heart lies, swayed by special muscles. It is a long tube, usually confined to the abdomen, usually of eight chambers, with paired valvular openings on its sides, through which blood enters from the pericardium. The blood is driven forwards, the posterior end of the heart being closed, and there is usually an anterior aorta or main blood vessel. But, for the most part, the blood circulates in spaces within what is commonly called the body cavity. Such a circulation is often described as lacunar. The blood may be colourless, yellow, red, or even greenish, and, in some cases, hæmoglobin, the characteristic blood pigment of Vertebrates, has been detected. The cells of the blood are amœboid.

**Body cavity.**—It is necessary to distinguish the primitive coelom from the apparent body cavity of the adult. In discussing the development of *Peripatus*, Sedgwick notes the following characteristics of a



true coelom:—It is a cavity which—(1) does not communicate with the vascular system; (2) does communicate by nephridial pores with the exterior; (3) has the reproductive elements developed on its lining; (4) develops either as one or more diverticula from the primitive enteron (or gut), or as a space or spaces in the unsegmented or segmented mesoderm. Now, in Arthropods the apparent body cavity of the adult is not a true coelom; it consists of a set of secondarily derived vascular spaces; it has been called a pseudocoel or a hæmocœl. The true coelom of Arthropods is very much restricted in the adult, all the more so that most Arthropods (*e.g.* Insects) have no distinct nephridia.

But the apparent body cavity in which the organs lie, and in which the blood circulates, is well developed in Insects. It includes, *inter alia*, a peculiar fatty tissue, which seems to be a store of reserve material, which is especially large in young insects before metamorphosis, and is also interesting as one of the seats of “phosphorescence.”

**Excretory system.**—Although no structures certainly homologous with nephridia have yet been demonstrated in Insects, the excretory system is well developed. From the hind-gut (proctodæum), and therefore of ectodermic origin, arise fine tubes, or in some cases solid threads, which extend into the apparent body cavity. Their number varies from two (in some Lepidoptera, for instance) to one hundred and fifty (in the bee). They twine about the organs in the abdominal cavity, and their excretory significance is inferred from the fact that they contain uric acid.

**Reproductive system.**—Among Insects the sexes are always separate and often different in appearance. The males are more active, smaller, and more brightly coloured than the females. Darwin referred the greater decorative-ness of the males to the sexual selection exercised by the females. The handsomer variations succeeded in courtship better than their rivals. Wallace referred the greater plain-

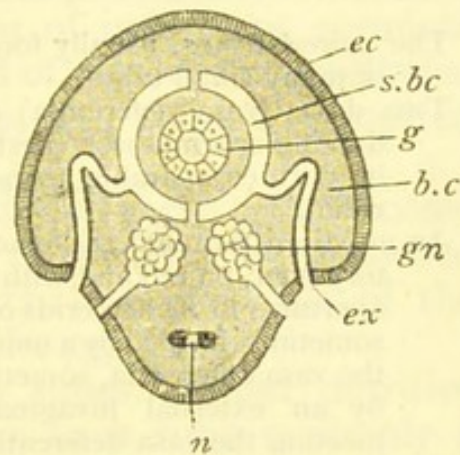


FIG. 136. — Diagrammatic cross-section of an Invertebrate, with a coelom and a hæmocœl.—After Ziegler.

*ec.*, Ectoderm; *s.bc.*, hæmocœl (as in Lamellibranchs); *g.*, gut; *b.c.*, coelom (shaded); *ex.*, excretory aperture of nephridium; *gn.*, genital organ; *n.*, ventral nerve ganglia.



ness of females to the elimination of the disadvantageously conspicuous in the course of natural selection. There may be truth in both views, but both require to be supplemented by the consideration, in part accepted by Wallace, that the "secondary sexual characters" of both sexes are the natural and necessary expressions of their respectively dominant constitutions.

The organs consist of:—

MALE.	FEMALE.
<p>The paired testes, usually formed of many small tubes.</p> <p>Two ducts (vasa deferentia) conducting spermatozoa (perhaps in part comparable to nephridia).</p> <p>An unpaired terminal and ejaculatory duct, paired and with two apertures in Ephemerids only; sometimes formed by a union of the vasa deferentia, sometimes by an external invagination meeting the vasa deferentia.</p> <p>From the vasa deferentia or from the ejaculatory duct, opens a paired or unpaired seminal vesicle for spermatozoa.</p> <p>Various accessory glands, whose secretion sometimes unites the spermatozoa into packets or spermatophores.</p> <p>Sometimes a copulatory penis.</p> <p>Often external hard pieces.</p>	<p>The paired ovaries, usually formed of many small tubes (ovarioles).</p> <p>Two ducts (oviducts) conducting the ova (perhaps in part comparable to nephridia).</p> <p>An unpaired terminal region or vagina, paired and with two apertures in Ephemerids; usually formed from an external invagination meeting the united ends of the oviducts.</p> <p>Near or from the vagina, opens a receptaculum seminis for storing spermatozoa received from a male during copulation.</p> <p>Various accessory glands, <i>e.g.</i> those which secrete the material surrounding the eggs.</p> <p>Sometimes a special bursa copulatrix in the vagina.</p> <p>Often external hard pieces, <i>e.g.</i> ovipositor.</p>

**Some peculiarities in reproduction.**—Many Insects, such as aphides, silk-moth, and queen-bee, are exceedingly prolific. The queen termite lays thousands of eggs, "at the rate of about sixty per minute"!

The store of spermatozoa received by the female, and kept within the receptaculum seminis, often lasts for a long time,—for two or three years in some queen-bees. Sir John Lubbock gives the remarkable instance of an aged queen-ant, which laid fertile eggs thirteen years after the last union with a male.

Parthenogenesis, or the development of ova which are unfertilised, occurs normally, for a variable number of generations, in two Lepidoptera and one beetle, in some coccus insects and aphides, and in certain



saw-flies and gall-wasps. It occurs casually in the silk-moth and several other Lepidoptera, seasonally in aphides, in larval life in some midges (*Miastor*, *Chironomus*), and partially or "voluntarily" when the queen-bee lays eggs which become drones. Parthenogenetic ova (in water-fleas, Rotifers, etc.) are believed to form only one polar body; the egg which becomes a drone forms two as usual.

A few insects hatch their young within the body, or are "viviparous." This is the case with parthenogenetic summer aphides, a few flies, the little bee parasites Strepsiptera, and a few beetles.

**Development of the ovum.**—The tubes which compose the ovaries and lead into the oviducts begin as thin filaments, the ends of which are usually connected on each side. These thin filaments consist of indifferent germinal cells, all of them potential ova, and of mesodermic epithelial cells, which form the ovarian tubes, etc., and are connected anteriorly to the pericardial wall.

But in most cases only a minority of these cells become ova, the others become nutritive cells which are absorbed by the ova, and follicle cells which line the walls of the ovarian tubes and help to furnish the egg-shells.

There may be, indeed, ovarian tubes without nutritive cells (*e.g.* in Orthoptera), and then each tube is simply a bead-like row of ova, which become larger and larger as they recede from the thin terminal filaments and approach the oviducts. In other cases the bead-like row consists of ova alternating with clumps of nutritive cells (*e.g.* in Hymenoptera and Lepidoptera). In other cases the nutritive cells mostly remain in the terminal region, but their products pass down to the receding ova.

As there are numerous ovarian tubes in each ovary, and as the same process of oogenesis is going on in each, numerous eggs are ready for liberation at the same time, and are simultaneously discharged into the oviduct of each side.

The eggs are large and contain much yolk. In relatively few cases yolk is almost absent, as, for example, in the summer eggs of the Aphides, which are hatched within the body, and in some forms where the young are endoparasitic. The ovum is surrounded by a vitelline membrane, and also by a firm chitinous shell, secreted by the follicular cells, which is often sculptured in a characteristic manner. This shell is pierced by one or more minute holes (micropyles).



Through a micropyle the spermatozoon finds entrance, sometimes (as in the cockroach) after moving round and round the shell in varying orbits.

The ripe egg usually consists of a central yolk-containing mass, surrounded by a thin sheath of protoplasm. As is usual for Arthropods, the segmentation is peripheral or centrolecithal. The central nucleus divides up into several nuclei, which, being united by protoplasmic cords, form for a time a central syncytium. Later, these nuclei emigrate into the peripheral protoplasm, which segments around them; thus a peripheral layer of similar epithelial cells is formed. Some of the nuclei

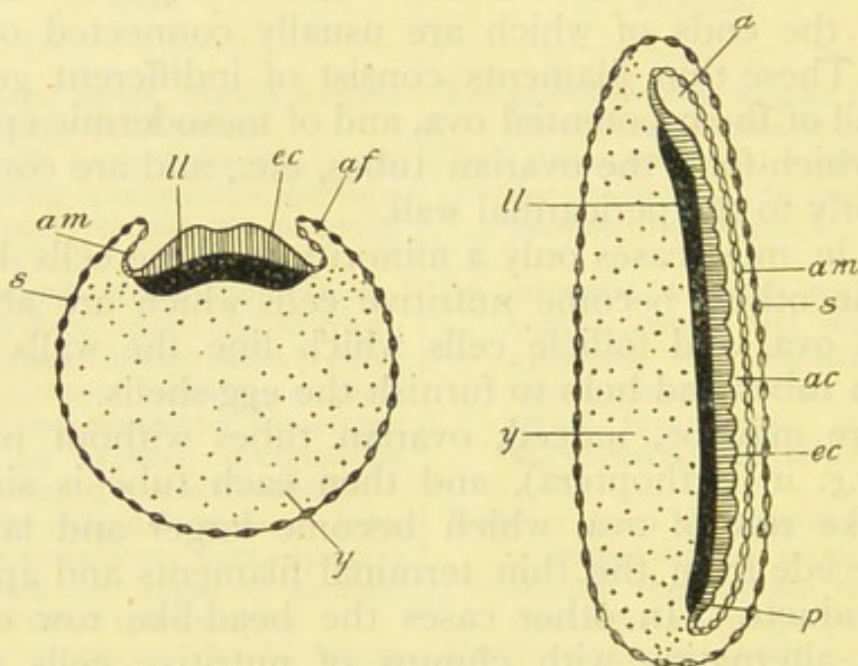


FIG. 137.—Diagrams of Insect embryo.—After Korschelt and Heider.

A transverse section before the union of the amnion folds, and a longitudinal median section after the union of the folds. *a.*, Anterior end of blastoderm; *p.*, posterior end of blastoderm; *a.f.*, in the left-hand figure, the beginning of the amnion fold; *am.*, amnion; *a.c.*, amniotic cavity; *s.*, serosa; *ec.*, ectoderm; *ll.*, lower germinal layer; *y.*, yolk. The amniotic cavity marks the future ventral region of the embryo, so that the yolk mass is dorsal.

may be left behind in the central yolk to form the yolk nuclei, or, what is probably the more primitive condition, these are formed by subsequent immigration from the blastoderm.

The next process is the appearance of differentiation among the similar cells of the blastoderm. Over a special area—the ventral plate—(cf. *Astacus*) the cells increase in number and become cylindrical in shape; over the rest of the egg the cells flatten out and become much thinner. In the middle of the ventral plate a slight groove is formed by rapid multiplication of the cylindrical cells. This represents the disguised gastrulation, the open roof of the groove being the much elongated blastopore. The surrounding cylindrical cells unite over this open roof,



the groove usually flattens out, and thus we have formed a two-layered germinal streak which spreads forwards and backwards over the egg, and early exhibits externally transverse division into segments. The upper layer is the ectoderm; the lower includes the rudiments of both mesoderm and endoderm.

Meanwhile another very important event has taken place. We saw that while the cells of the ventral plate increased in depth, the remaining cells flattened out laterally; at the point where the two kinds of cells unite, on either side of the ventral plate, a double fold arises. The two folds unite over the surface of the ventral plate, forming a membranous arch over it. The internal fold is called "amniotic," the outer "serous," from their resemblance to the similar envelopes in the embryos of higher vertebrates. The folds take no direct part in the development of the embryo.

We must now return to the germinal streak. The gastrula groove may persist as a tube after closure of the blastopore, but it is usually compressed by the ectoderm, or never exists as a distinct cavity. The greater part of the lower stratum of the germinal streak consists of mesoderm. This becomes divided into successive segments at each side, each containing a primitive coelomic cavity, perhaps continuous with the gastrula cavity. The endoderm arises as paired clusters of cells, found only at the anterior and posterior ends of the primitive streak. These clusters increase rapidly and form long endodermal streaks, which curve downwards so as to enclose the yolk. The streaks meet and fuse, first ventrally and later dorsally, thus constituting the mid-gut. The yolk nuclei previously mentioned have meanwhile increased rapidly, forming yolk cells which absorb the yolk. These cells are included in the endodermic mid-gut, and there break up. As the endoderm grows round the yolk, it is accompanied by a layer (splanchnic) of the mesoblast. Fore- and hind-gut are formed by invaginations which fuse with the mid-gut.

In the later stages of development the primitive coelomic pouches lose their cross partitions, become filled with mesenchymatic cells, and practically obliterated. The body cavity of the adult is formed by the appearance of lacunæ amid the cells of the mesenchyme.

The tracheæ arise as segmentally repeated invaginations of the ectoderm. The openings of the invaginations form the stigmata. From the hind-gut arise the Malpighian tubules, which are therefore ectodermic. The development of the other organs is similar to that of the Crustacea.

In summarising the development of Insecta, one must specially note the peripheral segmentation, the formation of the two-layered germinal streak, the presence of an over-arching blastodermic fold, the segmentation of the mesoderm, and the formation of the mid-gut by the union of endodermic bands.

**Metamorphosis of Insects.**—(1) In the lowest Insects, namely, in the old-fashioned wingless Thysanura and



Collembola, the hatched young are miniature adults. By gradual growth, and after several moultings, they attain adult size.

Similarly, the newly hatched earwigs, young of cockroaches and locusts, of lice, aphides, termites, and bugs, are very like the parents, except that they are sexually immature, and that there are no wings, which indeed are absent from some of the adults.

These insects are called *ametabolic*, *i.e.* they have no marked change or metamorphosis.

(2) In cicadas there are slight but most instructive differences between larvæ and adults. The adults live among herbage, the young on the ground, and the diversity of habit has associated differences of structure, as in the burrowing fore-legs of the larva. Moreover, the larva acquires the characters of an adult after a quiescent period of pupation.

The differences between larva and adult are more striking in may-flies, dragon-flies, and the related Plecoptera (*e.g.* *Perla*), for in these the larvæ are aquatic, with closed respiratory apertures, and with tracheal gills or folds, while the adults are winged and aërial, and breathe by open tracheæ.

These insects are called *hemimetabolic*, *i.e.* they have a partial or incomplete metamorphosis.

(3) Very different is the life history of all other sets of Insects—ant-lions, caddis-flies, flies, fleas, butterflies and moths, beetles, ants, and bees. From the egg there is hatched a larva (maggot, grub, or caterpillar), which lives a life very different from the adult, and is altogether unlike it in form. The larva feeds voraciously, grows, rests, and moults. Having accumulated a rich store of reserve material in its "fatty body," it finally becomes for some time quiescent, as a pupa, nymph, or chrysalis, often within the shelter of a cocoon. During this period there are great transformations; wings bud out, appendages of the adult pattern are formed, reconstruction of other organs is effected. Finally, out of the pupal husk emerges a miniature winged insect of the adult or imago type.

These insects are called *holometabolic*, *i.e.* they exhibit a complete metamorphosis.



Two kinds of larvæ occur among insects. (a) In many ametabolic and hemimetabolic forms the larva is somewhat like one of the lowly Thysanuran insects (*Campodea*), and is therefore called campodeiform. It has the regions of the body well defined, three pairs of locomotor thoracic limbs, and mouth-parts adapted for suction. (b) The other type is worm-like or cruciform, e.g. the caterpillars of Lepidoptera (Fig. 138, A), with three pairs of limbs; the more modified grubs of bees, etc., with distinct head, but without limbs; and the degenerate maggots of flies (Fig. 139, A), etc., not only limbless, but with an ill-defined head. The cater-

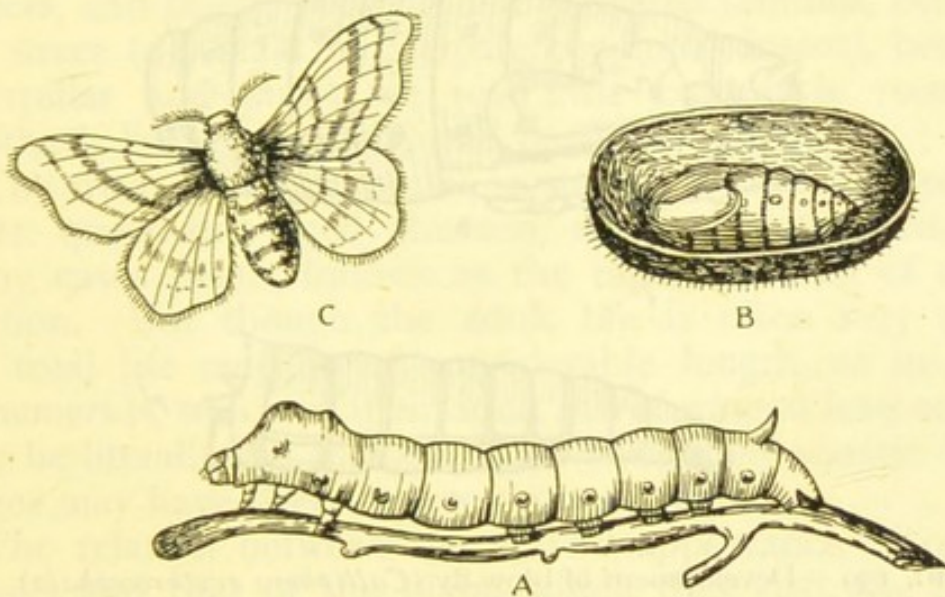


FIG. 138.—Life history of the silk-moth (*Bombyx mori*).

A, caterpillar; B, pupa; C, imago; the cocoon is cut open to show the pupa lying within. In the caterpillar note the three pairs of true legs in the anterior region, and the four pairs of pro-legs in the posterior region.

pillar has often several pairs of abdominal pro-legs, which may be homologous with legs, and other abdominal appendages are known on the larvæ of other insects, and even in the embryos of some whose larvæ are campodeiform. These facts make it likely that the primitive form had many legs.

The larvæ of Insects vary enormously in habit and in structure, and exhibit numerous adaptations to conditions of life very different from those of the parent. Thus caterpillars, which are usually plump and tense, so that a peck from a bird's bill may cause them to bleed to death, even if no immediate destruction befall them, are protectively adapted in many different ways. Their colours are often changed in harmony with those of their surroundings; some palatable forms are saved by



their superficial resemblance to those which are nauseous, a few strike "terrifying attitudes," while others are like pieces of plants.

But for our purpose it is perhaps more important to recall the differences between the respiration of some larvæ and that of the adult, between the apneustic larva of the dragon-fly and the holopneustic winged adult. Likewise of great importance, and supplying a basis for classification, are the changes in connection with the mouth organs (see p. 306).

**Internal metamorphosis.**—In Insects with no marked metamorphosis, or with merely an incomplete one, the

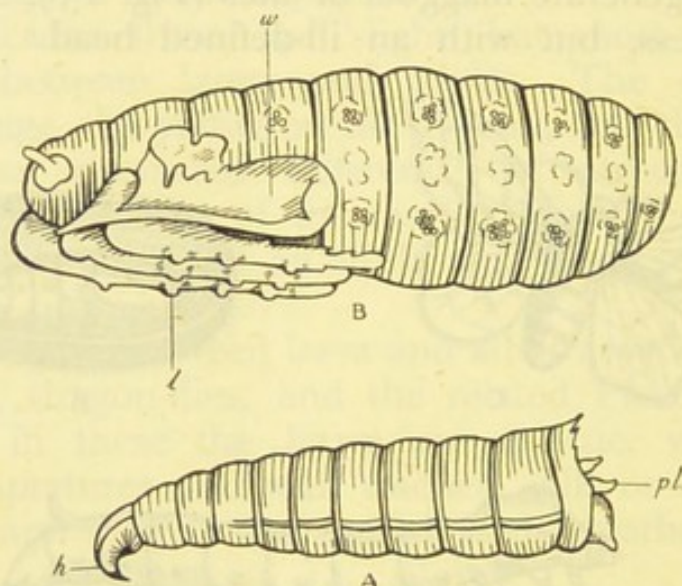


FIG. 139.—Development of blow-fly (*Calliphora erythrocephala*).  
—After Thompson Lowne.

The lower figure (A) shows the adult larva (maggot). Note, as compared with the caterpillar, the absence of appendages, except those about the mouth; *h*., the large hooks connected with the maxillæ; *pl*., pro-legs.

The upper figure (B) shows the pronymph removed from the pupa-case. In the abdominal region the imaginal discs are shown; *l*., rudiments of legs; *w*., of wings.

organs of the larvæ develop gradually into those of the adult. But in Insects with complete metamorphosis there is a marvellous internal reconstruction during the later larval, and especially during the quiescent pupal stage. Most of the larval organs are disrupted and partially absorbed by amœboid cells, their débris being used in building new structures. Parts of larval organs which have not been highly specialised form the foundations of new adult structures. Of special importance are certain ingrowths of the larval skin (the epi- or hypo-dermis) which



form what are called "imaginal discs," *i.e.* embryonic or germinal areas, from which arise the wings, legs, etc., of the adult insect. The reconstruction is very thorough; most of the musculature, much of the tracheal system, part of the mid-gut, etc., are gradually replaced by the corresponding organs of the adult. There is first a thorough disruptive process of histolysis, and then a reconstructive process of histogenesis. Yet in most cases the disruption and replacement of organs is very gradual.

**Bionomics.**—The average insect is active, but between orders (*e.g.* ants, bees, and wasps *versus* aphides, coccus insects, and bugs), between nearly-related families, between the sexes (*e.g.* male and female cochineal insect), between caterpillar and pupa, we read the constantly recurrent antithesis between activity and passivity.

The average length of life is short. Queen-bees of five years, queen-ants aged thirteen, are rare exceptions. In many cases death follows as the rapid nemesis of reproduction. But though the adult life is often very short, the total life may be of considerable length, as in some Ephemerids, which in their adult life of winged love-making may be literally the flies of a day, while their aquatic larval stages may have lived for two years or more.

The relation between the annual appearance of certain insects and that of the plants which they visit, the habits of hibernation in the adult or larval state, the occasional "dimorphism" between winter and summer broods of butterflies, should be noticed.

The prolific multiplication of many insects may lead to local and periodic increase in their numbers, but great increase is limited by the food-supply and the weather, by the warfare between insects of different kinds, by the numerous insects parasitic on others, by the appetite of higher animals,—fishes, frogs, ant-eaters, insectivores, and, above all, birds.

There is a great variety of protective adaptation. The young of caddis-flies are partially masked by their external cases of pebbles and fragments of stem; many caterpillars and adult insects harmonise with the colour of their environment; leaf-insects, "walking sticks," moss-insects, scale-insects, have a precise resemblance to external objects



which must often save them ; a humming-bird moth closely resembles a humming-bird ; many palatable insects and larvæ have a mimetic resemblance to others which are nauseous or otherwise little likely to be meddled with. Many insects may be saved by their hard chitinous armour, by their disgusting odour or taste, by their deterrent discharges of repulsive formic acid, etc., by simulation of death, by active resistance with effective weapons.

Many flowers depend for cross-fertilisation upon insects, which carry the pollen from one to another. Many insects depend for food on the nectar and pollen of flowers. Thus many flowers and insects are mutually dependent. But many insects injure plants, and many plants exhibit structures which tend to save them from attack. On the other hand, there may be "partnerships" between insects and plants—as in the "myrmecophilous" (ant-loving) plants, which shelter a bodyguard of ants, by whom they are saved from unwelcome visitors. And again, the formation of galls by some insects which lay their eggs in plants, and the insect-catching proclivities of some carnivorous plants, should be remembered.

Most insects are terrestrial and aërial ; the majority live in warm and temperate countries, but they are represented almost everywhere, even above the snow-line, in arctic regions, in caves. Even on the sea the *Challenger* explorers found the pelagic *Halobates*, a genus of bugs. The distribution of insects is mainly limited by food-supplies and climate, for their powers of flight are often great, and their opportunities of passive dispersal by the wind, floating logs, etc., are by no means slight.

Many insects are more or less parasitic, either externally as adults, *e.g.* fleas, lice, bird-lice, plant-lice, etc., or internally as larvæ, *e.g.* the maggots of gad-flies on cattle, and a great number of borers within plants.

We need only mention Hessian-fly, phylloxera, Colorado beetle, weevils, locusts, to suggest many more which are of much economic importance as injurious insects. On the other hand, our indebtedness to hive-bee and silk-moth, to cochineal and lac insects, to those which destroy injurious insects, and to those which carry pollen from flower to flower, is obvious.



Finally, we must at least mention that in ants, bees, wasps, and termites we find illustration of various grades of social life, and marvellous exhibitions of instinctive skill as well as some intelligence.

#### PEDIGREE.

Insects must have appeared relatively early, for remains of a cockroach-like form have been found even in Silurian strata. The higher forms with complete metamorphosis appear much later (*e.g.* beetles in the Carboniferous ages); but it seems that the Palæozoic insects were mostly generalised types, prophetic of, rather than referable to the modern orders.

As to the pedigree of insects, the wingless Collembola and Thysanura are doubtless primitive. They lead us back to some of the less specialised Myriopods (*e.g.* *Scolopendrella*), back further to *Peripatus*, which helps to link the Tracheate to the Annelid series.

But though the primitive wingless insects, the simple types of Myriopods, and *Peripatus*, represent ascending steps in evolution, what the actual path has been we do not know.

[TABLE.



## ORDERS OF INSECTS (after Brauer and Lang).

PTERYGOTA, Winged Insects  
(excepting some degenerate forms).

C. METABOLA  
(i.e. with complete metamorphosis),

either  
MENOGNATHA  
(i.e. always with biting jaws)

or  
METAGNATHA  
(i.e. biting jaws replaced by sucking  
apparatus).

Order 16. *Hymenoptera*. Ants, bees, wasps, gall-flies, saw-flies, etc.  
Menogn. or Metagn., or a sort of compromise between these  
states. Usually with four transparent wings. Larvæ are foot-  
less grubs, except in some wasps.

Order 15. *Lepidoptera*. Butterflies and moths.

Metagn. Two pairs of uniform, scaly wings. Larva—a caterpillar.  
Order 14. *Diptera*. Two-winged flies. House-fly, gad-fly, midge, gnat.

Metagn., but sometimes with power of biting. Two anterior trans-  
parent unfolded wings, and posterior "balancers" or "halteres."  
Larva—usually a footless maggot, without a distinct head.

Order 13. *Siphonaptera* or *Aphaniptera*. Fleas.

Metagn., but also with power of piercing. No wings. No  
compound eyes. Ectoparasitic. Larva—footless maggot.

Order 12. *Coleoptera*. Beetles.

Menogn., rarely Metagn. Fore wings modified into wing-covers,  
hind wings folded when not in use. Larvæ very diverse, generally  
with feet. The little bee parasites Strepsiptera are probably allied.

Order 11. *Trichoptera*. Caddis-flies.

Menogn. Hind wings usually larger than fore wings; both  
folded like fans. The body is hairy, rarely scaly. The larvæ are  
somewhat caterpillar-like, usually live in water within special  
cases, and are apneustic.

Order 10. *Panorpata*. Scorpion-flies.

Menogn. Two pairs of narrow membranous wings, or some-  
times none. Larva—like a caterpillar.

Order 9. *Neuroptera*. Ant-lions and lace-winged flies.

Menogn. Two pairs of glassy wings with many nervures. The  
larvæ sometimes live in water, and have tracheal gills.

Order 8. *Rhynchota* or *Hemiptera*, e.g. *Phylloxera*, aphides, coccus insects;  
cicadas; bugs, water-scorpions, lice. (The male coccus  
insects have a complete metamorphosis.)

B. AMETABOLA  
(i.e. no metamorphosis).



MENORHYNCHA  
(*i.e.* with persistent suctorial organs).

A. AMETABOLA  
(*i.e.* with no metamorphosis),  
and HEMIMETABOLA  
(*i.e.* with incomplete metamorphosis).

MENOGNATHA  
(*i.e.* with persistent biting jaws).

The mouth-parts are adapted for sucking and for slight piercing. Two pairs of wings or none. The parasitic forms have no compound eyes, and are in several respects degenerate.

Order 7. *Thysanoptera*, *e.g.* *Thrips*.

Ametab. Suctorial mouth organs. Wings very narrow, often rudimentary or absent. Only three or four pairs of stigmata. Concentrated nervous system.

Order 6. *Corrodentia*, *e.g.* Bird-lice, termites.

Ametab. Mouth-parts adapted for biting. Wings often wanting. The bird-lice have no compound eyes.

Order 5. *Orthoptera*, *e.g.* Cockroach, locust, cricket, mole-cricket, "walking stick," "walking leaf."

Ametab. Mouth-parts adapted for biting. Anterior wings usually shorter and firmer than those behind, or modified into wing-covers. Both pairs are sometimes absent.

Order 4. *Plecoptera*, *e.g.* *Perla*.

Hemimetab. Mouth-parts adapted for biting. Two pairs of large wings or none. The larvæ live in water, and breathe by tracheal gills, which often persist in the adult.

Order 3. *Odonata*, Dragon-flies.

Hemimetab. Mouth-parts adapted for biting. Two pairs of large unfolded wings. The larvæ live in water, and breathe by tracheal gills or folds.

Order 2. *Ephemera*, May-flies.

Hemimetab. Mouth-parts of adults somewhat degenerate, and rarely used. Fore wings large, hind wings small or absent. Larvæ live in water, breathe by tracheal gills, and have biting mouth organs.

Order 1. *Dermaptera*, Earwigs.

Ametab. Mouth-parts adapted for biting. Anterior wings small, hind wings large, but folded both longitudinally and crosswise. Posterior forceps.

Order 2. *Collembola*, Springtails, *e.g.* *Podura*, *Sminthurus*.

Order 1. *Thysanura*, *e.g.* *Campodea*, *Lepisma*.

APTERYGOTA.  
Primitive Wingless Insects.



## CHAPTER XV.

### ARACHNOIDEA AND PALÆOSTRACA.

Class ARACHNOIDEA. Spiders, Scorpions, Mites, etc.

THE class Arachnoidea is far from being a coherent unity. Its subdivisions are numerous and diverse, and a statement of general characters is consequently difficult.

*The anterior segments, about seven in number, are fused into a cephalothorax, which bears six pairs of appendages. The most anterior of these appendages may be turned in front of the mouth, but there are no pre-oral antennæ as in Insects. The first two pairs of appendages (chelicerae and pedipalps) generally have to do with seizing and holding the food; the others are walking legs. But although six pairs occur in most, there may be more or less. The abdomen is generally, but not always, without appendages; it may be segmented or unsegmented; it is generally distinct from, but may be fused to, the cephalothorax. A plate-like internal skeleton, called the endosternite, is often present. The elaborate compound eyes of Insects are not represented, the eyes being almost always simple. Respiration may be by tubular tracheæ, or by lung-books (chambered tracheæ?), or by both, and many would include the branchiate Palæostraca along with Arachnoidea. In the tracheate forms there are never more than four pairs of stigmata. Within all or some of the legs lie coxal glands, perhaps comparable to nephridia. An elongated dorsal heart usually lies in the abdomen. The position of the genital aperture or apertures is usually on one of the anterior abdominal segments. All have separate sexes. The relation of Arachnoids to other Arthropods, and especially to Insects, is uncertain. Many believe that the Arachnoids are descended*



from a branchiate form, and have acquired their tracheæ independently; apart from the tracheæ, few structural resemblances to Insects are apparent.

### Order I. SCORPIONIDÆ.

Scorpions are elongated Arachnoids, restricted to warm countries, lurking under stones or in holes during the day, but active at night. The *Scorpio afer* of the East Indies attains a length of 6 inches, but most are much smaller. They feed on insects, spiders, and other small animals. The "tail," with the venomous sting at its tip, is usually curved over the anterior part of the body, and can reach forward to kill the prey caught by the anterior appendages, or can be suddenly straightened to strike backwards. When man is stung, the poison seems to act chiefly on the red blood corpuscles, and, though never or very rarely fatal, may cause much pain. It has been said that scorpions commit suicide when surrounded by fire or otherwise fatally threatened, but it has been answered that they do not sting themselves, that they could not if they would, and that, even if they could, the poison would have no effect!

The body is divided into—(1) a cephalothorax or "pro-soma" of six segments, whose terga fuse into a carapace, and (2) an abdomen, which includes a broad seven-segmented "mesosoma," and a narrow five-segmented "metasoma." At the end of the latter there is a post-anal curved spine or "telson," containing a paired, compressible poison gland opening at the sharp tip. There is a strong

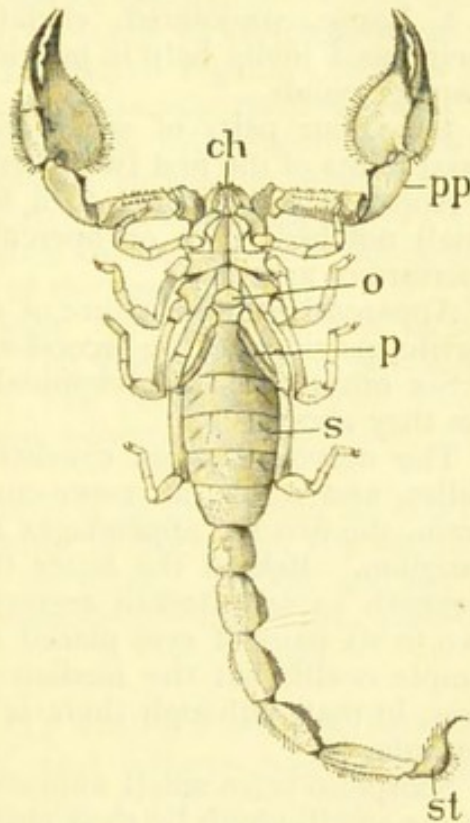


FIG. 140.—Scorpion.

*ch.*, Chelicerae; *pp.*, pedipalps; *o.*, genital operculum; *p.*, pectines; *s.*, stigma of a lung-book on the pre-abdomen; *st.*, sting or post-anal piece.



cuticle of chitin, and also an interesting internal piece of skeleton (the endosternite), partly chitinous, but also resembling fibro-cartilage, which lies in the cephalothorax above the nerve-cord, and serves for the insertion of muscles.

The appendages are—

1. Small, three-jointed, chelate chelicerae or falces just above the mouth, used in holding prey.

2. Large, six-jointed, chelate pedipalps. These seize the prey; their basal joints help in mastication, and in some cases they produce rasping sounds.

3-6. Four pairs of seven-jointed, non-chelate walking legs. The basal joints of the first two pairs help in connection with the mouth.

Apparently equivalent to a first pair of abdominal appendages is a small notched plate or operculum which covers or bears the genital aperture or apertures.

Apparently of the nature of appendages are the comb-like, probably tactile, pectines on the second abdominal segment.

Six other pairs of abdominal appendages are present in the embryo, but they abort.

The nervous system consists of a dorsal brain, a ring round the gullet, and a ventral nerve-cord. The eyes are innervated from the brain, the first six appendages from the collar and the suboesophageal ganglion. Behind the latter there are seven ventral ganglia in the eleventh to seventeenth segments inclusive. There are in scorpions two to six pairs of eyes placed on the carapace. The lateral eyes are simple ocelli, but the median pair are remarkable among Arachnoid eyes, in that, although there is only a single lens, there are numerous retinulae.

Scorpions seize small animals with their pedipalps, hold them close to the small mouth by their chelicerae, sting them if need be, and suck their blood and juices. The pharynx serves as a suction pump; a narrow gullet leads to a slight enlargement, into which a pair of salivary glands open; from the narrow mid-gut several large digestive outgrowths arise, and also one or two pairs of Malpighian tubes; the hind-gut ends in a ventral anus beneath the base of the sting. The narrowness of the gut may be associated with the fluid nature of the food. The position of the Malpighian tubes shows that here, as in certain Crustacea, they are *endodermal* structures as contrasted with the *ectodermal* tubules of Insects.

The body cavity is for the most part filled up with organs, muscles, and connective tissue. A pair of coxal glands, perhaps excretory and nephridial, but apparently closed in the adult, lie near the base of the third pair of walking legs. It is stated that in the embryo they open into the body cavity by internal funnels.

The blood contains amoeboid corpuscles and the respiratory pigment haemocyanin. An eight-chambered heart, within a pericardium, lies along the back of the mesosoma. It gives off lateral arteries from the posterior end of each of its chambers, is continued backwards in a



posterior aorta, and forwards in an anterior aorta. The latter supplies the head and divides into two branches, encircling the gullet and reuniting in a ventral artery above the nerve-cord. From capillaries the blood is gathered into a ventral venous sinus, is purified in the lung-books, and thence returns by veins to the pericardium, finding its way by valved lateral openings (ostia) into the anterior end of each heart-chamber.

On the ninth to twelfth segments lie slit-like stigmata, the openings of four pairs of lung-books. Each lung-book is like a little purse with numerous (over a hundred) compartments. Air fills the much-divided cavity, and blood circulates in the lamellæ or partitions. These lung-books or pulmonary sacs are believed by some to be chambered or plaited tracheæ, while Professor Ray Lankester regards them as invaginated modifications of gill-books such as *Limulus* possesses.

The testes consist of two pairs of longitudinal tubes, united by cross bridges; the vas deferens, with a terminal copulatory modification, opens under the operculum on the first abdominal segment. The ovary consists of three longitudinal tubes, united by cross ducts, and two oviducts open on the under surface of the operculum.

Fertilisation is internal; the ova begin their development in the ovary, and complete it in the oviduct. The segmentation is discoidal, the ova are hatched within the mother. The young, thus born "viviparously," are like miniature adults, and adhere for some time after birth to the body of the mother.

In *Euscorpio italicus* there is abundant yolk in the ovum; in *Scorpio* there is little; but the embryo of the latter seems to eat the terminal part of the ovarian tube in which it develops. In the embryo of *Opithophthalmus* there are peculiar horn-like outgrowths, possibly absorptive in function.

The race of scorpions is of very ancient origin, for one has been found in Silurian strata, and others nearly resembling those now alive are found in the Carboniferous.

Order 2. PSEUDOSCORPIONIDÆ. "Book-Scorpions," *e.g.*  
*Chelifer*, *Chernes*.

Minute animals, most abundant in warm climates, under bark, in books, under the wing-covers of insects, etc. They are like miniature scorpions, but without the long tail and sting. Their food probably consists of the juices of insects; the chelicerae are minute suckers, the pedipalps like those of scorpions. The abdomen is broad, with ten to eleven segments. They breathe by tubular tracheæ, and have spinning glands.

Order 3. PEDIPALPI. "Whip-Scorpions," *e.g.* *Thelyphonus*, *Phrynus*.

Small animals, found in warm countries. The abdomen is depressed, well-defined from the thorax, and has eleven to twelve segments. The chelicerae are simply clawed, but are poisonous; the pedipalps are simply



clawed or else truly chelate. The first pair of limbs are like antennæ. Respiration is by two pairs of lung-sacs. In *Thelyphonus* there is a long terminal whip.

Order 4. PHALANGIDÆ (or OPILIONINA). "Harvest-men," *e.g.*  
*Phalangium*.

The small spider-like "harvest-men" are noted for their extremely long legs, by which they stalk slowly along, avoiding the glare of day. The broad six-segmented abdomen is not distinct from the thorax; the chelicerae are chelate; the pedipalps are like legs. Respiration is by tubular tracheæ. The harvest-men are sometimes called daddy longlegs, but we reserve that name for the crane-fly (*Tipula oleracea*). Nor are they to be confused with the troublesome "harvest-bugs" (*Trombidium holosericeum*), which are minute red mites. The harvest-men do not trouble us, but feed on small insects.

Order 5. SOLPUGIDÆ or SOLIFUGÆ, *e.g.* *Galeodes* or *Solpuga*.

Active, pugnacious, venomous, nocturnal little animals, found in the warmer parts of the earth. The head and abdomen are distinct from the thorax. The thorax has three segments, the abdomen nine or ten. The chelicerae are chelate, the pedipalps like long legs. The respiration is by means of tubular tracheæ. The segmentation of the thorax is remarkable.

Order 6. ARANEIDÆ. Spiders.

Spiders are found almost everywhere upon the earth, and a few are at home in fresh water. Most of them live on the juices of insects, and many form webs in which their victims are snared. They may be divided, according to habit, into the wanderers who spin little, and the sedentary forms who spin much. The body consists of an unsegmented cephalothorax and a soft unsegmented abdomen, separated by a narrow waist. The chitinous cuticle varies in hardness, hairiness, and colouring; it has, as usual, to be moulted as the spider grows. Thus the young garden-spider moults eight times in its first year.

There are six pairs of appendages—

1. The two-jointed chelicerae or falces, whose terminal joint bends down on the other in "sub-chelate" fashion, and is perforated by the duct of a poison gland.

2. The leg-like, usually six-jointed, non-chelate pedipalps, whose basal joint helps in mastication, while the terminal joint in the male expands as a reservoir for the spermatozoa and serves as a copulatory organ.

3-6. Four pairs of terminally clawed walking legs. The most



anterior pair are much used as feelers. In the embryo there are four pairs of abdominal appendages which abort.

The nervous system is of the usual Arthropod type, but shows much centralisation. Thus the ventral ganglia are fused into one large centre in the cephalothorax (see Fig. 141), a condition comparable to that in crabs. There are two or three rows of simple eyes on the cephalothorax, whose focal distance is very short, spiders trusting most to their exquisite sense of touch, by which they discriminate the various vibrations on a web line. The senses of smell, hearing, and taste are also present, but little is known in regard to the organs.

Body cavity, endosternite, and coxal glands generally resemble those of scorpions.

The spider usually sucks the blood and juices of its prey, and behind the gullet lies a powerfully suctional region, strengthened by chitinous plates, and worked by muscles. From the small mid-gut arise five pairs of long cæca, a pair running forwards and a pair passing into the bases of each pair of legs, and then back again. These cæca sometimes anastomose. Further back the mid-gut gives off numerous digestive outgrowths, which fill a large part of the abdomen. Their secretion digests proteids. Terminally there is a large cloaca, and where the intestine joins this, four much-branched excretory Malpighian tubes are given off, and are again said to be endodermal in origin.

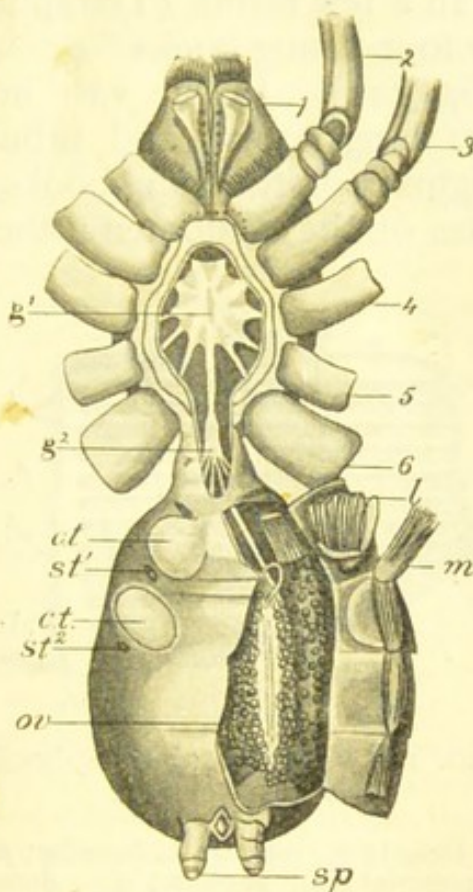


FIG. 141.—Dissection of *Mygale* from the ventral surface.—After Cuvier.

1, Chelicerae; 2, pedipalps cut short; 3-6, walking legs;  $g^1$ , large thoracic ganglion;  $g^2$ , ganglion at base of abdomen;  $ct^1$ , chambered tracheæ or lung-books—at the left side the anterior is cut open to show the lamellæ ( $l$ );  $m$ , muscle of abdomen;  $st^1$  and  $st^2$ , stigmata of lung-books;  $ov$ , ovary;  $sp$ , spinnerets.



A three-chambered heart, containing colourless blood, lies within a pericardium near the dorsal surface of the abdomen. It gives off an anterior and a posterior aorta and lateral vessels; and the circulation corresponds in general to that of the scorpion.

In a few forms (Tetrapneumones) respiration is effected by four "lung-books," *e.g.* in the large bird-catching *Mygale* (Fig. 141). In the vast majority (Dipneumones) there are two lung-books, and tubular tracheæ in addition. The stigmata of the lung-books lie on the anterior ventral surface of the abdomen; the tracheæ open posteriorly near

the spinnerets, or just behind the opening of the lung-books, or at both places.

The spinnerets (4-6) lie posteriorly a little in front of the anus. They are movable organs, perforated by numerous (often many hundred) fine tubes or "spinning spools." The tubes are connected with numerous compressible glands secreting liquid silk. There are various kinds of glands, and both the amount and the nature of the secretion are under the spinner's control. The spinnerets arise

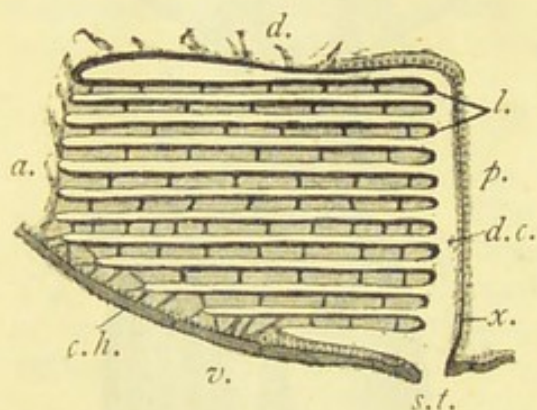


FIG. 142.—Section of Lung-book.  
—After Macleod.

*d.*, Dorsal; *v.*, ventral; *l.*, lamellæ; *p.*, posterior; *a.*, anterior; *d.c.*, dorsal chamber; *x.*, posterior wall; *st.*, stigma; *ch.*, one of the interlamellar chambers.

from modifications of abdominal appendages, and the glands are ectodermic invaginations.

The males are usually smaller and often more brightly coloured than their mates. From the paired testes, in the anterior part of the abdomen, two vasa deferentia pass to a common aperture beside the openings of the lung-books. From the paired ovary two oviducts likewise arise and open into a uterus, whose external aperture is surrounded in the mature female by a complex genital armature or epigynum. Here also in most females are the openings of two receptacula seminis, in which the sperms received from a male are stored, and from which they pass by a pair of internal ducts to the oviducts, there to fertilise the



ova. The sperms of the male, after emission, may be stored up in the last joint of the palps. The ova are usually surrounded by silken cocoons, which are carried about by the mother or carefully hidden in nooks or nests.

**Spinning.**—Compression of the spinning-glands causes a flow of liquid silk through the fine spools of the spinnerets. The extremely thin filaments from each spinneret unite into a thread, and the thread of one spinneret is often combined with that from the others. In this way a compound thread of exquisite fineness, though rivalled by a quartz-fibre, is produced; but two or four separate threads are often exuded at the same time. Before beginning to "spin," the spider often presses the spinnerets against the surface to which the thread is to adhere, and draws the filaments out by slowly moving away. Often, however, the filaments ooze out quite apart from any attachment. The legs are also much used in extending and guiding the thread, and some spiders have on the hind legs a special comb of stiff hairs.

One of the most important ways in which the secreted threads are used is in forming a web. The common garden spider (*Epeira*) makes a web which is a beautiful work of unconscious art, and very effective as a snare for insects. The spider first forms "foundation lines" around the selected area; it then swings across the area with the first "ray," which it fixes firmly; another and another is formed, all intersecting in one centre. Secondly, it starts from the centre, and moves from ray to ray in a long wide spiral gradually outwards, leaving a strong spiral thread as it goes. Thirdly, the spider moves in a closer spiral from the circumference inwards, biting away the former spiral, replacing it by another, which is viscid and adhesive. It is to this that the web chiefly owes its power of catching insects which light there. There is usually a special thread running to the adjacent hole or nest, and the entire fabric is marvellously sensitive, for the spider feels rather than sees when a victim is caught.

The spun threads are used in many other ways. They line the nest, and form cocoons for the eggs. They often trail behind the spiders as they creep; they greatly assist locomotion, and are used in marvellous feats of climbing. Small and young spiders often stand on tip-toe on the top of a fence, secrete a parachute of threads, and allow themselves to be borne by the wind. The fallen threads are known as gossamer.

**Courtship.**—The males are usually much smaller than the females. It is calculated that the disproportion is sometimes such as would be observed if a man 6 ft. high and 150 lb. in weight were to marry a giantess of 76-90 ft. high, 200,000 lb. in weight. It may be that the smallness of the males is mainly due to the fact that they are males; others explain it by saying that the smaller the males are, the less likely they are to be caught by their frequently ferocious mates.

The males are often more brilliantly coloured than the females, perhaps, again, because they are males, though what the physiological connection between the male constitution and bright colours is in this case we cannot tell till the nature of the pigments is known. Wallace



has spoken of the frequent brilliancy of males as due to their greater vitality, and refers the relative plainness common in females to their greater need for protection. Darwin referred the greater decorativeness of males to the fact that those which varied in this direction found favour in the eyes of their mates, were consequently more successful in reproduction, and thus tended to entail brilliancy on their male successors. The careful researches of Prof. and Mrs. Peckham greatly strengthen the position of those who believe in the efficacy of sexual selection. In the "Evolution of Sex," it has been suggested that sexual selection may help to establish the brilliancy of males, and that natural selection may help to keep the females plain, but that the decorative and other differences between the sexes are primarily associated with the more fundamental qualities of maleness and femaleness.

### *Classification of Spiders.*

1. Tetrapneumones, with four lung-books and no tracheæ, *e.g.*—  
*Mygale*, a large lurking spider which has been known to kill small birds, but usually eats insects; *Atypus*, *Cteniza*, and others make neat trap-door nests.
2. Dipneumones, with two lung-books and tracheæ as well, such as—  
 The web-spinners, *e.g.* *Epeira*; wolf-spiders, *e.g.* *Lycosa*, *Tarantula*, the latter with poisonous qualities which have been much exaggerated; jumping spiders or Attidæ, *e.g.* *Attus salticus*. The common house spider is *Tegenaria domestica*; the commonest garden spider is *Epeira diademata*. *Argyroneta aquatica* fills an aquatic silken nest with bubbles caught at the surface.

### Order 7. ACARINA. Mites and Ticks.

Mites are minute Arachnoids inclined to parasitism. They occur in the earth, or in water, salt and fresh, or on animals and plants. They feed on the organisms they infest or upon organic débris.

The abdomen is fused with the cephalothorax; both are unsegmented. According to the mode of life, the mouth-parts are adapted for biting or for piercing and sucking. Respiration may be simply through the skin; in the majority there are tracheæ with two stigmata. A heart seems usually absent, but it is present in *Gamasus*. Many of the young have only three pairs of legs when hatched, but soon gain another pair. When some mites are starved or desiccated, and to some extent die, certain cells in the body unite within a cyst, and are able in favourable conditions to regrow the animal.

Examples.—

- (a) Without tracheæ. Cheese-mite (*Tyroglyphus*). Itch-mite (*Sarcoptes scabiei*), causing "itch" in man; *S. canis*, causing "mange" in dogs. Follicle-mite (*Demodex folliculorum*), common in the hair follicles of man and domestic animals. Gall-mites (*Phytoptus*), on plants.



- (b) With tracheæ. Harvest-mites (*Trombidium*), whose minute hexapod larvæ are troublesome parasites in summer on insects, many mammals, and man. The so-called "red-spider" (*Tetrarhynchus telearius*) spins webs, and lives socially under leaves. Water-mites, *e.g.* *Hydrachna* on water-beetles, and *Atax* on gills of fresh-water mussels. Beetle-mites (*Gamasus*), often found on carrion beetles. Ticks (*Ixodes*), on dogs, cattle, etc.

### *Aberrant Orders or Classes.*

#### Order 8. LINGUATULIDA. *Pentastomum tænioides*.

This strange animal is parasitic in the nasal and frontal cavities of the dog and wolf. It is worm-like in form, externally ringed, without any oral appendages, but with two pairs of movable hooks near the mouth. There are no sense organs nor tracheæ. The sexes are separate; the males smaller than the females.

Embryos within egg-cases pass from the nostrils of the dog. If they happen to be swallowed by a rabbit or a hare, or it may be some other mammal, the embryos hatch in the gut and penetrate to liver or lung. There they encyst, moult, and undergo metamorphosis. The final larval form has two pairs of short legs, and has been compared to a larval mite. Liberated from its encystment, it moves about within its host, but will not become adult or sexual unless its host be eaten by dog or wolf. There are a few other species occurring in Reptiles, Apes, and even man, but their history is not adequately known, and the systematic position is very uncertain.

#### Order 9. TARDIGARDA. Water-Bears or Sloth-animalcules, *e.g.* *Macrobiotus*.

Microscopic animals, sometimes found about the damp moss of swamps or even in the roof-gutters of houses. The body is somewhat worm-like, with four pairs of clawed limbs like little stumps, with mouth-parts resembling those of some mites, and adapted for piercing and sucking. There is no abdomen. There is a food canal, a brain, and a ventral chain of four ganglia, sometimes even a pair of simple eyes, but no respiratory or vascular organs. The sexes are separate; the males rarer and smaller.

The terrestrial Tardigarda, even as adults, have great powers of successfully resisting desiccation, but sometimes only the eggs do so, developing rapidly when favourable conditions return.

### Class PALÆOSTRACA.

The three following orders, Xiphosura, Eurypterina, and Trilobita, may be united under this title. They live or lived in water, and have or had gills in association with the limbs.



The recently discovered antennæ of Trilobites, together with the markedly biramose character of some of their limbs, suggest an affinity with Crustacea, but, on the other hand, the affinities of the Xiphosura seem to be distinctly Arachnoid.

#### Order I. XIPHOSURA.

There is one living genus, the King-crab or Horseshoe-crab (*Limulus*).

The King-crab lives at slight depths off the muddy or sandy shores of the sheltered bays and estuaries of North America, from Maine to Florida, in the West Indies, and also on the Molucca Islands, etc., in the far East. The body consists of a vaulted cephalothorax shaped like a horseshoe, and an almost hexagonal abdomen ending in a long spine. Burrowing in the sand, *Limulus* arches its body at the joint between cephalothorax and abdomen, and pushes forward with legs and spine. It may also walk about under water, and even rise a little from the bottom. It is a hardy animal, able to survive exposure on the shore, or even some freshening of the water. Its food consists chiefly of worms.

The King-crab is interesting in its structure and habits, and also because it is the only living representative of an old race. Since Prof. Lankester published in 1881 a famous paper entitled "*Limulus* an Arachnoid," it has been generally, though not unanimously, recognised that the King-crab's relationships among modern animals are with Arachnoidea, not with Crustacea.

The hard, horseshoe-shaped, chitinous cephalothoracic shield is vaulted, but the internal cavity is much smaller than one would at first sight suppose; the well-defined abdomen shows some hint of being divisible into meso- and metasoma; the long, sharp spine is (like the scorpion's sting) a post-anal telson.

On the concave under-surface of the cephalothorax there are six (or seven) pairs of limbs, as in spiders and scorpions—

- (1) A little pair of three-jointed chelicerae in front of and bent towards the mouth. (They are chelate in the female, simply clawed in the male.)
- (2-6) Five pairs of six-jointed walking legs, the bases of which surround the mouth, and help in mastication. The last of these ends in two flat plates, which help in digging. The others are usually chelate, except the first in the male.
- (7) Then follows on the abdomen a double "operculum" overlapping the rest. The genital apertures lie on its posterior surface. Some refer this operculum to the cephalothorax.



(8-12) Under the operculum lie five pairs of flat plates bearing remarkable respiratory organs ("gill-books"). These appendages show hints of the exopodite and endopodite structure characteristic of Crustaceans. At any rate in the young they serve also as swimming organs.

As in the scorpion, there is an internal skeletal structure, or endosternite, lying between the gullet and the nerve-ring, serving for the attachment of muscles. It should be noted, however, that an analogous structure occurs in *Apus* and some other Crustaceans.

**The nervous system.**—The supra-oesophageal brain gives off nerves to the eyes. United to the brain are two ganglionated and transversely connected commissures forming a long oval oesophageal ring, giving off nerves to the limbs, and continued into a ganglionated abdominal cord. Ensheathing ring, ventral cords, and some of the nerves, are numerous blood vessels.

There are two "compound" eyes lying towards the sides of the cephalothoracic shield, and in front of these two more median simple eyes. The compound eyes are covered by a layer of chitin continuous with that of the shield, and the various eye elements are so remarkably distinct from one another that the eye might be called a group of simple eyes.

**The food canal.**—Worms and the like, seized by some of the pincers, are partly masticated by the bases of the five posterior cephalothoracic legs. The mouth leads into a suctorial pharynx, with chitinous folds; thence the fore-gut bends upwards and forwards into a crop. Separated from this by a valve is the mid-gut, which extends along the cephalothorax and abdomen, and in the former bears two pairs of large yellow hepato-pancreatic outgrowths. The hind-gut is short, and ends in front of the base of the spine.

Two large reddish glands in the cephalothorax open in young forms at the bases of the fifth appendages. They also open internally, and may be compared with the coxal glands of spider and scorpion, with the shell gland of Entomostraca, and with nephridia (?).

**The vascular system.**—The heart lies within a pericardium, and is partially divided into eight chambers, with eight pairs of valved

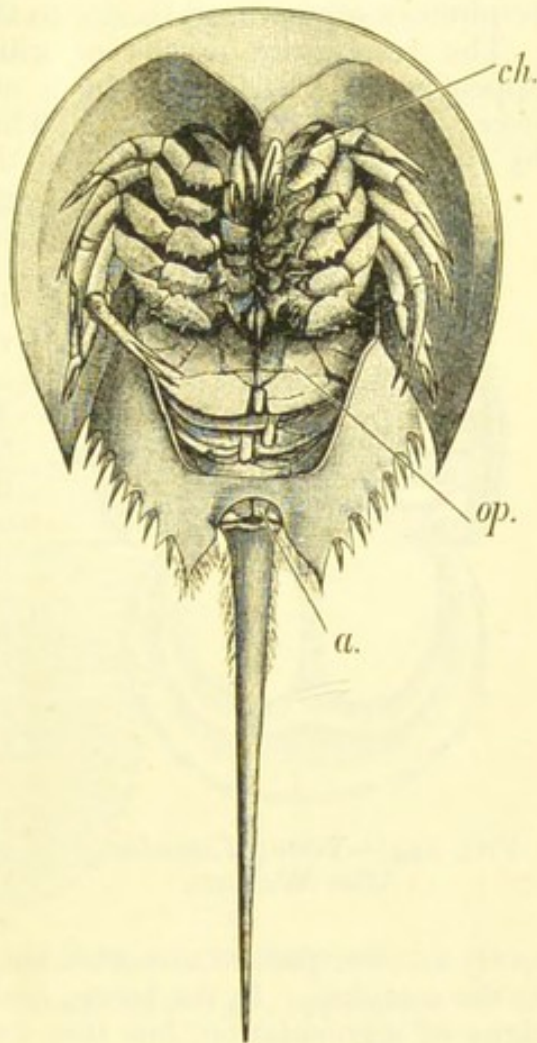


FIG. 143.—*Limulus* or King-crab.  
ch., Chelicerae; op., operculum; a.,  
anus.



ostia. Hæmocyanin is present as usual as the respiratory pigment of the blood, and there are oval corpuscles. From an anterior aorta, like that of the scorpion, two vessels are given off which bend backward, unite with lateral arteries from each chamber of the heart, and form a collateral vessel on each side of the heart. These unite in a posterior dorsal artery. From the anterior aorta two other branches unite in a ring around the nerve-collar, which gives off vessels to the limbs, and is continued backwards around the nerve-cord. From capillaries the blood is gathered into a ventral venous sinus, whence it passes to the respiratory organs, and thence to the pericardium and heart.

The respiratory organs or gill-books are borne by the last five appendages. Each looks like a much-plaited gill, or like a book with over a hundred hollow leaves. The leaf-like folds are externally washed by the water, and within them the blood flows. The leaves of the gill-books are compared to the leaves of the lung-books of scorpions. If this homology is correct, the gill-books are evaginations, the lung-books invaginations, of the skin.

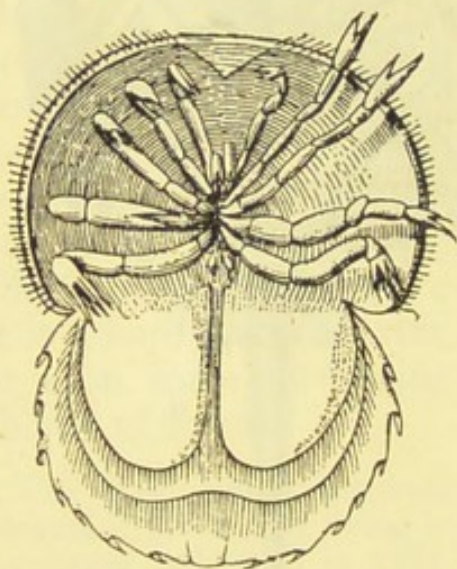


FIG. 144.—Young *Limulus*.—  
After Walcott.

#### The reproductive system.—

The males are smaller than the females. The testes are very diffuse, the two vasa deferentia open on the internal surface of the operculum, and the spermatozoa, which are vibratile, are shed into the water. The ovaries form two much-branched but connected sacs; the oviducts are separate, and enlarge before they open beneath the operculum.

Spawning occurs in the spring and summer months. The ova and spermatozoa are deposited in hollows near high-water mark. Some of the early stages of development, still imperfectly known, present considerable resemblance to corresponding stages in the scorpion. In the larvæ, both cephalothorax and abdomen show signs of segmentation, but this disappears. The spine is represented only by a very short plate, and the larva presents a striking superficial resemblance to a Trilobite.

It seems likely that *Limulus* is linked to the extinct Eurypterids by some fossil forms known as Hemiaspidæ, e.g. *Hemiaspis*, *Belinurus*.

#### Order 2. EURYPTERINA (= Merostomata), e.g. *Eurypterus*.

Gigantic extinct forms found from Ordovician to Carboniferous strata. The body is divided into head, thorax, and abdomen. The head is small and unsegmented. The thorax is composed of six distinct segments, the abdomen of six with a terminal telson, which was sometimes a pointed spine, sometimes paddle-shaped. There is, however, some doubt as to the exact nomenclature of the regions. On the head are



borne six pairs of appendages of varying shape, two lateral compound eyes, and two median ocelli. On the ventral surface of the thorax there are five pairs of gills covered by flat plates, of which the most anterior pair are very large, and form the so-called operculum (cf. *Limulus*). The surface of the body was covered with scales. Some of the Eurypterids reached a length of 6 ft.

This order is sometimes placed near the Crustacea, but the general opinion seems to be that which links them through *Limulus* to Arachnoids.

Order 3. TRILOBITA. Trilobites, e.g. *Calymene*, *Phacops*, *Asaphus*.

Extinct forms chiefly found in Cambrian and Ordovician strata, but extending up to the Carboniferous. The body as found is divisible into

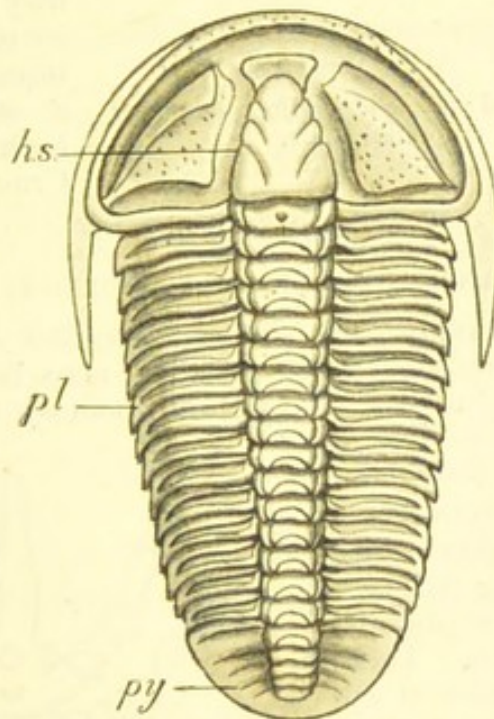


FIG. 145.—Trilobite (*Conocephalites*).—After Barrande.

*h.s.*, Head shield ; *pl.*, pleura of thoracic region ; *py.*, pygidium.

three parts—the unsegmented head shield, often prolonged backwards at the angles ; the flexible thorax of a varying number of segments ; the unsegmented abdomen or pygidium. A median longitudinal ridge, or rachis, divides the body into three longitudinal portions.

Traces of limbs are only rarely preserved. In the head region there are four pairs, apparently simple. Antennæ have been recently found in this region. The thorax and abdomen are furnished with biramous appendages with long-jointed endopodite, short exopodite, and a gill (or epipodite?) of varying shape. In the abdominal region the gills were perhaps rudimentary.

Trilobites are often found rolled up in a way that reminds one of some wood-lice. So abundant are they in some rocks, that even their development has been studied with some success.



The limbs seem to be more like those of Crustaceans than those of Arachnoids, and the

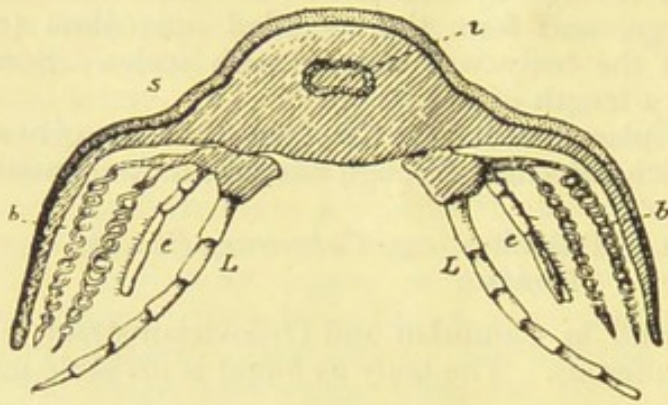


FIG. 146.—Vertical cross-section of a Trilobite (*Calymene*).—After Walcott.

*i.*, Intestine; *s.*, shield; *L.*, endopodite; *e.*, exopodite; *b.*, epipodial parts.

occurrence of antennæ, observed by Linnæus (1759), and recently corroborated, accentuates the resemblance. The affinities with *Limulus*, according to the views of other authorities, justify the association of Trilobites and Arachnoids. A compromise may be perhaps effected by regarding the Trilobites as an offshoot from a stock ancestral to both Arachnoids and Crustaceans.

#### *Incertæ Sedis.*

#### PANTOPODA OR PYCNOGONIDÆ.

These are marine Arthropods, sometimes called sea-spiders. Their affinities are uncertain, but perhaps they may be ranked between Crustaceans and Arachnoids. Many climb about sea-weeds and hydroids near the shore, but some live at great depths. The body consists of an anterior proboscis, a cephalothoracic region with three fused and three free segments, and an unsegmented rudimentary abdomen. There are typically seven pairs of appendages. Of these the first are short and chelate, but may be absent in the adult. The next two are small and slender, and are often absent in the adult female; the second pair may also be absent in the male, but the third in the males of all genera carries the eggs. The last four pairs of appendages are always present, and form the exceedingly long walking legs. Into them, and into the chelicerae when these are present, outgrowths of the mid-gut extend. The sexes are separate. The larvæ are at first unsegmented, with three pairs of appendages.

Examples.—*Pycnogonum*, *Nymphon*, *Ammonothea*.

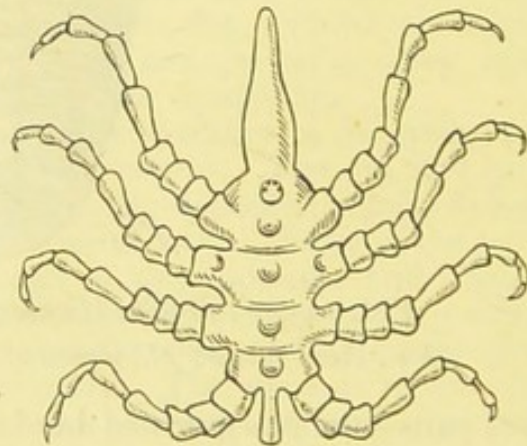


FIG. 147.—Sea-spider (*Pycnogonum littorale*), from the dorsal surface.

The first two pairs of appendages are absent. In the anterior region are four simple eyes.



## CHAPTER XVI.

### MOLLUSCA.

Classes 1. AMPHINEURA—A small class of bilaterally symmetrical forms, *e.g.* *Chiton*. 2. GASTEROPODA, *e.g.* Snails. 3. SCAPHOPODA—A small class, *e.g.* *Dentalium*. 4. LAMELLIBRANCHIATA—Bivalves. 5. CEPHALOPODA—Cuttle-fishes.

THE series of Molluscs is in many ways contrasted with that of Arthropods ; thus the body of the Mollusc is unsegmented, and there are no appendages. The general habit of life is also very different, for, although there are active Molluscs and sluggish Arthropods, it is true as an average statement that Molluscs are sluggish and Arthropods are active. The pedigree is unknown, but there does not seem to be any possible ancestry for Molluscs less remote than the stock from which Turbellarians and other unsegmented "worms" have sprung.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Molluscs are unsegmented and without appendages. The symmetry is fundamentally bilateral, but this is lost in most Gasteropods. The "foot"—a muscular protrusion of the ventral surface—is very characteristic ; it usually serves for locomotion, but is much modified according to habit. Typically, a projecting dorsal fold of the body-wall forms a mantle, or pallium (Fig. 148, c.), which often secretes a single or bilobed shell covering the viscera, and roofs in a space—the mantle cavity—within which lie the gills. But both mantle and shell may be absent. There are three chief pairs of ganglia—cerebrals, pedals, and pleurals—with connecting commissures, and often with accessory ganglia, especially two viscerals on a loop connecting the pleurals (Figs. 148, 152). Except in Lamelli-*



branches, in which the head region is degenerate, there is in the mouth a chitinous ribbon or radula, usually bearing numerous

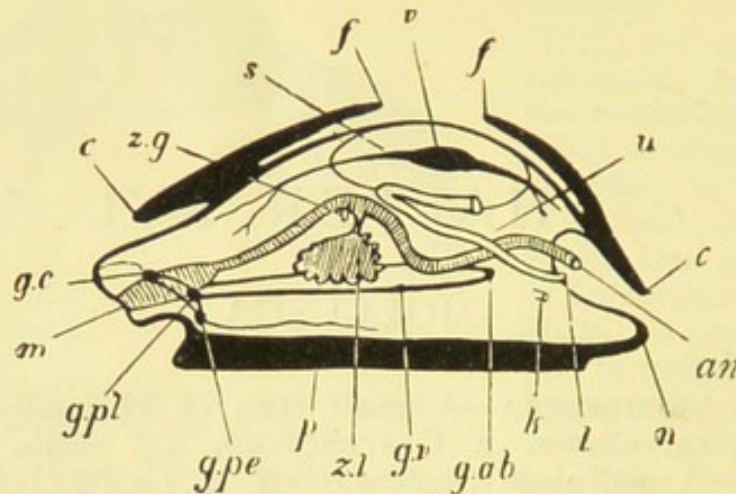


FIG. 148.—Ideal mollusc.—After Ray Lankester.

*m.*, Mouth; *g.c.*, cerebral ganglia; *c.*, edges of mantle skirt; *z.g.*, duct of right lobe of digestive gland; *s.*, pericardial cavity; *f.*, edges of shell-sac; *v.*, ventricle of heart; *u.*, nephridium; *an.*, anus; *n.*, posterior part of the foot; *l.*, opening of nephridium; *k.*, genital aperture; *g.ab.*, abdominal ganglion on visceral loop; *g.v.*, visceral ganglion; *z.l.*, left lobe of digestive gland; *p.*, foot; *g.pe.*, pedal ganglion; *g.pl.*, pleural ganglion.

small teeth, and moved by special muscles, the whole structure being known as the odontophore. A portion of the true body cavity or *cœlom* usually persists as the pericardium at least

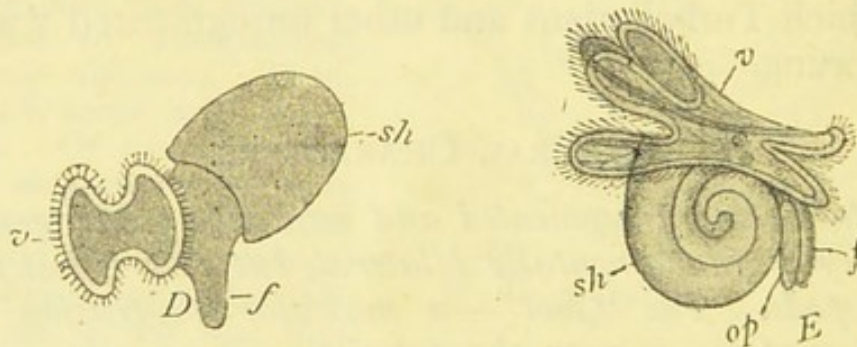


FIG. 149.—Stages in Molluscan development.

*D*, Larva of Heteropod (after Gegenbaur); *sh.*, shell covering visceral hump; *v.*, velum; *f.*, foot.  
*E*, Larva of *Atlanta* (after Gegenbaur); *v.*, velum; *sh.*, shell; *f.*, foot; *op.*, operculum.

(Fig. 148, *s.*), and communicates with the exterior through the nephridium or nephridia. The vascular system is almost always well developed, but part of the circulation is in most cases through ill-defined spaces or lacunæ; the heart typically



consists of a ventricle and two auricles. Respiratory organs are most typically represented by a pair of vascular processes of the body-wall (ctenidia or gills), but one or both of these may be absent. At the base of the gills there is generally an olfactory organ or osphradium. The sexes are separate or united. There are two common larval stages,—the Trochosphere, which resembles the same stage in some Annelids, and the more characteristic Veliger (Fig. 149); but the development is often direct. The Mollusca form a very large group, exhibiting much diversity of habit.

First Type of MOLLUSCA. The Snail (*Helix*), one of the terrestrial (pulmonate) Gasteropods.

**Habits.**—The common garden snail (*H. aspersa*), or the larger edible snail (*H. pomatia*), which is rare in England but abundant on the Continent, serves as a convenient type of this large genus of land-snails. They are thoroughly terrestrial animals, breathing air directly through a pulmonary chamber, and drowning (slowly) when immersed in water. Their food consists of leaves and other parts of plants, but they sometimes indulge in strange vagaries of appetite. They are hermaphrodite, but there is always cross-fertilisation. The breeding time is spring, and the eggs are laid in the ground. In winter snails bury themselves, usually in companies, cement the mouths of their shells with hardened mucus and a little lime, and fall into a state of "latent life," in which the heart beats feebly. They have been known to remain dormant for years.

**General appearance.**—A snail actively creeping shows a well developed head, with two pairs of retractile horns or tentacles, of which the longer and posterior bear eyes. The foot, by the muscular contraction of which the animal creeps, is very large; it leaves behind it a trail of mucus. The viscera protrude, as if ruptured, in a dorsal hump, which is spirally coiled and protected by the spiral shell. On slight provocation the animal retracts itself within its shell, a process which drives air from the mantle cavity, and thus helps indirectly in respiration. Around the mouth of the shell is a very thick mantle margin or collar, by which the continued growth of the shell is secured. On the right



side of the expanded animal, close to the anterior edge of the shell, there is a large aperture through which air passes into and out of the mantle cavity. Within the same aperture is the terminal opening of the ureter. The food canal ends slightly below and to the right of the pulmonary aperture. All the three openings are close together. The *anterior* termination of ureter and food canal is one of the results of the twisting of the visceral mass *forwards to the right*. But still further forward, at the end of a slight groove which runs along the right side of the neck, indeed quite close to the mouth, is the genital aperture. Lastly, an opening just beneath the mouth leads into the large mucus gland of the foot.

**Shell.**—The right-handed spiral shell is a cuticular product made and periodically enlarged by the collar. Chemically it consists of carbonate of lime and an organic basis (conchiolin). The outermost layer is coloured, without lime, and easily rubbed off; the median layer is thickest, and looks like porcelain; the innermost layer is pearly. The twisted cavity of the shell is continuous, and the viscera extend to the uppermost and oldest part.

As the shell is gradually made, the inner walls of the coils form a central pillar (columella), as on a staircase, and to this the animal is bound by a strong (columellar) muscle. Many Gasteropods bear a horn-like shell-lid (operculum) on the foot, but *Helix* has none; the "epiphragm" with which the shell is sealed in winter, consists of hardened mucus, plus phosphate and a smaller quantity of carbonate of lime. It is formed very quickly from the collar region when cold weather sets in, has no organic connection with the animal, such as binds its operculum to the foot of the whelk, and is loosened off in the mildness of spring.

**Appearance after the shell is removed.**—If the shell is removed carefully, so that nothing is broken except the columellar muscle, many structures can be seen without any dissection. The skin of the head and foot should be contrasted—(a) with the thick collar of the mantle; (b) with the mantle itself, which forms the loose roof of the pulmonary chamber; (c) with the exceedingly delicate, much stretched, and always protected skin of the visceral hump. The mantle is a downgrowth of the skin of this dorsal region. It is peculiar in the snail, in that its margin (the collar) is fused to the body-wall. The result is to form a respiratory



cavity, which is as much outside the body as is the gill-chamber of the crayfish. It is important to realise that the snail has an "enlargement of the liver" and a great rupture-like hump of viscera on the dorsal surface, that this has been coiled spirally, and that there is the yet deeper torsion forward to the right.

A great part of the hump consists of the greenish brown digestive gland, in which the bluish intestine coils; behind the mantle chamber, on the right, lies the triangular and greyish kidney; the whitish reproductive organ lies in the second last and third last coil of the spiral.

**Skin.**—This varies greatly in thickness. It consists of a single-layered epidermis and a more complex dermis, including connective tissue and muscle fibres. There are numerous cells from which mucus, pigment, and lime are secreted; those forming pigment and lime are especially abundant on the collar, where they contribute to the growth of shell.

**Muscular system.**—Among the important muscles are—(a) those of the foot; (b) those which retract the animal into its shell, and are in part attached to the columella; (c) those which work the radula in the mouth; (d) the retractors of the horns; and (e) the retractor of the penis. The muscle fibres usually appear unstriated. There is much connective tissue, some of the cells of which contain glycogen, pigment, and lime.

**Nervous system.**—This is concentrated in a ring around the gullet. Careful examination shows that this ring consists dorsally of a pair of cerebral ganglia, connected ventrally with a pair of pedals and a pair of pleuro-viscerals, which, according to some authorities, have a median abdominal ganglion lying between them (Fig. 152).

The cerebrals give off nerves to the head, *e.g.* to the mouth, tentacles, and otocysts, and also two nerves which run to small buccal ganglia, lying beneath the junction of gullet and buccal mass. The pedals give off nerves to the foot, the viscerals to the mantle and posterior organs.

**Sense organs.**—An eye, innervated from the brain, is situated on one side of the tip of each of the two long horns. It is a cup invaginated from the epidermis, lined posteriorly by a single layer of pigmented and non-pigmented retinal cells, filled with a clear vitreous body perhaps



equivalent to a lens, closed in front by a transparent "cornea," and strengthened all round by a firm "sclerotic." How much a snail sees we do not know, but it detects quick movements. Though the eye is by no means very simple, the snail soon makes another if the original be lost, and this process of regeneration has been known to occur twenty times in succession.

The otcocysts appear as two small white spots on the pedal ganglia. Each is a sac of connective tissue, lined by epithelium which is said to be ciliated in one region, containing a fluid and a variable number of oval otoliths of lime, and innervated by a delicate nerve from the cerebral ganglia.

Though no osphradium or smelling patch, comparable to that which occurs at the base of the gills in most Molluscs, has been discovered in *Helix*, the snail is repelled or attracted by odours; it shrinks from turpentine, it smells strawberries from afar. This sense of smell seems to be located in the horns, for a dishorned snail has none. The tips of both pairs of horns bear sensory cells connected with ganglionic tissue and nerve-fibres within.

Other sensory cells, probably of use in tasting, lie on the lips; and there are many others, which may be called tactile, on the sides of the foot, and on various parts of the body. In short, the snail is diffusely sensitive.

**Alimentary system.**—In cutting a piece of leaf, the snail uses two instruments—the crescentic jaw-plate on the roof of the mouth, and the toothed ribbon or radula on the floor. This radula is like a flexible file,—a short and broad strip of membrane, bearing several longitudinal rows of minute chitinoid teeth. It rests on a cartilaginous pad on the floor of the mouth cavity, and is moved (backwards and forwards, and up and down) in a curve by protractor and retractor muscles. The whole apparatus, including teeth, membrane, and pad, is called the odontophore. The radula wears away anteriorly, but is added to posteriorly within a radula sac which projects from the floor of the buccal cavity. Its action on leaves may be compared very roughly to that of a file, but its movements within the mouth also produce a kind of suction which draws food particles inwards. In this suction the muscular lips and the cilia in the mouth cavity assist.

The ducts of two large salivary glands open on the dorsal surface of the buccal cavity, and there are numerous distinct glandular cells close to the entrance of the two ducts. The salivary glands are large lobed structures, and extend far backward on the crop. They consist of hundreds of glandular cells or unicellular glands, which secrete a clear



fluid stuff. This travels up the ducts, and is forced, in part at least, by muscular compression, into the buccal cavity. While some say that this fluid converts starch into sugar (after the usual fashion of saliva), other authorities deny that it has any effect upon the food. Similar glands are found in all Gasteropods, while they are entirely absent in Lamellibranchs. In some boring Gasteropods the secretion contains 2-4 per cent. of free sulphuric acid.

The gullet extends backward from the buccal cavity, and expands into a storing crop; this is followed by a small stomach surrounded by the digestive gland; thence the intestine extends, and, after coiling in the visceral hump, passes forward to end on the right side anteriorly beside the respiratory aperture. The digestive tract is muscular, and in part ciliated internally.

A large part of the visceral spiral is occupied by the so-called "liver." This gland has two lobes, each of which opens by a duct into the stomach. The left lobe is again imperfectly divided into three. Besides producing juices which digest all kinds of food, the gland makes glycogen, stores phosphate of lime, and contains a greenish pigment. It is thus more than a "liver," more even than a "hepatopancreas," it is a complex digestive gland, producing several digestive ferments. The phosphate of lime may possibly be used to form the autumnal epiphragm.

**Vascular system.**—The blood contains some colourless amœboid cells, and a respiratory pigment called hæmocyanin, which gives the oxidised blood a blue tint, and is very common among Molluscs.

The heart, with a ventricle and a single auricle, lies in a pericardial chamber on the dorsal surface, to the left side, behind the mantle cavity. The average number of pulsations in Gasteropods is about one hundred per minute, but in the hibernating snail the beating is scarcely perceptible.

From the ventricle pure blood flows by cephalic and visceral arteries to the head, foot, and body, passes into fine ramifications of these arteries, and thence into spaces among the tissues. From these the blood is collected in larger venous spaces, and eventually in a pulmonary sinus around the mantle cavity, on the roof of which there is a network of vessels. There the blood is purified. Most of



it returns directly to the auricle by a large pulmonary vein, but some passes first through the kidney.

**Respiratory system.**—Most Gasteropods, *e.g.* the dogwhelk (*Purpura*), the buckie (*Buccinum*), the periwinkle (*Littorina*), breathe by gills covered by the mantle. The snail being entirely terrestrial, has a pulmonary or lung cavity, formed by the mantle fold. On the roof of this cavity the blood vessels are spread out. Air passes into and out of the pulmonary chamber by the respiratory aperture. When the animal is retracted within its shell, the freshening of the air in the pulmonary chamber takes place by slow diffusion, but when the snail extends itself at full length, the chamber is rapidly filled with air, and it is even more rapidly emptied when the body is withdrawn into the shell.

**Excretory system.**—There is a single triangular greyish kidney behind the pulmonary chamber, between the heart and the rectum. It is a sac with plaited walls, and excretes nitrogenous waste products, which pass out by a long ureter running along the right side of the pulmonary chamber, and opening close beside the anus. There are two sources of blood supply to the kidney—(*a*) from the pulmonary chamber, and (*b*) from the heart by a renal artery. As in most other Molluscs, the kidney communicates by a small aperture with that part of the body cavity which forms the pericardial sac. Thus, as in earthworm, lobworm, etc., the coelom has a nephridial connection with the exterior.

**Reproductive system.**—The snail is hermaphrodite, and its reproductive organs exhibit much division of labour.

(*a*) The essential reproductive organ (the *ovotestis*) is a whitish body near the apex of the visceral spire. It consists of numerous cylindrical follicles, in each of which both ova and spermatozoa are formed, but not at the same time. Simultaneous formation of elements so different is probably very rare.

(*b*) A much convoluted *hermaphrodite duct* of a white colour conducts the sex cells from the ovotestis, and leads to the base of a large yellowish albumen gland.

(*c*) This tongue-shaped *albumen gland* varies in size with the age and sexual state of the snail. It forms gelatinous proteid material, which envelops and probably nourishes the ova.



(d) The ova and spermatozoa pass from the hermaphrodite duct towards the head along a *common duct*, but not at the same time. Moreover, their paths are different, for the portion of the duct down which the ova travel is much plaited, while the path which the spermatozoa follow is a less prominent groove, incompletely separated from the other. Both paths are glandular, and the glands on the male side are often called prostatic.

(e) At the base of this common duct, a distinct *vas deferens* diverges to the left and leads into a muscular *penis*, which can be protruded at the single genital aperture and retracted by a special muscle. Before the vas deferens enters the penis, a long process or *flagellum* is given off. It is like the lash of a whip, and is as long as the common duct. Within it a sperm packet or spermatophore is partly formed, but seems to be completed in the penis.

The spermatophore is laden with a large number of spermatozoa, and is transferred by the penis into the genital aperture of another snail.

(f) Continued from the oviducal side of the common duct, there is a separate ciliated *oviduct*. This has a short course, and ends in the common genital aperture. Before it reaches this, however, the oviduct is associated with two structures. The first of these is a long process, as long as

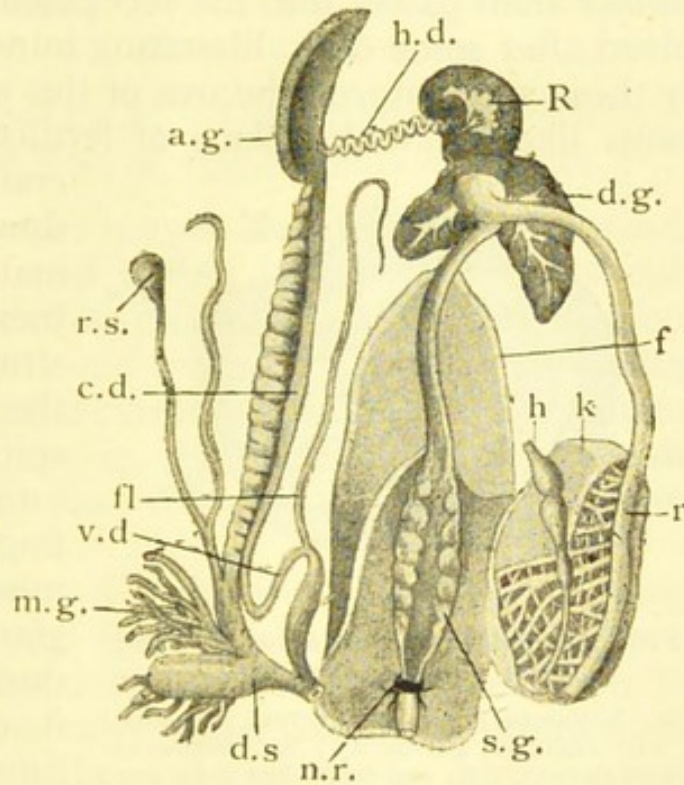


FIG. 150.—Dissection of *Helix pomatia*.—  
Mainly after Leuckart.

*n.r.*, Nerve-ring; *s.g.*, salivary glands on the crop; *f.*, foot; *d.g.*, digestive gland opening into mid-gut; *h.*, heart; *k.*, kidney; *r.*, rectum; *R.*, hermaphrodite organ in terminal part of digestive gland; *h.d.*, hermaphrodite duct; *a.g.*, albumen gland; *c.d.*, common duct, with more convoluted oviducal part; *v.d.*, vas deferens entering penis; *fl.*, flagellum; *r.s.*, receptaculum seminis, with a branch from its duct; *m.g.*, mucus glands; *d.s.*, dart sac.



the common duct beside which it runs, in appearance suggesting the flagellum, but expanding at its free end into a globular sac—the *receptaculum seminis* or *spermatheca*. In *Helix aspersa* a long slender diverticulum is given off from the duct of the receptaculum. This is also occasionally seen in *H. pomatia* (see Fig. 150). A spermatophore from another snail passes into the receptaculum, and is there dissolved after some days, liberating hundreds of spermatozoa. By these spermatozoa the ova of this snail are fertilised. It seems likely that the place of fertilisation is at the lower

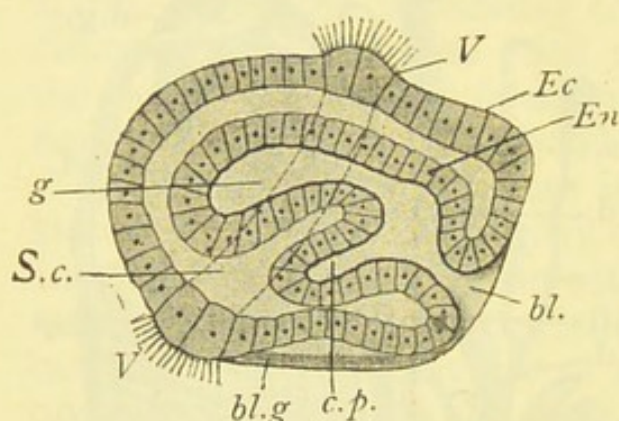


FIG. 151.—Diagram of larva of *Paludina*.—After Erlanger.

*Ec.*, Ectoderm; *En.*, endoderm; *v.*, velum, with cilia; *g.*, gut-cavity; *S.c.*, segmentation cavity; *c.p.*, cælom pocket from gut; *bl.g.*, blastopore groove closed, except at *bl.*, which becomes the anus. The origin of the mesoderm from a gut-pocket has as yet only been described in *Paludina* among Mollusca.

end of the hermaphrodite duct, whither the spermatozoa are said to find their way. The second structure associated with the female duct is a conspicuous *mucus gland*, formed of two sets of finger-like processes. The mucus secretion of this gland is very abundant during copulation, and as it contains not a little lime, it is possible that it may form the calcareous shells of the eggs.

(*g*) Finally, between the entrance of oviduct and penis into the terminal aperture there lies a firm cylindrical structure, larger than the penis and with muscular walls. It is the *Cupid's Dart Sac*, and contains a pointed calcareous arrow (*spiculum amoris*), which is jerked out previous to copulation. The dart is sometimes found adhering to the skin of a snail, and after copulation the sac is empty, soon, however, to be refilled.

When two snails pair, the genital apertures are dilated, the protruded penis of one is inserted into the aperture of the other, and the transference of a spermatophore is thus effected.

The eggs are laid in the earth in June and July. Each is surrounded by gelatinous material acquired in the oviduct, and by an elastic but calcareous shell.



Segmentation is total but slightly unequal. As the snail is a terrestrial Gasteropod, there is no trochosphere larva, nor more than a slight hint of the characteristic Molluscan velum. A miniature adult is hatched in about three weeks. The study of development may be more profitably followed in the pond-snail *Limnæus*, where gastrula, trochosphere, and veliger can be readily seen.

Second Type of MOLLUSCA. The Fresh-water Mussel (*Anodonta cygnea*), one of the Lamellibranchiata.

**Habit.**—The fresh-water mussel lives in rivers and ponds. It lies with its head end buried in the mud, or ploughs slowly along by means of its ploughshare-like foot. Its food consists of minute plants and animals, which are wafted in at the posterior end by the currents produced by the ciliated gills. What is noted here in regard to *Anodonta* will also apply almost equally to *Unio* and other fresh-water mussels.

**External appearance.**—The bivalve is 4 to 6 in. long; its valves are equal and united in a dorsal hinge by an elastic ligament, an uncalcified part of the shell; on the ventral surface when the valves gape the foot protrudes; the anterior end is rounded, the posterior end is more pointed, and it is there that the water currents flow in (ventrally) and out (dorsally). In bivalves the ligament is generally posterior to the dorsal knob or *umbo*—the oldest part of the shell—and the umbo generally points towards the anterior end. The greenish brown soft ("horny") layer of the shell is often worn away near the umbo on each side, and then displays the median layer of lime. This is called prismatic, since the lime salts are deposited on prisms, transversely varicose or striated like those which form the enamel of the teeth. Internally there is a pearly layer. Lines of growth on the shell mark the position of the margin in former years, the newest part being obviously at the edge.

The shell is a cuticular structure, *i.e.* it is made by the epidermis of the mantle. It consists, as in the snail, of calcium carbonate plus conchiolin or conchin. Thus the composition of a *Pinna* shell is :—Lime salts, 89.2; organic matrix, 1.3; water, 9.5.



**Internal appearance.**—When the right half of the shell is folded back, the anterior and posterior closing muscles having been carefully cut close to the gently raised valve, the mantle folds are seen lining the shell, and forming posteriorly the ventral inhalant and dorsal exhalant lips. The ventral lips have papillary processes. Internal to the mantle there are two gill-plates on each side; projecting from between these is the foot, muscular ventrally, softer dorsally; the median dorsal pericardium is just beneath the ligament; the ventricle shines through its walls, and the dark-coloured kidneys are seen through its floor. Below the anterior adductor muscle is the large mouth, bordered beneath by two lip processes (labial palps) on each side. These resemble the gills in appearance, and are probably modified portions of the gills. The anus is above the posterior closing muscle. The whole space between the two mantle flaps is called the mantle cavity, and it is divided by a slight partition at the bases of the gills into a large ventral infra-branchial chamber, and a small dorsal supra-branchial chamber which ends at the exhalant orifice. This mantle cavity is, of course, here also outside the body.

On the surface of the valves of the shell a few small pearls may be seen; they are formed by the enclosure of some minute grains of sand in the prismatic layer. The following muscles are inserted on the shell, and leave impressions :—

- (a) The anterior adductor.
- (b) The posterior adductor.
- (c) The anterior retractor of the foot continuous with (a).
- (d) The protractor of the foot a little below (a).
- (e) The posterior retractor of the foot continuous with (b).

As the shell grows, the insertion of the muscles and the attachment of the mantle change, and the traces of this shifting are visible.

**Skin.**—There is much ciliated epithelium about *Anodonta*, especially on the internal surface of the mantle, on the gills, and on the labial palps; and little pieces cut from an animal incompletely dead (*e.g.* from the oyster swallowed half-alive) have by means of their cilia a slight power of motion. The skin of the foot is not ciliated but glandular; on the mantle edge sensitive and glandular cells are abundant, but usually in inverse ratio to one another.



**Muscular system.**—The shell is closed and kept closed by the action of the two adductor muscles. When these are relaxed under nervous control, the elasticity of the hinge ligament opens the valves. A book with an elastic binding, stretched when the book is closed by clasps, would in the same way open when unclasped. It is easier for the mussel to open the valves of its shell than to keep them shut. The foot is a muscular protrusion of the ventral surface, under the control of three muscles—a retractor and a protractor anteriorly, and a posterior retractor. Its upper portion

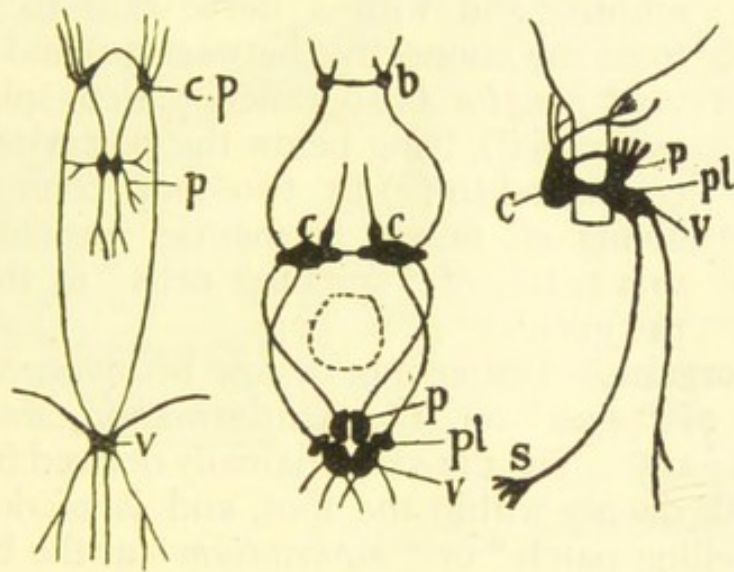


FIG. 152.—Nervous system of Molluscs.

To the left that of *Anodonta*; to the right that of *Octopus*; in the middle that of *Helix*. In the last two the position of the gullet is shown.

*c.p.*, Cerebro-pleural ganglia; *p.*, pedals; *v.*, viscerals; *c.*, cerebrals; *pl.*, pleurals; *b.*, buccals; *s.*, stellate ganglion.

contains some coils of gut and the reproductive organs; its lower region is very muscular. The protrusion or extension of this locomotor organ is mainly due to an inflow of blood, which is prevented from returning by the contraction of a sphincter muscle round the veins. In moving, the animal literally ploughs its way along the bottom of the pond or river pool, and leaves a furrow in its track. The muscle fibres, as in the snail, are of the slowly contracting non-striped sort.

**Nervous system.**—There are three pairs of nerve-centres ;—



- (a) *Cerebro-pleural ganglia*, lying above the mouth on each side on the tendon of the anterior retractor of the foot, connected to one another by a commissure, connected to the two other pairs of ganglia (b) and (c), by long paired connectives, and giving off some nerves to mantle, palps, etc.
- (b) *Pedal ganglia*, lying close together about the middle of the foot, united by connectives to (a), giving off nerves to the foot, and having beside them two small ear-sacs, each with a calcareous otolith, and with a nerve said to be derived from the connective between (a) and (b).
- (c) *Visceral ganglia* (also called parieto-splanchnic or osphradial), lying below the posterior adductor, connected to (a) by two long connectives, and giving off nerves to mantle, muscles, etc., and to a patch of "smelling cells" at the bases of the gills.

**Sense organs.**—Unlike not a few bivalves, which have hundreds of "eyes" on the mantle margin, *Anodonta* has no trace of any. The ear-sac, originally derived from a skin-pit, is sunk deeply within the foot, and is of doubtful use. The "smelling patch" or "*osphradium*" at the base of the gills, has perhaps water-testing qualities. There are also "tactile" cells about the mantle, labial palps, etc.

**Alimentary system.**—The mouth lies between the anterior adductor and the foot, and beside it lie the ciliated, vascular, and sensitive labial palps, two on each side. It opens immediately into the gullet, for the pharynx of other Molluscs, with all its associated structures, is absent in Lamellibranchs. The short wide gullet leads into a large stomach surrounded by the paired digestive gland, equivalent to that of the snail. Part of the food digested by these juices in the stomach is compacted in autumn into a "crystalline style"—a mass of reserve food stuffs, and similar but less solid material is found in the intestine. On this supply the mussel tides over the winter. Some authorities, however, maintain that the style is a glandular secretion, protecting the lining of the gut from injury. Similar structures are found in several Gasteropods. The



intestine, which has in part a folded wall like that of the earthworm coils about in the foot, ascends to the pericardium, passes through the ventricle of the heart, and ends above the posterior adductor at the exhalant orifice.

**Vascular system.**—The heart lies in the middle line on

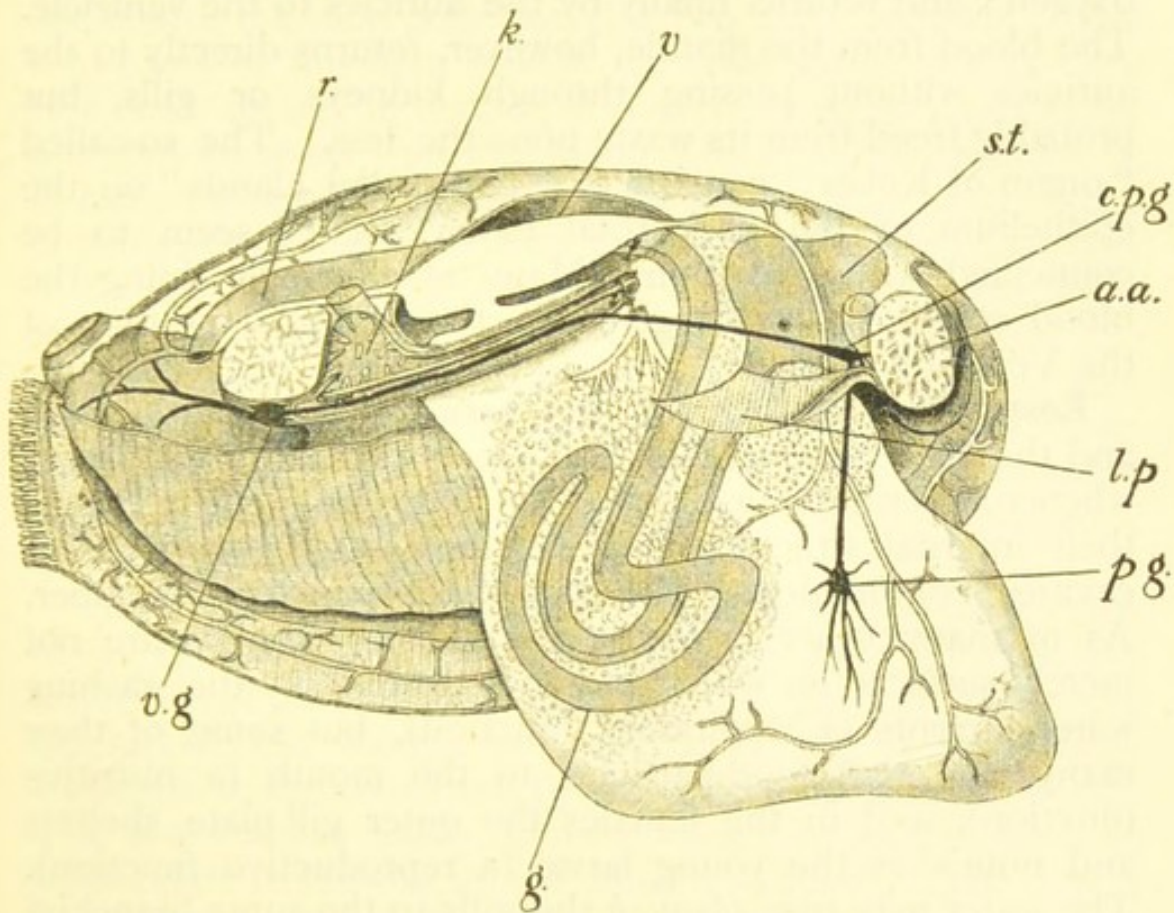


FIG. 153.—Structure of *Anodonta*.—After Rankin.

*a.a.*, Anterior adductor; *c.p.g.*, cerebro-pleural ganglia; *st.*, stomach; *v.*, ventricle, with an auricle opening into it; *k.*, kidney, above which is the posterior retractor of the foot; *r.*, rectum ending above posterior adductor; *v.g.*, visceral ganglia with connectives (in black) from cerebro-pleurals; *g.*, gut coiling in foot; *p.g.*, pedal ganglia in foot, where also are seen branches of the anterior aorta and the reproductive organs; *l.p.*, labial palps behind mouth. At the posterior end the exhalant (upper) and inhalant (lower) apertures are seen.

the dorsal surface, within a portion of the body-cavity called the pericardium, and consists of a muscular ventricle which has grown round the gut and drives blood to the body, and of two transparent auricles—one on each side of the ventricle—which receive blood returning from the gills and mantle. In bivalves the heart-beats average about twenty per minute, much less than in Gasteropods. The colour-



less blood passes from the ventricle by an anterior and a posterior artery ; flows into ill-defined channels ; is collected in a "vena cava" beneath the floor of the pericardium ; passes thence through the kidneys, where it loses nitrogenous waste, to the gills, where it loses carbonic acid and gains oxygen ; and returns finally by the auricles to the ventricle. The blood from the mantle, however, returns directly to the auricles without passing through kidneys or gills, but probably freed from its waste none the less. The so-called "organ of Keber" consists of "pericardial glands" on the epithelium of the pericardial cavity. They seem to be connected with excretion. Many of the cells lining the blood channels secrete glycogen, the principal product of the Vertebrate liver.

**Respiratory system.**—Lying between the mantle flaps and the foot there are on each side two large gill-plates, whence the title Lamellibranch. They are richly ciliated ; their internal structure is like complex trellis work ; their cavities communicate with the supra-branchial chamber. As in many other molluscs, the gills or ctenidia are not merely surfaces on which blood is purified by the washing water-currents (a respiratory function), but some of their many cilia waft food-particles to the mouth (a nutritive function), and in the females the outer gill-plate shelters and nourishes the young larvæ (a reproductive function). The water may pass *through* the gills to the supra-branchial chamber and thence out again, or *over* the gills to the mouth, and thence into the supra-branchial chamber. It is likely that the mantle has no small share in the respiration.

The precise structure and attachment of the gill-plates is complex, but it is important to understand the following facts :—(a) A cross section of the two gill-plates on one side has the form of a W, one half of which is the outer, the other the inner gill-plate ; (b) each of these gill-plates consists of a united series of gill filaments, which descend from the centre of the W and then bend up again ; (c) adjacent filaments are bound together by fusions and bridges both horizontal and vertical, so that each gill-plate becomes like a complex piece of basket work ; (d) both gill-plates begin by the downward growth of filaments from a longitudinal "ctenidial axis," the position of which on cross-section is at the median apex of the W ; (e) this mode of origin, and the much less complex gills of other bivalves, lead one to believe that there is on each side one gill, consisting of two gill-plates formed from a series



of united and reflected gill filaments. On the gills there are often parasitic mites (*Atax*).

**Excretory system.**—The paired kidney, which used to be called the “organ of Bojanus,” lies beneath the floor of the pericardium. Each half is a nephridium bent upon itself, with the loop posterior, the two ends anterior. The lower part of this bent tube is the true kidney; it is dark in colour, spongy in texture, and excretes guanin and other nitrogenous waste from the blood which passes through it. It has an internal opening into the pericardium, which thus communicates indirectly with the exterior. The upper part of the bent tube, lying next the floor of the pericardium, is merely a ureter. It conveys waste products from the glandular part to the exterior, and opens anteriorly just under the place where the inner gill-plate is attached to the visceral mass. As already mentioned, the “pericardial glands” probably aid in excretion, and possibly the same may be said of the mantle.

**The reproductive organs.**—These lie in the upper part of the foot, adjacent to the digestive gland. Ovaries and testes occur in different animals, and the two sexes are distinguishable, though not very distinctly, by the greater whiteness of the testes and by slight differences in the shells. The females are easily known when the larvæ begin to accumulate in crowds in the outer gill-plates. The reproductive organs are branched and large; there are no accessory structures; the genital aperture lies on each side under that of the ureter.

The autumn and winter months seem to be the usual periods for reproduction. The ova pass from the ovaries in the foot, and appear to be moved to the exhalant region, whence, however, they do not escape, but are crowded backward till they pass into the cavity of the outer gill-plate. At some stage they are fertilised by spermatozoa drawn in by the water currents, though it is difficult to believe that this is entirely a matter of chance. Development takes place within the external gill-plate, and the larvæ feed for some time on mucus secreted by the gill.

**Development and life history.**—The development of *Anodonta* differs in certain details from that of most bivalves, perhaps in adapta-



tion to fresh-water conditions. Moreover, a temporary parasitism of the larva has complicated the later stages.

The egg cell is surrounded by a vitelline membrane, and attached to the wall of the ovary by a minute stalk, the insertion of which is marked on the liberated ovum by an aperture or micropyle, through which the spermatozoon enters.

Segmentation is total but unequal. A number of small clear yolkless cells are rapidly divided off from a large yolk-containing portion, which

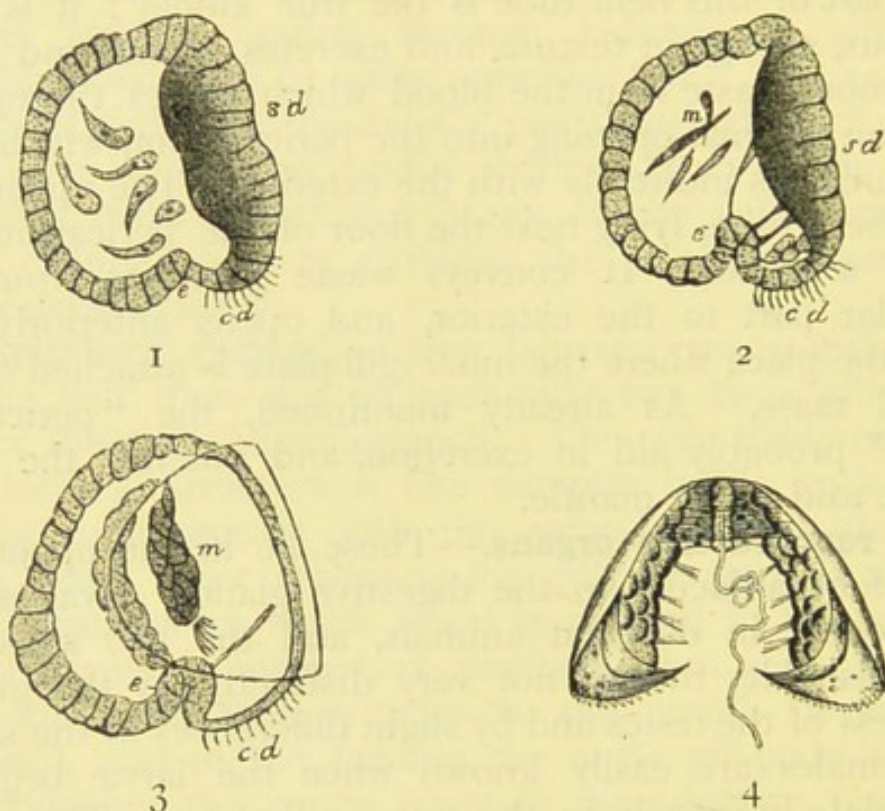


FIG. 154.—Development of *Anodonta*.—After Gœtte.

1. Section of blastosphere. *s.d.*, Shell gland; *c.d.*, ciliated disc; *e.*, beginning of ectodermic invagination. Note mesoderm cells in the cavity.
2. Later stage. *m.*, Mesoderm.
3. Embryonic shell has appeared.
4. Glochidium larva; note byssus threads, and teeth on shell valves.

is slower in dividing. Eventually a hollow ball of cells or blastosphere results (Fig. 154).

On the posterior dorsal region a number of large opaque cells form an internally convex plate,—the beginning of the future shell-sac. A pair of large cells are intruded into the central cavity, and begin the mesoderm.

On the under surface posteriorly there is a slight protrusion of ciliated cells forming a ciliated disc. In front of this, at an unusually late stage, an invagination establishes the archenteron, and the embryo becomes a gastrula (see Fig. 154).

The shell-sac forms an embryonic shell, and many of the mesoderm



cells combine in an adductor muscle. The mouth of the gastrula closes, and a definite mouth is subsequently formed by an ectodermic invagination. Gradually a larva peculiar to fresh-water mussels, and known as a Glochidium, is built up.

The Glochidium has two triangular, delicate, and porous shell valves, each with a spiny incurved tooth on its free edge. The valves clap together by the action of the adductor muscle. The mantle lobes are very small, and their margins bear on each side three or four patches of sensory cells. The foot is not yet developed, but from the position which it will afterwards occupy there hang long attaching threads of "byssus," which moor the larva. If it manage to anchor itself on the tail, fins, or gills of a fish, the Glochidium shuts its valves and fixes itself more securely, and is soon surrounded by a pathological growth of its host's skin.

In this parasitic stage a remarkable metamorphosis occurs. The sensory or tactile patches not unnaturally disappear; the byssus and the embryonic byssus glands vanish, but a new byssus gland (which remains quite rudimentary in *Anodonta*) appears; the single adductor atrophies, and is replaced by two; the foot and the gills make their appearance; the embryonic mantle lobes increase greatly, or are replaced by fresh growths; and the permanent shell begins to be made.

After this metamorphosis, when the larva has virtually become a miniature adult, no longer so liable to be swept away, it drops from its temporary host to the bottom of the pond or river pool.

**Third Type of MOLLUSCA.** The Common Cuttlefish (*Sepia officinalis*), one of the Dibranchiate Cephalopods.

**Habits.**—This common cuttlefish is widely distributed, especially in warmer seas like the Mediterranean. Unlike *Octopus*, which usually lurks passively, *Sepia* is an active swimmer; it moves head foremost by working the fins which fringe the body, or it jerks itself energetically backwards by the outgush of water through the funnel. It likes the light, and is sometimes attracted by lanterns. The beautiful colours change according to external conditions and internal emotions; and a plentiful discharge of ink often covers its retreat from an enemy. Its food includes fish, other molluscs, and crabs. In spring the female attaches her encapsuled eggs to sea-weeds and other objects, and often comes fatally near the shore in so doing. The cuttles are caught for food and bait. The "cuttle bone" and the pigment of the ink-bag are sometimes utilised by man.

**External appearance.**—A large *Sepia* measures about 10 in. in length and 4 to 5 in breadth; the body, fringed



by a fin, is shaped like a shield, the broad end of which bears a narrowed head, with eight short and two long sucker-bearing arms. Besides the diffuse pigment cells, there are bands across the "back." The large eyes, the parrot-beak-like jaws protruding from the mouth, the spout-like funnel on the neck, and the mantle cavity, are conspicuous. Beside the eyes are the small olfactory pits ;

within the mantle cavity lie the anus and the openings of the nephridia and genital duct.

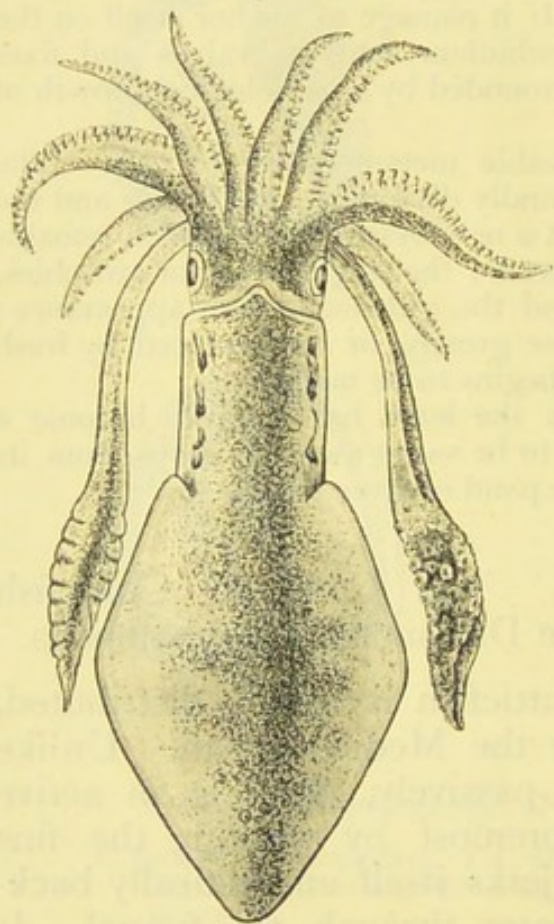


FIG. 155.—External Appearance of a cuttlefish.

The true orientation of the different regions in *Sepia* is not obvious. If the "arms" surrounding the mouth be divided portions of the anterior part of the "foot," the *ventral* surface is that on which the animal rests when we make it stand on its head. We can fancy how the "foot" of a snail might grow forward and surround the mouth, so as to bring that into the middle of the sole. Then the visceral mass has been elongated in an oblique dorso-posterior direction, so that the tip of the shield, directed forward when the cuttle jerks itself away from us, represents in

anatomical strictness the *dorsal* surface tilted backwards. (As above noticed, the animal may also swim with foot and mouth in front.) The side of lighter colour, marked by the mantle cavity and the siphon or funnel, is *posterior* and slightly ventral ; the banded and more convex side, on which the cerebral ganglia lie in the head region, and on which the shell lies concealed in the visceral region, is *anterior* and slightly dorsal.

**Skin.**—There are numerous actively changeful pigment



cells or chromatophores lying in the connective tissue beneath the epidermis. Each cell is expanded by the contraction of muscular cells which radiate from it, and contracts when these relax. It is probable that these chromatophore cells have some protoplasmic spontaneity of their own, but the controlling muscular elements are also affected by nervous impulses from the central ganglia. As the cells dilate or contract, the pigment is diffused or concentrated, and the colours change. The animal's beauty is further enhanced by numerous "iridocysts" or modified connective tissue cells, with fine markings which cause iridescence.

**Muscular system.**—The cuttlefish is very muscular, notably about the arms, the mantle flap, and the jaws. With great quickness it seizes its prey by throwing out its two long arms, which are often entirely retracted within pouches. With great force it jerks itself backwards by contracting the mantle cavity, and making the water gush out through the pedal funnel. This mode of locomotion is very quaint. At one time the mantle cavity is wide, and you can thrust your fingers into its gape; when about to contract, this gape is closed by a strange double hook-and-eye arrangement; contraction occurs, and the water, no longer free to leave as it entered, gushes out by the funnel, the base of which is within the mantle cavity. Another muscular development is interesting, that of the suckers on the arms. They are muscular cups, borne on little stalks (unstalked in *Octopus*, etc.), well innervated, and able to grip with a tenacity which in giant cuttlefish is dangerous even to men. The inner edge of the cup margin is supported by a chitinoid ring bearing small teeth. Each cup acts as a sucker, in a fashion which has many analogues, for a retractor muscle increases the size of the cavity after the margin has been applied to some object. The external pressure is then greater than that within the cup, and the little teeth keep the attachment from slipping.

It seems likely that the arms represent a propodium, and the siphon a mesopodium, and a valve within the siphon has been compared to a metapodium.

**Skeletal system.**—An internal skeleton is represented by supporting cartilaginous plates in various parts of the body, especially—(a) in the head, round about the brain, arching



over the eyes, enclosing the "ears"; (*b*) at the bases of the arms; (*c*) as a crescent on the neck; (*d*) at the hook-and-eye arrangement of the mantle flap; (*e*) along the fringing fins. Ramified "stellate" cells lie in the structureless transparent matrix of the cartilage.

On the shore one often finds the "cuttle bone" or sepio-staire, which is sometimes given to cage birds to peck at for lime, or used for polishing and other purposes. It lies on the dorsal side of the animal, covered over by the mantle sac. In outline it is somewhat ellipsoidal, thinned at the edges like a flint axe-head, and with curved markings which indicate lines of growth. In the very young *Sepia* it consists wholly of the organic basis conchiolin, but to this lime is added from the walls of the sac. Between the plates of lime there is gas, and though the structure may give the cuttle some stability, it is probably of more use as a float.

**Internal appearance.**—When the mantle flap is cut open and reflected, the two plume-like gills are seen, and the lower end of the siphon. The dark outline of the ink-bag, followed along towards the head, leads our eyes to the end of the food canal. Near this are the external apertures of the two kidneys and of the genital duct. On each side of the base of the funnel lies a very large and unmistakable "stellate" ganglion. Removing the skin as carefully as possible over the whole visceral region between the gills, and taking precautions not to burst the ink-sac, we see the median heart, the saccular kidneys, contractile structures or branchial hearts at the base of each gill, and the essential reproductive organs near the apex of the visceral mass. Disturbing the arrangement of these organs, we can follow the food canal, with its stomach, digestive gland, etc.

**Nervous system.**—Three pairs of ganglia surround the gullet,—cerebral on the dorsal and anterior side, pedal and pleuro-visceral on the ventral and posterior side (Fig. 152), but lying so close together that their boundaries are defined with difficulty. All are well protected by the investing cartilages.

The cerebral ganglia are three-lobed, and are connected anteriorly by two commissures with a "supra-pharyngeal" ganglion, which gives off nerves to the mouth and lips, and is connected also with an "infra-pharyngeal" ganglion. The cerebral ganglia are also connected by



short double commissures with the pedals and pleuro-viscerals on the ventral side of the gullet. The pedal ganglia at each side are in part divided into two,—one half forming the brachial ganglion which sends nerves to the arms, the other the infundibular which supplies the funnel.

The following chief nerves arise from the central system :—

- (1) The very thick optic nerves are given off from the commissures between cerebrals and pleuro-viscerals, and lead to a large optic ganglion at the base of each eye.
- (2) Ten nerves to the “arms” are given off by the pedal ganglion, and this is one of the reasons which have led most morphologists to regard these arms as portions of the “foot.”
- (3) Two large nerves from the more ventral portion of the pleuro-visceral ganglia form a visceral loop, and give off many branches to the gills and other organs. From the pleural portion arise two mantle nerves, each of which ends in a large stellate ganglion.

**Sense organs.**—The eyes are large and efficient. They present a striking resemblance to those of Vertebrates, and, as they are not “brain eyes,” they illustrate how superficially similar structures may be developed in different ways and in divergent groups. In cuttlefishes the eyes lie on the sides of the head, protected in part by the cartilage surrounding the brain, and in part by cartilages on their own walls.

The eye is a sensitive cup arising in great part from the skin. Its internal lining is a complex retina, on the *posterior* surface of which the nerves from the optic ganglion are distributed. It seems likely that the Cephalopod retina corresponds only to the rods and cones (the sensory part) of the Vertebrate retina. In the cavity of the cup there is a clear vitreous humour.

The mouth of the cup is closed by a lens, supported by a “ciliary body.” The lens seems to be formed in two parts—an outer and an inner plano-convex lens. The pupil in front of it is fringed by a contractile iris.

The outer wall of the optic cup is ensheathed by a strong supporting layer—the sclerotic, which is in part strengthened by cartilage, covered by a silvery membrane, and continued into the iris.

In front of the eye there is a transparent cornea, and the skin also forms protecting lids.

Round about the optic ganglion there is a strange “white body,” which seems to be a fatty cushion on which the eye rests.

The two ear-sacs, containing a spherical otolith and a fluid, sometimes with calcareous particles, are enclosed in part of the head cartilage, close to the pedal ganglia. The nerves seem to come from the pedals, but it is said that their fibres can be traced up to the cerebrals.

A ciliated “olfactory sac” lies behind each eye, and is innervated from a special ganglion near the optic. There are no osphradia of the usual type.

Finally, there are tactile or otherwise sensitive cells on various parts of the body, especially about the arms.

**Alimentary system.**—The cuttlefish eats food which



requires tearing and chewing, and this is effected by the chitinous jaws worked by strong muscles, and by the toothed radula moving on a muscular cushion. The mouth lies in the midst of the arms, bordered by a circular lip, and opens into a large pharynx or buccal cavity (cf. the snail). The narrow gullet passes through the ganglionic mass,

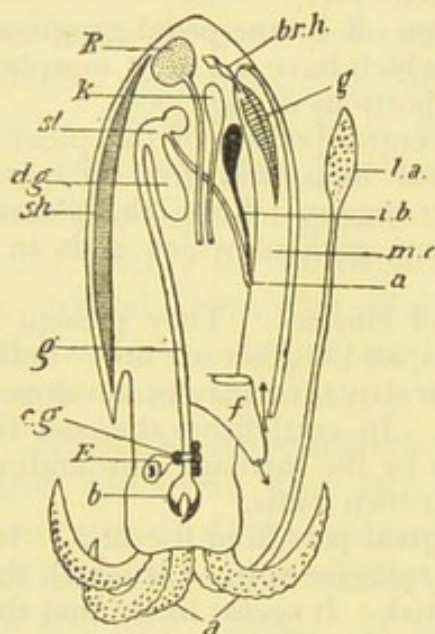


FIG. 156. — Diagram of the structure of *Sepia*.—Mainly after Pelseneer.

*a.*, Eight short arms around mouth; *l.a.*, one of the two long arms; *b.*, beak of the mouth; *c.g.*, cerebral ganglia, with commissures to the others; *E.*, eye; *g.*, gullet; *dg.*, digestive gland (the "salivary glands" are not represented); *st.*, stomach; *a.*, anus; *sh.*, shell-sac with sepio-staire; *k.*, kidney; *R.*, Reproductive organ; *br.h.*, branchial heart; *g.*, a gill; *i.b.*, ink-bag; *m.c.*, mantle cavity; *f.*, funnel.

and leads into the globular stomach, lying near the dorsal end of the body. The stomach is followed by a cæcum or pyloric sac, and the intestine curves headwards again, to end far forward in the mantle cavity. There do not seem to be any glands on the walls of the food canal; the stomach has a hard cuticle; the digestion which takes place there must therefore be due to the digestive juices of the glandular appendages. Of these the most important is usually called the liver; it is bilobed, and lies in front of the stomach, attached to the oesophagus. Its two ducts conduct the digestive juice to the region where the stomach, "pyloric sac," and intestine meet; and these ducts are fringed by numerous vascular and glandular appendages, which are called "pancreatic," and arise from a differentiated part of the digestive gland. Far forward, in front of the

large digestive gland, lie two small white glands on each side of the gullet, with ducts which open into the mouth (cf. the "salivary glands" of the snail). A diastatic ferment has been proved in the salivary secretion of Cephalopods, but that of *Octopus* has a poisonous, paralysing effect on the crabs, etc., which are bitten, and also a peptonising action. At the other end of the food canal, the ink-sac, full of black pigment, probably of the nature of waste products, opens



into the rectum close to the anus. This ink-sac is a much enlarged anal gland ; for, while most of the bag is made of connective tissue and some muscle fibres, a distinct gland is constricted off at the closed end, and the neck is also glandular. Beside the anus are two pointed papillæ.

**Vascular system.**—The blood of *Sepia* is bluish, owing to the presence of hæmocyanin in the serum ; the blood cells are colourless and amoeboid. The median but somewhat oblique ventricle of the heart drives the blood forward and backward to all parts of the body. It reaches the tissues by capillaries, and apparently also by lacunar spaces. The venous blood of the head region is collected in an annular sinus round the basis of the arms, and passes towards the heart by a large vena cava, which divides into two branchial veins, covered by spongy outgrowths of the nephridia. Joined by other vessels from the apical region of the viscera, each branchial vein enters a “branchial heart” at the base of each gill. The branchial heart is contractile, and drives the venous blood through the gills, whence, purified, it returns by two contractile auricles into the ventricle. There are valves preventing back-flow from the ventricle to the auricles, or from the arteries to the ventricle. Beside each branchial heart lies an enigmatical glandular structure known as a “pericardial gland,” possibly an excretory or incipiently excretory organ. The course of the blood differs from that in the mussel and snail in this, that none returns to the heart except from the respiratory organs. In the nephridial outgrowths around the branchial veins the interesting parasite *Dicyema* is found.

**Respiratory system.**—The blood is purified by being exposed on the two feather-like gills which are attached within the water-washed mantle cavity. The water penetrates them very thoroughly ; the course of the blood is intricate. At the base of the gills there is some glandular tissue, which those impatient with enigmas have credited with blood-making powers.

**Excretory system.**—The excretory system is difficult to dissect and to explain. On each side of the anus there is a little papilla, through which uric acid and other waste products ooze out into the mantle cavity, and so into the water. A bristle inserted into either of these



two papillæ leads into a large sac—the nephridial sac. But the two sacs are united by two bridges, and they give off an unpaired dorsal elongation, which extends as far back as the reproductive organs.

The dorsal wall of each nephridial sac becomes intimately associated with the branchial veins, and follows their outlines faithfully. It is likely that waste material passes from the blood through the spongy appendages into the nephridial sacs.

Into the terminal portion of each nephridial sac, a little below its aperture at the urinary papilla, there opens by a ciliated funnel another

sac, which is virtually the body cavity. It surrounds the heart and other organs, and is often called the visceropericardial cavity. Through the kidneys or nephridial sacs it is in communication with the exterior.

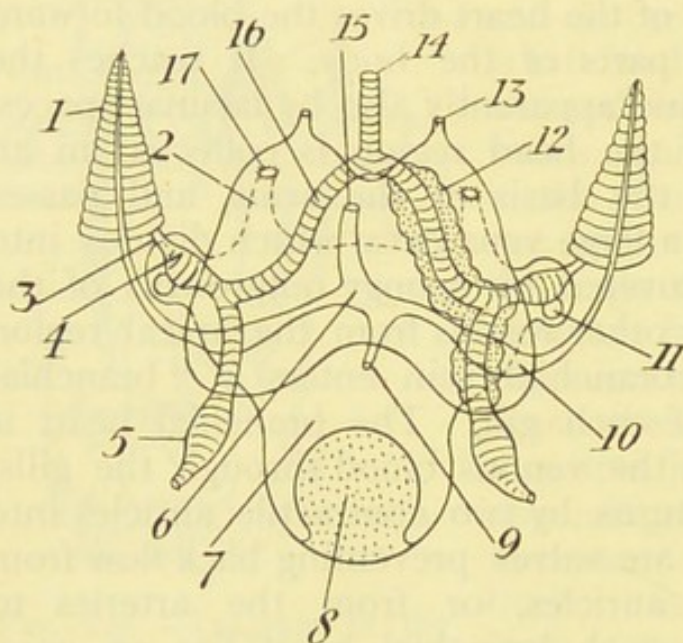


FIG. 157.—Diagram of circulatory and excretory systems in a Decapod-like *Sepia*.—After Pelseneer.

- 1, Gill; 2, renal sac; 3, afferent branchial vessel; 4, branchial heart; 5, abdominal vein; 6, heart; 7, visceropericardial sac (body cavity); 8, genital organ; 9, posterior aorta; 10, "auricle"; 11, glandular appendage of branchial heart; 12, renal appendage of branchial vein; 13, external aperture of kidney; 14, vena cava; 15, anterior aorta; 16, bifurcation of vena cava; 17, reno-pericardial aperture.

**Reproductive system.**—The sexes are separate, but there is not much external difference between them, though the males are usually smaller, less rounded dorsally, and have slightly longer arms. When mature, the male is easily known by a strange modification on his fifth left arm. The essential

reproductive organs are unpaired, and lie in the body cavity towards the apex of the visceral mass.

The testis—an oval yellowish organ—lies freely in a peritoneal sac, near the apex of the visceral mass. From this sac the spermatozoa pass along a closely-twisted duct—the vas deferens. This expands into a twofold "seminal vesicle," and gives off two blind outgrowths, of which one is called the "prostate." The physiological interest of these parts is that within them the spermatozoa begin to be arranged in packets. In this form they are found within the next region, the spermatophore sac, which opens to the exterior to the left of the anus. Each spermato-



phore is like an automatically explosive bomb ; within the transparent shell there lies a bag of spermatozoa, and a complex spring-like arrangement. Even on the scalpel or slide these strange but efficient bombs will explode. The liberated spermatozoa are of the usual sort.

The ovary—a large, rounded white organ—lies freely in a peritoneal sac near the apex of the visceral mass. From this sac the eggs pass along a short direct oviduct, which opens into the mantle cavity to the left of the anus. Associated with the oviduct, and pouring viscid secretion into it, are two large “nidamental glands,” of foliated structure. Close beside these are accessory glands, of a reddish or yellowish colour, with a median and two lateral lobes ; while at the very end of the oviduct are two more glands. All seem to contribute to the external equipment of the egg.

The spermatophores pass from the genital duct of the male to the fifth left arm, which becomes covered with them and quaintly modified. This is usual among cuttlefish ; indeed, in some, *e.g.* *Argonauta* and *Tremoctopus*, the modified arm, with its load of spermatozoa, is discharged bodily into the mantle cavity of the female. There its discoverers described it as a parasitic worm, “*Hectocotylus*.” The lost arm is afterwards regenerated. In *Sepia*, however, the modified arm is not discharged, but is simply thrust into the mantle cavity of the female. The spermatophores probably enter the oviduct, and burst there.

The eggs, when laid, are enclosed within separate black capsules containing gelatinous stuff, but the stalks of the capsules are united, so that a bunch of “sea-grapes” results.

### GENERAL NOTES ON MOLLUSCS.

From the description of these three types a general idea of the structure of Mollusca may be obtained, but it should be noted—(1) that all the three types are specialised, the mussel in the direction of degeneration ; (2) that two small classes, the Amphineura and the Scaphopoda, are unrepresented in the descriptions ; (3) that in the three classes to which the types belong there is much diversity of structure, this being especially true of the large and heterogeneous class of Gasteropods.

In surveying the structure of the whole group, it is convenient to begin with the most striking of the external characters—the absence or presence of a well-developed head region.

In the Lamellibranchs or Pelecypoda the head is absent, and along with it the tentacles, the radula, and the pharynx with all its associated structures. Elsewhere a head region, usually furnished with tentacles and eyes, and containing within it a pharynx and radula, is always present.



Best developed in Gasteropods and Cephalopods, the head region may elsewhere be represented, as in *Dentalium*, merely by a buccal tube fringed with tentacles. Apart from Lamellibranchs, the radula is characteristic and, with few exceptions, universal.

Almost as important is the condition of the characteristic Molluscan foot. Primitively this had the form of a ventral creeping sole, as shown, for example, in its simplest condition, in *Chiton* (Fig. 165). This condition is retained in many Gasteropods, and in the simplest Lamellibranchs, like *Solenomya*. In most Lamellibranchs, however, in adaptation to a more or less passive life in the sand, the foot became wedge-

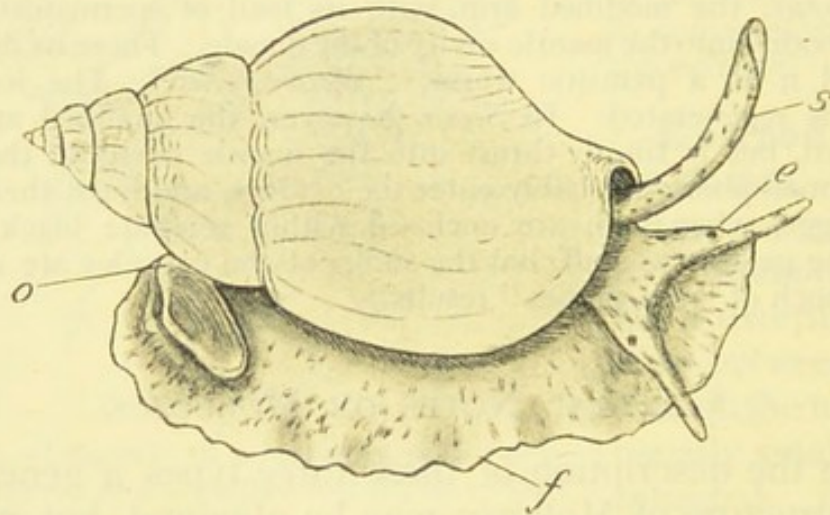


FIG. 158.—Common Buckie (*Buccinum undatum*).

*e.*, Eye; *s.*, respiratory siphon; *o.*, operculum; *f.*, foot.

shaped, and the characteristic byssus gland, which secretes attaching threads, is developed. In the active cuttles the foot became greatly modified, and in those related to *Sepia* a portion of it is specialised as the funnel—the main organ of active locomotion. That the condition of the foot cannot in itself be employed as a basis of classification, is, however, obvious, when its differences within the limits of a class are considered. Thus it is obsolete in the pelagic *Phyllirhoë* among Gasteropods, in the sedentary oyster among Lamellibranchs; in the pelagic Pteropods part of it forms lateral wing-like lobes used in swimming, while in *Ianthina*, which has a similar habit, its chief use is to secrete a “float” to which the egg-capsules are attached. In various Lamelli-



branches, and in *Dentalium*, it is modified as a conical boring organ.

The mantle is another important Molluscan structure, and as it secretes the shell, the shape of the latter is of course determined by it. Primitively the mantle is represented by a uniform downgrowth of skin from the dorsal surface, surrounding the ventral foot, and secreting a dorsal cap-shaped shell. Such a simple condition occurs in the limpet. In the Lamellibranchs, with the lateral flattening of the body, the mantle becomes divided into right and left halves, and the shell becomes two-valved. In most Lamellibranchs the mantle is prolonged into two tubes or siphons, through which the water of respiration enters and leaves the

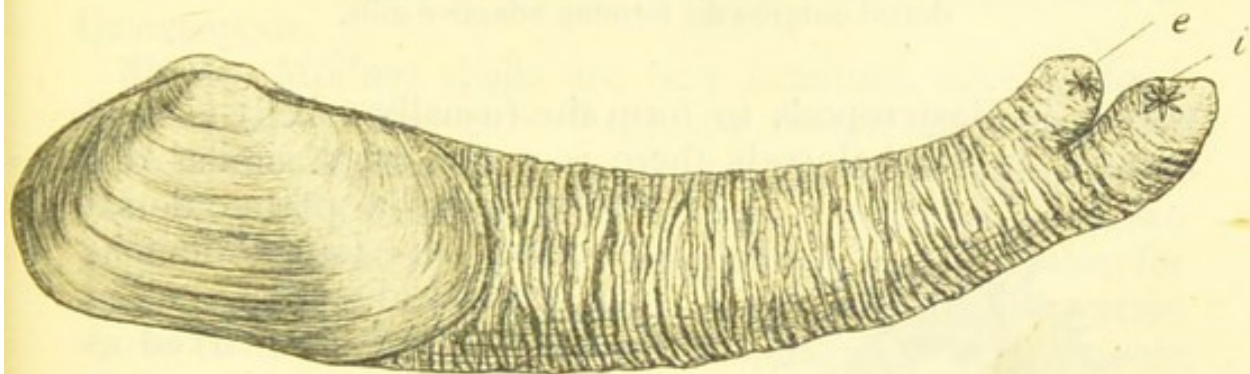


FIG. 159.—Bivalve (*Panopaea norvegica*), showing siphons.  
*e.*, Exhalant aperture ; *i.*, inhalant aperture.

mantle cavity. A similar but unpaired siphon is found in many Gasteropods. In Scaphopoda the mantle folds fuse ventrally to form a continuous tube. In most Gasteropods the mantle skirt is retained, and secretes a spiral shell, as well as enclosing a space in which the gills lie ; in some, both mantle and shell are absent. In the snail and its allies (Pulmonata), the mantle fuses with the body-wall and forms the pulmonary chamber, which opens to the anterior by a small aperture. In Cephalopoda the mantle skirt is well developed and muscular, and, besides sheltering the gills, is of much importance in locomotion.

Typically the Mollusca are bilaterally symmetrical animals, and this symmetry is marked in the Amphineura, the Lamellibranchiata, and occurs to a less extent in the Cephalopoda (cf. the unpaired genital organs). In the



Gasteropoda it is completely lost. This seems to be in some way associated with the dorsal displacement of the



FIG. 160.—Nudibranch (*Dendronotus arborescens*), showing dorsal outgrowths forming adaptive gills.

viscera in Gasteropods to form the (usually coiled) visceral hump. In Cephalopods there is a somewhat similar displacement in a postero-dorsal direction, in Lamellibranchs in a ventral direction, but in

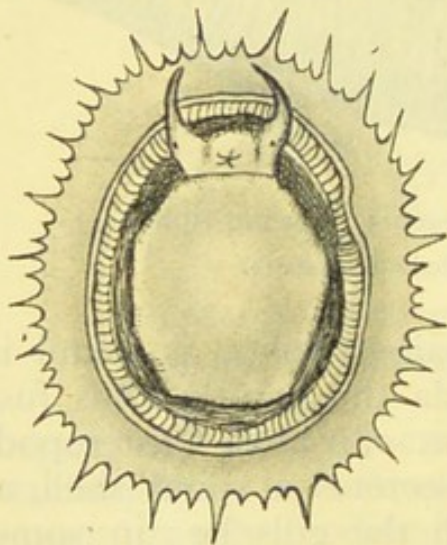


FIG. 161.—Ventral surface of *Patella vulgata*.—After Forbes and Hanley.

Note simple eyes at base of tentacles, mouth, median foot, and vascular margin of mantle replacing the absent gills.

neither case is it so marked as in Gasteropods.

The characters of the internal organs of Mollusca must be gathered from the description of the types, but the nature of the respiratory organs may be briefly noted. Typically, these consist of two feathery gills, sheltered beneath the mantle, and bearing at their bases two osphradia or smelling patches. Gills of this typical form occur in Cuttles (*Nautilus* has four), in the simplest Gasteropods (but many other Gasteropods have a simple unpaired gill), and in the

lowest Lamellibranchs (*Solenomya*, *Nucula*, etc.). The respiratory organs in other Mollusca show much variation when compared with this primitive type. Thus the gills may be



totally suppressed and the mantle may directly take on a respiratory function. This occurs in many marine Gasteropods, for example, in the common limpet (*Patella*) (Fig. 161), as well as in terrestrial forms like the snail, where the mantle cavity forms the pulmonary chamber. Even in Lamellibranchs, where the gills are present in much modified form, it is probable that the mantle has much importance in respiration, the gills being perhaps of most importance in connection with nutrition, and as brood-chambers. In those Gasteropods in which the gills are suppressed, there are often special respiratory organs ("adaptive gills"), such as the circle of plumes around the anus in *Doris* and its allies (Fig. 160). The osphradia are absent in Cephalopods, except in *Nautilus*, and one at least is usually suppressed in Gasteropods.

**Shell.**—Mollusc shells are very beautiful, alike in form and colour. They grow larger by month and year, and mark their progress by rings of growth and changing tints. That they afford their bearers efficient protection, is shown by the appreciation which some hermit crabs exhibit for stolen whelk or buckie shells. More precise observation shows us that the shell consists in great part of carbonate of lime; that it has a thin outer "horny" layer, a thick median "prismatic" stratum of lime, and an internal mother-of-pearl layer. On the dorsal surface of almost every mollusc embryo there is a little shell-sac in which an embryonic shell is begun; the adult shell, however, begins on a separate area of the skin, and it is always lined and increased by the mantle. If the increase of the shell be carefully watched in young Molluscs, or if chemical analysis be made, it becomes plain that the shell is no mere deposition of carbonate of lime. Like other cuticular products, it has an organic basis (conchiolin or conchin), along with which the lime is associated.

Mr. Irvine's experiments at Granton Marine Station suggest that the lime salt originally absorbed is not the carbonate (of which there is a scant supply in sea water), but the sulphate (which is abundant), and that the internal transformation from sulphate to carbonate is perhaps associated with the diffuse decomposition of nitrogenous waste products. Thus carbonate of ammonia, which seems to occur abundantly in the mantle of perfectly fresh mussels, would, with calcium sulphate, yield carbonate of lime and ammonium sulphate. One cannot suppose that



shell-making is expressible in a chemical reaction of this simplicity, but it is certain that Molluscs do not simply absorb carbonate of lime from the sea water, and sweat it out from their skins. It is reasonable to inquire how far shell-making may express a primitive mode of excretion to which a secondary significance has come to be attached, and in what way carbonate of lime shells are associated with preponderant sluggishness of habit. The thickness of the shell seems often to bear some relation to the external and internal activities of the mollusc, for it is thin in the active scallop (*Pecten*) and *Lima*, thick in the passive oyster and *Tridacna*, slight or absent in the pelagic Pteropods ("sea-butterflies"), and in the more or less active cuttlefish, but heavy in most of the slowly creeping littoral forms. But that this is only one condition of shell development is evident in many ways,—for instance, when we compare land-snails with slugs; for the latter, though not more active than the former, are practically shell-less. In most cases, as Lang points out, the loss of the shell is justified by increased power of locomotion, by increased adaptation to peculiar habits of life, and so forth.

**Larvæ.**—In their life history most Molluscs pass through two larval stages. The first of these is a pear-shaped or barrel-shaped form, with a curved gut, and with a ring of cilia in front of the mouth. It is a "trochosphere," such as that occurring in the development of many "worms."

Soon, however, the trochosphere grows into a yet more efficiently locomotor form—the veliger. Its head bears a ciliated area or "velum," often produced into retractile lobes; its body already shows the beginning of "foot" and mantle; on the dorsal surface lies the little embryonic shell gland (Fig. 149).

But although trochosphere and veliger occur in the development of most forms, they do not in any of the three types which we have particularly described,—not in *Anodonta*, partly because it is a fresh-water animal, with a peculiarly adhesive larva of its own; not in *Helix*, partly because it is terrestrial; and not in *Sepia*, partly because the eggs are rich in yolk.

### CLASSIFICATION OF MOLLUSCA.

The classification of the Mollusca is a matter of considerable difficulty. Lowest of all should undoubtedly be placed the Amphineura, bilaterally symmetrical Mollusca with many primitive characters. Some of these forms, like *Chiton*, are probably not far removed from the primitive Mollusca; but others, e.g. *Proneomenia*, are probably degenerate. From primitive forms, related perhaps to *Chiton*, Mollusca have diverged in two directions. In Gasteropoda, Scaphopoda, and Cephalopoda, the radula present in the primitive Amphineura is retained, and the head region



becomes well developed; these classes are therefore often placed together as Glossophora or Odontophora, in contrast to the Lamellibranchiata (Lipocephala or Acephala), where the radula has disappeared, and the head region remains undeveloped. As already seen, however, the lowest Lamellibranchs have a flattened creeping foot and simple feathery gills, in these respects resembling Gasteropods. There is also much reason to believe that the Scaphopoda arose from a stem common to them and the lowest Gasteropods, which are central unspecialised forms. The Cephalopoda are the most highly specialised of all the Mollusca, and in their existing forms at least not nearly related to the other classes.

The Mollusca may therefore be classified in outline as follows; but the relation of Lamellibranchs and *Dentalium* to Gasteropods should be kept in mind.

GLOSSOPHORA.	Class AMPHINEURA.	
	Order 1.	Polyplacophora, <i>e.g.</i> <i>Chiton</i> .
	Order 2.	Aplacophora or Solenogastres, <i>e.g.</i> <i>Neomenia</i> .
	Class GASTEROPODA.	
	Order 1.	Prosobranchia, including the pelagic Heteropoda.
	Order 2.	Pulmonata.
	Order 3.	Opisthobranchiata, including the pelagic Pteropoda.
	Class SCAPHOPODA.	
	Class CEPHALOPODA.	
	Order 1.	Tetrabranchiata.
	Order 2.	Dibranchiata.

LIPOCEPHALA.—Class LAMELLIBRANCHIATA.

The characters of the trochosphere larva which occurs in many Molluscs, and many of the features of the simple Amphineura, suggest that Molluscs arose from some worm type, but beyond this all is hypothesis.

#### Class I. AMPHINEURA.

*Syn.*—Gasteropoda Isopleura, *e.g.* *Chiton*.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*The Amphineura are marine Molluscs, more or less elongated in form, with bilateral symmetry. They are often ranked along with Gasteropods. The mouth is anterior; the anal and nephridial apertures are posterior. The mantle, which bears cuticular spicules, covers at least a great part of the body. The nervous system consists of a cerebral commissure and two paired longitudinal cords,*



with ganglionic cells but at most very slightly developed ganglia, which run the whole length of the body. Of these

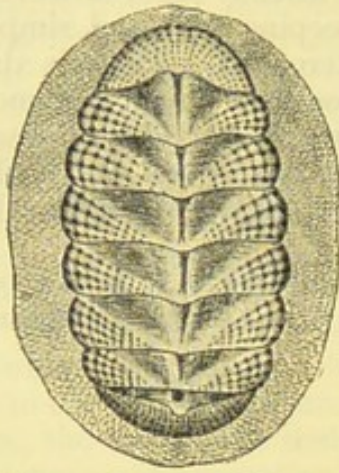


FIG. 162. — *Chiton*. — After Prêtre.

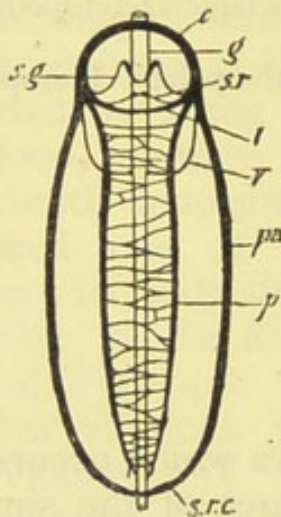


FIG. 163. — Dorsal view of nervous system of *Chiton*. — After Pelseneer.

*c.*, Cerebral commissure; *g.*, gut (above all the commissures except cerebral and supra-rectal); *pa.*, pallial or visceral loop, with supra-rectal commissure (*s.r.c.*); *p.*, pedal nerves united by numerous transverse branches; *s.g.*, stomato-gastric commissure; *s.r.*, subradular commissure; *l.*, labial commissure; *v.*, visceral commissure.

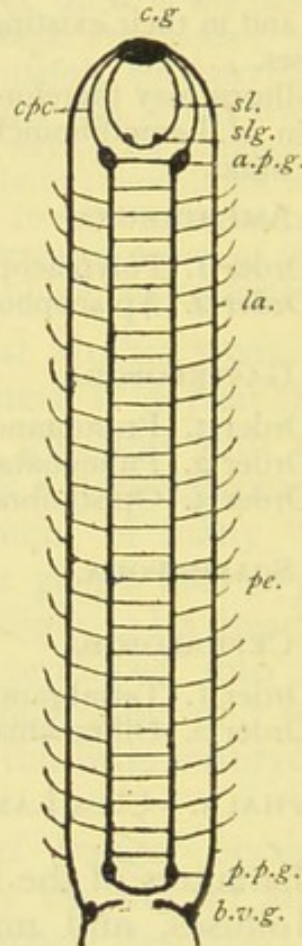


FIG. 164. — *Proneomenia*. Nervous system. — From Hubrecht.

*c.g.*, Cerebral ganglia; *slg.*, sublingual; *a.p.g.*, anterior pedal; *p.p.g.*, posterior pedal; *p.v.g.*, posterior viscerals; *sl.*, sublingual connectives; *cpc.*, cerebro-pedal connective; *pe.*, longitudinal pedal nerves; *la.*, longitudinal lateral nerves.



paired cords the pedals are connected by numerous cross-commissures, and the viscerals or pallials are united posteriorly by a commissure above the rectum. The bilateral symmetry is shown internally, e.g. in the paired nephridia, auricles, and genital ducts. The class is of ancient origin, dating from the Silurian. There are two orders — *Polyplacophora*, e.g. *Chiton*, and *Aplacophora*, e.g. *Neomenia*.

1st Order of AMPHINEURA. Polyplacophora (*Chitonidæ*).

The members of this order, represented on British coasts by several species of *Chiton*, are sluggish, usually vegetarian, animals, occurring

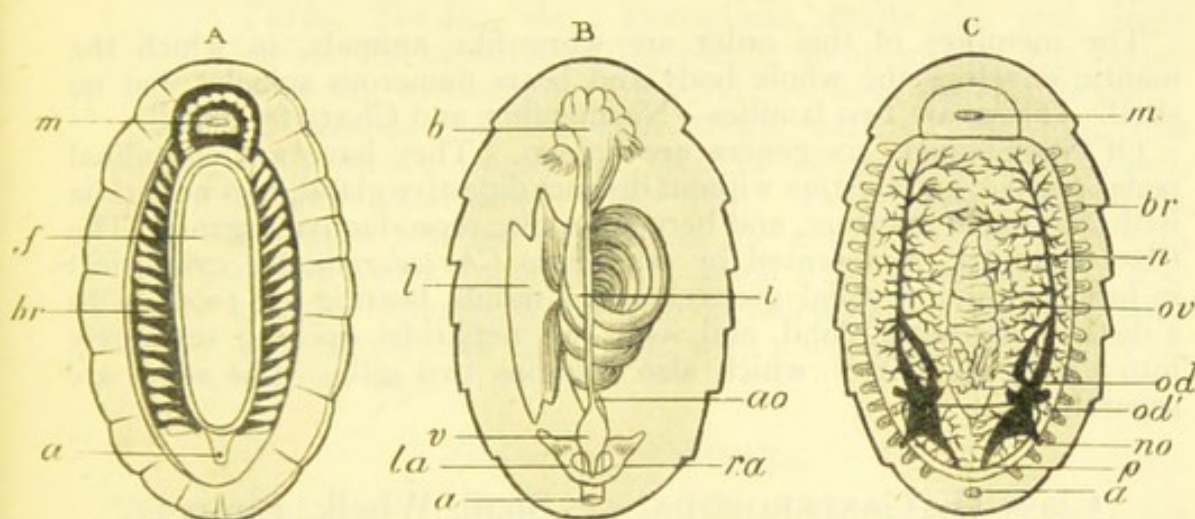


FIG. 165 —Anatomy of *Chiton*.

A, ventral surface (after Cuvier). B, dorsal view of alimentary canal (after Lankester). C, genital and excretory organs from dorsal surface (after Lang and Haller, diagrammatic). *m.*, mouth; *a.*, anus; *br.*, numerous simple gills; *f.*, foot; *b.*, buccal mass; *l.*, liver; *i.*, intestine; *ao.*, aorta; *v.*, ventricle of heart; *r.a.* and *l.a.*, right and left auricles; *ov.*, ovary; *od.*, oviduct; *od'*, opening of oviduct; *n.*, part of nephridium, represented in black throughout; *no.*, external opening of nephridium; *p.*, outline of pericardium.

from the shore to great depths. The foot is generally as long as the body; the mantle covers the back and bears eight shell-plates (Fig. 162), perforated, in many cases at least, by numerous sensory organs, which may be in part optic; numerous gills lie in a regular row along a groove on each side between the mantle and the foot.

In most cases the eight shell-plates are jointed on one another, and the animal can roll itself up. The uncovered parts of the mantle bear spicules. Ganglia, in the strict sense, are scarcely developed, but there is a supra-oesophageal ganglionic commissure from which the visceral and pedal cords extend backwards along the whole length of the body. There are no special sense organs on the head, which is but slightly differentiated; but the pallial sense organs are usually numerous and



varied. A twisted gut runs through the body, surrounded by a diffuse digestive gland. There is a radula in the mouth. The heart is median and posterior, and consists of a ventricle and two to eight auricles. There are two symmetrical nephridia opening posteriorly, and consisting of much-branched tubes. The sexes are separate; a single reproductive organ extends dorsally between gut and intestine almost the whole length of the body; the genital ducts are paired and open posteriorly in front of the excretory apertures. The ova, with chitinous spiny shells, are usually retained for some time by the female between the mantle and the gills. The segmentation is holoblastic, and a gastrula is formed by invagination.

2nd Order of AMPHINEURA. Aplacophora, e.g. *Neomenia*,  
*Proneomenia*, and *Chætoderma*.

The members of this order are worm-like animals, in which the mantle envelops the whole body and bears numerous spicules, but no shell. There are two families—*Neomeniidae* and *Chætodermidae*.

Of *Neomeniidae*, six genera are known. They have a longitudinal pedal groove, an intestine without distinct digestive gland, two nephridia with a common aperture, and hermaphrodite reproductive organs. The *Chætodermidae*, represented by one genus *Chætoderma*, are cylindrical in form, without a pedal groove, with a radula bearing one tooth, with a distinct digestive gland, and with two nephridia opening separately into a posterior cavity, which also contains two gills. The sexes are separate.

Class II. GASTEROPODA, e.g. Snail, Whelk, Limpet.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*Gasteropods are more or less asymmetrical Molluscs. The head region, which is well developed, remains symmetrical, and so does the foot, which is typically a flat creeping organ. But the visceral mass or hump, with its mantle fold, is more or less twisted forwards and to the right. Thus the pallial, anal, nephridial, and genital apertures usually lie on the right side, more or less anteriorly. A further asymmetry is shown by the twisting of the morphologically right gill to the left side, while the original left gill is usually lost. Similarly, one of the nephridia, probably that which is morphologically the left, tends to disappear, and in most cases only one persists—topographically on the left side. The main torsion must be distinguished from the spiral twisting which the visceral hump often exhibits, and from the frequently associated spiral coiling of the univalve shell. Moreover, a superficial secondary bilateral symmetry tends to be acquired by free-swimming forms, e.g. Heteropods. The*



foot usually contains a mucus gland, and tends to be divided into three regions—the pro-, meso-, and meta-podium. There is a single reproductive organ and genital duct.

#### Order 1. PROSOBRANCHIATA.

A shell is almost always present, and the foot frequently bears an operculum. The pleuro-visceral commissure is twisted into the form of the figure 8 (streptoneural). There is usually only one gill lying in front of the heart. When one auricle is present it lies in front of the ventricle. Sexes separate.

A. Diotocardia. Primitive forms. The heart has usually two auricles, and there are two nephridia; Zeugobranchs, with two gills, *e.g.* *Haliotis*; Azygobranchs, a single gill, *Turbo*, *Trochus*, etc.; Docoglossa, single gill, and single auricle, left nephridium degenerate, no operculum, *e.g.* limpet (*Patella*), without gill (Fig. 161); *Acmaea*, with single gill.

B. Monotocardia. Heart with single auricle, one gill, one nephridium; operculum present. Periwinkle (*Littorina*), buckie (*Buccinum*, Fig. 158), Dog-whelk (*Purpura*), *Ianthina*, and the majority of the marine Gasteropods with coiled shells, together with some fresh-water forms. The pelagic Heteropods are also included here:—*Atlanta*, shell well developed; *Carinaria*, with small shell; *Pterotrachea*, with no shell.

#### Order 2. PULMONATA.

The visceral loop is short and untwisted (euthyneural), gills are absent, and the mantle cavity functions as a lung; all are hermaphrodite, *e.g.* the snail (*Helix*); the grey slug (*Limax*); the black slug (*Arion*); fresh-water snails, such as *Limneus*, *Planorbis*, and *Ancylus*.

#### Order 3. OPISTHOBRANCHIATA.

The visceral loop is euthyneural, as in snails; the single auricle lies behind the ventricle; the shell and mantle are often absent.

A. Tectibranchiata. A shell is present, but may be rudimentary; there is a well-developed mantle fold and a single gill, *e.g.* *Bulla*, *Aplysia*, *Dolabella*, *Umbrella*. The Tectibranchiata also include the Pteropoda, the winged snails or sea-butterflies, which have become much modified for pelagic life. They have a secondarily acquired apparent symmetry, and swim by two large lateral lobes of the foot ("parapodia"). They often swim actively in shoals, and occur in all seas. They afford food for whales, etc., and the shells of some are abundant in the ooze. They include—

(a) Thecosomata, with mantle fold and shell, diet of minute animal or vegetable organisms, closely related to *Bulla* and its allies.

Examples.—*Hyalea*, *Cymbulia*.



(b) Gymnosomata, without mantle fold or shell in the adult. Closely allied to *Aplysia* and its allies. Actively carnivorous, e.g. *Clio*, *Pneumoderma*.

B. Nudibranchiata. Shell, mantle fold, and true gill are absent; various forms of "adaptive gills" may be present, or there may be no special respiratory organs, e.g. sea-slugs, *Doris*, *Eolis*, *Dendronotus* (Fig. 160).

It will be obvious from this table that the classification of the Gasteropods cannot be greatly simplified. The essential points may perhaps be summarised as follows:—In the order Prosobranchia are included, first, primitive forms with more or less simple conical shells and with traces of the primitive bilateral symmetry; and, second, the greater number of these marine Gasteropods which have well-developed conical shells closed by an operculum, as well as the modified pelagic Heteropods. The Pulmonata are readily recognised, and the Opisthobranchiata include (in general terms) marine Gasteropods usually without conspicuous shells, and often much modified in external appearance, and also the aberrant pelagic Pteropods or sea-butterflies.

From a form somewhat like a *Chiton*, but with a simple conical shell, we may consider that the Gasteropods proper have been developed. They are all more or less asymmetrical, but we must notice—(1) that this want of symmetry does not affect the head or the foot, but only the dorsal viscera, which are more or less twisted round to the right side towards the head; (2) the torsion must be distinguished from the frequent spiral twisting of the visceral hump and of the shell; (3) the torsion occurs in variable degree, and some forms, especially free swimmers, have a superficial symmetry.

The current explanation of the asymmetry, which has been recently elaborated by Lang, is as follows:—

If we begin with a form something like a *Chiton*, but with a simple shell, we must suppose the head and foot to become increasingly specialised, and at the same time to acquire an increasing freedom of movement; during the process the viscera will tend to become more and more limited to a special region of the body, and a "visceral hump" will thus be formed. The shell becomes limited to this region, but the contractility of head and foot, which enables these to be drawn into the shell, must be correlated with the increasing size and complexity of this structure. As, however, shell and visceral hump become larger, they become too heavy to be carried in the primitive position on the back of the animal, and incline to one side. There is, therefore, a one-sided pressure, which results in an increased growth relatively of the opposite side, and so in a deep-seated twisting, which brings the originally posterior anus to an anterior position near the mouth, and produces a tendency to the suppression of one of the originally paired gills, nephridia, etc. According to Lang, during the torsion an increased growth of the upper surface of the visceral mass is necessary in order to avoid rupture, and thus the superficial spiral coiling is produced; this is reflected in the coiling of the shell. In one series of the Gasteropods the visceral nerve loop, running from the cerebral and pleural to the visceral ganglia, is "caught in the twist," and twines like a figure 8



(Streptoneural condition); in the others, the same visceral loop is short and untwisted (Euthyneural condition). In both groups we find forms with coiled shells, but among the Euthyneura there is a tendency to lose the shell, the visceral hump becoming at the same time inconspicuous, while a superficial appearance of symmetry is produced. The deep-seated torsion of the organs is, however, still retained.

It is not very uncommon to find, either as a constant occurrence or as an occasional variation, spirally coiled shells with a reversed or left-handed spiral. In some of these cases the superficial coiling of the visceral hump, as well as the deep-seated torsion, is also left-handed; but in others we find that the internal structure retains the normal arrangement.

**Mode of life.**—From the number of diverse types which the class includes, it is evident that few general statements can be made about the life of Gasteropods. We are safe in saying, however, that though the majority are sluggish when compared with Crustaceans, they are active when compared with Lamellibranchs.

The locomotion effected by the contractions of the muscular foot is usually a leisurely creeping, but there are many gradations between the activity of Heteropods in the open sea,—the gliding of fresh-water snails (*Limnæus*) foot upwards across the surface of the pool, the explorations of the periwinkles on the sand of the shore, and the extreme passivity of limpets (*Patella*), which move only for short distances at a time from their resting-places on the rocks.

The number of terrestrial snails and slugs, breathing the air directly by means of a pulmonary chamber, is estimated at over 6000 living species, while the aquatic Gasteropods are reckoned at about 10,000, most of which are marine. Of this myriad, about 9000 are streptoneural, the relatively small minority are euthyneural Opisthobranchs and Nudiobranchs, with light shells or none. The Heteropods and some Opisthobranchs live in the open sea; the great majority of aquatic Gasteropods frequent the shore and the sea bottom at relatively slight depths; the deep sea forms are comparatively few.

Gasteropods rarely feed at such a low level as bivalves do—indeed, some of them are fond of eating bivalves. Most Prosobranchs (streptoneural), with a respiratory siphon and a shell notch in which this lies, are carnivorous, *e.g.* the buckies (*Buccinum*) and “dog-whelks” (*Purpura*); on the other hand, those without this siphon, and with an un-



notched shell mouth, feed on plants, *e.g.* the seaweed eating periwinkles (*Littorina*). The vegetarian habits of most land snails and slugs are known to all. Many Gasteropods, both marine and terrestrial, are very voracious and indiscriminate in their meals; others are as markedly specialists or epicures.

Some marine forms, partial to Echinoderms, have got over the difficulty of eating such hard food, by secreting dilute sulphuric acid, which changes the carbonate of lime in the starfish into the more brittle and readily pulverised sulphate. A few Gasteropods are parasitic, *e.g.* *Eulima* and *Stylifer* on Echinoderms, and the extremely degenerate *Entoconcha mirabilis*,—within the Holothurian *Synapta*.

**Life history.**—The eggs of Gasteropods are usually small, without much yolk, but surrounded by a jelly, the surface of which often hardens. In the snail and some others there is an egg-shell of lime.

Sexual union occurs between hermaphrodites as well as between separate sexes, and fertilisation is effected inside the genital duct. Development sometimes proceeds within the parent, but in most cases the fertilised eggs are laid in gelatinous clumps, or within special capsules. The free-swimming *Ianthina* carries the eggs in capsules attached to a large raft-like float towed by the foot. On the shore one often finds numerous egg-capsules of

the “buckie” (*Buccinum undatum*) united in a ball about the size of an orange. Under the ledges of rock are many little yellowish cups, the egg-capsules of the dog-whelk (*Purpura lapillus*). In the buckie and whelk, and in some other forms, there is a struggle for existence—an infant cannibalism—in the cradle, for out of the numerous embryos in each capsule only a few reach

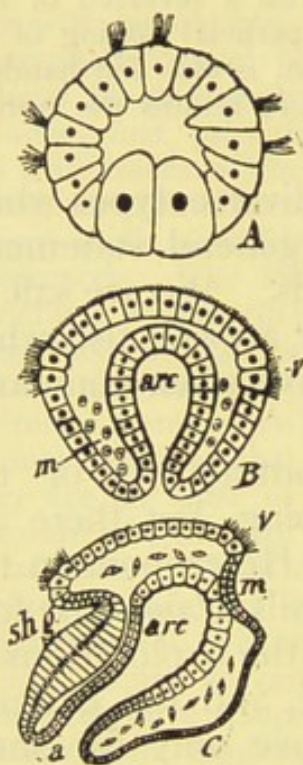


FIG. 166.—Stages in molluscan development.

A, Blastula of limpet (after Patten). B, Gastrula of *Paludina vivipara* (after Tönniges); *v.*, beginning of velum; *arc.*, archenteron; *m.*, mesoderm cells. C, later stage of the same; *v.*, velum; *m.*, mouth invagination; *arc.*, archenteron; *a.*, anus; *f.*, beginning of foot; *sh.g.*, shell gland.



maturity,—those that get the start eating the others as they develop.

The development is usually simple and typical. In other words, segmentation is total though often unequal; gastrulation is embolic or epibolic according to the amount of yolk present; the gastrula becomes a trochosphere, and later a veliger. (Fig. 166.)

**Past history.**—As the earth has grown older the Gasteropods have increased in numbers. A few have been disinterred from the Cambrian rocks; thence onwards they increase. Most of the Palæozoic genera are now quite extinct, but many modern families trace their genealogy to the Cretaceous period. Those with respiratory siphons were hardly, if at all, represented in Palæozoic ages, and the terrestrial air-breathers are comparatively modern.

**Bionomics.**—As voracious animals, with irresistible rasps, Gasteropods commit many atrocities in the struggle for existence, and decimate many plants. Professor Stahl shows, however, that there are more than a dozen different ways in which plants are saved from snails,—by crystals, acids, ferments, etc.; in short, by constitutional characteristics sufficiently important to determine survival in the course of natural selection or elimination. As food and bait, many Gasteropods are very useful; their shells have supplied tools and utensils and objects of delight; the juices of *Purpura* and *Murex* furnished the Tyrian purple, more charming than all aniline.

### Class III. SCAPHOPODA.

Very different in many respects from Gasteropoda are the Scaphopoda, of which *Dentalium* (Elephant's tooth-shell) is the commonest genus. They are apparently related to the Zeugobranchiate Gasteropods, and also to the simplest Bivalves. They burrow in the sand at considerable depth off the coasts of many countries. The mantle has originally two folds, which fuse ventrally, and the shell becomes cylindrical, like an elephant's tusk. It is open at both ends. The larger opening (directed downwards in the sand) is anterior, the concave side of the shell is dorsal. The mouth opens at the end of a short buccal tube, at the base of which is a circle of ciliated tentacles. The foot is long, with three small terminal lobes. It is used in slow creeping, and is protruded at the anterior opening. There are cerebral and pleural ganglia near one another in the head, pedal ganglia in the foot, and a long untwisted visceral loop with olfactory ganglia near the posterior anus. Sense organs are represented by otocysts beside the pedal ganglia. There is an odontophore with a simple radula. The food consists of minute



animals. There is no heart, but colourless blood circulates in the body cavity. There are two nephridial apertures, one on each side of the anus; and two nephridia. The sexes are separate; the reproductive organ is simple and dorsal in position; the elements pass out by the right nephridium. The gastrula is succeeded by a free-swimming stage, in which there is a hint of a velum and a rudimentary shell gland.

Examples.—*Dentalium*, *Entalium*. About forty widely-distributed species are known. *Dentalium entale* occurs off British coasts. The genus occurs as a fossil from Carboniferous (or perhaps earlier) strata onward.

#### Class IV. LAMELLIBRANCHIATA or BIVALVES.

(Synonyms—Acephala, Conchifera, Pelecypoda, Lipocephala, etc.)

Examples.—Cockles, Mussels, Clams, and Oysters.

*Lamellibranchs* are bilaterally symmetrical Molluscs, in which the body is compressed from side to side and the foot more or less ploughshare-like. The head (or prostomium) region remains undeveloped, and without tentacles; radula, horny jaws, and salivary glands are absent, but there is a pair of labial palps on each side of the mouth. The mantle skirt is divided into two flaps, which secrete the two valves of the shell, now lateral instead of dorsal in position. The valves are united by a dorsal elastic ligament, and closed by two transverse adductor muscles or by one. Internal bilateral symmetry is marked by the paired nature and disposition of the nephridia, auricles, gills, digestive gland, and reproductive organs. The gills (ctenidia) consist of numerous gill filaments, which typically grow together into large plates (hence the title *Lamellibranch*). There are usually three pairs of ganglia: (a) cerebro-pleurals in the head; (b) pedals in the foot; (c) viscerals at the posterior end of the body. The heart consists of a ventricle and two auricles, and is surrounded by a pericardium which is cœlomic in origin, and communicates with the exterior by means of the two nephridia. Reproductive organs are always simple, and the sexes are usually separate. The typical development includes trochosphere and veliger stages. Most *Lamellibranchs* feed on microscopic organisms and particles; the distribution is very wide, both in salt and fresh water; the general habit is sedentary or sluggish.



**Classification.**—The best classification of Lamellibranchs seems to be that of Pelseneer, which is based on the structure of the gills.

Order 1. PROTOBRANCHIA.—There are two simple posterior gills, quite similar to those of Zeugobranchs; the foot has a flattened creeping surface; the pleural and cerebral ganglia are distinct, *e.g.* *Nucula*, *Solenomya*.

Order 2. FILIBRANCHIA.—The gill filaments are greatly elongated and reflected, so that they consist of an ascending and a descending limb, *e.g.* *Arca* (Noah's-ark shell), *Mytilus* (edible mussel), *Modiola* (horse-mussel).

Order 3. PSEUDO-LAMELLIBRANCHIA.—The successive gill filaments are loosely connected together to form gill-plates, *e.g.* *Pecten* (scallop), *Ostrea* (oyster).

Order 4. EULAMELLIBRANCHIA.—The separate filaments are no longer discernible; the gills form double flattened plates. The great majority of Bivalves are included here, *e.g.* *Anodonta*, *Venus*, *Pholas* (a boring form), *Mya*.

## GENERAL NOTES ON LAMELLIBRANCHS.

**Structure.**—The organs which most frequently vary in other bivalves, as compared with *Anodonta*, are the foot, the gills, the adductor muscles, and the mantle skirt. The foot varies much in size and shape; the pedal gland of Gasteropods is often represented by a "byssus" gland, which secretes attaching threads, well seen in the edible mussel (*Mytilus*). The gills show an interesting series of gradations, from a slight interlocking of separate gill filaments to the formation, by complicated processes of "concrecence," of plate-like structures such as those of *Anodonta*. These processes are, however, much more closely related to the method of nutrition than of respiration, which, indeed, is probably largely performed by the mantle skirt. The mantle skirt is often united to a greater or less extent inferiorly, and is often prolonged and specialised posteriorly to form exhalant and inhalant "siphons" (Fig. 159). These siphons sometimes attain a considerable length; they occur especially in forms such as *Mya*, which live buried in sand or mud, or which burrow in wood or stone, *e.g.* *Pholas*. The variations of the adductor muscles afford one basis for classification.

We may associate with the sluggish habits and sedentary life of bivalves—(1) the undeveloped state of the head region; (2) the largeness of the plate-like gills, which waft food-particles to the mouth; and (3) the thick limy shells. We may reasonably associate these and other facts of structure (*e.g.* the rarity of head-eyes, biting or rasping organs) with the conditions of life. In other words, these characteristics may be regarded as adaptations resulting from the action of natural selection on germinal variations. In thinking about the sluggishness of most bivalves, we must not forget, however, that the larval trochospheres and veligers are very active, perhaps almost too active, young creatures.

In some Lamellibranchs, *e.g.* *Mytilidæ*, small eyes occur on the head; in some other cases they are present in the larva, but not in the adult.

**Habit.**—Most bivalves, as every one knows, live in the sea, and



their range extends from the sand of the shore to great depths. They occur in all parts of the world, though only a few forms, like the edible mussel (*Mytilus edulis*), can be called cosmopolitan. Some, such as oysters, can be accustomed to brackish water. The fresh-water forms may have found that habitat in two ways—(a) a few may have crept slowly up from estuary to river, from river to lake; *Dreissenia polymorpha* has been carried on the bottom of ships from the Black Sea to the rivers and canals of Northern Europe; and it is likely that aquatic birds have assisted in distributing little bivalves like *Cyclas*; (b) on the other hand, it is more probable that the fresh-water mussels (*Unio*, *Anodonta*, etc.) are relics of a fauna which inhabited former inland seas, of which some lakes are the freshened residues.

Between the active *Lima* and *Pecten*, which swim by moving their shell valves and mantle flaps, and the entirely quiescent oyster, which has virtually no foot, there are many degrees of passivity, but most incline towards the oyster's habit. Of course, there is much internal activity, especially of ciliated cells, even in the most obviously sluggish. The cockle (*Cardium*) uses its bent foot to take small jumps on the sand; the razor-fish (*Solen*) not only bores in the sand, but may swim backwards by squirting out water from within the mantle cavity; many (e.g. *Teredo*, *Pholas*, *Lithodomus*, *Xylophaga*) bore holes in stone or wood; in the great majority the foot is used for slow creeping motion.

The food consists of Diatoms and other Algæ, Infusorians and other Protozoa, minute Crustaceans and organic particles, which the cilia of the gills sweep from the posterior end of the shell to the mouth. The bivalves are themselves eaten by worms, starfishes, gasteropods, fishes, birds, and even mammals.

**Life history.**—The eggs are sometimes laid in the water, either freely or in attached capsules, or, more frequently, they are fertilised by spermatozoa drawn in with the inhaled water, and are subsequently sheltered within the body during part of the development. In the Unionidæ the embryos are retained within the cavities of the outer gills; in *Cyclas* and *Pisidium* there are special brood-chambers at the base of the gills. In *Cyclas* the embryos are nourished by the maternal epithelial cells. Segmentation is always unequal; a gastrula may be formed by invagination or by overgrowth, the two cases being connected by a series of gradations. A trochosphere stage is more or less clearly indicated, being most obvious in cases where the eggs are laid in the water. The free-swimming trochosphere becomes a veliger, and this is modified into the adult. The fresh-water forms, with the exception of *Dreissenia polymorpha*, in which the habit is recently acquired, do not possess free-swimming larvæ; this must be regarded as an adaptation.

**Past history of bivalves.**—Even in Cambrian rocks, which we may call the second oldest, a few bivalves have been discovered; in the Upper Silurian they become abundant, and never fall off in numbers. Those with one closing muscle to the shell seem to have appeared after those which have two such muscles. Those which, from the shell markings, seem to have had an extension of the mantle into a protrusible tube or siphon, were also of later origin. The present fresh-water forms were late of appearing. Of all the fossil forms the most



remarkable are large twisted shells, called *Hippurites* (Rudistæ), whose remains are often very abundant in deposits of the chalk period.

### Class V. CEPHALOPODA. Cuttlefish.

Examples.—*Sepia*, *Octopus*, *Loligo*, *Nautilus*.

*The Cephalopods are bilaterally symmetrical free-swimming Molluscs. The head is surrounded by numerous "arms" bearing tentacles or suckers. Part of the foot forms a partial or complete tube—the "siphon" or "funnel"—through which water is forcibly expelled from the mantle cavity, driving the animal backwards. The muscular mantle flap which shelters the gills is posterior in position; the visceral hump shows no trace of spiral coiling, but is elongated in a direction anatomically dorsal and posterior, though it may point forwards when the animal propels itself through the water. Except in the pearly Nautilus, the shell of modern forms has been enclosed by the mantle, and is, in most cases, only hinted at. There is a very distinct head region, furnished with eyes and other sensitive structures, and the mouth has strong beak-like jaws, as also a well-developed radula. The nervous system shows considerable specialisation, and the chief ganglia are concentrated in the head. The true body cavity, pericardium of other Molluscs, is usually well developed, and frequently surrounds the chief organs. Except in the Nautilus, it communicates with the exterior by the nephridia.*

*The vascular system is well developed, and, except in the Nautilus, there are accessory branchial hearts. The sexes are separate. Development is direct. In habit, Cephalopods are predominantly active and predatory; in diet, carnivorous.*

The Cephalopods are divided into two markedly distinct orders, of which the one includes *Sepia* and all other living cuttles except *Nautilus*, which is the sole living type of the second order. As *Sepia* has been already described, we may briefly review some of the more striking characters of the pearly Nautilus (*Nautilus pompilius*).

The shells of the pearly Nautilus are common on the shores of warm seas, but the animals are much less familiar. The Nautilus creeps or swims gently along the bottom at no great depth, and its appearance on the surface, "floating like a tortoiseshell cat," is probably the result of storms. It



is called "pearly" on account of the appearance of the innermost layer of the shell. This is exposed after the soft organic stratum and the median layer which bears bands of colour have been worn away, or dissolved in a dolphin's stomach, or artificially treated with acid.

The beautiful shell is a spiral in one plane, divided into a set of chambers, in the last of which the animal lives, while the others contain gas. The young creature inhabits a tiny shell curved like a horn; it grows too big for this, and proceeds to enlarge its dwelling, meanwhile drawing itself

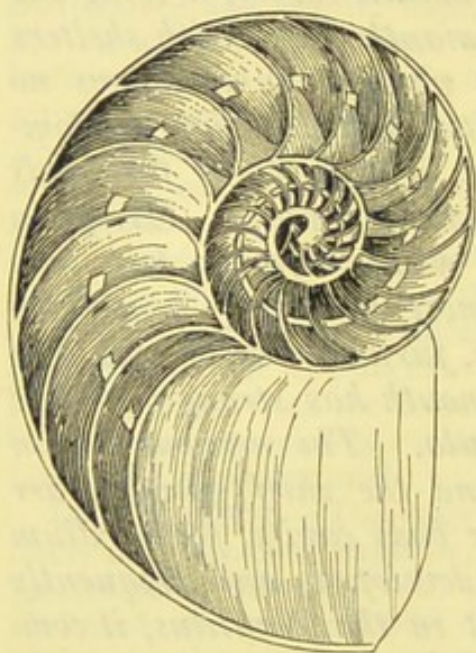


FIG. 167.—Section of shell of nautilus. — After Lendenfeld.

forward from the older part, and forming a door of lime behind it. This process is repeated again and again; as an addition is made in front, the animal draws itself forward a little, and shuts off a *part of* the chamber in which it has been living. Thus the compartments are not successive chambers, but *fractions* of successive chambers, abandoned and partitioned off as more space was gained in front. All the compartments are in communication by a median tube of skin—the siphuncle—which is in part calcareous.

It has been suggested that "each septum shutting off an air-containing chamber is formed during a period of quiescence, probably after the reproductive act, when the visceral mass of the Nautilus may be slightly shrunk, and gas is secreted from the dorsal integument so as to fill up the space previously occupied by the animal."

The only other living Cephalopod which has a shell at all like that of the Nautilus is *Spirula*. In it the shell is again chambered and spirally coiled in one plane. But it is without a siphuncle, and lies enveloped by folds of the mantle.

There can be no confusion between the beautiful shell of the cuttlefish called the paper Nautilus (*Argonauta argo*)



and that of our type. For it is only the female Argonaut which bears a shell; it is not chambered, and is a shelter for the eggs—a cradle, not a house. It is usually stated to be

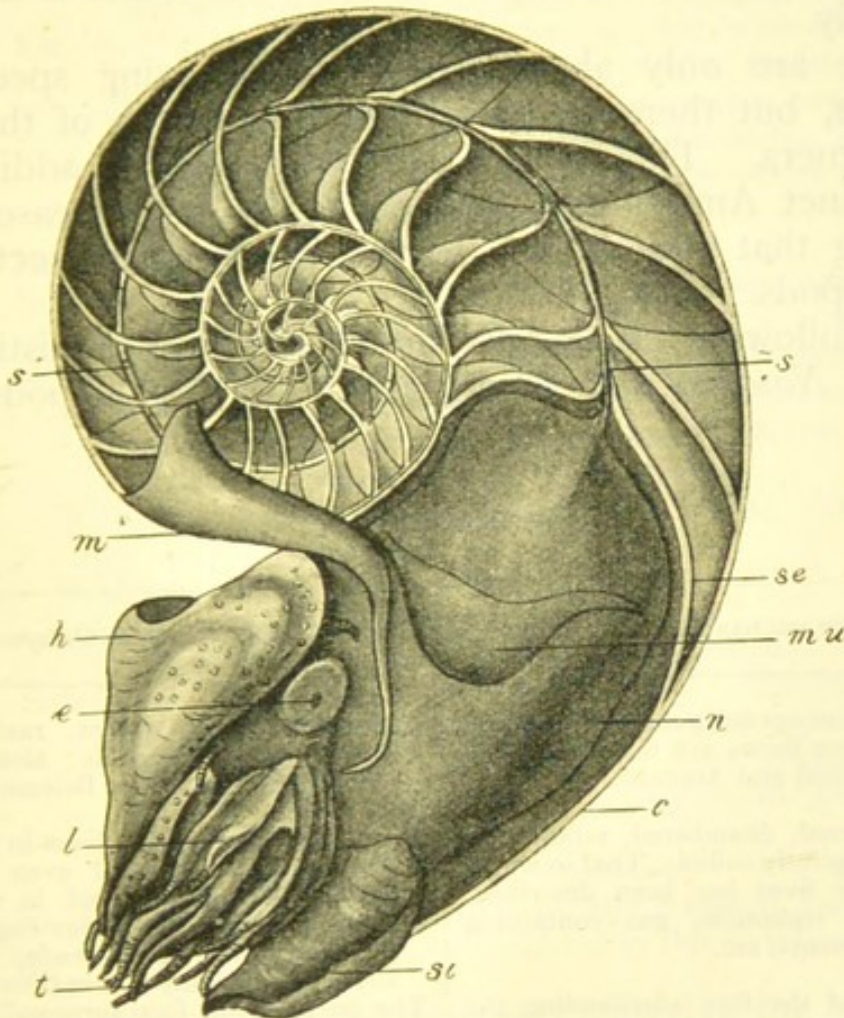


FIG. 168.—The Pearly Nautilus (*Nautilus pompilius*).  
—After Owen.

The shell is represented in section, but the animal is not dissected. *c.*, Last or body-chamber, separated by a septum (*se.*) from the compartment behind; *s.*, the siphuncle traversing all the compartments; *m.*, the portion of the mantle which is reflected over the shell; *h.*, the hood; *e.*, the eye with its opening to the exterior; *l.*, the lobes which bear the sheathed tentacles (*t.*); *si.*, the incomplete siphon; *mu.*, the shell muscle; *n.*, the position of the nidamental gland.

formed by two of the arms, but it seems doubtful whether it is not in reality due to the activity of the mantle.

It is instructive also to compare the Nautilus shell with that of some Gasteropods, for there also chambers may be formed. But these arise from secondary alterations of an originally continuous spiral, and the resemblance is never



very striking. The fresh-water snail *Planorbis* has an unchambered shell spirally coiled in one plane; but in this and in similar Gasteropods the foot is turned towards the internal curve of the coil, while that of *Nautilus* is directed externally.

There are only about half a dozen living species of *Nautilus*, but there are many hundred fossils of this and allied genera. This list is usually swelled by the addition of the extinct Ammonites, but there are some reasons for believing that these belong to the Dibranchiate section of Cephalopods.

The following table states the chief points of distinction between *Nautilus* and the other series of Cephalopods:—

### CEPHALOPODA.

TETRABRANCHIATA ( <i>Nautilus</i> ).	DIBRANCHIATA ( <i>Sepia</i> , <i>Octopus</i> , etc.).
<p>All extinct except one genus—<i>Nautilus</i>; the extinct forms are usually ranked as Nautiloid and Ammonoid.</p> <p>Shell external, chambered, straight or bent or spirally coiled. That in which <i>Nautilus</i> lives has been described, with its siphuncle, gas-containing compartments, etc.</p> <p>The part of the foot surrounding the mouth bears a large number of lobes, which carry tentacles in little sheaths, but no suckers.</p> <p>The two mid-lobes of the foot form a siphon, but they are not fused into a tube.</p> <p>The eye is without a lens, and is bathed internally by sea water, which enters by a small pinhole aperture. There are two "osphradia" or smelling patches at the bases of the gills.</p> <p>Two pairs of gills; two pairs of nephridia; two genital ducts (the left rudimentary).</p> <p>The cœlom sac opens directly to the exterior by two apertures.</p> <p>The heart has two pairs of auricles, and there are no branchial hearts.</p> <p>No ink-bag. No salivary glands.</p>	<p>Numerous living genera, ranked as Decapods or Octopods; along with the former the extinct Belemnites are included.</p> <p>No living Dibranchiate lives in a shell. The shell is internal even in the extinct Belemnites, and in modern forms it occurs in various degrees of degeneration (cf. <i>Spirula</i>, <i>Sepia</i>, <i>Loligo</i>), or is quite absent (Octopoda).</p> <p>The part of the foot surrounding the mouth is divided into ten or eight arms, which carry suckers, stalked in Decapods, sessile in Octopods.</p> <p>The two mid-lobes of the foot fuse to form a completely closed tubular siphon or funnel.</p> <p>The covering of the eye may be perforated, but the mouth of the retinal cup is closed by a lens. There are no osphradia, though there may be "olfactory pits" behind the eyes.</p> <p>One pair of gills; one pair of nephridial sacs; two oviducts in Octopoda and <i>Ommastrephes</i>; two vasa deferentia in <i>Eledone moschata</i>; in others an unpaired genital duct.</p> <p>The cœlom opens into the nephridia by two pores, and thus to the exterior.</p> <p>The heart has two auricles, and there are branchial hearts.</p> <p>An ink-bag and salivary glands.</p>



## CLASSIFICATION OF CEPHALOPODA.

## Order I. Tetrabranchiata (see Table).

Family I. Nautilidæ. *Nautilus* alone alive; but a great series of fossil forms, *Orthoceras*—*Trochoceras*.

Family II. Ammonitidæ. All extinct, but with shells well preserved, so that long series can be studied. They furnish striking evidence of progressive evolution in definite directions, e.g. *Bacrites*, *Ceratites*, *Baculites*, *Turritiles*, *Heteroceras*, and the whole series of genera formerly classed as *Ammonites*.

## Order II. Dibranchiata (see Table).

Sub-Order Decapoda. Eight shorter and two longer arms. Suckers stalked and strengthened by a strong ring. Large eyes with a horizontal lid. Body elongated, with lateral fins. Mantle margin with a cartilaginous "hook-and-eye" arrangement. Some sort of internal "shell," enclosed by upgrowths of the mantle.

With calcareous internal "shell." *Spirula*; extinct *Belemnites*; *Sepia*.

With organic internal "shell."

(a) Eyes with closed cornea, e.g. *Loligo*.

(b) Eyes with open cornea, e.g. *Ommastrephes*.

Sub-Order Octopoda. Eight arms only. Suckers sessile without horny ring. Small eyes with sphincter-like lid. Body short and rounded. No "hook-and-eye" arrangement. No "shell," except in the female *Argonauta*.

e.g. *Octopus*, *Eledone*, *Argonauta*.

The classification given above is that usually adopted, but it is not certain that the Ammonites should be included in the Tetrabranchiata.

The Cephalopods are the most specialised of the Molluscs, and present much variation of type. *Nautilus* appeared very early and has persisted, apparently unchanged, until the present, while the Ammonites and Belemnites, once so abundant, have entirely disappeared. Among recent forms we have Squid, Calamary, Octopus, Argonaut, and many others. All swim freely in the sea, or lurk and creep passively among the rocks. They are voracious eaters, and devour very diverse kinds of animals, their parrot-like jaws and powerful odontophore, as well as the numerous suckers, rendering them formidable adversaries. Many live at considerable depths, and their chief foes are the toothed whales, some of which, like the sperm whale (*Physeter*), and the bottle-nose (*Hyperoodon*), subsist almost entirely on cuttles.



A chambered external shell, serving as a house, is present in *Nautilus* alone among living Cephalopods. In *Spirula* there is a spiral chambered shell, but it is very small, enclosed by the mantle, and quite useless for protection. Most of the extinct forms had large and efficient shells of very diverse shape, some straight like *Orthoceras*, or coiled, with chambers separated by complex septa, as in the Ammonites. Most of the modern forms seem to be more active than their ancestors, and their shells have degenerated.

While the fact of the degeneration is perfectly obvious, the line along which it has taken place is difficult and still debated. In *Nautilus*, although the animal lives within the shell, the mantle fold is for some distance reflected over it; in the other series of Cephalopods this process has gone further, and, where a shell is present, it is entirely enclosed within the mantle fold, and is much reduced in size. In the extinct Belemnites the internal shell was straight and chambered, but almost concealed by secondary deposits of lime, secreted by the walls of the shell-sac. In *Sepia*, according to one view, the central laminated region of the "bone" represents the remains of the chambered shell; the remainder corresponds to the secondary deposits of lime in the Belemnites. In *Loligo* there is no deposit of lime, an organic chitinous pen only being left. In *Octopus* there is no trace of shell at all. According to some, the shell-sac, in which the shell or pen of Cephalopods is formed, is to be regarded as equivalent to the embryonic shell-sac plus a mantle pocket.



## CHAPTER XVII.

### CLASS HEMICHORDA OR ENTEROPNEUSTA.

#### Type BALANOGLOSSUS.

A SPECIES of *Balanoglossus* was described by Delle Chiaje at the end of the eighteenth century, but it is only within the last few years that the researches of Spengel, Bateson, and others have led to an appreciation of the importance of the type, and to a recognition of its peculiar features.

The class (Enteropneusta) which was erected for the reception of *Balanoglossus* has at present included in it a few other forms, whose more or less distinct affinities with Vertebrates are suggested by the alternative title Hemichorda. Taken along with Tunicates and *Amphioxus*, they illustrate gradual approximations towards Vertebrate characters.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The body is divisible into three regions—a pre-oral “proboscis,” a “collar” around and behind the mouth, and a trunk, the anterior part of which bears gill-slits. A dorsal nerve-cord arises from the epiblast along the middle line, and is connected, by a ring round the pharynx, with a ventral cord. In the skin, which is covered with ciliated ectoderm, there is also a nerve plexus. From the anterior region of the gut a diverticulum grows forward for a short distance, becomes a solid support for the proboscis, and is often called the “notochord.” The gill-slits open dorsally, are very numerous, and increase in number during life; in some details of development they recall those of Amphioxus. The mesoblast*



is formed by the outgrowth of pouches from the archenteron ; i.e. the body cavity is enterocœlic. An unpaired anterior pouch forms the pre-oral or proboscis cavity of the adult, and is compared to the anterior unpaired body cavity of *Amphioxus*.

Spengel, in his recent monograph, recognises nineteen species and four genera—*Balanoglossus*, *Ptychodera*, *Schizocardium*, and *Glandiceps*. They are very widely, though locally, distributed, but are perhaps absent on the Pacific coasts of America.

#### DESCRIPTION OF BALANOGLOSSUS.

**Form and habitat.**—The species which form this genus

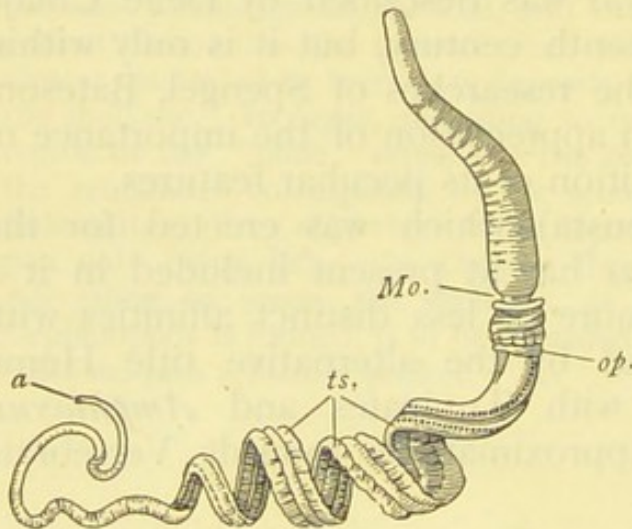


FIG. 169.—Male of *Balanoglossus kowalevskii*.—After Bateson.

Note anterior proboscis. *Mo.*, Mouth ; *op.*, slight operculum behind the collar ; then the region with gill-slits ; *ts.*, testes ; *a.*, anus.

are worm-like marine animals, found in sand and mud in the English Channel, the Mediterranean, Chesapeake Bay, etc. They vary in length from about 1 in. to over 6 in., and are brightly coloured and have a peculiar odour, like that of iodoform. The sexes are distinct, and are marked externally by slight differences in colour. The body consists of a prominent pre-oral region

or "proboscis," a firm "collar" behind the mouth ; behind this, a region with gill-slits ; and finally, a long, soft, slightly coiled portion.

**Skin and muscles.**—The epidermis is ciliated, and exudes abundant mucus from unicellular glands. In *B. robinii* the mucus sets firmly, and, with the addition of grains of sand, forms a tube round the body. Some species are phosphorescent. The muscular system is best developed about the proboscis and collar, which are used in leisurely locomotion through the soft sand. There are external circular



and internal radial and longitudinal muscles. The fibres are unstriated.

**Nervous system.**—The dorsal nerve-cord is most developed in the collar, but is continued along the whole length. It arises as a solid cord of epiblast, which is continued both forwards and backwards as a hollow tube. The cavity is said to be comparable to that of the spinal cord in Vertebrates. But the dorsal nerve-cord is connected by a band round the collar with a ventral nerve. There is also a nervous plexus beneath the epidermis. There are no special sense organs, nor should we expect them in an animal which spends most of its life immersed in muddy sand. In the larvæ of some species there are two eye spots.

**Alimentary system.**—The mouth is permanently open, and is on the ventral surface between the proboscis and the collar. Sand seems to pass into it during the wriggling movements of the animal. The pharynx is constricted into a dorsal and ventral region, of which the former is respiratory (Fig. 170, *g*<sup>1</sup>.), and connected with the exterior by many gill-slits, while the latter is nutritive (Fig. 170, *g*.), and conveys the food-particles onwards. According to Willey, there is no evidence that this groove is comparable to a structure of similar appearance seen in Tunicates and the lancelet, as used to be asserted. Behind the region with gill-slits, the gut has a dorsal and a ventral ciliated groove, and bears, throughout the anterior part of its course, numerous glandular sacculations, which can be detected through the skin. The anus is terminal. The animal eats its way through the sand, and derives its food from the nutritive particles and small organisms therein contained.

**Skeletal system.**—The skeletal system is represented by the "notochord," which lies in the proboscis, and arises, like the notochord of indubitable Vertebrates, as a hypoblastic structure from the dorsal wall of the gut. Each gill-slit is furnished with a "chitinous" skeleton, which gives the slit a U-shape, on account of the growth downwards of a "tongue bar"; the whole is suggestive of *Amphioxus*. Beneath the branchial skeleton there lies a "chitinous" rod, which divides into two in the collar.

**The body cavity.**—The body cavity is somewhat complex,



consisting of five distinct parts, all of which are lined by mesoderm, and arise as pouches from the primitive gut or archenteron. (a) There is first the unpaired cavity of the proboscis, which communicates with the exterior by a dorsal pore (or sometimes by two) at the base of the proboscis next the collar. It is possible that a glandular structure, which lies in front of the heart in the proboscis, may have excretory significance, but it seems to be quite enclosed.

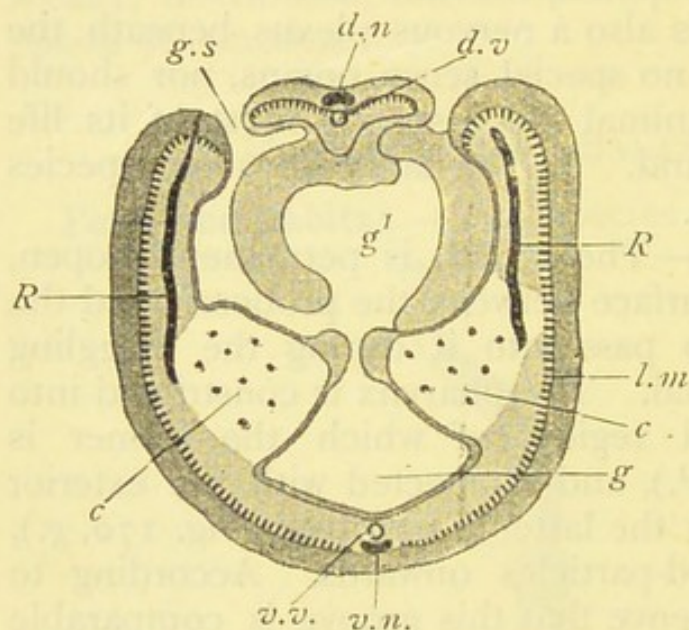


FIG. 170.—Transverse section through gill-slit region of *Ptychodera minuta*.—After Spengel.

The section, somewhat diagrammatic, shows a gill-slit (*g.s.*) to left, and a septum between two slits to the right; *d.n.*, dorsal nerve; *d.v.*, dorsal vessel; *v.n.*, ventral nerve; *v.v.*, ventral vessel; *g.*, nutritive part of gut; *g¹*, respiratory part of gut; *c.*, lateral coelomic spaces; *l.m.*, longitudinal muscles; *R.*, reproductive organs. As the gill-slits are oblique, the whole of one could not be seen in a single cross-section.

The section consists of many pairs of ciliated gill-slits. They open *dorsally* by small pores behind the collar. In development they begin as a pair, increase in number from in front backwards, and they go on increasing long after the adult structure has been attained. Water passes in by the mouth and out by the gill-slits, where it washes branches of the dorsal blood vessel. There are no gill lamellæ associated with the slits.

The vascular system includes a main dorsal blood vessel,

(b) In the collar region there are two small paired coelomic cavities, from which two funnels open to the exterior. Both these cavities and that of the proboscis tend to be obliterated by growth of connective tissue. (c) Two other cavities extend along the posterior region of the body, to some extent separated by the dorsal and ventral mesentery which moors the intestine. In these there is a body cavity fluid with cells.

#### Respiratory and vascular systems.—

The respiratory



which, at its anterior end, lies *above* the notochord; an anterior dilatation, which is sometimes called the "heart"; a ventral vessel beneath the gut; and numerous smaller vessels. The blood flows forwards dorsally, backwards ventrally. This system should be contrasted with that of *Amphioxus*.

**Excretory and reproductive systems.**—The excretory system is slightly developed. No nephridia are known,

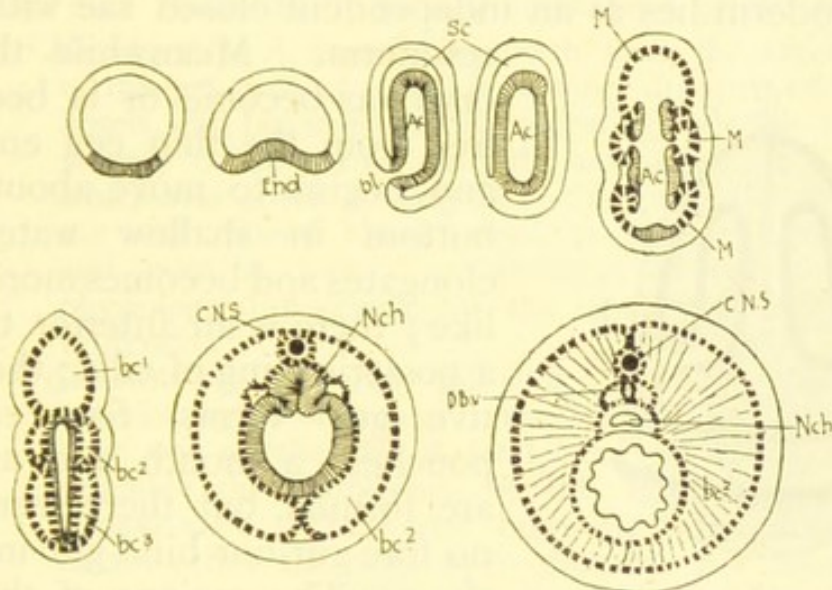


FIG. 171.—Development of *Balanoglossus*.—After Bateson.

The mesoderm is represented by the broken dark line.

In the upper row, from the left—

Section of blastula; beginning of gastrulation, *End.*, endoderm; section of gastrula, *bl.*, blastopore; *Ac.*, Archenteron; *Sc.*, segmentation cavity; closure of blastopore, outgrowth of five coelom pouches (*M.*).

In the lower row, from the left—

Longitudinal section, showing the five parts of the body cavity (*bc1*, *bc2*, *bc3*) or coelom.

Cross-section, *C.N.S.*, central nervous system; *Nch.*, notochord; *bc2*, body cavity in collar region.

Section at a later stage, *D.b.v.*, dorsal blood vessel.

but from the region of the collar two ciliated funnels open to the exterior, and we have already mentioned the enigmatical proboscis gland.

The sexes are separate. A number of simple paired genital organs lie dorsally in a series on each side of the body cavity in and behind the region with gill-slits (Fig. 170, *R.*). They open by minute dorsal pores in the skin, or in the American species by rupture.

**Development.**—The eggs must be fertilised outside of the body. Segmentation is complete and approximately



equal; a blastosphere or blastula results; this is invaginated in the normal fashion, and becomes a two-layered gastrula.

The American species (*B. kowalevskii*) has a simpler development than the others, for it is without a remarkable larval form (Tornaria) which occurs in them. We shall take the simpler case first, though it is probably less primitive.

The blastopore or mouth of the gastrula narrows and closes; the external surface of the gastrula becomes ciliated; the endoderm lies as an independent closed sac within the

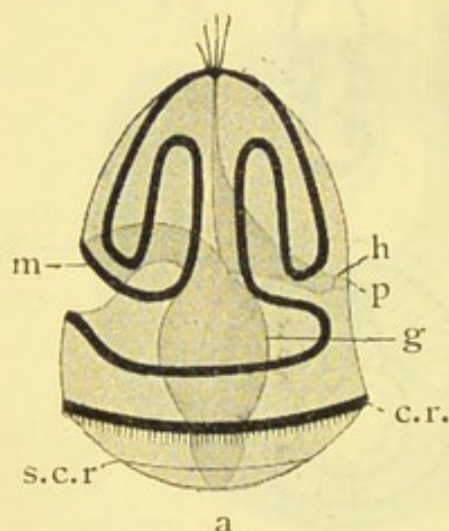


FIG. 172.—Tornaria larva, from the side.—After Spengel.

*M.*, mouth; *g.*, gut; *a.*, anus; *h.*, heart; *p.*, pore entering proboscis cavity; *c.r.*, anal ring of cilia; *s.c.r.*, secondary anal ring. The dark wavy line indicates the margin of the lobes of the larval body with their bands of cilia. Note also the apical spot with cilia and sense organ.

ectoderm. Meanwhile the embryo has become or is becoming free from the thin egg envelope, and begins to move about at the bottom in shallow water. It elongates and becomes more worm-like; there is an anterior tuft and a posterior ring of cilia; the primitive gut forms five coelomic pouches; a mouth and an anus are formed, but there seem to be no fore-gut nor hind-gut invaginations. The regions of the body are defined at a very early stage.

The Tornaria larva found in other species is at first bell-shaped. A ventral mouth opens into the curved gut, which is furnished with a posterior terminal anus. There are external bands of cilia, something like those of an Echinoderm larva, and also an apical sensory plate (like that of many Annelid trochospheres), with two eye spots. The Tornaria is a pelagic form. During its period of free pelagic life it gradually

loses its distinctive bands of cilia, becomes diffusely ciliated, acquires a proboscis and two gill-slits, and thus approaches the form of the larva first described. The further development is the same in both cases. The Tornaria must be regarded as the more primitive larval form; the temporary absence of mouth and anus in the other type is probably an adaptation acquired after the pelagic habit was lost.

Johannes Müller ranked the Tornaria larva, whose adult form was not then known, beside the larvæ of Echinoderms, and the resemblance has been recently emphasised by Willey. The ciliated bands of the Tornaria resemble those of Echinoderm larvæ, but this is only a superficial characteristic. The anterior pouch, which forms the cavity of the



proboscis and communicates with the exterior, has also been compared with the beginning of the water vascular system in Echinoderms, and it is true that in both several independent coelom pouches grow out from the primitive gut. The anterior body cavity in *Balanoglossus* communicates with the exterior by a pore, which becomes the proboscis-pore of the adult, and this has been compared with the water-pore, or outlet of the water vascular system of Echinoderms, which similarly opens from an anterior enterocoel to the exterior. On the other hand, the presence of an apical plate—a structure almost invariably absent in Echinoderms, suggests an affinity with an Annelid trochosphere.

*Affinities with Vertebrates* (especially emphasised by Mr. Bateson).

- (1) "*Notochord*."—A dorsal outgrowth from the anterior region of the gut grows forward for a short distance into the proboscis, and becomes a solid supporting rod (Fig. 171, *Nch.*). It may be compared with the notochord of Vertebrates, which also arises dorsally from the gut. But it lies *below* the main dorsal blood vessel, is of very limited extent, and may be merely an analogue of the notochord—a physiological necessity for the support of the elongated proboscis.
- (2) "*Gill-slits*."—Numerous gill-slits (Fig. 169) open from the anterior region of the gut to the exterior, and are separated from one another by skeletal bars, which in some ways resemble the framework of the respiratory pharynx in *Amphioxus*. There are, however, many differences in detail,—thus the slits open dorsally, not laterally; the skeletal bars are differently disposed; the blood supply is different. Nor is it certain that the gullet of *Balanoglossus* is endodermic like that of Vertebrates. Still, the possession of these respiratory slits is one of the most satisfactory of the alleged Vertebrate-like characters of *Balanoglossus*.
- (3) "*Dorsal nerve-cord*."—A dorsal median insinking (Fig. 170, *d.n.*) of ectoderm, especially strong in the region of the collar, may be compared with the medullary canal of Vertebrates. But it must be noticed that there is also a ventral nerve-cord (Fig. 170, *v.n.*).

Mr. Bateson has also noted that the mesoblast arises, as in *Amphioxus*, etc., in the form of coelom pouches, but this is true of many Invertebrates. He states that the history of the anterior coelom pocket, which grows forward in the proboscis of *Balanoglossus*, is closely like that in *Amphioxus*, but this is denied by Spengel. He compares a slight fold, which grows backwards from in front of the gill-slits, with the epipleural folds of *Amphioxus* (Fig. 169, *op.*), but the fold appears to be restricted to one species. It is still uncertain what weight should be attached to the fact that *Balanoglossus* is unsegmented.

*Affinities with Annelids* (after Prof. Spengel).

- (1) The larva (Tornaria) (Fig. 172) may be regarded as a modified Trochosphere, but this points at most to a far-off common stock. Moreover, the nephridia, usually present in the Trochosphere, are unrepresented in the Tornaria.



- (2) The body cavity is formed from segmentally arranged coelom pouches; but there is a pair of pre-oral pouches absent in Annelids, and the segmental arrangement in the organs of the body in *Balanoglossus* is, to say the least, very vague.
- (3) The heart lies, as in some Annelids, dorsal to the gut, not ventral as in Vertebrates; the dorsal vessel carries blood forwards, the ventral backwards, as is usual in Annelids. But the double nervous system is essentially different from that of Annelids; and the gill-slits are also, so far as we know, unrepresented there. If there be a relationship between Enteropneusta and Annelids, it must be a very distant one, perhaps restricted to origin from some common stock.

Besides these affinities, others have been ingeniously detected. Those alleged to exist between Enteropneusta and Nemerteans, *e.g.* the external ciliation, the unsegmented musculature, the correspondence of the "notochord" and the Nemertean proboscis, the nature of the nervous system, the sacculations of the gut, the arrangement of the gonads, are perhaps even more unsatisfactory than those above cited. Again, the resemblance between the Tornaria larva and that of Echinoderms is unsatisfactory, because of our relative ignorance of the development of the Tornaria.

Here, then, we have a lesson in uncertainties, for all that we can say is, that the Enteropneusta seem to be synthetic, possibly transitional types, exhibiting affinities with various others, but differing markedly from all.

#### Appendix (I) to ENTEROPNEUSTA. Cephalodiscus.

A single species (*Cephalodiscus dodecalophus*) was dredged by the *Challenger* in the Magellan Straits. It was at first described by M'Intosh as a divergent Polyzoan, but the researches of Harmer point to relationship with *Balanoglossus*.

The minute stalked individuals occur associated together in a gelatinous investment; the colony may attain a size of 9 in. by 6 in. The gut is curved, the anus being beside the mouth, beneath which are two rows of ciliated hollow tentacles. These two characters, formerly supposed to indicate Polyzoan affinities, may perhaps be adaptations to the sedentary life. With *Balanoglossus* this type has been compared, on account of the possession of the following characters:—(a) The body is divided into three regions, which correspond to the proboscis, collar, and trunk of *Balanoglossus*; this is especially obvious in the young bud; (b) each of the three regions contains a coelomic cavity, the most anterior being single, while the other two are divided by a median partition; (c) the anterior pre-oral cavity opens to the exterior by two pores (*cf.* proboscis pore of *Balanoglossus*); (d) the collar region is also furnished with two collar pores, which open beneath a fold or operculum developed from the collar; (e) in the collar region the dorsal nervous system is also placed, and is continued to some extent into the proboscis; (f) beneath the nervous system lies a diverticulum from the gut, which extends towards the proboscis region; this has been compared to the



"notochord" of *Balanoglossus*, but, according to Masterman, the comparison is not justified; (g) the anterior region of the gut is perforated by a pair of lateral gill-slits. These gill-slits are supported by vacuolated "notochordal" tissue, and beside them lie a pair of blind diverticula of the gut, whose walls are composed of similar cells, which are compared by Masterman to double "notochords."

Appendix (2) to ENTEROPNEUSTA. Rhabdopleura.

This genus is found at considerable depths in the North Sea. Like *Cephalodiscus*, the individuals are minute and stalked, and occur in a colony; in this case, however, they remain attached to one another by a common stalk, instead of being united only by an investment. In the head region there are two hollow lateral arms bearing numerous ciliated tentacles, which have a skeletal support. The gut, as in *Cephalodiscus*, has a U-shaped curvature and an anterior diverticulum ("notochord"). There are five coelomic cavities, of which the unpaired pre-oral part has two pores. There are no gill-slits. The affinities between this type and *Balanoglossus* must still be held doubtful.

As already mentioned, Masterman has recently compared the larva of *Phoronis* with *Cephalodiscus*, and proposed the re-association of the two animals. The points to which he draws attention are the presence in the Actinotrocha of a true coelom, divided, as in the Hemichorda, into three parts. Of these the anterior or pre-oral is said to communicate with the exterior by two pores, comparable to the proboscis pores of *Balanoglossus*. The second or "collar" (lophophoral) region opens externally by two ciliated nephridia. Further, the nervous system, which consists of a dorsal ganglion with connected nerve-rings and dorsal and ventral nerve-tracts, is compared in detail to that of *Cephalodiscus*. An upgrowth from the anterior region of the gut is compared with the structure called by Harmer "notochordal" in *Cephalodiscus*. Finally, two lateral diverticula of the gut formed of vacuolated cells are compared with the diverticula in the neighbourhood of the gill-slits in *Cephalodiscus*, and with "notochords." A patch of similar cells occurs on the ventral floor of the gut in the Actinotrocha.

While many of the points named above are little convincing as regards chordate affinities, they are interesting as suggesting that the old association of *Phoronis* and *Cephalodiscus* was correct after all, and that further investigation will make it possible to draw up a natural classification of these aberrant worm-like types.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### CLASS UROCHORDA OR TUNICATA.

(ASCIDIANS, SEA-SQUIRTS, ETC.)

THE Tunicates are remarkable animals, which seem to stumble on the border line between Invertebrates and Vertebrates. They were classified with Polyzoa and Brachiopoda as Molluscoidea, until, in 1866, Kowalevsky described for the first time the development of a simple Ascidian, and correlated it, step by step, with that of *Amphioxus*. He showed that the larval Ascidian possesses a dorsal nerve-cord, a notochord in the tail region, gill-slits opening from the pharynx to the exterior, and an eye developing from the brain. It is true that in most cases the promise of youth is unfulfilled; the active larva settles down to a sedentary life, loses tail and notochord, nerve-cord and eye, and becomes strangely deformed. Nevertheless we must now class Tunicates as degenerate Vertebrates. Of their possible relations to simpler forms nothing definite is known.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*The Tunicates are marine Chordata, but the chordate characteristics—dorsal nervous system, notochord, gill-slits, and brain eye—are in most cases discernible only in the free-swimming larval stages. They usually degenerate in adolescence, and the adults, which are in most cases sedentary, tend to diverge very widely from the Vertebrate type. Thus the nervous system is generally reduced to a single ganglion. The body is invested by a thickened cuticular test, which contains*



cellulose. The pharynx is perforated by two (*Larvacea*), or (in the majority) by numerous ciliated gill-slits, and is surrounded to a greater or less extent by a peribranchial chamber, which communicates with the exterior by a special (atrial) opening. The heart is simple and tubular, and there is a periodic reversal in the direction of the blood current. Nephridia are absent, and the renal organs are devoid of ducts. All are hermaphrodite. There is usually a metamorphosis in development. Colonies are frequently formed.

Type of TUNICATA—a simple Ascidian (*Ascidia mentula*).

In form an adult *Ascidia* is an irregular oval of 3 to 4 in. in length; one end is attached to stones or weed; the other is more tapering, and bears the mouth, close beside which, on the morphological dorsal surface, lies the exhalant or atrial aperture. During life, water is constantly being drawn in by the mouth and passed out by the atrial opening. If irritated, the animal frequently drives a jet of water with considerable force from both apertures, whence the name "sea-squirt."

**Test.**—The whole body is clothed in a thick test, sometimes called a tunic, though this name is more frequently applied to the underlying body-wall. From this body-wall the test can be readily removed, the two being unattached except at one spot, where blood vessels pass into the test, and also to a less degree at the two openings. In the natural condition of parts, however, the two structures are closely apposed. In origin the test is a true cuticle, produced by secretory prolongations of the ectoderm cells; but soon after its formation mesenchyme cells migrate into it, and give rise to patches of connective tissue cells. These cells apparently retain throughout life some phagocytic importance. In *Ascidia* blood vessels also enter the test from the body, and ramify in all directions. In some Ascidians this is carried further, until it may become an important accessory organ of respiration. The test itself consists in great part of a carbohydrate apparently identical with the cellulose of plants; this "cellulose" or "tunicin" is common throughout the group, but the relative amount produced varies markedly in the different forms.



**Body-wall and muscular system.** — The body-wall, mantle, or tunic, disclosed by peeling off the test, is a

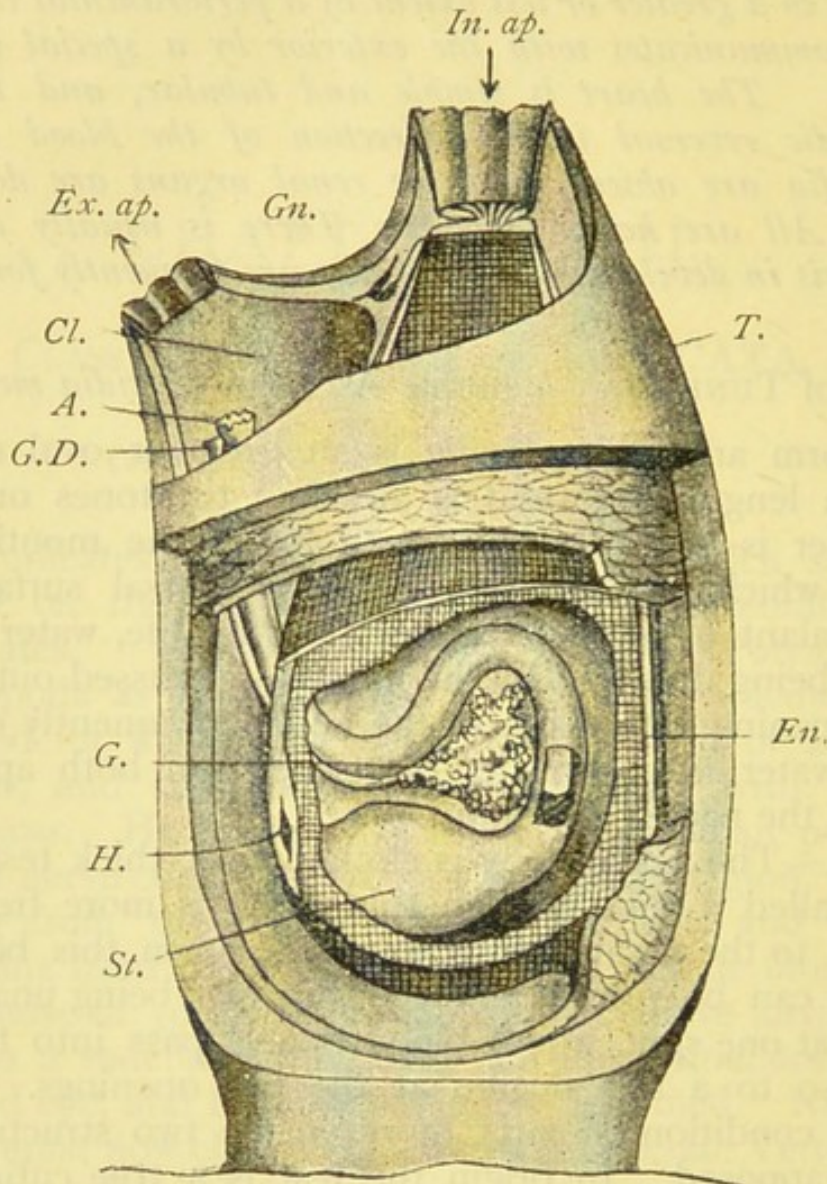


FIG. 173.—Dissection of Ascidian.—After Herdman.

*In. ap.*, Inhalant aperture; *T.*, test, cut away below to show muscular layer, pharynx, etc.; *En.*, endostyle or ventral groove of pharynx. Note removal of pharynx to show, on the other—the left—side, stomach (*St.*), intestine (with fold seen at incision), and reproductive organs (*G.*); *H.*, opening of pharynx into oesophagus; *G.D.*, genital duct; *A.*, anus; *Cl.*, cloacal chamber; *Ex. ap.*, exhalant aperture; *Gn.*, lies above the ganglion, which is seen between the two apertures; beneath it is the sub-neural gland and its duct.

structure of considerable complexity. At its upper end it is more or less drawn out into the two siphons, and, with the exception of the openings at their tips, it completely invests



the body. Its outer surface is covered by a single layer of ectoderm cells, which secrete the test. Beneath these there lies a gelatinous matrix containing numerous connective tissue cells, blood-carrying spaces, muscle cells forming slender fibres, and so on. The point of importance is that whereas the true coelom is more or less distinctly visible in the embryo, it is represented in the adult only by these lacunar spaces in the mantle. In other words, in the adult Ascidian, as in Crustacea, the body cavity is hæmocœlic. The *apparent* body cavity of the Ascidian—the space between gut and body-wall—is, as we shall see, lined throughout by ectoderm.

The muscular system is not well developed. The muscle cells are much elongated and unstriped; they are aggregated into fibres of varying thickness, which form an irregular network on the right side of the body, while they are virtually absent on the left. Special sets of fibres form sphincters round the apertures.

**Alimentary and respiratory systems.**—On account of the special peculiarities of *Ascidia*, it is convenient to alter slightly our usual order, and consider these systems next.

The branchial aperture or mouth opens into a short branchial siphon, separated from the branchial sac itself by a sphincter muscle, whose posterior border is furnished with numerous simple elongated tentacles. In the living animal the tentacles form a sort of network over the opening of the branchial sac. This sac is morphologically the pharynx, and extends almost to the posterior end of the body. It is separated from the mantle by a space whose dimensions vary greatly in the different regions of the body. This space is the peribranchial chamber, which is formed from the ectoderm, and communicates with the exterior by the atrial opening, and with the branchial sac by innumerable slits. The remainder of the alimentary canal lies on the left side of the body, between pharynx and mantle, and consists of a short œsophagus leading from the pharynx to the large stomach, and of an intestine which describes an S-shaped curve, and then crosses the atrial chamber, to end in an anus lying beneath the exhalant opening (see Figs. 173 and 174). The absorbing surface of the intestine is increased by a marked infolding, corresponding to the typhlosole of



the earthworm. A mass of tubules connected by a duct with the cavity of the stomach is possibly a digestive gland.

The structure of the pharynx is exceedingly complex, as is natural when we consider its double function—respiratory and nutritive—and also that the breathing organs of sedentary animals tend to be elaborate. The water which enters by the branchial aperture is not only used in respiration, but brings with it the minute food-particles. Similarly, the outgoing current carries with it the water used in respiration, the indigested residue of the food, and the spermatozoa and ova. The water of respiration passes from the pharynx through its numerous gill openings to the peribranchial chamber, and so to the exterior. On its way it purifies the blood which is contained in the vessels running in the complex framework of the pharynx wall. The current is produced and maintained by the action of the ciliated cells lining the gill-slits, and its force necessitates special arrangements to prevent the food-particles being swept out before they have entered the digestive region of the gut. To accomplish this, there is a longitudinal glandular groove on the ventral surface of the pharynx, and a ciliated fold on its dorsal—the regions being defined by the nerve ganglion. According to Willey, the minute algæ and so forth of the food are entangled in the abundant mucus secreted by the ventral groove or endostyle, and are swept forward in a cord of slime, until at the anterior end of the endostyle they reach a circular ciliated groove, whose two halves surround the pharynx, and unite to form the dorsal lamina or fold. The food particles pass round this groove, and are swept backwards by the cilia of the dorsal lamina until they reach the œsophageal opening. Other observers emphasise the endostyle more particularly as the path along which the food travels.

In many Ascidians the dorsal lamina is replaced by a series of processes—the dorsal languets, which may be sensory, as well as food-wafting structures.

**Nervous system and sense organs.**—In the adult both of these show marked degeneration. In the larva there is a slightly-developed brain continued into a dorsal nerve-cord, and having connected with it a median eye and an otocyst. The two latter are completely absent in the adult, and the



nervous system consists merely of a ganglionic mass lying between the two apertures, giving off a few nerves forwards and backwards.

A structure of doubtful sensory, but of considerable morphological,

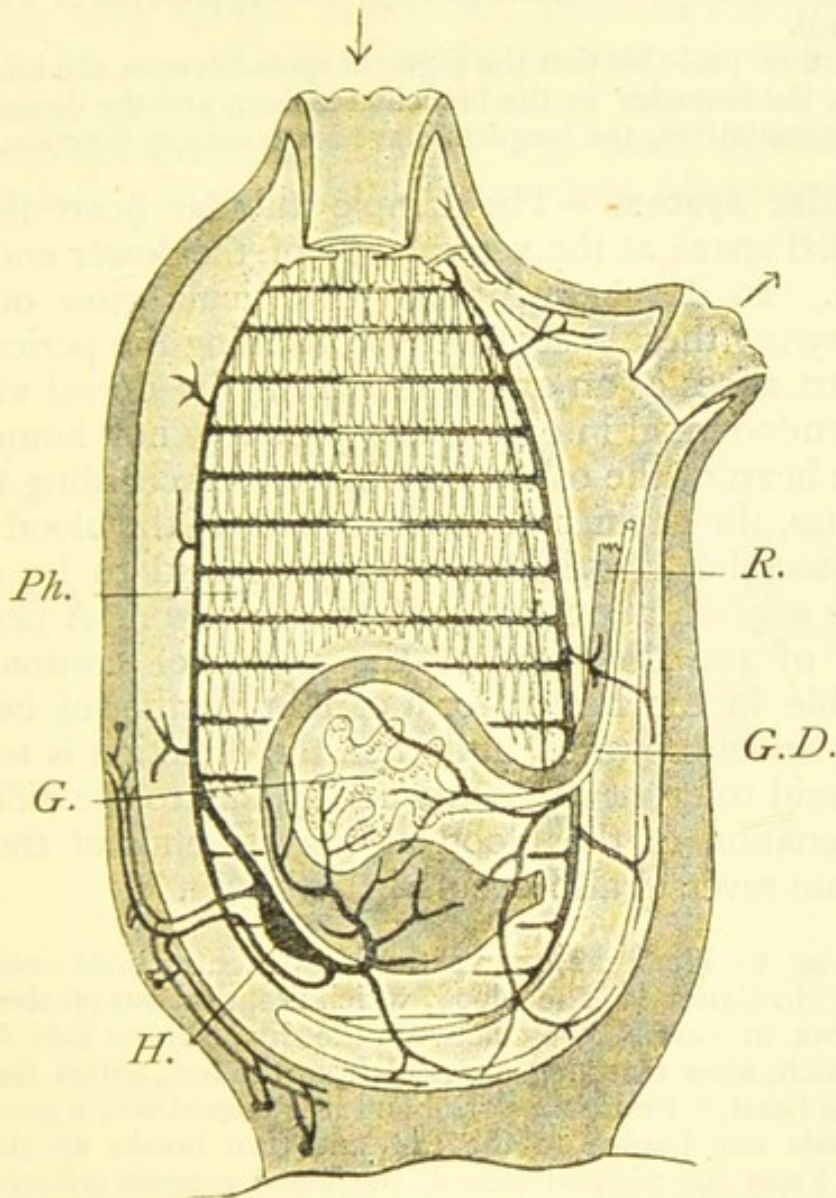


FIG. 174.—Diagram of Ascidian.—After Herdman.

The arrows indicate the two openings; the dark border the test. *Ph.*, pharynx, with gill-slits; *G.*, reproductive organs; *H.*, heart, with blood vessels; *G.D.*, genital ducts; *R.*, rectum, ending in cloacal chamber. Surrounding the pharynx the peribranchial cavity is shown.

importance, is the small sub-neural gland which lies beneath the ganglion, and communicates by a ciliated duct with the pharynx. The opening is usually complex, and forms the so-called dorsal tubercle, which is very distinct on the wall of the pharynx. It lies at the point where the two halves of the ciliated groove, or peripharyngeal band,



already described, converge dorsally to form the dorsal lamina. In *Ascidia* the sub-neural organ is ventral to the brain, and partly glandular in character, and so it is in many; in some cases, however, it is dorsal in position, and its glandular portion is reduced to nil. It is probable that the sub-neural gland and its duct correspond to the olfactory pit of *Amphioxus*, and perhaps to the hypophysis of Vertebrates (see p. 440).

It is further probable that the pigment spots between the lobes of the apertures, the tentacles in the branchial siphon, and the dorsal lamina, or its representatives, the languets, have some sensory function.

**Vascular system.**—The simple tubular heart lies in a pericardial space at the ventral side of the lower end of the pharynx. In development, two diverticula grow out from the pharynx; these meet and fuse, forming the pericardium. The heart arises as an evagination from its dorsal wall, and is thus endodermal in origin, and probably not homologous with the heart of the other Vertebrates. According to some authorities, the cavities of the heart and of the blood vessels are blastocœlic in origin, *i.e.* they are said to be derived from the segmentation cavity of the embryo. A periodical reversal of the direction of the waves of contraction is discernible in the heart; for a certain number of beats the blood is driven upwards, and then the direction is reversed. This is said to be, at any rate partially, due to the differences in oxygenation of the blood at the two ends of the heart. This same reversal also occurs in *Phoronis*.

According to Herdman, the ventro-dorsal contractions occasion the following circulation:—The blood, which is spread out on the walls of the pharynx in vessels lying between the slits, collects into one large vessel, which, after receiving a vessel from the test, enters the ventral end of the heart. From the dorsal end it is poured into a great trunk, which sends one branch to the test, and then breaks up among the viscera. From the visceral lacunæ the blood is again collected, to be distributed to the branchial sac. At the reversal of the contractions this circulation is also reversed. The blood is very colourless, but usually contains a few pigmented corpuscles.

**Excretory system.**—In the loop of the intestine there lies a mass of clear vesicles containing uric acid and other waste products. This, therefore, seems to be a renal organ, but there is no duct. Bacteria are usually found in the vesicles, and their activity may make diffusion easier. It is interesting to find such a plant-like method of storing up, instead of eliminating, waste products in these very passive



animals. It has been suggested that the sub-neural gland may have some renal function.

**Reproductive system.**—Tunicates are hermaphrodite. The reproductive organs (Fig. 173, *G.*) are very simple, and lie in the loop of the intestine. The ovary is the larger, and contains a cavity into which the ova are set free, and from which they pass outwards along an oviduct which opens into the cloacal chamber. The testis surrounds the ovary, and is mature at a different time (dichogamy); its

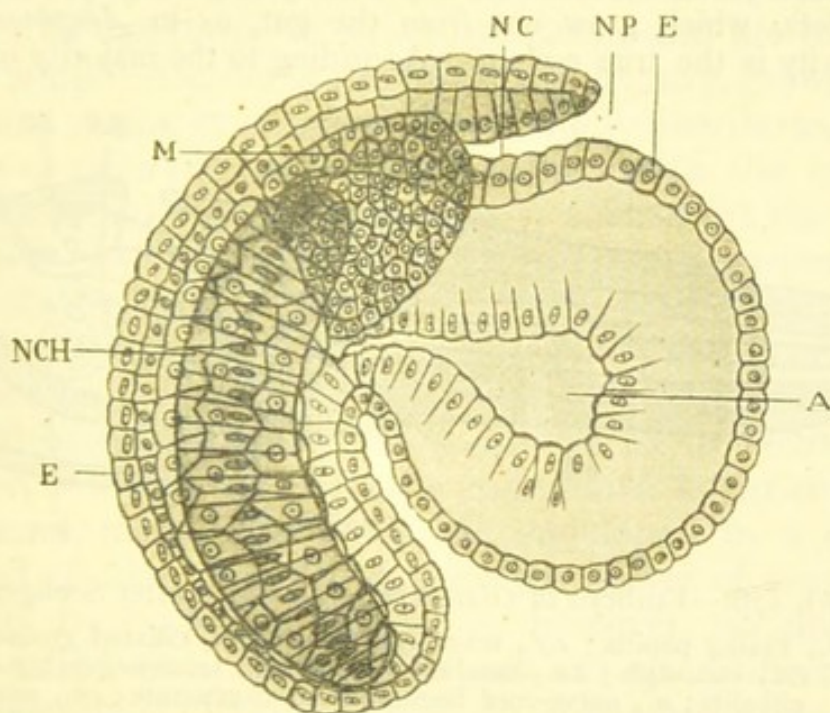


FIG. 175.—Young embryo of Ascidian (*Clavelina*).—After Van Beneden and Julin.

*NP.*, Neuropore; *NC.*, neural canal; *NCH.*, notochord; *E.*, ectoderm; *M.*, mesoderm; *A.*, archenteron.

duct runs by the side of the oviduct. In some forms, where the gonads are near the cloaca, there are no ducts. The ova are surrounded by follicular cells, and probably fertilised in the cloaca.

**Development.**—The fertilised ovum divides completely and almost equally. The spherical blastosphere becomes slightly flattened, and ultimately forms a two-layered gastrula.

Along the dorsal median line of the gastrula the ectoderm cells form the medullary groove, the sides of which arch together and form a canal—the medullary canal. This opens anteriorly to the exterior by the neuropore, and posteriorly communicates with the archenteron by the neurenteric canal.



With regard to the origin of mesoblast and notochord, there is more difficulty. Both originate from the endoderm in the region of the blastopore, and for a time grow forward together. The notochord lies in its usual position on the roof of the gut, from a specialisation of which it arises; but its forward extension is limited,—it never extends into the anterior region, and in the posterior region—the future tail—it increases at the expense of the primitive gut, whose lumen it obliterates. The mesoderm, on the other hand, extends right forward, and becomes divided into two regions—a posterior, ultimately forming the musculature of the tail, and an anterior, giving rise to the blood, connective tissues, body muscles, excretory and genital organs. According to Van Beneden and Julin, the mesoderm primarily originates in the form of two pockets, which grow out from the gut, as in *Amphioxus*, and whose cavity is the true coelom. According to the majority of investi-

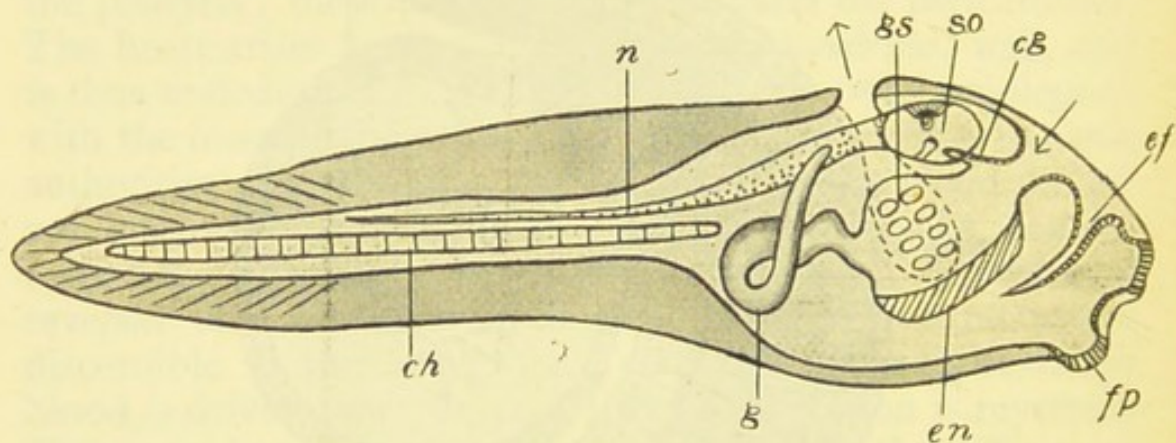


FIG. 176.—Embryo of *Clavelina*.—Modified after Seeliger.

*f.p.*, Fixing papilla; *e.f.*, ectodermic fold; *c.g.*, ciliated groove; *en.*, endostyle; *s.o.*, cerebral vesicle with sense-organs; *g.s.*, gill-slits; *n.*, nerve-cord beginning to degenerate; *ch.*, notochord; *g.*, gut curving upwards towards atrial opening. The atrial invagination is marked by a dotted line; the mouth and atrial opening are indicated by arrows.

gators, it originates as solid blocks of cells, and the body cavity is only represented by spaces produced by the subsequent separation of these cells.

The further processes of development result in the formation of a tadpole-like larva, with dorsal nervous system, notochord in the tail region, and well-developed sense organs. Two ectodermal invaginations form the originally double peribranchial chamber, and small diverticula from the pharynx meet these and form the first gill-slits.

For some hours the larva enjoys a free-swimming life, using its tail as an organ of locomotion. Then it fixes itself by papillae on its head, and begins almost immediately to degenerate. The tail shrinks and disappears, being consumed by phagocytes. The nerve-cord is lost, and with it the larval sense organs, while simultaneously a change of axis results in the adult relation of parts. The peribranchial chamber becomes greatly enlarged, and its two openings fuse together to form the



single atrial aperture of the adult. The gill-slits increase greatly in number; the increase being due both to the formation of new slits and to the division of those first formed, and the whole animal undergoes a metamorphosis which is one of the most signal instances of degeneration.

#### GENERAL NOTES ON TUNICATA.

The description of *Ascidia* given above is, in its general outlines, applicable to all the simple Ascidians, which are abundantly represented on British coasts. As contrasted with this type, we have in other members of the class most remarkable variations in structure, habit, and life history.

The simple Ascidians are usually sedentary, growing fixed to stones, shells, or weed, and are widely distributed, occurring on or near the coasts of all seas. With the exception of the so-called social Ascidians (e.g. *Clavelina*), they do not reproduce by budding, but are often gregarious, great masses being found together.

To the compound Ascidians (e.g. *Botryllus*) those simple forms are linked by *Clavelina*, where each individual is surrounded by its own test, but is united to its fellows by a common blood system. In the compound Ascidians, on the other hand, many individuals are enveloped in a common test, and all like *Clavelina* possess the power of reproducing asexually by budding. There is, however, no doubt that the so-called compound Ascidians are an artificial group, whose members diverge widely in structure, while all displaying the two characters mentioned.

Some of the compound Ascidians are not fixed, but form floating colonies. These forms lead up to the beautiful *Pyrosoma* or phosphorescent fire-flame, where the whole colony with its numerous individuals swims as one creature.

All these belong to the Ascidian series, and display interesting variations in their methods of development. The simplest case is that already described for *Ascidia*, where the tailed larva gives rise to a sexual adult without any power of budding. This occurs in almost all simple Ascidians, but even here there are indications of possible complication. Thus, on the one hand, in some, e.g. *Molgula*, there is a tendency towards abbreviation—the larval stage being suppressed, while, on the other, the adult acquires the power of reproducing asexually, e.g. *Clavelina*.



Both processes are carried further in the compound Ascidiæ. In them the eggs have usually a considerable amount of yolk, and development takes place either in the atrial cavity of the mother, or in special brood-pouches. In consequence, the development, especially in the early stages, shows considerable modification, although the larval stage is quite distinct. Again, the tailed larva develops into an adult which has no sexual organs, but forms a colony by budding. The individuals of the colony then give rise to eggs and so to larvæ. The development thus includes a distinct alternation of generations.

Budding takes place in many different ways in the compound Ascidiæ. In one set (the Diplosomidæ) the tailed larva is precociously reproductive, giving rise to buds before undergoing metamorphosis. This forms an interesting transition to the condition seen in *Pyrosoma*, where the fertilised egg gives rise to a rudimentary larva (cyathozoid), from which a young colony of four individuals arises by budding. These individuals again bud, until a large colony is formed, the members of which become sexual. The ova are few in number, a statement which is generally true for the pelagic Tunicates, as contrasted with the sessile forms.

While the Ascidiæ in the narrow sense include all the more typical Tunicates, there are two other sets, few in number both as regards genera and species, but of great theoretic importance.

The one set includes the free-swimming genera *Salpa* and *Doliolum*, together with the aberrant *Challenger* genus *Octacnemus*; the other, a few active free-swimming forms, which exhibit throughout life many of the characteristics of the larval Ascidian. Of these, *Appendicularia* is the most familiar type.

Both *Salpa* and *Doliolum* are pelagic in habit, and differ markedly in structure from the Ascidiæ. The body is fusiform (*Salpa*) or barrel-shaped (*Doliolum*), and wholly or partially encircled by definite muscle bands, which replace the scattered fibres of the Ascidiæ. The mouth is at one end of the body, and the atrial aperture at the other; the animals swim by forcing the water out of the peribranchial chamber posteriorly. Many of the most marked signs of specialisation in the Ascidiæ are here absent. Thus the test may be, as in *Doliolum*, very thin and devoid of cells, and the branchial sac is relatively simple in structure; the cilia on its walls are never so important in producing the



respiratory current as in the Ascidians, and the gill-slits may be few in

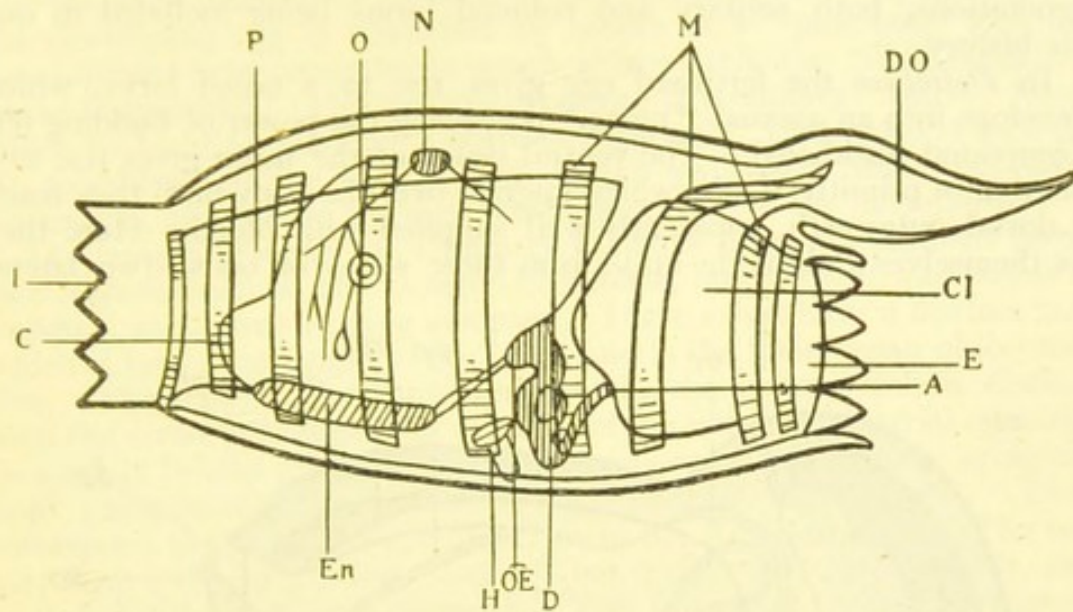


FIG. 176A.—"Nurse" of *Doliolum mulleri*.—After Uljanin.

I., inhalant, E., exhalant aperture; C., ciliated band round pharynx (P); En., endostyle; O., otocyst; N., nerve-ganglion; H., heart; OE., oesophageal opening; D., stomach; A., anus; Cl., cloaca; DO., dorsal organ; M., muscle bands.

number, or, as in *Salpa*, may be represented by two large holes in the walls of the pharynx. Further, the hermaphroditism is modified by the

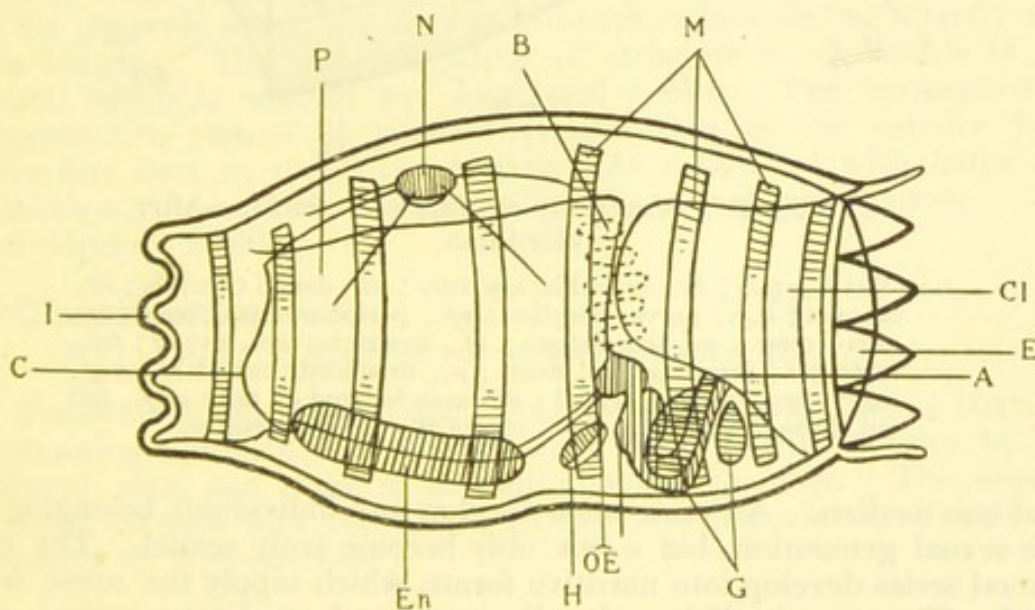


FIG. 176B.—Sexual individual of *Doliolum mulleri*.—After Uljanin.

G., gonads; B., gill-slits; other letters as before. The unlettered reference line points to the stomach.

occurrence of very marked protogyny, and the ova are never numerous—in *Salpa* each sexual individual usually produces only one.



On the other hand, the development exhibits marked alternation of generations, both solitary and colonial forms being included in one life history.

In *Doliolum* the fertilised egg gives rise to a tailed larva, which develops into an asexual "nurse," possessing the power of budding (cf. Compound Ascidians). The ventral stolon of the nurse gives rise to a number of primitive buds, which migrate over the body until they reach a dorsal outgrowth, apparently well supplied with blood. Here they fix themselves and divide up to form three series of buds—two lateral

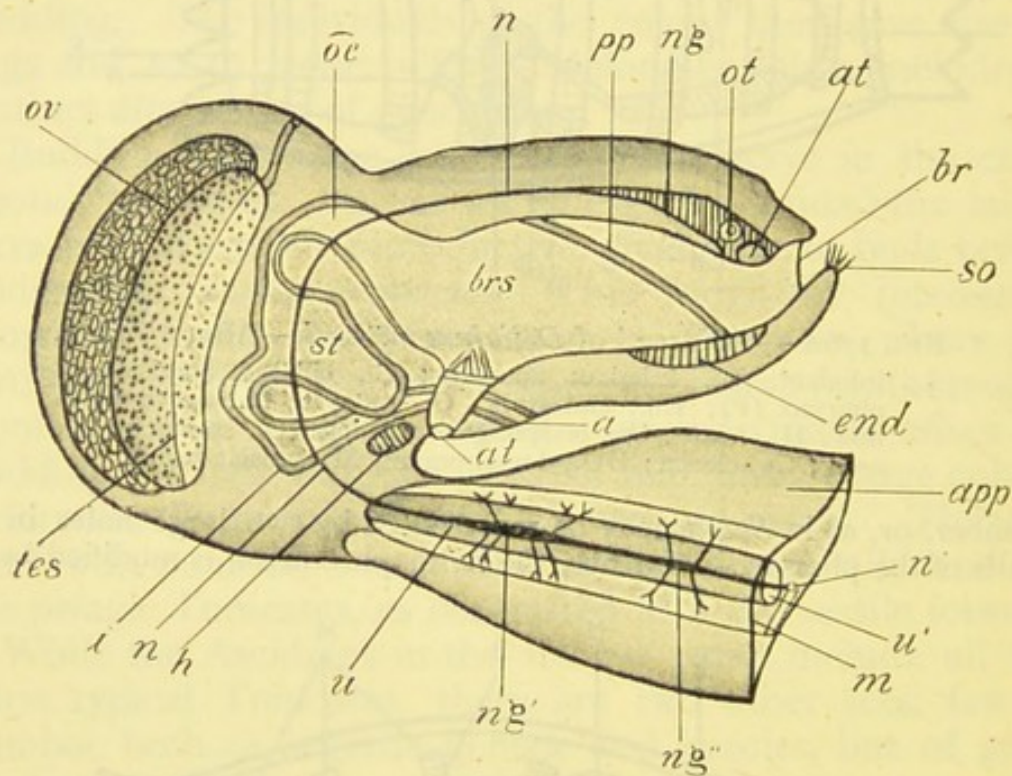


FIG. 176C.—Anatomy of *Appendicularia*.—After Herdman.

*s.o.*, Sense organ; *br.*, branchial aperture; *at.*, dorsal tubercle; *ot.*, otocyst; *n.g.*, nerve ganglion; *pp.*, peripharyngeal band; *n.*, nerve cord; *a.*, œsophagus; *st.*, stomach; *ov.*, ovary; *tes.*, testes; *i.*, intestine; *h.*, heart; *u.*, urochord, cut at *u'*; *n.g'*, *n.g''*, nerve ganglia of tail; *m.*, muscle band of tail; *app.*, tail cut through; *a.*, anus; *at.*, one of the atrial apertures.

and one median. All these buds develop into individuals belonging to the sexual generation, but a few only become truly sexual. The two lateral series develop into nutritive forms, which supply the nurse with food. The nurse itself loses its alimentary and respiratory organs, and becomes a mere organ of locomotion. The median buds develop into "foster mothers," which ultimately go free, bearing with them other buds destined to develop into the solitary sexual forms. In these, first ova and then spermatozoa are produced, which start the life-cycle afresh. It is thus obvious that there is considerable division of labour in the sexual form, accompanied by polymorphism; the whole process presents some curious analogies to the conditions seen in the Cœlentera.



In *Salpa* the single egg is fertilised within the body of the mother, and becomes attached to the wall of the peribranchial chamber. Here the developing egg is nourished by means of a "placenta," and the development is in consequence much abbreviated, the tailed larva not being represented. This embryo gives rise to a solitary "nurse" form, which by budding produces a chain of embryos. This chain is set free, its members become sexual, and, either while still united or after separation, give rise to the eggs which develop into the nurse form.

The remaining order of Tunicates includes minute simplified forms like *Appendicularia*, also pelagic in habitat, but without any power of budding, and never forming colonies. These forms have a distinct tail, which is bent at an angle to the body, and is the main organ of locomotion. The mouth is at the anterior end; the anus, which is distinct from the atrial openings, is at the root of the tail. These atrial openings lie slightly behind the anus, and are merely small ectodermic invaginations communicating with the two gill-slits of the pharynx. They correspond to the similar invaginations in the Ascidian larva. The test may form a large investing "house," but it does not contain cells, and is periodically cast and renewed. The important points as regards internal structure are the presence of the notochord throughout life, and the structure of the nervous system. The latter consists of a lobed ganglionic mass above the mouth, and a dorsal nerve-cord extending backward from this into the tail, where it is furnished with other ganglia. In connection with the cerebral ganglion there is a pigment spot, an otocyst (auditory?), and a tubular process communicating with the pharynx, and corresponding to the sub-neural gland and the ciliated duct of other Tunicates. We have already noted the simple structure of the pharynx, which has but two gill-slits communicating directly with the exterior. The same simplicity of structure is observable in the heart, which is without any associated vessels. The hermaphrodite reproductive organs lie posteriorly, and open to the exterior by a very fine duct on the dorsal surface. As contrasted with *Salpa* and *Doliolum*, the animals are protandrous, and not protogynous. The development is unknown.

### Classification.—

#### Order 1. LARVACEA or PERENNICHORDATA.

Free-swimming, pelagic, and solitary forms provided with a large tail containing a notochord. The pharynx opens to the exterior by two ciliated slits, and there is no peribranchial chamber. The nervous system extends into the tail region. *Appendicularia*, *Oikopleura*, *Fritillaria*, *Kowalevskia*.

#### Order 2. ASCIDIACEA.

Includes forms which may be fixed or free, simple or colonial, but which in the adult have no tail and no trace of notochord. There is a large branchial sac opening by many slits into the peribranchial chamber, which communicates with the exterior by a single opening. Many have the power of budding, and there is frequently alternation of generations.



- (a) *Ascidiae Simples*. Solitary fixed forms which rarely bud; when colonial, each individual has a separate test. *Ascidia*, *Phallusia*, *Ciona*.
- (b) *Ascidiae Compositae*. Fixed Ascidiæ which reproduce by gemmation, the individuals being embedded in a common investing mass. *Botryllus*, *Polyclinum*.
- (c) *Pyrosomidae*. Free-swimming Ascidiæ which reproduce by gemmation to form a colony, having the shape of a hollow cylinder, open at one end. *Pyrosoma*.

### Order 3. THALIACEA.

Free-swimming pelagic forms, which may be either simple or compound, and in the adult are never provided with tail or notochord. The muscles are in the form of distinct bands. The life history exhibits distinct alternation of generations, but true colonies are not formed.

- (a) *Cyclomyaria*. Muscle bands form complete rings. *Doliolum*, *Anchinia*.
- (b) *Hemimyaria*. Muscle bands are in the form of incomplete rings. *Salpa*, *Octacnemus*.

The questions as to the origin of the Tunicates and the relations of the orders are too difficult to be discussed here, but we may note that there are two possible views as to the position of *Appendicularia* and its allies. They may be regarded as the slightly modified descendants of the primitive Tunicates, from which the Ascidiæ have diverged in the direction of degeneration, or as prematurely sexual larvæ derived from an already degraded Ascidian-like form. Both views have had supporters, and the one adopted materially affects the general method of regarding the group. The question as to which is correct is not likely to be decided until the embryological data are more complete.

The relations of the Tunicates to *Amphioxus* will be discussed in the next chapter.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### CEPHALOCHORDA.

(*Synonyms*—ACRANIA, LEPTOCARDII, PHARYNGOBRANCHII.)

THIS small class includes *Amphioxus* (*Epigonichthys*) and *Asymmetron*, popularly known as lancelets. The type represents an offshoot from the primitive Vertebrate stock, lost, it is to be feared, for ever; but while some authorities regard it as a pioneer-type and as a far-off prophecy of a fish, others hold it to be degenerate—a “weed in the Vertebrate garden.” It is possible that both views are right, and that the lancelet is a somewhat degenerate pioneer.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS OF CEPHALOCHORDA.

*The nervous system has no well-defined brain region. The notochord is persistent and unsegmented; it is surrounded by a continuous sheath, and projects in a unique manner in front of the anterior end of the nerve-cord. In the adult the gill-slits are very numerous. From Fishes, the lancelets are widely removed by the absence of limbs, skull, jaws, differentiated brain, sympathetic nervous system, eye, ear, definite heart, spleen, and genital ducts. The species have a wide distribution, like many old-fashioned animals. They occur near the coasts in warm and temperate seas, are sluggish in habit, and feed on microscopic organisms or organic particles.*

*Amphioxus lanceolatus*, the best-known species.

**Mode of life.**—The lancelets are fond of lying in the sand in water about two fathoms deep, with only the fringed aperture of the mouth projecting. They feed on diatoms



and other small organisms, which are sucked into the mouth. At times, especially in the evening, the adults start up and swim about, but they are never so active as the larvæ. The early embryo is pelagic. It is of interest to note that along with lancelets, specimens of the Annelid *Ophelia* are often obtained; they closely resemble lancelets, not only in shape and size, but also in the way they burrow and swim.

**Form.**—The body, between  $1\frac{1}{2}$  and 2 in. in length, is pointed at both ends, as the names suggest. The living animal is translucent, with a faint flesh colour, and is much plumper than a spirit specimen. The muscles are arranged in sixty-two segments or myotomes. There are three unpaired apertures—(a) the median, ventral, pre-oral hood over-arching the true mouth, and fringed with tentacle-like

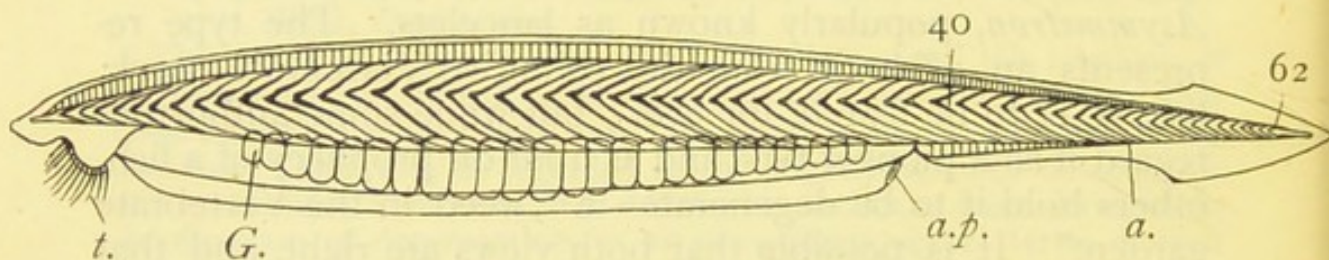


FIG. 177.—Lateral view of *Amphioxus*.—After Ray Lankester.

The notochord runs from tip to tip.

t., Tentacular cirri; G., reproductive organs; a.p., atriopore;  
a., position of anus; 40 and 62, indicate number of myotomes.

cirri; (b) the atriopore in myotome thirty-six, giving exit to the water which enters by the mouth; (c) the anus, ventral and slightly to the left, behind the atriopore, but some distance from the posterior end of the body. Along the back there is a median fin, which is continued around the tail, and along the ventral surface as far as the atriopore. In front of this region the ventral surface is flattened, and fringed on either side by a slight fin-like "metapleural" fold. These folds are continuations downwards of the walls of the atrial or branchial chamber, which extends from behind the mouth to the atriopore, and into which the gill-slits of the pharynx open in the adult.

**Skin.**—The epidermis consists of a single layer of cylindrical cells. Some of them project slightly from the surface, and are connected at the base with nerve fibres. These are sensory cells, and may be compared to the cells of the



lateral line in fishes and tadpoles. Here, however, they are scattered over the surface of the body, though especially abundant on the buccal cirri. The epidermis lies upon a thin layer of clear cutis.

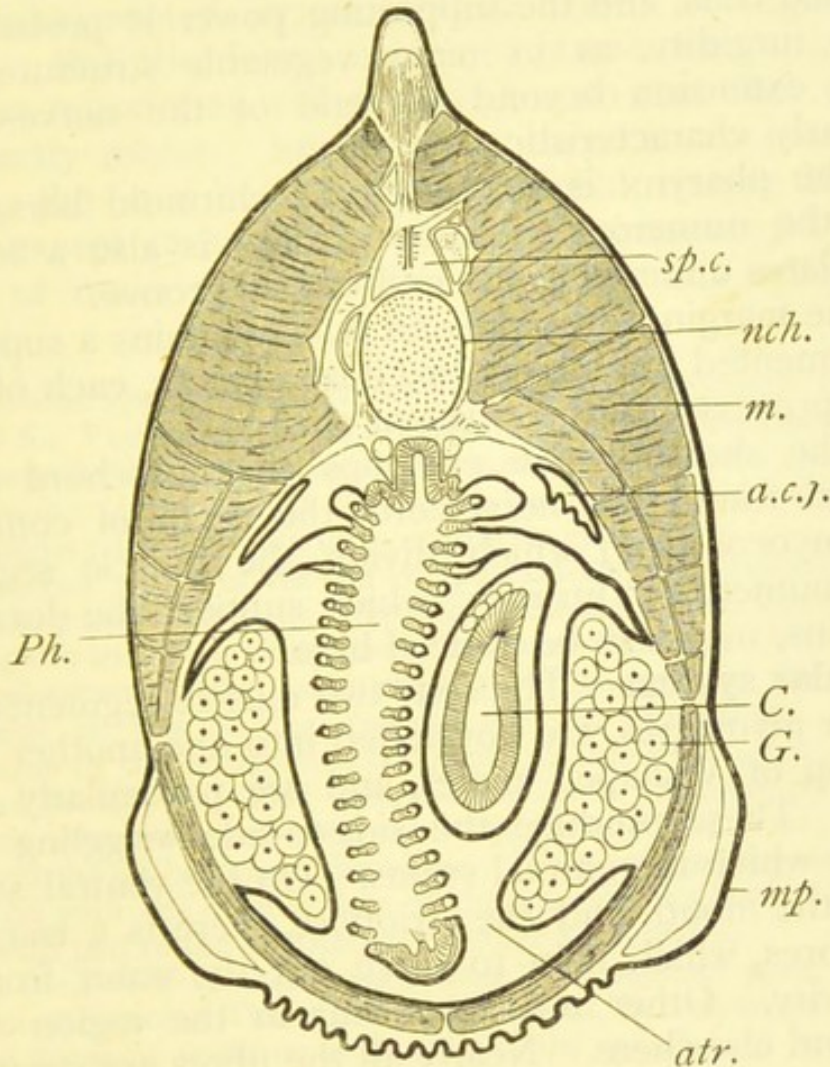


FIG. 178.—Transverse section through pharyngeal region of *Amphioxus*.—After Ray Lankester.

*sp.c.*, Spinal cord; *nch.*, notochord, beneath which lie the two dorsal aortæ; *m.*, myotome; *a.c.f.*, atrio-cœlomic funnel, opening into sub-chordal cœlom; *C.*, cæcum; *G.*, a genital sac with ova; *mp.*, metapleural fold; *atr.*, atrial cavity; *Ph.*, pharynx, with dorsal and ventral grooves, and bars between gill-slits. Note in the primary bars and in the ventral groove the small cœlomic spaces. The ectoderm is dark throughout.

Beneath this there is a layer of fine tubes, which unite in a longitudinal canal running along each metapleural fold. These metapleural canals are said by some to arise in development by a splitting of an originally solid mass (schizocœlic); but it seems more probable that they are morphologically portions of the true cœlom—ventro-lateral extensions of the "collar-cœlom" (enterocœlic).



**Skeleton.**—This is slightly developed, for there is not only no bone, but the material is not even definitely cartilaginous.

(a) The notochord runs from tip to tip. It consists of vacuolated cells, and the supporting power is probably due to their turgidity, as in many vegetable structures. Its anterior extension beyond the end of the nerve-cord is particularly characteristic.

(b) The pharynx is supported by chitinous bars, which border the numerous gill-slits. There is also a series of paired plates underlying the mid-ventral groove.

(c) The margin of the pre-oral hood contains a supporting ring, segmented into about two dozen pieces, each of which sends a process into the adjacent cirrus.

(d) The sheath which envelops the notochord and is continued round the nerve-cord, the septa of connective tissue (myocommas) which divide the muscle segments, and the numerous "fin rays" which support the dorsal and ventral fins, may also be noticed here.

**Muscular system.**—The sixty-two muscle segments, myotomes, or myomeres, are dovetailed into one another like a succession of V-shaped plates, and are particularly strong dorsally. These produce the side-to-side wriggling movements by which the animal swims. On the ventral surface, between the mouth and the atriopore, there is a transverse set of fibres, which help to drive out the water from the atrial cavity. Other muscles occur in the region of the mouth, and elsewhere. Nearly all the fibres are striated.

**Nervous system.**—The dorsal nerve-cord is shorter than the notochord, and has no definite brain. In the anterior region, however, there is some differentiation in minute structure, and the central canal widens out to form the so-called cerebral vesicle, which in the larva communicates with the anterior by a pore (the neuropore). From the nerve-cord there arise two sets of nerves, dorsal and ventral. Of these the two anterior pairs of dorsal nerves are called cranial, and do not correspond to the myotomes. Behind these a pair of dorsal nerves arise at each myotome, but, as is the case with most of the other segmentally arranged parts of the lancelet, the members of a pair are not directly opposite to one another. The ventral nerves are absent in



the region of the two first pairs of dorsals, and behind this they divide up into many minute fibres just as they leave the nerve-cord. The two sets of nerves are compared respectively to the single-rooted sensory dorsal nerves, and to the many-rooted motor ventral nerves of higher Vertebrates. But the dorsal nerves of *Amphioxus* supply the transverse muscles as well as the skin, so that they are probably partly motor. Furthermore, there is no connection between the two sets, and the dorsal nerves have no ganglia, except in so far as these are represented by aggregations of nerve nuclei. Nor are there any sympathetic ganglia.

The nervous system of the lancelet is thus very divergent from what is typical for Vertebrates:—(1) A brain is almost undeveloped; (2) the ventral roots far outnumber the dorsal roots; (3) the two sets of roots do not unite; (4) the dorsal nerves are partly motor; (5) there are no spinal ganglia; (6) there are no sympathetic ganglia.

The anterior region of the nerve-cord exhibits some histological distinctiveness; and with it the following structures are associated:—

(a) Slightly to the left side there is a ciliated pit, often called olfactory. The development of this is interesting. The cavity of the medullary tube opens at first to the exterior by the neuropore. Later, an invagination of the ectoderm takes place at this point, and carries the neuropore in with it. This invagination forms the olfactory pit; it at first opens into the neural tube by the persistent neuropore; later this closes, and the pit becomes a blind sac. This invagination may perhaps correspond with the ciliated duct of the sub-neural gland of Tunicates, and so with part of the hypophysis of other Vertebrates.

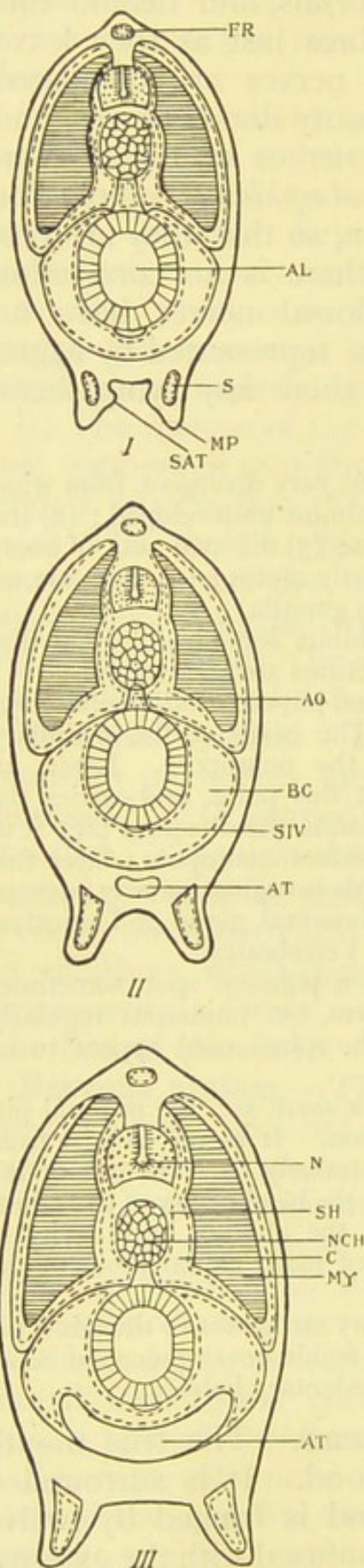
(b) At the end of the nerve-cord there is a pigment spot, sometimes called an eye spot. There are no true eyes, but numerous regularly arranged pigment spots on each side of the spinal cord appear to be optic.

(c) On the roof of the mouth there opens a small sac, the pre-oral pit, which may have a tasting or smelling function. It seems to arise from the left of two pouches which grow out anteriorly from the gut of the embryo. The right of these pouches forms the head cavity of the adult, so that ontogenetically the pre-oral pit is the aborted head cavity of the left side. This is, however, only one of many explanations of the organ.

It is likely that the most important sensory structures of the adult are the sensitive cells of the epidermis. The feeble development of sense organs may be associated with the almost sedentary habit.

**Alimentary and respiratory systems.**—The true mouth lies within the projecting pre-oral hood. It is surrounded by a membrane called the velum, and is fringed by twelve velar tentacles, which must not be confused with the external





cirri. In the larva the hood is absent, and the mouth is flush with the surface.

The mouth opens into the pharynx, which, like it, is richly ciliated. The pharynx, like that of Tunicates, and indeed of Fishes also, is modified for respiration (Fig. 178, *Ph.*). Its walls are perforated by numerous gill-slits on each side, and between these lie supporting bars alternately split and unsplit at their lower ends.

Along the mid-dorsal and mid-ventral lines there are grooves, respectively called hyper- and hypo-branchial. The latter is comparable to the endostyle of Ascidians, by which name it is often called. As in Ascidians, two ciliated bands—the peripharyngeal bands—encircle the anterior part of the pharynx.

The water current which enters

FIG. 179.—Development of atrial chamber in *Amphioxus*.—After Lankester and Willey.

In I. the metapleural folds are seen sending a slight projection inwards. In II. the two projections have united and enclose a small space (*AT.*), which is the rudiment of the atrial chamber. In III. this space is enlarging at the expense of the body cavity, which it pushes up before it. A comparison of this figure with the cross-section of the adult (Fig. 178) will show the relation of coelom and atrial chamber.

*FR.*, coelomic space within dorsal fin; *AL.*, gut; *S.*, coelomic space of metapleural fold; *MP.*, metapleural fold; *SAT.*, projection which forms floor of atrial chamber; *AO.*, aorta; *B.C.*, body cavity; *S.I.V.*, sub-intestinal vein; *N.*, nerve-cord; *SH.*, sheath of notochord; *MY.*, myotome; *C.*, remains of myocoel; *AT.*, atrial chamber. The dotted line indicates the mesodermic wall of the body cavity.



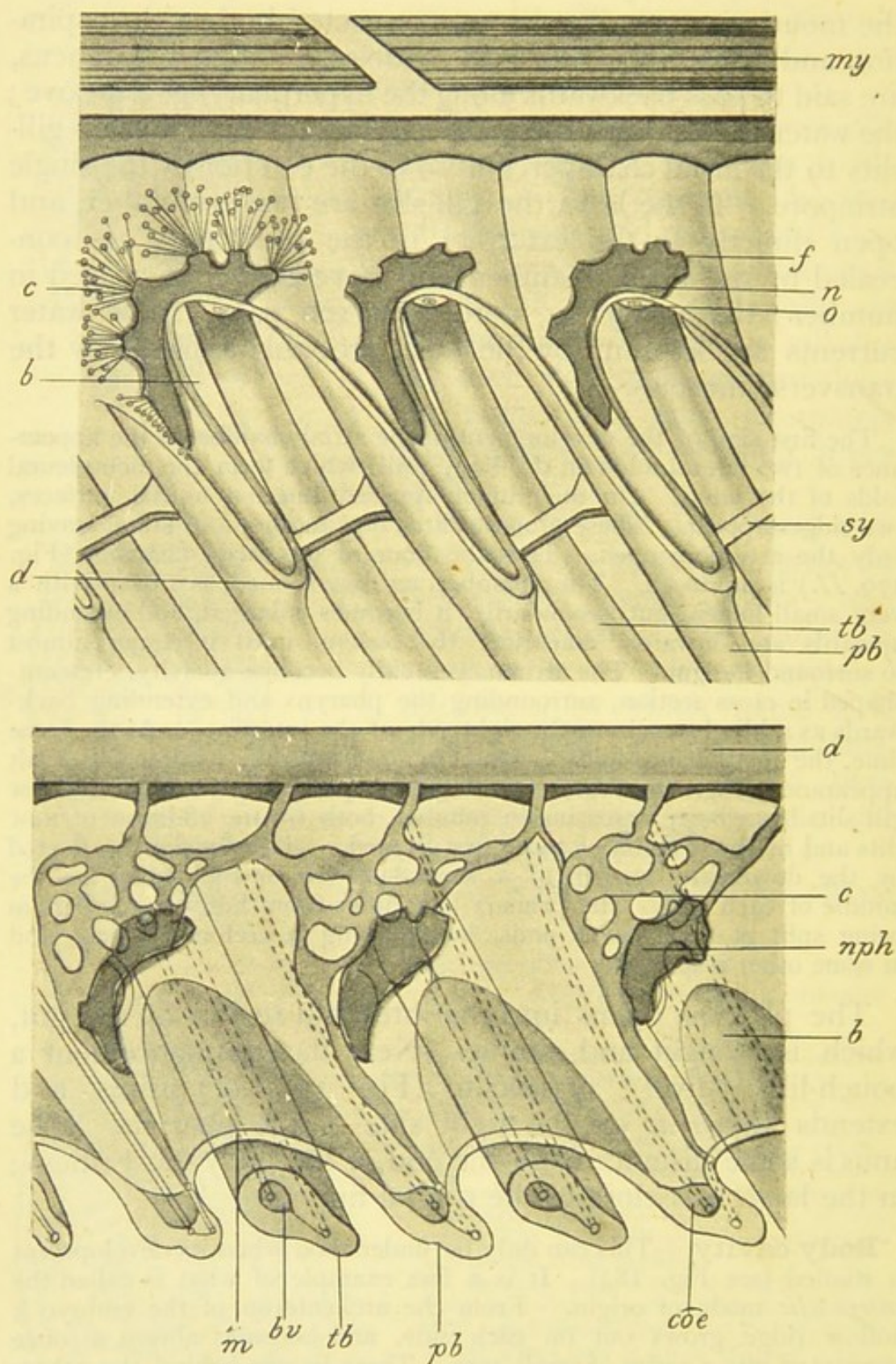
the mouth, is, as in Tunicates, connected both with respiration and nutrition. The food particles, entangled in mucus, are said to pass backwards along the hyperpharyngeal groove; the water passes down the pharynx, through its numerous gill-slits to the atrial chamber, and so to the exterior by the single atriopore. In the larva the gill-slits are few in number, and open directly to the exterior; in the adult they are concealed by the atrial chamber, and have greatly increased in number; there may be more than 100 pairs. The water currents are kept up by the cilia, probably assisted by the transverse muscles.

The first sign of the development of the atrial chamber is the appearance of two lateral folds on the body-wall, which form the metapleural folds of the adult. On their inner apposed, but not united, surfaces, two ridges appear. These grow towards one another and unite, leaving only the atriopore open. Thus the floor of the atrial chamber (Fig. 179, II.) is produced. The chamber, as first formed, is a tube with a very small lumen, but, secondarily, it becomes enlarged, and extending upwards and inwards, constricts the coelom, until it comes almost to surround the gut. The atrium eventually becomes a cavity, crescent-shaped in cross section, surrounding the pharynx and extending backwards as a blind pouch on the right side of the intestine. At the same time, the metapleural folds increase in size until they assume the adult appearance (Fig. 179, III.). During these processes the originally few gill-slits have been increasing in number, both by the addition of new slits and by the division of those first formed. The division is effected by the downward growth of a secondary bar or tongue-bar in the middle of each slit. The primary bars differ from these tongue-bars in being split at their lower ends, in enclosing a coelomic space, and in some other respects.

The pharynx opens into the intestinal region of the gut, which is straight and simple. Near its commencement a pouch-like "liver" or cæcum (Fig. 178, C.) arises, and extends *forwards* on the right side of the pharynx. The anus is some distance from the end of the body (cf. Fishes); in the larva it is close to the caudal fin.

**Body cavity.**—This can only be understood when its development is studied (see Fig. 183). It is a fine example of what is called the *enterocælic* mode of origin. From the archenteron of the embryo a hollow ridge grows out on each side, and becomes almost at once segmented into a series of small sacs. These lie one behind the other, and lose all connection with the gut. Each ultimately divides into two—a dorsal muscular portion, and a ventral thin-walled portion. The dorsal portions form the body musculature, and retain their segmentation. Their cavity, the myocœl, persists to some extent in the adult, forming





FIGS. 180 and 181.—The Nephridia of *Amphioxus*.—After Boveri.

Both figures are lateral views of the upper region of the pharynx, the body-wall being removed. In the upper figure the atrial chamber is laid completely open by the removal of its outer



the system of lymph spaces and canals which lie below the cutis. In the ventral portions the septa disappear, and the enclosed spaces, bounded by somatopleure and splanchnopleure, unite to form the "splanchnocoel" which surrounds the gut. In the adult this space is reduced anteriorly to small spaces and coelomic canals, by the development of the atrial chamber (see Figs. 178 and 179). This pushes the somatopleure up before it as it develops, and is thus enlarged at the expense of the true coelom. The coelomic spaces and canals contain coagulable fluid, and represent the lymphatic system of higher forms.

Besides the main trunk origin of the coelom, there is an anterior portion, which is separated off from the very front of the gut, and is divided into two cavities, of which the right becomes large and thin-walled, while the left becomes a small thin-walled sac, which has an opening to the exterior. This may correspond to the head coelom of *Balanoglossus*, and to the bilobed head cavity which lies beneath the eyes of fishes, and forms most of the eye muscles.

Thirdly, there is a pair of pouches, which form the first pair of muscle segments, and are continued out into the atrial folds. These may correspond to the collar coelom of *Balanoglossus* (MacBride).

**Circulatory system.**—The blood is colourless, with a few amœboid cells. There is no definite heart, but the branchial artery is rhythmically contractile.

This branchial artery lies in the portion of the body cavity which is enclosed by the endostyle, and is the anterior continuation of a large hepatic vein from the cæcum. From the branchial artery a series of smaller vessels arise, which pass up the primary gill-bars, and also supply the tongue-bars. These unite on the dorsal surface of the pharynx to form the right and left dorsal aortæ, which join at the hinder end of the pharynx to form a single vessel running backward over the intestine, and breaking up into capillaries on its wall. From the right dorsal aorta there arises a complex of vessels supplying the anterior region. From the capillaries of the intestine the blood is collected in a sub-intestinal vein, which again breaks up in the cæcum. The cycle is completed by the capillaries which form the hepatic vein.

**Excretory system.**—A number of structures have been credited with excretory functions.

---

wall, which is cut through along its line of insertion. The result is to show that the chamber is prolonged dorsally into a series of bays (*b.*), which lie on the surface of the tongue-bars (*t.b.*). Into these bays each of the nephridia (*n.*) opens by a pore (*o.*), while they also open internally by many funnels (*f.*), fringed by very large cilia (*c.*). The bays are separated by ridges (*d.*), formed by a downgrowth of the walls of the coelom over the primary bars (*p.b.*). *my.*, a myotome; *sy.*, one of the synaptacula connecting the pharyngeal bars.

The lower figure is a more superficial view, to show the blood vessels which form an anastomosing plexus (*c.*) over the walls of the nephridia (*nph.*). *d.*, Dorsal aorta; *cæ.*, coelomic space within primary bar; *b.v.*, blood vessel of secondary bar; *m.*, cut edge of the wall of the atrial chamber; other letters as before.



(a) On the floor of the atrial chamber clusters of cells occur which form the so-called renal papillæ. These have been experimentally shown to possess the power of taking up foreign substances introduced into the body.

(b) Professor E. Ray Lankester discovered a pair of short pigmented funnels in the region of the twenty-seventh myotome, which open into the atrial cavity, and perhaps communicate with the dorsal coelomic space. They hardly seem to be nephridia, and their relations are doubtful.

(c) More recently Boveri has described an elaborate system of about ninety pairs of *nephridia* lying in the dorso-lateral wall of the pharynx. They are short tubules, with a single opening into the atrial cavity, and also opening into the body cavity by a variable number of funnels, most numerous in the nephridia lying in the middle of the pharynx. The vessels of the primary gill-bars and of the tongue-bars form an anastomosing vascular plexus, called a glomerulus, over the tubules. In number the tubules correspond to the primary gill-clefts, and are therefore in origin segmental structures. They are regarded by their discoverer as equivalent to the pronephric tubules of Vertebrates. Their development is unknown.

(d) Hatschek discovered in the anterior region of the larva a nephridial tube which is absent in the full-grown adult. Its significance is very doubtful, but it perhaps represents the connection between the left of the pair of collar pouches and the gut.

**Reproductive system.**—The sexes are separate and similar. The organs are very simple, and without ducts. They form twenty-six pairs of horseshoe-shaped sacs, lying along the inner wall of the atrial cavity in segments ten to thirty-five on each side (Fig. 177, *G.*). Each lies in a "genital chamber" formed in development by constriction from the cavity of the lower part of the primitive segment.

In the mature female the ovaries are large and conspicuous; the ova burst into the atrial cavity, whence they pass out by the atriopore.

The testes are like the ovaries; the spermatozoa burst into the atrial cavity, and pass out by the atriopore. The eggs are fertilised in the surrounding water.

**Development.**—The fertilised ovum is about  $\frac{1}{250}$  in. in diameter. The segmentation is complete and almost equal (Fig. 182). The first cleavage is vertical, and divides the ovum into two equal parts; the second is also vertical, along a meridional plane at right angles to the first, and the result is four equal cells. The third cleavage is equatorial, and gives rise to four larger cells (or macromeres) below or towards the vegetative pole, and to four smaller cells (or



micromeres) above or towards the animal pole. The blastosphere, which is the final result of segmentation, invaginates to form a gastrula.

Along the mid-dorsal line of the gastrula the ectoderm cells sink in slightly so as to form a groove. This is the medullary groove, which here follows an unusual course of development. Instead of immediately closing to form a canal, the groove sinks inwards, and the lateral ectoderm grows over it before closing takes place. Later, the groove

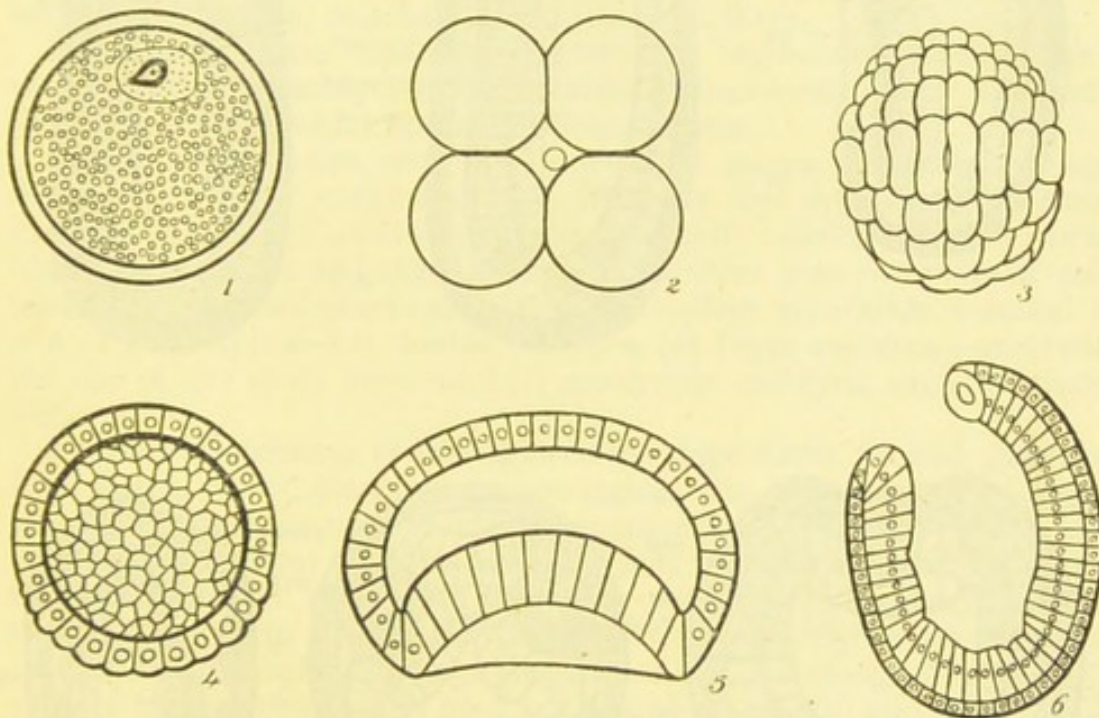


FIG. 182.—Early stages in the development of *Amphioxus*.  
—After Hatschek.

1. Ovum with germinal vesicle; 2. four-cell stage; 3. external appearance of blastula; 4. blastula in section; 5. beginning of gastrula stage; 6. section of completed gastrula.

forms the medullary tube, which opens into the gut by the neurenteric canal, and to the exterior by the anterior neuropore (Fig. 183).

The cavity of the gastrula—the archenteron—becomes the gut of the adult, and gives rise to the coelomic pouches (see p. 417).

The notochord arises along the mid-dorsal line of the archenteron; its forward extension is secondary.

During the early part of larval life the ectoderm cells, including those forming the medullary canal, are ciliated.



At this stage the larva is much more active than the adult.

The later larvæ are more sedentary, lying much on the right side, and they are strongly asymmetrical. The mouth

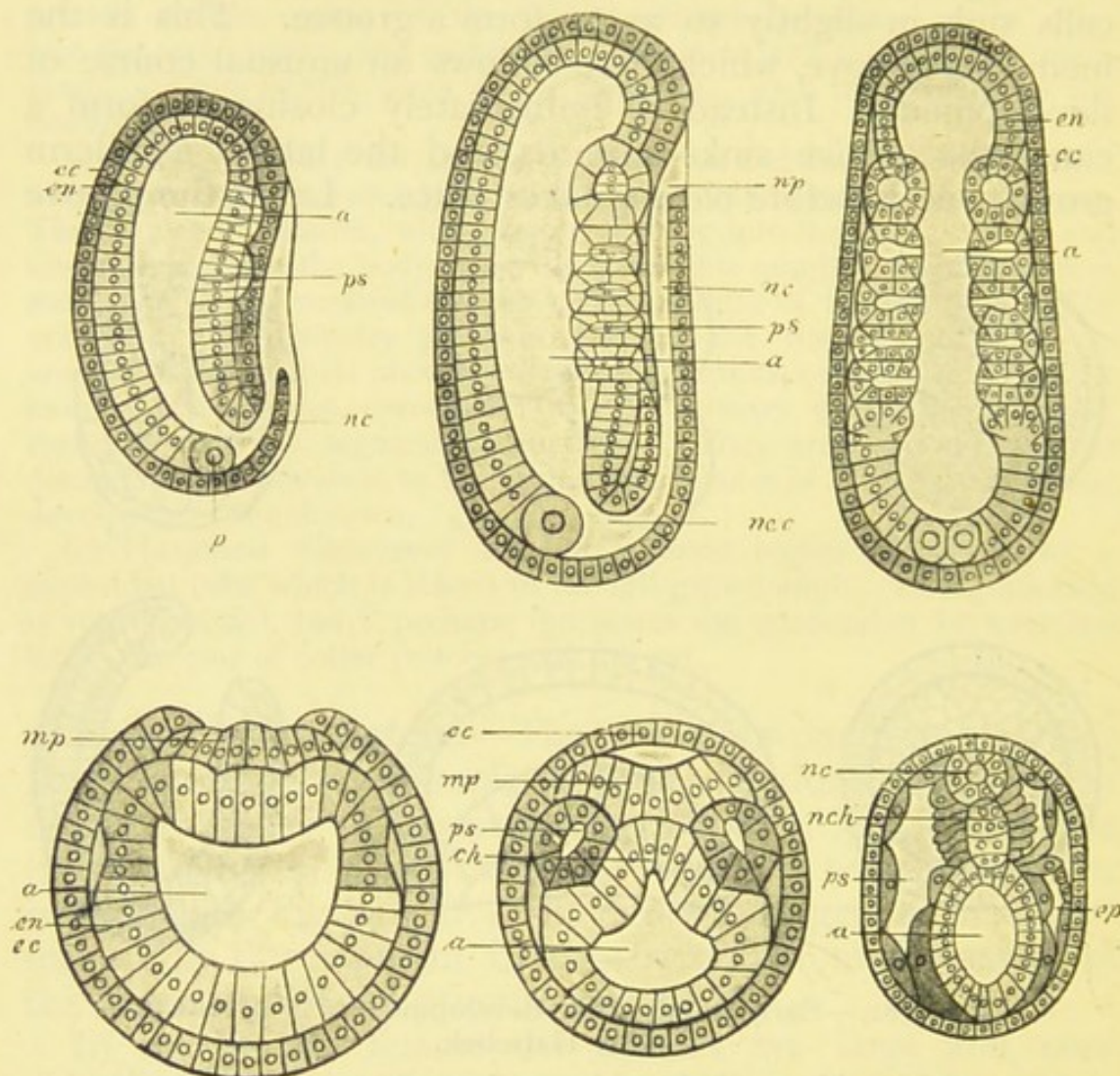


FIG. 183.—Sections through embryos of *Amphioxus*, to illustrate development of body cavity.

On the upper line, three longitudinal sections; on the lower line, three transverse sections. *ec.*, Ectoderm; *en.*, endoderm; *a.*, archenteron; *p.s.*, primitive segments (protovertebræ); *n.c.*, nerve-cord; *p.*, posterior end; *np.*, neuropore; *nec.*, neurenteric canal; *m.p.*, medullary or neural plate; *ch.*, notochord; *ep.*, splanchnocœl, above it is the myocœl.

is placed at the left side; the gill-slits of one side appear considerably before those of the other; the primitive segments of one side are not opposite those of the other, and so on. By the process known as the "symmetrisation" of the larva, the apparent symmetry of the adult is produced.



The adult position of the anus and of the olfactory pit, both to the left side, and the position of the unpaired liver diverticulum, show how partial this process is.

*Experimental embryology.*—As an illustration of experimental embryology, and of the developmental potentiality of the early segmentation cells, reference may be made to the experiments of Prof. E. B. Wilson.

By shaking the water in which the two-celled stages floated, Prof. Wilson separated the two cells, and the result was two quite separate and independent twins of half the normal size. Each of the isolated cells segments *like a normal ovum*, and gives origin, through blastula and gastrula stages, to a half-sized metameric larva.

If the shaking has separated the two first segmentation cells incompletely, double embryos—like Siamese twins—result, and also form short-lived (twenty-four hours) segmented larvæ.

Similar experiments with the four-celled stages succeeded, though development never continued long after the first appearance of metamerism. Complete isolation of the four cells resulted in four dwarf blastulæ, gastrulæ, and even larvæ. Separation into two pairs of cells resulted in two half-sized embryos. Incomplete separation resulted in one of three types—(a) double embryos, (b) triple embryos—one twice the size of the other two—and (c) quadruple embryos, each a quarter size.

Isolated blastomeres of the eight-celled stage never formed gastrulæ. Flat plates, curved plates, even one-eighth size blastulæ were formed, but none seemed capable of full development.

Thus a unit from the four-cell stage may form an embryo, but a unit from the eight-cell stage does not. For various reasons it seems likely that this is due to qualitative limitations, not merely to the fact that the units of the eight-cell stage are smaller. For although the separated cells of the eight-cell stage have considerable vitality, and swim about actively, the difference between macromeres and micromeres has by this time been established; in fact, the cells have begun to be specialised, and have no longer the primitive indifference, the absence of differentiation, which explains the developmental potentiality of the separated units of the two-celled or four-celled stages.

Somewhat similar experiments have been made by other investigators on the developing ova of Ascidians, sea-urchins, etc. Specialisation of segmentation cells appears to occur at different times in different animals, but it is illogical to infer the absence of specialisation from the fact that any of the first four blastomeres, let us say, can produce an entire embryo. For specialised cells may retain a power of regeneration.

## RELATIONS OF AMPHIOXUS AND TUNICATES.

The above account of *Amphioxus* will in its details recall to the student the description of Tunicates. It is indeed remarkable that the resemblance should be so much stronger in minor anatomical points than in broad outline,



but this is in part explained by the very marked degeneration displayed by the adult Ascidians.

The following important resemblances should be noticed :—In both cases the walls of the pharynx are perforated by numerous slits, which open, not directly to the exterior, but into an atrial or peribranchial chamber, formed from the ectoderm, and with a single external aperture. In both, the pharynx has a distinct ventral glandular endostyle, and a dorsal fold (Tunicates) or groove (*Amphioxus*), connected anteriorly to the endostyle by means of a ciliated band; the process of food-taking seems also to be similar. Again, the olfactory pit of *Amphioxus* is apparently homologous with the sub-neural gland of the Ascidians, and although there is little in common between the nervous system of the adult *Ascidia* and of *Amphioxus*, yet the nerve-cord of the larval Ascidian, in its origin, structure, and relations, shows a close resemblance to that of *Amphioxus*. Similarly, the larval notochord, although never attaining the development which it does in *Amphioxus*, is an essentially similar structure.

On the other hand, the Ascidians differ from the lancelets in many ways, *e.g.* the sessile habit, the presence of the test, of a heart, and of genital ducts; the absence of segmentation, of nephridia, and any trace of coelom in the adult; the U-shaped alimentary canal, the power of budding, so common in sedentary animals, and the hermaphroditism.

The detailed study of development yields similar series of facts—marked resemblances coupled with marked differences; among the latter, the absence in Ascidians of the segmented coelomic pouches of lancelets is especially noteworthy. In spite of these differences, most morphologists are agreed that the resemblances are due to true homology, and that lancelet and Tunicates are descended from a common ancestor, which was at least nearly related to the forms from which the true Vertebrates sprang. It is noteworthy, however, that the inclusion of *Amphioxus* and Tunicates among the Chordata does not bridge over the gap between Vertebrates and Invertebrates, for the relation of Tunicates to the latter remains obscure. It is possible that *Balanoglossus* and the related forms may help to bridge the gulf, but as yet there is much uncertainty.



## CHAPTER XX.

### STRUCTURE AND DEVELOPMENT OF VERTEBRATA.

THE distinction between higher and lower animals, between the backboned and the backboneless, was to some extent recognised by Aristotle over two thousand years ago, and was probably always more or less evident to any who cared to look with precision at the forms of animal life.

Yet it was not till about a century ago that the line of separation was drawn with firmness. This Lamarck did in 1797.

But the doctrine of descent—the idea of organic evolution—with which Darwin impressed the thoughtful in 1859, suggested inquiry into the apparently abrupt apartness of the group of Vertebrates.

The inquiry bore fruit in 1866, when the Russian naturalist, Kowalevsky, worked out the development of the Vertebrate characteristics of *Amphioxus*, correlated this with the development of Ascidians, and discovered the pharyngeal gill-slits of *Balanoglossus*. Thus the apparent apartness of the Vertebrata was annulled.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Vertebrates are cœlomate Metazoa, with a segmental arrangement of parts. The central nervous system lies in the dorsal median line, and is tubular in its origin. A skeletal rod or notochord, formed as an outgrowth along the dorsal median line of the primitive gut, is always present in the embryo at least, but tends to be replaced by a mesodermic axial segmented skeleton—the backbone. Pharyngeal gill-slits, which may or may not persist in adult life, are always developed, but above Amphibians they are restricted to embryonic life, are not directly functional, and have no associated gill-lamellæ. The heart is ventral. The eye begins its development as an outgrowth from the brain.*

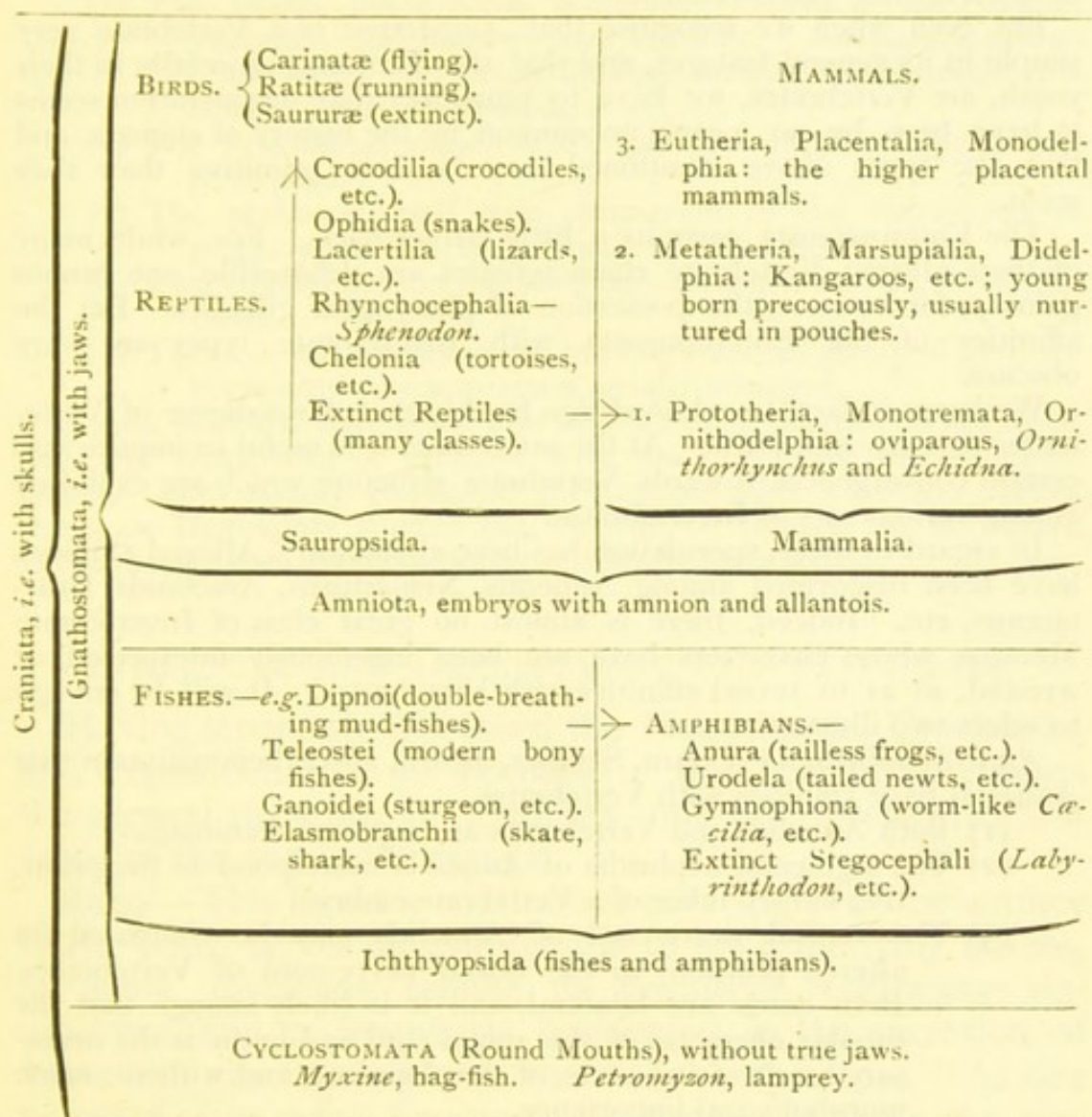


## GRADUAL APPEARANCE OF VERTEBRATE CHARACTERISTICS.

	BALANOGLOSSUS.	TUNICATA.	AMPHIOXUS.	CRANIATA.
Dorsal nervous system.	Dorsal and ventral nerve-cords.	In most types dorsal nervous system degenerates to a single ganglion.	Very slight hint of differentiation between brain and spinal cord.	Brain and spinal cord.
Dorsal axis.	A slight anterior supporting rod.	A supporting rod in the tail, transitory in most types.	A notochord from tip to tip.	Except in Cyclostomata and some fishes, the notochord is for the most part replaced by the backbone.
Gill-clefts.	Numerous.	A primary pair, replaced in most types by numerous secondary slits.	Numerous.	Not more than eight gill-clefts, which in forms above Amphibians do not have associated gills.
Ventral heart.	The simple heart is dorsal and above the supporting rod.	Simple ventral heart of doubtful homology.	No definite heart.	Ventral heart.
Brain eye.	None.	In most cases transitory.	None.	Brain eye.
Segmentation.	Three primitive segments.	Very indistinct.	Well marked in musculature.	Well marked, especially in embryos.



## General Classification.



CEPHALOCHORDA. — <i>Amphioxus</i> or Lancelet.	UROCHORDA or TUNICATA. { <i>Salpa</i> type. Ascidian type (sea-squirts). <i>Appendicularia</i> (larval type persistent).
--	--

Surviving offshoots of ancestral Vertebrates.

HEMICHORDA OR ENTEROPNEUSTA (offshoots of incipient Vertebrates?)

*Balanoglossus*, etc.; probably *Cephalodiscus*; possibly *Rhabdopleura*.

Nemertean affinities(?)      Chætopod affinities(?)      Arthropod affinities(?)

## Ancestry of Vertebrates.

It is not at present possible to trace the path along which Vertebrates have evolved, though our faith in the doctrine of evolution—as a modal



theory of origins—leads us to believe that Vertebrates arose from forms which were not Vertebrates.

But even when we recognise that *Amphioxus* is a Vertebrate very simple in its general features, and that the Tunicata, especially in their youth, are Vertebrates, we have to remember that degeneration seems to have been by no means uncommon in the history of animals, and that the types above mentioned may be less primitive than they seem.

The Enteropneusta carry us a little farther back. For, while many of their alleged Vertebrate characteristics are debateable, one cannot gainsay, for instance, the possession of pharyngeal gill-slits. But the affinities of the Enteropneusta with Invertebrate types are very obscure.

We have, in fact, to acknowledge frankly that the pedigree of Vertebrates remains unknown. At the same time, it is useful to inquire into certain convergences towards Vertebrate structure which are exhibited among various sets of Invertebrates.

In regard to these, speculation has been abundant. Alleged affinities have been discovered among Annelids, Nemerteans, Arachnids, Crustaceans, etc. Indeed, there is almost no great class of Invertebrate Metazoa whose characters have not been ingeniously interpreted, or wrested, so as to reveal affinities with Vertebrates. It will be enough to select two illustrations.

*Annelid affinities.*—Dohrn, Semper, Beard, and others maintain that Annelids have affinities with Vertebrates.

- (1) Both Annelids and Vertebrates are segmented animals.
- (2) The segmental nephridia of Annelids correspond to the primitive kidney-tubes of a Vertebrate embryo.
- (3) The ventral nerve-cord of Annelids may be compared (in altered position) to the dorsal nerve-cord of Vertebrates. Both cords are bilateral, and it is likely enough that the tubular character of the spinal cord and brain is the necessary result of its mode of development, and without much morphological importance.
- (4) Segmentally arranged ganglia about the appendages of some Chætopod worms may correspond to the branchial and lateral sense organs of Ichthyopsida, and the ganglia associated with some of the nerves from the brain.
- (5) The formation of the oral part of the pituitary body (see p. 440) is suggestive of the way in which the mouth of Annelids is sometimes formed. Perhaps the pituitary body represents an old lost mouth and its ancient innervation.

To minor points, such as the red blood, well-developed body cavity, and slight internal skeleton of some Chætopods, little importance can be attached.

The absence of anything like gill-slits in Annelids remains as a difficulty, even if we grant that no emphasis is to be laid on the tubular nerve-cord of Vertebrates, and admit the possibility of an inversion bringing the ventral nerve-cord to the dorsal surface.

*Nemertean affinities.*—Hubrecht and others have noted certain resemblances between Nemerteans and Vertebrates.



In Nemerteans—

- (1) The lateral nerve-cords sometimes approach one another ventrally, and in rare cases dorsally. An approximation dorsalwards, and union on that surface, would result in a double dorsal nerve-cord.
- (2) The firm dorsal sheath of the proboscis may correspond to a notochord.
- (3) The proboscis itself may correspond to the hypophysis or pituitary process characteristic of Vertebrate brains.
- (4) Two ciliated slits on the head may correspond to a pair of gill-clefts.
- (5) There is no segmentation, but the branches given off from the nerve-cords are sometimes serially arranged.

It must be noted that those who support these theories do not assert that any Nemertean or Annelid is in the direct line of Vertebrate ascent. They simply emphasise the demonstrable affinities. When these are thoroughly worked out, it will be possible to say which Invertebrate types are most nearly related to Vertebrates.

## STRUCTURE AND DEVELOPMENT OF VERTEBRATES.

Having separately discussed the Hemichorda, Urochorda, and Cephalochorda, we propose in this chapter to discuss the general structure of Craniata and the development of some of the important organs.

**Skin.**—This forms a continuous covering over the surface of the body, serves as a protection to the underlying tissues, in some instances retains its primitive respiratory significance, and is frequently concerned in the excretion of waste and the regulation of the body temperature. As one or other of its many functions predominates, there are corresponding structural modifications. One function which we find oftenest emphasised at the expense of the others, is that of protection, and yet the extinct *Glyptodon*, the sluggish *Chelonia*, the decadent Ganoids, seem to indicate that this, in itself, or in its correlated variations, is not conducive to the continuance of the species.

The skin includes—

- (a) The epidermis, usually in several layers, the outer “horny” stratum corneum, the inner “mucous” stratum Malpighii, or mucosum; both derived from the ectoderm or epiblast of the embryo.
- (b) The dermis, cutis, corium, or under-skin, derived from the mesoderm or mesoblast of the embryo.

From the epidermis are derived feathers, hairs, and some kinds of scales. The dermis, as is natural when we consider its origin from the



mesoblast (mesenchyme) or vascular layer, assists in nourishing these epidermic structures. In the case of feathers and the scales of Reptiles, this dermic papilla is of primary importance, but in the case of hairs it arises late and is always small. From the dermis are derived the bony shields of armadillos, and a few related mammals, the bony scutes of crocodiles and some other reptiles, and the scales of most bony Teleostean fishes. This again is readily explained by the fact that the mesenchyme is also the skeletal layer of the embryo. The

ordinary teeth of Vertebrates, as well as the superficial or skin teeth of gristly fishes, are largely formed from the dermis, but are usually covered by a thin coating of ectodermic enamel. It should be noted, however, that Klaatsch has recently maintained the *ectodermic* origin of the skeleton-forming cells (scleroblasts), which form the scales of Elasmobranchs and Teleosteans, and that there are hints in higher forms that the ectoderm has more to do with the skeleton than is usually allowed. There is, indeed, a growing tendency among morphologists to strip the mesoderm of its importance. It may be noted also that Klaatsch ventures to suggest that the beginning of skeleton in the ectoderm may have something to do with excretion.

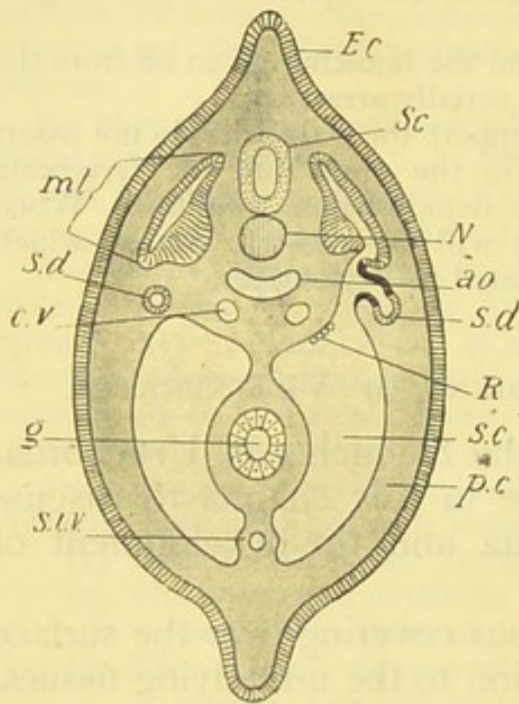


FIG. 184.—Transverse section through an Elasmobranch embryo (diagrammatic).—After Ziegler.

*Ec.*, Ectoderm; *S.c.*, spinal cord; *N.*, notochord; *ao.*, aorta; *s.d.*, segmental duct; *R.*, reproductive cells; *s.c.*, body cavity; *p.c.*, segmentation cavity filled up with connective tissue; *s.i.v.*, sub-intestinal vein; *g.*, gut; *c.v.*, cardinal vein; *mt.*, myotome.

**Muscular system.**—In all Vertebrates the muscles of the trunk arise from the primitive segments, or muscle plates, formed in the embryo at the sides of the nerve-cord. In *Amphioxus* and Fishes the primitive segmented condition of the muscles is retained, as is

seen in the myotomes visible externally in the former. Above Fishes little trace of the segmented condition persists in the adult, except in the tail region. The muscles of the head arise from the primitive segments of that region.

The muscles of the limbs arise in Elasmobranchs as buds from the primitive segments; buds from several contiguous segments grow into each fin. In most other Vertebrates the formation of the limb muscles is more complicated; they seem in some cases to arise independently of the primitive segments.

Most of the visceral muscles consist of unstriped fibres, but those of



the trunk, head, and limbs, as well as of the heart, show the usual striped structure.

**Skeletal system.**—Apart from the exoskeleton of skin-teeth, scutes, shields, etc., the skeleton consists of the following parts:—

- |                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| (a) Axial        | { | The skull and its associated "arches."                            |
| Skeleton.        |   | The backbone and associated ribs.                                 |
|                  | { | (The notochord is transitory except in the simplest Vertebrates.) |
| (b) Appendicular |   | Fore limbs, and pectoral girdle.                                  |
| Skeleton.        | { | Hind limbs, and pelvic girdle.                                    |

**Skull.**—The notochord grows forward anteriorly as far as that region of the brain known as the optic thalami. Around notochord and brain the mesenchyme forms a continuous sheath, which is the foundation of the skull.

As in the case of the notochordal sheath of the trunk region, so also here cartilage is formed in the primitive membranous cranium. The first cartilages to appear are the two parachordals, which lie on the lower surface of the head at the sides of the notochord, and the two trabeculæ lying in front. The parachordals grow round and above the notochord, producing the basilar plate, while the trabeculæ unite in front to form the ethmoid plate. The continuance of the process of cartilage formation, together with the addition of cartilaginous nasal capsules in front and auditory capsules behind, completes the formation of the primitive cartilaginous brain-box or chondrocranium of the lower Vertebrates.

Also connected with the head region, and of great importance, are the visceral or gill arches which loop around the pharynx on either side, and separate the primitive gill-clefts. At the time when cartilage begins to be formed in the membranous cranium, the arches also become chondrified, and at the same time divided into segments.

Of these arches there are never more than eight. The most anterior is the *mandibular* arch which bounds the mouth, the second the *hyoid*; these two are of great importance in the development of the skull. The others, in Fishes and at least young Amphibians, bound open gill-slits and support the pharynx; above Amphibians, they are less completely developed.



In the Elasmobranch fishes, the mandibular and hyoid arches do not form any direct part of the cartilaginous brain-case, but in the Teleosteans and thence onwards, the cartilages or bones arising in connection with the mandibular and upper part of the hyoid arches contribute directly to the formation of the skull. The hyoid proper, or lower part of the hyoid arch, forms the skeleton supporting the tongue. Cartilages arising in the lower part of the third visceral arch assist in the formation of the hyoid bones of the higher Vertebrates, and parts of the two other arches appear to help in forming the laryngeal skeleton of Mammals.

The mandibular arch in Elasmobranchs and frogs divides into a lower portion—Meckel's cartilage—which forms the lower jaw or its basis, while from the upper portion a bud grows forward, the palato-ptyergo-quadrate cartilage, which forms the upper jaw in shark and skate, and has a closer union with the skull in the frog. In higher Vertebrates the lower portion of the mandibular always forms the basis of the lower jaw, a quadrate element is segmented off from the upper part, but the palato-ptyergoid part seems to arise more independently. The hyoid arch also divides into a lower portion, the hyoid proper, and an upper portion, the hyo-mandibular, which may connect the jaws with the skull, or from Amphibians onwards may be more remarkably displaced and modified as a columella or stapes connected with the ear. We adhere to the old interpretation, according to which the mandibular and hyoid form two arches; but Dohrn believes that they are equivalent to four—palato-ptyergo-quadrate, Meckel's cartilage, hyo-mandibular, and hyoid, being in his opinion independent arches.

Returning now to the brain-box itself, we must notice another complication,—the development of "membrane" bones. If we examine the skull of the skate, we find that the brain lies within a cartilaginous capsule; but this is not entirely closed, spaces (the fontanelles) being left in the roof, which during life are covered only by the tough skin with its numerous "dermal denticles." In the sturgeon, again, the small skin-teeth are replaced by stout bony plates covering over the cartilaginous capsule. From such superficial bony plates it is supposed that the "membrane" bones, or ossifications in membrane, which form so important an element in the skull of the higher Vertebrate, have originated.

In some bony fishes, notably the salmon, we find the brain enclosed in a double capsule. Inside there is a cartilaginous brain-case in which what are called centres of ossification have appeared, and upon this a layer of membrane bones is placed, which can be readily removed without injury to the cartilage beneath. In general, however, we must recognise that, with the appearance of membrane bones, two changes tend to occur,—first, the cartilaginous cranium tends to be reduced and to exhibit considerable openings; second, in the remaining cartilage



centres of ossification appear, and we thus have "cartilage" bones formed. Further, in spite of the developmental differences, the membrane and cartilage bones become closely united to one another, or even fused, and there is thus formed "a firm, closed, bony receptacle of mixed origin," as exemplified by the skull of any of the higher Vertebrates.

We may thus say that in the evolution of the skull there is first a cartilaginous capsule, that this becomes invested to a greater or less extent by dermal ossifications, and that finally the dermal bones lose their superficial position, and, fusing with the ossified remainder of the cartilaginous cranium, form a complete bony capsule. In Cyclostomes and Elasmobranchs the brain-box is wholly cartilaginous; above Elasmobranchs the cartilage is more or less thoroughly replaced or covered by bones. In the individual development there is a parallel progress.

Although one is safe in saying that skeletal structures in Vertebrates are mostly mesodermic in origin, it should be noted—(1) that the notochord is endodermic, and (2) that in the head certain ectodermic proliferations may give rise to skeletal rudiments of a connective tissue nature which subsequently become differentiated into cartilage (Goronowitsch, Platt). But there is still doubt as to this last point.

**Theory of the skull.**—Near the beginning of this century, Oken and Goethe independently propounded what is known as the vertebral theory of the skull. Regarding the skull as an anterior portion of the vertebral column, composed of three or four vertebræ, they compared the bones of the different regions to the parts of a vertebra. Thus in the hindmost region of the skull, the basi-occipital, the two ex-occipitals, and the supra-occipital were held to correspond to the centrum, the neural arches, and the neural spine of a vertebral body.

This undoubtedly suggestive theory, modified in various details, persisted for a long period, but ultimately gave way before the advances in comparative anatomy and embryology. Huxley gave it its deathblow, and Gegenbaur replaced it by what may be called the segmental theory of the skull.

To realise this theory we must go back in development to the period before the mesoblast has ensheathed the notochord. At this time the segmentation of the body is expressed, not in the skeleton (notochord), but in the primitive segments. The segments, though less obvious than in the trunk, are represented in the head region. Formerly nine were enumerated, but it appears that in Elasmobranchs they are more numerous. Subsequently brain and spinal cord become alike enveloped in the mesoblastic sheath, which gives rise to the skeleton of both head and trunk.



ELEMENTS.	ORIGIN.	RESULTS.
I. Parachordals and trabeculæ, aided in some cases by the end of the notochord.	Their precise relations, <i>e.g.</i> to the notochord, are unknown.	Occipital region, with four bones—basi-occipital, two ex-occipitals, and a supra-occipital (in part). The basi-occipital is distinct only in Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals. Sphenoidal and ethmoidal region, with basi-sphenoid and pre-sphenoid (present only in Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals), paired alisphenoids and orbitosphenoids, the inter-orbital septum, the lateral or ectoethmoids, the inter-nasal septum.
II. Sense capsules. (a) Nasal. (b) Auditory.	From cartilage surrounding the ectodermic pits which form the foundation of nose and ear.	(a) Unite with ethmoidal region. (b) May give origin to five bones—pro-, sphen-, pter-, epi-, and opisth-otics, or to the single periotic of Mammals.
III. Arches. (a) Mandibular.         (b) Hyoid arch.	These arches, like those which follow them, are supports of the pharynx, lying between primitive or persistent gill-slits.	(a) Upper part = palato-pterygo-quadrate cartilage of Elasmobranchs, palatine, pterygoid, and quadrate bones in the higher Vertebrates, but in Mammals the quadrate is believed by many to become the incus of the middle ear. Lower part = Meckel's cartilage—the basis of the lower jaw in all animals; the part next the quadrate becomes the articular bone, which in Mammals is believed by many to become the malleus of the middle ear. (b) Upper part or hyo-mandibular = the "suspensorium" cartilage of Elasmobranchs, the hyo-mandibular and symplectic of Teleosteans, the columella auris of Amphibians, Reptiles, and Birds, the stapes of the Mammal's ear. Lower part = the hyoid proper (cartilage or bone).
IV. Investing membrane bones. (a) From the roof of the skull. (b) On the floor of the skull, <i>i.e.</i> from the roof of the mouth. (c) About the sides of the skull. (d) About the upper jaw. (e) About the lower jaw.	Originally of the nature of external bony plates, tooth structures, and the like.	(a) Parietals, frontals, nasals, etc. (b) Vomer, parasphenoid, etc.  (c) Lachrymal, squamosal, orbitals, etc.  (d) Premaxilla, maxilla, jugal, and quadrato-jugal (in part). (e) Dentary, splenial, angular, supra-angular, coronoid.



The great development of the muscle segments of the trunk region induces a secondary segmentation of the mesoblastic skeleton (vertebral column), while the slight development of the muscles of the head region exercises no such influence upon its skeleton; this is therefore always quite devoid of segmentation. The segmentation of the head, in contradistinction to the skull, is expressed, although indistinctly, by the muscle segments and by the nerves supplying these, perhaps also by the lateral sense organs, the ganglia, and the arches. While it is quite certain that it is the head that is segmented and not the skull, the details of the segmentation are still much debated.

**Vertebral column.**—A dorsal skeletal axis is characteristic of Vertebrata, and its usefulness is evident. It gives coherent strength to the body; it is usually associated very closely with a skull, with limb girdles, and with ribs; it affords stable insertion to muscles; its dorsal parts usually form a protective arch around the spinal cord.

To understand this skeletal axis, we must distinguish clearly between the notochord and the backbone.

The notochord is the first skeletal structure to appear in the embryo. It arises as an axial differentiation of endoderm along the dorsal wall of the embryonic gut or archenteron beneath the nerve-cord. The backbone, which in most Vertebrates replaces the notochord, has a mesoblastic origin; it develops as the substitute of the notochord, but not from it.

In *Balanoglossus*, what is sometimes dignified with the name of notochord, is restricted to the most anterior part of the body; in the Tunicata the notochord is confined to the tail, in *Amphioxus* it runs from tip to tip of the body, in Cyclostomata and Dipnoi it persists as an unsegmented gristly rod, in other Vertebrates it is more or less completely replaced by its better substitute—the backbone.

In Cyclostomata the notochord forms and is ensheathed by a *cuticula chordæ* (or *membrana limitans interna*); outside this there is a mesoblastic or skeletogenous sheath; and outside this again lies a *cuticula sceleti* (or *membrana limitans externa*). It is likely that this represents a primitive condition. What happens in most Vertebrates is that the skeletogenous or mesoblastic sheath forms the backbone, and more or less completely obliterates the notochord. The formation of cartilage takes place at regular intervals in the notochordal sheath, and the vertebral bodies thus formed alternate regularly with the primitive muscle segments. This arrangement is necessary for the proper attachment of the muscles to the future vertebræ, and makes it probable, as we noticed above, that the segmentation of the backbone is secondary, and was only acquired, as a mechanical necessity, when the notochordal sheath became chondrified, and so rigid. Thus we reach the conclusion that the primitive segmentation of the Vertebrates, alike in head and trunk, finds its expression in the arrangements of the



primitive segments and the nerves supplying these, and not in the skeleton, which is a later development.

In the higher Vertebrates, soon after the formation of the bodies of the vertebræ, the rudiments of the neural arches appear in the membrane surrounding the spinal cord. Finally, centres of ossification may occur, and so produce the segmented backbone.

In *Amphioxus*, in *Myxine*, and in young lampreys (known as *Ammocoetes*), the notochord persists, unsegmented and with a simple sheath. In the adult lamprey there are rudimentary arches of cartilage forming a trough in which the spinal cord lies. In the cartilaginous Ganoid fishes, in the *Chimæra* type, and in the Dipnoi, arches appear both above and below, but there are as yet no vertebral bodies. These begin in the Elasmobranchs, in which the notochord is constricted by its encroaching sheath. In the bony Ganoids the vertebræ are ossified, as they are in all the higher Vertebrates. Moreover, the notochord is more and more completely obliterated as the backbone grows.

In the oldest known vertebral column in Britain, that of *Cosmopolis mitchelli*, the vertebræ are annular, as in some other ancient fishes. The calcification in the notochordal sheath has simply formed a tube around the notochord,—a state which illustrates an interesting persistence of an embryonic phase.

It will be remembered (see p. 36) that, according to Kleinenberg, the notochord supplies the necessary growth-stimulus for the rise of its substitute, the backbone.

A vertebra generally consists of several more or less independent parts: the substantial centrum, the neural arches which form a tube for the spinal cord, and are crowned by a neural spine; the transverse processes which project laterally, and are, perhaps, homologous with the inferior hæmal processes in the posterior region of Fishes and some Amphibians.

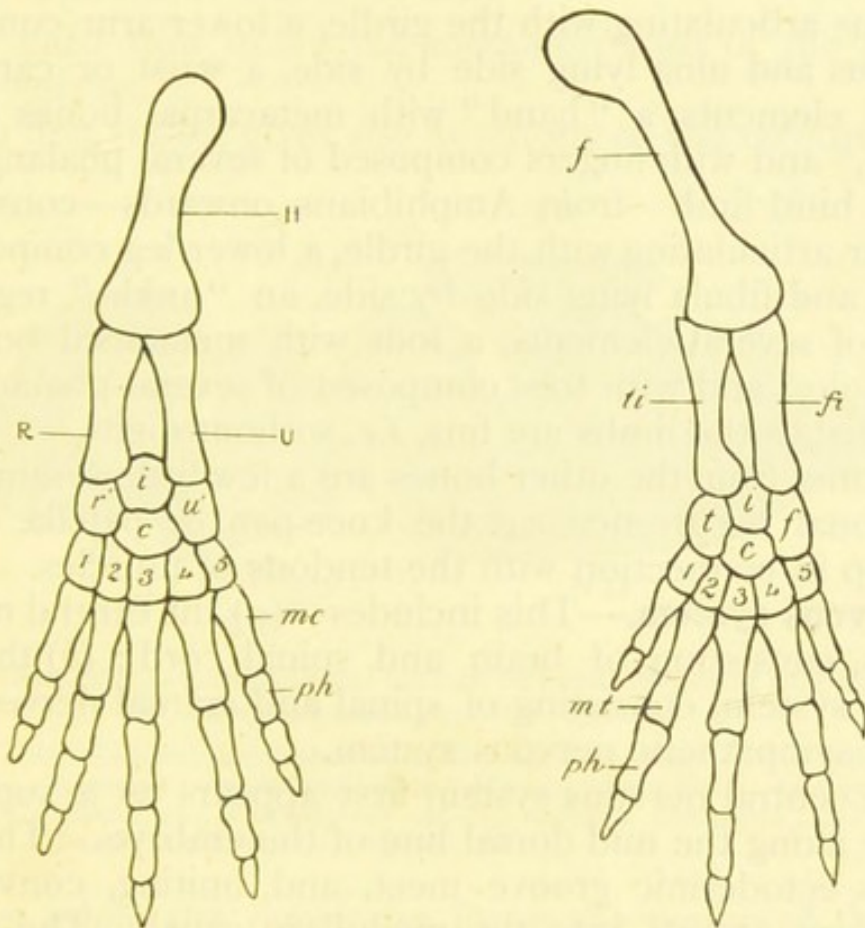
The ribs which support the body-wall and usually articulate with the transverse processes, or with the transverse processes and centra, perhaps bear the same relation to the vertebræ that the visceral arches do to the skull.

Amphibians are the first to show a breast-bone or sternum. It arises from two cartilaginous rods in a tendinous region on the ventral wall of the thorax, and seems to be different from that of higher animals. For the sternum which is present in some Reptiles, and in all Birds and Mammals, arises from a cartilaginous tract uniting the ventral ends of a number of ribs.

**Limbs and girdles.**—No secure conclusion has yet been reached as to the origin of the paired limbs. According to



Gegenbaur, the pectoral and pelvic girdles are homologous with branchial arches, while the primitive limbs are made up of modified fin rays originally like those of the unpaired fins. According to Dohrn, the limbs are residues of a longitudinal series of segmentally arranged outgrowths,



FIGS. 185 and 186.—Ideal fore- and hind-limb.—After Gegenbaur.

H., Humerus; R., radius; U., ulna; *r'*, radiale; *u'*, ulnare; *i*, intermedium; *c*, centrale; 1-5, carpalia bearing the corresponding digits with metacarpals (*mc*.) and phalanges (*ph*).

*f*, Femur; *ti*, tibia; *fi*, fibula; *i*, intermedium; *t*, tibiale (*astragalus*); *f*, fibulare (*os calcis*); *c*, centrale; 1-5, tarsalia bearing the corresponding digits with metatarsals (*mt*.) and phalanges (*ph*).

perhaps comparable to the parapodia of an Annelid. According to Wiedersheim, the girdle portion is primarily due to the centripetal growth of the fin skeleton, which arose from a localisation of the supports of continuous lateral folds.

The pectoral or shoulder girdle consists of a dorsal scapular portion or shoulder-blade, a ventral coracoid



portion, with the articulation for the limb between them, and of a forward growing clavicle or collar-bone.

The pelvic or hip girdle consists of a dorsal iliac portion, a ventral posterior ischiac portion, with the articulation for the limb between them, and of a ventral, usually anterior, pubic portion.

The fore limb—from Amphibians onwards—consists of a humerus articulating with the girdle, a lower arm composed of radius and ulna lying side by side, a wrist or carpus of several elements, a “hand” with metacarpal bones in the “palm,” and with fingers composed of several phalanges.

The hind limb—from Amphibians onwards—consists of a femur articulating with the girdle, a lower leg composed of a tibia and fibula lying side by side, an “ankle” region or tarsus of several elements, a foot with metatarsal bones in the “sole,” and with toes composed of several phalanges.

In Fishes the limbs are fins, *i.e.* without digits.

Distinct from the other bones are a few little sesamoids of occasional occurrence, *e.g.* the knee-pan or patella. They develop in connection with the tendons of muscles.

**Nervous system.**—This includes—(*a*) the central nervous system, consisting of brain and spinal cord; (*b*) the peripheral system, consisting of spinal and cranial nerves; and (*c*) the sympathetic nervous system.

The central nervous system first appears as a superficial groove along the mid-dorsal line of the embryo. The sides of this ectodermic groove meet, and, uniting, convert the medullary groove into the medullary canal. The greater part of this canal forms the spinal cord; the anterior portion of it is specialised as the brain. There is at first a posterior connection between the neural canal and the primitive gut of the embryo; when this is lost the cavity still persists as a little ciliated canal in the centre of the cord, and as the internal cavity of the brain. In Cyclostomes and Bony Fishes the central nervous system arises as a solid cord of cells, the cavities not appearing until a later stage; this condition does not seem to be primitive.

**Brain.**—At an early stage, even before the closing-in process is completed, certain portions of the anterior region of the medullary canal grow more rapidly than others, and form the three primary brain vesicles. By further processes



of growth and constriction, these three form the five regions of the adult brain.

When first formed the brain vesicles lie in a straight line, but as a consequence, probably, of their rapid and unequal growth, this condition is soon lost, and a marked cranial flexure is produced. In the lower forms, *e.g.* Cyclostomata, the flexure is slight, and is corrected later, but in the higher types it is very distinct, and causes the marked overlapping of parts so obvious in the adult.

We must now follow the metamorphosis of the primary brain vesicles.

The first vesicle gives rise anteriorly to the cerebral hemi-

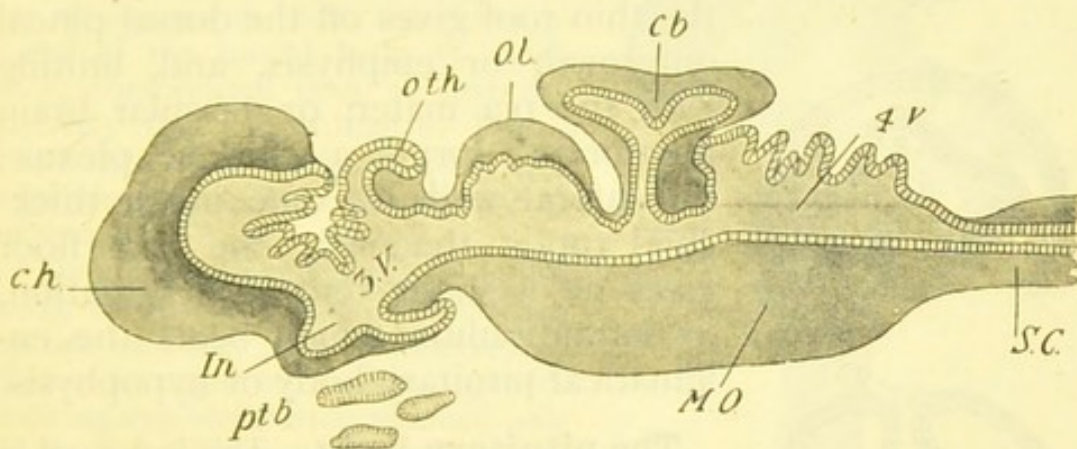


FIG. 187.—Longitudinal section of brain of young dog-fish (diagrammatic).—After Gaskell.

*C.h.*, Cerebral hemispheres; *o.th.*, optic thalami; *3 V.*, third ventricle; *In.*, infundibulum; *pt.b.*, pituitary body; *o.l.*, optic lobes; *cb.*, cerebellum; *M.O.*, medulla oblongata; *4 V.*, fourth ventricle; *S.C.*, spinal cord.

spheres, while the remainder forms the region of the optic thalami or thalamencephalon.

The cerebral hemispheres (prosencephalon or fore-brain) are exceedingly important. They predominate more and more as we ascend in the scale of Vertebrates, and become more and more the seat of intelligence. Except in a few cases, the prosencephalon is divided into two parts—the cerebral hemispheres—which contain cavities known as the lateral ventricles. The two hemispheres are united by bridges or commissures, which have considerable classificatory importance. With the anterior region of the hemispheres olfactory lobes are associated.

In Cyclostomata, Ganoids, and Teleosteans, the fore-brain has no nervous roof, but is covered by an epithelial pallium homologous with



what is called the choroid plexus of the third ventricle in higher Vertebrates. This choroid plexus is a thin epithelium, with blood vessels in it. But in Elasmobranchs, Dipnoi, and Amphibians the basal parts of the fore-brain have grown upwards to form a nervous roof, and this persists in higher Vertebrates.

The optic thalami (thalamencephalon or tween-brain) form the second region of the adult brain. Hence arise the optic outgrowths, which form the optic nerves and some of the most essential parts of the eyes. The original cavity persists as the third ventricle of the brain; the thin roof gives off the dorsal pineal outgrowth or epiphysis, and, uniting with the pia mater, or vascular brain membrane, forms a choroid plexus; the lateral walls become much thickened (optic thalami); the thin floor gives off a slight ventral evagination, or infundibulum, which bears the enigmatical pituitary body or hypophysis.

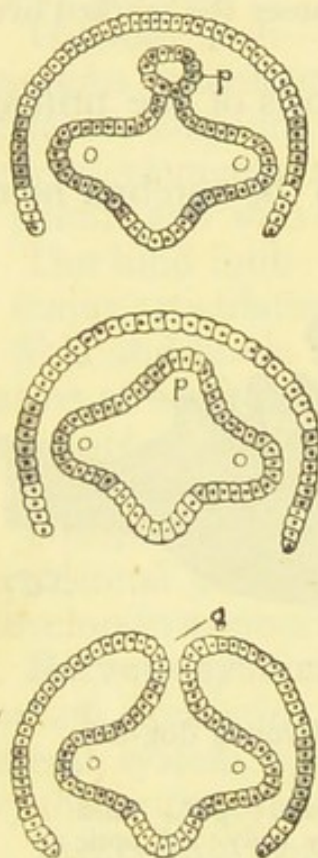


FIG. 188. — Origin of pineal body.—After Beard.

Lowest figure—a section through the first embryonic vesicle, while the medullary groove (*g.*) is still open; *o.*, optic outgrowths. Middle figure shows beginning of pineal outgrowth (*p.*). Top-most figure shows a later stage.

**The pituitary body.**—This is derived in part from the brain and in part from the mouth, and is extremely difficult to understand. It is apparently equivalent in part to the sub-neural gland of Tunicates, but this does not carry us much further. Dohrn connected it with two abortive gill-slits, but the evidence seems insufficient. Beard has interpreted it as a residue of the original mouth which Vertebrates are supposed to have possessed before the persistent one with which we are familiar was evolved, and of the innervation of that hypothetical structure; but again confirmation seems wanting. Of its physiological nature we know almost nothing, beyond that a pathological state of this organ is associated in man with certain diseases, *e.g.* *acromegaly*.

**The pineal body.**—The dorsal upgrowth (or epiphysis) from the roof of the thalamencephalon is represented, though to a varying extent, in all Vertebrates. It is terminally differentiated into a little body known as the pineal body. This was entirely an enigma until De Graaf discovered its eye-like structure in *Anguis*, and Baldwin Spencer securely confirmed this in the New Zealand "lizard" (*Sphenodon*), where the pineal body shows distinct traces of a retina.



In Elasmobranchs the pineal process is very long, and, perforating the skull, terminates below the skin in a closed vesicle. In the young frog it also comes to the surface above the skull, but degenerates in adolescence. In *Sphenodon* the stalk passes through the skull by the "parietal foramen," so that the "eye" itself lies close beneath the skin, the scales of which in this region are specialised and transparent. In *Iguana*, *Anguis*, *Lacerta*, etc., the epiphysis loses connection with the "eye" portion; and it is also to be noticed that in *Anguis* and *Iguana* the pineal body receives a nerve from a "parietal centre" near the base of, but independent of, the epiphysis; this nerve is transitory in *Anguis*, more or less persistent in *Iguana*. Above Reptiles the pineal stalk is always relatively short, and its terminal portion forms a glandular structure. In fact, the development of the pineal body is much more complicated than at first appeared; thus, according to Locy's researches on *Acanthias* embryos, it represents the fusion of an extra pair of eyes.

The full significance of the pineal body is thus uncertain. According to one view, its primitive function is that of an unpaired, median, upward-looking eye—a function retained only in the Reptiles mentioned above, the organ having elsewhere undergone (independent) degeneration. It has also been interpreted as an "organ for the perception of warmth." It may be, however, that the optic function is not primitive, but the result of a secondary modification. Thus one of the first interpretations (Dohrn's) connected the pineal and the pituitary outgrowths with a supposed passage of the original hypothetical mouth through the nerve-cord.

The second primary vesicle of the brain forms the third region, that of the optic lobes (mesencephalon or mid-brain), in the adult brain. The floor and lateral walls form the thickened crura cerebri; the roof becomes the two optic lobes, which are hollow in almost all Vertebrates. In Mammals a transverse furrow divides each optic lobe into two (corpora quadrigemina). The cavity of the vesicle becomes much contracted, and forms the narrow iter or aqueduct of Sylvius, a canal connecting the third ventricle with the fourth.

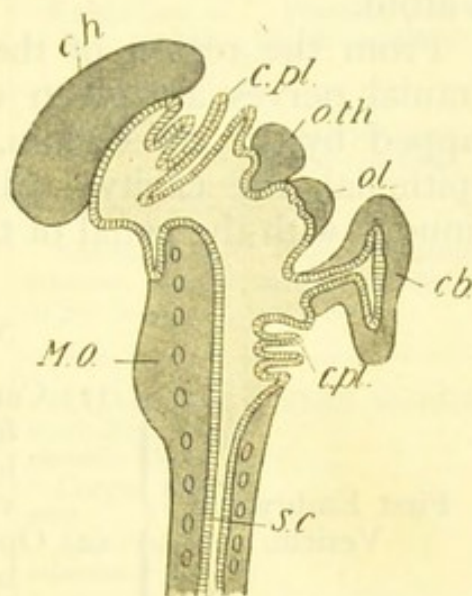


FIG. 189.—Diagram of the parts of the brain in Vertebrates.—After Gaskell.

*c.h.*, Cerebral hemispheres; *c.pl.*, choroid plexus; *o.th.*, optic thalami; *o.l.*, optic lobes; *cb.*, cerebellum; *c.pl.*, choroid plexus; *M.O.*, medulla oblongata; *S.C.*, spinal cord.



The third primary vesicle gives rise to the metencephalon, or hind-brain, or region of the cerebellum, and to the myelencephalon, or after-brain, or region of the medulla oblongata.

In the metencephalon the roof develops greatly, and gives rise to the cerebellum, which often has lateral lobes, and overlaps the next region. In the higher forms the floor forms a strong band of transverse fibres—the pons Varolii.

From the region of the medulla oblongata most of the cranial nerves are given off. Here the roof, partly overlapped by the cerebellum, degenerates, becoming thin and epithelial, the cavity—called the fourth ventricle—is continuous with the canal of the spinal cord.

*Summary.*

First Embryonic Vesicle.	(1) Cerebral hemispheres, prosencephalon, or fore-brain. Note commissures, olfactory lobes and nerves, and first and second ventricles.
	(2) Optic thalami, thalamencephalon, or tween-brain. Note—(a) optic, (b) pineal, (c) pituitary outgrowths, and the third ventricle.
Median Embryonic Vesicle.	(3) Optic lobes, mesencephalon, or mid-brain. Note crura cerebri, and the aqueduct of Sylvius.
	(4) Cerebellum, metencephalon, or hind-brain. Note pons Varolii.
Third Embryonic Vesicle.	(5) Medulla oblongata, myelencephalon, or after-brain. Note rudimentary roof, fourth ventricle, and origin of most of the cranial nerves.

Enswathing the brain, and following its irregularities, is a delicate membrane—the pia mater—rich in blood vessels, which supply the nervous system. Outside this, in higher Vertebrates, there is another membrane—the arachnoid—which does not follow the minor irregularities of the brain so carefully as does the pia mater. Thirdly, a firm membrane—the dura mater—lines the brain-case, and is continued down the spinal canal. In lower Vertebrates the dura mater is double throughout; in higher Vertebrates it is double only in the region of the spinal cord, where the outer part lines the bony tunnel, while the inner ensheaths the cord itself. In Fishes the brain-case is much larger than the brain, and a large lymph space lies between the dura and the pia mater.

An understanding of the relations of the different regions will be



facilitated by a study of the following table, which Dr. Gadow gives in his great work on Birds in Bronn's Thierreich :—

REGION.	FLOOR.	SIDES.	ROOF.	CAVITY.
Spinal cord.	Anterior grey and white commissure.	White and grey substance.	Posterior commissure.	Central canal.
Myelencephalon.	Medulla oblongata.		Epithelium of choroid plexus.	Posterior part of fourth ventricle.
Metencephalon.	Commissural part.	Pedunculi of crura cerebri.	Cerebellum.	Anterior part of fourth ventricle.
Mesencephalon.	Crura cerebri.	Cortex of optic lobes.	Anterior commissure, velum of Sylvius.	Aqueduct of Sylvius and lateral extensions.
Thalamencephalon.	Infundibulum, hypophysis, chiasma.	Inner part of optic lobes and optic thalami.	Epiphysis and epithelium of choroid plexus. Corpus callosum. Anterior commissure.	Third ventricle.
Prosencephalon.	Corpus striatum. Lamina terminalis. Olfactory lobes.	Cerebral hemispheres.		Lateral ventricles.

**Spinal cord.**—After the formation of the brain vesicles, the remainder of the medullary canal forms the spinal cord.

The canal is for a time continuous posteriorly with the food canal beneath, so that a  $\cap$ -shaped tube results. The connection between them is called the neurenteric canal (Fig. 183, *ne.c.*), and though it is only temporary, its frequent occurrence is of much interest.

The wall of the medullary canal becomes very much thickened, the roof and floor grow less rapidly, and thus the cord is marked by ventral and dorsal longitudinal furrows. At the same time, the canal itself is constricted, and persists in the fully formed structure only as a minute canal lined by ciliated epithelium, and continuous with the cavity of the brain.



In the cord it is usually easy to distinguish an external region of white matter, composed of medullated nerve-fibres, and an internal region of grey matter, containing ganglionic cells, and non-medullated fibres.

The arrangement of the grey matter, together with the longitudinal fissures, give the cord a distinct bilateral symmetry, which is sometimes obvious at a very early stage.

The brain substance is also composed of grey and white matter, but there, at any rate in higher forms, the arrangement is very complicated.

**Cranial nerves.**—The origin and distribution of the cranial nerves may be summarised as follows:—

NAME.	ORIGIN.	DISTRIBUTION.	NOTES.
1. Olfactory. <i>s.*</i>	Front of fore-brain.	Olfactory organ.	
2. Optic. <i>s.</i>	Optic thalami.	Eye.	They cross before they enter the brain, and generally unite at their intersection.
3. Oculomotor or ciliary. <i>m.*</i>	Floor of mid-brain.	All the muscles of the eye but two.	A ciliary ganglion at roots.
4. Pathetic or trochlear. <i>m.</i>	From posterior part of optic lobes.	Superior oblique muscle of the eye.	Perhaps belongs to 5, as a ventral root.
5. Trigeminal. <i>s. and m.</i>	Medulla oblongata.	(1) Ophthalmic to snout. <i>s.</i> (2) Maxillary to the upper jaw, etc. <i>s.</i> (3) Mandibular to lower jaw, lips, etc. <i>m. and s.</i>	Gasserian ganglion at roots. The nature of the ophthalmicus profundus, often included with 5, sometimes with 3, is doubtful.
6. Abducens. <i>m.</i>	"	External rectus of eye.	Perhaps belongs to 7, as a ventral branch.
7. Facial, chiefly partly <i>m. s.</i>	"	(1) Hyoidean. (2) Palatine. (3) Buccal to space between jaws and snout.	
8. Auditory. <i>s.</i>	"	Ear.	Ganglion at the roots of 7 and 8.
9. Glossopharyngeal. <i>s. and m.</i>	"	First gill arch and cleft.	
10. Vagus or Pneumogastric. <i>s. and m.</i>	"	Posterior gills and arches, lungs, heart, gut, and body generally.	Apparently a complex, including the elements of four or five nerves.

The fourth or pathetic nerve is peculiar among motor nerves in that it appears to arise from the extreme dorsal summit of the brain, between the mid- and hind-brain, from the region known as the "valve of Vieussens." In Fishes the seventh nerve is mainly a nerve of special sense; in higher Vertebrates it has lost most of its sensory branches, and become chiefly motor.

\* The letter *s.* is a contraction for sensory or afferent, *i.e.* transmitting impulses from a sensitive area to the centre; and *m.* is a contraction for motor or efferent, *i.e.* transmitting impulses from the centre to the body.



There is much uncertainty in regard to the morphological value of the various cranial nerves, but the following conclusions may be stated:—

(1) The nerves arise either as outgrowths of the central system or as specialisations of peripheral cells. Each spinal nerve has two roots—a dorsal and a ventral, but in most cases at least a cranial nerve has primitively a single dorsal root developing from a neural ridge of the dorsal surface of the brain. In many cases this root divides into “dorsal,” “ventral,” and other branches. As may be well studied in 9, these typically innervate a gill-arch and slit, and the branches may be therefore called (as Beard proposes) supra-branchial (dorsal), post-branchial, præ-branchial, etc. In the course of growth the nerve often shifts from the position whence its root originated.

(2) Some of the cranial nerves mark distinct segments of the head, while others are secondary derivatives. It is likely that 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, and several parts of 10 mark segments. It is possible that the oculo-

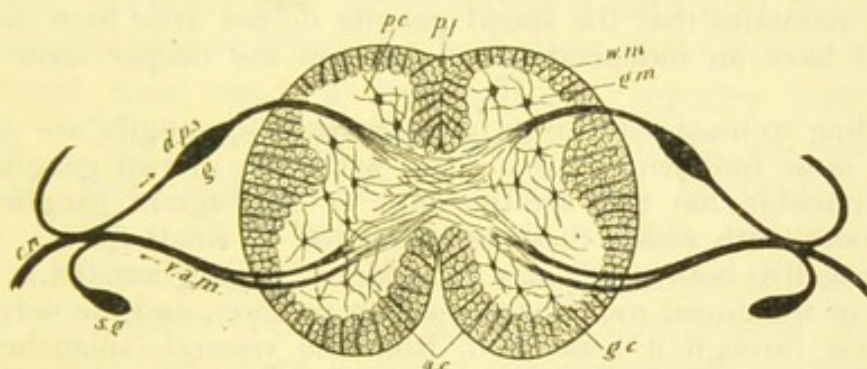


FIG. 190.—Diagrammatic section of spinal cord.

*p.f.*, Posterior fissure; *p.c.*, posterior column of white matter; *d.p.s.*, dorsal, posterior, sensory or afferent root; *g.*, ganglion; *v.a.m.*, ventral, anterior, motor or efferent root; *c.n.*, compound spinal nerve with branches; *s.g.*, sympathetic ganglion; *a.c.*, anterior column; the anterior fissure is exaggerated; *g.c.*, ganglion cells; *g.m.*, grey matter; *w.m.*, white matter.

motor is a ventral root associated with the ophthalmicus profundus, that the trochlear is a ventral root of the trigeminal, that the abducens is a ventral root of the facial.

(3) It is possible that each truly segmental nerve supplied a primitive gill-slit, as 7 supplies the spiracle, 9 the first branchial, 10 the second, third, fourth, and fifth branchials.

(4) It is possible that each segmental nerve was associated with a branchial sense organ (Beard and Frieriep). These organs arise above the gills, and grow thence into various parts of the head, and along the trunk as the “lateral line.” It is possible that a branchial sense organ lay over each primitive gill-cleft, and had an associated ganglion. The ganglia known as ciliary, gasserian, etc., may be the ganglia of branchial sense organs, and it seems that parts of them arise in development independently of the brain. It may be that nose and ear were originally branchial sense organs.

**Spinal nerves.**—Each spinal nerve has two roots—a



dorsal, posterior, or sensory, and a ventral, anterior, or motor. These arise separately and independently, but combine in the vicinity of the cord to form a single nerve. The dorsal root exhibits at an early period a large ganglionic swelling—the spinal ganglion; the ventral root is apparently non-ganglionated. Moreover, the dorsal root has typically a single origin (as in the cranial nerves), while that of the ventral root is often multiple.

The dorsal roots are outgrowths of a continuous ridge or crest along the median dorsal line of the cord. As the cord grows the nerve roots of each side become separated. They shift sideways and downwards to the sides of the cord. The ventral roots are later in arising; they spring as outgrowths from the latero-ventral angle of the cord.

Beard maintains that the spinal ganglia do not arise from the spinal cord, but have an independent origin from the deeper layers of the epiblast.

According to most authorities, the sympathetic ganglia are offshoots from the same rudiment as that from which the dorsal ganglia arise, and it is possible that they are the more or less vagrant ganglia of the ventral roots, with which they are connected by small fibres. On this view (Gaskell's) both roots may be said to be ganglionated. But the ganglion of the dorsal root is stationary in position, and the nerve-fibres which pass through it come both from the visceral (splanchnic) and from the peripheral somatic parts, separating from one another within the cord. On the other hand, the supposed ganglion (sympathetic) of the ventral root is more or less vagrant, and off the main line of the root, from which it receives small fibres passing to splanchnic or visceral structures.

**Sense organs.**—The central nervous system has doubtless arisen in the course of history from the insinking of external nerve cells; it does arise in development as an involution of ectoderm or epiblast. The same layer gives origin to the essential parts of the sense organs. The Vertebrate eye is formed in great part as an outgrowth from the brain, but as the brain is itself an involution of epiblast, the eye may be also referred to external nerve-cells.

*Branchial sense organs.*—In many Fishes and Amphibians there are lateral sense organs which form the "lateral lines," while others lie in the head, and were in all likelihood primitively connected with gill-clefts. In Sauropsida and Mammals these branchial sense organs are no longer distinct as such.

*The nose.*—It is possible that the sensory pits of skin which form the nasal sacs are two branchial sense organs.



They are lined by epithelium in great part sensory, and are connected posteriorly with the olfactory nerves. In all Fishes, except Dipnoi, the nasal sacs remain blind; in Amphibians, and in all the higher Vertebrates, they open posteriorly into the cavity of the mouth, and serve for the entrance of air. The peculiar nostril of hag-fish and lamprey is referred to in the chapter on Cyclostomata.

*The ear* in Invertebrates develops as a simple invagination of the ectoderm, forming a little sac, which may become entirely detached from the epidermis, or may retain its primitive connection; so in Vertebrates, at an early stage, an insinking forms the auditory pit. In some Fishes (*Serranus*, salmon) and Amphibians a common ectodermic thickening seems to form the rudiment from which the ear, the lateral line, and a pre-auditory sensory patch are derived. The auditory sac sinks further in, and the originally wide opening to the exterior becomes a long narrow tube. In Elasmobranchs, which exhibit many primitive features, this condition is retained in the adult; in other Vertebrates the tube loses its connection with the exterior, and becomes a blind prolongation of the inner ear—the aqueductus vestibuli, or ductus endolymphaticus.

The auditory vesicle, at first merely a simple sac, soon becomes very complicated. It divides into two chambers, the larger utricle and the smaller sacculus. From the utricle three semicircular canals are given off, except in the lamprey and hag, which have two and one respectively. From the sacculus an outgrowth called the cochlea or lagena originates; it is little more than a small hollow knob in Fishes and Amphibians, but becomes large and important in Sauropsida and Mammals.

As this differentiation of the parts of the internal ear takes place, the lining epithelium also becomes differentiated into flattened covering cells and sensory auditory cells. The auditory cells are arranged in patches to which branches of the auditory nerve are distributed. With these sensory patches calcareous concretions (otoliths) are associated, except in the cochlea of Mammals.

The fact that lime salts are often deposited in the skin, and that the ear-sac arises as an insinking of epiblast, may perhaps shed some light on the origin of otoliths.

The parts which we have so far considered constitute together the membranous labyrinth of the ear. Round about them the mesoblast (mesenchyme) forms a two-layered envelope. Its inner layer disin-



tegrates to produce a fluid, the perilymph, which bathes the whole outer surface of the membranous labyrinth. Its outer layer forms a firm case, the cartilaginous or bony labyrinth, surrounding the internal ear. The membranous labyrinth itself contains another fluid, the endolymph.

With regard to the function of the parts of the ear, the semicircular canals are believed by many to be concerned with the appreciation of a change in the direction or velocity of movement. How far the ears of lower Invertebrates (*e.g.* Crustacea and Molluscs) are adapted for any function except this, is still doubtful, and we can hardly see that any other would be of much use to purely aquatic animals. It seems likely at any rate that the primitive function of the ear was the perception of vibrations, and that from this both the sense of hearing and the sense of equilibration have been differentiated.

It is in accordance with the facts mentioned above that we rarely find in Fishes any special path by which impressions of sound may travel from the external world to the ear. In Amphibians and higher Vertebrates, however, the ear has sunk further into the recesses of the skull, and a special path for the sound is present. In Elasmobranchs, the spiracle, or first gill-cleft, is situated in the vicinity of the ear; in higher forms, according to many authors, this first gill-cleft is metamorphosed into the conducting apparatus of the ear. In development, a depression beneath the closed gill-cleft unites with an outgrowth from the pharynx, and thus forms the tympanic cavity, which communicates with the back of the mouth by the Eustachian tube. The tympanic cavity is closed externally by the drum or tympanum, which may be flush with the surface, as in the frog, or may lie at the end of a narrow passage, which in many Mammals is furnished externally with a projection or pinna. In Amphibia and Sauropsida the tympanic cavity is traversed by a bony rod—the columella, which extends from the drum to the fenestra ovalis, a little aperture in the wall of the bony labyrinth. In Mammals this is replaced by a chain of three ossicles, an outermost malleus, a median incus, an internal stapes.

The homologies of these ossicles are still uncertain. One interpretation has been stated on p. 434; the following is Hertwig's:—

Malleus = Articular + angular elements of Meckel's cartilage.

Incus = Palato-quadrate of lower Vertebrates.

Stapes of Mammals has a double origin, being formed from the upper part of hyoid arch + an ossification from the wall of the ear capsule = (wholly?) columella of Birds, Reptiles, and Amphibians.

*The eye.*—There is no eye in *Amphioxus*, it is rarely more than larval in Tunicates, it is rudimentary in *Myxine* and in the young lamprey. In higher forms the eye is always present, though occasionally degenerate, *e.g.* in fishes from caves or from the deep sea. It is hidden under the skin in *Proteus*, an amphibian cave-dweller, and in the subterranean amphibians like *Cecilia*, very small in a few



snakes and lizards, and its nerves are abortive in the mole.

The adult eye is more or less globular, and its walls consist of several distinct layers. The innermost layer bounding the posterior part of the globe is the sensitive retina, innervated by fine branches from the optic nerve. It may be compared to the nervous matter of the brain, from which, indeed, it arises. Outside of the retina is a pigmented epithelium, and outside of this a vascular membrane; together these are often called the choroid. The vascular part may be compared to the pia mater covering the brain, and like it is derived from mesoblast. Outside of the choroid is a protective layer or sclerotic, comparable to, and continuous with, the dura mater covering the brain, and also mesoblastic in origin. Occupying the front of the globe is the crystalline lens, a clear ball derived directly from the skin. It is fringed in front by a pigmented and muscular ring—the iris, which is for the most part a continuation of the choroid. The space enclosed by the iris in front of the lens is called the pupil. Protecting and closing the front of the eye is the firm cornea continuous with the sclerotic, and covered externally by the conjunctiva—a delicate epithelium continuous with the epidermis. Between the cornea and the iris is a lymph space containing aqueous humour, while the inner chamber behind the lens contains a clear jelly—the vitreous humour. The lens is moored by “ciliary processes” of the choroid, and its shape

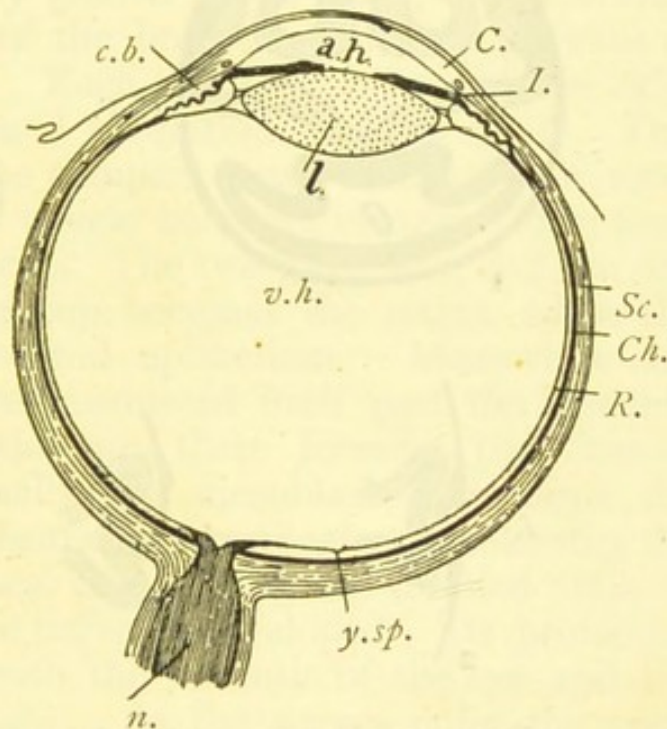


FIG. 191.—Diagram of the eye.

C., Cornea; a.h., aqueous humour; c.b., ciliary body; L., lens; I., Iris; Sc., sclerotic; Ch., choroid; R., retina; v.h., vitreous humour; y.sp., yellow spot; n., optic nerve.

by a pigmented and muscular ring—the iris, which is for the most part a continuation of the choroid. The space enclosed by the iris in front of the lens is called the pupil. Protecting and closing the front of the eye is the firm cornea continuous with the sclerotic, and covered externally by the conjunctiva—a delicate epithelium continuous with the epidermis. Between the cornea and the iris is a lymph space containing aqueous humour, while the inner chamber behind the lens contains a clear jelly—the vitreous humour. The lens is moored by “ciliary processes” of the choroid, and its shape



is alterable by the action of accommodating muscles arranged in a circle at the junction of iris and sclerotic. In many Reptiles, and in Birds, a vascular fold, called the pecten, projects from the back of the eye into the vitreous humour. A similar fold in Fishes (*processus falciformis*) ends in a knot-like structure in the lens. The retina is a

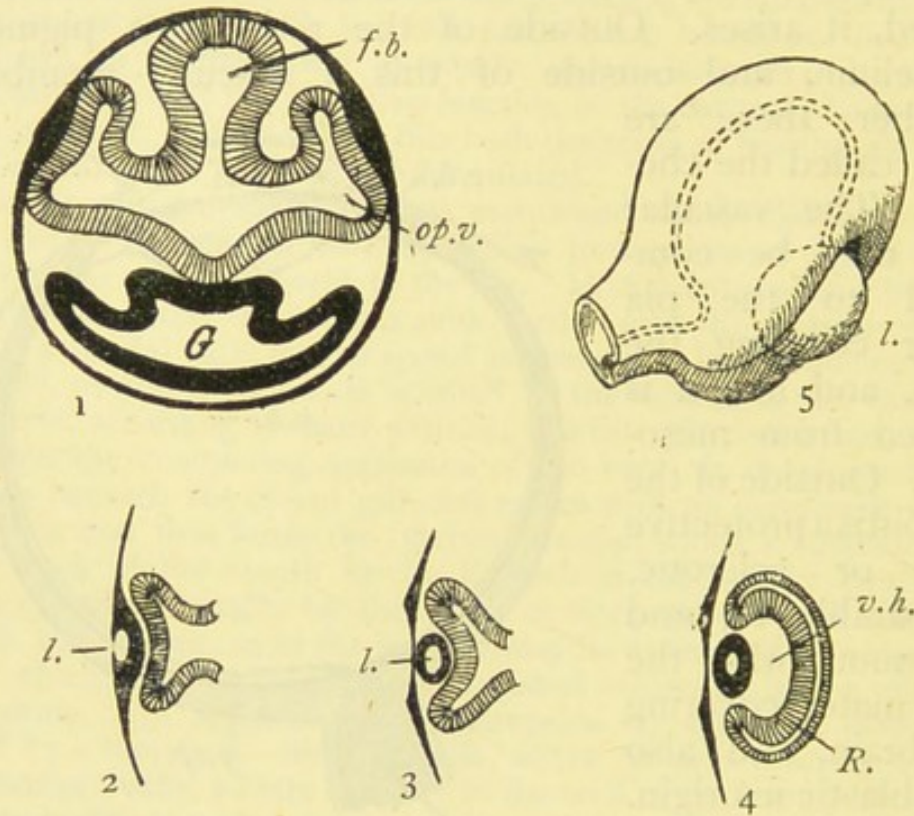


FIG. 192.—Development of the eye.—After Balfour and Hertwig.

1. Section through first embryonic vesicle, showing outgrowth of optic vesicles (*op.v.*) to meet the skin; *f.b.*, thalamencephalon; *G.*, the gut.
- 2-4. Sections illustrating the formation of the lens (*l.*) from the skin, and the modification of the optic vesicle into an optic cup; *R.*, retina; *v.h.*, vitreous humour.
5. External aspect of embryonic eye; *l.*, lens.

very complex structure, with several layers of cells, partly supporting and partly nervous; the layer next the vitreous humour consists of nerve-fibres, while that furthest from the rays of light and next the pigment epithelium consists of sensitive rods and cones. The region where the optic nerve enters, and whence the fibres spread, is called the blind spot, and near this there lies the most sensitive region—the yellow spot, with its fovea centralis, where



all the layers of the retina have thinned off except the cones.

Among the extrinsic structures must be noted the six muscles which move the eyeball, the upper and lower eyelids, which are often very slightly developed, and the third eyelid or nictitating membrane. Above Fishes there is a lachrymal gland associated with the upper lid, and a Harderian gland associated with the nictitating membrane. In Mammals there are also Meibomian glands. The secretions of all these glands keep the surface of the eye moist.

While the medullary groove is still open, the eyes arise from the first vesicle of the brain as hollow outgrowths or primary optic vesicles. Each grows till it reaches the skin, which forms a thickened involution in front of it. This afterwards becomes the compact lens. Meantime it sinks inwards, and the optic vesicle becomes invaginated to form a double-walled optic cup. The two walls fuse, and the one next the cavity of the cup becomes the retina, while the outer forms the pigmented epithelium. Meanwhile surrounding mesoblast has insinuated itself past the lens into the cavity of the optic cup, there forming the vitreous humour, while externally the mesoblast also forms the vascular choroid, the firm often cartilaginous sclerotic, the inner layer of the cornea, etc. Along the thinned stalk of the optic cup the optic nerve is developed. Its protective sheath is continuous with the sclerotic of the eye and the dura mater of the brain. As the nerves enter the optic thalami, they always cross one another in a chiasma, and their fibres usually interlace as they cross.

**Alimentary system.**—The alimentary tract exhibits much division of labour, for not only are there parts suited for the passage, digestion, and absorption of the food, but there are numerous outgrowths, *e.g.* lungs and allantois, which have nothing to do with the main function of the food canal.

By far the greater part of the food canal is lined by endoderm or hypoblast, and is derived from the original cavity of the gastrula—the primitive gut or archenteron. This is the mid-gut or mesenteron. But the mouth cavity is lined by ectoderm, invaginated from in front to meet the mid-gut. This region is the fore-gut or stomodæum. Finally there is usually a slight posterior invagination of ectoderm,



forming the anus. This is the hind-gut or proctodæum.

Associated with the mouth cavity or stomodæum are—(a) teeth (ectodermic rudiments of enamel combined with a mesodermic papilla which forms dentine or ivory); (b) from Amphibians onwards special salivary glands; (c) a tongue,—a glandular and sensitive outgrowth from the floor. The tongue develops as a fold of mucous membrane in front of the hyoid, and afterwards becomes increased by growth of connective tissue, etc. In larval Amphibians muscle strands find their way into it, and it seems likely, as Gegenbaur has recently indicated, that their original function was to compress the glands. As they gained strength they became able for a new function, that of moving the tongue. In *Myxine*, Dipnoi, and higher animals, the nasal sac opens posteriorly into the mouth; in some Reptiles and Birds, and in all Mammals, the cavity of the mouth is divided by a palate into an upper nasal and lower buccal portion.

The origin of the oral aperture is uncertain. In Tunicates it is formed by an ectodermic insinking which meets the archenteron; in *Amphioxus* it seems to arise as a pore in an ectodermic disc; in other cases it is a simple ectodermic invagination; or it may owe its origin to the coalescence of an anterior pair of gill-clefts innervated by the fifth nerve. If the last interpretation be true, its origin illustrates that change of function which has been a frequent occurrence in evolution. But if the mouth arose from a pair of gill-clefts, and in some cases it actually has a paired origin, then there must have been an older mouth to start with. Thus Beard in his brilliant morphological studies distinguishes between "the old mouth and the new." The new mouth is supposed to have resulted, as Dohrn suggested, from a pair of gill-clefts; the old mouth was an antecedent stomodæum, of which the so-called nose of *Myxine* and the oral hypophysis of higher forms may be vestiges. This theory harmonises with the observations of Kleinenberg on the development of the mouth in some Annelids (*Lopadorhynchus*), in which the larval stomodæum is replaced by a paired ectodermic invagination.

The mouth cavity leads into the pharynx, on whose walls there are the gill-clefts. Of these the maximum number is eight, except in *Amphioxus*. If we exclude the hypothetical clefts, such as those possibly represented by the mouth, the first pair form the spiracles—well seen in skates. In the position of the spiracles the Eustachian tubes of higher Vertebrates develop. In front of the spiracle there is sometimes a spiracular cartilage, which Dohrn dignifies as a distinct arch. The other gill-clefts are associated with gills in Fishes and Amphibians, while in Sauropsida and Mammals, in which there are no gills, four "visceral" clefts persist as practically functionless vestigial structures. In



some cases their openings are very evanescent. The clefts are bordered by the branchial arches, and supplied by blood vessels and nerves.

With the anterior part of the alimentary canal two strange structures are associated—the thyroid and the thymus.

The *thyroid gland* arises as a diverticulum from the ventral wall of the pharynx. It may be single (as in some Mammals), or bilobed (as in Birds), or double (as in some Mammals and Amphibians), or diffuse (as in Bony Fishes). Only in the larval lamprey does it retain its original connection with the pharynx, and is then a true gland.

As to its morphological nature, its mode of origin suggests comparison with the hypobranchial groove in *Amphioxus* and the endostyle of Ascidians. According to Dohrn, it is a residue of the visceral cleft between the hyo-mandibular and the hyoid. It sometimes has accessory parts derived from a visceral cleft (fourth in Mammals).

Almost the only light which has been cast on the physiological nature of the thyroid is from the pathological side. Goitre and Derbyshire neck are associated with an enlargement and diseased state of this organ, and myxœdema with its degeneration or absence. As injection of extract of sheep's thyroid, or even eating this organ, alleviates myxœdema, it is concluded that the thyroid must have some specific effect on the large quantity of blood which flows through it. It is probably safe to say that the thyroid aids in keeping the blood at a certain standard of health, perhaps through some specific ferment.

The *thymus* arises as a dorsal endodermic thickening where the outgrowths which form the gill-clefts meet the ectoderm. It may be associated with a variable number of clefts—seven in the shark *Heptanchus*, five in the skate, four in Teleosteans, three in the lizard, one in the chick, and one (the third) in Mammals. In the young lamprey there are said to be no fewer than twenty-eight thymus rudiments. In Mammals it often seems to degenerate after youth. As it has from its first origin a distinct lymphoid nature, and apparently forms leucocytes, it has been interpreted (Beard) as a structure adapted for the phagocytic protection of the gills from bacteria, parasites, and the effects of injury. If this be so, we can understand its diminishing importance in Sauropsida and Mammalia, where its place may be to some extent taken by the palatal and pharyngeal tonsils, which are believed by some (Stöhr, Killian, Gulland) to have a similar phagocytic function.

The pharynx leads into the gullet or œsophagus, which is a conducting tube, and this into the digestive stomach, which is followed by the digestive, absorptive, conducting intestine, ending in the rectum and anus.

From the œsophagus the air- or swim-bladder of most Fishes, and the lungs of higher Vertebrates, grow out. The air-bladder usually lies dorsally and is almost always single ;



the lungs lie ventrally and are double, though connected with the gullet by a single tube.

The beginning of the intestine gives origin to the liver, which regulates the composition of the blood and secretes bile, and to the pancreas, which secretes digestive juices. The pancreas has often a multiple rudiment.

From the hindmost region of the gut, the allantois grows out in all animals from Amphibians onwards. In Amphibians it is represented by a cloacal bladder; in the higher Vertebrates it is a vascular foetal membrane concerned with the respiration or nutrition of the embryo, or both.

Cilia are very common on the lining of the intestine in Invertebrates, but they are much rarer in Vertebrates. Yet as they occur in *Amphioxus*, lampreys, many fishes, *Protopterus*, some Amphibians, and in embryonic Mammals, it seems not unlikely that the alimentary tract was originally a ciliated tube.

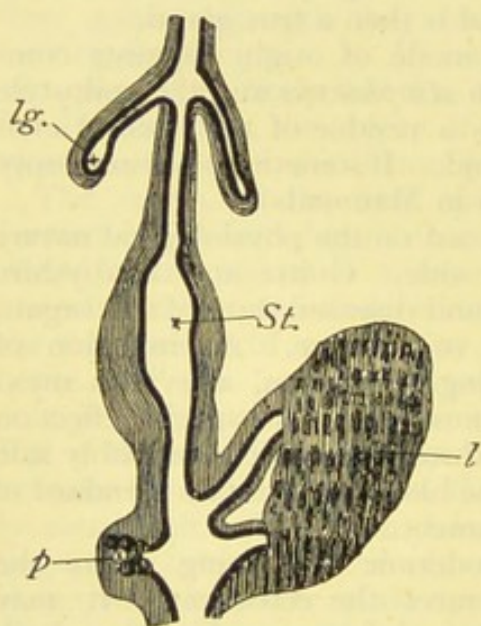


FIG. 193. — Origin of lungs, liver, and pancreas in the chick.—After Goette.

The mesoderm is shaded; the endoderm dark.

lg., One of the lungs; St., stomach; L., liver; p., pancreas.

It is often said that, in some cases at least, as in lamprey, frog, and newt, the blastopore or opening of the primitive gastrula cavity persists as the anus of the adult; but it seems doubtful whether the anus is not always a new formation. In many cases, at least, an ectodermic invagination or

proctodæum meets the closed archenteron, and at the junction the two epithelial layers give way, so that an open tube is formed.

The formation of the anus does not take place close to the posterior end of the primitive gut, but at a point some short distance in front of this. In consequence the so-called post-anal gut is formed. This is continuous with the neurenteric canal, and so communicates with the neural canal. The post-anal gut attains in Elasmobranchs a relatively considerable length. It has been very frequently found in Vertebrates, and is probably of universal occurrence. After a longer or shorter period it becomes completely atrophied, and with it the communication between neural and alimentary canals is completely destroyed.

**Speculative.**—The primitive gut was probably a smooth straight tube, but the rapid multiplication of well-nourished cells would tend to its increase in diameter and in length. But on increase in both



directions the slower growth of the general body would impose limitations, and in this we may find the immediate growth-condition determining the origin of folds, crypts, cæca, and coils, which would be justified by the increase of absorptive and digestive surface. There are regular longitudinal folds in *Myxine*, cross-folds traversing these would form crypts, which may be exaggerated into the pyloric cæca of Teleosteans and Ganoids, while other modifications would give rise to "spiral valves" and the like. In the same way it may be suggested that the numerous important outgrowths of the mid-gut, such as lungs, liver, pancreas, and allantois, so thoroughly justified by their usefulness, may at first have been due to necessary conditions of growth—to the high nutrition, rapid growth, and rapid multiplication of the endoderm. It may be noted that in the development of the Amphibian *Necturus*, there are hints of more numerous endodermic diverticula (Platt). It is also said that the hypochorda—a transitory structure—arising below and subsequent to the notochord, is in part due to a series of dorsal outgrowths from the gut (Stöhr). Even the notochord, which arises as a median dorsal fold, may be speculatively compared to a typhlosole—folded outwards instead of inwards. The future elaboration of the organs which arise as outgrowths of the gut, would, however, depend on many factors, such as their correlation with other parts of the body, and would at each step be affected as usual by natural selection.

## ALIMENTARY SYSTEM.—SUMMARY.

REGION OF THE GUT.	OUTGROWTHS.	ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES.
Mouth cavity, or Stomodæum, or Fore-gut, originating as an ectodermic invagination, or from a coalescence of two gill-clefts.	Oral part of the hypophysis.	Teeth. Salivary glands. Tongue.
Pharynx, gullet or œsophagus, stomach, small intestine, large intestine, and rectum; = the mesenteron or mid-gut, originating from the cavity of the gastrula, the archenteron or primitive gut; lined by endoderm.	Thyroid) and the Thymus) gill-clefts. Air bladder; lungs. Liver. Pancreas. Allantois. The pancreas is usually the result of two ventral outgrowths and a dorsal one. In Cyclostomes and Elasmobranchs it seems to have but one rudiment; in the sturgeon four.	With the several outgrowths the surrounding mesoderm becomes associated, often to a great extent. Note also the origin of the notochord as an axial differentiation of cells along the mid-dorsal line of the embryonic gut.
Anal region, or Proctodæum, or Hind-gut. Where the mouth of the gastrula persists, it forms the terminal aperture of the gut, in other cases there is an ectodermic invagination or proctodæum.		In some Fishes, all Amphibians, all Sauropsida, and the Prototherian Mammals, the <del>terminal</del> part of the gut is a cloaca or common chamber, into which the rectum, the urinary, and the genital ducts open.



**Body cavity.**—In *Amphioxus* a paired pouch grows out from the archenteron. Almost at once this becomes divided up on either side to form a series of small sacs, the cavities of which form ultimately the true body cavity or coelom. According to Hertwig, this is in type the method of formation of the coelom throughout the Vertebrata. In the other Vertebrates, owing to modified processes

of development, probably first arising from the presence of much yolk, solid cell masses grow out in place of hollow sacs, but the cavities which appear later, apparently by splitting of the cell mass, are in reality the retarded cavities of true coelom-pouches.

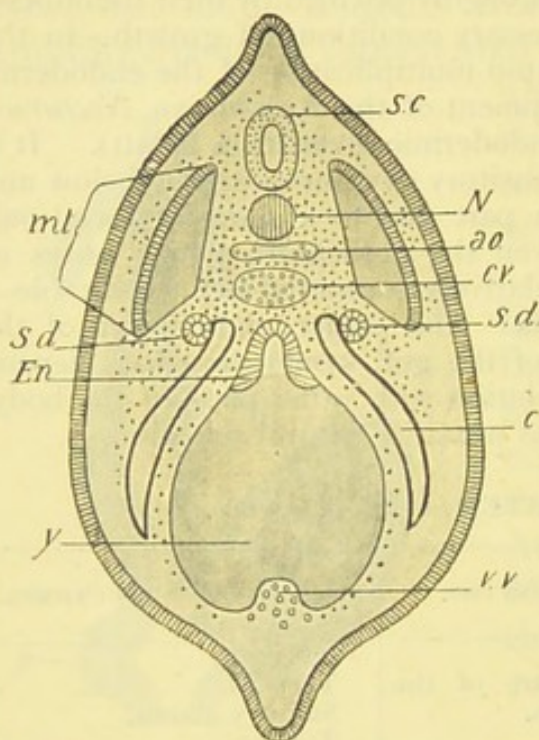


FIG. 194.—Transverse section through a Teleostean embryo (diagrammatic).—After Ziegler.

*s.c.*, Spinal cord; *N.*, notochord; *ao.*, aorta; *c.v.*, cardinal veins (united); *s.d.*, segmental duct; *c.*, coelom or pleuro-peritoneal cavity; *v.v.*, position of median vitelline vein; *y.*, yolk; *En.*, endoderm of gut; *mt.*, myotome. The dots represent mesenchyme cells; the little circles, blood corpuscles.

The body cavity may form part of one or all of the following systems:—(1) *excretory*, voiding waste by abdominal pores or by nephrostomes; (2) *reproductive*, receiving the liberated genital elements; and (3) *lymphatic*, receiving transudations from visceral and abdominal organs.

It is probably never quite closed, but may communicate with the exterior by abdominal pores (or through nephrostomes) opening into the renal system. Both occur together in some Elasmobranchs, but they are usually mutually exclusive. In the higher Teleostei, in some

Saurians, and in Mammals, there are neither abdominal pores nor nephrostomes, but only openings (stomata) into the lymphatic system.

**Vascular system.**—From Cyclostomata onwards the blood fluid contains red corpuscles, *i.e.* cells coloured with hæmoglobin—a pigment which readily forms a loose union with oxygen, and bears it from the exterior (through gills or lungs) to the tissues. These pigmented cells are usually oval and nucleated. In all Mammals except Camelidæ they are



circular. Moreover, the full-grown red corpuscles of Mammals have no visible nuclei. The blood fluid also contains uncoloured nucleated amœboid cells, the white corpuscles or leucocytes, of much physiological importance. Some of them, specialised as phagocytes, form "a body-guard," attacking and destroying micro-organisms within the body.

The heart receives blood from veins, and drives it forth through arteries. Its contractions in great part cause the inequality of pressure which makes the blood flow. It lies in a special part of the body cavity known as the pericardium, and develops from a single blood vessel in Cyclostomata, Fishes, and Amphibians, from a pair in Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals.

The receiving region of the heart is formed by an auricle or by two auricles; thence the blood passes into the muscular ventricle or ventricles, and is driven outwards. Except in adult Birds and Mammals, the veins from the body enter the auricle (or the right auricle if there are two) by a porch known as the sinus venosus. In Fishes (except Teleosteans) and in Amphibians the blood passes from the ventricle into a valved conus arteriosus, which seems to be a continuation of the ventricle. In Teleosteans there is a superficially similar structure, but without valves and non-contractile, and apparently developed from the aorta, not from the ventricle; it is called the bulbus arteriosus, and may occur along with the conus arteriosus in other Fishes. In Vertebrates higher than Amphibians the conus is, to say the least, less distinct.

In Cyclostomata, and in all Fishes except Dipnoi, the heart has one auricle and one ventricle, and contains only impure blood, which it receives from the body and drives to the gills, whence purified it flows to the body.

In Dipnoi the heart is incipiently three-chambered.

In Amphibians the heart has two auricles and a ventricle. The right auricle always receives venous or impure blood from the body, the left always receives arterial or pure blood from the lungs. The single ventricle of the amphibian heart drives the blood to the body and to the lungs.

In all Reptiles, except Crocodilia, the heart has two auricles and an incompletely divided ventricle. The partition in the ventricle secures that much of the venous blood is sent to the lungs; indeed, the heart, though possessing only three chambers, works almost as if it had four.



In Crocodilia there are two auricles and two ventricles. But the dorsal aorta, which supplies the posterior parts of the body, is formed from the union of two aortic arches, one from each ventricle. Therefore it contains mixed blood.

In Birds and Mammals the heart has two auricles and two ventricles, and *one* aortic arch supplies the body with wholly pure blood. This aortic arch always arises from the left ventricle, but in Birds it curves over the right bronchus, *i.e.* is a right aortic arch, and in Mammals over the left, *i.e.* is a left aortic arch. Impure blood from the body enters the right auricle, passes into the right ventricle, is driven to the lungs, returns purified to the left auricle, enters the left ventricle, and is driven to the body.

SUMMARY AS TO AORTIC ARCHES.

FISHES.	AMPHIBIANS.	SAUROPSIDA AND MAMMALS.
(a) Mandibular aortic arch usually aborts; there is a persistent trace in Elasmobranchs (spiracular artery).	Aborts, or is not developed.	At most merely embryonic.
(b) Hyoid aortic arch aborts, or is rudimentary, persists in Elasmobranchs and some Ganoids.	Aborts.	At most merely embryonic.
(c) 1st branchial.	Carotid.	Carotid.
(d) 2nd branchial.	Systemic arches, unite to form dorsal aorta.	Systemic. Only the right persists in Birds; only the left in Mammals.
(e) 3rd branchial.	Rudimentary or disappears.	Possibly the pulmonary (unless that be <i>f.</i> ).
(f) 4th branchial (gives off artery to "lung" of Dipnoi).	Pulmonary.	The pulmonary (unless that be <i>e.</i> ).

The arterial system of a fish consists of a ventral aorta continued forwards from the heart, of a number of arching vessels diffusing the impure blood on the gills, and of efferent vessels collecting the purified blood into a dorsal aorta.

In the embryo of higher Vertebrates the same arrangement persists,



though there are no gills beyond Amphibians. From a ventral arterial stem arches arise, which are connected so as to form the roots of the dorsal aorta. This aorta gives off vessels to the body, while in embryonic life it sends important vitelline arteries to the yolk, and (in Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals) equally important allantoic arteries to the allantois.

Returning to the arterial system of a fish, we must consider the arches more carefully, and compare them with those of Sauropsida and Mammals, where they are no longer connected with functional gill-clefts, and also with those of Amphibians, where the complications due to lungs, etc., begin (see Table, p. 458).

The important features in the development of the venous system are as follows:—

(a) In the embryo the vitelline veins bring back blood from the yolk-sac, at first directly to the heart, and later to the liver. Into these veins, blood returned from the intestine is poured in increasing quantity by other veins. In the adult these persist to form the hepatic portal system, by means of which blood from the stomach and intestine is carried to the liver, and not directly to the heart.

(b) At an early stage in development the blood is brought back from the anterior region by the superior cardinal veins, from the posterior region by the inferior cardinals. The two cardinals on each side unite to form the short transverse ductus Cuvieri, the two ducts entering the sinus venosus of the heart. In Fishes the superior cardinals persist, the inferior cardinals bring back blood from the kidneys, and also to some extent, by means of their union with the caudal vein, from the posterior region of the body. In some cases this union with the caudal is only indirect, through

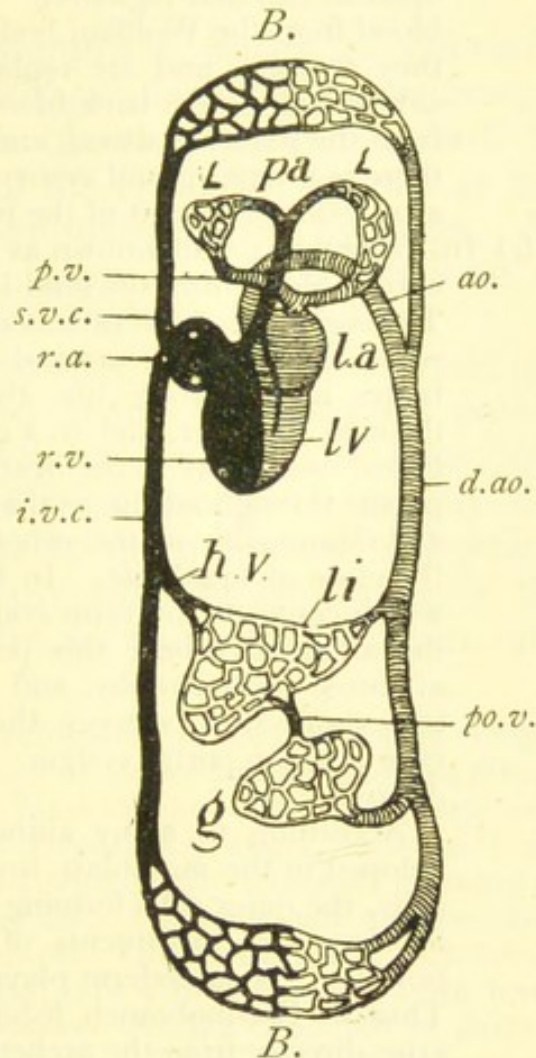


FIG. 195.—Diagram of circulation.—  
After Leunis.

*r.a.*, Right auricle receiving superior vena cava (*s.v.c.*) and inferior vena cava (*i.v.c.*); *r.v.*, right ventricle; *p.a.*, pulmonary artery to lungs (*L.*); *p.v.*, right pulmonary vein; *l.a.*, left auricle; *l.v.*, left ventricle; *a.o.*, aortic arch; *d.a.o.*, dorsal aorta giving off arteries to liver (*li.*), to gut (*g.*), to body (*B.*); *p.o.v.*, portal veins; *h.v.*, hepatic vein.



the medium of the kidney (Elasmobranchs); in this way the renal portal system is constituted. In higher Vertebrates, before development is completed, the superior cardinals are replaced by the superior venæ cavæ (into which the superior cardinals open as external jugulars). The inferior cardinals at first return blood from the Wolffian bodies and the posterior region; later they atrophy, and are replaced by an unpaired inferior vena cava which brings back blood from the kidney (efferent renals), from the liver (hepatics), and from the hind-limbs except when there is a renal portal system. The azygos vein of Mammals is a persistent remnant of the inferior cardinals.

- (c) In Amphibia a vein known as the epigastric (anterior abdominal) carries blood from the hind-limbs into the hepatic portal system. This vein also receives blood from the allantoic bladder, a fact which is of great theoretical importance. In all higher Vertebrates in embryonic life, the blood from the allantois passes through the liver, and to a greater or less extent into its capillaries, on its way to the heart. In Reptiles the allantoic veins persist throughout life as the epigastric vein or veins. In Birds and Mammals, on the other hand, they atrophy completely at the close of foetal life. In Birds, however, a vein is developed which connects the veins coming from the posterior region with the allantoic veins; this persists when the remainder of the allantoic veins atrophy, and thus in Birds as in Amphibia there is a connection between the components of the inferior vena cava and the portal system. In Mammals no such connection occurs.

According to many authorities, the vascular system is developed in the mesoblast from the hollowing out of strands of cells, the outer cells forming the walls of the vessels, the inner forming the constituents of the blood. According to some, however, the endoderm plays an important part in the process. Thus in Elasmobranch fishes, the aorta and the sinus venosus arise directly from the archenteron, and the cardinal veins arise from the fusion of segmental outgrowths of the aorta.

Associated with the vascular system is the spleen, which appears to be an area for the multiplication of blood corpuscles. It is usually believed to be of mesodermic origin, but some facts point to its being endodermic.

Developed in mesoblastic spaces, and continuous with the body cavity on the one hand, and the blood vessels on the other, is the system of lymphatic spaces and vessels (see Chapter II.).

**Respiratory system.**—In *Balanoglossus*, Tunicates, and *Amphioxus*, the walls of the pharynx bear slits, between which the blood is exposed in superficial blood vessels to the purifying and oxygenating influence of the water.



In Cyclostomata, Fishes, all young and some adult Amphibians, there are not only clefts on the walls of the pharynx, but gills associated with these. On the large surface of the feathery or plaited gills, the blood is exposed and purified.

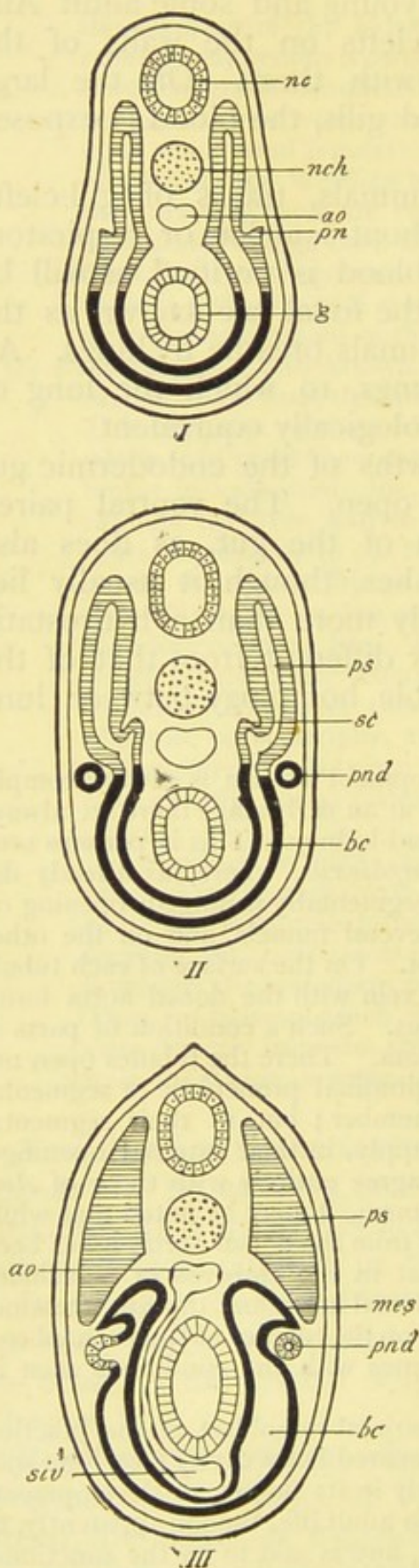
In Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals, traces of gill-clefts occur in the embryos, but without lamellæ or respiratory function. In the embryo the blood is purified, as will be explained afterwards, by aid of the foetal sac known as the allantois; and after birth the animals breathe by lungs. All adult Amphibians also have lungs, to which the lung or swim-bladder of Dipnoi is physiologically equivalent.

The gill-clefts arise as outgrowths of the endodermic gut which meet the ectoderm and open. The ventral paired lungs arise from an outgrowth of the gut, as does also the swim-bladder of many Fishes, though it usually lies on the dorsal surface, has rarely more than a hydrostatic function, and has a blood supply different from that of the lungs. There is no demonstrable homology between lung and swim-bladder.

**Excretory system.**—The development of this is always complicated. In the embryos of Vertebrates at an early stage there are always traces of a *pronephros*, or so-called head-kidney. This is perhaps seen in its most primitive condition in *Amphioxus*, where, as already described, there is a series of tubules, segmentally arranged, opening on the one side into the body cavity by several funnels, and on the other into the atrial chamber, *i.e.* the exterior. On the surface of each tubule a vessel connecting the sub-intestinal vein with the dorsal aorta forms a vascular plexus—the so-called glomus. Such a condition of parts is never in its entirety found in the Craniata. There the tubules open not directly to the exterior, but into a longitudinal pronephric or segmental duct, and they are usually few in number; but in their segmental arrangement, as shown by the blood supply, in their internal openings, and in the presence of glomera, they agree entirely with those of *Amphioxus*. In connection with the glomera, it may be noted that while the blood supply usually comes directly from the dorsal aorta, it has been shown by Paul Mayer and Rückert that in the embryos of Selachians connecting vessels occur between the dorsal aorta and the sub-intestinal vein, which form rudimentary networks on the tubules of the pronephros. This shows a very striking correspondence with the conditions seen in *Amphioxus*.

The pronephros develops from the parietal mesoblast at the junction of the muscle segments and the unsegmented body cavity (see Fig. 196) in the anterior region, and varies greatly in its degree of development. In *Myxine* and *Bdellostoma* it persists in adult life, though apparently, at least in part, in a degenerate condition, and is said to be the functional





excretory organ of the little (degenerate?) fish *Fierasfer* and some other Bony Fishes. In most bony Fishes, and in Amphibia, it is merely a larval organ, but is then large and important. In Elasmobranchs and Amniota, except Crocodiles and Turtles, it is from the first rudimentary and functionless.

The origin of the segmental or pronephric duct is still undetermined. It usually arises from the mesoblast, in some cases growing backwards directly from the rudiment of the pronephros, while in others the surrounding mesoblast takes an important part in its formation; in Elasmobranchs, in Mammals, and in the chick, a connection with the epiblast has been described by various observers. Rückert is of opinion that it originally arose by the fusion of the outer ends of the pronephric tubules, and that the occasional connection with the ectoderm indicates the position of former excretory pores (cf. *Amphioxus*).

At a late period in those types in which the pronephros is a functional larval organ, but much earlier in the higher Vertebrates, another series

FIG. 196.—Development of Excretory system of Vertebrate.—In part after Boveri.

In I. the primitive segments are not separated off from the lateral plate, and the pronephros (*p.n.*) is seen arising from the lower part of the primitive segment. In II. the pronephros is completely separated off from the primitive segment and lateral plate. In III. the origin of the mesonephric tubules is seen. They arise from the upper part of the lateral plate, which is now completely separated from the primitive segment, and curving round the pronephric duct come to open into it.

*n.c.*, nerve cord; *nch.*, notochord; *pn.*, pronephros; *g.*, gut; *p.s.*, primitive segment; *mes.*, mesonephric tubule; *pn.d.*, pronephric duct; *b.c.*, body cavity; *ao.*, aorta; *siv.*, sub-intestinal vein, with vessel to the aorta.



of tubules are differentiated from the mesoblast, and, acquiring a connection with the segmental duct, constitute the *mesonephros*, or mid-kidney. The tubules arise usually, though not invariably, nearer the posterior end of the body than the pronephros, and are formed from the portion of the mesoblast which connects the muscle segment and the lateral plate (see Fig. 196). Below the Amniota the mesonephros forms the permanent excretory organ. In higher forms another series of nephridial tubules arises still further back in the body, and forms the metanephros, or permanent kidney. The mesonephric and metanephric tubules resemble each other closely, but the relation of the former to the pronephros is still a debated point. When fully developed, a mesonephric tubule consists of—(1) an internal ciliated funnel (nephrostome), which opens into the body cavity, but is only rarely represented; (2) a small cavity (Malpighian capsule) believed by some to be derived from the coelom, and containing a mass of capillaries which project into the cavity of the tubule; and (3) a coiled tube in part excretory, in part a conducting canal for the waste filtered from the blood. The metanephric tubules have a quite similar structure, but the nephrostome is never present.

The segmental or pronephric duct on each side is, at any rate in some of the lower Vertebrates, divided into two ducts, the Müllerian duct and the mesonephric or Wolffian duct. In the Amniota the origin of the Müllerian duct is still somewhat obscure. It becomes the genital duct or oviduct of the female, while in the male the Wolffian duct becomes the genital duct or vas deferens.

The ureters or ducts from the persistent functional kidneys are either the original archinephric or segmental ducts (*e.g.* in Cyclostomata), or the Wolffian ducts (in Amphibians), or special posterior derivations of the latter.

**Suprarenal bodies.**—These are found in most Vertebrates near the reproductive organs and kidneys. They are not known in Cyclostomes or Dipnoi, but seem to increase in importance as we ascend the series. Typically, each shows a distinction into a cortical and a medullary zone. It is usually asserted that these two areas have a different origin, the medullary region being derived from the sympathetic nervous system, the cortex from the Wolffian body, or even from the most anterior part of the germinal epithelium. On the other hand, some investigators derive the medulla from metamorphosed cortical cells. There is much evidence (morphological and physiological) that the suprarenals of Elasmobranchs correspond to the medullary part in Mammals, while the interrenals of Elasmobranchs and the suprarenals of Teleosts and Ganoids correspond to the cortical portion in Mammals.

With regard to function, there is even more uncertainty. The suprarenal bodies are relatively very large in embryonic life, but fail to maintain their primitively rapid rate of growth. It has been suggested that they assist in breaking down or disposing of waste pigment.



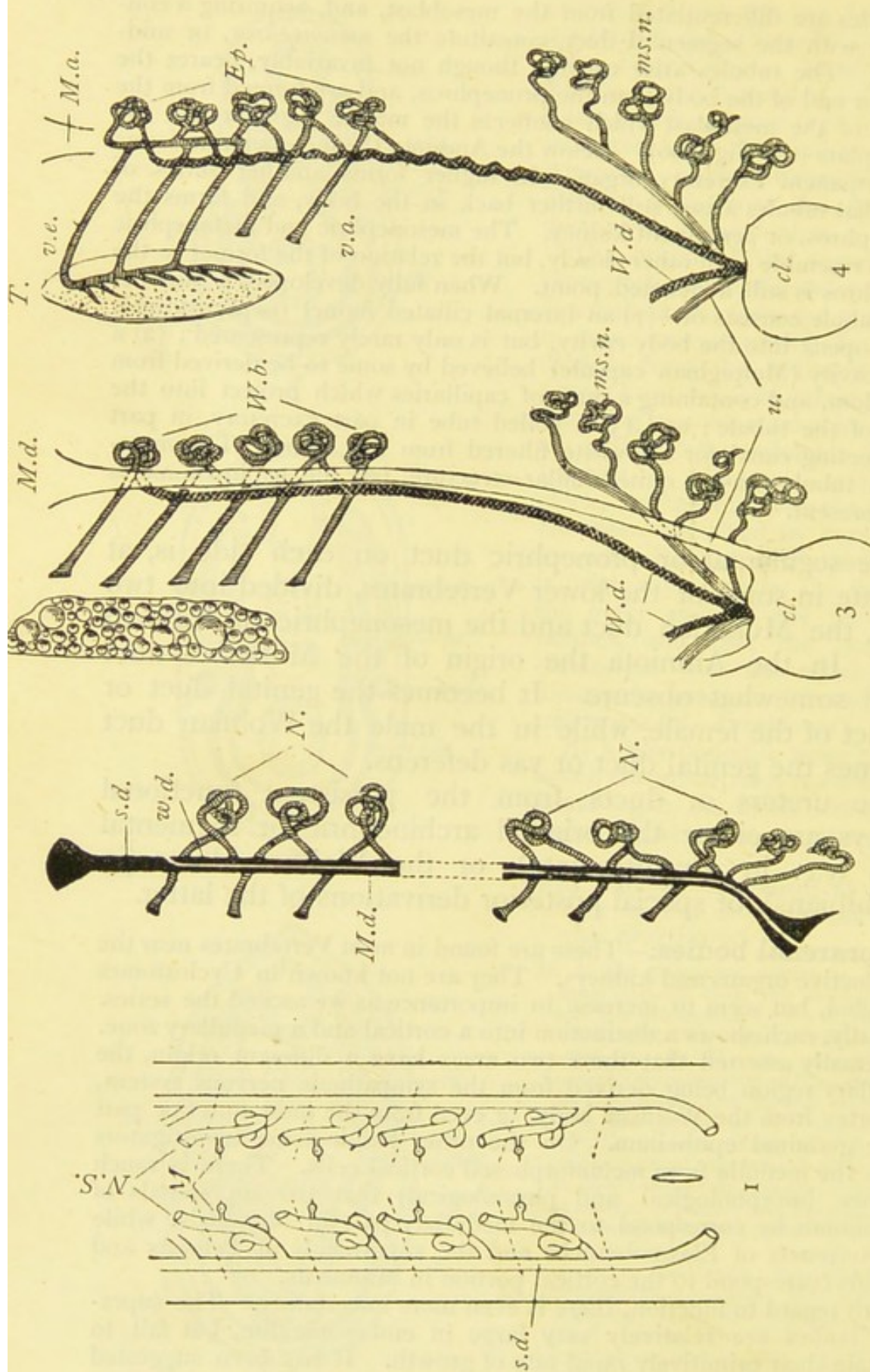


FIG. 197.—Urogenital System.

1. Ideally simple structure of excretory system (after Hatschek). 2. Primitive state of excretory system in Elasmobranch embryo. 3. Arrangement in adult female. 4. Arrangement in adult male. (2-4 after Balfour.) *s.d.*, Unsplit segmental duct; *N.S.*, nephrostomes; *M.*, Malpighian bodies; the dotted lines represent segments; *N.*, segmental tuberos or nephridia; *cl.*, cloaca; *u.*, ureter; *ms.n.*, posterior mesonephros; *W.d.*, Wolffian duct; *M.d.*, Müllerian duct; *Ov.*, ovary; *W.b.*, Wolffian body; *T.*, testis; *v.e.*, vasa efferentia; *v.d.*, vasa deferens; *Ep.*, epididymis.



## UROGENITAL DUCTS.

	CYCLOSTOMATA.	GANOIDS AND TELEOSTEANS.	ELASMOBRANCHS.	AMPHIBIANS.	AMNIOTA.
A. Pronephros.	Persistent in hag and <i>Bdellostoma</i> , but at least in part degenerate; important in young lamprey. Probably most of adult's excretory organ in hag, all of it in lamprey.	Important in embryonic life, later becomes functionless in most cases.	Always rudimentary and functionless; a slight portion persists at origin of I.b. So in Dipnoi.	Important in larval life; a slight portion persists at origin of I.b. in adult.	Rudimentary, except in Turtles and Crocodiles.
B. Mesonephros.		Functional kidney; is apparently absent in <i>Fierasfer</i> , and perhaps some others.	Anterior part in the male is connected with the testes in Dipnoi. Anterior part in the female is atrophied or rudimentary. Posterior part becomes permanent kidney.		(epididymis, etc.).
B. 1. (Metanephros).	O ?	O ?	O ?	O ?	Permanent kidney (derived from B.).
I. Segmental or Archinephric duct.	Remains unsplit on each side.	Remains unsplit, or is perhaps partially split in Ganoids.	Splits into or forms Wolffian and Müllerian ducts.		The Müllerian seems at least in part to have an independent origin from the peritoneum.
I.a. Mesonephric or Wolffian duct.	O	O ?	Vas deferens of male; duct of anterior mesonephros (or Wolffian body) in the female.	Vas deferens and ureter in male; ureter in female.	Vas deferens in male, rudiment in female.
I.b. Müllerian duct.	O	O ?	Oviduct of female, rudiment in male. Outgrowth of I.a.	Oviduct of female, rudiment in male. I.a.	Oviduct of female, rudiment in male.
(Ureter.)	Segmental duct.	Segmental duct (?).			Metanephric duct (from I.a.).
(Apertures.)	Cloaca.	Anal and urogenital separate in Ganoids and many Teleosts; three openings in a few Teleosts.	Cloaca; so in Dipnoi; three openings in Holocephali.	Cloaca.	Cloaca, except in Marsupial and Placental Mammals, in which anal and urogenital openings are separate; three openings in females of the rat and a few others.



**Reproductive system.**—The ovaries and testes are developed from a ridge formed by a part of the epithelium lining the abdominal cavity, this ridge constituting the so-called germinal epithelium.

In the male the proliferating germinal epithelium is divided by embryonic connective tissue into numerous follicles. The cells of the follicles form seminal mother cells, which, by their ultimate divisions, give rise to spermatozoa. From the mesonephros, tubules grow out to the embryonic testes; these form the collecting tubes of the organ and open into the mesonephric duct, the vas deferens of the adult. This is the most typical Vertebrate condition, but is not universal (see Table, p. 465).

In the female the ovary is similarly divided up into follicles. In this case, however, differentiation sets in among the originally equivalent cells of the follicle. One cell in each follicle is more successful than its neighbours, which are sacrificed to form an envelope of follicular cells around the single large ovum cell. The ova are usually shed into the body cavity, and pass thence to the exterior by the Müllerian ducts or oviducts.

In many cases, between the follicular cells and the ovum there is a membrane, the zona radiata, which is traversed by fine pores, and, in consequence, has a striated appearance; other egg membranes, more or less transitory in nature, also occur. In the lower Vertebrates the layer of follicle cells is single, but in Mammals (except in Monotremes) it is multiple, and a quantity of clear fluid accumulates between the cells and the ovum. The whole forms a "Graafian follicle," which bursts when the ovum is liberated.

Before fertilisation takes place, the ovum undergoes a process of maturation, during which extrusion of polar bodies typically occurs; the technical difficulties in the way of the definite observation of this fact are, however, often very great. The ova are fertilised outside the body in Cyclostomata, Ganoids, Teleosteans, Dipnoi, and tailless Amphibians; internally in the other Vertebrates.

Hermaphroditism occurs as a normal state in Tunicata, most of which are first functionally female and then male (protogynous); in *Myxine* (*q.v.*), which is first male and then female (protandrous); in some species of the Teleostean genera *Chrysophrys* and *Serranus*, of which the latter is regularly self-fertilising; and in a solitary Batrachian. It occurs casually in some Selachians, in the sturgeon, in about a score of Teleosteans, *e.g.* cod, in various Amphibians, and more rarely in Amniota. There are also embryological facts which suggest that the embryos of higher Vertebrates pass through a state of hermaphroditism before the unisexual condition is reached. On these grounds it has



often been suggested that the original Vertebrate animals were hermaphrodite.

The quantity of yolk present in the egg varies very greatly in Vertebrates, and its presence or absence exercises a profound influence upon the processes of development. Following Hertwig, we may notice that the presence of yolk has both a physiological and a morphological effect. Physiologically, the presence of a store of nutriment enables the developmental process to be carried on uninterruptedly, and the period of independent life to be postponed until more or less complexity of organisation has been attained. Morphologically, the yolk acts as a check to the activity of the protoplasm, and by substituting an embryonic mode of nutrition for that for which the adult organism is fitted, tends to prevent a speedy establishment of the adult form. When much yolk is present, it usually forms a hernia-like yolk-sac, hanging down from the embryonic gut. As a further consequence, we may notice the tendency to the production of embryonic organs useful only during embryonic life. We must consider the formation of an organic connection between mother and unborn young as a further step in the same direction as the acquisition of yolk. This is hinted at in some Fishes and Reptiles, but culminates in the placental Mammals. It may be looked at in two different ways. On the one hand, the diversion of the nourishment from the ovary, during the period of gestation, tends to starve the remaining ovarian ova, and this check to fertility is further prolonged during lactation (Ryder); on the other hand, the chance of survival is much increased, and the maternal sacrifice finds its justification in the increased specialisation of the offspring.

In accordance with the effect of the presence of yolk as noted above, we find that segmentation is total (holoblastic) in the ova of the lamprey, the sturgeon, *Ceratodus*, Amphibians, and all Mammals except the Monotremes. In the ova of Elasmobranchs, Teleosteans, Reptiles, Birds, and Monotremes, the activity of the protoplasm is not sufficient to overcome the inertia of the yolk, and segmentation is partial (meroblastic).

Similarly we find that a gastrula is formed, in part at least, by distinct invagination in the development of the lamprey, the sturgeon, and Amphibians (recently the occurrence of invagination has been denied for the frog); it is more modified in Teleosteans and Elasmobranchs, whose ova have more yolk; it is much disguised in Sauropsida and Mammals.

Most Vertebrates lay eggs in which the young are hatched outside of the body, and to all these forms the term *ovi-*

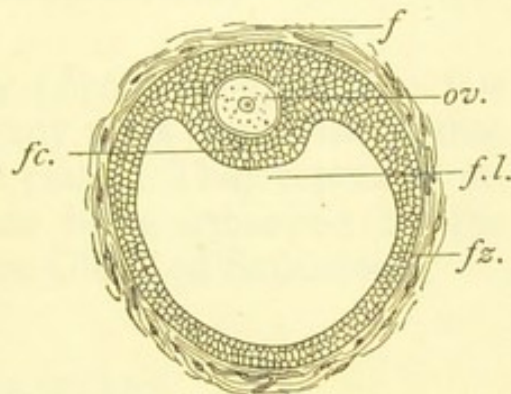


FIG. 198.—Mammalian ovum.—  
After Hertwig.

*ov.*, Ovum; *f.*, follicular capsule; *f.z.*, follicle cells; *f.c.*, follicle cells forming discus proligerus; *f.l.*, cavity occupied by liquor folliculi.



*parous* is applied. In some sharks, a few Teleosteans, some tailed Amphibians, a few lizards and snakes, the young are hatched before they leave the body of the mother. To these cases the awkward term *ovo-viviparous* is applied, but there is no real distinction between this mode of birth and that called oviparous, and both may occur in one animal (e.g. in the grass-snake) in different conditions. In the placental Mammals there is a close organic connection between the unborn young and the mother, and the parturition in this case is usually called *viviparous*. But all the three terms are bad.



## CHAPTER XXI.

### CLASS CYCLOSTOMATA.

(*Synonym*, MARSIPOBRANCHII.)

THE hag (*Myxine*), the lamprey (*Petromyzon*), and a few others like them, differ in so many ways from Fishes, that they must be ranked in a distinct class. They represent an archaic type, whose interest has been enhanced by the discovery of *Palæospondylus* in the Old Red Sandstone.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Unlike all higher Vertebrates (Gnathostomata), the Cyclostomata have round suctorial mouths, without distinctly developed jaws. They are also without paired fins and without scales. Their respiratory system consists of paired gill-pouches, to which the term Marsipobranch refers. In the extant forms the skeleton is wholly cartilaginous, and the notochord persists unconstricted. The "nostril" is unpaired, there is no sympathetic nervous system, no conus arteriosus, no distinct pancreas, no spleen, no genital ducts, and the segmental duct is unsplit. Their geographical distribution is wide.*

#### FIRST TYPE. *Myxine*—The Hag.

The glutinous hag (*Myxine glutinosa*) is not uncommon off the coasts of Britain and Scandinavia, the Atlantic coast of America, etc. It lives in the mud at depths of 40 to 300 fathoms. It often lies buried with only the nostril protruding from the mud, but it can swim gracefully and rapidly in eel-like fashion in search of prey. It eats



the bait off the fisherman's long lines, and it also enters and devours the cod, etc., which have been caught on the hooks. According to some, the hag also bores its way into free-swimming fishes, but the evidence is not satisfactory. Mr. J. T. Cunningham discovered that the young animals are hermaphrodite, containing immature ova and ripe spermatozoa, while older forms produce ova only; and Nansen has corroborated this. A somewhat similar "protandrous" hermaphroditism is known elsewhere, *e.g.* in the Nemertean *Stichostemma eilhardii*, in the aberrant *Myzostoma*, and in the crustacean Cymothoidæ. Of the development and early history nothing is known. They are said to spawn in late autumn.

**Form, skin, and muscular system.**—The body is eel-like, measuring 15 to 24 in. in the adult. The colour is pinkish, the red blood shining through an impigmented skin. There is a slight median fin around the tail; beside the mouth and nostril there are four pairs of sensitive barbules. There are no paired fins. The cloacal opening is near the posterior end of the body.

The skin is scaleless, and rich in goblet cells, which secrete mucus. There is also a double row of glandular pits, partly embedded in muscle, and arranged segmentally on each side of the ventral surface along its entire length. Each opens by a distinct pore, and so much mucus is rapidly secreted that the ancients said the hag "could turn water into glue." This makes the hag difficult to grip, and its function is doubtless in part protective. The mucus chiefly consists of strange spiral "thread cells," ejected from the sacs.

The muscle segments or myomeres are to some extent traceable. The rasping teeth are worked by a powerful muscular structure, sometimes called a "tongue." A section of this shows a strong muscular cylinder surrounding a cartilage.

**The skeleton.**—The skeleton is wholly cartilaginous. The notochord persists unsegmented within a firm sheath, the skull is a simple unroofed trough, jaws are not distinctly developed, there is only a hint of the complicated basket-work which supports the gill-pouches of the lamprey; but the tongue, the barbules, etc., are supported by cartila-



ginous rods. The end of the notochord in the tail is quite straight (protocercal or diphyccercal).

**Nervous system.**—The brain has the usual parts, but is small and simple. It is much compressed, with practical obliteration of the ventricles. The fore-brain seems to agree with that of Ganoids and Teleosteans in having a non-nervous roof. The cerebellum is particularly small. The spinal cord is somewhat flattened, and is sheltered simply by fibrous tissue. Throughout at least a portion of the cord there are two dorsal roots for each ventral root. The union of dorsal and ventral roots is only partial, and there is no sympathetic system. There is no lateral line system.

The eye is without lens, cornea, or iris, and is hidden

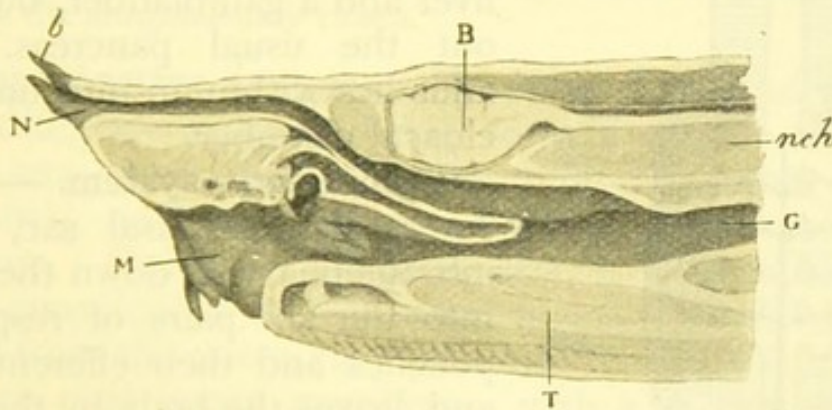


FIG. 199.—Median longitudinal section of anterior end of *Myxine*.—After Retzius.

*N.*, nostril ; *b.*, barbule ; *B.*, brain ; *nch.*, notochord ; *G.*, gullet ; *T.*, tongue muscle ; *M.*, mouth cavity.

beneath the skin ; the optic nerves do not cross ; the ear has only one semicircular canal. The single nasal sac (with *paired* folds of olfactory epithelium in *Bdellostoma*, an American relative) opens dorsally at the apex of the head, and communicates posteriorly with the pharynx by a nasopalatine duct. It may be, as in the lamprey, a combination of olfactory and pituitary involutions. The absence of pigment and sensory structures in the skin, and the simple state of the eye and ear, may be partly associated with the hag's mode of life, but it seems probable that the simplicity is primitive rather than degenerate.

**Alimentary system.**—The mouth is suctorial. There is a median tooth above, and two rows of teeth are borne on each side of the muscular "tongue." These teeth are



entirely "horny," but sharp. Into the mouth, just in front of a fringed velum which separates it from the pharynx, the nasal, or, as some would say, the naso-pituitary, sac opens. Thus water passes from the nostril into the pharynx. It may be, as Beard suggests, that this passage is a persistent "old mouth" the palæostoma of Kupffer. From the gullet

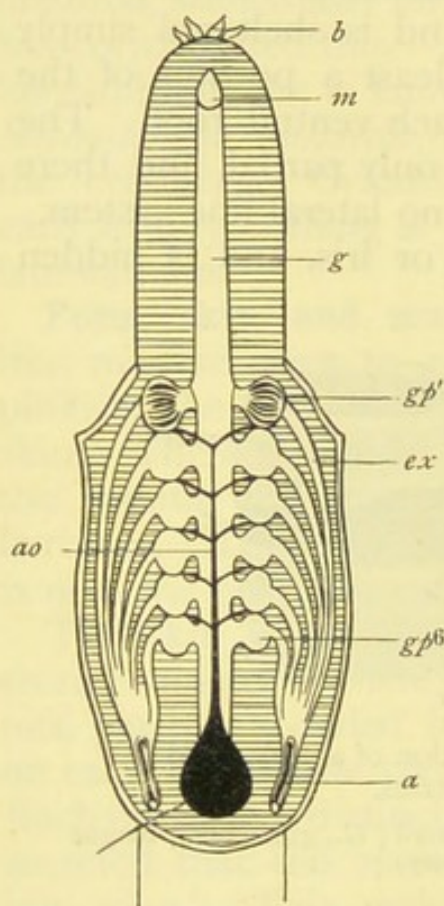


FIG. 200.—Respiratory system of hag, from ventral surface.

*b.*, Barbules; *m.*, mouth opening on ventral surface; *g.*, gullet; *g.p.1*, first gill-pouch, cut open to show internal lamellæ; *g.p.6*, sixth gill-pouch; *ex.*, exhalant canal of first gill-pouch; *v.*, ventricle of heart; *ao.*, aorta; *a.*, common exhalant aperture.

open six respiratory pouches, each of which has an efferent tube, and the six efferent tubes of each side unite in a common exhalant orifice. The gut is straight and uniform, with wavy longitudinal ridges internally, with a two-lobed liver and a gall-bladder, but without the usual pancreas. The anus lies within an integumentary cloacal chamber.

**Respiratory system.**—Water enters by the nasal sac, passes into the pharynx, down the gullet, into the six pairs of respiratory pouches and their efferent tubes, and leaves the body by the single aperture at each side. The respiratory pouches have much-plaited internal walls, on which the blood vessels are spread out. On the left side, behind the sixth pouch, a tube (the œsophago-cutaneous duct) opens from the œsophagus to the exhalant aperture, and represents a rudimentary seventh pouch.

**Vascular system.**—The blood contains the usual amœboid leucocytes and red blood corpuscles,

elliptical in form (circular in the lamprey). It is collected from the body in anterior and posterior cardinals, passes through a sinus venosus into the auricle of the heart, thence to the ventricle, thence along a ventral aorta, which gives off vessels to the respiratory pouches. From these the purified



blood passes dorsalwards in efferent branchial vessels, which unite posteriorly to form the dorsal aorta, while from the most anterior a branch goes to the head.

**Excretory system.**—The segmental or archinephric ducts remain unsplit, but the morphological nature of the kidney of the adult is still a matter of dispute. In the young form the pronephros is functional, but at maturity the whole of it, or, according to another interpretation, the anterior region only, degenerates into a lymphoid structure lying beside the pericardium, and the mesonephros becomes functional. According to Maas, however, its tubules are exceedingly simple in structure, consisting of little more than glomeruli; and the segmental duct, with which the posterior portion of the pronephros is fused, is an excretory as well as a conducting tube. In other words, the posterior portion of the pronephros is functional throughout life.

The unsplit segmental ducts end by separate pores on a papilla within the integumentary cloaca.

**Reproductive system.**—*Myxine* is a protandrous hermaphrodite, spermatozoa being formed at an early period, and ova afterwards. The reproductive organ is simple, unpaired, and moored by a median dorsal fold of peritoneum. Owing to the large size of the ova, the ovary is very conspicuous in full-grown forms. When the ova are freed from the ovary, they pass into the body cavity. Each has an oval horny membrane, with a circlet of knobbed processes at each end. By these they become entangled together. There are no genital ducts, but just above the anus there is a large genital pore opening from the body cavity into the integumentary cloaca. The development is still unknown.

Besides *Myxine glutinosa*, two other species are known—one from Japan, another from the Magellan Straits. The genus *Bdellostoma*, from the Pacific coasts of America, off the Cape of Good Hope, etc., is nearly allied.

The best-known species, *Bdellostoma dombeyi*, resembles the hag in many ways. It lives at the bottom of the sea, at depths of a hundred fathoms or more, and is often found inside caught halibut, etc. The gill-pouches have separate openings, and are extraordinarily variable in number, from six to fourteen on either side—a variability perhaps pointing to ancestral reduction from a larger number (cf. *Amphioxus*). Ayers' experiments show that the removal of one or both ears in this form does not materially affect equilibration.



SECOND TYPE. *Petromyzon*—The Lamprey.

There are three British species—the sea lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*), over 3 ft. in length; the river lampern (*P. fluviatilis*), nearly 2 ft. long; and the small lampern or “stone-grig” (*P. planeri*). They eat worms, small crustaceans, insect larvæ, dead animals, etc.; but they also attach themselves to living fishes, and scrape holes in their skin. As their names suggest, they also fix their mouths to stones, and some draw these together into nests.

The spawning takes place in spring, usually far up rivers. Before laying the eggs, the lamprey seems to fast (cf. salmon, *Protopterus*, frog), and its muscles undergo a granular degeneration (cf. *Protopterus*, tadpole, etc.). Soon after spawning the adults of both sexes die. For reproduction is often the beginning of death as well as of life, though in higher animals the nemesis may be slow. The young are in many ways unlike the parents, and after two or three years pass through a metamorphosis. To the larvæ before metamorphosis the old name *Ammocætes* is often applied.

**Form, skin, and muscles.**—The body is eel-like, with two unpaired dorsal fins, and another round the tail. Two ridges, one on each side of the anus, Dohrn compares to rudimentary pelvic fins. Otherwise there is no trace of limbs.

The skin is scaleless, slimy, and pigmented. Its structure, like that of *Myxine*, is complex. Sensory structures occur on the head and along the sides, and form a lateral line system.

The muscle segments or myomeres are well marked. The suctorial mouth and the rasping “tongue” are very muscular.

**The skeleton.**—The skeleton is wholly cartilaginous. The notochord persists unsegmented, but its firm sheath forms rudimentary neural arches. The skull is imperfectly roofed. There are no distinct jaws, but a cartilaginous ring supports the lips of the mouth. There is a complex basket-work around the gill-pouches, and it is likely that its elements correspond to visceral arches. Fin-rays support



the dorsal and caudal fins, and other skeletal parts occur about the "tongue." The caudal end of the notochord is quite straight.

**Nervous system.**—The brain has the usual parts, but is small and simple; the roof of the fore-brain is composed of non-nervous epithelium; there is a distinct pineal body, with traces of an eye; the oral part of the hypophysis is developed from in front of the mouth, and becomes closely connected with the involution of epiblast which forms the nostril. The spinal cord is flattened; the anterior and posterior roots of the spinal nerves alternate and do not unite; there is no sympathetic system.

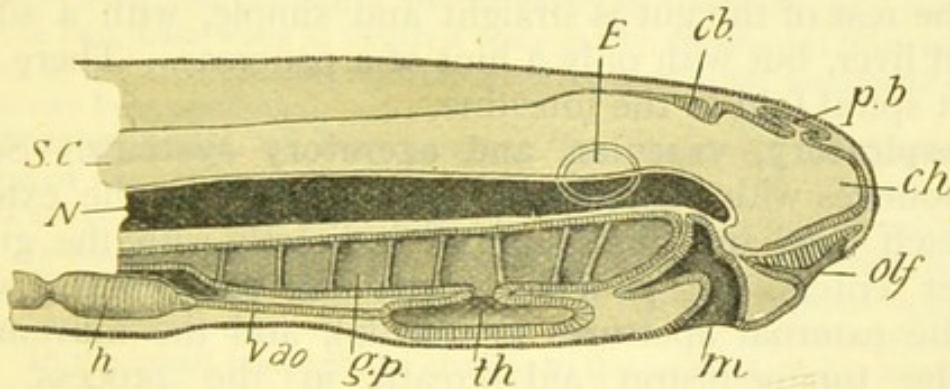


FIG. 201.—Longitudinal vertical section of anterior end of larval lamprey.—After Balfour.

*m.*, Mouth; *th.*, thyroid; *g.p.*, one of the gill-pouches; *v.a.o.*, ventral aorta; *h.*, heart; *N.*, notochord; *S.C.*, spinal cord; *E.*, auditory vesicle; *cb.*, cerebellum; *p.b.*, pineal body; *ch.*, cerebral hemispheres; *olf.*, olfactory involution.

Though the larva sometimes receives the name of "nine-eyes"—which expresses a popular estimate of the branchial apertures—it is blind, for the eyes are rudimentary and hidden. In the adult they rise to the surface, and are fairly well developed. The optic nerves do not cross, as they usually do. The ear has only two semicircular canals instead of the usual three. The single nasal sac does not open posteriorly into the mouth as it does in *Myxine*; though prolonged backwards it ends blindly. Its external opening is at first ventral, but is shunted dorsally and posteriorly.



**Alimentary system.**—The oral funnel, at the base of which the mouth lies, has numerous horny teeth. It is applied to the lamprey's victim, and adheres like a vacuum sucker; the toothed "tongue" works like a piston; both flesh and blood are thus obtained. From the floor of the pharynx a groove is constricted off (cf. p. 453).

From the gullet of the young larva seven gill-pouches open directly to the exterior; in the adult this larval gullet becomes wholly a respiratory tube. It is closed posteriorly, and opens anteriorly into the gullet of the adult, which is a new structure. At the junction of the respiratory tube with the gullet of the adult lie two flaps or vela.

The rest of the gut is straight and simple, with a single-lobed liver, but with only a hint of a pancreas. There is a slight spiral fold in the intestine.

**Respiratory, vascular, and excretory systems.**—Seven gill-pouches with plaited walls open directly to the exterior on each side, and communicate indirectly with the gullet. Water enters the pouches partly viâ the mouth, partly by the external apertures (spiracula), and the movements of the tongue-piston aid greatly in the process. In the larva there is an eighth most anterior pouch which does not open to the surface. It corresponds to the spiracle of Elasmobranchs. With each of the seven open pouches in the larva four thymus rudiments are associated.

The vascular system is essentially the same as in the hag. The red blood cells are biconcave, circular, nucleated discs.

There are two elongated kidneys (mesonephros), each with a wide ureter. The ureters unite terminally in a urogenital sinus (not present in the hag), into which there open two genital pores from the body cavity. The sinus opens, like the anus, into an integumentary cloacal chamber.

**Reproductive system.**—The sexes are separate. The reproductive organ is elongated, unpaired, and moored by a median dorsal mesentery. There are no genital ducts. The ova and spermatozoa are liberated into



the body cavity, and pass by two genital or abdominal pores into the urogenital sinus, and thence to the exterior. In the male there is an ejaculatory structure, or so-called "penis." There are many more males than females.

**Development of *P. planeri*.**—The ripe ovum has a considerable quantity of yolk, but segmentation is total though slightly unequal. A blastosphere is succeeded by a gastrula. The blastopore persists as the anus of the animal, and there is no neurenteric canal.

The formation of the central nervous system is peculiar, for the sides of the epiblastic infolding remain in contact instead of forming an open medullary canal.

In the head region, where the gut is not surrounded by yolk-cells, the mesoblast is formed from hollow folds in "enterocœlic" fashion; but in the trunk region the cushions of hypoblastic yolk-cells change gradually into mesoblast, and acquire a coelom cavity in "schizocœlic" fashion. Thus the two main ways in which a body cavity arises—(a) from coelom pouches of the archenteron, (b) from a splitting of solid mesoblast rudiments—are here combined.

**Metamorphosis of Lampreys.**—The larvæ live wallowing in the sand or mud of streams, and feed on minute animals. Those of *P. planeri* are so unlike the adults that they were once referred to a distinct genus *Ammocetes*, and though a Strasburg fisherman, Baldner, is said to have discovered their true nature about two hundred years ago, the fact was overlooked until August Müller traced the metamorphosis in 1856. In the small lampern the change to the adult state is sometimes postponed until the autumn of the fourth or fifth year, when it completes itself rapidly. Less is known about the metamorphosis of the other species.

In the *Ammocetes*, or larva before metamorphosis, the head is small, the dorsal fin is continuous, the upper lip is semicircular, the lower lip is small and separate, the mouth is toothless and not suctorial, the brain is long and narrow, the eyes are half made and hidden beneath the skin; the future gullet, as distinguished from the respiratory tube, is not yet developed.

Lampreys are distributed in the rivers and seas of north and south temperate regions. They are often used as food. Besides *Petromyzon* there are several related genera, e.g. *Mordacia* and *Geotria*, from the coasts of Chili and Australia, and *Ichthyomyzon*, from the west coast of N. America. Certain structures called "conodonts," from very ancient (Silurian) strata, have been interpreted as teeth of lampreys or hags.



*Contrast between Hag and Lamprey.*

HAG ( <i>Myxine</i> ).	LAMPREY ( <i>Petromyzon</i> ).
Exclusively marine. The fin is confined to the tail. Numerous large glands in the complex, slimy skin. Mouth with barbules, no lips, few teeth.	In rivers and seas. Two unpaired dorsal fins. Sensory structures in the complex, slimy, pigmented skin. No barbules, but lips, and many teeth.
Skull without any roof. Skeletal system less developed than in the lamprey. Only a hint of a branchial basket.	Skull very imperfectly roofed. Hints of vertebral arches. Cartilaginous basket-work around gill-pouches.
Eyes hidden and rudimentary.	Eyes hidden and retarded in the larva, exposed and complete in adult.
Ear with one semicircular canal. Nasal sac opens posteriorly into the mouth cavity.	Ear with two semicircular canals. Nasal sac ends blindly.
Six pairs of gill-pouches, opening directly into the gullet, less directly to the exterior.	Seven pairs of gill-pouches, opening directly to the exterior, less directly into the adult gullet.
Longitudinal ridges in the intestine.	A slight spiral fold in the intestine.
No urogenital sinus; one genital pore.	A urogenital sinus, and two genital pores.
Ova large and oval, with attaching threads. Development unknown.	Ova small and spherical. Development with metamorphosis.

**Palæospondylus gunni.**—Under this title Dr. Traquair has recently described a remarkable fossil form from the Old Red Sandstone of Caithness. He speaks of it as a "strange relic of early vertebrate life."

It is a dainty little creature, somewhat tadpole-like at first sight, usually under an inch in length. The following characters point strongly to its affinities with Cyclostomata:—

(1) "The skull is apparently formed of calcified cartilage, and devoid of discrete ossifications." An anterior part is comparable to the trabecular and palatal region of a lamprey's skull; a posterior part is comparable to the parachordal region and auditory capsules.

(2) "There is a median opening or ring, surrounded with cirri, and presumably nasal, in the front of the head" (*n.*, Fig. 202).

(3) "There are neither jaws nor limbs."

(4) "The rays which support the caudal fin expansion, apparently



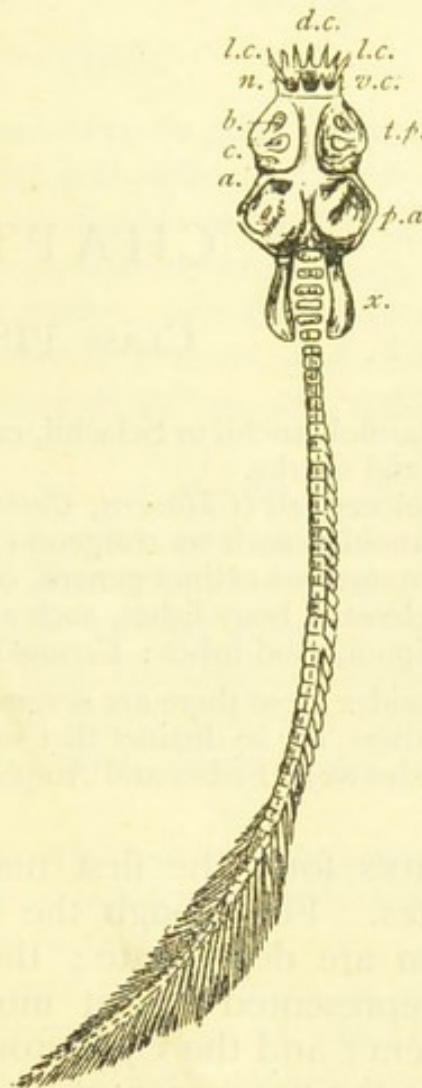
springing from the neural and hæmal arches, are dichotomised (at least the neural ones), as are the corresponding rods in the lamprey."

Just behind the head lie two small oblong plates (*x.*, Fig. 202), closely apposed to the commencement of the vertebral column, one on each side. The notochordal sheath is calcified in the form of ring-shaped or hollow vertebral centra with neural arches. Towards the tail the arches are produced into slender neural spines, opposite which are shorter hæmal ones.

Between Cyclostomata and Fishes, some authorities would rank a number of fossil types without jaws, Cope's Ostracodermi, *e.g.* *Pteraspis*, *Cephalaspis*, *Pterichthys*.

FIG. 202. — Restored skeleton of *Palæospondylus*.—After Traquair.

*d.c.*, cirri of dorsal margin; *l.c.*, long lateral cirri; *v.c.*, cirri of ventral margin; *n.*, nasal ring; *t.p.*, anterior trabeculo-palatine part of cranium; *b.*, anterior depression or fenestra; *c.*, posterior depression or fenestra; *a.*, lobe divided off from anterior part; *p.a.*, posterior or parachordal part of cranium; *x.*, post-occipital plates.





## CHAPTER XXII.

### CLASS PISCES—FISHES.

Elasmobranchii or Selachii, cartilaginous fishes, *e.g.* skates, dog-fishes, and sharks.

Holocephali (*Chimæra*, *Callorhynchus*, and *Harriotta*).

Ganoidei, such as sturgeon (*Acipenser*) and bony pike (*Lepidosteus*); numerous extinct genera, only seven extant.

Teleostei, bony fishes, such as cod, herring, salmon, flounder, eel.

Dipnoi, mud-fishes: *Ceratodus*, *Protopterus*, *Lepidosiren*.

Besides these there are several extinct orders. The Dipnoi, or double breathers, are so distinct that some would place them as an independent class between Fishes and Amphibians.

FISHES form the first markedly successful class of Vertebrates. For though the Tunicates are numerous, most of them are degenerate; the level attained by the lancelets is represented by, at most, two or three closely related genera; and the Cyclostomata are also few in number.

In the possession of a vertebrate axis and central nervous system, in the general integration of their structure, and in their great fecundity, Fishes have an easy pre-eminence over their Invertebrate inferiors. As successfully adapted forms—with typically wedge-like bodies, supple muscular tails, fin-like limbs, and the like—they may well compare with Birds in their mastery of the medium in which they live.

Their success may be read in the immense number of individuals, species, and genera, not only now, but in the past; in the geological record which shows how the cartilaginous Elasmobranchs have persisted strongly from Silurian ages, or how the mysterious decadence of the Ganoid order has been followed by a yet richer predominance of the modern Bony Fishes; and, furthermore, in the plasticity with which many types appear to have assumed particular specialisations,



such as the lungs of Dipnoi, which point forward to the epoch-making transition from water to dry land.

## GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Fishes are aquatic Vertebrates, breathing by gills,—vascular outgrowths of the pharynx, bordering gill-clefts and supported by gill-arches. In Dipnoi a single or double outgrowth from the gut—the air- or swim-bladder—functions as a lung, air being inspired at the surface of the water. In Ganoids and in most Teleosteans the same structure is present, but though occasionally of some slight use in respiration, is typically hydrostatic.*

*Two pairs of non-digitate limbs, i.e. in the form of fins, are usually present, and there are also unpaired median fins, supported by dermal fin-rays. There are two great types of paired fin. In Dipnoi, and in some extinct forms, the fin has a central segmented axis, which (e.g. Ceratodus) bears on each side a series of radial pieces. In other fishes the radials diverge outwards on one side from several basal pieces, and there is no median axis.*

*The skin usually bears numerous scales, in great part due to the dermis, but covered by a layer of epidermis, which may produce enamel. They vary greatly in form and texture, are suppressed in eels and electric fishes, and rudimentary in some other forms. Numerous glandular cells occur in the skin, but these are not compacted into multicellular glands, except in Dipnoi and a few poisonous fishes. The skin also bears sensory structures, usually aggregated on the head, and arranged in one or more "lateral lines" along the trunk. There are no muscular elements in the dermis.*

*In many the gut ends in a cloaca, in others a distinct anus lies in front of the genital and urinary aperture, or apertures.*

*The heart is two-chambered, and contains only venous blood, except in the Dipnoi, where it shows hints of becoming three-chambered, and receives pure blood from the lungs as well as impure blood from the body. Apart from the Dipnoi, the heart has a single auricle receiving impure blood from the body, and a ventricle which drives this through a ventral aorta to the gills, whence the purified blood flows to the head and by a dorsal aorta to the body. In addition to the*



two essential chambers of the heart, there is a sinus venosus, which serves as a porch to the auricle, and there is often a muscular conus arteriosus in front of the ventricle, or a bulbus arteriosus at the base of the ventral aorta. Except in Dipnoi, there is no vein which exactly corresponds to what is known in all higher Vertebrates as the inferior vena cava, i.e. a single vessel receiving hepatic veins from the liver, renal veins from kidneys, and others from the posterior region. The kidney is usually a persistent mesonephros.

There is no distinct indication of an outgrowth from the hind end of the gut comparable to that which forms the bladder of Amphibians or the allantois of higher Vertebrates.

Most fishes lay eggs which are fertilised in the water.

First type of FISHES. The Skate (*Raja*)—of the order Elasmobranchii.

The smooth skate (*R. batis*), the thornback (*R. clavata*), and the ray (*R. maculata*), and other species are common off British coasts. They are very voracious fishes, and live on the bottom at considerable depths.

**External characters.**—The body is flattened from above downwards or dorso-ventrally, unlike that of the bony flat-fishes, such as plaice and flounder, which are flattened from side to side. The skate rests on its ventral surface, the flounder on its side. The triangular snout, the broad pectoral fins, the long tail with small unpaired fins, are obvious features. On the dorsal surface the skin is pigmented and studded with placoid scales; on the top of the skull there are two unroofed areas or fontanelles; numerous jointed radials support the pectoral fins. Behind the lidless eyes are the spiracles—the first of the obvious gill-slits, opening dorsally, containing a rudimentary gill, and communicating posteriorly with the mouth cavity. On the ventral surface are seen the sensory mucus canals, the transverse mouth and the nostrils incompletely separated from it, as if in double harelip, the five pairs of gill apertures, the cloacal aperture and two abdominal pores beside it. Pectoral and pelvic girdles support the fore- and hind-fins. In the male the hind-fins are in part modified into complex copulatory “claspers.”



**The skin.**—On the dorsal pigmented surface, embedded in the dermis, there are many “skin-teeth,” or “dermal denticles,” or “placoid scales.” Each is based in bone, cored with dentine or ivory, tipped with enamel. The enamel is mainly, though not (it seems) wholly due to the ectoderm (epidermis), the rest to the mesoderm (dermis or cutis); the whole arises as a skin papilla. It may be noted that enamel is practically inorganic, the cells having been replaced by lime-salts, that dentine has 34 per cent. of organic matter (apart from water), and that bone is a definite cellular tissue. On the ventral unpigmented or less pigmented surface there are numerous mucus canals or jelly tubes, sensory in function. Some are also present on the dorsal aspect, especially about the head. Most of the slime exudes from glandular goblet cells in the epidermis.

**Muscular system.**—In the posterior part of the body and in the tail, the segmental arrangement of the muscles may be recognised. The large muscles which work the jaws are noteworthy. Professor Cossar Ewart has described a rudimentary electric organ in the tail region of *Raja batis* and *R. clavata*, apparently too incipient to be of any use.

Electric organs are best developed in two Teleostean fishes—a S. American eel (*Gymnotus*) and an African Siluroid (*Malapterurus*), and in the Elasmobranch *Torpedo*. In *Gymnotus* they lie ventrally along the tail, in *Malapterurus* they extend as a sheath around the body, and in *Torpedo* they lie on each side of the head, between the gills and the anterior part of the pectoral fin. In other cases where they are slightly developed (certain Elasmobranchs and Teleosteans), they lie in the tail. Separated from one another by connective tissue partitions, are numerous “electric plates,” which consist of strangely modified muscle substance and numerous nerve endings. The electric discharge is very distinct in the three forms noted above, and is controlled in some measure at least by the animal.

**The skeleton.**—The skeleton is for the most part cartilaginous, but here and there ossification has begun, as a crust over many parts, more deeply in the vertebræ, teeth, and scales.

The vertebral column consists of an anterior plate not divided into vertebræ, and of a posterior series of distinct vertebræ. Each of these has a biconcave or amphicœlous centrum. From each side of the centrum a transverse



process projects outwards, and bears a minute hint of a rib. From the dorsal surface of each centrum two neural processes arise, and arch upwards for a short distance on each side of the spinal cord. Between each two vertebræ there is at each side a broad interneural plate, which not only fills what would be a gap between the neural processes

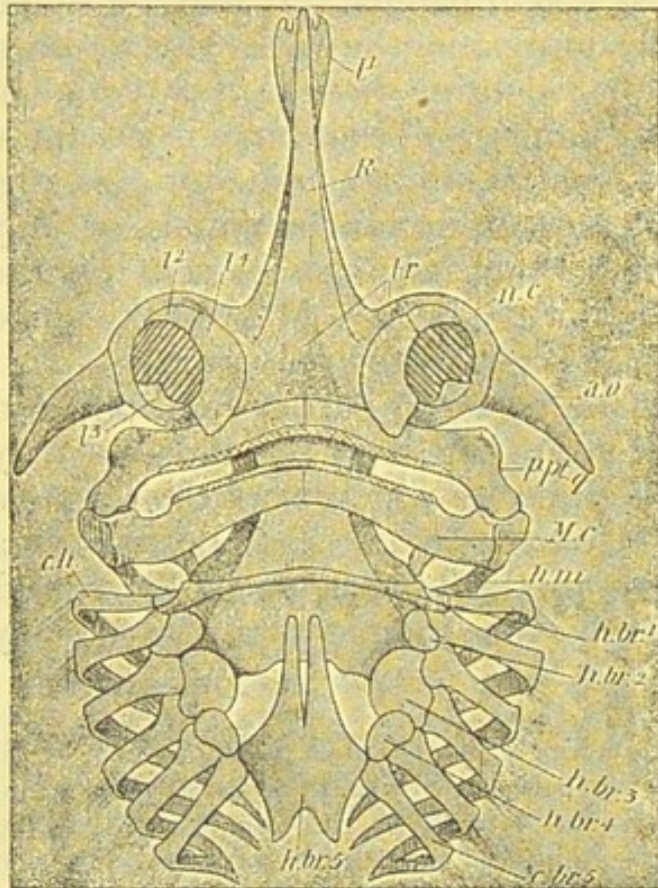


FIG. 203.—Under surface of skull and arches of skate.—After W. K. Parker.

*l.1*, First labial cartilage; *R.*, rostrum; *tr.*, trabecular region; *n.c.*, nasal capsule; *a.o.*, antorbital cartilage; *p.pt.q.*, palato-ptyergo-quadrates; *M.c.*, Meckel's cartilage; *h.m.*, hyo-mandibular; *h.br.1-5*, hypobranchials; *c.br.5*, fifth ceratobranchial; *c.h.*, cerato-hyal; *l.2-4*, labial cartilages.

a spacious cavity for the brain, a large posterior aperture or foramen magnum through which the spinal cord passes, two condyles working on the end of the vertebral plate, a large ear capsule on each side posteriorly, a similar nasal capsule on each side anteriorly, a long rostrum in front, two fontanelles on the roof. Compared with the skull of a cod or of a higher Vertebrate, that of a skate is simple; it is not ossified, nor

and the slightly developed neural spine, but also links the vertebræ together, so that on surface view the segmentation of the vertebral column is far from obvious. In the caudal vertebræ, what seem to be the transverse processes are directed downwards, to form a hæmal arch enclosing the caudal artery and vein. In the lozenge-shaped spaces between the vertebræ lie gelatinous remains of the notochord. The vertebral column develops, as usual, from the mesodermic sheath of the endodermic notochord.

The skull is a cartilaginous case, with



divided into distinct regions, nor has it anything corresponding to the investing membrane bones, which in higher animals are added to the original foundations of the skull, nor do the visceral arches in the skate take part in forming the skull, which arises, as usual (see p. 431), from parachordals, trabeculæ, sense capsules, etc.

The visceral arches are primitively supports for the wall of the anterior part of the food canal, but at least two of them are much modified in connection with the jaws.

The upper jaw of the skate is a strong transverse bar,

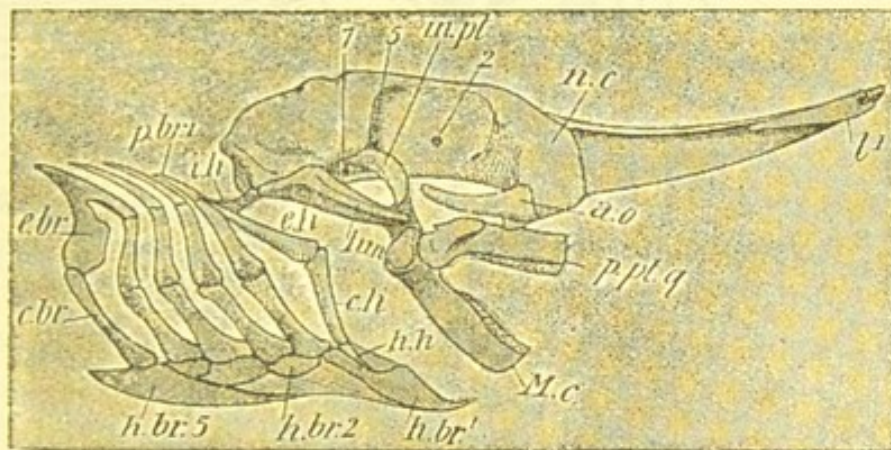


FIG. 204.—Side view of skate's skull.  
—After W. K. Parker.

*l.*, First labial cartilage; *n.c.*, nasal capsule; *a.o.*, antorbital; *p.pt.q.*, palato-ptyerygo-quadrate; *M.c.*, Meckel's cartilage; *h.m.*, hyo-mandibular; *e.h.*, epi-hyal; *c.h.*, cerato-hyal; *h.h.*, hypohyal; *h.br.1-5*, hypobranchials; *c.br.*, ceratobranchial; *e.br.*, epibranchial; *p.br.*, first prebranchial; *i.h.*, inter-hyal; *m.pt.*, meta-ptyerygoid; 2, 5, 7, foramina of exit of the corresponding nerves.

formed from the union of two palato-ptyerygo-quadrate cartilages. The lower jaw is a similar bar formed from the union of two Meckel's cartilages.

From the ear capsule to the articulation of upper and lower jaw there extends on each side a club-shaped cartilage, which connects the jaws with the skull, known as the hyo-mandibular or suspensorium. It is the upper half of the second arch. Attached to it is a slender four-jointed rod—the lower half of the hyoid arch.

Then follow five branchial arches, each primarily four-jointed, forming the framework of the gill-bearing region.



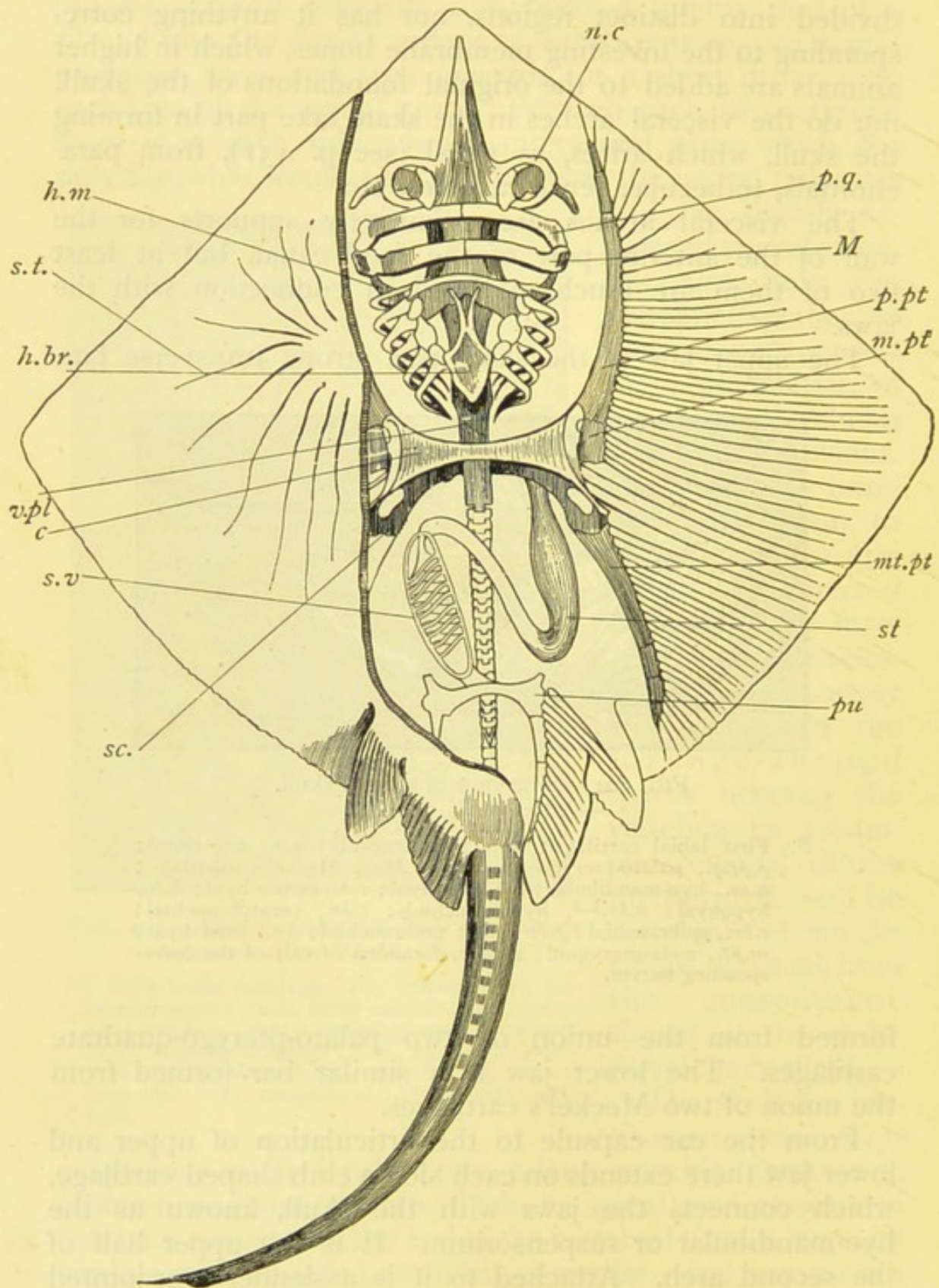


FIG. 205.—Skeleton of skate.—From a preparation.

In the skull notice the anterior rostrum, the nasal capsules (*n.c.*) with the antorbital cartilages projecting laterally; the palatopterygo-quadrates (*p.q.*) or upper jaw; Meckel's



Of less importance are four labial cartilages about each nasal capsule, an antorbital cartilage uniting the nasal capsule with the end of the pectoral fin, and a spiracular or meta-pterygoid cartilage supporting the rudimentary gill in the spiracle.

The pectoral girdle consists of an incomplete hoop of cartilage attached dorsally to the crest of the vertebral plate. The ventral region is distinguished as the coracoid, and is separated from the dorsal or scapular region by three facets, to which the three basal pieces of the pectoral fin are fixed. A separated portion of the girdle forms the supra-scapula, which connects the scapula with the crest of the vertebral plate.

Of the three basal pieces of the fin, the anterior or propterygium and the posterior or metapterygium are large, the median or mesopterygium is small. All bear jointed radials, which are parts of the endoskeleton; a few radials articulate directly with the shoulder girdle (see Fig. 205). The true fin-rays, comparable to the dermal rays in the fins of Bony Fishes, are represented by "horny" fibres.

The pelvic girdle is simpler than the pectoral, and is not fixed to the vertebral column. Its dorsal region is prolonged into an iliac process, while anteriorly a prepubic process projects from the ventral (pubic) bar. The girdle bears two articulating facets, to the posterior of which the strong basal piece or metapterygium of the hind-limb is attached. From this, and from the anterior facet of the girdle, the jointed radials proceed. The claspers of the males are closely connected with the posterior part of the hind-limb, and have a complex cartilaginous skeleton and an associated gland.

---

cartilage (*M.*) forming the lower jaw; and the hyo-mandibular (*h.m.*) which suspends the jaws to the skull. A little further back are seen the five branchial arches and the anterior hyoid arch; *h.br.*, the fifth hypobranchial; *v.pl.*, the vertebral plate. At the right is seen the skeleton of the paired fins, at the left the surface of the skin with the sensory tubes (*s.t.*); *sc.*, the scapular region of the shoulder-girdle, with the scapular fontanelle; *c.*, the coracoid region; *p.pt.*, the anterior basal cartilage or pro-pterygium; *m.pt.*, the meso-pterygium; *mt.pt.*, the meta-pterygium; all three bear jointed radials, while a few, as shown here, articulate directly with the shoulder-girdle; *pu.*, pubic bar of pelvic girdle; *st.*, stomach; *s.v.*, spiral valve of intestine.



**The brain.**—The brain (see p. 438) has the following parts:—

1. The fused cerebral hemispheres or prosencephalon, with a nervous roof, and without ventricles.
2. The thalamencephalon or region of the optic thalami, with a thread-like pineal body above, infundibulum and pituitary body below, thinly roofed third ventricle within.
3. The mesencephalon or mid-brain, with the optic lobes above, the crura cerebri below, the iter passing between.
4. The cerebellum, with an anterior and a posterior lobe, both marked by ridges and grooves.
5. The medulla oblongata, with thin vascular roof, with dorso-lateral extensions called "restiform bodies."

The region beneath the thalamencephalon bears—(a) two ovoid inferior lobes; (b) the infundibulum, which carries the pituitary body; and (c) a thin-walled three-lobed saccus vasculosus, situated between the pituitary body and the inferior lobes.

**Cranial nerves.**<sup>1</sup>—Owing to the flat form of the skate and its frequently large size, the dissection of the cranial nerves is perhaps easier than in any other Vertebrate. Expecting practical verification, we shall describe their distribution in some detail, following in regard to certain points the investigations of Professor Cossar Ewart.

- I. The *olfactory*, rising from the olfactory lobes of the cerebral hemispheres, extend to the nostrils, and there expand in olfactory bulbs, which give off small nerves to the nostrils.
- II. The *optic*, leaving the region of the optic thalami, cross in an optic chiasma, and extend to the retina of the eye.
- III. The *oculomotor* or *ciliary*, arising from the crura cerebri, near the mid-ventral line, supply four of the six muscles of the eye. There is a ciliary ganglion in connection with III., and also with the ganglion of the ophthalmicus profundus.
- IV. The *pathetic* or *trochlear* are small nerves emerging dorsally from between the mid- and hind-brain, and supplying the superior oblique muscles of the eye. It is possible that they really belong to V.
- V. The *trigeminal*, or nerve of the "mouth-cleft,"

<sup>1</sup> I have to acknowledge indebtedness to Dr. Beard for his kindness in helping me to state the distribution of these nerves.



arising from the medulla oblongata (as do all that follow), has a (Gasserian) ganglion on its root, and three main branches—the sensory *maxillary*, which unites with the inner buccal of VII.; the motor *mandibular*, which innervates the muscles of the jaws; and the sensory *superficial ophthalmic* (or orbitonasal), which runs over the eye to the snout, closely united (inside the same sheath) with a similar branch of VII.

Parallel to these superficial ophthalmics, internal to and above the inner buccal of VII., there is a ganglionated *ophthalmicus profundus*, which sends branches to the eyeball, snout, etc., and is referred by some to III., by others to V., and is regarded by others as an independent nerve.

VI. The *abducens*, a slender nerve, arising near the mid-ventral line, adjacent to V. and VIII., and hidden beneath the former, supplies the external rectus muscle of the eye.

VII. The *facial*, the nerve of the spiracular cleft, supplies all the five groups of ampullæ on the head, and has numerous branches.

1. The ophthalmicus superficialis runs over and past the eye, in intimate association with the similar branch of V., and supplies ampullæ on the snout.
2. The inner buccal runs under the eye, through the nasal capsule, to inner buccal ampullæ. The outer buccal runs under the eye, external to the olfactory capsule, to outer buccal ampullæ.
3. The large hyomandibular runs directly outwards behind the spiracle to hyoid ampullæ. It gives off minor hyoidean nerves.
4. The external mandibular runs behind and outside of the mandibular muscle to mandibular ampullæ, and is a branch of the hyo-mandibular.
5. The palatine descends in front of the spiracle to the roof of the mouth. Close beside it there is a prespiracular.
6. The "facial proper," apparently arising from 3, supplies the muscles of the hyoid arch.
7. The "chorda tympani," apparently arising from 3, runs under the spiracle to the inner side of the jaw. With the loss of the sensory ampullæ, the seventh



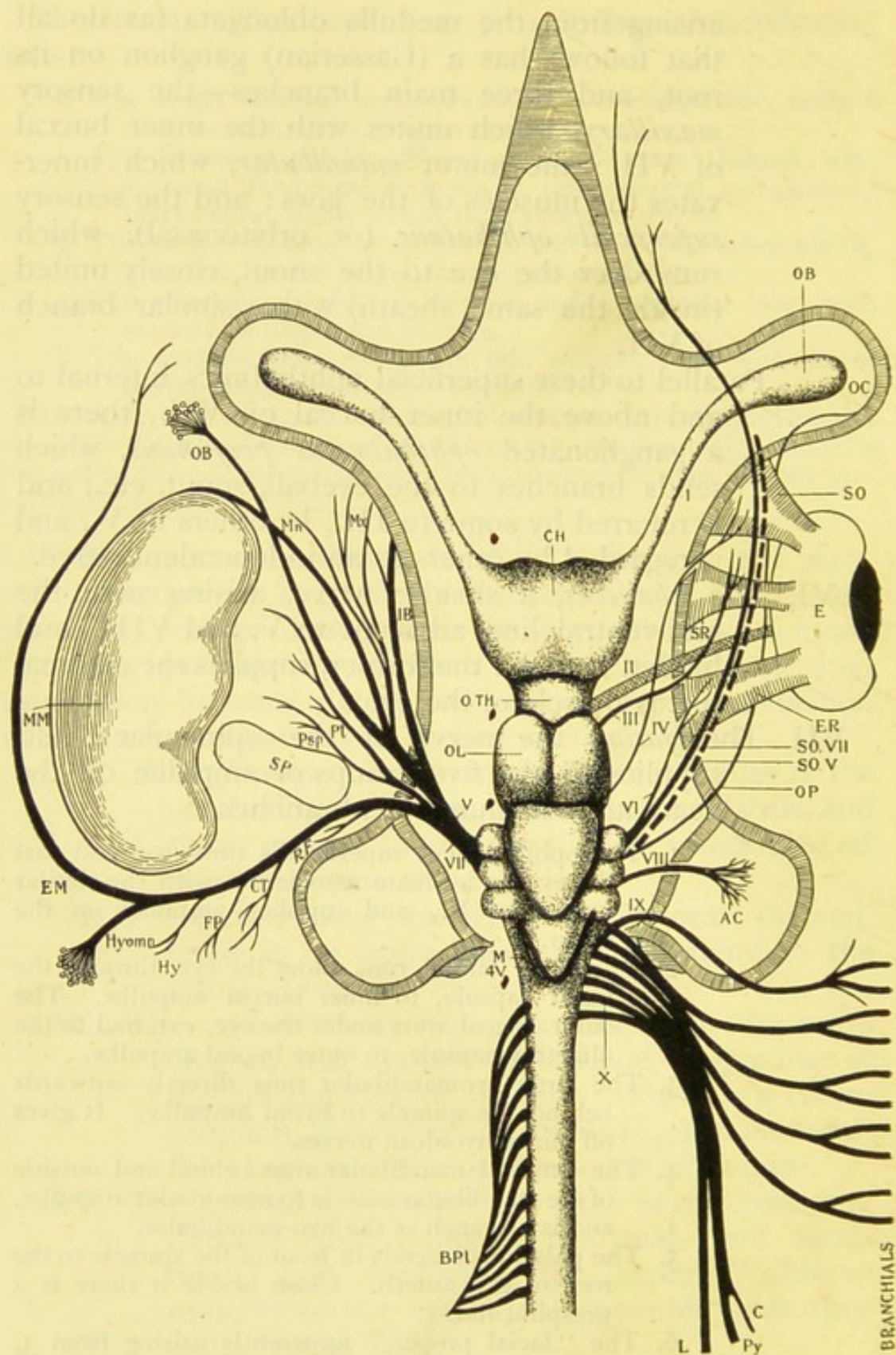


FIG. 206.—Dissection of nerves of skate.

CH., cerebral hemispheres; O.TH., optic thalami; OL., optic lobes; M., medulla; 4V., posterior part of cerebellum, covering fourth ventricle; OB., olfactory bulb; OC., olfactory capsule;



nerve of higher Vertebrates becomes restricted to the last three branches (5, 6, and 7).

A recurrent branch of the facial also runs external to the auditory capsule to IX., and is equivalent to Jacobson's anastomosis in higher forms.

VIII. The *auditory*, arising just behind VII., is the nerve of the ear.

IX. The *glossopharyngeal*, the most typical of all, is the nerve of the first functional gill-cleft. Its root passes through the floor of the auditory capsule, and bears a ganglion above the cleft. Its branches, as named by Beard, are:—

1. Post-branchial, to the muscles of the first branchial arch ;
2. Præ-branchial, arches over the cleft and runs along its front wall ;
3. Intestinal or visceral, to the pharynx ;
4. Supra-branchial or dorsal, to a few sense organs on the mid-dorsal line of the head.

X. The *vagus*, apparently made up of at least four cranial nerves, has numerous roots, and divides into six main ganglionated portions, which supply the four posterior clefts and arches, the posterior jelly-tubes, and the heart and stomach. It thus consists of:—

1. Ganglionated roots with nerves to the clefts and arches (2 to 5 inclusive), with post-branchial, præ-branchial, and pharyngeal branches as in IX.
2. A ganglionated root, arising in front of all the others, from which arises the lateral branch innervating all the posterior sensory tubes.
3. From the fourth branchial branch arises the ganglionated intestinal which innervates the heart and the stomach.

The spinal cord lies in the cartilaginous neural archway

---

SO., superior oblique muscle ; E., eye ; SR., superior rectus ; ER., external rectus ; SO. VII., superficial ophthalmic branch of VII. ; SO. V., superficial ophthalmic branch of V ; OP., ophthalmicus profundus ; A.C., auditory capsule ; B.Pl., brachial-plexus ; R.F., recurrent facial ; C.T., chorda tympani ; F.P., facial proper ; Hy., hyoidean ; Hyomn., hyomandibular ; E.M., external mandibular ; M.M., mandibular muscle ; Sp., spiracle ; P.sp., prespiracular ; Pl., palatine ; O.B., outer buccal ; Mn., mandibular ; Mx., maxillary ; I.B., inner buccal ; L., lateral branch of X. ; Py., pyloric branch ; C., cardiac branch.



above the vertebral column, is divided by deep dorsal and ventral fissures, and gives off numerous spinal nerves, formed as usual from the union of dorsal (sensory) and ventral (motor) roots. The first sixteen or eighteen nerves form the brachial plexus, which supplies the pectoral fin.

The sympathetic system consists of a longitudinal ganglionated cord along each side of the vertebral column.

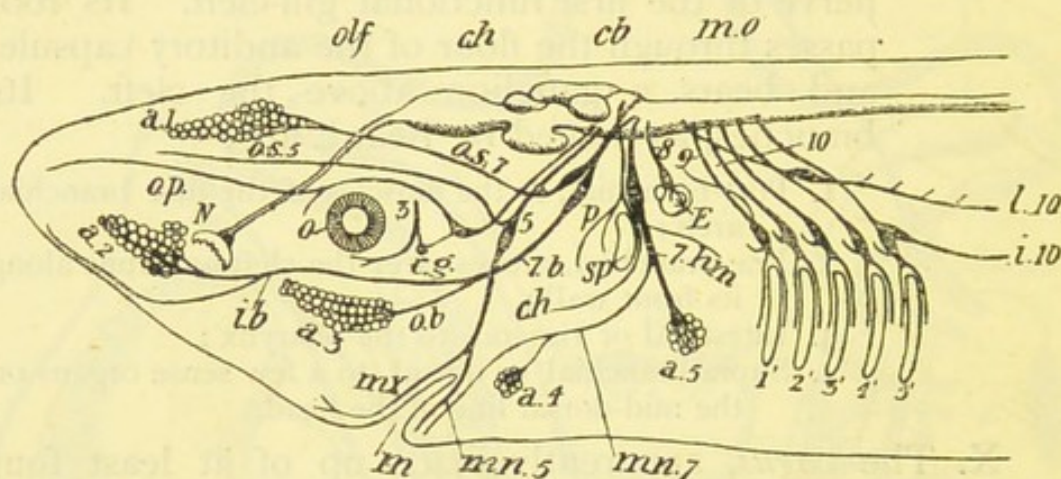


FIG. 207.—Side view of chief cranial nerves of Elasmobranchs.  
—Slightly modified from Cossar Ewart.

*olf.*, Over olfactory nerve; *ch.*, over cerebral hemispheres; *cb.*, over cerebellum; *m.o.*, over medulla oblongata; *m.*, mouth; *mx.*, maxillary branch of 5; *mn.5*, mandibular branch of 5; *mn.7*, mandibular branch of seventh nerve; *a.1-5*, groups of ampullæ; *o.s.5*, superficial ophthalmic of 5; *o.p.*, ophthalmicus profundus; *o.s.7*, superficial ophthalmic of 7; *N.*, nostril; 3, oculomotor; *c.g.*, ciliary ganglion; 5, trigeminal; *i.b.*, inner buccal; *o.b.*, outer buccal; *7b.*, buccal of 7; *p.*, palatal of 7; *sp.*, spiracle; *ch.*, chorda tympani; *7.hm.*, hyomandibular of 7; 8, auditory; *E.*, ear; 9, glossopharyngeal; 10, roots of vagus; *l.10*, lateral nerve of vagus; *i.10*, intestinal nerve of vagus; 1'-5', gill-clefts.

### Sense organs.—

- (a) The eyes (see p. 448). The iris has a fringed upper margin.
- (b) The ears (see p. 447). The vestibule is connected with the surface by a delicate canal—the aqueductus vestibuli—a remnant of the original invagination. A small part of the wall of the auditory capsule is covered only by the skin, forming a kind of tympanum. Within the vestibule are calcareous otolithic particles surrounded by a jelly.
- (c) The nasal sacs are cup-like cavities with plaited walls.
- (d) The sensory tubes are best seen on the ventral surface, where they lie just under the skin. At their internal ends lie ampullæ, containing sensory cells. At their outer ends there are pores. It is probable that they are organs partly of touch, and partly of “chemical sense.”



**Alimentary system.**—The mouth is a transverse aperture ; the teeth borne by the jaws are numerous, and those worn away in front are replaced by fresh ones from behind ; nasobuccal grooves connect the nostrils with the corners of the mouth ; the spiracles, which open dorsally behind the eyes, communicate with the buccal cavity ; from the gullet five gill-clefts open ventrally on each side. The stomach, lying to the left, is bent upon itself ; the large brownish liver is trilobed, and has an associated gall-bladder, from which the bile-duct extends to the duodenum—the part of the gut immediately succeeding the stomach ; the whitish pancreas lies at the end of the duodenal loop, and its duct opens opposite the bile-duct. The intestine is exceedingly short, but it contains an internal spiral fold—which greatly increases the absorptive surface.

The development of this spiral intestine is of general interest. The well-nourished gut grows quickly, but its increase in calibre is hindered by the peritoneal mesodermic sheath, and the growth is expressed in an internal invagination or fold. But as the growth continues in length as well as in calibre, and as the gut is fixed at both ends, twisting or coiling or both must result. In Mammals, for instance, the result is a coiled intestine. But in Elasmobranch fishes the coiling or twisting takes place *within* the peritoneal sheath, not along with it. In the case of the skate and some other Elasmobranchs, close twisting occurs, and the so-called spiral valve is mainly due to the fusion of the walls of adjacent twists.

A small "rectal gland" of unknown significance arises as a vascular diverticulum from the end of the gut. The end of the gullet and the anterior portion of the stomach and the rectum are supported by folds of peritoneum,—the membrane which lines the body cavity ; the rest of the gut lies freely. Rectum, ureters, and genital ducts all communicate with the exterior through the common terminal chamber or cloaca. An abdominal pore opens on each side of the cloacal aperture, and puts the body cavity in direct communication with the exterior. Excepting mouth cavity and cloaca, the gut is lined by endoderm.

**Respiratory system.**—The first apparent gill-clefts—the

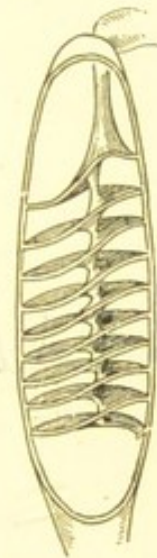


FIG. 208.—Spiral valve of skate.  
— After T. J. Parker.



spiracles—open dorsally behind the eyes. Each contains a rudimentary gill on the anterior wall, supported by a spiracular cartilage. Through the spiracles water may enter or leave the mouth.

There are other five pairs of gill-clefts, separated by partitions, and with ventral apertures. The first is bounded anteriorly by the hyoid arch, posteriorly by the first branchial arch. The hyoid arch bears branchial filaments on its posterior surface; the first four branchial arches bear gill filaments on both surfaces; the fifth branchial arch bears

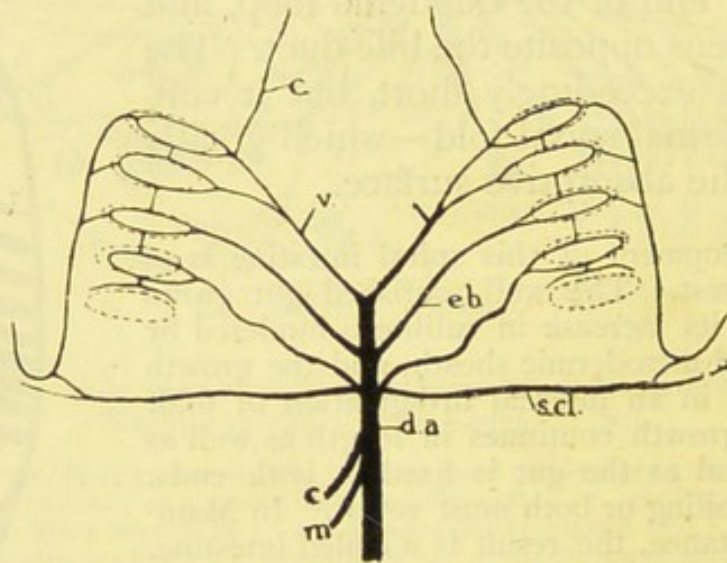


FIG. 209.—Upper part of the dorsal aorta in the skate.  
—After Monro.

*d.a.*, Dorsal aorta; *c.*, coeliac artery; *m.*, superior mesenteric;  
*s.cl.*, subclavian; *e.b.*, efferent branchial vessels, three formed  
from the union of nine; *v.*, vertebral; *c.*, carotid.

none. Each set of branchial filaments is called a half gill, and as the first four branchial arches bear a half gill on each side, and the hyoid arch a half on its posterior surface, there are four and a half gills in all. There is no operculum or gill cover.

**Circulatory system.**—The impure blood from the body enters the heart by a bow-shaped sinus venosus, opening into a large thin-walled auricle. Thence through a bivalved aperture the blood passes into the smaller muscular ventricle, and from this it is driven through a contractile conus arteriosus, with three longitudinal rows of five valves, into the ventral aorta.



The ventral aorta gives off a pair of posterior innominate arteries, which take blood to the three posterior gills, and a pair of anterior innominate arteries, which supply the anterior gill and the hyoid half gill on each side.

The purified blood passes from each half gill by an efferent branchial artery. To begin with, there are nine of these on each side, but by union they are reduced first to four and then to three efferent trunks, which combine to form the dorsal aorta.

From the efferent branchial of the hyoid arch a carotid arises, which divides into internal and external branches supplying the brain and

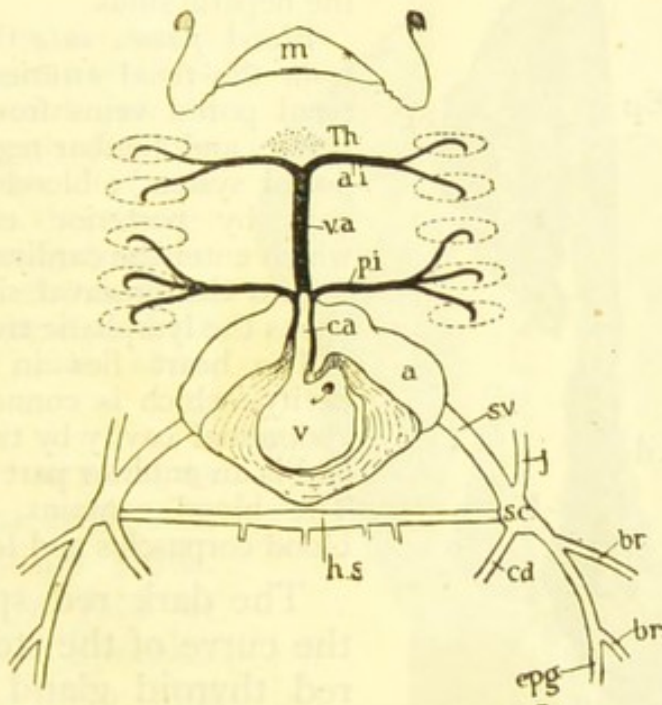


FIG. 210.—Heart and adjacent vessels of skate.—In part after Monro.

*v.*, Ventricle; *c.a.*, conus arteriosus; *p.i.*, posterior innominate; *v.a.*, ventral aorta; *a.i.*, anterior innominate; *Th.*, thyroid; *m.*, mouth; *a.*, auricle; *s.v.*, sinus venosus; *s.c.*, precaval sinus or sinus of Cuvier; *h.s.*, hepatic sinus; *j.*, jugular; *br.*, brachials; *cd.*, cardinal; *epg.*, epigastric.

head. The two internal carotids unite, and pass through a small hole on the ventral surface of the skull. Just after the first and second main efferent branches have united, a vertebral is given off, which passes through a hole in the vertebral plate to the spinal cord and brain.

The dorsal aorta gives off—(1) a subclavian to each pectoral fin; (2) a cœliac to the stomach, duodenum, and liver; (3) a superior mesenteric to the intestine, pancreas, and spleen; (4) spermatic arteries to the reproductive organs; (5) an inferior mesenteric to the rectum; (6) renal arteries to the kidneys; (7) arteries to the pelvic fins. It ends in the caudal artery.

At each end of the bow-shaped sinus venosus there is a precaval sinus. This receives venous blood as follows:—(a) from the head by



a jugular vein; (*b*) from the liver by a hepatic sinus, which runs from one precaval sinus to the other like the string of the bow; (*c*) from a large posterior cardinal sinus (between the reproductive organs) by a cardinal vein on each side; (*d*) from the hind-fin by an epigastric, with which brachials from the fore-limb unite anteriorly. The great cardinal sinus receives blood from the hind-limbs, the kidneys, and other posterior parts.

Blood passes into the liver (*a*) from the coeliac artery, and (*b*) by portal veins from the intestine (the hepatic portal system); blood leaves the liver by hepatic veins which enter the hepatic sinus.

Blood passes into the kidneys (*a*) from the renal arteries, and (*b*) by renal portal veins from the caudal, pelvic, and lumbar regions (the renal portal system); blood leaves the kidneys by posterior cardinal veins, which enter the cardinal sinus.

Into the precaval sinus there also opens the lymphatic trunk.

The heart lies in a pericardial cavity, which is connected with the abdominal cavity by two fine canals, and is an anterior part of the coelom. The blood contains, as usual, red blood corpuscles and leucocytes.

The dark red spleen lies in the curve of the stomach. The red thyroid gland lies just in front of the anterior end of the ventral aorta. The whitish thymus gland is a paired structure lying dorsally above the gills.

**Excretory and reproductive systems.**—The dark red kidneys lie far back on each side of the vertebral column. They are developed from the hind part of the mesonephros.

Several tubes from each kidney combine to form a ureter. The two ureters of the male open into the urogenital sinus, whence the waste products pass out by the cloaca; in the female they open into little bladders,—the dilated ends of the Wolffian ducts,—and thence by a common aperture into the cloaca.

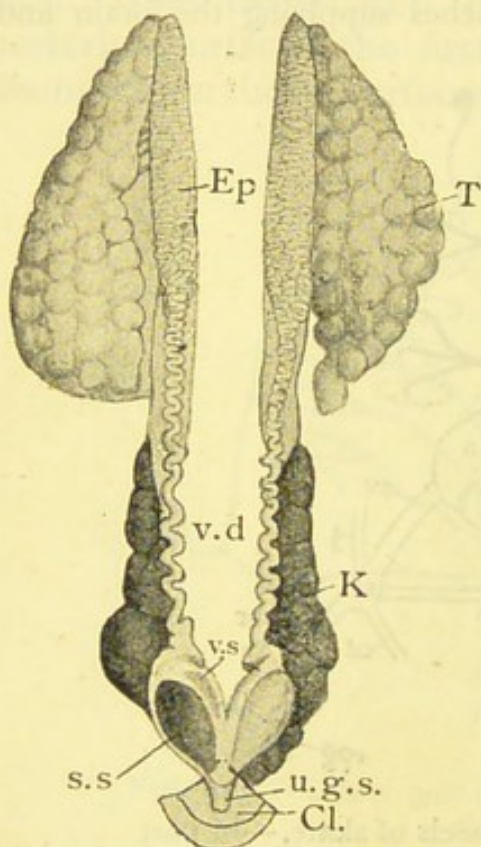


FIG. 211. — Urogenital organs of male skate.—From a specimen in Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*T.*, Testis; *Ep.*, epididymis; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *K.*, kidney; *v.s.*, seminal vesicle; *s.s.*, sperm sac; *u.g.s.*, urogenital sinus; *Cl.*, cloaca.



The segmental duct of each side divides into Wolffian and Müllerian ducts. The Wolffian duct becomes in the male the vas deferens, in the female it is an unimportant Wolffian duct; the Müllerian duct becomes in the female the oviduct, in the male it is a mere rudiment.

The muscles and other organs of Elasmobranchs retain considerable quantities of nitrogenous waste products.

There can be no doubt that the body-cavity helps in excretion, and gets rid of waste through the two abdominal pores. In some Elasmobranchs these are replaced by openings (nephrostomes) into the kidney. Occasionally there are both nephrostomes and abdominal pores.

The male organs or testes lie on each side of the cardinal sinus, moored by a fold of peritoneum. Spermatozoa pass from the testis by vasa efferentia into a tube surrounded anteriorly by epididymis. The tube of the epididymis is continued into the vas deferens, which is dilated posteriorly into a seminal vesicle and an adjacent sperm-sac. Finally, the two vasa deferentia open into the urogenital sinus, whence the spermatozoa pass into the cloaca. Thence, in copulation, they pass into the complex "claspers" of the male, which are said to be inserted into the cloaca of the female.

The female organs or ovaries lie on each side of the cardinal sinus, moored by a fold of peritoneum. In young skates they are like the young testes, but in the adults they

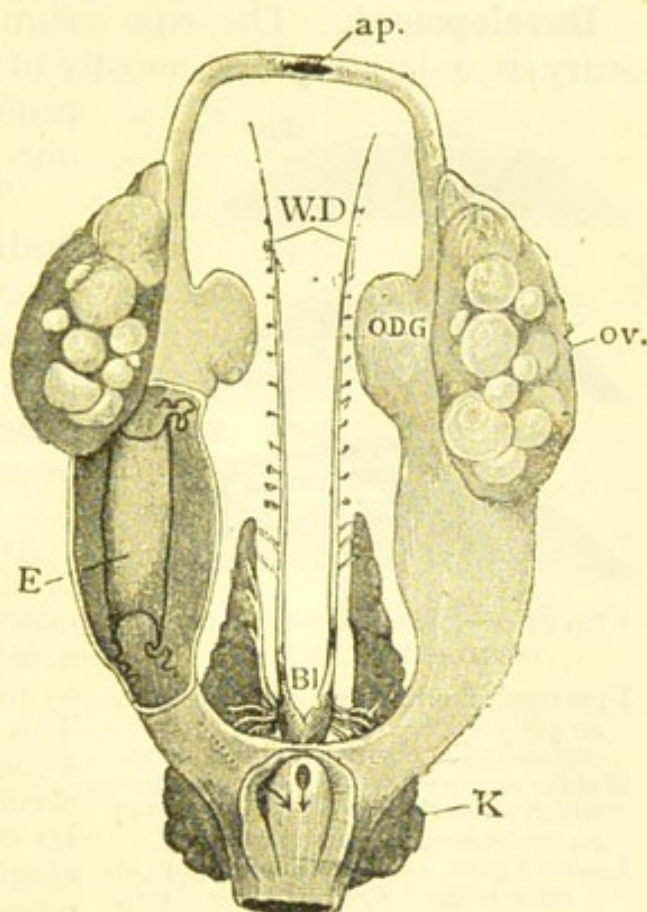


FIG. 212.—Urogenital organs of female skate.—In part after Monro.

*ap.*, Aperture of united oviducts; *W.D.*, Wolffian duct; *ov.*, ovary; *O.D.G.*, oviducal gland; *E.*, egg in mermaid's purse; *Bl.*, bladder at base of Wolffian ducts (arrow into cloaca); *K.*, kidney; arrow from base of oviduct into cloaca.



are covered with large Graafian follicles, each containing an ovum. The ripe ova burst into the body cavity, and enter the single aperture of the oviducts, which are united anteriorly just behind the heart. About the middle of each oviduct there is a large oviducal gland, which secretes the "purse"; the elastic lower portions open into the cloaca.

**Development.**—The ripe ovum which bursts from the ovary is a large sphere, mostly of yolk, with the formative protoplasm concentrated at one pole.

The formation of polar bodies (maturation) takes place at an early stage. Fertilisation occurs in the upper part of the oviduct. Some observers have described the occurrence of polyspermy.

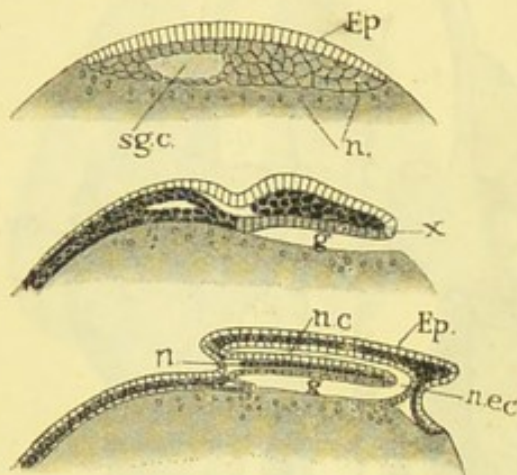


FIG. 213.—Elasmobranch development.—After Balfour.

Uppermost figure shows blastoderm at an early stage. *Ep.*, Epiblast; *sg.c.*, segmentation cavity; *n.*, yolk-nuclei. Middle figure shows the invagination which forms the gut. *x.*, Blastopore; *g.*, archenteron. Mesoderm dark. Lowest figure, a longitudinal section at a later stage. *Ep.*, Epiblast; *n.c.*, neural canal; *n.e.c.*, neurenteric canal; *g.*, gut; *n.*, notochord. Mesoderm dark.

The egg-case of some sharks, *e.g.* the Port Jackson shark (*Cestracion Philippi*) has elastic spiral fringes, and is found securely wedged among the rocks; that of a neighbour species (*C. galeatus*) has reduced spirals ending in a couple of tendrils, which may be 90 in. in length, and serve very effectively to entangle the egg among sea-weed.

The segmentation is meroblastic, being confined to the disc of formative protoplasm. From the edge of the blastoderm, or segmented area, some nuclei (so-called "merocytes") are formed in the outer part of the subjacent yolk (Fig. 213, *n.*). It seems most probable that these are hypoblast elements which assist in the preparation of the yolk for absorption, and eventually degenerate in the empty external yolk-sac.

As the ovum descends further, it is surrounded first by albuminous material, and then by the four-cornered "mermaid's purse" secreted by the walls of the oviducal gland. This purse is composed of keratin—a common skeletal substance which occurs for instance in hair and nails. Its corners are produced into long elastic tendrils, which may twine round sea-weed, and thus moor the egg. Rocked by the waves, the embryo develops, and the young skate leaves the purse at one end.



At the close of segmentation the blastoderm is a lens-shaped disc with two strata of cells. It is thicker at one end—where the embryo begins to be formed. Towards the other end, between the blastoderm and the yolk, lies a segmentation cavity (Fig. 213, *sg.c.*).

At the embryonic end the outer layer or epiblast undergoes a slight invagination (Fig. 213, *x.*), beginning to form the roof of the future gut (*g.*); in other words, establishing the hypoblast. This inflected arc of the blastoderm corresponds to the blastopore or mouth of the gastrula, which is much disguised by the presence of a large quantity of yolk. As the invagination proceeds, the segmentation cavity is obliterated. The floor of the gut is formed by infolding of the lateral walls.

Along the mid-dorsal line of the epiblast a medullary groove appears—the beginning of the central nervous system. Its sides afterwards arch towards one another, and meet to form a medullary canal (Fig. 213, *n.c.*). A posterior communication between this dorsal nervous tube above and the ventral alimentary tube persists for some time as the neurenteric canal (213, *n.e.c.*).

The mesoblast arises as two lateral plates, one on each side of the medullary groove. The plates seem to arise as a pair of solid outgrowths from the wall of the gut. They are afterwards divided into segments. Between the mesoblast plates, along the mid-dorsal line of the gut, the notochord is established (Fig. 213, *n.*).

Besides the internal establishment and differentiation of layers, there are two important processes,—(*a*) the growth of the blastoderm around the yolk, (*b*) the folding off of the embryo from the yolk. The result of the two processes is that the yolk is enclosed in a yolk-sac, with which the embryo is finally connected only by a thin stalk—the umbilical cord.

The history of the yolk is briefly as follows:—It is accumulated by the ovum from neighbouring cells, and from the vascular fluid; it is partly prepared for absorption by the merocytes or yolk-nuclei; it is at first absorbed by the blood vessels of the yolk-sac; at a later stage, absorption by blood vessels becomes less and less important, and the yolk passes inside the embryo and into the gut, where it is digested; the yolk-sac, empty of all but merocytes, degenerates, shrivels, and disappears.



Second type of FISHES. The Haddock (*Gadus aeglefinus*)  
—A type of Teleosteans with closed swim-bladder  
(Physoclysti).

**Form and external features.**—The elongated wedge-like form is well adapted for rapid swimming. The terminal mouth bears a short barbule; this is long in the cod (*G. morrhua*), and absent in the whiting (*G. merlangus*). The nostrils, situated near the end of the snout, have double apertures. The eyes are lidless, but covered with transparent skin. Over the gill-chamber and the four gills lies the

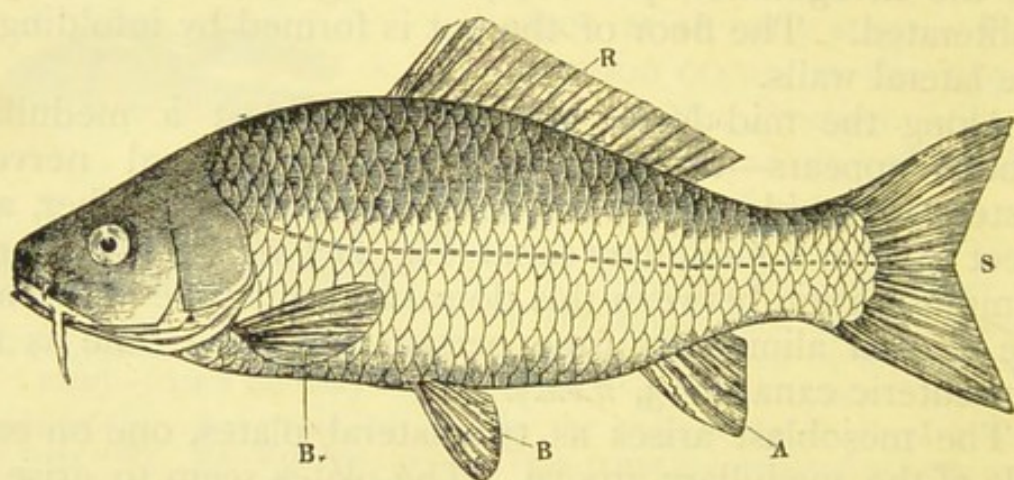


FIG. 214.—External characters of a Teleostean—  
a carp.—After Leunis.

R., Dorsal unpaired fin; S., homocercal caudal fin; A., anal fin;  
B., B., pectoral and pelvic paired fins. Note also the lateral  
line and barbule.

operculum, supported by several bones. Distinct from one another, but closely adjacent, are the anal, genital, and urinary apertures,—named in order from before backwards. Along the sides of the body runs the dark lateral line containing sensory cells. There are three dorsal and two anal fins, and an apparently symmetrical tail fin.

**Skin.**—The small scales which cover the body are developed in the dermis, and are without any bone cells. Their free margin is even, a characteristic to which the term cycloid is applied, in contrast to ctenoid, which describes those scales which have a notched or comb-like free margin. Over the scales extends a delicate partially-pigmented epidermis.



**Appendages.**—The pectoral fins are attached to the shoulder-girdle just behind the branchial aperture. The pelvic or ventral fins, attached to what is at most a rudiment of the pelvic girdle, lie below and slightly in front of the pectorals—far from the normal position of hind limbs.

**Muscular system.**—The main muscles of the body are disposed in segments,—myotomes or myomeres, separated by partitions of connective tissue. The effective swimming organ is the tail, as contrasted with the pectoral fins in the skate.

**Skeleton.**—The Vertebral column consists of biconcave or amphicoelous bony vertebræ, and is divided into two regions only, caudal and pre-caudal. The spaces between the vertebræ are filled by the remains of the notochord. Each centrum in the trunk region bears superior neural processes, uniting in a neural arch crowned by a neural spine, and transverse processes projecting from each side. Articulated to the distal ends of the transverse processes are the downward curving ribs, and also more delicate intermuscular bones which curve upwards. In the caudal vertebræ (Fig. 215), the centra (*c.*) bear not only superior neural processes (*n.a.*), but also inferior hæmal processes (*h.a.*); they are of course without ribs.



FIG. 215.—Caudal vertebra of haddock.

*n.a.*, Neural arch;  
*c.*, centrum;  
*h.a.*, hæmal arch.

At the end of the vertebral column lies a fan-shaped hypural bone which helps to support the tail, and is developed from an enlarged hæmal arch. The fin-rays are jointed flexible rods, which in the dorsal and anal fins are attached to the ends of interspinous bones alternating with the neural and hæmal spines, and connected with them by fibrous tissue.

The skull includes the following bones, which may be grouped in the following regions (the membrane bones in *italics*):—

- (a) Around the foramen magnum: basi-occipital, two ex-occipitals, and a *supra-occipital*.
- (b) Along the roof: *supra-occipital*, *parietals*, *frontals*, mesethmoid, *nasals*. Beneath the *parietals* lie the alisphenoids.



- (c) Along the floor: basi-occipital, *parasphenoid*, *vomers*.  
 (d) Around the ear on each side: sphenotic, pterotic, and epiotic (above), prootic and opisthotic (beneath).  
 (e) In front of and around the orbit: *Parethmoid*, *lachrymal*, *orbitals*.

Thus the haddock's skull shows in two respects an ad-

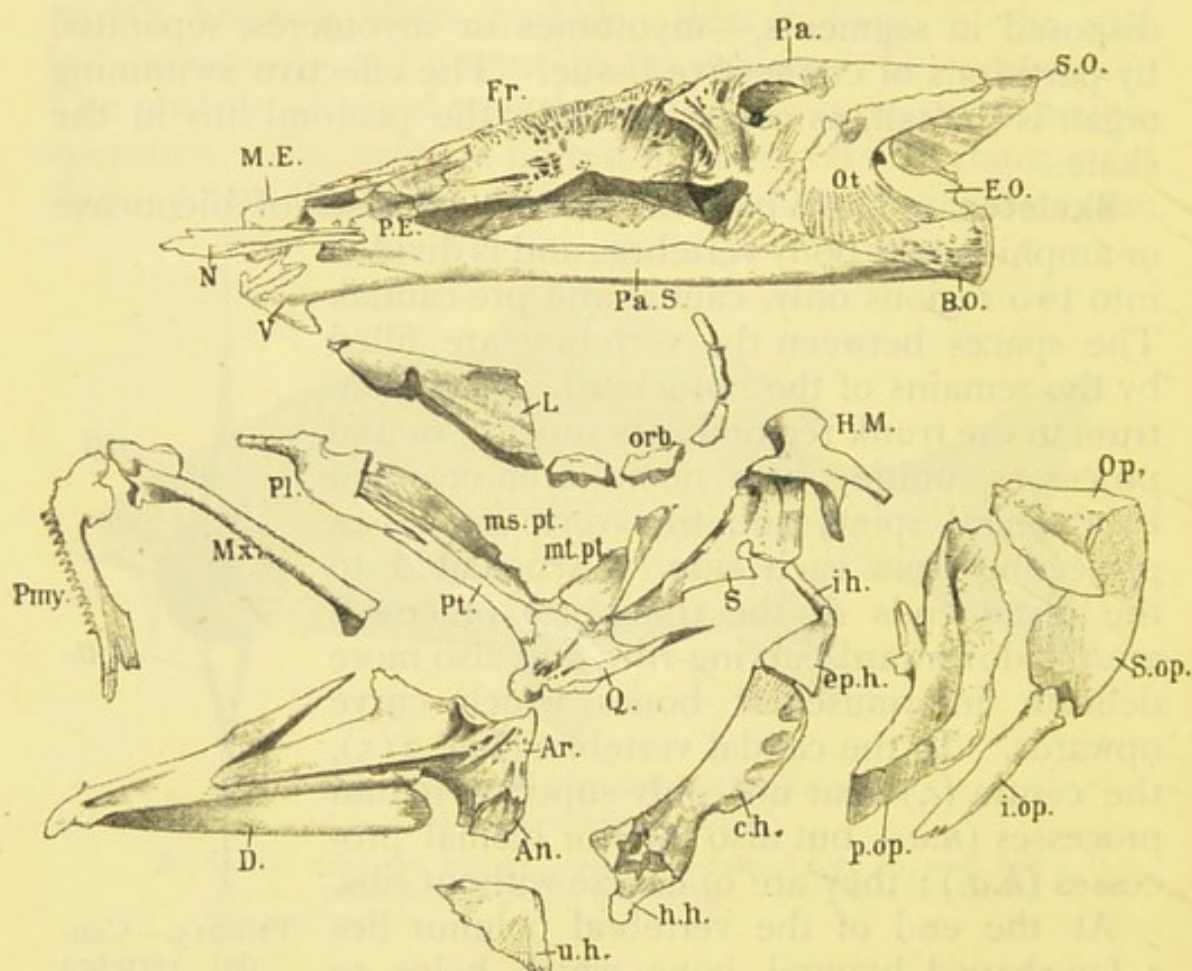


FIG. 216.—Disarticulated skull of cod.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*S.O.*, Supra-occipital; *Pa.*, parietal; *Fr.*, frontal; *M.E.*, mesethmoid; *N.*, nasal; *P.E.*, parethmoid; *Ot.*, otics; *E.O.*, ex-occipital; *B.O.*, basi-occipital; *Pa.S.*, parasphenoid; *V.*, vomer; *L.*, lachrymal; *orb.*, orbitals; *H.M.*, hyomandibular; *S.*, symplectic; *Q.*, quadrate; *Pt.*, pterygoid; *mt.pt.*, metapterygoid; *ms.pt.*, mesopterygoid; *Pl.*, palatine; *Mx.*, maxilla; *Pmy.*, premaxilla; *Ar.*, articular; *An.*, angular; *D.*, dentary; *u.h.*, urohyal; *h.h.*, hypohyal; *c.h.*, ceratohyal; *ep.h.*, epihyal; *ih.*, interhyal; *Op.*, opercular; *S.op.*, sub-opercular; *i.op.*, inter-opercular; *p.op.*, præ-opercular.

vance upon that of the skate: first, in the ossification of the primitive cartilage; and second, in the addition of membrane bones. Of the latter, the parietals and frontals cover over the spaces which in the skate form the fontanelles.



The first or mandibular arch is believed by many to form Meckel's cartilage beneath, and the palato-ptyerygo-quadrate cartilage above. Meckel's cartilage becomes the foundation of the lower jaw, and bears a large tooth-bearing membrane bone—the dentary, a small corner bone—the angular, while the articular element is a cartilage bone. Of the bones associated with the upper part, the palatine lies in front, the quadrate articulates with the lower jaw; while between

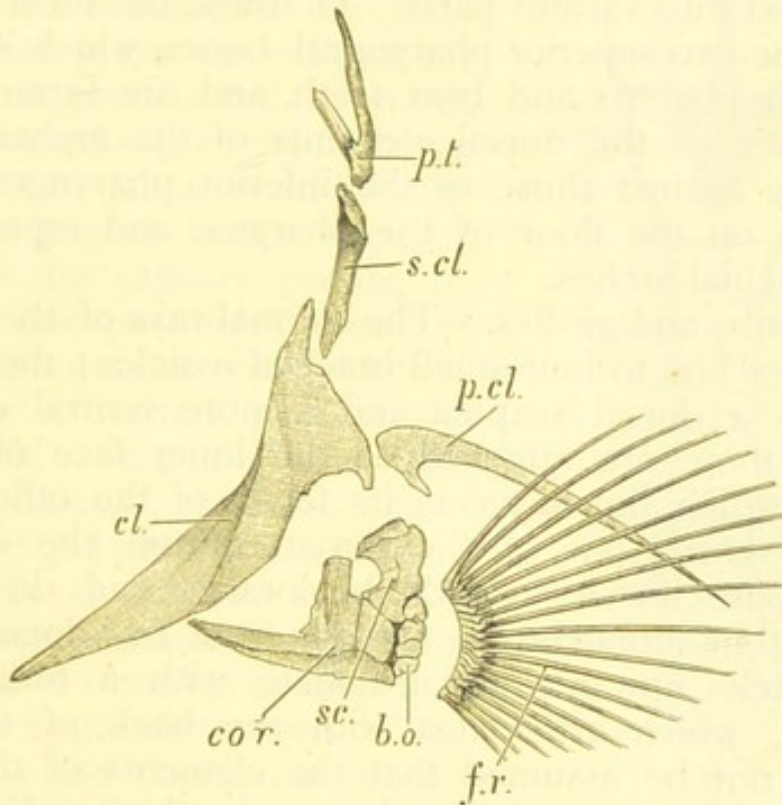


FIG. 217.—Pectoral girdle and fin of cod.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*fr.*, Fin-rays; *b.o.*, brachial ossicles; *cor.*, coracoid; *sc.*, scapula; *cl.*, clavicle; *p.cl.*, post-clavicle; *s.cl.*, supra-clavicle; *p.t.*, post-temporal.

palatine and quadrate lie the pterygoid, the mesopterygoid, and the metapterygoid.

The second or hyoid arch is believed by many to form the hyomandibular and the symplectic above, and various hyoid bones beneath. The hyomandibular, and its inferior segment the symplectic, connect the quadrate with the side of the skull. Of the six hyal bones, the largest and most important is the ceratohyal, which bears seven long branchiostegal rays. It is important to note that the bones formed



in connection with these arches do not yet form an integral part of the skull.

The toothed premaxilla forms the upper part of the gape, while the maxilla which articulates dorsally with the vomer, and nearly reaches the quadrate posteriorly, does not enter into the gape. Both are membrane bones.

In the opercular fold are four membrane bones.

There are four pairs of complete branchial arches, which are divided into various parts. Of these the most interesting are the two superior pharyngeal bones, which lie in the roof of the pharynx and bear teeth, and are formed by the coalescence of the dorsal elements of the arches. Their teeth bite against those of the inferior pharyngeal bones, which lie on the floor of the pharynx, and represent the fifth branchial arches.

The limbs and girdles.—The dermal rays of the pectoral fin are attached to four small brachial ossicles; these articulate with a dorsal scapula and a more ventral coracoid; both of these are attached to the inner face of a large clavicle, which almost meets its fellow of the other side in the mid-ventral line of the throat. From the clavicle a slender post-clavicle extends backwards and downwards; while a stout supra-clavicle extends from the dorsal end of the clavicle upwards to articulate with a forked post-temporal, which articulates with the back of the skull. It must not be assumed that the elements of this girdle are directly comparable to those of a higher Vertebrate, although the nomenclature is the same.

The fin-rays of each pelvic fin are attached to a thin innominate bone, which may be a basal element of the fin, or the rudiment of a pelvic girdle.

**Nervous system.**—The relatively small cerebral hemispheres with defective cortical region, the thalamencephalon with its inferior lobes and infundibulum, the large optic lobes, the tongue-shaped cerebellum which conceals most of the medulla oblongata, have their usual general relations. Each of the olfactory nerves is at first double; their bulb-like terminations lie far from the brain behind the nasal sacs. The large optic nerves cross one another *without fusion* at a slight distance from their origin, otherwise the nerves generally resemble those of the skate.



The eyes are large but lidless; the small nasal sacs with plaited walls have double anterior apertures; the vestibule of the ear contains a large solid otolith, and another very small one in a posterior chamber. The dark lateral line, covered over by modified scales, lodges sensory cells, and is innervated by a branch of the vagus.

**Alimentary system.**—Teeth are borne by the premaxillæ, the vomer, and the superior pharyngeal bones above, by the dentaries and the inferior pharyngeal bones beneath. There are no salivary glands, no spiracles, nor posterior nares. A small non-muscular tongue is supported by a ventral part of the hyoid arch. Five gill-clefts open from the pharynx; their inner margins are fringed by horny gill rakers attached to the branchial arches and serving as strainers; they prevent the food from being swept out with the respiratory current. The gullet leads into a curved stomach; at the junction of stomach and duodenum numerous tubular pyloric cæca are given off; into the duodenum opens the bile-duct from the gall-bladder and liver; the coiled intestine passes gradually into the rectum, which has an aperture apart from those of the genital and urinary ducts. There is no spiral valve, and there are no abdominal pores. A pancreas is absent; perhaps the pyloric cæca take its place. The peritoneal membrane which lines the abdominal cavity is darkly pigmented.

**Respiratory system.**—Water that passes in by the mouth

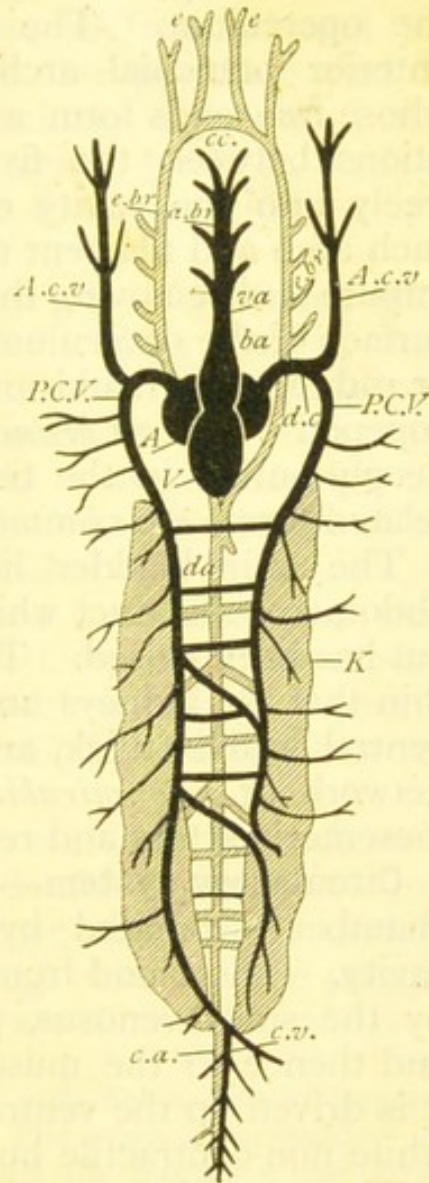


FIG. 218.—Diagram of Teleostean circulation.—After Nuhn.

*A.*, auricle; *V.*, ventricle; *b.a.*, bulbus arteriosus; *v.a.*, ventral aorta; *a.br.*, afferent branchials; *e.br.*, efferent branchials; *c.c.*, cephalic circle; *c.*, carotids; *A.C.V.*, anterior cardinal veins; *P.C.V.*, posterior cardinal veins; *d.c.*, ductus Cuvierii; *d.a.*, dorsal aorta; *c.v.*, caudal vein; *c.a.*, caudal artery; *K.*, kidney.



may pass out by the gill-clefts; the branchial chamber is also washed by water which passes both in and out under the operculum. The gill filaments borne on the four anterior branchial arches are long triangular processes, whose free ends form a double row. As there are no partitions between the five gill-clefts, the filaments project freely into the cavity covered by the operculum. Along each arch and filament there are blood vessels, bringing the impure and removing the purified blood. On the internal surface of the operculum lies a red patch, the pseudobranch or rudimentary hyoidean gill. A large and quaint parasitic copepod—*Lernæa branchialis*—is often found with its head deeply buried in the tissues of the gills and head. Many related forms are common on fishes.

The swim-bladder lies along the dorsal wall of the abdomen; the duct which originally connected it with the gut has been closed. The dorsal wall of the bladder is so thin that the kidneys and vertebræ are seen through it; the ventral wall is thick, and bears anteriorly a large vascular network or *rete mirabile*, which receives blood from the mesenteric artery and returns blood to the portal vein.

**Circulatory system.**—The heart lies within a pericardial chamber, separated by a partition from the abdominal cavity. The blood from the body and liver enters the heart by the sinus venosus, passes into the thin-walled auricle, and thence to the muscular ventricle. From the ventricle it is driven up the ventral aorta, the base of which forms a white non-contractile bulbus arteriosus.

The ventral aorta gives off, on each side, four afferent branchial vessels to the gills. Thence the blood is collected by four efferent trunks, which unite on each side in an epibranchial artery. The two epibranchials are united posteriorly to form the dorsal aorta, while anteriorly they give off the carotids, which are united by a transverse vessel closing the "cephalic circle."

Blood enters the sinus venosus by two vertical precaval veins, and by hepatics from the liver. Each precaval vein is formed by the union of a jugular from the head and a cardinal from the body. The cardinals extend along the kidneys, and are continuous posteriorly with the caudal vein, but the middle part of the left cardinal is obliterated.



**Excretory system.**—The kidneys are very long bodies, extending above the swim-bladder under the vertebral column. The largest parts lie just in front of and just behind the swim-bladder. From the posterior part an unpaired ureter extends to the urinary aperture, before reaching which it gives off a small bilobed bladder. The pronephros degenerates; the functional kidney is a mesonephros.

**Reproductive system.**—The testes are long lobed organs, conspicuous in mature males at the breeding season; there is no epididymis. The ovaries of the female are more compact sacs, more posterior in position.

Two vasa deferentia combine in a single canal. The likewise single oviduct is continuous with the cavity of the ovaries. The genital aperture in either sex is in front of, but very close to, that of the ureter. According to some authorities, the genital canals in Teleosteans are secondary structures, unconnected with the archinephric or segmental ducts, but the researches of Jungersen have made this very doubtful.

**Development.**—The ova of the haddock, like those of other Teleosteans, contain a considerable quantity of yolk, are fertilised after they have been laid, and undergo meroblastic segmentation. The eggs float, *i.e.* are pelagic; while those of the herring sink, *i.e.* are dimersal.

At one pole of a transparent sphere of yolk lies a disc of formative protoplasm of a light terra cotta colour. The ovum is surrounded by a firm vitelline membrane. After fertilisation the formative disc divides first into two, then into four, then into many cells, which form the blastoderm. From the edge of the blastoderm certain yolk-nuclei or periblast-nuclei are formed, which afterwards have some importance. At the end of segmentation the blastoderm lies in the form of a doubly convex lens in a shallow concavity of the yolk.

The blastoderm extends for some distance laterally over the yolk; the central part raises itself, and thus forms a closed segmentation cavity; one radius of the blastoderm becomes thicker than the rest, and forms the first hint of the embryo; an inward growth from the edge of the blastoderm forms an invaginated layer—the dorsal hypoblast or roof of the gut; the periblast forms the floor of the gut, and afterwards aids the mesoblast, which appears between epiblast and hypoblast; the medullary canal is formed as usual in the dorsal epiblast. It is likely that the edge of the blastoderm represents the blastopore or mouth of the gastrula, much disguised by the presence of yolk.

The newly hatched larva is still mouthless, and lives for a while on



the residue of yolk, which, by its buoyancy, causes the young fish to be suspended in the water back downwards.

### GENERAL NOTES ON FUNCTIONS, HABITS, AND LIFE HISTORIES OF FISHES.

**Movement.**—A fish may well compare with a bird in its mastery of the medium in which it lives. Thus a salmon travels at the rate of about eight yards in a second, or over sixteen miles an hour. The motion depends mainly on the powerful muscles which produce the lateral strokes of the tail and posterior part of the body. It may be roughly compared to the motion of a boat propelled by an oar from the stern. So energetic are the strokes, that a fish is often able to leap from the water to a considerable height. In some cases undulating movements of the unpaired fins, and even the rapid backward outrush of water from under the gill-cover, seem to help in movement. The paired fins are chiefly used in ascending and descending, in steering and balancing. The large pectoral fins of the flying-fish (*Dactylopterus* and *Exocoetus*) are used rather as *parachutes* than as wings, during the long skimming leaps. They vibrate strongly but passively against the air, or when the tail strikes the water. Indeed, their movements have some directive, but no locomotor significance. In a few cases, as in the climbing perch, and in the strange *Periophthalmus*, which clambers on the mangrove roots, the fore-fins and tail are used in scrambling.

**Shape in relation to habit.**—The characteristic form of the body, as seen in herring or trout, is an elongated laterally compressed spindle, thinning off behind like a wedge. In most cases the trunk passes quite gradually into head and tail. It is evident that this torpedo-like form is well adapted for rapid progression through the water. Flat-fishes, whether flattened from above downwards, like the skate, or from side to side like the plaice and sole, usually live more or less on the bottom; eel-like forms often wallow in the mud, or creep in and out of crevices; globe-fishes, like *Diodon* and *Tetrodon*, often float passively. There are many strange forms, such as the sea-horses (*e.g.* *Hippocampus*), which play among the sea-weeds in warm seas. Some of the deep-sea fishes have also very quaint shapes.

**Colour.**—The colours of Fishes are often very bright. They depend partly on pigments in the cells of the skin, partly on the physical structure of the scales. The common silvery colour is due to small crystals of guanin in the scales. In many cases the colours of the male are brighter than those of his mate, as in the gemmeous dragonet (*Callionymus lyra*) and the stickleback (*Gasterosteus*), and this is especially true at the breeding season. The colours of many fishes change with their surroundings. In the plaice and some others the change is rapid. Surrounding colour affects the eye, the influence passes from eye to brain, and from the brain down the sympathetic nervous system, thence by peripheral nerves to the skin, where the distribution of the pigment granules in the cells is altered. In shallow and clear water this power of colour-change may be protective, but an appreciation of the protective value of colouring demands careful



attention to the habits and habitat of the animals, to the nature of the light in which they live, and to the enemies which are likely to attack them.

**Food.**—The food of Fishes is very diverse—from Protozoa to Cetaceans. Sharks and many others are voraciously carnivorous; many engulf worms, crustaceans, insects, molluscs, or other fishes; others browse on sea-weeds, or swallow mud for the sake of the living and dead organisms which it contains. Their appetite is often enormous, and cases are known (*e.g.* *Chiasmodon niger*) where a fish has swallowed another larger than its own normal size. Many fishes follow their food by sight; many by a diffuse sensitiveness, to which it is difficult to give a name; a few, it would seem, by a localised sense of smell. It is important to realise that fishes depend very largely on small crustaceans, and these again on unicellular plants and animals. Just as we may say that all flesh is grass, so we may say that all fish is Diatom.

**Senses, etc.**—Fishes do not seem to have much sense of taste or of smell, but diffuse sensitiveness to touch, chemical stimuli, etc., is well developed, especially on the head and along the lateral line. Though there is no drum, and the ear is deeply buried, they certainly hear; thus there are well-known cases of tame fishes coming to the sound of a bell or voice. Experiments have led some to believe that the semicircular canals of the fish's ear are indispensable in the direction or equilibration of movement, and it is obvious that this function is more important to a fish than the luxury of listening. But the results of experiment are still somewhat discordant. The sense of sight is, on the whole, well developed, and many have "darkness eyes." As to the intellectual powers of their small brains we know little, but many show quickness in perceiving friend or foes, a few give evidence of memory, and many of their instincts are complex. At the breeding season there is sometimes an elaborate expression of excitement, well seen in the stickleback.

**Reproduction.**—Hermaphroditism occurs constantly in *Chrysophrys auratus* (dichogamous), and in three species of *Serranus* (autogamous); almost constantly in *Pagellus mormyrus*; very frequently in *Box salpa* and *Charax puntazzo*; and exceptionally in over a score of fishes, such as sturgeon, cod, herring, pike, and carp. The simplicity of the genital organs and their ducts may perhaps in part explain why casual hermaphroditism is more frequent in Fishes than in higher Vertebrates. In many cases the males are smaller, brighter, and less numerous than the females. Courtship is illustrated by the sticklebacks (*Gasterosteus*, etc.), the paradise-fish (*Macropodus*), and others; while the bent lower jaw of the male salmon reminds us that some male fishes fight with their rivals.

Most Fishes lay eggs which are fertilised and develop outside of the body. They may be extruded on gravelly ground, or sown broadcast in the water. Sturgeon, salmon, and some others ascend rivers for spawning purposes, while the eels descend to the sea. In the case of trout, Barfurth has observed that the absence of suitable spawning ground may cause the fish to retain its ova. This results in ovarian disease, and in an inferior brood next season, a fact which should be



compared with what Hertwig has observed in regard to Echinoderms, that ova which are retained beyond the normal period become over-ripe and pathological. Except in Elasmobranchs, the ova are relatively small, and large numbers are usually laid at once. In Elasmobranchs the egg is large, and in the oviparous genera it is enclosed in a "mermaid's purse."

Most sharks and a few Teleosteans are viviparous, the eggs being hatched within the body of the mother,—in the lower part of the oviduct in sharks, in the ovary in Teleosteans. In two of the viviparous sharks (*Mustelus lævis* and *Carcharias glaucus*) there is an interesting union between the yolk-sac and the wall of the oviduct, which should be compared with a similar occurrence in two lizards, and with the yolk-sac placenta of some Mammals.

As to fertilisation, the usual process is that the male deposits spermatozoa or "milt" upon the laid eggs or "spawn," but fertilisation is of course internal when the eggs are enveloped in a firm sheath, or when they are hatched within the mother.

Most Fishes have a great number of offspring, and parental care is proportionately little. Moreover, the conditions of their life are not suited for the development of that virtue. When it is exhibited, it is usually by the males,—e.g. by the sea-horse (*Hippocampus*) and the pipe-fish (*Syngnathus*), which hatch the eggs in external pouches, and "the male of some species of *Arius*, who carries the ova about with him in his capacious pharynx." The female of *Aspredo* carries the eggs on the under surface of the body until they are hatched, much in the same way as the Surinam toad bears her progeny on her back; while in *Solenostoma* a pouch for the eggs is formed by the ventral fins and skin. At least a dozen kinds of fishes make nests, of which the most familiar illustration is that of the male stickleback, who twines grass stems and water-weeds together, glueing them by mucus threads exuded as semi-pathological products from the kidneys, which are compressed by the enlarged male organs.

Fishes have a less definite limit of growth than most other Vertebrates, and it is rare for a fish to exhibit any of the senile changes associated with old age in other Vertebrates. But surroundings and nutrition affect their size and colour very markedly. Some, such as the flounder, seem almost equally at home in fresh or salt water, but many are sensitive to changes of medium. Many can endure prolonged fasting, and some may survive being frozen stiff. Lowered temperature may induce torpor, as seen in the winter sleep of the pike, while in the dry season of hot countries the mud-fishes, the Siluroids, and others, encyst themselves in the mud, and remain for a long time in a state of "latent life."

**Life histories.**—The life histories of fishes form the subject of an endless chapter, of which we can only give a few illustrations. We know how the lusty salmon return from the sea to the possibly safer rivers, and after a period of fasting deposit their eggs and milt on the gravelly bed of the stream. A similar migration is true of the sturgeon.

In great contrast to these cases is the life history of the eel, the mystery of which has been at least partially removed. From the inland ponds and river-stretches the female eels migrate on autumn nights



seawards, meet their mates lower down the rivers, and descend to very deep water in the sea (250 fathoms or more). There the eggs are laid, and there in all probability the parents die. Thence the transparent larvæ (*Leptocephali*) rise to the surface and are for a year or so pelagic. From the open sea the young eels or elvers migrate up the streams in a marvellous procession or eel-fare, the females apparently going further inland than the males.

**Inter-relations.**—Commensalism is illustrated by some small fishes which shelter inside large sea-anemones, and by *Fierasfer*, which goes in and out of sea-cucumbers and medusæ. On the outside or about the gills of Fishes, parasitic Crustaceans, fish-lice, are often found; various Flukes are also common external parasites, and many Cestodes in bladder-worm or tape-worm stage infest the viscera. The immature stages of *Bothriocephalus latus* occur in pike and burbot; a remarkable hydroid (*Polypodium*) is parasitic on the eggs of a sturgeon; the young of the fresh-water mussel are temporarily parasitic on the stickleback; and the young of the Bitterling (*Rhodeus amarus*) live for a time within the gills of fresh-water mussels.

**Distribution in space.**—There are about 2300 species of fresh-water fishes, three or four Dipnoi, about thirty Ganoids, and the rest Teleosteans, over a half being included in the two families of carps (Cyprinidæ) and cat-fishes (Siluridæ).

Among marine fishes, about 3500 species frequent the coasts, rarely descending below 300 fathoms. A much smaller number, including many sharks, live and usually breed in the open sea. About 100 genera have been recorded from great depths.

In regard to the last, Dr. Günther has shown that in forms living at depths from 80 to 200 fathoms, the eyes tend to be larger than usual, as if to make the most of the scanty light; beyond the 200 fathom line small-eyed forms occur with highly-developed organs of touch, and large-eyed forms which have no such organs, but perhaps follow the gleams of "phosphorescent" organs; finally, in the greatest depths blind fishes occur with rudimentary eyes. Many of these abyssal fishes are phosphorescent; the colouring is usually simple, mostly blackish or silvery; the skin exudes much mucus; the skeleton tends to be light and brittle; the forms are often very quaint; the diet is necessarily carnivorous.

## GENERAL NOTES ON STRUCTURE OF FISHES.

**Fins.**—Along the median line of the dorsal and ventral surfaces of some fishes, *e.g.* flounder, there is a continuous fin—a fold of skin with fin-rays and underlying skeletal supports.

In the embryos of many fishes the same continuous fringe is seen, while the adults have only isolated median fins. There is no doubt that these isolated median fins—of which there may be two dorsals, a caudal, and an anal or ventral—arise, or have arisen from a modification of a once continuous fin, which is suppressed at one part and increased at another.

Now, the paired fins, which correspond to limbs, often resemble



unpaired fins in their general structure, and in their mode of origin. In some Elasmobranch embryos, Balfour showed that the pectoral and pelvic fins were connected by transitory lateral ridges. It is therefore possible that the paired fins may have arisen by a localisation of two once continuous lateral folds. According to another theory, the origin of paired fins is to be found in visceral arches.

Two types of fish fin are distinguishable—(a) that best illustrated among living fishes by *Ceratodus*, in which a median jointed axis bears on each side a series of radial rays—a form often called an archipterygium; and (b) the commoner type, in which the radials arise from a number of basal pieces (an ichthyopterygium). Experts do not seem to have yet come to a decision as to which of these types is the more ancient, or as to how they are related to one another.

Professor Huxley suggested that the fingered limb (cheiropterygium) of higher Vertebrates might arise from a limb of the *Ceratodus* type by an atrophy of its proximal fore-and-aft radials, and the hypertrophy of its distal radials. Thus the axis becomes the middle digit, while the other four digits are the terminations of the two distal radials on each side. But it seems just as easy or as difficult to trace the digitate limb to an ichthyopterygium.

Another interesting subject of inquiry is as to the origin of the girdles, whether as ingrowths from the bases of the limbs, or from modifications of branchial arches, or from both or neither.

**Tail.**—In Dipnoi and a few Teleostei, *e.g.* the eels, the vertebral column runs straight to the tip of the tail, dividing it into two equal parts. This perfectly symmetrical condition is called diphycercal or protocercal, but it is not quite certain that its thorough symmetry is primitive.

In Elasmobranchs, Holocephali, cartilaginous and many extinct Ganoids, the vertebral column is bent dorsally at the end of the tail, and the ventral part of the caudal fin is smaller than, and at some little distance from, the upper part. This asymmetrical condition is called heterocercal.

In most Teleostei, and in extant bony Ganoids, the end of the vertebral column is also bent upwards, but the apex atrophies, and, by the disproportionate development of rays on the ventral side, an apparent symmetry is produced. The vertebral column usually ends in a urostyle,—the undivided ossified sheath of the notochord. Most of the fin really lies to the ventral side of this. The condition is termed homocercal.

As to the mechanical importance of the different forms of the tail, there are some interesting recent observations. The effect of a stroke with the heterocercal tail is to force the anterior region downwards, and thus the heterocercal tail in fish is associated with a ventral mouth and the habit of ground-feeding. The movement of the homocercal tail, on the other hand, drives the body straight forwards, and is associated with a terminal mouth.

**Scales.**—In Elasmobranchs the scales (placoid) have the form of skin-teeth (dermal denticles), tipped with enamel, cored with dentine, and based with bone sunk in the dermis. They arise from skin papillæ, the (ectodermic) epidermis forming the enamel, the (mesodermic) dermis



forming the rest. It has been recently maintained, however, that the ectoderm forms most, if not all, of the scale (see p. 430). In other fishes the scales are almost wholly dermic, in marked contrast to those of Reptiles.

In most Teleosts the scales are soft, and the epidermic covering is very thin. They are called cycloid or ctenoid, as their free margins projecting from sacs in the dermis are entire or notched. But bony scales also occur in many Teleosts.

The sturgeon has five rows of bony dermic plates (scutes); the scales of the Bony Pike (*Lepidosteus*), *Polypterus*, and many extinct Ganoids, are covered with enamel.

The great interest of these exoskeletal structures is that those of Elasmobranchs are homologous with teeth, and that many bony scales often fuse into plates, suggesting the manner in which the membrane bones of the skull and pectoral girdle (*e.g.* the clavicle of Bony Fishes) are believed to have originated.

The simplest teeth of Elasmobranchs are precisely homologous with dermal denticles. But just as the skin-teeth sometimes fuse in groups, so is it also with their homologues, which form true teeth. Compound cuspidate teeth in sharks arise from the fusion of adjacent simple cusps. But the fusion may go further; a complex crushing dental plate may be formed from the coalescence of several successional teeth. A further complication is brought about by the multiplication of cusps on the individual teeth. These facts are, as Mr. A. Smith Woodward points out, of much interest, because it is by similar processes of fusion and of multiplication that the complex teeth of various Mammals arise.

**Swim-bladder.**—The swim-bladder of fishes is one of the numerous outgrowths of the gut. It is absent in Elasmobranchs and some Teleosts, such as most flat-fish, and it forms the lung of Dipnoi. Unlike a lung, it opens dorsally into the gut, except in Dipnoi and the Ganoid *Polypterus*, where the aperture is ventral. The original duct communicating with the gut may remain open, as in Physostomatous Teleosts, or it may be closed, as in Physoclistous Teleosts. The bladder is usually single, but it is double in *Protopterus*, *Lepidosiren*, and *Polypterus*.

In regard to the use of the swim-bladder, there is still considerable uncertainty. Where it is abundantly supplied with impure or partially purified blood, as in *Dipnoi*, *Polypterus*, and *Amia*, and where the gas within is periodically emptied and renewed, it is doubtless respiratory. But what of other cases, where its supply of blood is arterial, and what especially where it is entirely closed? In such cases it is usual to speak of its function as hydrostatic.

In greater detail the function of the air-bladder is—(1) to render the fish, bulk for bulk, of the same weight as the medium in which it lives; moreover (2), the volume of the contained gas varies with increased secretion and absorption, and seems to adjust itself to different external pressures as the fish descends or ascends. (3) In many fishes the bladder may help indirectly in respiration by storing the superabundance of oxygen introduced into the blood by the gills. (4) There is in several Teleosts a remarkable connection between the swim-bladder and the ear, sometimes by an anterior process of the bladder, as in the



herring and perch-like fishes, sometimes by a chain of bones, as in Siluridæ. This has suggested the view that the connection serves to make the fish aware of the varying tensions of gas in the bladder, due to the varying hydrostatic pressure; and in the same connection it is interesting to notice the theory that the ear of fishes has to do, through its semicircular canals, with the equilibration and orientation of the animal's movements. It is also worthy of note that those fresh-water fishes (Ostariophysidæ) which have the adjusting mechanism above referred to, have a marked ascendancy over all other fresh-water species in which this mechanism is wanting (Bridge and Haddon).

**Flat-fishes.**—In illustration of biological problems, let us briefly discuss some of the peculiarities of the flat-fishes (Pleuronectidæ), such as flounder, plaice, sole, and turbot. These forms, we at once perceive, are flattened from side to side,—unlike the skates and rays, which are flattened from above downwards.

In adult life they swim and rest on one (the right or the left) side, and the hidden side is unpigmented. Moreover, the eye belonging to the downward side has come to lie beside its fellow on the upward side; the dorsal fin is extended anteriorly, separating the blind side of the head from that which bears the eyes; the inter-orbital parts of the frontal bones, which should be median, are bent to the upward side and compressed; and there may be further asymmetry in the skull, as in the greater development of jaws and teeth on the downward side. The skin of the downward side has an opaque reflecting layer (argenteum) and minute reflecting elements (iridocytes), but no pigment cells (chromatophores); all three contribute to the colour of the upturned surface.

In early life the larvæ swim for some time near the surface, and in the normal position, with the dorso-ventral plane vertical. Then they have an eye and chromatophores on each side. As they grow older they cease to swim vertically; one eye begins to move round the edge of the head (in *Plagusia* it passes *through* an anterior extension of the dorsal fin); the body is held in a slanting position, so that the line joining the eyes is kept horizontal; more or less rapidly the slant increases; the lower eye gets quite round to the upward side; the chromatophores on the shaded side disappear; and the fish rests and swims on one side at the bottom. In the turbot the right side is normally downward; in the flounder, the left side, but reversed specimens (especially of flounder) often occur. Occasionally these flat-fishes are pigmented on both sides, and then it is sometimes noted that the migrating eye has not completed its movement.

Turbot and brill (species of *Rhombus*) have a well-developed swim-bladder during metamorphosis, and swim near the surface until the change is almost complete; flounder and other species of *Pleuronectes* have no swim-bladder during metamorphosis, and begin to lie on the bottom almost as soon as the change commences.

So far some of the more important facts,—what of their interpretation? That these asymmetrical forms have been derived from symmetrical ancestors is plainly suggested by their development. Of the original cause of the asymmetry we are quite ignorant. Did changes in the conditions of life induce the ancestral forms to leave the surface for



the bottom? Or was the change due to certain peculiarities of structure,—requiring, of course, previous explanation,—such as the great depth of the body and the degeneration of the swim-bladder? Or did both these causes operate at once?

But supposing we had attained to some clearness in regard to the change of habitat and loss of vertical balance, we should then have to consider the twisting round of the downward turned eye and the absence of pigment cells on the downward side.

As to the change of the eye, it may be said (1) that this has gradually resulted from the efforts of the fish to continue to use the lower eye, a possible interpretation if acquired characters can be transmitted. (2) It may be said by those who do not believe in "use inheritance," that the twisting round of the lower eye is not a result of a transmitted growth-tendency at all, but is wrought out by effort in each generation *de novo*. But young turbot and brill have nearly completed the twisting round of the lower eye long before they have abandoned their pelagic habit. (3) It may be said that the twisting round of the lower eye arose as a germinal variation, apart from any direct influence of function or environment, and that it has been retained and strengthened in the usual course of natural selection.

Again, as to the absence of chromatophores, it may be supposed that this also is a useful adaptive character persistent as the result of selection. But, apart perhaps from economy, it is not evident in what the advantage consists. It seems possible that the under surface is unpigmented because it is shaded; and Mr. J. T. Cunningham, who has devoted special attention to the problem of flat-fishes, has proved experimentally that artificial illumination of the lower sides by means of a mirror induces the development of pigment cells. It must be noted, however, that pigmentation of both sides occurs also as a natural variation, and is then usually associated with structural deformity.

## SURVEY OF FISHES.

(See Table, pp. 528-529).

### ELASMOBRANCHII. Cartilaginous Fishes.

Sharks and skates represent two very distinct types included in this order. They are voracious carnivorous fishes. The scales are placoid. There is no cover over the (5-7) gill-apertures; anterior to these there is often a spiracle,—the first gill-cleft,—with a rudimentary gill. The gill-clefts are separated by complete septa. The fins are large. The skeleton is mostly cartilaginous. The tail is asymmetrical or heterocercal. The mouth extends transversely on the under side of the head. The nostrils are also ventral. A spiral fold extends along the internal wall of the large intestine. Into the terminal chamber (or cloaca) of the gut, the genital and urinary ducts also open.



The ventricle of the heart has an anterior auxiliary region—a contractile conus arteriosus. The males are provided with copulatory modifications of the hind-limb, known as claspers. Fertilisation is internal. The ova are few and

large. Large egg-purses are common, but some Elasmobranchs are viviparous. The embryos have external gills.

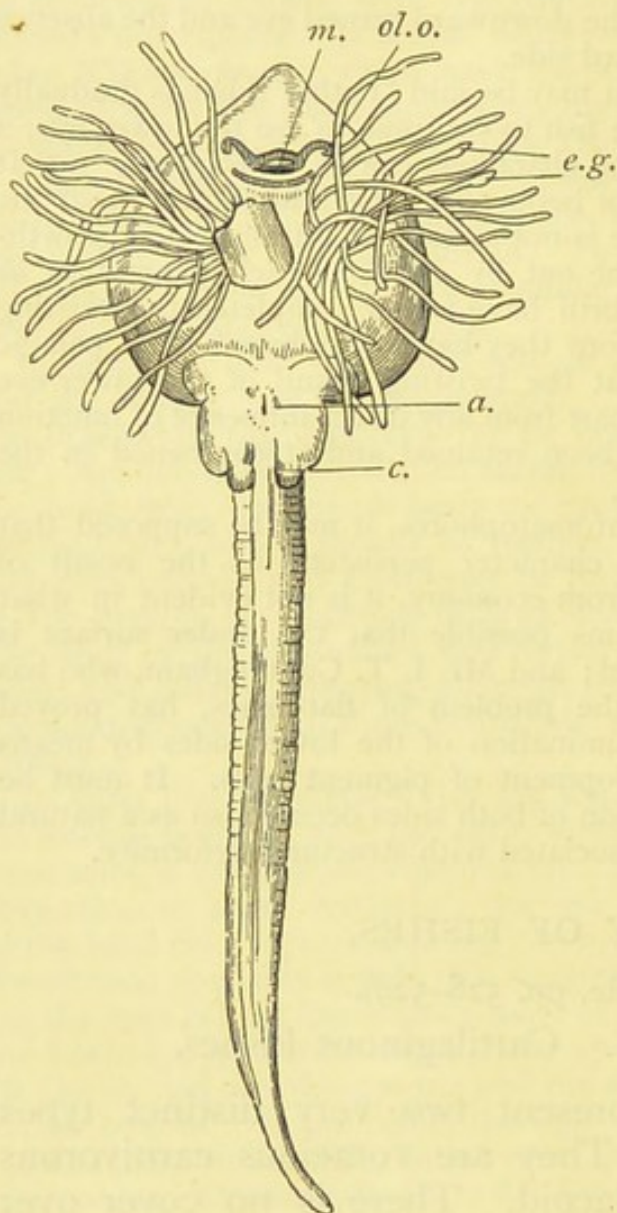


FIG. 219.—Young skate.—From Beard.

The yolk-sac has been cut off, the yolk-stalk is left. *m.*, Mouth; *ol.o.*, nostril; *e.g.*, external gills; *a.*, cloaca; *c.*, claspers.

**Subdivisions.**—The shark and the skate are types of two distinct suborders: (1) The older Selachioidei, with approximately cylindrical bodies and lateral gill-openings, as in shark and dog-fish; (2) the more modified Batoidae, with flattened bodies, ventral gill-openings, and pectoral fins joined to the head, as in skates or rays.

**Special forms.**—*Mustelus*, *Carcharias*, *Squalus*, *Torpedo*, *Acanthias*, and others, are viviparous; *Raja*, *Scyllium*, *Cestracion*, and others, are oviparous. In two species of the genera first named there is a placenta-like connection between the yolk-sac of the embryo and the uterus of the mother. *Zygæna* has a peculiar hammer-like head expansion; *Pristis* has the snout prolonged in a tooth-bearing saw; *Torpedo* has a powerful electric organ.

**History.**—The Elasmobranchs appear in the Upper Silurian, are very abundant from the Carboniferous onwards, but are now greatly

out-numbered by the Bony Fishes. An increasing calcification of the axial skeleton is traceable through the ages, and in some of the ancient forms the exoskeleton was greatly developed, often including long spines or ichthyodurulites firmly fixed on the dorsal fins or on the neck. Among the most remarkable extinct genera is *Pleuracanthus*, from Carboniferous to lower Permian. It had a terminal mouth, a naked



body, a continuous dorsal fin, a symmetrical tail, and pectoral fins, with an arrangement of rays resembling that in the biserial "archipterygium."

## HOLOCEPHALI.

The Holocephali are represented by the sea-cat or *Chimæra* from northern seas, and *Callorhynchus* from the south. There is a fold or operculum covering the gill-clefts and leaving only one external opening

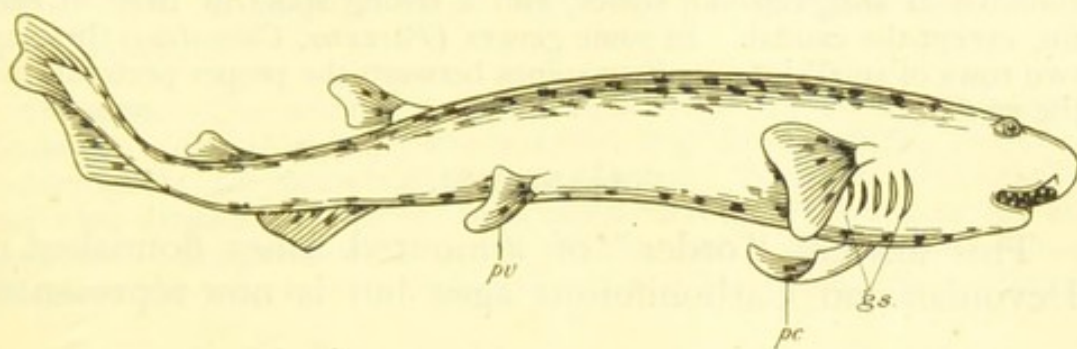


FIG. 220.—Lateral view of dog-fish (*Scyllium catulus*).

Note ventral mouth with naso-buccal groove, heterocercal tail, and unpaired fins. *gs.*, Gill-slits; *pc.*, pectoral fins; *pv.*, pelvic fins.

on each side; the upper jaw is fused to the cartilaginous skull; the skin is naked; the anus, the Müllerian and urinary ducts, open separately. Otherwise the Holocephali resemble Elasmobranchs, and may be regarded as a sub-order. In some respects, however, *e.g.* in the structure of the skull, they suggest Dipnoi, and in the connection it is interesting to notice that there is an auricular septum in *Chimæra*.

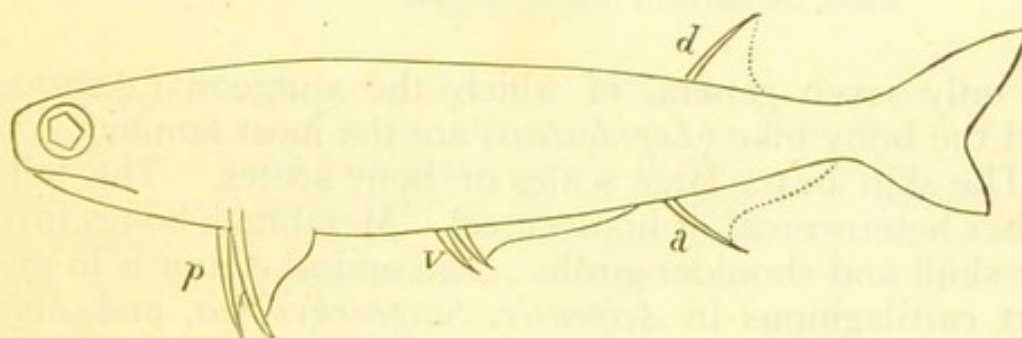


FIG. 221.—Outline of *Acanthodes subcatus*.—After Traquair.

*p.*, Pectoral fins; *v.*, ventrals; *a.*, anal; *d.*, dorsal.

Teeth (of *Ptyctodus*, *Rhynchodus*, etc.), which have been referred to Chimæroids, occur in Devonian rocks, and some at least of the detached spines of Carboniferous age may have belonged to fishes of this order or sub-order. Undoubted Mesozoic Chimæroids are *Squaloraja*, *Myriacanthus*, *Chimæropsis*, *Ischyodus*, etc., while others, including the recent genus *Chimæra*, are found in strata of Tertiary age. The other recent genus, *Callorhynchus*, is also represented by a Cretaceous species, *C. Hectori*.



## ACANTHODEI.

Another interesting but quite extinct group, whose position was for long a matter of dispute, but which is now usually placed near Elasmobranchii, is that of the Acanthodei. These flourished principally in Devonian times, but lived on also through the Carboniferous to the Lower Permian. They are usually rather small fishes, with minute rhomboidal shagreen-like scales, and a strong spine in front of each fin, except the caudal. In some genera (*Parexus*, *Climatius*) there are two rows of small intermediate spines between the proper pectorals and the ventrals.

## GANOIDEI.

This ancient "order" of armoured fishes flourished in Devonian and Carboniferous ages, but is now represented

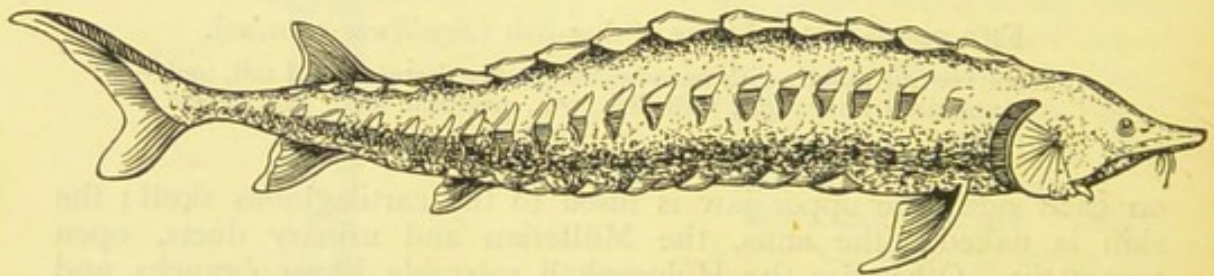


FIG. 222.—Sturgeon (*Acipenser sturio*) from side.

Note the elongated snout, the barbules bounding the ventral mouth, the operculum covering the gills, the rows of bony scutes, the markedly heterocercal tail.

by only seven genera, of which the sturgeon (*Acipenser*) and the bony pike (*Lepidosteus*) are the most familiar.

The skin bears large scales or bony scutes. The tail is either heterocercal or homocercal. Membrane bones invest the skull and shoulder-girdle. The endoskeleton is in great part cartilaginous in *Acipenser*, *Scaphirhynchus*, and *Polyodon*, but is ossified in *Lepidosteus*, *Polypterus*, *Calamoichthys*, and *Amia*. In the first three the notochord is uncontracted; in the others there are distinct vertebral bodies,—opisthocœlous in *Lepidosteus*, amphicœlous in the other three genera. The fore-brain has a non-nervous roof. There is a spiral valve in the intestine, but it is very small in *Lepidosteus*. The food canal ends apart from and in front of the urogenital aperture. There are also abdominal pores. An air-bladder is present with a persistent open duct. The openings of the gill-clefts are covered



by an operculum supported by bones; in some of the genera there is a spiracle. A conus arteriosus is associated with the ventricle. The archinephric or segmental ducts do not divide; thus no Müllerian ducts are formed; the pronephros completely degenerates. The ova are small, and are fertilised in the water; they have comparatively little yolk, and, so far as we know, the segmentation is holoblastic.

**Genera.**—The sturgeon (*Acipenser*) is one of the more cartilaginous Ganoids. The skin bears five rows of large bony scutes; the tail is heterocercal; the notochord is unsegmented. A snout, with pendent barbules, extends in front of the ventral mouth, which is rounded and toothless. Sturgeons feed on other fishes, which they swallow whole. They are the largest fresh-water fishes, for *A. sturio* may attain a length

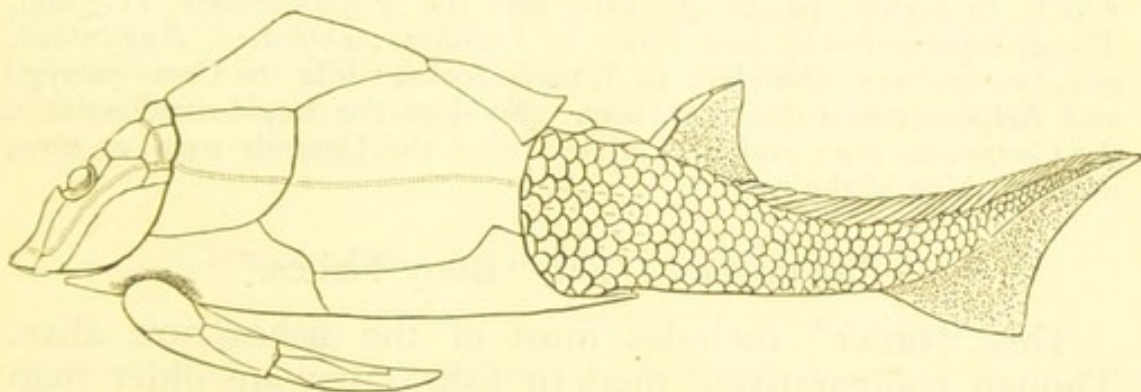


FIG. 223.—*Pterichthys Milleri*. Lateral view.—Restored by Traquair.

of 18 ft., and a weight of 600 lb., while the *A. huso* of Southern Russia may measure 25 ft., and weigh nearly 3000 lb.! Most of the species are found both in the sea and in rivers or lakes. The flesh is edible, except in the case of the green sturgeon, *A. medirostris*, of the Pacific coasts, which is said to be poisonous. The roes or ovaries form caviare; the gelatinous internal layer of the swim-bladder is used as isinglass.

The genus *Scaphirhynchus* is represented in Asia and the United States; *Polyodon* or *Spatularia spatula* is the paddle-fish or spoon-bill of the Mississippi. In *Polypterus*, from the Nile and other African rivers, the dorsal fin is divided into many parts; the nasal-sac has a complex labyrinthine structure; the swim-bladder arises from the ventral side of the gullet; the young are said to have external gills. In Old Calabar there is a related genus, *Calamoichthys*. The gar pike or bony pike—*Lepidosteus*—is covered with rows of enamelled scales; the whole skeleton is well ossified, and the vertebral bodies are opisthocœlous; the swim-bladder is like a lung in structure, and to some degree in function. The bow fin, *Amia calva*, frequenting still waters in the United States, has a similar lung-like swim-bladder.



The fossil Ganoids appear in the Silurian about the same time as the Elasmobranchs; they are abundant from the Devonian to the Upper Cretaceous, when the Teleosteans begin to become numerous. It is very doubtful whether the primitive armoured fishes (*Tremataspis*, *Pteraspis*, *Cephalaspis*, *Pterichthys*, etc.) have any claim to be considered as Ganoids at all. They constitute the group of Ostracodermi, which, commencing in the Upper Silurian, seems to have become extinct at the conclusion of the Devonian era.

Fishes allied to the Ganoids of the present day appear in the Middle Devonian, and are found in abundance until the close of the Jurassic era, when they give way to the more specialised Teleostei. In Devonian and Carboniferous rocks these Ganoids may be classed in two series—Crossopterygii (*Holoptychiidæ*, *Rhizodontidæ*, *Osteolepidæ*, *Cœlacanthidæ*), allied to the living *Polypterus*, and the Acipenseroidei (*Palæoniscidæ*), allied to sturgeons. But already in the Permian era we begin to find representatives of that great semi-heterocercal series, which is represented at the present day by *Lepidosteus* and *Amia*, and which, in reality, passes gradually into the Physostomous Teleostei. These, represented by such forms as *Lepidotus*, *Dapedius*, *Eugnathus*, etc., become very abundant in Jurassic rocks, while the Crossopterygii and Acipenseroidei dwindle away. So does the Lepidosteoid series in the Cretaceous era; and in Tertiary times the Ganoids were, as now, nearly a thing of the past.

#### TELEOSTEI. The "Bony Fishes."

This "order" includes most of the fishes now alive. Though comparatively modern fishes, they are older than was formerly supposed, as several Jurassic genera (*Thrissops*, *Leptolepis*, etc.), which used to be classed as Ganoids, must be considered as actual Clupeoids, or herring-like Teleostei. It is, however, not until the Upper Cretaceous and Tertiary epochs that they assume among fishes that overwhelming preponderance in numbers which they possess at the present day. The physostomous type of Teleostean is the most ancient, and probably stands in a continuous genetic line with the Lepidosteoid Ganoids.

The skeleton is well ossified, with numerous investing bones on the skull, others in the operculum, and on the shoulder-girdle. The tail is sometimes quite symmetrical or diphyccercal, but in most cases it is heterocercal at first, and acquires a secondary symmetry termed homocercal, for while the end of the notochord in the young forms is bent upwards as usual, the subsequent development of rays produces an apparent symmetry. The scales are in most cases relatively soft. As in Ganoids, the roof of the fore-brain is



without nervous matter. The optic nerves are remarkable, because they cross one another without fusing (decussate). As in Ganoids, the partitions between the gill-clefts disappear; so, instead of the pouches seen in Elasmobranchs, there is, on each side, one branchial chamber, covered over by an opercular fold. Into this chamber the gill lamellæ borne by the branchial arches project freely. In most, a swim-bladder is developed from the dorsal side of the gullet. There is no spiral valve in the intestine, and the food canal ends in front of, and separate from, the genital and urinary apertures or aperture. The base of the ventral aorta is swollen into a non-contractile bulbus arteriosus, but there is no conus, unless very exceptionally, as in *Buthyrinus*. According to some authorities, the archinephric duct is unsplit, and there is no Müllerian duct; according to Jungersen, the oviduct is a true Müllerian duct. The pronephros degenerates; the ova are numerous, and are fertilised in the water.

*Classification of Teleostei* (after Günther).

Dorsal, anal, and pelvic fins in part spiny.	{	Acanthopteri. Example.—Perch.	{	Physoclysti, — duct of swim-bladder is closed.
		Pharyngognathi. Example.—Wrass.		
The dorsal, anal, and pelvic fins without spines.	{	Anacanthini; the pelvic fins are situated far forward. Examples.—Cod, Flounder.	{	Physostomi; duct of swim-bladder remains open. Examples.—Herring, Salmon, Carp, Eel.

Besides these chief sub-orders, there are two sets of aberrant forms:—

- (a) The sea-horses, such as *Hippocampus* and *Phyllopteryx*, and the pipe-fishes, such as *Syngnathus*, are distinguished as Lophobranchii. The gills, instead of being rows or filaments, are tufts of rounded lobes; the gill-cover is a simple plate, leaving a small aperture; the skin is more or less protected by large dermal plates; the toothless mouth is at the end of a prolonged snout; the swim-bladder has no duct.
- (b) The globe-fishes, such as *Tetrodon* and *Diodon*, the trunk-fishes—*Ostracion*, the sun-fish—*Orthogoriscus*, and others, are distinguished as Plectognathi. The body is globular or compressed sideways; the skin bears bony scutes or spines, or is naked; the skeleton is incompletely ossified, and the vertebræ are few; the bones of the upper jaw are more or less fused; the pelvic fins are absent or reduced to spines; the gills are comb-like; the swim-bladder has no duct.



It is likely that some of the loosely-built deep-sea fishes, such as the pelican fish, *Eurypharynx*, are not referable to the orders usually recognised.

### DIPNOI. "Mud-Fishes."

The Dipnoi, whose name means double breathers, are now represented by three genera—*Ceratodus*, from two rivers of Queensland; *Protopterus*, from certain African rivers, e.g. the Gambia; and *Lepidosiren*, from the Amazons. The wide distribution is noteworthy.

They are very ancient forms, for *Ceratodus*, or a closely allied form, has lived on from Mesozoic times, and there were also undoubted Dipnoi far back in Palæozoic times, such as *Dipterus* and *Phaneropleuron* of the Devonian, *Ctenodus* and *Uronemus* of the Carboniferous. According to some, the remarkable Devonian *Coccosteidae* are also to be considered as an aberrant group of Dipnoi.

Prof. W. N. Parker regards them as "the isolated survivors of an exceedingly ancient group, which was probably nearly allied to the ancestors of existing Amphibians and Fishes, more particularly Elasmobranchs, though the Ganoid stock most likely arose not far off."

Were it not for the disadvantage of multiplying classes, one would be inclined to place them between Pisces, which they resemble in having cycloid scales, paired fins, a spiral valve, etc., and Amphibia, which they approach in having lungs, an incipiently three-chambered heart, a vena cava, a pulmonary vein, posterior nares, and multicellular skin glands.

The Dipnoi are *physiologically* transitional between Fishes and Amphibians, having, for instance, acquired lungs while retaining gills, but it does not follow that they are *morphologically* transitional. They are intermediate, but that is not to say that they are *the* connecting links. To mention only one point, there is little or no evidence that the Dipnoan swim-bladder or lung is homologous with the Amphibian lung.

**Ceratodus.**—The genus *Ceratodus* is abundantly represented by fossils in the Mesozoic beds of Europe, America, Asia, and Australia, but the living animal is now limited to the basins of the Burnett and Mary rivers of Queensland.



Like that other old-fashioned animal the duckmole, *Ceratodus* frequents the still deep places of the river's bed, the so-called "water-holes." At the bottom of these it lies sluggishly, occasionally rising to the surface to gulp in air. Its diet was formerly supposed to be exclusively vegetarian, but Semon holds that it crops the luxuriant vegetation of the river-banks only for the sake of the associated animal life—larvæ and eggs of insects, worms, molluscs, amphibians, and fishes. Certain it is that natives and colonists catch it by means of animal bait. From this method of angling for it, and from its rosy-tinted flesh, confusion has arisen between *Ceratodus* and a Teleostean fish, the true Barramunda or Dawson salmon, found in some of the Queensland rivers. Though *Ceratodus* is quite unable to live out of water, its air-breathing powers enable it to exist in water which is laden with sand or rotten vegetable matter. According to Semon, its limited distribution is to be accounted for—first, by its sluggish nature, for it comes of a dying stock; and, secondly, by the fact that the eggs are very readily destroyed, and so incapable of distribution by any of the ordinary means. Nothing is known of the process of fertilisation, but the eggs, which are surrounded by a jelly-like envelope, are laid singly in the water. The development has not yet been fully worked out, but segmentation is complete and unequal, and is followed by gastrulation. Segmentation of the embryo is obvious at a very early period; there is no trace of external gills. The early stages

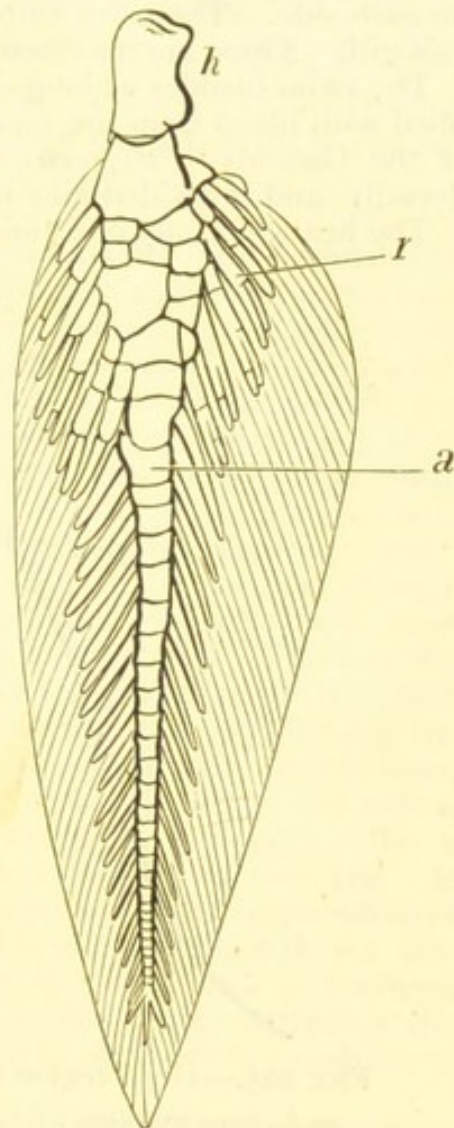


FIG. 224.—Skeleton of *Ceratodus* fin.—From Gegenbaur.

a., Central axis; r., radials; h., basal piece.



resemble very closely the corresponding stages in the development of Amphibians.

*Ceratodus* sometimes attains a length of 6 ft. The body is elongated and compressed, and bears a continuous vertical fin. The paired fins are trowel-like, with a median jointed axis, from which rays project on each side. There are four gill-clefts, four internal gills, and a hyoid half-gill. There are no external gills.

The swim-bladder or lung—for as such it acts—is single. It is supplied with blood from the fourth aortic arches, as is the swim-bladder of the Ganoids—*Polypterus* and *Amia*. It arises ventrally, but lies dorsally, and is divided into compartments.

The heart has only one auricle, with a dorsal fibrous ridge hinting at

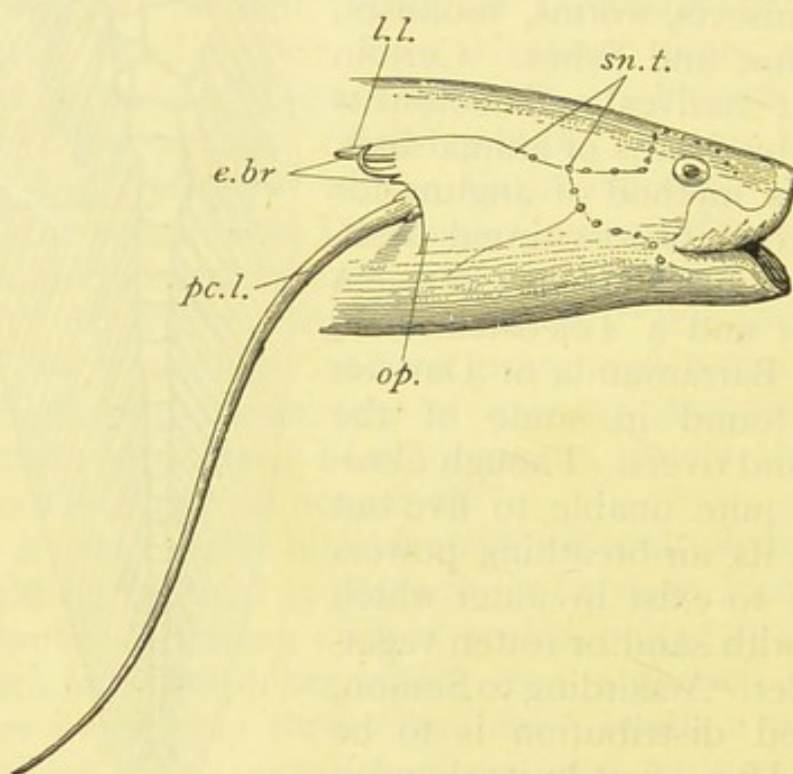


FIG. 225.—Head region of *Protopterus*.—From W. N. Parker.

*sn.t.*, Sensory tubes ; *l.l.*, lateral line ; *e.br.*, external gills ; *pc.l.*, pectoral fin ; *op.*, operculum.

a division. The conus arteriosus is peculiarly twisted, and contains a short longitudinal spiral valve and numerous large “pocket” (or “Ganoid”) valves. The septum in the conus is not complete, as it is in the other Dipnoi, thus mixed blood passes into the first two pairs of arches. There are four pairs of these arches or arteries supplying the gills ; the efferent vessels (two from each gill, as in Elasmobranchs) unite to form epibranchials, and these to form the dorsal aorta. The fourth epibranchial gives off the pulmonary artery. The pulmonary vein enters the left side of the auricle.

**Protopterus.**—This mud-fish lives in the Gambia, Quilimane, and some other African rivers. It is mainly but not



exclusively carnivorous, and attains a length of 2 to 3 ft. It has extraordinary vitality, surviving severe wounds, long fasting, and desiccation. It appears to be most active at night, and to prefer shallow water, swimming rapidly with powerful tail-strokes, or "walking" slowly along the bottom with its filamentous fins moving alternately on each side, somewhat like the legs of a newt. At short intervals it comes to the surface to take mouthfuls of air, which passes out again through the opercular aperture.

As the dry season approaches, *Protopterus* burrows into the earth to a depth of about 18 in., coils itself up, and secretes abundant mucus from its skin glands. This secretion forms a cocoon or capsule, with adherent earth externally, with moist slime internally, and with a lid, on which there is always a small aperture. Thus encapsuled, the animal may remain dormant for many months, *e.g.* from August to December. "The animal lies coiled up in such a manner that the head lies alongside the base of the tail, which from this point is again bent backwards over the head, so that it covers the head and body like a veil." The air seems to pass directly from the mouth of the burrow, through the aperture of the capsule-lid (which is produced inwards in a short pipe) to the external nostrils, and thence to the lungs. The nourishment appears to be derived from a store of fat deposited in the lymphoid tissue around the reproductive organs and kidneys, and among the lateral muscles of the tail (*cf.* fatty bodies in caterpillars, amphibians, etc.). Moreover, some of the muscles are replaced by fat, and others undergo a pathological granular degeneration (*cf.* lamprey). To a certain extent, therefore, the dormant animal lives on its own tail. It is probable that leucocytes aid in the absorption and transportation of the degenerated muscles (*cf.* tadpoles). These capsules, with the surrounding earth, have often been transported from Africa to northern Europe, without injury to the dormant life within. On emergence the animal makes peculiar sounds, probably due to the forcible expulsion of air from the lungs through the lips.

A few of the anatomical characteristics of *Protopterus* may now be noted, following Prof. W. N. Parker.

The paired fins are filamentous, and seem degenerate when compared with those of *Ceratodus*, having only one series of short lateral horny rays on the cartilaginous segmented axis. The tail is symmetrical, and ends in a filament, which, like the end of the fins, is often bitten off; often, however, there is a slight upward bending, which suggests a heterocercal condition. Both tail and fins may be regenerated after serious injuries.

In the skin are very numerous mucus-secreting goblet cells, and there are also (especially on the snout) multicellular glands, which are absent from most fishes, though common in Amphibians, Reptiles, and Mammals. There is a continuous lateral line, and apart from this there are other integumentary sense organs on the head and various parts of the body. There are taste buds on tongue and palate, olfactory organs



with posterior as well as anterior nares—the latter concealed by the overhanging lips—relatively small, lidless eyes, and auditory organs. “The apparently anomalous position of the nostrils is probably to be explained as an adaptation to the habits of the animal in connection with its summer sleep.”

There is a spiral valve in the large intestine; the cloaca has an associated “cæcum”; the pancreas surrounds the bile-duct, and, though large, is almost hidden within the walls of the gut; the spleen is also large, but inconspicuous. Cilia are present throughout the stomach and intestine, and there are no differentiated gastric or intestinal glands. There is an unusually abundant investment of lymphoid tissue associated with the gut, “which, during the period when *Protopterus* is, as it were, parasitic upon itself, is probably of especial importance, not only in the formation of leucocytes and in the destruction of dying cells, but also in the process of metabolism.”

Behind the hyoid are five rudimentary branchial arches. There are five gill-clefts, covered by an operculum, outside which are three external epidermic gills. Of the true internal gills the arrangement is as follows:—The hyoid has a small half row, the next two arches bear none, the third and fourth have the usual double rows of lamellæ, and the fifth has a single row.

The lungs are paired along almost their entire length, and extend under the notochord to the end of the body cavity. The glottis lies, as usual, on the median ventral floor of the pharynx, and, by means of a vestibule ascending on the right side, communicates with the unpaired anterior end of the lungs. Thus, although the lungs lie dorsally, they probably arise as a ventral diverticulum, as in higher animals.

The blood is remarkable for the large size of its elements, and for the predominance of white over red corpuscles. In general structure the heart is like that of *Ceratodus*. There is but one auricle, but a dorsal fibrous ridge hints at its division. The conus arteriosus has a long spiral longitudinal valve, and minute pocket-like valves. From the conus four branchial arteries arise on each side, and pass to the first four branchial arches, and the effect of the longitudinal valve is that the anterior pair contain blood already purified in the lungs; the posterior pair carry almost unmixed venous blood. The efferent branchials unite in a transverse trunk, and then form the dorsal aorta; and from the root of the aorta a paired pulmonary artery arises, the left supplying the ventral, and the right the dorsal aspect of the lungs. In regard to the veins, there is a single true postcaval, or inferior vena cava, along with a persistent left posterior cardinal. There is a single caudal vein giving rise to a right and left renal portal. Two pulmonary veins unite near the front of the lung in a single vessel, which enters the left side of the auricle.

The urogenital organs are surrounded by lymphoid and fatty tissue; the kidneys probably represent the mesonephros, and their duct the Wolffian duct; nephrostomes are absent. The vas deferens appears to be a special duct, probably formed in connection with the testes, quite independently of the excretory apparatus, and, therefore, to a certain extent comparable to that of Teleosteans; it opens into the base of the Müllerian duct, the rest of which gradually aborts in the male. The



ovaries are strikingly like those of Amphibians; the oviduct seems to be the Müllerian duct. Ureters and genital ducts open beside, one another into the cloaca.

*Lepidosiren*.—Relatively little is known in regard to the third type, *Lepidosiren*, from the Amazons. It has an eel-shaped body, with a continuous vertical fin. The limbs are reduced to cylindrical stems, without any radials. There are no external gills. The air-bladder or lung is double, and its relations to blood vessels are like those in *Protopterus*.

There is an imperfect muscular septum dividing the auricle into two, and there is a similarly incomplete septum in the ventricle. The conus resembles that of *Protopterus*.

**The relationships of fishes.**—Balfour regarded the Elasmobranchs as nearest the ancestral stock; while from hypothetical Proto-Ganoids he derived on the one hand the Dipnoi, on the other hand the Ganoids, and thence the Teleosteans.

But it must be noted that the Dipnoi are markedly separated in many ways from living Ganoids. Moreover, the extinct Ganoids form a very large and diverse series, which cannot be fairly appreciated by a study of the few survivors. Nor does the palæontological evidence bear out the separateness of Teleosteans and Ganoids.

Gadow proposes the following arrangement:—

#### Class ICHTHYES.

##### I. Sub-class *Pisces*.

###### I. Division, Elasmobranchii.

1. Order Proselachii, *e.g.* *Pleuracanthus*.
2. Order Plagiostomi, including Selachii and Raiaæ.

###### II. Division Acanthodi.

###### III. Division Holocephali.

###### IV. Division, { 1. Order Crossopterygii,

Teleostomi. { *e.g.* *Polypterus*.

{ 2. Order Actinopterygii.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| { | (a) Chondrostei (Sturgeon, etc.).          |
|   | (b) Holostei ( <i>Lepidosteus</i> , etc.). |
|   | (c) Teleostei (Bony Fishes).               |

##### II. Sub-class *Dipnoi*.



## SOME CONTRASTS BETWEEN DIFFERENT ORDERS OF FISHES.

	ELASMOBRANCHII.	GANOIDEI.	TELEOSTEI.	DIPNOI.
Scales.	Often with tooth-like placoid scales.	Usually with Ganoid bony scutes.	Usually with soft cycloid or ctenoid scales.	With large soft scales.
Limbs.	Large pectoral fins; claspers associated with the pelvic fins of the males.	No marked peculiarity.	Pelvic fins often far forward.	A median axis in the fin—an "archipterygium."
Tail.	Asymmetrical or heterocercal tail.	The tail is heterocercal or homocercal.	The tail is sometimes diphyccercal, but usually asymmetrical, acquiring a secondary symmetry described as homocercal.	Primitively symmetrical, diphyccercal or protocercal tail.
Skeleton.	Cartilaginous, except in a few parts, such as scales and teeth. In a few the notochord is unstricted; in most it persists only between the vertebrae.	Mainly cartilaginous in some, ossified in others, always with numerous membrane bones. In the cartilaginous Ganoids the notochord is unstricted; in the others it persists only between the vertebrae.	Well ossified. The notochord persists only between the biconcave vertebrae.	In part cartilaginous, in part ossified; the notochord is unstricted.
Nervous System.	The roof of the fore-brain is composed of nervous material.	The roof of the fore-brain consists of non-nervous material.	As in Ganoids. The optic nerves decussate, or cross without fusing.	As in Elasmobranchs.
Gut.	Transverse ventral mouth; a spiral valve; a cloaca; abdominal pores, or persistent nephrostomes, or both.	A spiral valve; a distinct anus; abdominal pores.	No spiral valve; a distinct anus; occasional abdominal pores.	Posterior nares open into the mouth. Aspiral valve; a cloaca; abdominal pores.



Respiratory System.	No operculum ; persistent partitions between gills ; there is usually a spiracle ; there is no air-bladder.	An operculum ; a single branchial chamber ; a spiracle in some ; the air-bladder with an open duct is sometimes lung-like.	An operculum ; a single branchial chamber ; no spiracle ; there is usually an air-bladder with an open or closed duct.	An operculum ; a single branchial chamber ; no spiracle ; the air-bladder forms a single or double "lung."
Heart.	Contractile conus arteriosus.	As in Elasmobranchs.	A non-contractile bulbous arteriosus.	As in Elasmobranchs, but with a more or less developed auricular septum, etc.
Urogenital System.	Pronephros of some significance ; the segmental duct splits into Müllerian (oviduct in female), and Wolffian (vas deferens in male).	Pronephros of no significance. These segmental duct does not split as it does in Elasmobranchs.	As in Ganoids, according to some authorities ; but, according to Jungersen, the oviduct is a true Müllerian duct.	As in Elasmobranchs (?).
Ova.	Large, few, fertilised within the body, sometimes hatched there, usually laid in purses.	Small, numerous, fertilised externally.	Small, very numerous, in almost all cases fertilised outside of the body.	Slightly larger than those of Ganoids, not very numerous ; of the fertilisation nothing is known.
Development.	Segmentation meroblastic. Much yolk is present, and in later stages forms a large "intestinal" yolk-sac. Transitory external gills are present.	Segmentation usually holoblastic, but in some cases approaches the meroblastic type. The yolk accumulates on the anterior region of the embryo, while its posterior region is completely folded off from it. External gills in some embryos.	Segmentation meroblastic. The yolk forms a small, median, ventral yolk-sac, as in Ganoids. No external gills.	In <i>Ceratodus</i> segmentation is complete, but unequal. The yolk forms a swelling on the ventral surface in the posterior region of the gut (cf. Frog). In <i>Ceratodus</i> , no embryonic external gills.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

### CLASS AMPHIBIA.

- Order I. STEGOCEPHALI or LABYRINTHODONTIA (extinct).  
,, II. GYMNOPIIONA or APODA (a small order).  
,, III. URODELA or CAUDATA, *e.g.* Newts and Salamanders.  
,, IV. ANURA or ECAUDATA, *e.g.* Frogs and Toads.

AMPHIBIANS are those Vertebrates which made the transition from aquatic to terrestrial life. But almost all have lagged near the water. Certain acquisitions, such as lungs and a three-chambered heart, incipient in the Dipnoi, are here firmly established. As regards the bodily size of its members, the Amphibian race has dwindled since the days of its beginning, but it seems to have been progressive, for Amphibians show affinities with Reptiles and even with Mammals.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS.

*Amphibia are Vertebrates in which the visceral arches of the larva almost always bear gills, which may be retained throughout life, though the adults normally possess functional lungs. Whence it follows that the nostrils, through which the air enters, must open into the mouth. When limbs are present, they have distinct digits, and resemble those of higher Vertebrates. The unpaired fins, frequently present both in larvæ and adults, are without fin-rays. In existing forms there is rarely any exoskeleton, but some extinct forms had an armour of bony plates. The heart is three-chambered, with two auricles and a ventricle. The gut ends in a cloaca, into which the ducts from kidneys and reproductive organs also open. A bladder, which grows out from the hind region of the gut, is probably homologous with the allantois of the embryos of higher Verte-*



*brates. The ova are small, numerous, usually pigmented, and with yolk towards one pole. They are almost always laid in water; the segmentation is holoblastic, but unequal. There is usually a metamorphosis in development.*

Huxley was the first to recognise the affinities between Fishes and Amphibians, and to unite the two classes under the title Ichthyopsida.

Of the characters common to the two classes, the following are important:—Gills are always present, but in Amphibians they may be restricted to the larval stages; there is no amnion, and at most a homologue of the allantois; there are lateral sensory structures, such as the “branchial sense organs” and those of the “lateral line,” but these may be diminished in the adults; unpaired fins are almost always represented, but may not persist in the adult life.

From the higher Vertebrates or Amniota the Ichthyopsida are clearly distinguished by the presence of gills (in youth at least) and by the absence of amnion and functional allantois. For though the bladder of Amphibians may be homologous with an allantoic outgrowth, it does not function as such, *i.e.* it does not aid in the respiration or the nutrition of the embryo.

It is more difficult to distinguish between Fishes and Amphibians, more especially if we include the Dipnoi in the former class. The most obvious differences are the absence of fin-rays and the development of fingers and toes. In the following table the two classes are contrasted:—

FISHES.	AMPHIBIANS.
Gills persist throughout life.	Gills may disappear as the adult form is attained.
The swim-bladder functions as a lung in Dipnoi and less markedly in some Ganoids, but in most cases its respiratory significance is slight.	Lungs are always developed in the adults. It is doubtful whether they are directly comparable with the swim-bladder.
The heart is two-chambered (incipiently three-chambered in Dipnoi). There is no inferior vena cava, except in Dipnoi.	The heart has three chambers. There is an inferior vena cava.
The limbs are fins. The unpaired fins are supported by fin-rays.	The limbs have digits. There are no fin-rays.
The skull has, in most cases, one occipital condyle. There is usually an exoskeleton of scales or scutes.	There are two occipital condyles. There is no exoskeleton, except in a few cases, and in extinct forms.
Except in Dipnoi, the nasal sacs do not open posteriorly into the mouth.	There are posterior nares opening into the cavity of the mouth.
There is no certain homologue of the allantois.	The bladder seems to be the homologue of the allantois.



## THE FROG AS A TYPE OF AMPHIBIANS.

The common British frog (*Rana temporaria*) and the frequently imported continental species (*R. esculenta*) agree in essential features.

Though aquatic in youth, they often live in dry places, hiding in great drought, reappearing when the rain returns. Everyone knows how they sit with humped back, how they leap, how they swim. They feed on living insects and slugs. These are caught by the large viscid tongue, which, being fixed in front of the mouth and free behind, can be jerked out to some distance, and with even greater rapidity retracted. When a frog is breathing the nostrils are alternately opened and closed, the under side of the throat is rhythmically expanded and compressed, the mouth remains shut meanwhile. The males trumpet in the early spring to their feebly responsive mates. In our British species the pairing takes place soon after; the young are familiarly known as tadpoles, and a notable metamorphosis takes place. In winter the frogs hibernate—buried in the mud of the ditches and ponds, mouth shut, nose shut, eyes shut—and breathe through their skin.

**Form and external features.**—The absence of neck and tail, the short fore-limbs almost without thumbs, the longer hind-limbs with five webbed nailless toes and with a long ankle region, the apparent hump-back where the hip-girdle is linked to the vertebral column. There is a very rudimentary thumb, and there is a horny knob at the base of the hallux or "great toe." At pairing time the skin of the first finger is modified in the males into a rough cushion, darkly coloured in *R. temporaria*.

The wide mouth, the valvular nostrils, the protruding eyes, the upper eyelid thick, pigmented, and slightly movable, the lower rudimentary and immovable, the third eyelid or nictitating membrane semi-transparent and moving very freely, the circular drum of the ear, the slightly dorsal cloacal aperture.

**Skin.**—The smooth, moist skin is loosely attached at intervals to the muscles by bands of connective tissue, which form the boundaries of over a score of lymph-sacs. These sacs contain fluid absorbed through the skin, and open into



the veins by two pairs of lymph-hearts. The skin consists of a two-layered (ectodermic) epidermis, and an internal (mesodermic) dermis. The transparent outer layer of the epidermis is shed periodically, and swallowed by the frog. The dermis differs markedly from that of a fish, for there is no exoskeleton, though this was present in the extinct Labyrinthodonts; there are *multicellular* glands, whose secretion keeps the skin moist and is in part poisonous; and there is a stratum of unstriped muscle fibres. Pigment cells occur in the dermis, and some extend between the cells of the epidermis. The colour changes a little according to the state of these cells, the protoplasm expanding and contracting partly through the direct influence of light and moisture on the skin, partly by a more complex reflex action in which the eyes, the brain, and the sympathetic nervous system are all implicated. In the larval salamander the pigment cell seems to contract and expand as a whole, but this is not usually the case. There are cutaneous blood vessels, by means of which the frog can, to a certain extent, breathe by its skin. The tadpole has sensory cells in distinct lateral lines, but of this regularity the adult retains little trace, though it has many nerve-endings and "touch spots" in various parts of its skin.

**The axial skeleton.**—The vertebral column consists of nine vertebræ, and an unsegmented urostyle or coccyx.

The first vertebra bears two facets for the two condyles of the skull, and an odontoid process which lies between the condyles. It has no transverse processes, and its arch is incompletely ossified. Each of the next six has an anteriorly concave or procœlous centrum, a neural arch surrounding the spinal cord, a transverse process from each side of the base of the arch, an anterior and a posterior pair of articular

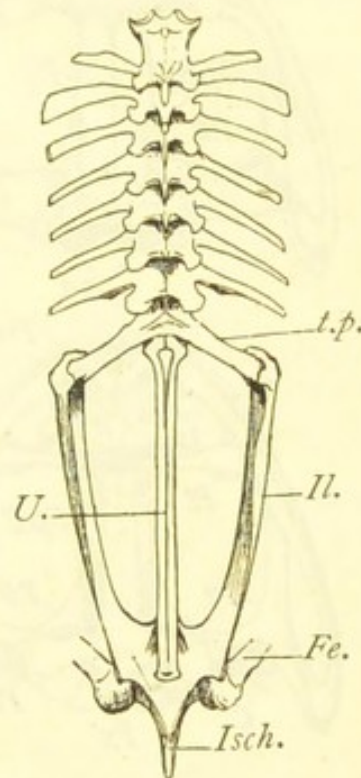


FIG. 226. — Vertebral column and pelvic girdle of bull-frog.

*t.p.*, Transverse processes of sacral vertebra; *Il.*, ilium; *U.*, urostyle; *Fe.*, femur; *Isch.*, ischiac region.



processes, and a short neural spine. The eighth vertebra has a biconcave or amphicœlous centrum. The ninth is convex in front, with two convex tubercles behind, and

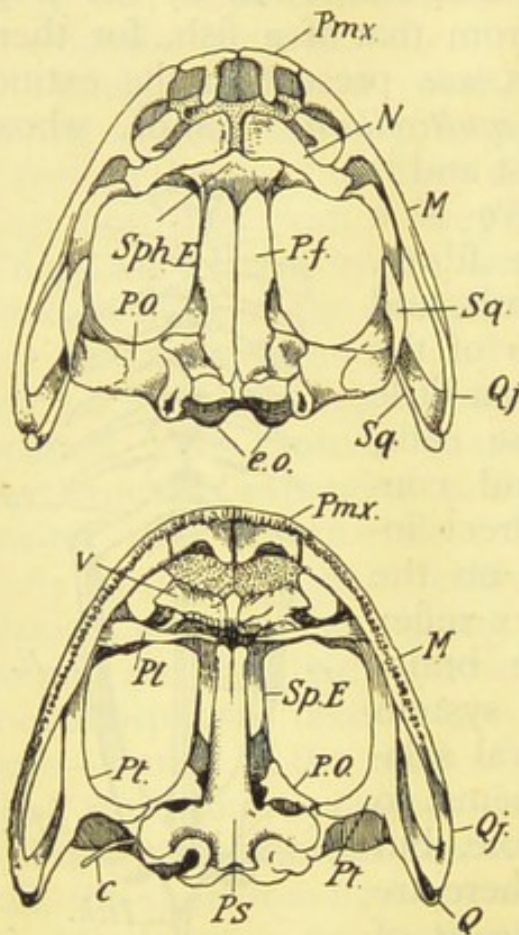


FIG. 227.—Skull of frog—upper and lower surface. — After W. K. Parker.

Upper surface—

*Pmx.*, premaxilla; *N.*, nasal; *M.*, maxilla; *Sq.*, squamosal; *Qj.*, quadrato-jugal; *e.o.*, ex-occipitals; *P.f.*, parieto-frontals; *Sph.E.*, sphenethmoid; *P.O.*, pro-otic.

Lower surface—

*Pmx.*, premaxilla; *M.*, maxilla; *Qj.*, quadrato-jugal; *Q.*, quadrate; *Pt.*, pterygoid; *Ps.*, parasphenoid; *P.O.*, pro-otic; *Sp.E.*, sphenethmoid; *Pl.*, palatine; *V.*, vomer; *c.*, columella.

bears large transverse processes with which the hip-girdle articulates. The urostyle, formed by the fusion of several vertebrae, has anteriorly a dorsal arch enclosing a prolongation of the spinal cord; but both arch and nerve-cord soon disappear posteriorly. The notochord, around which the vertebral column has developed, is finally represented only by the vestiges in the centra of the vertebrae.

The skull consists—(a) of the persistent parts of the original cartilaginous brain-box or chondrocranium, developed, as in the skate, from parachordals and trabeculae, plus nasal and auditory capsules; (b) of ossifications of parts of the chondrocranium, cartilage bones; (c) of membrane or investing bones; and (d) of associated visceral arches.

Two ex-occipitals bounding the foramen magnum and forming the condyles, two pro-otics or ossifications of the original auditory capsule, and an unpaired spheneth-

moid forming the front of the brain-case, are cartilage bones. Probably the slender rods known as quadrato-jugals or jugals are also cartilage bones.

Two parieto-frontals and two nasals above, a paired vomer and an unpaired dagger-shaped parasphenoid beneath, and two lateral hammer-shaped squamosals are membrane bones. There is no basisphenoid ossification.



To these are added the small premaxillæ in the very front of the skull, and the long maxillæ on each side. The quadrato-jugal connects the maxillæ with a minute nodule which represents the quadrate bone.

On the roof of the mouth, extending from the quadrate forwards to near the vomers, are the triradiate pterygoids, while at right angles to the anterior end of the parasphenoid and behind the vomers are the palatines.

Each half of the lower jaw, based on Meckel's cartilage, consists of three pieces,—the largest an articular angulo-splenic, outside this a thin dentary, and anteriorly uniting with its fellow a minute mento-meckelian.

A delicate rod—the columella auris—extends from the tympanum to the fenestra ovalis in the internal capsule of the ear. According to Parker, it represents the upper part of the hyoid arch, the lower portion of which forms the cartilaginous or partially ossified hyoid plate, which lies in the floor of the mouth and is produced into two anterior and two posterior cornua. According to some others, the columella is morphologically connected with the ear-capsule.

The teeth are borne by the premaxillæ, maxillæ, and vomers.

There is no parietal foramen, but in the Labyrinthodonts it is always distinct, and the pineal body is supposed to have been well developed. The foramen is also very distinct in some of the extinct Ganoid Fishes.

The cartilage which bears the quadrate at its lower end, and runs between pterygoid and squamosal, connecting the articulation of the lower jaw with the side of the skull at the auditory capsule, is called the suspensorium. In Elasmobranchs the hyomandibular is the suspensorium; in Teleosteans the name is applied to the hyomandibular and symplectic; in Sauropsida the quadrate occasionally gets the same confusing title.

When the lower jaw is connected with the skull wholly by elements of the hyoid arch, as in most Elasmobranchs and Ganoids, and all Teleosteans, the term *hyostylic* is used. When the connection is due to a quadrate element only, as in Amphibia and Sauropsida, it is called *autostylic*. When there is both a hyoid and a quadrate element, as in *Lepidosteus* among Ganoids, or a hyoid and a palato-quadrate, as in *Cestracion* among Elasmobranchs and perhaps also in Holocephali, the term *amphistylic* is used. Finally, it may be noted here that in Mammals the lower jaw articulates with the squamosal.

The first or mandibular arch gives origin inferiorly to Meckel's cartilage, which forms the basis and persistent core of the lower jaw, and superiorly to the palato-ptyergo-quadrate cartilage which is represented in the adult by the minute quadrate bone, by the suspensorial cartilage, and by other cartilages which are invested by the pterygoid and palatine bones.

The second or hyoid arch gives origin inferiorly to the hyoid plate; superiorly, according to Parker, to the columella.

Of the four posterior branchial arches, there are in the adult some persistent remnants, *e.g.* in the larynx.

**The limbs and girdles.**—The shoulder-girdle consists of a



dorsal portion—the scapula and the partially cartilaginous supra-scapula, and of a ventral portion—the coracoid and the pre-coracoid. With the latter, according to some authorities, a thin clavicle is associated. The glenoid cavity, with which the humerus articulates, is formed by the junction of scapula and coracoid.

Between the median ends of the coracoids lie two fused cartilaginous epicoracoids, behind which is a bony part of the sternum, prolonged posteriorly into a notched cartilaginous xiphisternum. Anteriorly lies a bony portion called the omosternum, which is prolonged forwards into an episternum cartilage. This sternum does not arise like that of higher Vertebrates, from a fusion of the ventral ends of ribs. Indeed, there are no ribs in the frog, unless they be minute rudiments at the ends of the transverse processes.

The true frogs (*Ranidæ*) have what is called a *firmisternal* pectoral arch, in which precoracoid and coracoid nearly abut on the middle line, and are only narrowly separated by the epicoracoids. In toads, tree-frogs, etc., the arch is *arciferal*, the precoracoid and coracoid being widely separated medianly, and connected by a large arched epicoracoid, overlapping its fellow.

The skeleton of the fore-limb consists of an upper arm or humerus, a fore-arm in which the inner radius and the outer ulna are fused, a wrist or carpus including two proximal and three distal elements, and a central piece wedged in between them, five metacarpal bones, of which the first—corresponding to the absent thumb—is very small, and four fingers, of which the two innermost have two joints or phalanges, while the two others have three.

The pelvic girdle is shaped like a V, or like a pair of tongs. The ends are cartilaginous and articulate with the expanded transverse processes of the ninth or sacral vertebra. Each limb of the V is an ilium; the united posterior part consists of a fused pair of ischia, and a ventral cartilaginous pubic portion. Ilium, ischium, and pubis unite in bounding the deep socket or acetabulum with which the femur articulates.

The skeleton of the hind-limb consists of a thigh bone or femur, a lower leg formed from the united tibia and fibula, an ankle region or tarsus including two long proximal elements—the astragalus or tibiale and the calcaneum or



fibulare—and three imperfectly ossified distal elements, five metatarsal bones, and five toes. The first toe or hallux

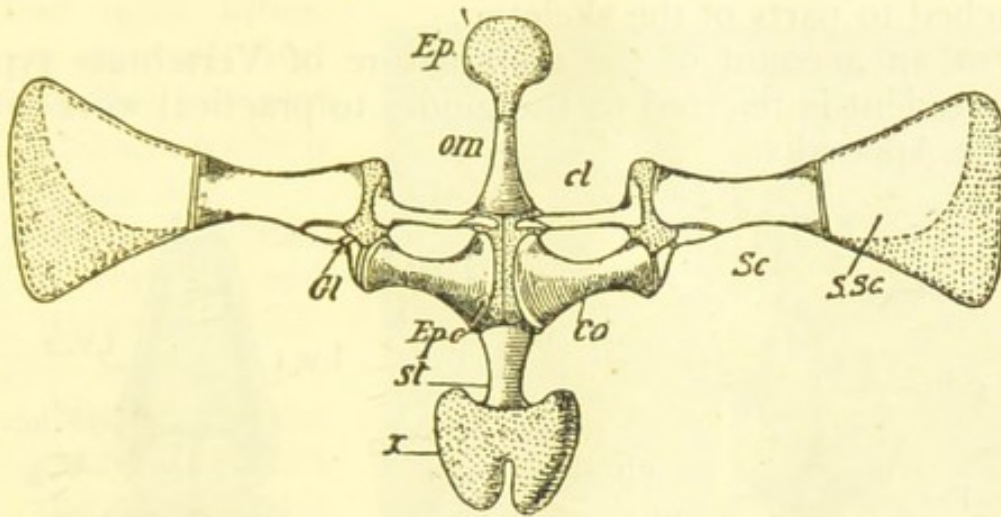


FIG. 228.—Pectoral girdle of *Rana esculenta*.  
—After Ecker.

The cartilaginous parts are dotted. *Ep.*, Episternum; *om.*, omosternum; *Epc.*, epicoracoids; *st.*, sternum; *x.*, xiphisternum; *cl.*, clavicle with underlying precoracoid cartilage; *co.*, coracoid; *Sc.*, scapula; *S.sc.*, supra-scapula; *Gl.*, glenoid cavity for humerus.

has two phalanges, the second also two, the third three, the fourth four, the fifth three, and, finally, outside the hallux there is a "calcar," which looks like an extra toe, and con-

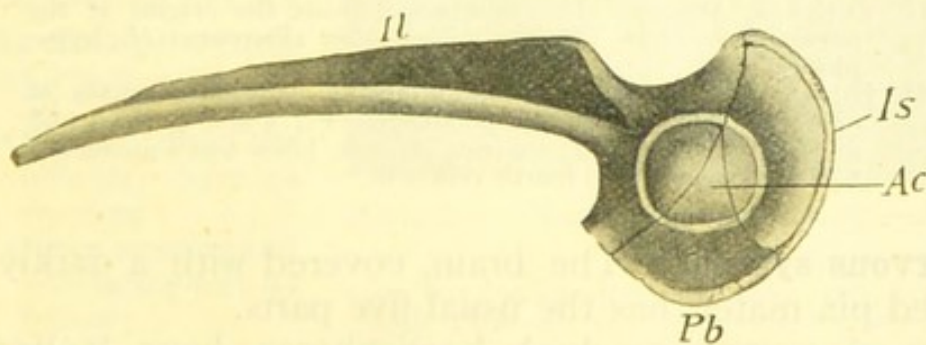


FIG. 229.—Side view of frog's pelvis.—After Ecker.

*Il.*, Ilium; *Is.*, ischium; *Pb.*, pubis; *Ac.*, acetabulum.

sists of three pieces. The astragalus is in line with the first toe. The long bones of the skeleton show readily separable calcified terminal caps or epiphyses.

**Muscular system.**—The muscles are enswathed in con-



nective tissue. They consist of bundles of muscle fibres, and at their ends or at one of them they are usually continued into strong tendons, which are more or less directly attached to parts of the skeleton.

For an account of the musculature of Vertebrate types, the student is referred to the guides to practical work cited in the Appendix.

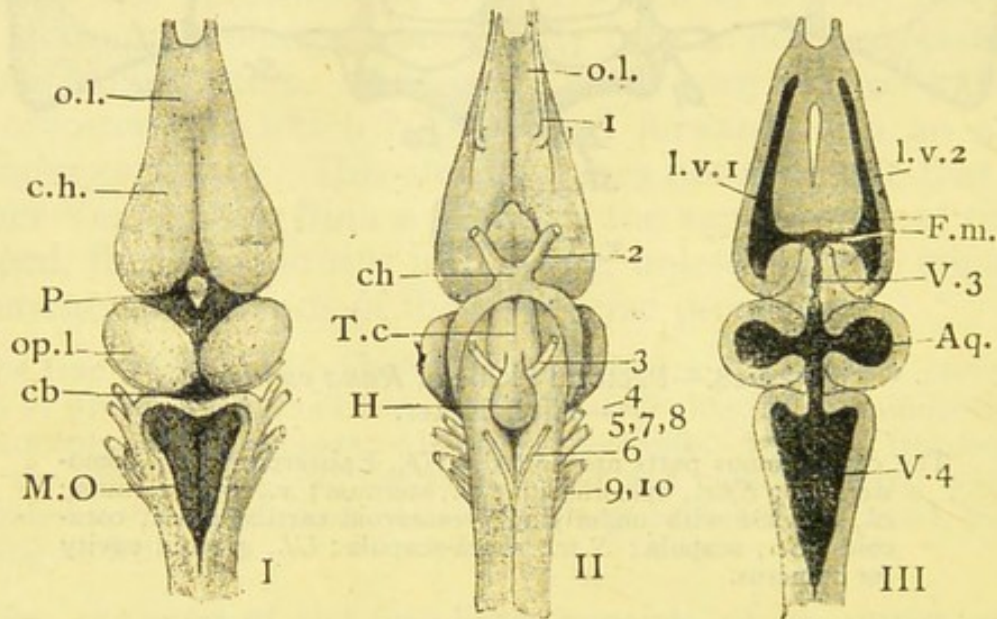


FIG. 230.—Brain of frog.—After Wiedersheim.

- I. DORSAL ASPECT.—*o.l.*, Olfactory lobes; *c.h.*, cerebral hemispheres; *P.*, pineal body, rising from region of optic thalami; *op.l.*, optic lobes; *cb.*, rudimentary cerebellum; *M.O.*, medulla oblongata.
- II. VENTRAL ASPECT.—The numbers indicate the origins of the nerves. *ch.*, Optic chiasma; *T.c.*, tuber cinereum; *H.*, hypophysis.
- III. HORIZONTAL SECTION.—*l.v.*, 1 and 2, lateral ventricles of cerebrum; *F.m.*, foramen of Monro; *V.*, 3 and 4, third and fourth ventricles; *Aq.*, cavities of optic lobes and aqueduct of Sylvius from third to fourth ventricle.

**Nervous system.**—The brain, covered with a darkly pigmented pia mater, has the usual five parts.

The elongated cerebral hemispheres have “olfactory lobes” in front of them, and are connected by anterior and posterior commissures, and by a hint of a “corpus callosum” (?).

The thalamencephalon gives origin dorsally to a pineal outgrowth. The pineal body lies outside the skull in the tadpole, but is partially atrophied in the adult, so that little more than the stalk is left. On the ventral



side will be seen the chiasma or interlaced crossing of the optic nerves, and a tongue-shaped mass (the tuber cinereum), to which the pituitary body is attached.

The optic lobes, a pair of oval bodies, between and below which is the iter.

The cerebellum, a very narrow transverse band.

The medulla oblongata, on the roof of which the pia mater forms a very vascular "choroid plexus."

The cavities of the brain and the canal of the spinal cord are in the adult lined by ciliated epithelium.

The cranial nerves are, as usual, on each side the following :

- (1) Olfactory, from the olfactory lobe to the nose ;
- (2) Optic, crossing and interlacing with its fellow ;
- (3) Oculomotor, to four muscles of the eye ;
- (4) Pathetic, to the superior oblique eye muscle ;
- (5) Trigeminal, with ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular branches ;
- (6) Abducens, to the external rectus eye muscle ;
- (7) Facial, arising along with the auditory, with a ganglion uniting with the Gasserian ganglion of the trigeminal, with a palatine branch to the roof of the mouth, and a hyoid branch to the lower jaw ;
- (8) Auditory, to the ear ;

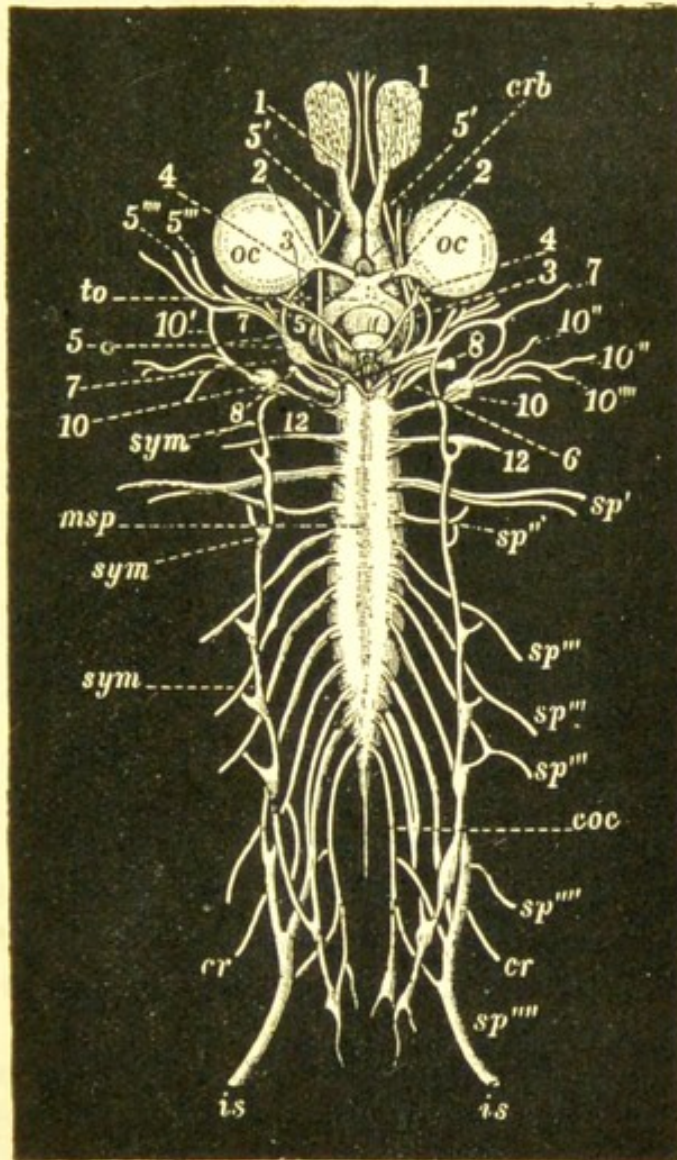


FIG. 231.—Nervous system of frog.—After Ecker.

1-10, The cranial nerves ; oc., eyes ; *crb.*, in front of optic chiasma ; *to.*, optic tract ; *sym.*, sympathetic system ; *msp.*, spinal cord ; *sp.*, spinal nerves.



- (9) Glossopharyngeal, to the tongue and some of its muscles; with a ganglion which unites with that of the tenth;  
(10) Vagus, with branches to lungs, heart, stomach, etc.

The student should refer back to the description of the skate, and to the chapter on the structure of Vertebrates.

The spinal cord gives origin to ten pairs of spinal nerves, and is swollen at the origin of those which go to the limbs. Around the union of the anterior and posterior roots lie sacs with crystals of carbonate of lime.

The sympathetic system consists of about ten pairs of ganglia—(a) united by branches to the spinal nerves; (b) united to one another by longitudinal trunks which accompany the dorsal aorta and the systemic arches, and end anteriorly in the Gasserian ganglion; (c) giving off branches to the heart, the aorta, and the viscera in the pelvic region.

**Sense organs.**—The eyes project on the top of the head and on the roof of the mouth. There is a third eyelid. The transparent cornea in front, the firm sclerotic surrounding the eyeball, and the sheath of the optic nerve, are as usual continuous. The next layer includes the vascular and pigmented choroid and the brilliant iris. Internally is the sensitive retina, while vitreous humour fills the cavity behind the lens.

The internal ears have the usual parts, and lie within the auditory capsules, which are in great part bounded by the pro-otics. Connecting the fenestra ovalis of the ear with the tympanic membrane, which is flush with the skin, there is a delicate bony rod—the columella. This lies in the Eustachian tube, which opens into the mouth at the corner of the gape.

The nostrils open into small nasal cavities, with folded walls of sensitive membrane; the posterior nares open into the front of the mouth.

There are taste papillæ on the tongue, and touch spots on the skin.

**Alimentary system.**—The frog feeds in great part on insects, which it catches dexterously with its tongue. This is fixed in front and loose behind. There are teeth on the premaxillæ, maxillæ, and vomers. Into the cavity of the mouth the nasal sacs open anteriorly, and the Eustachian tubes posteriorly. The males of *Rana esculenta* have a pair of resonating sacs which open into the mouth cavity at the angle of the jaw, and are dilated during croaking. The tongue bears numerous taste papillæ. Behind the tongue



on the floor of the mouth is the glottis, the opening of the short larynx which leads to the lungs. The larynx is supported by two arytenoid cartilages, and also by a ring; with the arytenoids the vocal cords are closely associated. The lungs lie so near the mouth that laryngeal, tracheal, and bronchial regions are hardly distinguishable. On the floor of the mouth is the hyoid cartilage, which serves for the insertion of muscles to tongue, etc.

Of the (4) gill-clefts which are borne on the walls of the pharynx in the tadpole, there are no distinct traces in the adult. The lungs develop as outgrowths from the gullet.

The gullet leads into a tubular stomach, which is not sharply separated from it. There is a pyloric constriction dividing the stomach from the duodenum, or first part of the small intestine. After several coils the small intestine opens into the wider large intestine or rectum, which enters the cloaca.

The liver has a right and a left lobe, the latter again subdivided. The gall-bladder lies between the right and left lobes; bile flows into it from the liver by a number of hepatic ducts, which are continued onwards to the duodenum in a common bile-duct. The pancreas lies in the mesentery between stomach and duodenum, and its secretion enters the distal portion of the bile-duct. The bladder is a ventral outgrowth of the cloaca, has no connection with the ureters, and seems to be homologous with the allantois of Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals.

**Vascular system.**—The heart, enclosed in a pericardium, is three-chambered, consisting of a muscular conical ventricle, which drives the blood to the body and the lungs, of a thin-walled right auricle receiving impure blood from the body, and of a thin-walled left auricle receiving purified blood from the lungs. From each of the auricles blood enters the ventricle. The two superior venæ cavæ which bring back blood from the anterior regions of the body, and the inferior vena cava which brings back blood from the posterior parts, unite on the dorsal surface of the heart in a thin-walled sinus venosus, which serves as a porch to the right auricle. From the ventricle the blood is driven up a truncus arteriosus, which soon divides into two branches, each of which divides into three aortic arches.



Thus we may distinguish five regions in the heart,—the ventricle, the right auricle, the left auricle, the sinus venosus, and the truncus arteriosus. The sinus venosus is the hindmost, the truncus arteriosus the most anterior part. The two auricles are often included in the term atrium, the undivided part of the truncus arteriosus next the ventricle is called the pylangium, the more anterior part from which the arches arise is known as the synangium. The truncus arteriosus corresponds, in greater part at least, to the conus arteriosus of many fishes.

As the heart continues to live after the frog is really dead, its contractions can be readily observed. The sinus venosus contracts first, then the two auricles simultaneously, and finally the ventricle. Although the ventricle receives both impure and pure blood, the structural arrangements are such that most of the impure blood is driven to the lungs, the purest blood to the head, and somewhat mixed blood to the body.

The blood contains in its fluid plasma—(a) the oval “red” corpuscles, with a definite rind, a distinct nucleus, and the pigment hæmoglobin; (b) white corpuscles or leucocytes, like small amœbæ in form and movements; (c) very minute bodies, usually colourless and variable in shape. When the blood clots, the plasma becomes a colourless serum, traversed by coagulated fibrin filaments, the red corpuscles often arrange themselves in rows, and the white corpuscles are entangled in the coagulated shreds. When the web of a living frog is examined under the microscope, it will be seen that the flow of blood is most rapid in the arteries, more sluggish in the veins, most sluggish in the capillaries or fine branches which connect the arteries and the veins. The red corpuscles are swept along most rapidly, and are often deformed by pressure; the leucocytes tend to cling to the walls of the capillaries, and may indeed pass through them (diapedesis).

*The arterial system.*—Each branch of the truncus arteriosus is triple, and divides into the following on each side:—

I. The carotid arch, the most anterior, corresponding to the first efferent branchial of the tadpole, gives off—

A lingual artery to the tongue;

A carotid artery, which bears near the origin of the lingual a spongy swelling (the “carotid gland”), and gives off an external carotid to the mouth and the orbit, and an internal carotid to the brain.

II. The systemic arch, the median one of the three,



corresponding to the second efferent branchial in the tadpole, gives off—

The laryngeal artery to the larynx ;

The œsophageal to the œsophagus ;

The occipito-vertebral to the head and vertebral column ;

The subclavian or brachial to the fore-limb.

From the left aortic arch, just as it unites with its fellow of the other side to form the dorsal aorta, or from the beginning of the dorsal aorta, there is given off the cœliaco-mesenteric to the stomach, intestine, liver, and spleen.

Further back the dorsal aorta gives off—

The renal arteries to the kidneys, and the genital arteries to the reproductive organs ;

The inferior mesenteric to the large intestine.

Then it divides into two iliacs, each of which supplies the bladder (hypogastric), the ventral body-wall (epigastric), and the leg (sciatic).

III. The pulmo-cutaneous arch, the most posterior, corresponding to the fourth efferent branchial in the tadpole, gives off—

The cutaneous artery to the skin ;

The pulmonary artery to the lungs.

*The venous system.*—I. Each superior vena cava is formed from the union of three veins, and each of these three is formed from two smaller vessels.

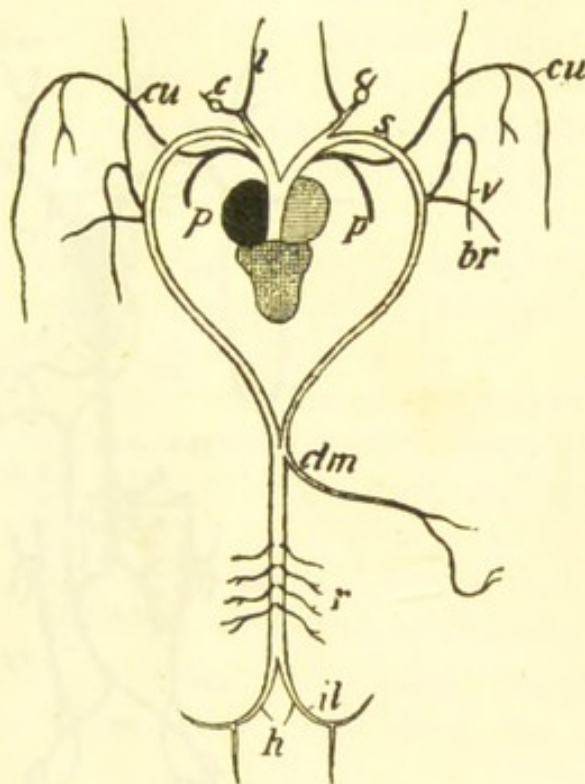


FIG. 232.—Arterial system of frog.—After Ecker.

*l.*, Lingual; *c.*, carotid; *s.*, systemic; *cu.*, cutaneous; *p.*, pulmonary; *v.*, occipito-vertebral; *br.*, brachial; *dm.*, cœliaco-mesenteric; *r.*, renals; *il.*, common iliacs; *h.*, hæmorrhoidal.



Superior vena cava.	External jugular.	Lingual from the mouth and tongue.
		Mandibular from the lower jaw.
	Innominate.	Internal jugular from the inside of the skull.
		Subscapular from the back of the arm and the shoulder.
	Subclavian.	Brachial from the arm. Musculo-cutaneous from the skin and sides of the body.

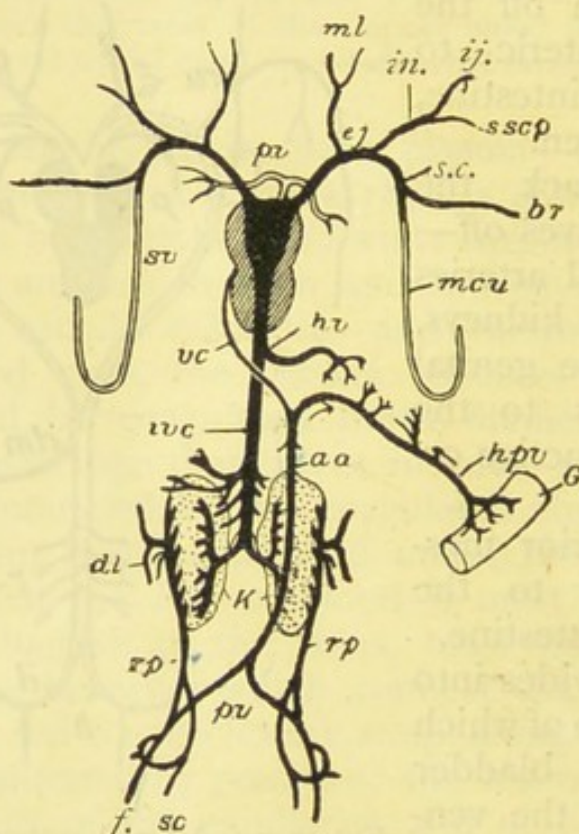


FIG. 233.—Venous system of frog.—After Ecker.

*m.l.*, Mandibular and lingual; *e.j.*, external jugular; *i.j.*, internal jugular; *s.scp.*, subscapular; *in.*, innominate; *s.c.*, subclavian; *br.*, brachial; *mcu.*, musculo-cutaneous; *h.v.*, hepatic vein; *h.p.v.*, hepatic portal; *G.*, gut; *a.a.*, anterior abdominal; *r.p.*, renal-portal; *p.v.*, pelvic; *K.*, kidneys; *sc.*, sciatic; *f.*, femoral; *d.l.*, dorso-lumbar; *i.v.c.*, inferior vena cava; *v.c.*, cardiac vein.

II. The inferior vena cava begins between the kidneys, and ends in the sinus venosus. Its components are as follows:—

Inferior vena cava.	{	Efferent renal veins from the kidneys.
		Genital veins from the reproductive organs.
		Efferent hepatic veins from the liver.



The renal portal system, by which venous blood from the posterior region filters through the kidneys on its way back to the heart, is as follows on each side :—

Renal portal system.	{	A posterior branch of the femoral vein from the hind-limb forms the renal portal vein, which receives the sciatic from the back of the leg, and the dorso-lumbar veins from the dorsal wall of the body, and oviducal veins in the female.
----------------------	---	--

The anterior branch of the femoral vein is called the pelvic, and unites with its fellow of the opposite side, and gives origin to a median vein which runs to the liver—the anterior abdominal. By means of an anastomosing branch, the anterior branch of the femoral is also connected to the sciatic.

The hepatic portal system, by which venous blood from the posterior region and from the gut passes through the liver on its way back to the heart, is as follows :—

Hepatic portal system.	{	Anterior abdominal vein, from the union of the two pelvics, receiving tributaries from the bladder, ventral body-wall, and truncus arteriosus.
	{	Hepatic portal vein, from the union of veins from the stomach, intestine, and spleen.

III. The pulmonary veins which bring back purified blood from the lungs, unite just before they enter the left auricle.

**Lymphatic system.**—The lymph is a colourless fluid, like blood without red corpuscles. It is found in the spaces between the loose skin and the subjacent muscles, in the pleuro-peritoneal cavity in which heart, lungs, and other organs lie, in a sub-vertebral sinus extending along the backbone, and in special lymphatic vessels which pass fatty materials absorbed from the intestine into the venous system. There are two pairs of contractile “lymph hearts” at two regions where the lymphatic system communicates with the veins. A pair lie near the posterior end of the urostyle; the other two lie between the transverse processes of the third and fourth vertebræ. Their pulsations can be seen on the back of the living frog.

**Mechanism of the heart.**—We must now return to the



heart, to consider how it is that the blood is propelled from the ventricle along the proper channels. The right half of the ventricle being nearer the right auricle, contains more impure blood, and it is from the right side of the ventricle that the truncus arteriosus arises. Therefore, when the ventricle contracts, the blood which first fills the truncus is venous. It passes along the left side of a median longitudinal valve into the pulmonary arteries—along the path of least resistance. As the pulmonary arteries become distended, the next quantum of blood—that which has been mixed in the middle of the ventricle—is driven forwards, and passes on the right side of the longitudinal valve into the aortic arches. “And, as the truncus becomes more and more distended, the longitudinal valve, flapping over, tends more and more completely to shut off the openings of the pulmonary arteries, and to prevent any blood from flowing into them. Finally, the last portion of blood from the ventricle, representing the completely arterialised blood of the left auricle, which is the last to arrive at the opening of the truncus, passes into the carotid trunks, and is distributed to the head.” (The last two sentences are quoted from the “Text-Book of Practical Biology,” by Professors Huxley and Martin, Howes and Scott.)

**Spleen, thyroid, and thymus.**—The spleen, which is probably, as in some other animals, concerned with blood-making, is a small red organ lying in the mesentery near the beginning of the large intestine. The thyroid, which is believed to have something to do with maintaining the health of the blood, is represented by two little bodies near the roots of the aortic arches. The thymus, perhaps originally associated with the gill-clefts, lies on each side just behind the angle of the lower jaw.

**Respiratory system.**—The larval frog breathes at first through its skin, then by external gills, and, finally, by internal gills. The adult frog breathes chiefly by its lungs, but some cutaneous respiration is still retained, for even without its lungs a frog may live for some time, and it does not use them when hibernating.

The lungs arise as outgrowths of the oesophageal region of the gut, and are connected with the back of the mouth by a short laryngo-tracheal tube, whose slit-like aperture is the glottis. Each lung is a transparent oval sac, with muscle fibres in its walls. The cavity is lessened by the spongy



nature of the internal walls, which form numerous little chambers bearing the fine branches of blood vessels.

In respiration the mouth is kept shut, and air passes in and out through the nostrils. A frog will die of asphyxia if its mouth be artificially kept open for a considerable time. When the floor of the mouth is lowered, and the buccal cavity thus increased, air passes in. When the nostrils and the opening of the gullet are shut, and the floor of the mouth at the same time raised, air is forced through the glottis into the lungs. When the pressure on the lungs is relaxed, and when the muscles of the sides of the body contract, the air passes out.

**Excretory system.**—The paired kidneys are elongated organs situated dorsally and posteriorly beside the urostyle. The waste products which they filter out of the blood pass backward by two ureters which open separately on the dorsal wall of the cloaca, and are not directly connected with the bladder. The ureter or Wolffian duct is seen as a white line along the outer side of each kidney; in the male it functions also as the duct of the testis. On the ventral surface of each kidney is a longitudinal yellowish streak, which is an adrenal gland of unknown significance, and little spots mark ciliated apertures or nephrostomes, which remain as communications between the abdominal cavity and the renal veins, though they are originally connected with the urinary tubules. There are also, as in higher Vertebrates, openings from the abdominal cavity into the lymphatic system.

**Reproductive system.**—The males are distinguishable from the females by the swollen cushions on the first fingers, and by some other external differences. The breeding season begins in spring, when the males trumpet to their mates. The male clasps the female with his fore-limbs, and retains his hold for several days, fertilising the ova as they pass out into the water.

The paired testes are oval yellowish bodies lying in front of the kidneys; the spermatozoa pass by vasa efferentia through the anterior part of the kidney into the Wolffian duct, which functions both as a ureter and as a vas deferens. In the male of *R. esculenta* the vas deferens is dilated for some distance after leaving the kidney; in *R. temporaria*



it bears on the outer side near the cloaca a dilated glandular mass or "seminal vesicle." In the males, rudiments of the Müllerian ducts are sometimes seen.

The paired ovaries when mature are large plaited organs, bearing numerous follicles or sacs containing the pigmented ova. The spawn laid by a single frog may consist of several thousand eggs. The ripe ova are liberated into the body

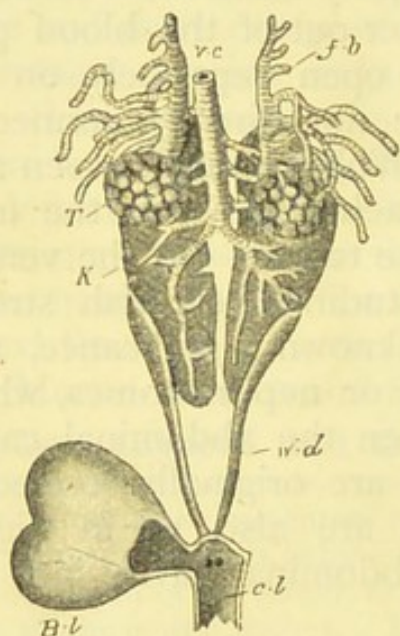


FIG. 234.—Urogenital system of male frog.—After Ecker.

*f.b.*, Fatty bodies; *v.c.*, vena cava; *T.*, testis; *K.*, kidney; *w.d.*, Wolffian duct; *cl.*, cloaca; *Bl.*, bladder.

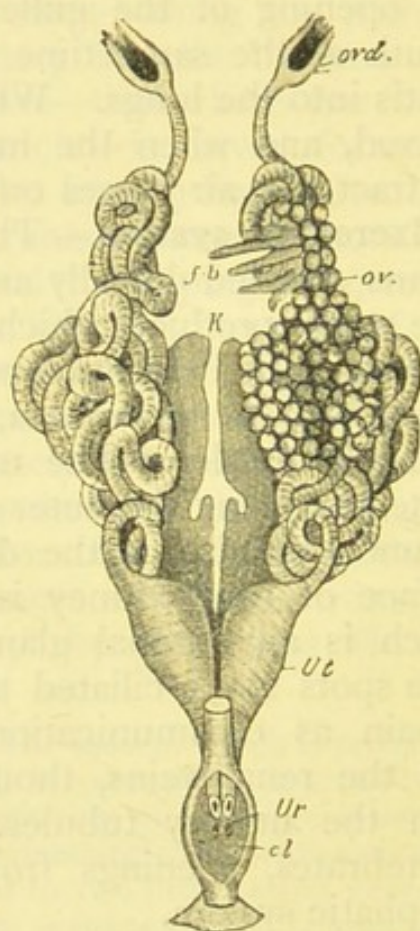


FIG. 235.—Urogenital system of female frog.—After Ecker.

*ovd.*, Opening of oviduct; *ov.*, ovary; *f.b.*, fatty body; *K.*, kidney; *Ut.*, uterus; *Ur.*, opening of ureters into cloaca (*cl.*), in front of the openings of the oviducts.

cavity, and moved anteriorly towards the heart, near which the oviducts open. The movement of the ova is mainly due to the action of peritoneal ciliated cells, which converge towards the mouths of the oviducts, but partly to muscular contraction, including the beating of the heart. The oviducts are long convoluted tubes, anteriorly thin-walled and straight, then glandular and coiled, terminally thin-



walled and dilated. In the median part the ova are surrounded with jelly; the terminal uterine parts open on the dorsal wall of the cloaca. In the females the Wolffian ducts act solely as ureters. There are occasional variations in the nature of the reproductive organs, and sometimes the hermaphrodite stage through which the tadpoles pass is to some extent retained. Attached to the anterior end of the reproductive organs are yellow, lobed, "fatty bodies," largest in the males. It has been suggested that they contain stores of reserve material, which is absorbed at certain seasons. They seem to be fatty degenerations of the anterior part of the genital ridges. The head kidney or pronephros persists for some time in the embryo, but eventually degenerates. It does not seem to have anything to do with the fatty bodies.

**Development of the frog.**—The ripe ovum exhibits "polar differentiation"; its upper portion is deeply pigmented, the lower has no pigment and contains much yolk. This yolk-containing hemisphere is the heavier, and consequently is always the lower half of the egg, however this may be turned about. Round the ovum there is a delicate vitelline membrane, and this is again surrounded by a gelatinous investment which swells up in water. The formation of polar bodies takes place before the liberation of the eggs.

The spheres of jelly preserve the eggs and embryos from friction, prevent their being eaten by most birds, appear to be distasteful to Gammarids, and often enclose in their interspaces groups of green Algæ, which help in aëration. The spheres may also be of use in relation to the absorption and radiation of heat.

Fertilisation occurs immediately after the eggs are laid. The spermatozoa, which exhibit the usual features of male elements, work their way through the gelatinous envelopes, and one fertilises each ovum.

The first cleavage is vertical, and divides the ovum into a right and left half. If one of these two cells be punctured, and the ovum be kept still, the other half will, according to Roux, form a one-sided half-embryo. At a certain stage Roux's half-embryo regenerated the missing half, usually by re-vitalising the remains of the cell which



was punctured. If the ovum be shaken about after puncturing, a readjustment of material is effected, and a half-sized embryo is formed (Morgan). The second cleavage is also vertical, and at right angles to the first, dividing an anterior from a posterior half. The third cleavage is equatorial, at right angles to the first two, dividing the dorsal region from the ventral.

The segmentation is total but unequal, and results in the formation of a ball of cells, those of the upper hemisphere being smaller and more numerous than the yolk-laden cells below. Within there is a small segmentation cavity. Since the presence of yolk acts as a check on the activity of the

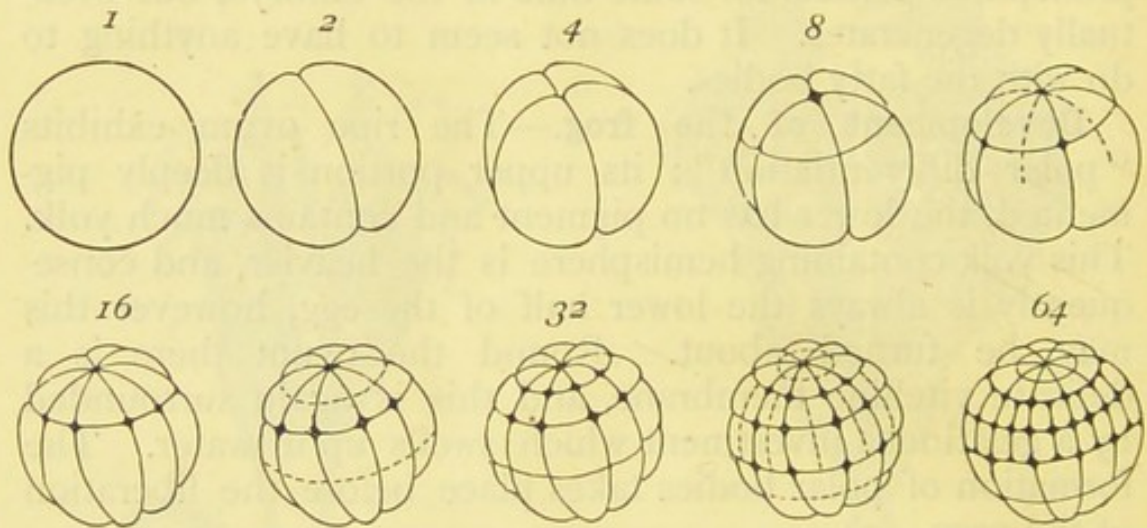


FIG. 236.—Division of frog's ovum. —After Ecker.

The numbers indicate the number of cells or blastomeres.

protoplasm, we can understand why the smaller cells continue to divide much more rapidly than the large yolk-containing cells, and so how the smaller epiblastic cells gradually spread over the egg, covering in the larger ones. At one point, where upper and lower cells meet, a groove is formed. According to the older view, at this point the small cells are invaginated, and so form a cavity; according to recent research, the cavity is simply formed by the splitting of the large cells. However this may be, the cavity, which is the archenteron or embryonic gut, rapidly enlarges at the expense of the segmentation cavity, which soon disappears. The groove becomes a circular aperture in the epiblast, which has now spread over the whole egg except



at this spot, the blastopore. The embryo elongates slightly, but the mass of yolk-laden cells which lie on the floor of the gut prevents the body acquiring at once the fish-like shape. The blastopore as usual marks the posterior region of the body.

The processes which follow are already in outline familiar to the student. Along the mid-dorsal line an epiblastic neural plate is differentiated. The edges become raised into the neural folds; these approach one another, and, fusing together, form the medullary or neural canal. At the posterior end this communicates with the archenteron for a time by the neurenteric canal. Internally, a differentiation of hypoblast forms the notochord along the mid-dorsal line of the archenteron.

At each side of this lie masses of mesoblast which have been split off from the hypoblast. Each of these divides into the primitive segments (proto-vertebræ) above, and the unsegmented lateral plates below. The lateral plates split into two layers, the splanchnic or inner investing the gut, the somatic

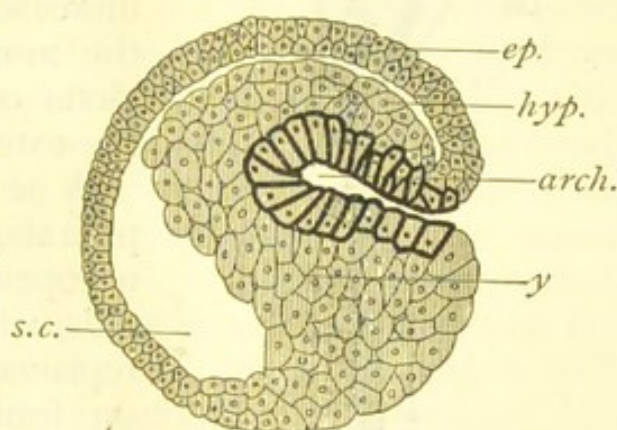


FIG. 237—Gastrula stage of newt.—After Hertwig.

*ep.*, Epiblast; *hyp.*, hypoblast; *arch.*, archenteron; *y.*, yolk-cells; *s.c.*, segmentation cavity.

or outer layer being applied to the epiblast; the space between the two layers is the body cavity. The body now becomes distinctly divided into regions, the eyes bud out from the brain, a rudiment of the external gills appears, and the larva, still within its gelatinous case, exhibits peculiar lashing movements of the tail.

Eventually, about a fortnight after the eggs are laid, it escapes from the surrounding jelly and swims freely in the water. At this stage and for some time the ectoderm is ciliated. There is a cloacal opening, but the mouth is not yet more than a dimple. A glandular crescent, often misnamed a sucker, lies on the under surface of the head, and secretes a sticky slime, by means of which the tadpole attaches itself to foreign objects. The



external gills soon become branched. There are three of them on each side, the first the largest. The mouth, which has previously been merely a blind pit, opens into the gut, the gut itself lengthens rapidly, and becomes coiled like a watch-spring; the larvæ feed eagerly on vegetable matter and increase in size. The glandular crescent forms two small discs, which gradually disappear as the power of locomotion increases. About the time when the mouth is opened, four gill-clefts open from the pharynx to the exterior.

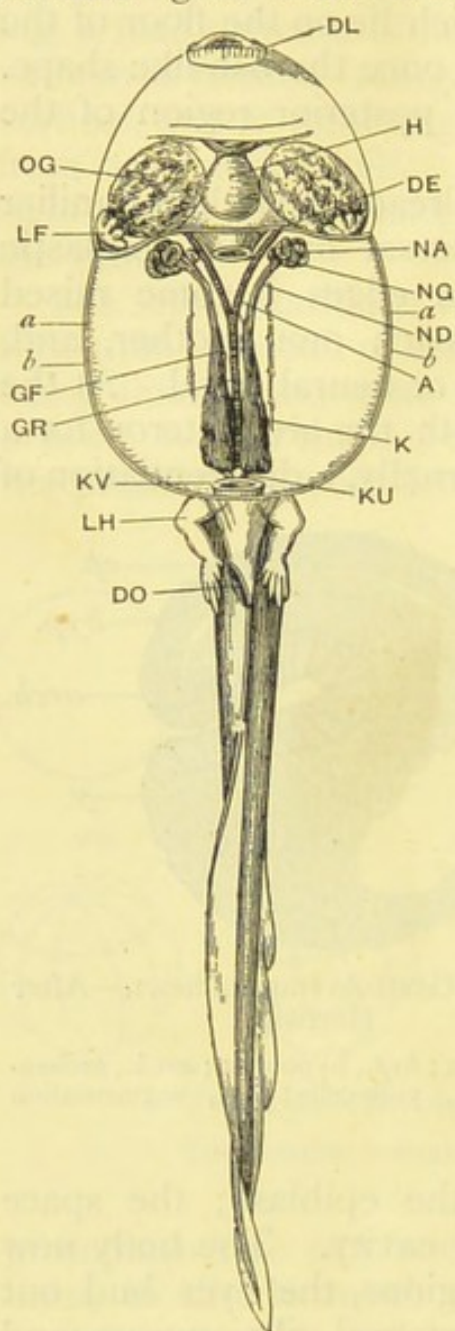


Fig. 238.—Dissection of tadpole.—After Milnes Marshall and Bles.

*DL.*, lower lip; *H.*, ventricle of heart; *DE.*, oesophagus; *NA.*, head kidney; *A.*, aorta; *K.*, kidney; *KU.*, ureter; *DO.*, cloaca; *LH.*, hind limb; *KV.*, opening of ureter into cloaca; *GR.*, genital ridge; *G.F.*, fatty body; *LF.*, fore-limb; *OG.*, internal gills; *a*, epidermis; *b*, dermis.

A second period, the true tadpole stage, now begins. A skin-fold or operculum covers the external gills, which then atrophy, and are replaced by internal gills developed on four branchial arches. The mouth acquires horny jaws, and the fleshy lips bear horny papillæ. By the continued growth of the opercular folds the gill-chambers are closed, with the exception of a single exhalant aperture on the left side. Through this opening, the water which is taken in by the mouth in respiration passes outwards, having washed the gills on its way.

In the third period the rudiments of the limbs appear. The fore-limbs are concealed within the gill-chambers, and so are not obvious until a later stage; but the hind-legs may be watched in the progress of development from small papillæ to the complete limb.



The lungs are developed as outgrowths from the œsophagus, even before hatching, but increase in size very slowly. After the appearance of the hind-legs, the larvæ come to the surface of the water to breathe, showing that the lungs are now to some extent functional. At this stage the tadpoles, now about two months old, are at the level of Dipnoi.

The changes in the relations of the blood vessels, which accompany the successive changes in the methods of respiration, and render these possible, are somewhat complicated.

When respiration is by the gills only, the circulation is essentially that of a fish. From the two-chambered heart the blood is driven by afferent branchials to the gills, from these it collects in efferent vessels which unite on each side to form the two aortæ. The aortæ send arteries to the head, and passing backwards unite to form the single dorsal aorta which supplies the body. For a time there are two dorsal aortæ. When the external gills are replaced by the internal, a new set of gill-capillaries are developed, but otherwise the circulation remains the same. As in *Ceratodus*, a pulmonary artery arises from the fourth efferent branchial. At the time when the hind-legs begin to be developed, a direct communication is established between afferent and efferent branchial vessels, so that blood can pass from the heart to the dorsal aorta without going through the gills. As the pulmonary circulation becomes increasingly important, the single auricle of the heart becomes divided into two by a septum, and the pulmonary veins are established. At the time of the metamorphosis an increasing quantity of blood avoids the gills in the manner indicated above, and these, being thrown out of connection with the rest of the body, soon atrophy, while the lungs become the important respiratory organs. The fate of the various branchial arteries may be gathered from the table on the following page.

Before, however, all these internal changes have taken place, the external form undergoes a striking metamorphosis. The tadpole has by this time grown large and strong, feeding in great part on water-weeds. Now it seems to fast, but the tail, which begins to break up internally, furnishes, with



the help of phagocytes, some nourishment to other parts of the body. The habit becomes less active, the structural adaptations to the aquatic life disappear. "The horny jaws are thrown off; the large frilled lips shrink up; the mouth loses its rounded suctorial form and becomes much wider; the tongue, previously small, increases considerably in size; the eyes, which as yet have been beneath the skin, become exposed; the fore-limbs appear, the left one being pushed through the spout-like opening of the branchial chamber, and the right one forcing its way through the opercular fold, in which it leaves a ragged hole" (Marshall).

SKELETAL ARCHES.	CLEFTS.	AORTIC ARCHES IN THE EMBRYO.	AORTIC ARCHES IN THE ADULT.
Mandibular.	...	Late in development vessels appear which represent a modification of those of a branchial arch.	Only a trace persists.
Hyoid.	Eustachian tube.	The arch is represented in a less modified form.	Disappears entirely.
First branchial.	First cleft.	First branchial arch.	Carotid arch.
Second branchial.	Second cleft.	Second „	Systemic arch.
Third branchial.	Third cleft.	Third „	Atrophies.
Fourth branchial.	Fourth cleft.	Fourth „	Pulmo-cutaneous.

While these changes are in progress, and as the supply of food afforded by the tail begins to be exhausted, the tadpole recovers its appetite, but is now exclusively carnivorous, feeding on any available animal matter, or even on its fellows. The change is not, however, so great as it seems, for even at a very early stage animal food is eagerly devoured.

With the change of diet, the abdomen shrinks, stomach and liver enlarge, the intestine becomes relatively narrower and shorter. The tail shortens more and more, and as it does so the disinclination for a purely aquatic life seems to increase. Eventually it is completely absorbed, the hind-limbs lengthen, and the conversion into a frog is completed.



In the reduction of the tail the epidermis thickens and is partly cast, partly dissolved; the muscles break up, and their substance undergoes intracellular digestion or is dissolved in the body juices; the notochord is repeatedly bent on itself and is also disrupted; the same is true of nervous system and blood vessels. It is a pathological process which has become normal. Some credit the leucocytes with playing a very important part in the reduction of the tail; but others restrict their function to engulfing solid particles, such as pigment granules, and say that most of the material degenerates until it becomes virtually fluid, when it passes directly into the vascular fluid.

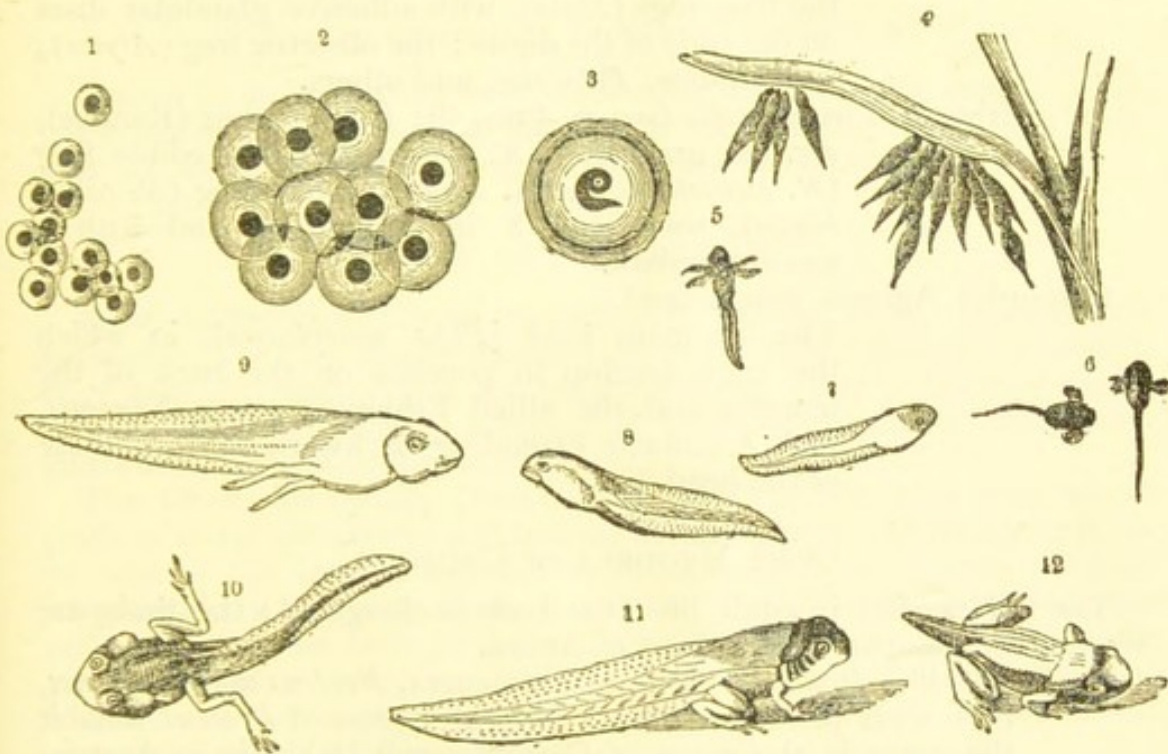


FIG. 239.—Life history of a frog.—After Brehm.

1-3. Developing ova; 4. newly-hatched forms hanging to water-weeds; 5-6. stages with external gills; 7-10. tadpoles during emergence of limbs; 11. tadpoles with both pairs of limbs apparent; 12. metamorphosis to frog.

For a considerable time the tadpole is neither male nor female, but hermaphrodite. Differences in nutrition and other conditions cause one kind of sexual organ to predominate over the other, and the tadpole becomes unisexual. In nature there is no marked disproportion in the number of the sexes in a brood, but Yung has shown that by changing the food given to young tadpoles from fish-flesh to beef, and from beef to frog-flesh, he could raise the percentage of females to about ninety.

In many respects the development of the tadpole is very interesting, especially because it is a modified recapitulation



of that transition from aquatic to aërial respiration, which must have marked one of the most momentous epochs in the evolution of Vertebrates.

### CLASSIFICATION OF AMPHIBIA.

#### Order ANURA or ECAUDATA (tailless as adults).

##### Sub-order Phaneroglossa (tongue present).

Series A. Arcifera (see p. 536), *e.g.* the toothless toads (*Bufo*); the tree-frogs (*Hyla*), with adhesive glandular discs on the ends of the digits; the obstetric frog (*Alytes*); *Bombinator*, *Pelobates*, and others.

Series B. Firmisternia (see p. 536), the frogs proper (Ranidæ), *e.g.* the grass-frog (*R. temporaria*), the edible frog (*R. esculenta*), the N. American bull-frog (*R. catesbiana*), sometimes 8 in. in length, and with a sonorous croak.

##### Sub-order Aglossa (tongueless).

The Surinam toad (*Pipa americana*), in which the eggs develop in pouches on the back of the female; and the allied Ethiopian genus *Xenopus*, with a tentacle extending backwards on each side of the head.

#### Order URODELA or CAUDATA.

The tail persists in adult life; the body is elongated; the limbs are weak when compared with those of Anura.

- (a) Forms like *Proteus*:—Two extant genera, *Proteus* and *Necturus*, both with persistent gills. Several species of *Proteus* inhabit the water in the caves of Carinthia and Dalmatia in Austria. The gills persist; there are two pairs of limbs. The eyes are degenerate; the colours are pale, as we should expect in cave-animals. Two species of *Necturus* (or *Menobranchus*) occur in N. America, in rivers and lakes.
- (b) Forms like *Siren*:—Two extant genera, *Siren* and *Pseudobranchius*, both N. American, both with persistent gills, with only the anterior limbs.
- (c) Forms like the newts and salamanders:—The N. American *Amphiuma*, with two pairs of rudimentary legs, with a slit persisting in adult life as a remnant of the gilled state; *Megalobatrachus* or *Cryptobranchius maximus*, the largest living Amphibian, found in Japan and Thibet, attains a length of 3 ft.; *Amblystoma* and its gilled form the Axolotl; *Desmognathus fusca*, the common water salamander of the United States, lays its eggs in a wreath which one of the sexes twines round its body; *Salamandra maculosa* and *S. atra*, both European, both viviparous; the newts—*Triton* or *Molge*—of which *Triton alpestris* becomes sexually mature while still larval.



## Order GYMNOPIHIONA or APODA.

Worm-like or snake-like forms, subterranean in habit ; without limbs or girdles ; with extremely short tail ; with dermic scales concealed in the skin ; in at least some forms, gills occur in early life ; the eyes are rudimentary ; peculiar "tentacles" are connected with the orbit, and are perhaps equivalent to the "balancers" which occur in some larval Urodela in front of the first gill-cleft. *Cæcilia* in S. America ; *Siphonops* in Brazil and Mexico ; *Epicrion* in Ceylon ; *Ichthyophis* (Fig. 240), Indian and Malayan.

## STEGOCEPHALI or LABYRINTHODONTIA.

Extinct forms, occurring from Carboniferous to Triassic strata.

Dermal armour is present, the teeth are frequently folded in a complex manner. *Mastodonsaurus*, *Dendrerpeton*, *Archegosaurus*.

## LIFE OF AMPHIBIANS.

Most Amphibians live in or near fresh-water ponds, swamps, and marshes. They are fatally sensitive to salt. Even those adults which have lost all trace of gills are usually fond of water. The tree-toads, such as *Hyla*, are usually arboreal in habit, while the Gymnophiona and some toads are subterranean.

The black salamander (*Salamandra atra*) of the Alps lives where pools of water are scarce, and instead of bringing forth gilled young, as its relative the spotted salamander (*S. maculosa*) does, bears them as lung-breathers, and only a pair at a time. But if the unborn young are removed from the body of the mother and placed in water, they form gills like other tadpoles. Within the mother the respiration and nutrition of the young seems to be effected by crowds of red blood corpuscles which are discharged from the walls of the uterus.

Species of *Hylodes*, such as *H. martinicensis* of the West Indian Islands, live in regions where there are few pools. In such cases the development is completed within the egg-case, and a lung-breathing tailed larva is hatched in about fourteen days. It is likely that the tail helps in respiration before hatching, but one observer reports the presence of small gills.

In some Mexican and N. American lakes there is an interesting amphibian known as *Amblystoma* or *Siredon*. It has two forms,—one losing its gills (*Amblystoma*), the other retaining them (Axolotl). Both these forms reproduce, and both may occur in the same lake. Formerly they were referred to different genera. But the fact that some Axolotls kept in the Jardin des Plantes in Paris lost their gills when their surroundings were allowed to become less moist than usual, led naturalists to recognise that the two forms were but different phases of one species. It has been shown repeatedly that a gilled Axolotl may be transformed into a form without gills ; and this metamorphosis seems to occur constantly in one of the Rocky Mountain lakes. The facts do not, however, justify the hasty conclusion that the change from the gilled to the gill-less form is determined only by differences in amount



of moisture. The transformation may indeed take place in water, and both Axolotl and *Amblystoma* have been observed in the same lake. Further, the absence or presence of gills is not the only difference between the two forms.

Amphibians are very defenceless, but their colours often conceal them. Not a few have considerable power of colour-change. The secretion of the skin is often nauseous, and therefore protective.

Many Amphibians live alone, but they usually congregate at the breeding seasons, when the amorous males often croak noisily. Alike in their love and their hunger, they are most active in the twilight.

Their food usually consists of worms, insects, slugs, and other small animals, but some of the larval forms are for a time vegetarian in diet. They are able to survive prolonged fasting, and many hibernate in the mud. Though the familiar tales of "toads within stones" are for the most part inaccurate, there is no doubt that both frogs and toads can survive prolonged imprisonment. Besides having great vital tenacity, Amphibians have considerable power of repairing injuries to the tail or limbs.

Although the life of Amphibians seems to have on an average a low potential, even the most sluggish wake up in connection with reproduction. The males often differ from their mates in size and colour. Some of their parental habits seem like strange experiments.

Thus in the Surinam toad (*Pipa americana*) the large eggs are placed by the male on the back of the female, and fertilised there. The skin becomes much changed—doubtless in response to the strange irritation—and each fer-

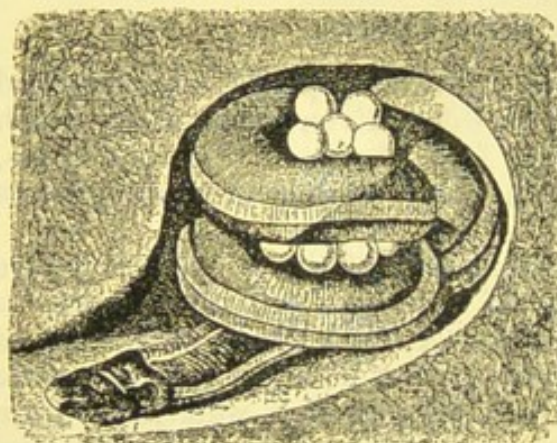


FIG. 240.—Cæcilian (*Ichthyophis*) with eggs.—After Sarasin.

tilised ovum sinks into a little pocket, which is closed by a gelatinous lid. In these pockets the embryos develop, perhaps absorbing some nutritive material from the skin. They are hatched as miniature adults. In *Nototrema* and *Opisthodelphis* the female has a dorsal pouch of skin opening posteriorly, and within this tadpoles are hatched. In *Rhinoderma darwinii* the male carries the ova in his capacious croaking-sacs. In the case of the obstetric toad (*Alytes obstetricans*), not uncommon in some parts of the Continent, the male carries the strings of ova on his back and about his hind legs, buries himself in damp earth until the development of the embryos is approaching completion, then plunges into a pool, where he is freed from his living burden. Thus among Amphibians, as among Fishes, the males sometimes take upon themselves the task of hatching the eggs.

In the Anura the ova are fertilised by the male as they leave the oviduct; in the newt the male deposits a spermatophore in the water close to the female; in *Salamandra atra*, *S. maculosa*, and *Cecilia com-*



*pressicauda*, the fertilisation must take place internally, for the eggs are hatched within the mother.

The eggs of the frog are laid in masses, each being surrounded by a globe of jelly; those of the toad are laid in long strings; those of newts are fixed singly to water-plants; those of some tree-toads, such as *Hylodes*, are laid on or under leaves in moist places.

In *Salamandra atra*, *Pipa americana*, *Hylodes*, and *Cecilia compressicauda*, the young are hatched as miniature adults; and marked metamorphosis can hardly be said to occur in any Urodela. The larval stages of Amphibians afford clear illustration of the plasticity of young animals under environmental stimulus. Thus the larvæ of *Salamandra maculosa* become lighter or darker as the water is warmer or colder, and the tadpoles of frogs and young salamanders becomes lighter in darkness and darker in light, though the opposite is true of adult frogs.

There are about 900 living species of Amphibia, most of them tailless. All are averse to salt water, hence their absence from almost all oceanic islands. The Anura are well-nigh cosmopolitan; the Urodela are almost limited to the temperate parts of the northern hemisphere.

**History.**—It is likely that Amphibians were derived from a stock from which the Dipnoi and perhaps also the modern Elasmobranchs sprang. The Stegocephali or Labyrinthodontia really include two or more distinct orders. Of living forms, the Gymnophiona are more old-fashioned than the others. The modern types gradually appear in Tertiary times. Some of the extinct forms were gigantic.

Huxley has emphasised the following affinities between Amphibians and Mammals:—The Amphibia, like Mammals, have two condyles on the skull; the pectoral girdle of Mammals is as much amphibian as it is sauropsidian; the mammalian carpus is directly reducible to that of Amphibians. In Amphibians only does the articular element of the mandibular arch remain cartilaginous; the quadrate ossification is small, and the squamosal extends down over it to the osseous elements of the mandible, thus affording easy transition to the mammalian condition of these parts.

There are many remarkable affinities between the Labyrinthodont Amphibians and a class of extinct Reptiles known as Anomodontia, and as the latter have also many affinities with Mammals, it is possible that both Mammals and Anomodonts diverged from an Amphibian stock. The strange extinct Eotetrapoda of Credner seem to unite the Stegocephali to the Rhychocephalia, a class of Reptiles now represented by the New Zealand "lizard" *Sphenodon*.



## CHAPTER XXIV.

### REPTILES.

CHELONIA. RHYNCHOCEPHALIA. LACERTILIA. OPHIDIA.  
CROCODILIA. MANY EXTINCT CLASSES.

THE diverse animals—Tortoises, Lizards, Snakes, Crocodilians, etc.—which are classed together as Reptiles, are the modern representatives of those Vertebrates which first became independent of the water, and began to possess the dryland. While almost all Amphibians spend at least their youth in the water, breathing by gills, this is not necessary for Reptiles, in which embryonic respiration is secured by a vascular foetal membrane known as the allantois. As in still higher Vertebrates, gill-slits are present in the embryos; but they are not functional, and are without gills. Reptiles seem to form among Vertebrates a great central assemblage, like “worms” among Invertebrates, rather a number of classes than a class, exhibiting affinities not only with Birds, but with Mammals and Amphibians as well.

Reptiles, Birds, and Mammals are often distinguished, as Amniota, from Amphibians and Fishes, which are called Anamnia, the terms referring to the presence or absence of the protective foetal membrane—the amnion—with which another, the allantois, is always associated. Among these Amniota the Mammals stand somewhat apart, while the Reptiles and Birds, so different in form and habit, are united by deep structural resemblances. These were first clearly recognised by Huxley, who united Birds and Reptiles as Sauropsida, in contrast to Mammalia on the one hand, and Ichthyopsida (Amphibians and Fishes) on the other. (See Table.)



# SOME OF THE CONTRASTS BETWEEN ICHTHYOPSIDA, SAUROPSIDA, AND MAMMALIA.

<p>ICHTHYOPSIDA. FISHES AND AMPHIBIANS.</p>	<p>SAUROPSIDA. REPTILES AND BIRDS.</p>	<p>MAMMALIA. MONOTREMES, MARSUPIALS, &amp; PLACENTALS.</p>
<p>There is no amnion nor allantois, except in so far as the latter is represented by the cloacal bladder of Amphibians.</p>	<p>The amnion of the embryo forms a protective membrane; the allantois secures embryonic respiration, and sometimes helps in absorbing food.</p>	<p>The amnion forms in part a protective membrane, in part it aids the allantois in forming the placenta, which is developed in all Mammals except Monotremes and the majority of the Marsupials, in which the allantois is usually degenerate.</p>
<p>There are gills, during early life at least. The scales of fishes are in great part dermic, while in almost all modern Amphibians there is no exoskeleton.</p>	<p>Respiration is never discharged by gills. There is an epidermic exoskeleton of scales or feathers.</p>	<p>Respiration is never discharged by gills. There is an epidermic covering of hair, in most cases well developed. Mammary glands are developed in the females.</p>
<p>There is a system of lateral sense organs, at least during early life. The vertebral column is often incompletely ossified; on the ends of the vertebral centra, etc., there are no separate ossifications or epiphyses. Much of the cartilaginous brain-box may persist; there is often a large parasphenoid; the basisphenoid is small or absent; the basioccipital is at most incompletely ossified; the condyle may be single or double, and in the latter case is due to the exoccipitals; at least four branchial arches are developed; there are usually several membrane bones around Meckel's cartilage. The sternum, if present, is not formed from the ventral ends of ribs.</p>	<p>There are rarely any epiphyses to the bones; there is no separate parasphenoid in the adult; the basisphenoid is a well-developed bone; the occipital region is completely ossified; there is a single (or sometimes triple) condyle formed from basioccipital and exoccipitals; in reptiles the pro-, epi-, and opisth-otic bones remain separate from one another, and fuse with adjacent bones; in birds they fuse with one another and with adjacent bones about the same time; the mandible consists of one cartilage bone—the articular—and four to five membrane bones; it articulates with the skull by means of the quadrate. The sternum is formed from the ventral ends of ribs.</p>	<p>No distinct trace of lateral line system.</p>
<p>There are but ten cranial nerves.</p>	<p>There are twelve cranial nerves, except in snakes.</p>	<p>There are twelve cranial nerves.</p>
<p>The gut often ends in a cloaca. The heart is two- or three-chambered; there are at least two persistent aortic arches; the red blood corpuscles are oval and nucleated.</p>	<p>The gut always ends in a cloaca. The heart is three- or four-chambered; in birds there is one aortic arch (to the right), in reptiles there are at least two aortic arches; the red blood corpuscles are oval and nucleated.</p>	<p>Only in Monotremes is there a true cloaca. The heart is four-chambered; there is one aortic arch (to the left); the red blood corpuscles are non-nucleated, and almost always circular; a muscular diaphragm separates thorax from abdomen.</p>
<p>The great majority are oviparous. The ova are generally numerous, with holoblastic or meroblastic segmentation.</p>	<p>Except a few reptiles, all are oviparous. The ova are large, with much yolk, usually with a calcareous shell, with meroblastic segmentation.</p>	<p>Except Monotremes, all are viviparous. Except in Monotremes, the ova are small, with little or no yolk, with holoblastic segmentation.</p>



Some of the main contrasts between living Reptiles and Birds are summarised in the following table:—

REPTILES.	BIRDS.
<p>The exoskeleton consists of horny epidermal scales, sometimes augmented by bony dermal scutes.</p> <p>The centra of the vertebra are rarely like those of birds.</p>	<p>There is an outer covering of feathers, and though there may be a few scales, there are never scutes.</p> <p>The centra of the cervical vertebræ have usually a saddle-shaped terminal curvature.</p>
<p>When there is a sacrum, its vertebræ (usually two in number) have large expanded ribs with the ends of which the ilia articulate.</p>	<p>The two sacral vertebræ have no expanded ribs, they fuse with others to form a long composite "sacrum."</p>
<p>The cartilaginous sternum may become bony, but is not replaced by membrane bones, unless perhaps in Pterodactyls.</p>	<p>The cartilaginous sternum is replaced by membrane bones from several centres.</p>
<p>When there is an interclavicle or episternum, it remains distinct from the clavicle and sternum.</p>	<p>When there is an interclavicle, it is confluent with the clavicles.</p>
<p>The hand has more than three digits, and at least the three radial digits are clawed.</p>	<p>The hand has not more than three digits, and at most two radials are clawed. The fore-limbs are modified as wings; some carpals fuse with the metacarpals.</p>
<p>In living reptiles the ilia are prolonged further behind than in front of the acetabulum; the pubes slope downward and forward; there are usually pubic and ischiac symphyses.</p>	<p>The ilia are greatly prolonged in front of the acetabulum, the inner wall of which is membranous. The pubes slope backwards, parallel with the ischia; only in <i>Struthio</i> is there a pubic symphysis, only in <i>Rhea</i> is there an ischiac one.</p>
<p>There are often five toes; the tarsals and the metatarsals remain distinct.</p>	<p>There are not more than four toes; the proximal tarsals unite with the tibia, forming a tibio-tarsus; the first metatarsal if present is free, but the three others are fused to one another and to the distal tarsals, forming a tarso-metatarsus.</p>
<p>At least two aortic arches persist; only the Crocodilia have a structurally four-chambered heart; more or less mixed blood always goes to the posterior body.</p>	<p>There is but one aortic arch, to the right; the heart is four-chambered; the blood sent to the body is purely arterial.</p>
<p>The body has approximately the temperature of the surrounding medium.</p>	<p>The body temperature is high and almost constant.</p>
<p>The optic lobes lie on the upper surface of the brain.</p>	<p>The optic lobes lie on the side of the brain.</p>
	<p>The lungs have associated air-sacs.</p>
	<p>The sutures between the bones of the skull are usually obliterated at an early stage.</p>
	<p>The right ovary atrophies.</p>

Reptiles are essentially creatures of the earth, but many lizards, snakes, and turtles, and all the crocodilians, are in the main aquatic. Partially marine forms are repre-



sented by the Galapagos lizard, which swims out among the sea-weed ; by some estuarine crocodilians ; by some turtles which live far out at sea, and only seek the shores to lay their eggs ; and by the sea-snakes (Hydrophidæ), which never leave the water.

### CHELONIA. Tortoises and Turtles.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*The body is compact and broad in the region of the trunk. There is a dorsal and a ventral shield, within the shelter of which the head and neck, tail and limbs, can be more or less retracted.*

*The dorsal carapace is usually formed from—(a) the*

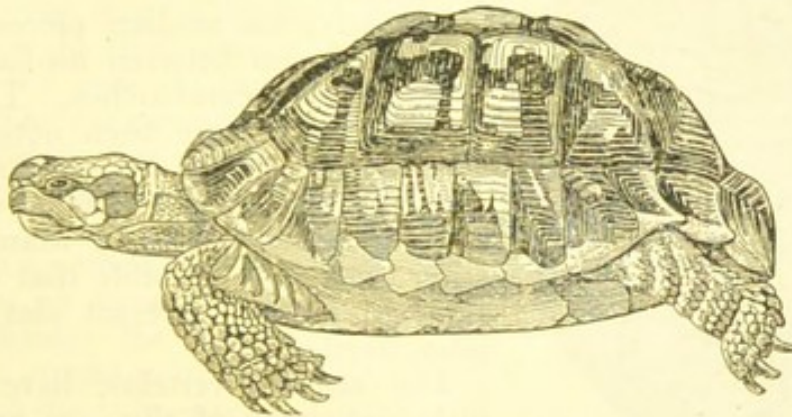


FIG. 241.—External appearance of tortoise.

*flattened neural spines (plus dermal bones); (b) expanded and more or less coalesced ribs (plus dermal bones; (c) a series of dermal marginal bones around the outer edge. In the Athecæ the dorsal vertebræ and ribs are not fused to the dermal plates which form the carapace. The ventral shield or plastron is formed of nine or so dermal bones. There is no sternum.*

*Overlapping, but in no way corresponding to the bony plates, are epidermic horny plates of "tortoise shell," which, though very hard, are not without sensitiveness, numerous nerves ending upon them.*

*The quadrate is immovably united with the skull.*

*The jaws are covered by a horny sheath, and are without teeth, though hints of these have been seen in some embryos.*

*The average life of Chelonians is sluggish. Perhaps this is in part due to the way in which the ribs are lost in the*



*carapace, for this must tend to make respiration less active. The lungs are divided into a number of compartments.*

*All are oviparous. The eggs have firm, usually calcareous, shells.*

### *Some Peculiarities in the Skeleton of Chelonia.*

The dorsal vertebræ seem to be without transverse processes, and along with the ribs are for the most part immovably fused in the carapace. The tail and the neck are the only flexible regions.

The greater part of the dorsal shield seems to be due to a coalescence of rib-cartilages; to an ossification of these and of the surrounding intercostal tissue; and to a coalescence with superficial dermal bones.

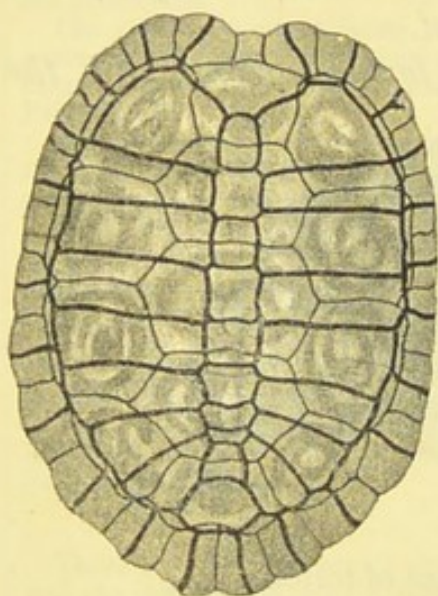


FIG. 242.—Carapace of tortoise. — From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

The dark contours are those of the bony pieces; the lighter contours are those of the scales which have been removed.

Similarly, the median pieces are the result of fusion between median dermal bones and the neural arches. The exceptional *Athecæ* have been noted above. The plastron pieces are comparable to the "abdominal ribs" of the crocodile or of the New Zealand lizard; at the same time, it is possible that the three anterior pieces represent clavicles and interclavicle.

The cervical vertebræ have at most little rudiments of ribs, are remarkably varied as regards their articular faces, and give the neck many possibilities of motion. There are no lumbar vertebræ.

The bones of the skull are immovably united; there are no ossified alisphenoids, but downward prolongations of the large parietals take their place; neither presphenoid nor orbitosphenoids are ossified; there are no distinct nasal bones in modern Chelonians; the premaxillæ are very small; there are no teeth; there is a complete bony palate formed in great part from the junction of the pterygoids with the basisphenoid and with one another.

There is no sternum. The pectoral girdle on each side consists of a dorsal scapula attached to the carapace, a ventral coracoid bearing terminally a small epicoracoid, and anterior to the coracoid a pre-coracoid.

The pelvic girdle consists of dorsal ilia attached to the carapace, posterior ischia, and anterior pubes, with pre-pubic processes and an epi-pubic cartilage.

The girdles originally lie in front of, or behind the ribs, but are over-arched by the carapace in the course of its development.



*Some Peculiarities in the Organs of Chelonia.*

The brain of the adult shows a slight curvature. In Chelonians and in all higher animals except serpents, there are twelve cranial nerves, for, in addition to the usual ten, a spinal accessory to cervical muscles, and a hypoglossal to the tongue, are ranked as the eleventh and twelfth.

The gullet of the turtle shows in great development what is hinted at in others, long horny papillæ pointing downwards; it is probable that these help to tear up the food (sea-weed in the case of the turtle). There are usually blind pockets or anal bursæ connected with the cloaca.

The heart is three-chambered, but an incomplete septum divides the ventricle into a right portion, from which the pulmonary arteries and the left aortic arch arise, and a left portion, from which the right aortic arch issues. From

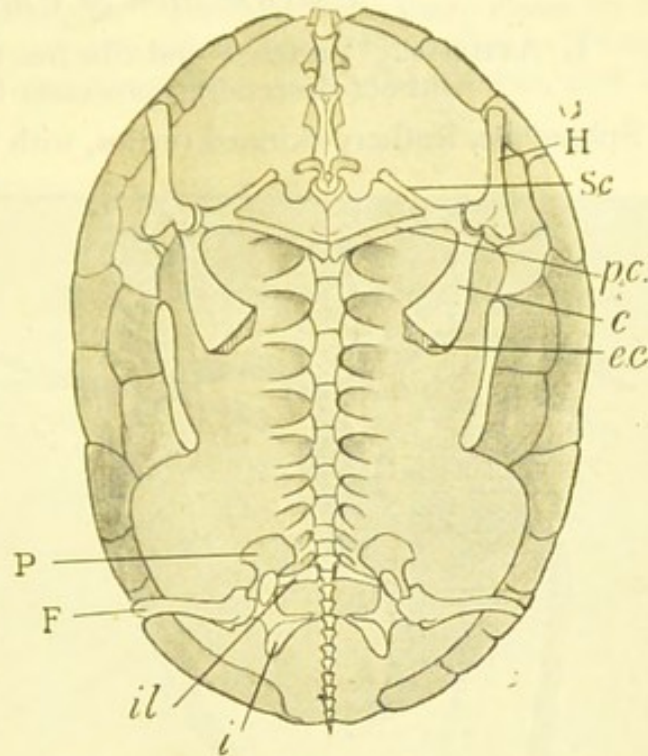


FIG. 243.—Internal view of skeleton of turtle.  
—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

H., Humerus; Sc., scapula, running dorsally; c., coracoid; ec. epicoracoid; pc., precoracoid; P., pubis; il., ilium, running dorsally; Is., ischium; F., femur.

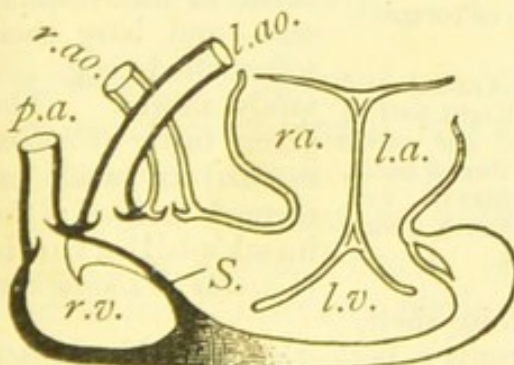


FIG. 244.—Dissection of Chelonian heart.—After Huxley.

r.v., Right half of ventricle; S., septum; l.v., left half of ventricle; r.a., right auricle; l.a., left auricle; l.a.o., left aortic arch; r.a.o., right aortic arch; p.a., pulmonary arch.

the right aortic arch, which contains more pure blood than the left, the carotid and subclavian arteries are given off. The left aortic arch gives off the celiac artery before it unites with the right.

Unlike other Reptiles, the Chelonians are said to have no renal-portal system.

The lungs are attached to the dorsal wall of the thorax, and have only a ventral investment of peritoneum; each is divided into a series of compartments into which branches of the bronchus open. There is a slight muscular "diaphragm."

In the males, the kidney, the epididymis, and the testes lie adjacent



to one another on each side. The males have a grooved penis attached to the anterior wall of the cloaca. There is a urinary bladder.

### Classification of Chelonia.

- I. ATHECÆ. Vertebræ and ribs free from carapace. Skull without descending processes from parietals.

Sphargidæ, leathery-skinned turtles, with flexible carapace. *Sphargis* (*Dermatochelys*) *coriacea*, the only living species, the largest modern Chelonian, sometimes measuring 6 ft. in length. It is widely, but now sparsely, distributed in intertropical seas, and is said to be herbivorous.

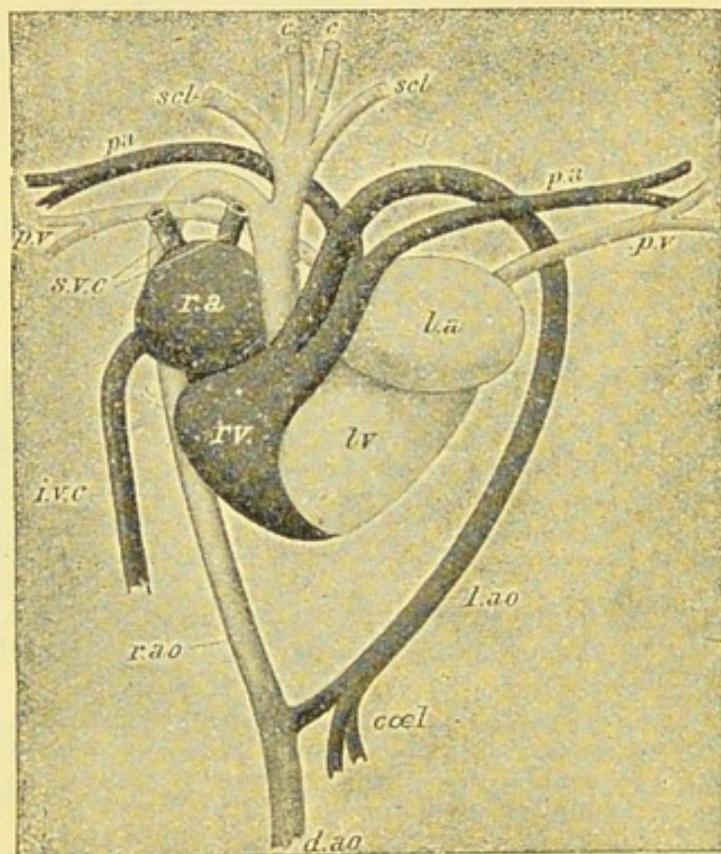


FIG. 245.—Heart and associated vessels of tortoise.  
—After Nuhn.

*r.a.*, Right auricle; superior venæ cavæ (*s.v.c.*) and inferior vena cava (*i.v.c.*) enter it. *r.v.* Right half of ventricle; pulmonary arteries (*p.a.*) and left aortic arch (*l.a.o.*) leave it; *cœl.*, coeliac; *d.a.o.*, dorsal aorta. *l.a.*, Left auricle; *p.v.*, pulmonary veins enter it. *l.v.*, Left half of ventricle; right aortic arch (*r.a.o.*), giving off carotids (*c.*) and subclavians (*s.c.l.*).

### II. THECOPHORA.

Dorsal vertebræ and ribs fused in the carapace. Parietals prolonged downwards. Including the following and other families:—

Chelonidæ, marine turtles, with fin-like feet, and partially ossified carapace. They occur in intertropical seas, and bury their soft-shelled eggs on sandy shores. The green turtle (*Chelone viridis*) is much esteemed as food; the hawk's-bill turtle (*Caretta imbricata*)

furnishes much of the commercial tortoise-shell.

Testudinidæ, land tortoises, with convex perfectly ossified carapace and feet adapted for walking. They are found in the warmer regions of both the Old and the New World, but not in Australia. In diet they are vegetarian. The common tortoise (*Testudo græca*) and the exterminated giant tortoises of the Mascarene and Galapagos Islands are good representatives.

Chelydidæ, fresh-water tortoises, more or less aquatic, with perfectly ossified carapace, and feet with sharp claws. Examples.—*Chelys*



*fimbriata*, from Brazil and the Guianas, with warty growths of deceptive appearance. The aquatic terrapins of N. America belong to the family Chelydridæ, *Chelydra*, and *Macrolemmys*.

Trionychidæ, fresh-water turtles, with depressed carapace covered with soft skin, with webbed digits. Each foot has sharp claws on the three inner digits. They are carnivorous in habit. Examples.—*Trionyx javanicus*, *T. gangeticus*, *T. niloticus*, from Java, the Ganges, and the Nile respectively.

### RHYNCHOCEPHALIA.

The only *living* representative of this "class" is the New Zealand "Lizard" or Tuatara—*Hatteria* (*Sphenodon*)

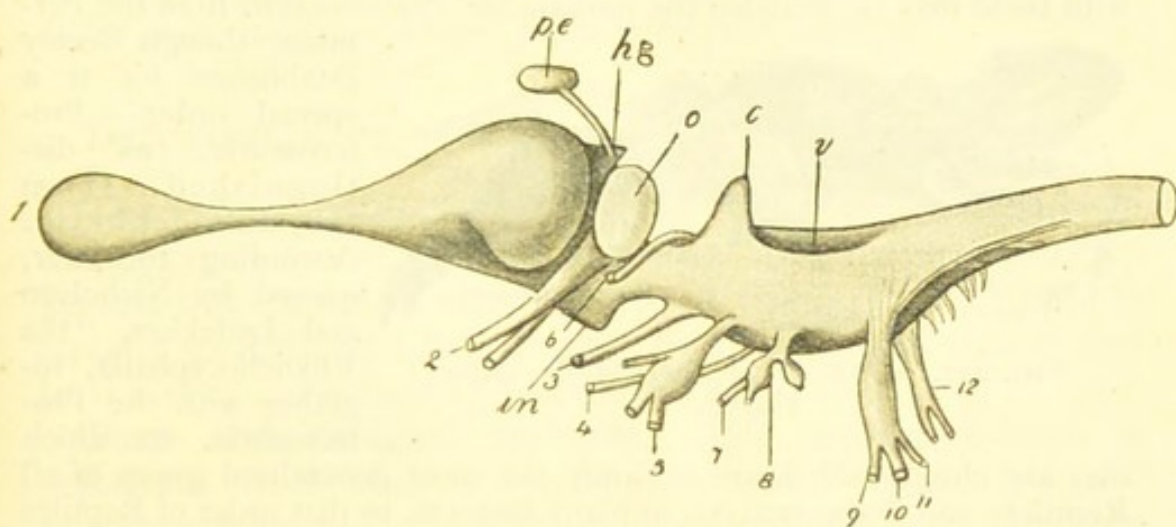


FIG. 246.—Lateral view of brain of *Hatteria punctata*.  
—After Osawa.

1-12, Cranial nerves; *p.e.*, parietal eye; *h.g.*, pineal gland; *o*, optic lobe; *c.*, cerebellum; *v.*, fourth ventricle; *in.*, infundibulum and pituitary body.

*punctata*. Lizard-like in appearance, it measures from one to two feet in length, has a compressed crested tail, is dull olive-green spotted with yellow above and whitish below. It is now rare, but is preserved in some small islands off the New Zealand coast. It lives in holes among the rocks or in small burrows, feeds on small animals, and is nocturnal in habit.

The skull, unlike that of any lizard, has an ossified quadrato-jugal, and therefore a complete infra-temporal arcade; the quadrate is firmly united to pterygoid, squamosal, and quadrato-jugal; the pterygoids meet the vomer and separate the palatines; there are teeth on the palatine in a single longitudinal row, parallel with those on maxilla and mandible, and the three sets seem to wear one another away; there is



also a single tooth on each side of a kind of beak formed by the pre-maxillæ; the nares are divided.

The vertebræ are amphicœlous or biconcave, as in geckos among lizards and in many extinct Reptiles. Some of the ribs bear uncinæ processes, as in Birds; as in crocodiles, there are numerous "abdominal ribs," ossifications in the subcutaneous fibrous tissue of the abdomen. The anterior end of the "plastron" thus formed overlaps the posterior end of the sternum. Clavicles and interclavicle or episternum are present.

The pineal or parietal eye, which reaches the skin on the top of the head, is less degenerate than in other animals, retaining, for instance, distinct traces of a complex retina.

Near the living *Sphenodon*, the Permian *Palæohatteria*, the Triassic *Hyperodapedon*, and some other important types may be ranked. Along with these may be included the remarkable *Proterosaurus* from the Per-

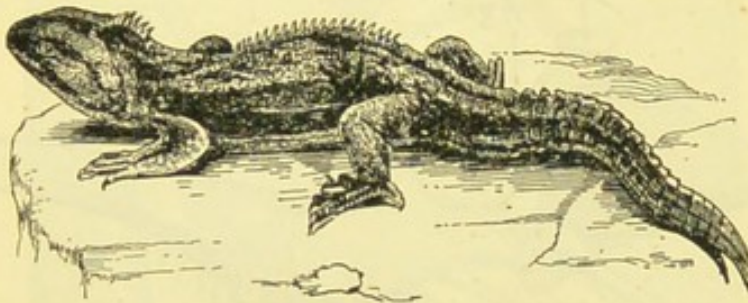


FIG. 247.—*Hatteria* or *Sphenodon*.—After Hayek.

mian, though Seeley establishes for it a special order — Proterosauria, as distinguished from Rhynchocephalia. According to Baur, quoted by Nicholson and Lydekker, "the Rhynchocephalia, together with the Proterosauria, to which

they are closely allied, are certainly the most generalised group of all Reptiles, and come nearest, in many respects, to that order of Reptiles from which all others took their origin." We have already noted that they are linked to the Amphibia.

#### LACERTILIA. Lizards.

The lizards occupy a somewhat central position among Reptiles.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*The body is usually well covered with scales. In most, both fore- and hind-limbs are developed and bear clawed digits, but either pair or both pairs may be absent. The shoulder- and hip-girdles are always present, in rudiment at least. There is a sternum and an episternum. Unlike snakes, lizards have non-expansile mouths. The maxillæ, palatines, and pterygoids are fixed, and there is usually a mandibular symphysis. There are almost always movable eyelids and external ear openings. The teeth are fused to the edge or to the ridge of the jaws, never planted in sockets. The tongue, broad and short in some, e.g. Geckos*



and Iguanas, long and terminally clubbed in Chamæleons, is oftenest a narrow bifid organ of touch. The opening of the cloaca is transverse. There is a urinary bladder, corresponding to that of the frog, and a double penis. Most are oviparous, but in a few the eggs are hatched within the body. They are usually active, agile animals, beautifully and often protectively coloured. The caudal region is often very brittle; lost tails and even legs may be regenerated. The food generally consists of insects, worms, and other small animals, but some prey upon larger animals, and others are vegetarian. Most are terrestrial, some arboreal, a few semi-aquatic, and there is one marine form. Lizards are most abundant in the tropics, and are absent from very cold regions.

#### DESCRIPTION OF A LIZARD AS A TYPE OF REPTILES.

The following description applies especially to the long-tailed green lizard (*Lacerta viridis*), found abundantly in Jersey, but, except in minor points, it will be found to apply equally to the small British grey lizard (*Lacerta agilis*) and to the viviparous lizard (*Zootoca vivipara*):—

**Form and external features.**—The depressed head is separated from the body by a distinct neck, but the posterior region of the body passes gradually into the long tail, which is often mutilated in captured specimens. Both fore- and hind-limbs are present, and both are furnished with five clawed digits. Of the apertures of the body, the large mouth is terminal, the external nares are close to the end of the snout, and the cloacal aperture is a considerable transverse opening placed at the root of the tail. There is no external ear, but the tympanic membrane at either side is slightly depressed below the level of the skin of the head. The eyes are furnished with both upper and lower eyelids, and also with a nictitating membrane.

**Skin.**—As contrasted with that of the frog, the skin is remarkable as possessing a distinct exoskeleton of epidermic scales. In the head region these exhibit a definite arrangement characteristic of the species. With the presence of an exoskeleton we must associate the absence of the numerous cutaneous glands of the frog; these are here represented only by a row of “femoral glands,” which open



by pores on the ventral surface of the thigh. Their secretion is most obvious in the male at pairing time. The histological composition of the skin is very similar to that of the frog's skin. Pigment is deposited here also in two layers, of which the outer is greenish, the inner black. It is of special interest to notice that over the parietal foramen (see Skull) the black pigment is absent, the green only feebly represented; in this region, therefore, the skin is almost transparent.

Many lizards, such as the Chamæleons, exhibit in a remarkable degree the power of rapidly changing the colour of their skin. This is due to the fact that the protoplasm of the pigment cells contracts or expands under nervous control. The change of colour is sometimes advantageously protective, but it seems often to be merely a reflex symptom of the nervous condition of the animals.

In a few cases, *e.g.* some of the skinks, there are minute dermal ossifications beneath the scales.

**Skeleton.**—The backbone consists of a variable number of vertebræ, and is divisible into cervical, dorsal, lumbar, sacral, and caudal regions. Except the atlas and the last caudal, all the vertebræ are procœlous, as in all living Lacertilians except Geckos.

The atlas consists of three separate pieces, its centrum ossifies as usual as the odontoid process of the axis. There are two sacral vertebræ with large expanded sacral ribs. To the ventral surfaces of many of the caudal vertebræ Y-shaped "chevron" bones are attached. Across the centre of the caudal vertebræ there extends a median unossified zone; it is in this region that separation takes place when a startled lizard loses its tail.

The ribs are numerous, but only five reach the sternum.

The skull is well ossified, but in the region of the nares, in the interorbital septum, etc., the primitive cartilaginous brain-box persists. On the dorsal surface the bones exhibit numerous impressions made by the epidermic scales, which render it difficult to distinguish the true sutures of the bones. As in Reptiles in general, the brain-case is small in comparison with the skull, and is largely covered by investing bones, between some of which are spaces or fossæ.

Two fused parietals with the rounded median "parietal foramen," two frontals, and the two nasals, are the most important constituents of the roof of the skull. Anteriorly, the premaxillæ appear between the nasals, while posteriorly the sickle-shaped squamosal is attached by a suture to the parietal, and is overlapped by one of the two small supra-



temporal bones. The orbit is roofed by a series of small bones, of which the anterior and posterior are respectively known as pre- and post-frontal.

On the floor of the adult skull there is a large basal bone, composed of fused occipital and sphenoidal elements, and continued forward as a slender bar (parasphenoid). This bone gives off two stout processes, the basipterygoid processes, which articulate with the pterygoids. Each

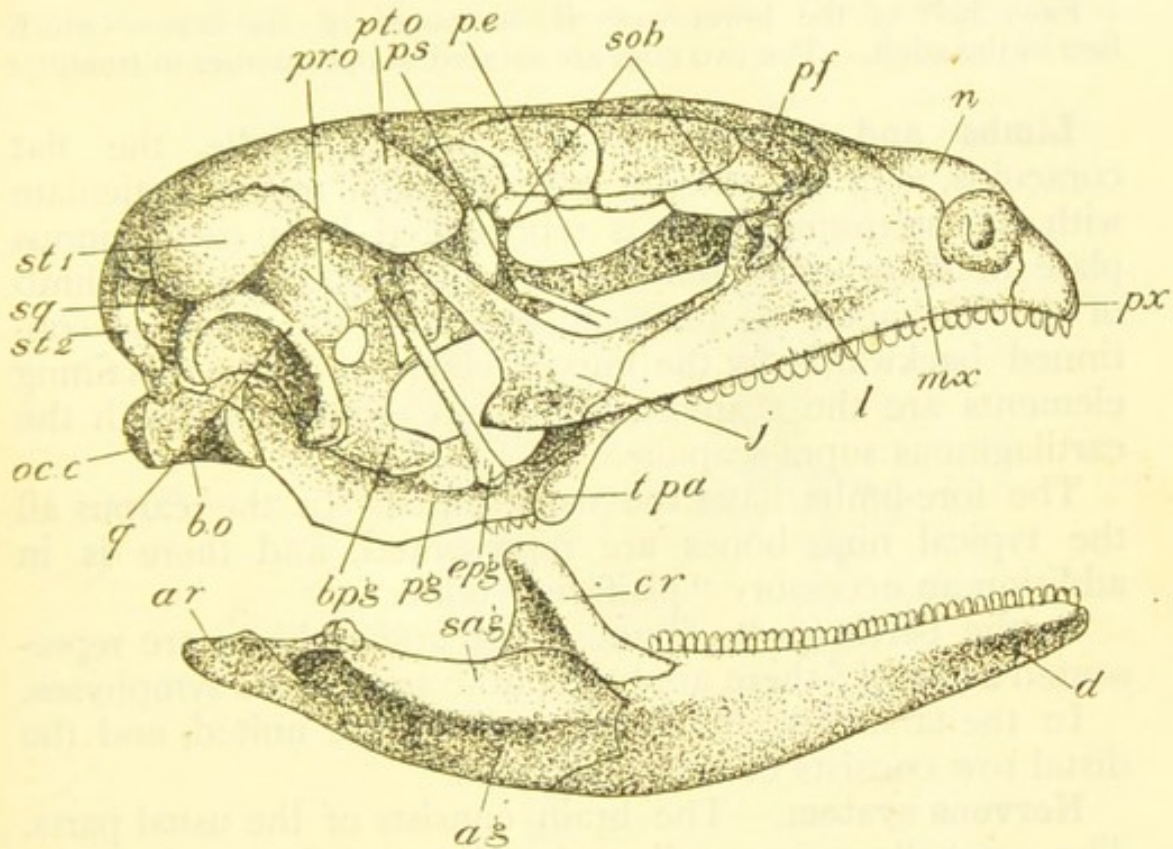


FIG. 248.—Side view of skull of *Lacerta*.—After W. K. Parker.

px., Premaxilla; mx., maxilla; l., lachrymal; j., jugal; t.pa., transpalatine; epg., epipterygoid; pg., pterygoid; bpg., basipterygoid; b.o., basioccipital; q., quadrate; oc.c., occipital condyle; sq., squamosal; pr.o., pro-otic; pt.o., postorbital; st1., st2., supratemporals; ps., presphenoid (the optic nerve is seen issuing in front of the end of the reference line); p.e., mesethmoid; s.ob., supraorbitals; pf., prefrontal; n., nasal; ar., articular; ag., angular; sag., surangular; cr., coronary; d., dentary.

pterygoid is connected posteriorly to the quadrate bone of the corresponding side, and anteriorly with the palatine. From the union of pterygoid and palatine, a stout os transversum or transpalatine extends outwards to the maxilla. In front of the palatines lie the small vomers, which, in their turn, articulate with the premaxilla and maxilla, both of which are furnished with small pointed teeth. In the posterior region of the skull we have still to notice the large ex-occipitals with which the opisthotics are fused, and which are continued into the conspicuous parotic processes. The lateral walls of the brain-case are largely formed



by the paired pro-otics. Internally, an important bone, the epipterygoid or "columella" (not to be confounded with the columella or stapes of the ear), extends from the pro-otic to the pterygoid. The orbit is bounded posteriorly and inferiorly by the jugals. There is no ossified quadrato-jugal, and thus the lateral temporal fossa is open below in the dried skull (contrast *Hatteria*). The other fossæ of the dried skull are the supra-temporal on the upper surface, and the posterior-temporal on the posterior surface.

Each half of the lower jaw is composed of six bones, which fuse in the adult. The two rami are sutured to one another in front.

**Limbs and girdles.**—In the shoulder-girdle, the flat coracoids, with an anterior precoracoidal region, articulate with the sternum, which is represented by a cartilaginous plate of rhomboidal shape. Over it projects the long limb of the T-shaped interclavicle, which, at the sides, is continued backwards by the curved clavicles. The remaining elements are the scapulæ, which are continuous with the cartilaginous supra-scapulæ.

The fore-limbs have the usual parts. In the carpus all the typical nine bones are represented, and there is in addition an accessory "pisiform" bone.

In the pelvic girdle, ilium, pubis, and ischium are represented as usual; there are both pubic and ischiac symphyses.

In the tarsus the fibulare and tibiale are united, and the distal row consists of only two bones.

**Nervous system.**—The brain consists of the usual parts. The cerebellum is small and only partially overlaps the fourth ventricle. In the region of the thalamus the epiphysis is distinct and conspicuous, but in the adult the pineal body is quite separated from it, and lies in its connective tissue capsule below the skin.

**Alimentary system.**—Small pointed teeth are present on the maxillæ, premaxillæ, palatines, and on the lower jaw. They are fixed without sockets on the edge of the jaw-bones (pleurodont); in many Lacertilians they are implanted along the ridge (acrodont). Salivary glands occur on the floor of the mouth cavity. The narrow gullet passes gradually into the muscular stomach, which again passes into the coiled small intestine. Near the commencement of the large intestine there is a small cæcum. A voluminous liver, with a gall-bladder embedded in it, and a pancreas, are present as usual.



Embedded in the mesentery below the stomach lies the rounded spleen. A whitish thyroid gland lies on the ventral surface of the trachea a short distance in front of the heart.

**Vascular system.**—The heart is completely enveloped by the pericardium, and is three-chambered, consisting of two thin-walled auricles and a muscular ventricle. From the ventral surface of the ventricle arises the conspicuous truncus arteriosus, which is formed by the bases of the

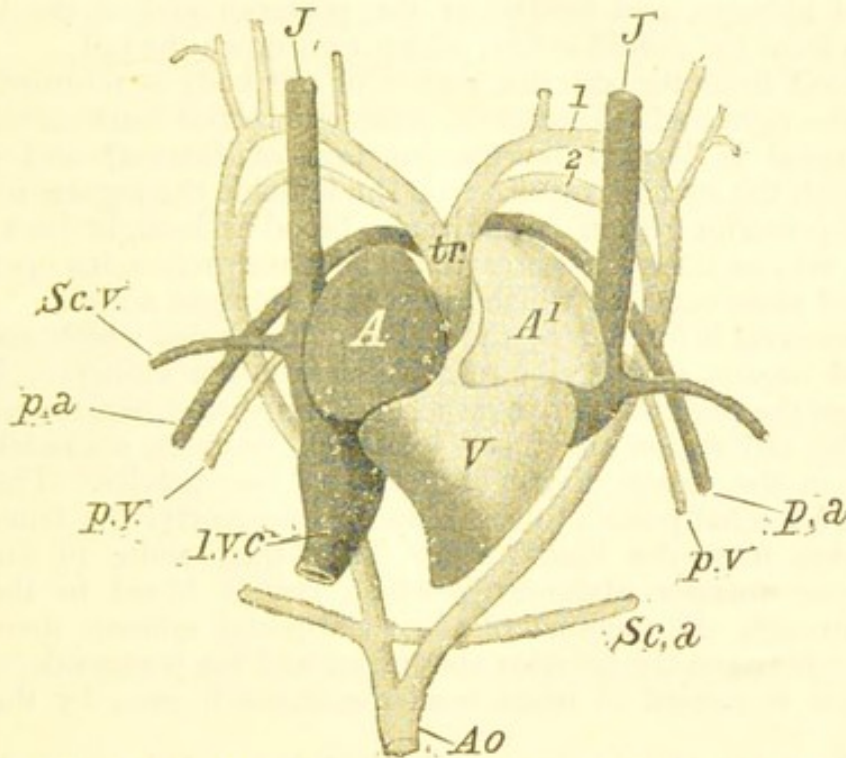


FIG. 249.—Heart and associated vessels of a lizard.  
After Nuhn.

*A.*, Right auricle; jugulars (*J.*), subclavians (*Sc.v.*), and inferior vena cava (*I.V.C.*) enter it. *V.*, ventricle; *tr.*, truncus arteriosus; 1, first aortic arch giving off carotids; 2, second aortic arch; *p.a.*, pulmonary artery; *Sc.a.*, subclavian; *Ao.*, dorsal aorta. *A1.*, left auricle; pulmonary veins (*p.v.*) enter it. In the lizard described, the left jugular is not developed.

aortic arches, and exhibits a division into two parts. From the more ventral part arises the left aortic arch, which curves round to the left side, first giving off a short connecting vessel (*ductus Botallii*) to the carotid arch. From the other division of the truncus arteriosus, a great arterial trunk arises, and this gives off the right aortic arch and the right and left carotid arches. The right aortic arch sends a *ductus Botallii* to the carotid arch of the right side, and then curves round the heart to join the left arch, when the two



form the dorsal aorta. The carotid arches supply the head region with blood. From the base of the truncus arteriosus, the right and left pulmonary arteries also arise (Fig. 249).

From the right aortic arch as it curves round, arise the right and left subclavian arteries, which carry blood to the fore-limbs. A coeliacomesenteric artery arises from the dorsal aorta and supplies the viscera. Smaller vessels are also given off to the genital organs, etc., and then at the anterior end of the kidneys the aorta divides into two femoral arteries, which break up into a network of small vessels, supplying hind-limbs and kidneys, and finally, at the posterior end of the kidneys, reunite to form the caudal artery, which runs down the tail.

The blood from the anterior region of the body is returned to the heart by the right and left precaval veins or superior venæ cavæ. The right precaval is formed by the junction of external and internal jugulars with the subclavian vein; on the left side the jugular is absent. From the posterior region of the body, blood is brought back by the postcaval vein or inferior vena cava. The three great veins open into a thin-walled sinus venosus, which opens into the right auricle.

The postcaval is formed by the union of two veins which run along the genital organs, and receive renal veins from the kidneys. In passing through the liver the postcaval receives important hepatic veins.

From the tail region the blood is brought back by a caudal, which bifurcates in the region of the kidneys into two pelvics. The pelvic veins give off renal-portals to the kidneys, and receive the femoral and sciatic veins from the hind-limbs. They then unite to form the epigastric or anterior abdominal, which carries blood to the liver. Except through the medium of the renal-portal system, there is no connection between the anterior abdominal and the postcaval. To the liver, blood is carried as usual from the stomach, etc., by the portal vein.

From the lungs blood is brought to the left auricle by the pulmonary veins.

A lymphatic system, including a pair of lymph hearts, is present.

**Respiratory system.**—The lungs are elongated oval structures which taper away posteriorly. The mouth does not, as in the frog, play an important part in the respiratory movements. In some lizards (*Chamæleon* and *Geckos*) the lungs are prolonged in air-sacs, suggesting those of Birds (Fig. 250).

**Excretory system.**—The paired kidneys lie in the extreme posterior region of the abdominal cavity, and extend a little further back than the level of the cloaca. Each is furnished with a very short ureter. In the male the ureters unite with the vasa deferentia; in the female they open separately into the cloaca. Into the cloaca opens also a large thin-walled "urinary bladder"; this is a remnant of



the foetal allantois, and has no functional connection with excretion. The urine is semi-solid, and consists largely of uric acid.

**Reproductive system.**—In the male the testes are two white oval bodies suspended in a dorsal fold of mesentery. Along the inner surface of each runs the epididymis, which receives the vasa efferentia, and is continuous posteriorly with the vas deferens. The two vasa deferentia, after receiving the ureters, open by small papillæ into the cloaca. In connection with the cloaca there is a pair of eversible copulatory organs, postero-lateral in position.

In the female the ovaries occupy a similar position to that of the testes in the male. The oviducts open far

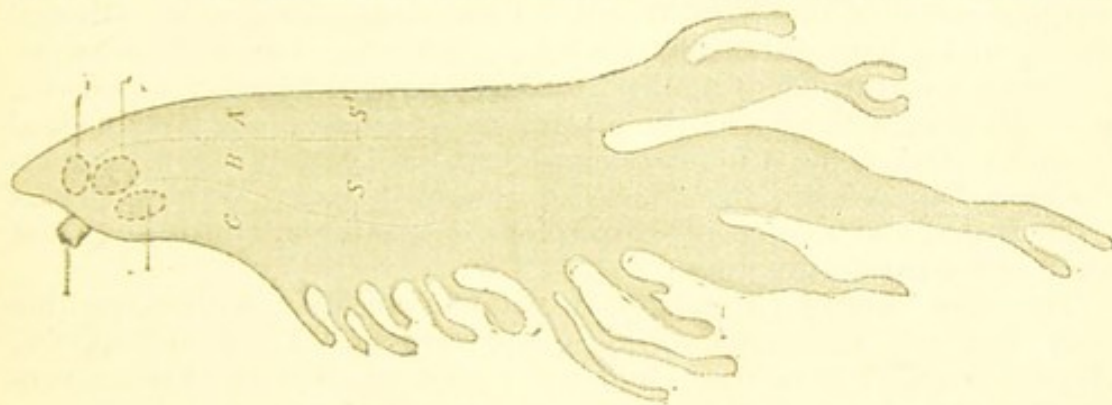


FIG. 250.—Lung of *Chamaeleo vulgaris*, showing air-sacs.  
—After Wiedersheim.

forward by wide ciliated funnels; as they pass backward they show a gradual increase in cross-section, but there is no line of demarcation between an oviducal and a uterine portion. Posteriorly, the oviducts open into the cloaca.

The right reproductive organ tends to be larger and in front of the left. In many of the males the Wolffian body is well developed. Viviparous, or what is clumsily called ovo-viviparous, parturition is well illustrated by *Zootoca vivipara*, *Anguis fragilis*, *Seps*, etc., but most lay eggs with more or less calcareous shells. In *Trachydosaurus* and *Cyclodus* the embryo seems to absorb food from the wall of the uterus. It is likely that Lacertilians existed in Permian ages, but their remains are not numerous before the Tertiary strata.

Many instructive illustrations of evolutionary change are afforded by lizards. Thus there are numerous gradations in the reduction of the limbs, from a decrease in the toes to entire absence of limbs. The diverse forms of tongue and the varied positions of the teeth are also connected by gradations. From the variations of the wall-lizard (*Lacerta muralis*), Eimer elaborated most of his theory of evolution.



### Classification of Lacertilia.

There are three main divisions :—(a) Geckones ; (b) Lacertæ ; and (c) Chamæleontes.

(a) In the Geckos (Geckonidæ) the vertebræ are biconcave or amphicoelous, the tongue is short and fleshy, the eyelids are rudimentary, the teeth are pleurodont, the toes bear numerous plaits, by means of which they adhere to smooth surfaces, *e.g.* *Platydactylus*.

(b) The Lacertæ include numerous families, of which a few may be noted.

The Agamas (Agamidæ) are acrodont lizards common in the Eastern hemisphere. Examples.—*Agama* ; *Draco*, with the skin extended on long prolongations of five or six posterior ribs ; *Chlamydosaurus*, an Australian lizard, with a large scaled frill around the neck ; *Moloch*, another Australian form bristling with sharp spikes.

The Iguanas (Iguanidæ) are pleurodont lizards, represented in the warmer parts of the New World. Examples.—*Iguana*, an arboreal lizard, with a large distensible dewlap ; *Amblyrhynchus* or *Oreocephalus cristatus*, a marine lizard confined to the Galapagos Islands ; *Basiliscus*, in S. Mexico, with none of the marvellous qualities of the mythological basilisk ; *Anolis*, the American chamæleon, with powers of rapid colour-change ; *Phrynosoma*, the American “horned toad,” with numerous horny scales, and a collar of sharp spines suggesting in miniature that of some of the extinct Reptiles.

The slow-worms (Anguidæ) are limbless lizards, with serpentine body, long tail, rudimentary girdles, and sternum. The British species, *Anguis fragilis*, is neither blind nor poisonous ; the tail breaks very readily ; the young are hatched within the mother.

The poisonous Mexican lizard (*Heloderma suspectum*) measures over a foot in length, and is covered with bead-like scales. Its bite is poisonous, and rapidly fatal to small Mammals. It is interesting to find poisonous powers like those of many serpents exhibited by this exceptional lizard.

The water-lizards (Varanidæ) are large semi-aquatic forms of carnivorous habit, most at home in Africa, but represented also in Asia and Australia. The Monitor of the Nile, *Varanus niloticus*, may attain a length of 5 or 6 ft., and is noteworthy because of its fondness for the eggs and young of Crocodiles.

The Amphisbænidæ are degenerate subterranean lizards, without limbs, with rudimentary girdles, with no sternum, with small covered eyes, with hardly any scales. The sooty Amphisbæna (*A. fuliginosa*), at home in the warmer parts of S. America, is the commonest species.

The Lacertidæ are Old World acrodont lizards, such as *Pseudopus* (Europe and S. Asia) ; *Lacerta viridis*, the green lizard of Jersey and S. Europe ; *L. agilis*, the British gray lizard ; *L. muralis*, abundant about ruins in S. Europe ; *L.* or *Zootoca vivipara*, the British scaly lizard.

The Scincidæ are common in tropical countries, *e.g.* *Scincus*, *Cyclodus*, *Seps*, *Acontias* (without limbs).

(c) The Chamæleons (Chamæleontidæ) are very divergent lizards, mostly African. There is one genus, *Chamæleo*. The head and the body



are compressed; the scales are minute; the eyes are very large and movable, with circular eyelids pierced by a hole; the tympanum is hidden; the tongue is club-shaped and viscid; the digits are divided into two sets, and well adapted for prehension; the tail is prehensile; the power of colour-change is remarkably developed.

The Chamæleons exhibit numerous anatomical peculiarities. As in the Amphisbænas, there is no epipterygoid nor interorbital septum. The pterygoid does not directly articulate with the quadrate, which is ankylosed to the adjacent bones of the skull.

### Class OPHIDIA. Serpents or Snakes.

The elongated limbless form of snakes seems at first sight almost enough to define this order from other Reptiles, but it must be carefully noticed that there are limbless Lizards, limbless Amphibians, and limbless Fishes, which resemble snakes in shape though they are very different in internal structure. For the external shape is in great part an adaptation to the mode of life, to the habit of creeping through crevices or among obstacles. Even in the thin-bodied weasels is there not some suggestion of the serpent? Yet the limblessness of serpents is not a merely superficial abortion, for there is no pectoral girdle nor sternum, and never more than a hint of a pelvis.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*The skin is covered with scales, which, being simply folds of the epidermis, have much coherence, and periodically shed a continuous slough.*

*There are never any hints of anterior appendages, girdles, sternum, or episternum; but in pythons, boas, and a few others, there are rudiments of a pelvis, and even small clawed structures which represent hind-legs.*

*The mouth is expansible; maxillæ, palatines, and pterygoids are movable; and the rami of the mandible are connected only by elastic ligament. The teeth are fused to the jaws; there are no separate eyelids, the thin transparent epidermis extending over the eyes. There are no external ear openings, and the nostrils lie near the tip of the head.*

*The bifid, mobile, retractile tongue is a specialised organ of touch. In the mouth there is often a poison gland, which is a specialised salivary gland.*

*There are many peculiarities in the skeleton. The numerous vertebræ are all procæalous.*

*The brain only gives off ten nerves. The sense of hear-*



ing is often slightly developed, and there is no tympanic cavity.

The heart is three-chambered, the ventricular septum being incomplete, as in all Reptiles except Crocodilians.

There is a transverse cloacal aperture. In the males a double saccular and spiny copulatory organ is eversible from the cloaca.

Snakes are widely distributed, but are most abundant in the tropics.

**General notes on snakes.**—Snakes, especially when poisonous, are often brightly coloured. The scales on the head form large plates, and those on the ventral surface are

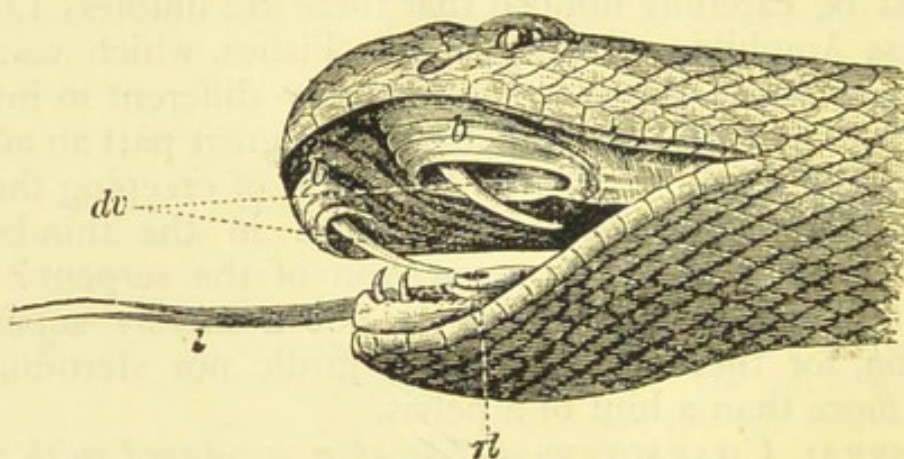


FIG. 251.—Snake's head.—After Nuhn.

*dv.*, Poison fangs; *b.*, sheath of fang; *l.*, tongue; *rl.*, muscles of tongue.

transverse shields. In many cases there are odoriferous glands near the cloacal aperture.

The muscular system is very highly developed, and the limbless serpent, Owen says, "can outclimb the monkey, outswim the fish, outleap the zebra, outwrestle the athlete, and crush the tiger."

The vertebræ are very numerous, some pythons having four hundred; they are procœlous, and are distinguishable only into a pre-caudal and caudal series.

All the pre-caudal vertebræ except the first—the atlas—have associated ribs, which are movably articulated, and used as limbs in locomotion. In the caudal region the transverse processes, which are elsewhere very small, take the place of ribs.



The serpent "literally rows on the earth, with every scale for an oar; it bites the dust with the ridges of its body." On a perfectly smooth surface it can make no headway, but in normal conditions the edges of the anterior ventral scales are fixed against the roughnesses of the ground, the ribs are drawn together first on one side, then on another, the body is thus wriggled forward to the place of attachment, the front part shoots out as the hind part fixes itself, an anterior attachment is again effected, and thus the serpent flows onward. But this account of the mechanism of movement does not suggest the swiftness or the beauty of what Ruskin calls "one soundless, causeless march of sequent rings, and spectral procession of spotted dust, with dissolution in its fangs, dislocation in its coils." "Startle it; the winding stream will become a twisted arrow;—the wave of poisoned life will lash through the grass like a cast lance."

One of the most distinctive characteristics of the skull is the mobility of some of the bones. Many of the Ophidians swallow animals which are larger than the normal size of the mouth and throat. The mobility of the skull bones is an adaptation to this habit. Thus the rami of the mandible are united by an elastic ligament; the quadrates and the squamosals are also movable, forming "a kind of jointed lever, the straightening of which permits of the separation of the mandibles from the base of the skull." The nasal region may also be movable. On the other hand, the bones of the brain-case proper are firmly united. The premaxillæ are very small and rarely bear teeth; the palatines are usually connected with the maxillæ by transverse bones, and through the pterygoids with the movable quadrates.

Teeth, fused to the bones which bear them, occur on the dentaries beneath, and above on the maxillæ, palatines, and pterygoids, and very rarely on the premaxillæ. The fang-like teeth of venomous serpents are borne by the maxillæ, and are few in number. Each fang has a groove or canal down which the poison flows. When the functional fangs are broken, they are replaced by reserve fangs which lie behind them. In the egg-eating African *Dasypeltis* the teeth are rudimentary, but the inferior spines of some of the anterior



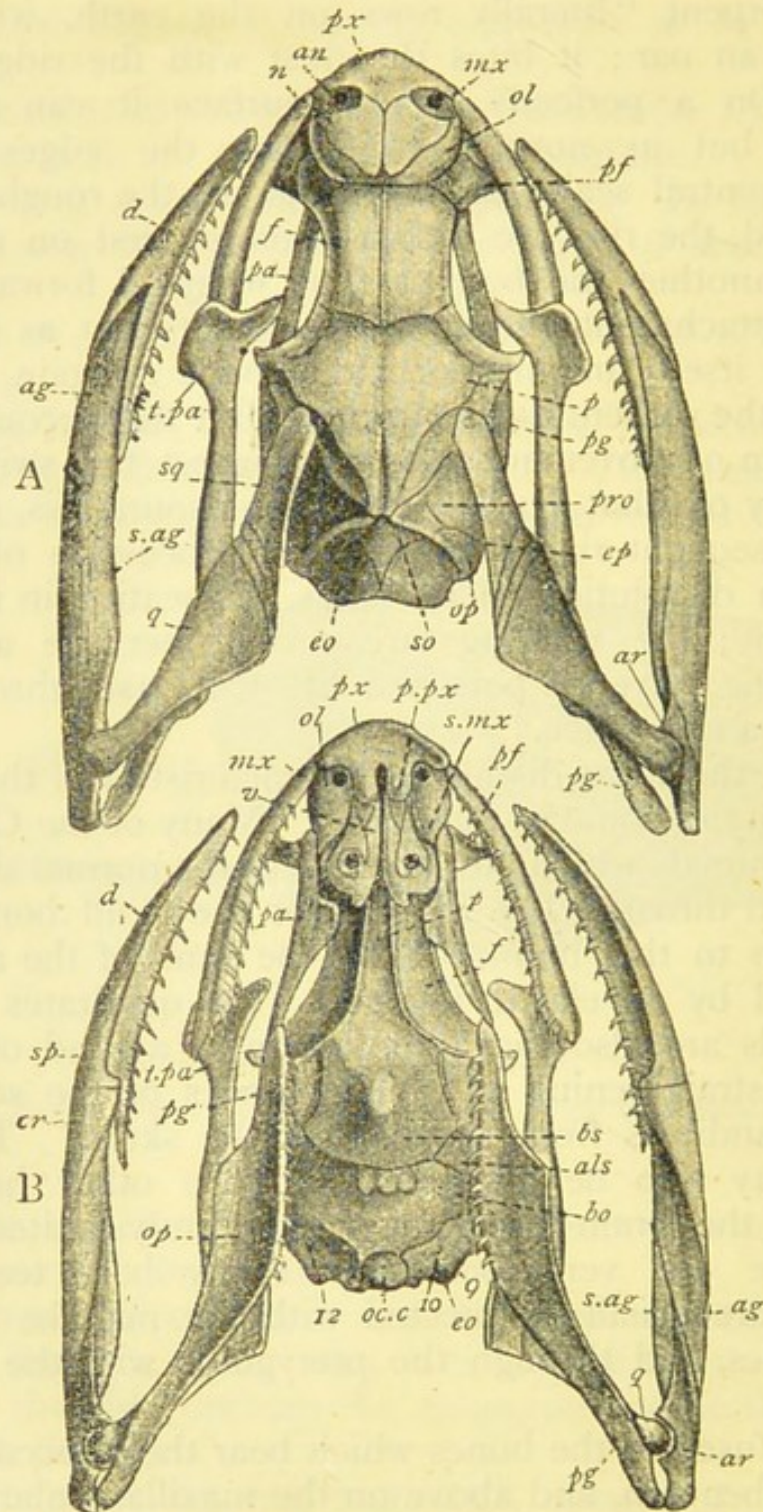


FIG. 252.—Skull of grass snake.—From W. K. Parker.

A, Dorsal surface—*px.*, premaxilla; *mx.*, maxilla; *an.*, external nostril; *n.*, nasal; *ol.*, nasal cartilages; *pf.*, prefronto-lachrymal; *p.*, parietal; *f.*, frontal; *pa.*, palatine; *t.pa.*, transpalatine; *pg.*, pterygoid; *pro.*, pro-otic; *ep.*, epiotic; *op.*, ophisthotic; *so.*, supraoccipital; *eo.*, exoccipital; *ar.*, articular; *s.ag.*, surangular; *ag.*, angular; *d.*, dentary; *q.*, quadrate; *sq.*, squamosal. B, Ventral surface—*px.*, premaxilla; *ol.*, nasal cartilage; *mx.*, maxilla; *v.*, vomer; *pa.*, palatine; *p.*, parasphenoid; *f.*, frontal; *pf.*, prefrontal; *pg.*, pterygoid; *bs.*, basisphenoid; *als.*, alisphenoid; *bo.*, basioccipital; *oc.c.*, occipital condyle; *eo.*, exoccipital; *q.*, quadrate; *ar.*, articular; *ag.*, angular; *s.ag.*, surangular; *cr.*, coronary; *sp.*, splenial; *d.*, dentary; *op.*, opisthotic region.



vertebræ project on the dorsal wall of the gullet, and serve to break the egg-shells.

When a venomous snake strikes, the mandible is lowered, the distal end of the quadrate is thrust forward, this pushes forward the pterygoid, the pterygo-palatine joint is bent, the maxilla is rotated on its lachrymal joint, the fangs borne by the maxilla are erected into a vertical position, the poison gland is compressed by a muscle, and the venom is forced through the fang.

Some of the peculiarities in the internal organs of Ophidia may be connected with the elongated and narrow shape of the body. Thus one lung, usually the left, is always smaller than its neighbour, or only one is developed; the liver is much elongated; the kidneys are not opposite one another.

The poison is useful in defence, and in killing the prey, which is always swallowed whole. It is interesting to notice a recent discovery, requiring amplification, that the bile of a poisonous snake is an antidote to its venom.

The British adder (*Pelias berus*) is viviparous, and so are a few others. The great majority are oviparous, but confinement and abnormal conditions may make oviparous forms, like the *Boa constrictor* and the British grass-snake (*Tropidonotus natrix*), viviparous. The female python incubates the eggs.

Many Ophidians become lethargic during extremes of temperature, or after a heavy meal.

Though most abundant in the tropics, snakes occur in most parts of the world. They are absent from many islands; thus there are none in New Zealand, and we all know that there are no snakes in Iceland. Most are terrestrial, but not a few readily take to the water, and there are many habitual sea-serpents.

The serpent still bites the heel of progressive man, the number of deaths from snake-bite in India alone amounting to many thousands yearly, though there can be little doubt that the snakes are often innocent scapegoats.

True Ophidians first occur in Tertiary strata.

### *Classification of Ophidia.*

Sub-order 1. Typhlopidae. The lowest and most divergent Ophidians, occurring in most of the warmer parts of the earth, generally smaller than earthworms, usually subterranean burrowers, with eyes hidden under scales, with a non-distensible mouth, with teeth restricted either to the upper or to the lower jaw. "The palatine bones meet, or nearly meet, in the base of the skull, and their long axes are transverse; there is no transverse bone; the pterygoids are not



connected with the quadrates." The quadrate articulates with the pro-otic, for there is no squamosal.

Example.—*Typhlops*, very widely distributed.

In all other Ophidians the palatines are widely separated, and their long axes are longitudinal; there are transverse bones connecting palatines and maxillæ; the pterygoids are connected with the quadrates.

Sub-order 2. Colubriiformes (innocuous snakes). The poison gland is not developed as such; the maxillary teeth are not grooved.

Examples.—The British smooth snake (*Coronella lævis*); the British grass snake (*Tropidonotus natrix*); the Pythons; the Boas, of which the Anaconda (*Boa murina*) (30 feet) is the largest living Ophidian.

Sub-order 3. Colubriiformes Venenosi.

Examples.—Cobras, *Naja tripudians* (Indian), *Naja haje* (African); the Hamadryad (*Ophiophagus elaps*), eating other snakes; Coral-snakes (*Elaps*, etc.); Sea-snakes (*Hydrophis*, etc.), with paddle-shaped tails.

Sub-order 4. Viperiformes.

Examples.—The British adder (*Pelias berus*); the rattlesnake (*Crotalus*), with a rattle formed chiefly from epidermic remnants of successive sloughings; the African Puff-adder (*Crotho arietans*).

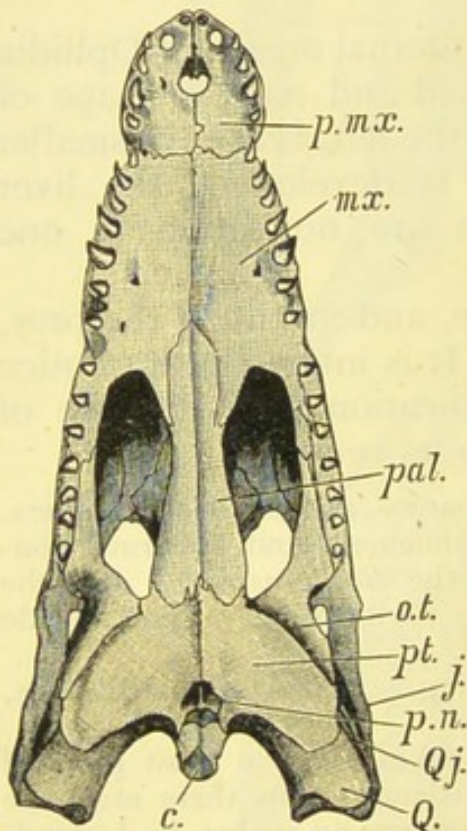


FIG. 253.—Lower surface of skull of a young crocodile.

*p.mx.*, Premaxilla; *mx.*, maxilla; *pal.*, palatine; *o.t.*, os transversum; *pt.*, pterygoid; *j.*, jugal; *Qj.*, quadrato-jugal; *Q.*, quadrate; *p.n.*, posterior nares; *c.*, condyle.

CROCODILIA. Crocodiles, Alligators, Gavials.

GENERAL CHARACTERS.—*The Crocodilians are carnivorous freshwater reptiles of large size, now represented by a few genera, e.g.*

*Crocodylus*, Alligator, and Gavialis.

*The skin bears epidermic scales, underneath some of which there are dermic bones or scutes.*

*The tail is laterally compressed, and assists in swimming.*

*Teeth occur in distinct sockets in the premaxillæ, maxillæ, and dentaries.*

*In modern Crocodilians, almost all the vertebræ are procœlous.*



*The skull has many characteristic features, such as the union of maxillæ, palatines, and pterygoids in the middle line on the roof of the mouth, and the consequent shunting of the posterior nares to the very back of the mouth.*

*Some of the ribs have double articulating heads, and bear small uncinæ processes; transverse ossifications form so-called abdominal ribs.*

*The heart is four-chambered; a muscular diaphragm partially separates the thoracic from the abdominal cavity.*

*The cloaca has a longitudinal opening. The males have a grooved penis.*

*The Crocodilians are oviparous. The eggs have firm calcareous shells, and are laid in holes in the ground.*

**Skeletal system.**—Numerous transverse rows of sculptured bony plates or scutes, ossified in the dermis, form a dorsal shield. On the ventral surface the scutes are absent, except in some alligators, in which they are partially ossified. But besides and above the scutes, there are horny epidermic scales like those in other Reptiles. The hide is often used as leather.

The vertebral column consists of distinct cervical, dorsal, lumbar, sacral, and caudal vertebræ, all procœlous except the first two cervicals, the two sacrals, and the first caudal. In most of the pre-cretaceous Crocodilians, however, the vertebræ were amphicœlous. The centra of the vertebræ are united by fibro-cartilages, and the sutures between the neural arch and the centrum persist at least for a long time. Chevron bones are formed beneath the centra of many of the caudal vertebræ.

Many of the ribs have two heads—capitulum and tubercle—by which they articulate with the vertebræ. From seven to nine of the anterior dorsal ribs are connected with the sternum by sternal ribs, and from several of these anterior ribs cartilaginous or partially ossified uncinæ processes project backwards. The so-called abdominal ribs have nothing to do with ribs, but are ossifications in the fibrous tissue which lies under the skin and above the muscles. They form seven transverse series, each composed of several ossicles.

As to the skull, there is an interorbital septum with large alisphenoids; the presphenoid and orbitosphenoids are at best incompletely ossified; all the bones are firmly united by persistent sutures; both upper and lower temporal arcades are completely ossified; the maxillæ, the palatines, and the pterygoid meet in the middle line of the roof of the mouth, covering the vomers, and determining the position of the posterior nares—at the very back of the mouth; an os transversum or transpalatine extends between the maxilla and the junction of palatine and pterygoid; a postorbital rod (epipterygoid or columella) is formed by a downward process of the postfrontal meeting an upward process from the jugal; the quadrate is large and immovable; there are large parotic processes; the tympanic cavity is completely bounded by bone; the teeth, which are borne by premaxillæ, maxillæ, and



dentaries, are lodged in distinct cavities ; beside and eventually beneath the teeth lie reserve "germs" of others.

Each ramus of the mandible consists, as in most Reptiles, of a cartilage-bone—the articular—working on the quadrate, and five membrane bones—dentary, splenial, coronoid, angular, and surangular.

The hyoid region is very simple.

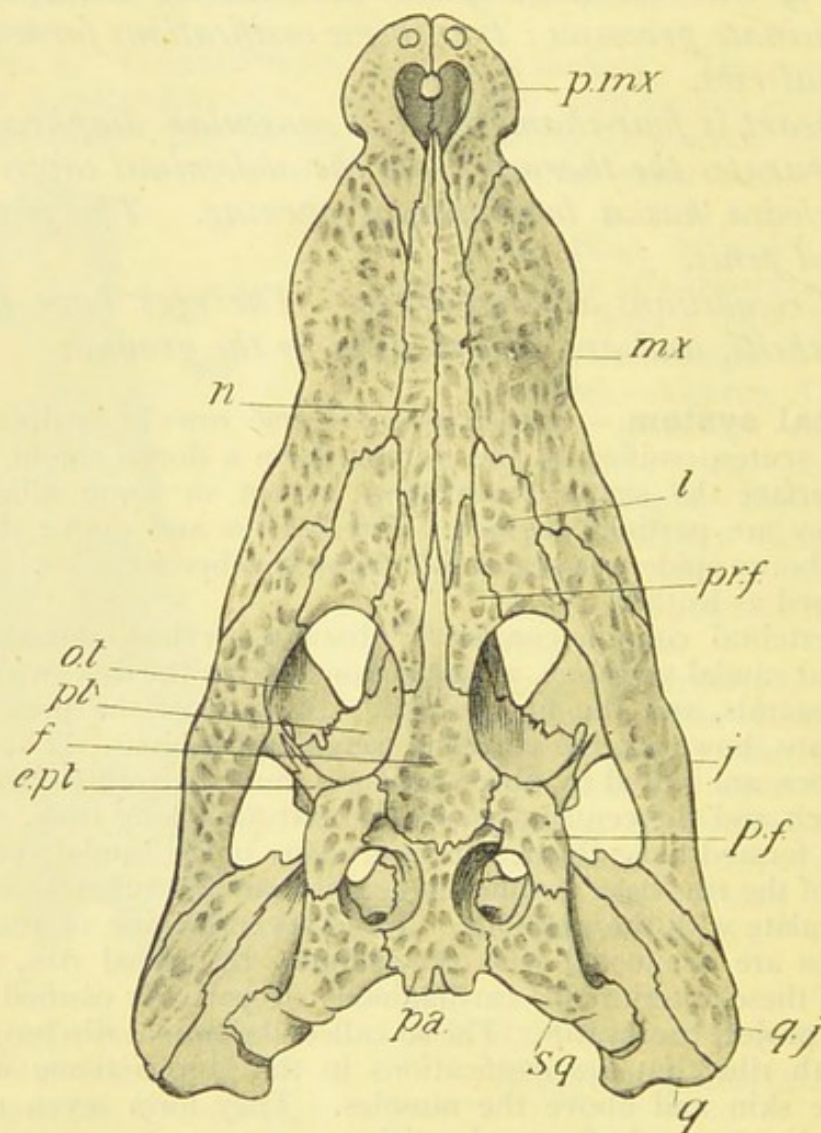


FIG. 254.—Crocodile's skull from dorsal surface.

*p.mx.*, Premaxilla ; *mx.*, maxilla ; *l.*, lachrymal ; *pr.f.*, prefrontal ; *j.*, jugal ; *p.f.*, postfrontal ; *q.j.*, quadrato-jugal ; *q.*, quadrate ; *sq.*, squamosal ; *pa.*, parietal ; *e.pt.*, epipterygoid ; *f.*, frontal ; *pt.*, pterygoid (on lower surface) ; *o.t.*, os transversum (on lower surface) ; *n.*, nasal.

The pectoral arch includes a dorsal scapula and a ventral coracoid (with a characteristic foramen) ; there are no clavicles nor epicoracoids, but there is a sternum and a so-called interclavicle or episternum ; the fore-limb is well though not strongly developed ; there are five digits, webbed and clawed.

In the pelvic arch, large ilia are united to the strong ribs of the two sacral vertebræ : the pubes, or more strictly the epipubes, slope for-



ward and inward, and have a cartilaginous symphysis; the ischia slope backward and have a symphysis; ilia and ischia form almost the whole of the acetabulum, a small part being occupied by the true pubes. The hind-limbs bear four digits, webbed and clawed.

**Organs of Crocodilians.**—The Crocodilians are seen to best advantage in the water, swimming by powerful tail-strokes. The limbs are too weak for very effective locomotion on land, the body drags on the ground, and the animals are stiff-necked. Although many, especially in their youth, feed on fishes and small animals, the larger forms lurk by the edge of the water, lying in wait for mammals of considerable size. These they grasp in their extremely powerful jaws, and drown by holding them under water. If the dead booty cannot be readily torn, it is often buried and left until it begins to rot. In connection with their way of feeding, we should notice several peculiarities of structure; the nostrils are at the upper end of the snout, and the eyes and ears are also near the upper surface, so that the Crocodilians can breathe, see, and hear, while the body is altogether immersed except the upper surface of the head; the nostrils can be closed by valves, and the eyes by transparent third eyelids, and the ears by movable flaps, so that the head can be comfortably immersed; a flat tongue is fixed to the floor of the mouth, and the cavity of the mouth is bounded behind by two soft transverse membranes, which, meeting when the reptile is drowning its prey, prevent water rushing down the gullet; the posterior opening of the nostrils is situated at the very back of the mouth, and when the booty is being drowned, the Crocodilian keeps the tip of its snout above water, the glottis is pushed forward to meet the posterior nares, a complete channel for the passage of air is thus established, and respiration can go on unimpeded. For their shore work the Crocodilians prefer the darkness, but they often float basking in the sun, with only the tip of the snout and the ridge of the back exposed.

Glands with a secretion which smells like musk are usually developed on the margin of the lower jaw, at the side of the cloacal aperture, and on the posterior margins of the dorsal scutes. The musky odour is very strong during the pairing season, and when the animals are attacked.

In connection with the muscular system, the presence of what is often called an incipient diaphragm between the thoracic and the abdominal cavity is of interest.

The brain seems very small in relation to the size of the skull.

The eyes are provided with a third eyelid, as in most Reptiles, Birds,

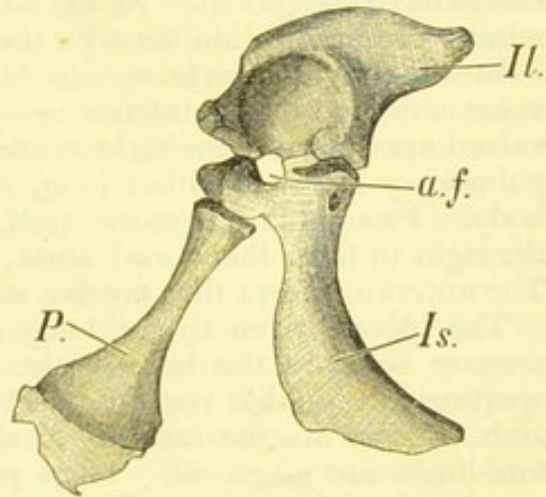


FIG. 255.—Half of the pelvic girdle of a young crocodile.

*Il.*, Ilium; *a.f.*, acetabulum; *Is.*, ischium; *P.*, pubis or epipubis.



and Mammals; there are large lachrymal glands, but there is no special deceitfulness about "crocodile's tears."

The ears open by horizontal slits, over which lies a flap of skin; three Eustachian tubes—one median and one on each side—open into the mouth behind the posterior nares.

The nostrils also can be closed, and, as we have already noticed, their internal opening lies at the back of the mouth.

The stomach suggests a bird's gizzard, for it has strong muscular walls, and its pyloric end is twisted upward so as to lie near the cardiac part.

The heart is four-chambered, the septum between the ventricles being complete, as in Birds and Mammals. But as the dorsal aorta is formed from the union of a left aortic arch containing venous blood, and a right aortic arch containing arterial blood, the blood which is driven to many parts of the body is "mixed blood," *i.e.* blood partly venous, partly arterial, with some of its red blood corpuscles carrying hæmoglobin and others oxyhæmoglobin. At the roots of the two aortic arches there is a minute communication between them—the foramen Panizzæ.

Into the right auricle venous blood is brought by the two superior venæ cavæ and by the inferior vena cava. The blood passes through a valved aperture into the right ventricle, and is driven thence—(*a*) by the pulmonary artery to either lung, or (*b*) by the left aortic arch to the body. From this left aortic arch, before it unites with its fellow on the right to form the dorsal aorta, is given off the great coeliac artery. The anterior viscera thus receive wholly venous blood from the heart.

The blood driven to the lungs is purified there, and returns by pulmonary veins to the left auricle. Thence it passes through a valved aperture into the left ventricle. Thence it is driven into the right aortic arch. From this the carotids to the head and the subclavians to the fore-limbs are given off. These parts of the body thus receive wholly arterial blood from the heart.

The venous blood returning from the posterior regions may pass through the kidneys in a renal-portal system, and thence into the inferior vena cava; or it may pass through the liver in a hepatic-portal system, and thence by hepatic veins into the inferior vena cava; or some of it may pass directly into the inferior vena cava. The renal-portal veins arise from a transverse vessel uniting the two branches of the caudal, but the latter are also continued forward as lateral epigastriks which enter the liver.

The temperature of the blood is not above that of the surrounding medium.

In regard to the respiratory system, we should notice that the lungs are invested by pleural sacs, as is the case in Mammals.

The ureters of the kidneys, the vasa deferentia from the testes in the male, the oviducts from the ovaries in the female, open into the cloaca, which has a longitudinal opening. The penis is on the anterior surface of the cloaca.

The eggs, which in size are like those of geese, have a thin calcareous shell, are buried in excavated hollows, and, warmed by the sun, hatch without incubation.

Of one species of crocodile it is known that the mother opens up the nest when the young, ready to be hatched, are heard to cry from within



the eggs. The mothers take some care of the young, which require to be defended even from the appetite of the males.

Crocodiles are relatively sluggish, and fond of basking passively, sometimes hiding in the mud during the hot season. They are remarkable for the long continuance of growth, which does not seem to have so definite a limit as in most other animals.

### *Classification of Crocodilia.*

(a) The true Crocodiles, of the genus *Crocodilus*, occur in Africa, Southern Asia, tropical Australia, Central America, and the West Indies.

The Indian Crocodile (*C. porosus*) may measure about 18 ft. in length, and even larger forms have been recorded. The sacred African crocodile (*C. vulgaris*) is still formidably common in some of the fresh waters of tropical Africa.

The eggs and the young are often eaten by a mammal called the Ichneumon, and by a species of lizard. The adults have few enemies except man. They seem to live in friendly partnership with little birds (*Pluvianus ægypticus*), which remove parasites from the body, and in their familiarity almost justify the account which Herodotus gives of their cleaning the reptile's teeth.

(b) The Alligators, of the genus *Alligator*, are, with the exception of one Chinese species, confined to N. and S. America. In N. America, *A. mississippiensis*, in S. America *A. sclerops*, are common.

(c) The Gavials or Gharials, of the genus *Gavialis*, are distinguished by their long narrow snout. In the Ganges and its tributaries, *G. gangeticus*, said to attain a length of 20 ft., is common. They feed chiefly on fishes. "Old males have a large cartilaginous hump on the extremity of the snout, containing a small cavity for the retention of air, by which means these individuals are enabled to remain under water for a longer time than females or young."

### DIFFERENCES BETWEEN CROCODILES, ALLIGATORS, AND GAVIALS.

ALLIGATORS.	CROCODILES.	GAVIALS.
The head is short and broad.	Longer.	The snout is very long.
First and fourth lower teeth bite into pits in the upper jaw.	The first bites into a pit; the fourth into a groove.	First and fourth lower teeth bite into grooves in the upper jaw.
The union of the two rami of the lower jaw does not extend beyond the fifth tooth.	Not beyond the eighth.	The union extends at least to the fourteenth.
The nasal bones form part of the nasal aperture.	As in the alligator.	The nasal bones do not form part of the nasal aperture.
The teeth are very unequal.	Unequal.	Almost equal.
The scutes on the neck are distinct from those on the back.	Sometimes distinct, sometimes continuous.	Continuous.



**History of Crocodilians.**—These giant reptiles form a decadent stock. Fossil forms are found in Triassic strata (*e.g.* *Belodon*, *Parasuchus*, and *Stagonolepis*); their remains are abundant in Jurassic rocks. In Cretaceous strata, crocodilians with procœlous vertebræ first occur, the pre-Cretaceous forms having centra of the amphicœlous type. Huxley has worked out an "almost unbroken" series from the ancient Triassic crocodilians down to those of to-day.

### *Development of Reptiles.*

As the development of Birds will be discussed in the next chapter, a few notes on that of Reptiles, which is in many respects similar, will be sufficient.

The ovum contains much yolk, at one pole of which there is a small quantity of formative protoplasm surrounding the germinal vesicle. Formation of polar globules has not been observed. The segmentation is necessarily meroblastic and discoidal, as in Birds.

The segmented area or blastoderm, originally at one pole, gradually grows round the yolk. The central region of the dorsal blastoderm is separated from the yolk by a shallow space filled with fluid, and is clearer than the rest of the blastoderm. In this central region or area pellucida, the germinal layers and subsequently the parts of the embryo are established, while the rest of the blastoderm—the area opaca—simply forms a sac round the yolk. One of the first signs of development is the appearance of a thickened band of cells extending forward in the middle line from the posterior margin of the area pellucida. This band is called the primitive streak, and seems to represent a fusion of the two edges of the

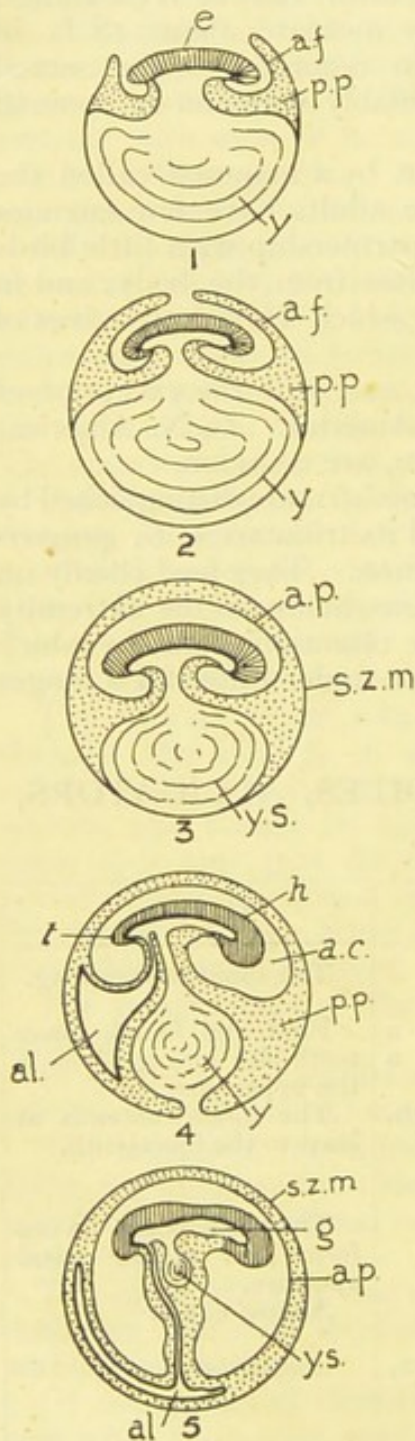


FIG. 256.—Origin of amnion and allantois.—After Balfour.

1. Rise of amniotic folds (*a.f.*) around embryo (*e.*); *p.p.*, pleuroperitoneal cavity; *y.*, yolk.
2. Further growth of amniotic folds (*a.f.*) over embryo and around yolk.
3. Fusion of amniotic folds above embryo; *a.p.*, amnion proper; *s.z.m.*, subzonal membrane; *y.s.*, yolk-sac.
4. Outgrowth of allantois (*al.*); amniotic cavity (*a.c.*); *h.*, head end; *t.*, tail end.
5. Complete enclosure and reduction of yolk-sac (*y.s.*); *s.z.m.*, subzonal membrane; *a.p.*, amnion proper; *al.*, allantois; *g.*, gut of embryo.



blastoderm behind the future embryonic region. The embryo develops in front of the primitive streak, and one of the first signs of its development is the formation of a primitive or medullary groove in a line with the primitive streak. As development proceeds, folds appear around the embryo, constricting it off from the subjacent yolk or yolk-sac.

It is with Reptiles that the series of higher Vertebrates or Amniota begins. It is here that the foetal membranes known as amnion and allantois are first formed.

(a) *The Amnion*.—At an early stage in development the head end of the embryo seems to sink into the subjacent yolk. A semilunar fold of the blastoderm, including epiblast and mesoblast, rises up in front. Similar folds appear laterally. All the folds increase in size, arch upwards, and unite above, forming a dome over the embryo. Each of these folds is double; the inner limbs unite to form "the true amnion"; the outer limbs unite to form "the false amnion," "serous membrane," or subzonal membrane. The cavity bounded by the true amnion contains an amniotic fluid bathing the outer surface of the embryo; the cavity between the true and the false amnion is lined by mesoblast, and is continuous with the pleuro-peritoneal or body cavity of the embryo. The amniotic folds extend not only over the embryo, but ventrally around the yolk-sac, which they completely invest.

(b) *The Allantois*.—While the amnion is being formed, a sac grows out from the hind end of the embryonic gut. This is the allantois, lined internally by hypoblast, externally by mesoblast. It rapidly insinuates itself between the two limbs of the amnion, eventually surrounding both embryo and yolk-sac.

The amnion is a protective membrane, forming a kind of water-bag around the embryo. It may be due in part to the embryo sinking into the yolk-sac by its own weight.

The allantoic sac is vascular, and has respiratory and perhaps also some yolk-absorbing functions. It seems to be homologous with the outgrowth which forms the cloacal bladder of Amphibians; it has been called "a precociously developed urinary bladder."

Before the amnion is developed, the heavy head end of the embryo has already sunk into a depression (in Lizards, Chelonians, Birds (?) and Mammals), and is surrounded by a modification of the head fold termed the pro-amnion. This does not include any mesoblast, and is afterwards replaced by the amnion.

*Hints of a placenta before mammals*.—As will be explained afterwards, the placenta, which characterises most Mammals, is an organic connection between mother and unborn young. Its embryonic part is chiefly formed from a union of the serous or subzonal membrane and the allantois, but in some cases the yolk-sac and the subzonal membrane form a provisional placenta. The placenta establishes a vital union between the embryo and the mother.

Now it is interesting to notice that there are some hints of placental connection in animals which are much lower than Mammals. In some species of *Mustelus* and *Carcharias* there is a connection between the yolk-sac and the wall of the uterus; in the Teleostean *Anableps* the yolk-sac has small absorbing outgrowths or villi; in *Trachydosaurus* and *Cyclodus* among Lizards, the vascular yolk-sac is separated from



the wall of the uterus "only by the porous and friable rudiment of the egg-shell ; in *Clemmys* among Chelonians, there is an absorbing protrusion of the foetal membranes. In Birds also, small villi of the yolk-sac absorb yolk, and others on the allantois absorb albumen." (See A. C. Haddon's "Embryology.")

### *Extinct Reptiles.*

The first known occurrence of fossil Reptiles is in Permian strata ; in the Trias most of the orders or classes are represented ; while the "golden age" of the group was undoubtedly during Jurassic and Cretaceous times.

Some of the modern Reptiles are linked by a series of fine gradations to very ancient progenitors,—the Crocodiles of to-day lead back to those of the Trias, the New Zealand *Hatteria* to the Triassic Rhynchocephalia ; but we have no example of a Reptilian genus which has persisted from age to age as *Ceratodus* has done among Fishes. It follows naturally from this linking of the present with the past, that among the fossil forms we find "generalised" types, types which exhibit affinities with groups which in our classification of recent forms may be very widely separated. It is indeed, as has been said, only because of our ignorance of their past history that we are able to classify living genera into separate orders at all.

The following types of extinct reptiles seem to have entirely disappeared:—

*Theromorpha*.—Lizard-like animals with limbs adapted for walking, found in the Permian and Trias. The most generalised forms approach the Labyrinthodont Amphibians very closely, especially in the characters of the skull and pelvis. They, however, also exhibit affinities with the Monotreme Mammals. In the more specialised types the nature of the dentition is a very interesting feature. In *Galesaurus*, for example, which is a carnivorous form, the teeth are arranged in three series, the anterior series (incisors) are separated by a tusk-like tooth (canine) from a lateral series of cheek teeth (molars). It is hardly necessary to insist upon the close affinity between such a dentition and that of carnivorous Marsupials, and we cannot doubt that the *Theromorpha* are in some way related to Mammals. There are various orders, *e.g.* Anomodontia.

Examples.—*Pareiosaurus*, *Galesaurus*, *Dicynodon*.

*Plesiosauria*.—Reptiles represented from the Trias to the Chalk, without exoskeleton, usually with a long neck and short tail. The limbs vary ; in the earlier, more generalised, forms they are adapted for walking on land, but in the more specialised types they are modified into powerful paddles, like those of Chelonia. The nearest affinities are



with the Chelonian. *Nothosaurus* had limbs adapted for progression on land; *Plesiosaurus* and *Pliosaurus* were carnivorous forms adapted to an aquatic life. *Plesiosaurus* had a very long neck, and sometimes attained a length of 40 ft. In *Pliosaurus* the neck was much shorter, while the head was very large. In both, the limbs form powerful elongated paddles, with apparently no trace of nails.

*Ichthyosauria*.—Large marine carnivorous Reptiles, represented from the Trias to the Chalk, with tapering body like that of a shark, large dorsal and caudal fins, and two pairs of paddle-like limbs. There is no exoskeleton. The length of the body is sometimes 30 to 40 ft. In the paddle the number of digits is often more than five, and the phalanges of each are often very numerous. The skull has a large parietal foramen, and shows other affinities with that of *Sphenodon*. Some species were apparently viviparous.

Examples.—*Ichthyosaurus*, *Ophthalmosaurus*.

*Pythonomorpha*.—These strange Cretaceous Reptiles should probably

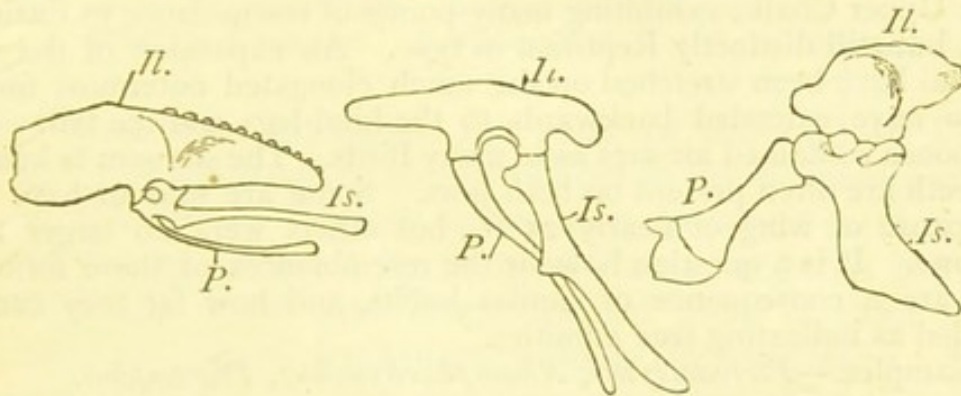


FIG. 257.—Comparison of pelvic girdles of cassowary (to left); *Iguanodon*, an extinct Reptile (in centre); crocodile (to right).

*Il.*, Ilium; *Is.*, ischium; *P.*, pubis.

be placed between the Lacertilia and the Rhynchocephalia. They are specially characterised by the enormous elongation of the body, which sometimes reached a length of 75 to 80 ft. The skull is like that of the Monitor among the lizards, but, according to Cope, it also presents affinities with snakes. The body is snake-like, but there are two well-developed pairs of limbs, forming swimming paddles. All were carnivorous and marine; the distribution was cosmopolitan.

Examples.—*Mosasaurus*, *Clidastes*, *Liodon*, *Dolichosaurus*.

*Dinosauria*.—Terrestrial Reptiles, ranging from the Trias to the Chalk, often very large, and, like Marsupials, specialised in various directions. They exhibit many points of resemblance to Crocodiles on the one side and to Birds on the other. *Brontosaurus*, a gigantic, herbivorous form, nearly 60 ft. in length, was probably amphibious. *Atlantosaurus* was even larger, the femur measuring over 6 ft. in length. *Compsognathus*, *Iguanodon*, and *Camptosaurus* are examples of the "bird-footed" herbivorous Dinosaurs. In all these the form of the pelvis and of the hind-limbs presents very strong affinities with the conditions seen in Birds. *Compsognathus* only reached a



length of 2 ft., and hopped on its hind-legs like a bird. *Iguanodon* habitually walked on its hind-limbs, and, like several others, had hollow bones; it reached a height of 15 ft. Of the carnivorous Dinosaurs, *Megalosaurus* is a good type. The pelvis has a Crocodilian aspect, for the pubes slope forwards instead of backwards, as in Birds and *Iguanodon*, etc. The limbs were furnished with powerful claws, and the teeth show much specialisation. *Stegosaurus* was furnished with heavy armour of plates and spines. *Triceratops* had three horns on its enormous head. The point of greatest interest about the Dinosaurs is the resemblance to Birds. This was first insisted on by Huxley, and since then it has been generally held that Birds have diverged from a Dinosaur stock. It is, however, fair to notice that by some these resemblances have been declared to be unimportant, while the points of resemblance between Birds and the next order of Reptiles are much dwelt upon.

*Pterosauria*.—Flying Reptiles, represented from the lower Jurassic to the Upper Chalk, exhibiting many points of resemblance to Carinate Birds, but still distinctly Reptilian in type. An expansion of the skin seems to have been stretched on the much elongated outermost finger, and to have extended backwards to the hind-legs and the tail. The long bones contained air-sacs as in many Birds. The sternum is keeled, and teeth are often present on both jaws. Some are said to have had an expanse of wing of nearly 25 ft., but others were no larger than sparrows. It is a question how far the resemblances of these forms to Birds are a consequence of similar habits, and how far they can be regarded as indicating true affinities.

Examples.—*Pterodactylus*, *Rhamphorhynchus*, *Pteranodon*.

**Relationships of reptiles.**—While it is still rash to venture on general conclusions, this much seems clear, that the Reptiles, in their widest sense, form a central assemblage among Vertebrates. As we have noted above, some of the extinct forms exhibit affinities with Amphibians, others with Birds, others again with Mammals. Though we cannot with certainty point to any of the extinct types as directly ancestral to Birds or Mammals, it seems likely that the ancestors of both were derived from the plastic Reptilian stock.



## CHAPTER XXV.

### CLASS AVES. BIRDS.

- I. Sub-class ARCHÆORNITHES (or Saururæ) ; extinct *Archæopteryx*.
- II. Sub-class NEORNITHES.
  - 1. Division Ratitæ. "Running Birds." Ostrich, etc.
  - 2. Division Odontolcæ. Extinct *Hesperornis*.
  - 3. Division Carinataæ. "Flying birds" with keeled sternum.

BIRDS share with Mammals the rank of the highest Vertebrates. For although Mammals excel in brain development, and in the closer organic connection between mother and unborn young, it must be allowed that as regards muscles and skeleton, heart and lungs, indeed most of their structure, the two classes are almost equally differentiated. They are not, however, in any way nearly related, but represent quite divergent lines of evolution.

Like Insects among Invertebrates, so Birds among Vertebrates are pre-eminently creatures of the air, and the analogies between these two widely-separated classes are many, *e.g.* as regards power of flight, elaborate respiratory system, bright colouring, sexual dimorphism, preferential mating, and parental instincts. The high body temperature of birds, exceeding that of all other animals, is a physiological index to their rapid metabolism or intense activity.

Compared with lower Vertebrates, Birds show a marked increase of emotional life, as seen in their affection for their mates, in their care of the young, and in the joyousness of their mood, often bursting forth in song.

#### GENERAL CHARACTERS OF BIRDS.

*The fore-limbs are modified as wings, generally capable of flight ; the neck is long ; and the tail is short, except in the extinct Archæopteryx.*



*The epidermic exoskeleton is represented by feathers, usually arranged in definite feather tracts (pterylia), with bare patches between, and also by scales on the legs similar to those of reptiles. Almost the only skin gland is an oil or preen gland, lying dorsally at the root of the tail.*

*The pectoral muscles used in flight are generally large ; in many there is a muscular gizzard ; a diaphragm is at most hinted at.*

*In the brain, the predominance of the basal parts of cerebrum and cerebellum has resulted in displacing the optic lobes to the sides.*

*The nostrils are often overhung by a sensitive cere ; there is no external ear ; the connection between tympanum and inner ear is by means of a columella ; the eyeball is strengthened by sclerotic ossicles ; there is a well-developed third eyelid, and a large nutritive pecten.*

*There are no epiphyses in connection with the bones, many of which contain prolongations of the air-sacs connected with the lungs, and are in the adult without marrow. The curvature of the vertebral centra, especially in the cervical region, viewed from in front, is concave from side to side, and convex from above downwards. The cervical vertebræ have small ribs, which fuse in most cases with the transverse processes. The dorsal vertebræ tend to fuse together into an immovable mass ; and a large number of vertebræ (one to three dorsals, all the lumbar, and some caudals) fuse with the two or three true sacra. The terminal vertebræ usually fuse to form a ploughshare bone.*

*Most of the bones of the skull fuse, the sutures being obliterated. Only the lower jaw, the quadrate, the columella, and hyoid are always movable ; but the pterygoids usually articulate freely with the basisphenoid, the lachrymals may remain free, and there may be a joint in the beak at the end of the premaxillæ. There is but one condyle. A membrane bone called the basitemporal covers the basisphenoid. There is an interorbital septum formed from presphenoid and mesethmoid. The otic bones fuse with adjacent bones and with one another about the same time. In modern birds there are no teeth, but the jaws are covered by horny sheaths. The premaxillæ are large, and form most of the beak. The lower jaw consists on each side of five membrane bones and a cartilage*



bone—the articular—which works on the quadrate. Many of the skull bones have a spongy texture, due to cavities filled with air from the nasal and Eustachian tubes.

There is a well-developed sternum, generally with a keel, with a separate centre of ossification, to which the pectoral muscles are in part attached. The strong coracoids reach and articulate with the sternum. In flying birds the clavicles are usually well developed, and connected by an interclavicle,

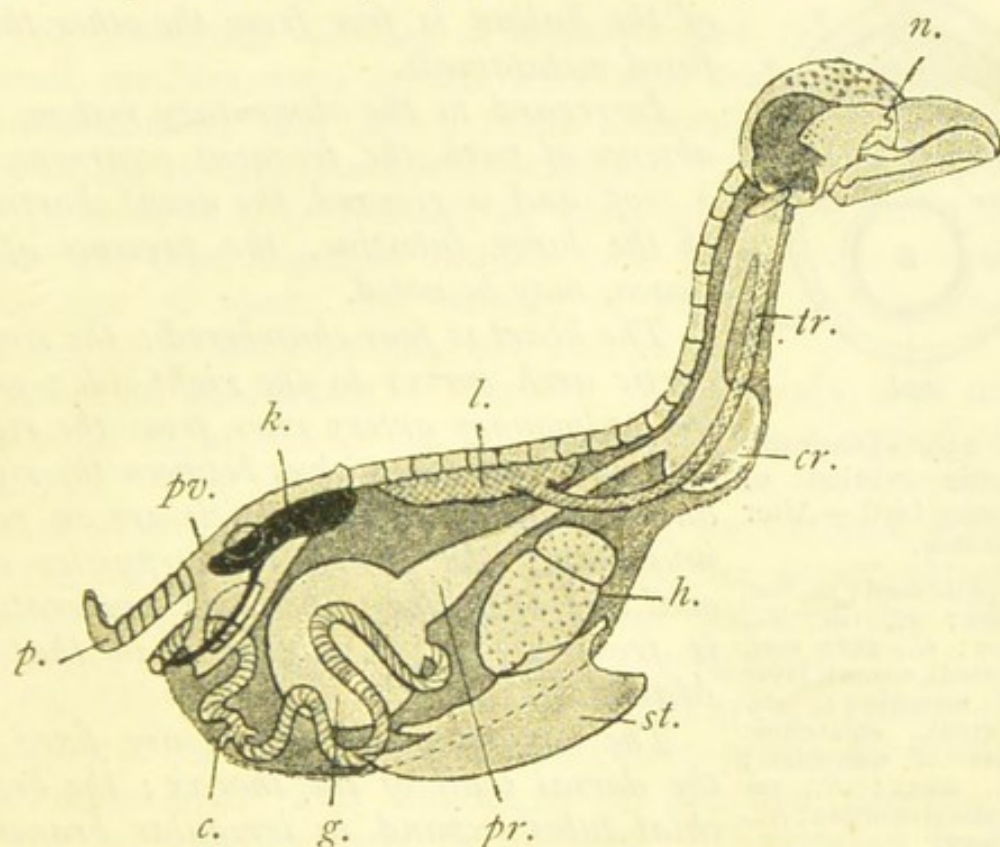


FIG. 258.—Position of organs in a bird.—After Selenka.

*n.*, Nostrils; *tr.*, trachea; *cr.*, crop; *h.*, heart; *st.*, sternum; *pv.*, proventriculus; *g.*, gizzard; *c.*, caeca; *p.*, pygostyle; *pv.*, pelvis; *k.*, kidney; *l.*, lung.

which may be connected with the apex of the sternum. The fore-limb has not more than three digits, the three metacarpals are fused (except in *Archæopteryx*), and there are only two separate carpals, the others fusing with the metacarpals, and thus forming a carpo-metacarpus.

The ilia of the pelvis may be firmly fused to the complex sacrum; the acetabulum is incompletely ossified; the pubes are directed backwards parallel to the ischia. There is no pubic symphysis except in the African ostrich (*Struthio*), and no ischiac symphysis except in the American ostrich (*Rhea*).



In the hind-limb the fibula is incomplete, and more or less united to the tibia; the proximal tarsal bones are united to the distal end of the tibia (which is therefore called a tibio-tarsus), the others being united to the proximal end of three united metatarsals (which thus form a tarso-metatarsus). As in reptiles, the ankle-joint is therefore intertarsal. The maximum number of toes is four, of which the first is the hallux; and if there be four, the metatarsal of the hallux is free from the other three fused metatarsals.

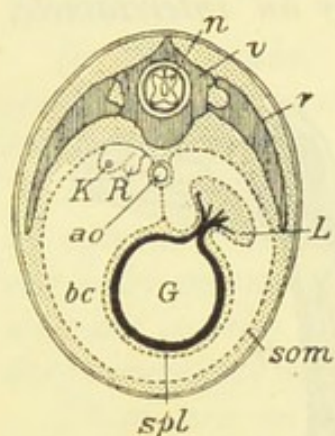


FIG. 259.—Diagrammatic section of young bird.—After Gadow.

n., Spinal cord; v., vertebra; r., rib; L., liver; G., gut; som. (dotted), somatic layer of mesoblast; spl. (dotted), splanchnic layer of mesoblast; ao., aorta; R., reproductive organ; K., kidney.

In regard to the alimentary system, the absence of teeth, the frequent occurrence of a crop and a gizzard, the usual shortness of the large intestine, the presence of a cloaca, may be noted.

The heart is four-chambered; the single aortic arch curves to the right side; only the pulmonary artery rises from the right ventricle; the two valves between the right auricle and the right ventricle are in part muscular; the red blood corpuscles are oval and nucleated; the blood temperature is from  $2^{\circ}$ – $14^{\circ}$  F. higher than that of Mammals.

The non-expansible lungs are fixed to the dorsal wall of the thorax; the bronchial tubes expand in irregular branches in the lungs; the ends of some of these branches are continued into surrounding air-sacs; these may be continued into the bones, and end in minute air-spaces. The trachea has bony rings, a voiceless larynx at its upper end, and a syrinx or song-box (with vocal cords) at the origin of the bronchi. Expiration is the more active part of the respiratory process.

The (metanephric) kidneys are three-lobed, and lie embedded in the pelvis; the ureters open into the cloaca; there is no bladder; the urine is semi-solid, and consists chiefly of urates.

The testes lie beside the kidneys; the vasa deferentia run outside the ureters, and open into the middle region of the cloaca. The right ovary atrophies, the right oviduct is rudimentary.



*The eggs have much yolk and hard calcareous shells. The segmentation is meroblastic and discoidal. The allantois is chiefly respiratory, though it helps in absorbing the nutritive substance of the egg, and acts as a receptacle for the embryo's waste products.*

#### THE PIGEON (*Columba*) AS A TYPE OF BIRDS.

The numerous varieties of domesticated pigeon (pouter, fantail, tumbler, etc.) are all descended from the rock-dove, *Columba livia*, and afford vivid illustrations of variation, and of the results of artificial selection. Certain variations, e.g. in beak or tail, crop up, we know not how; and similar forms are bred together until a new breed is established. The diet of seeds, the wooing of mates, the feeding of the young by both parents, are well known.

**External characters.**—The form of the body, well suited for rapid flight, ceases to be graceful when stripped of its feathers. The cere above the nostrils, the third eyelid in the anterior upper corner of the orbit, the external opening of the ear concealed by the feathers, the preen gland on the dorsal surface at the root of the tail, and the cloacal aperture, are external features easily recognised.

The feathers most important in flight are the twenty-three remiges of the wing, divided into eleven primaries borne by the metacarpals and phalanges of the two fingers, and twelve secondaries borne by the ulna. Twelve tail feathers or rectrices serve as a brake, and help a little in steering. A distinct tuft of feathers borne by the thumb is called the bastard wing. Covering the bases of the large feathers are the coverts,—wing-coverts and tail-coverts,—which belong to the series of contour feathers which give shape to the whole body. In the pigeon there are no true down-feathers or plumules, but among the ordinary contour feathers or pennæ there are little hair-like feathers (filoplumes) with only a few terminal barbs. In herons and some other birds some of the down-feathers are covered with dusty powder (powder-down), formed from the brittle ends of the barbs. Apart from their use in flight, the feathers, being bad conductors of heat, serve to sustain the high temperature of the bird. There is usually pigment in feathers, and the coloration



thus produced is often enhanced by structural peculiarities of texture and surface. In perfectly white feathers the whiteness is due to gas-bubbles.

Any one of the large feathers consists of an axis or scapus, divided into a lower hollow portion—the calamus or quill, and an upper solid portion—the rachis, which forms the axis of the vane. This vane consists of parallel rows of lateral barbs, linked to one another by barbules, which may be joined to one another by microscopic hooklets. In the running birds the barbs are free. The quill is fixed in a pit or follicle of the skin, from which muscle fibres pass to the feather and effect individual movement. At the base of the quill there is a little hole—the inferior umbilicus—through which a nutritive papilla of dermis is continued into the growing feather. At the base of the vane there is a little chink—the superior umbilicus—but this has no importance, except that parasites sometimes enter by it. Close to this region, however, in many birds, a tuft or branch arises, called the aftershaft. In the Emu and Cassowary the aftershaft is so long that each feather seems double.

A feather begins as a papilla of skin, but the whole is formed from the cornification of the inner layer of the epidermis. The papillæ rarely occur all over the skin (*e.g.* penguin), but are usually disposed along definite feather-tracts. Each papilla consists externally of epidermis and internally of dermis, and becomes surrounded at the foot by a moat, which deepens to form the feather-follicle in which the base of the quill is sunk. The epidermis has two layers—(*a*) an outer stratum corneum, which in the developing feather forms merely a protective external sheath, and (*b*) an inner stratum Malpighii, which becomes cornified and forms the whole feather. The process by which this cylinder of cells becomes horny is remarkable; in the upper part ridges are formed, which separate from one another as a set of barbs, the lower part remaining intact as the quill. When we pull the horny sheath off a young feather, we disclose a set of barbs lying almost parallel with one another, yet slightly divergent. The central pair predominate, and fuse to form the rachis; its neighbours gradually become the lateral barbs. The external sheath falls off; the core of dermis is wholly nutritive, and disappears as the feather ceases to grow.

On the four toes and on the base of the legs there are horny epidermic scales, the presence of which reminds us of the affinities between Birds and Reptiles. The toes are clawed, and in *young* birds the same is true of the thumb and first finger. Only in the embryos of the hoatzin (*Opisthocomus*) and of the ostriches (*Struthio* and *Rhea*) is the third digit clawed. The beak is covered by a horny sheath, which is annually moulted in the puffin. The dermis is very thin and vascular, and is rich in tactile nerve-endings or Pacinian corpuscles, especially abundant in the cere. The only skin gland—the preen gland—secretes an oily fluid, with which the bird anoints its feathers. It is absent in the ostrich, emu, cassowary, and kiwi, and in a few Carinate birds.

**Muscular system.**—The largest breast muscle (pectoralis



major) arises from the sternum and its keel, and from the clavicle, is inserted on the *ventral* surface of the humerus, and *depresses* the wing. The smaller but longer pectoralis minor or subclavian, exposed when the large one is reflected, *raises* the wing. It arises from the keel and sides of the sternum, and is continued over the shoulder (through the *foramen triosseum*, which serves as a pulley) to its insertion on the *dorsal* surface of the humerus. Arising chiefly from the coracoid, but in part from the sternum, and inserted on the humerus, is a small coraco-brachialis, which helps a little in raising the wing. There are several yet smaller muscles.

Interesting also is the mechanism of perching. When the bird sits on its perch, the toes clasp this tightly. The flexor tendons of the toes are stretched automatically when the leg is bent in perching. Furthermore, an ambiens muscle, inserted on the front of the pubis, is continued down the anterior side of the femur, and its tendon bending round the knee to the opposite side of the tibia, is inferiorly connected with the flexors of two digits. When the leg is bent in sitting, the ambiens tendon is stretched, and the digits clasp the branch. Thus the bird, when asleep, does not fall off its perch. It is only in some birds, however, that the ambiens muscle is present.

In connection with the muscular system, it may also be noted that the walls of the gizzard consist of thick muscles radiating around tendinous discs. Two small sterno-tracheal muscles ascend from sternum to trachea, and are apt to be confused in dissection with the carotid arteries. Complex muscles are associated with the vocal cords in the song-box.

**Skeleton.**—The skeleton of birds is lightly built, with much strength and surface for its weight, on the hollow girder principle. The texture of the bone is often very spongy, and air-sacs from the lungs may be continued into many of the bones, which are usually destitute of marrow in adult life. In the pigeon, most of the bones, except those of the tail, forearm, hand, and hind-limb, contain air-spaces. Another general character is the marked tendency to fusion of bones, as seen in the skull, dorsal vertebræ, sacral vertebræ, ploughshare bone, carpo-metacarpus, and tarso-metatarsus.

The vertebral column is divided into five regions—cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacral, and caudal. The mobile neck consists of fourteen cervical vertebræ; from the third to the twelfth these bear short ribs fused to the centra and transverse processes; the thirteenth and fourteenth have



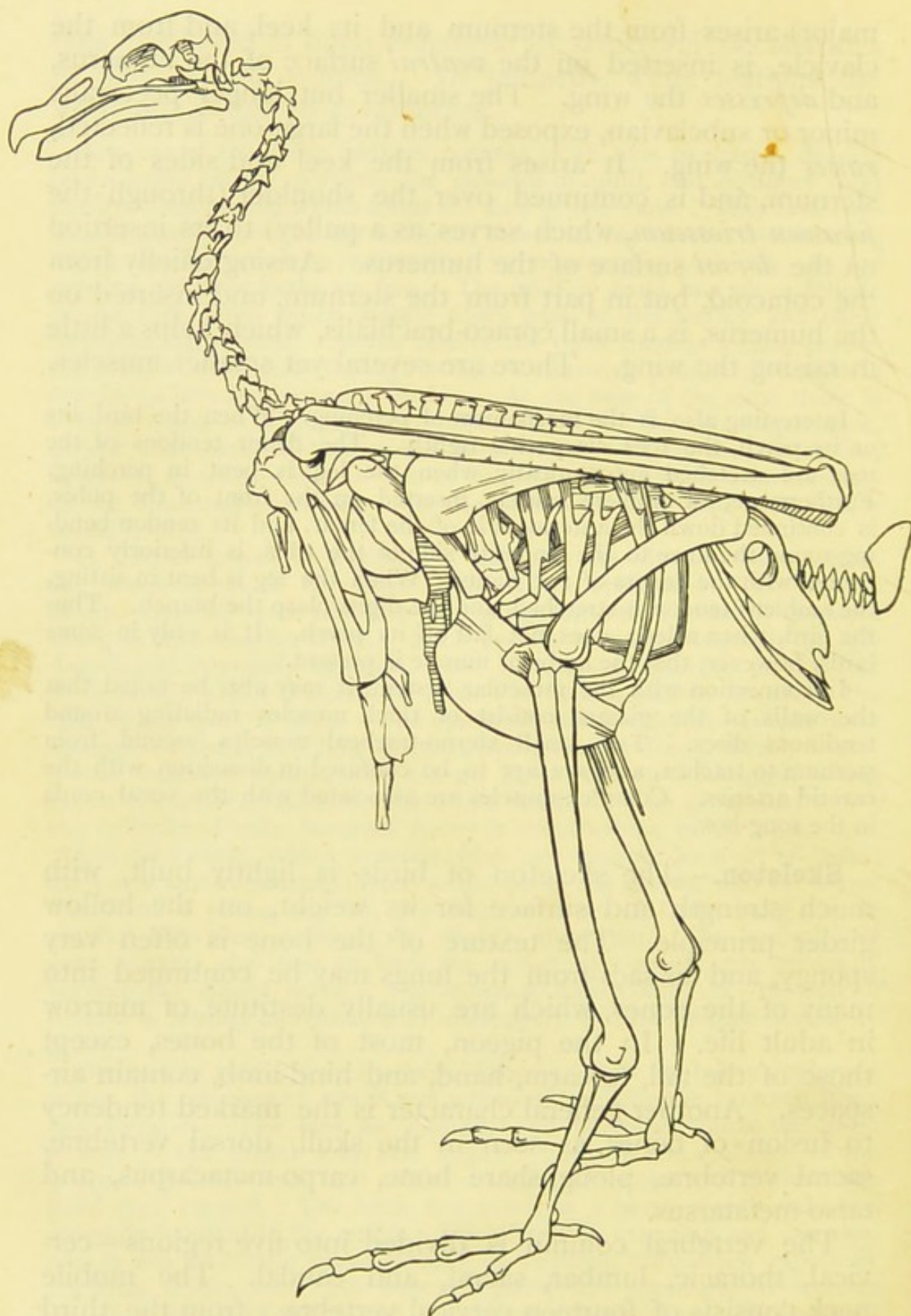


FIG. 260.—Entire skeleton of condor, showing the relative positions of the chief bones.



them free and well developed, but not reaching the sternum. Of the thoracic vertebræ, namely, those whose ribs reach the sternum, the anterior three are fused to one another, while the fourth is free. The complex sacral region consists of the fifth thoracic (with free ribs reaching the sternum), five or six lumbar, two sacrals, and five caudals, all fused. Lastly, there are six free caudals ending in a pygostyle or

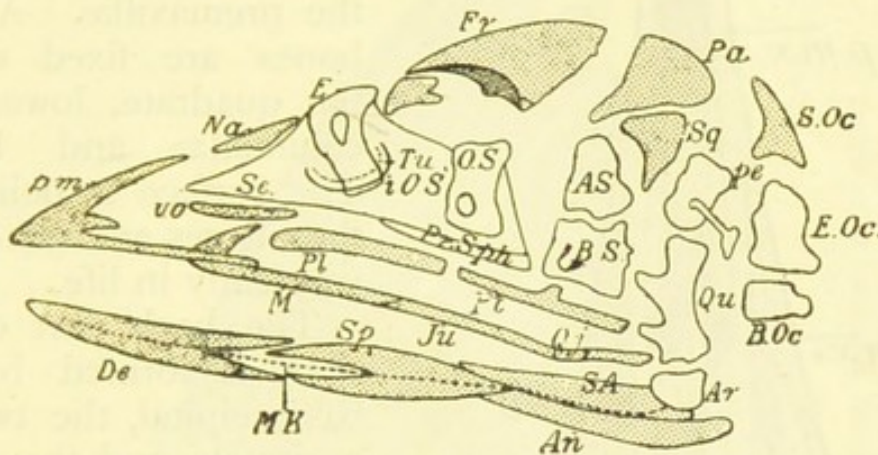


FIG. 261.—Disarticulation of bird's skull.—After Gadow.  
Membrane bones shaded.

*B.Oc.*, basioccipital; *E.Oc.*, exoccipital; *S.Oc.*, supraoccipital; *Pa.*, parietal; *Fr.*, frontal; *Na.*, nasal; *pm.*, premaxilla; *M.*, maxilla; *Ju.*, jugal; *Qj.*, quadrato-jugal; *Qu.*, quadrate; *pe.*, periosteal; *Sq.*, squamosal; *AS.*, alisphenoid; *B.S.*, basisphenoid; *O.S.*, orbito-sphenoid; *Pr.Sph.*, presphenoid; *v.o.*, vomere; *io.s.*, interorbital septum; *E.*, ethmoid; *Sc.*, nasal septum; *De.*, dentary; *Sp.*, splenial; *An.*, angular; *Sa.*, surangular; *Ar.*, articular; *MK.*, Meckel's cartilage.

ploughshare bone,—a fusion of about four vertebræ (cf. coccyx in man). This bone serves as a base for the rectrices.

A cervical vertebra shows on the anterior surface of the centrum a distinctive curvature, described as saddle-shaped or heterocœlous. It is concave from side to side, convex from above downwards. Posteriorly the curvatures are, of course, the reverse.

The ribs have two heads—a capitulum articulating with a centrum, a tubercle articulating with a transverse process. The ventral part of the rib, which reaches the sternum, is called the sternal rib, and is joined at an angle to the dorsal part, which articulates with a vertebra. In Birds the sternal ribs are always bony; in Mammals they are usually cartilaginous. On the posterior surface of each of the first



four thoracic ribs there is an uncinate process, absent only in the S. American screamers (*Palamedeæ*).

The skull has a rounded cranial cavity, large orbits, and a narrow beak, which is mostly composed of the premaxillæ. All the bones are fixed except the quadrate, lower jaw, columella, and hyoid. The surface is polished; the sutures are obliterated very early in life.

The back part of the skull is formed by the basioccipital, the two exoccipitals, and the supraoccipital, surrounding the foramen magnum. The basioccipital forms most of the single condyle.

The roof of the skull is formed from the paired parietals, frontals, and nasals, the last being small and in part superseded by the upward extension of the premaxillæ.

The line of the upper jaw consists of premaxilla, small maxilla, jugal, and quadrato-jugal, the last abutting on the movable quadrate.

Of the membrane bones on the side of the skull, the lachrymal in front of

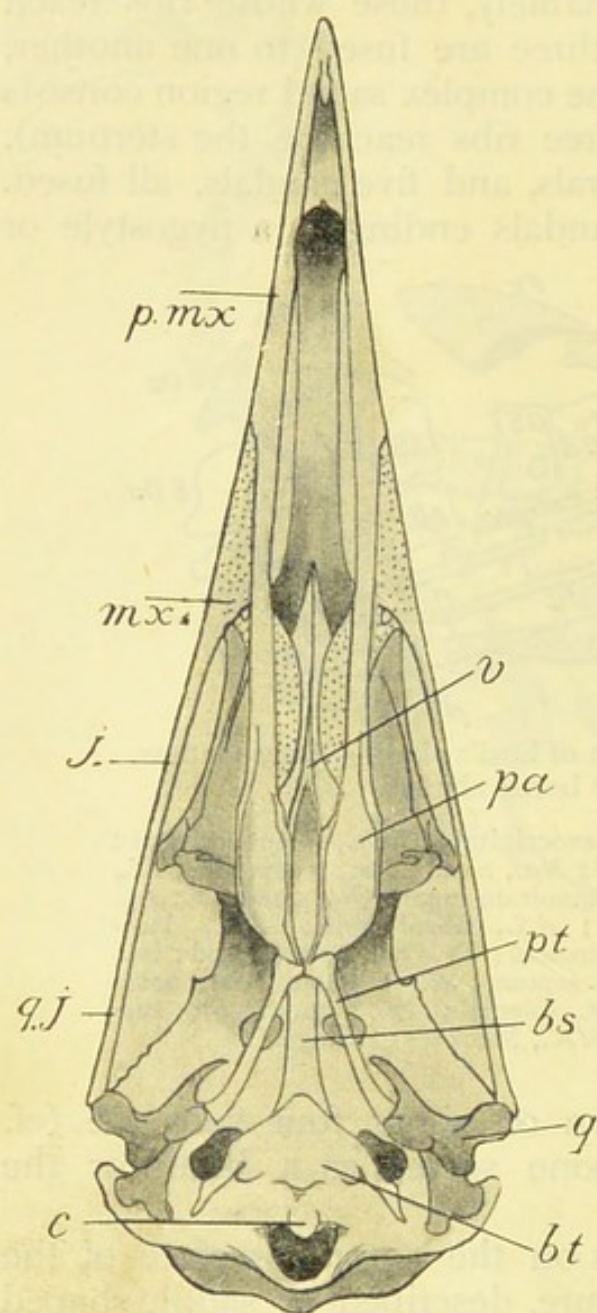


FIG. 262.—Under surface of gull's skull.  
—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*c.*, Condyle; *bt.*, basitemporal; *bs.*, basi-sphenoidal rostrum; *pt.*, pterygoid; *pa.*, palatine; *v.*, vomer; *p.mx.*, premaxilla; *mx.*, maxilla; *j.*, jugal; *q.j.*, quadrato-jugal; *q.*, quadrate.

the orbit, and the squamosal between the quadrate and the parietal, are the most important.

On the roof of the mouth, the basisphenoid, which lies



just in front of the basioccipital, is covered over by a membrane bone—the basitemporal. In front of this is a sharp “basisphenoid rostrum” or parasphenoid, also a membrane bone. Articulating with the quadrate and with the

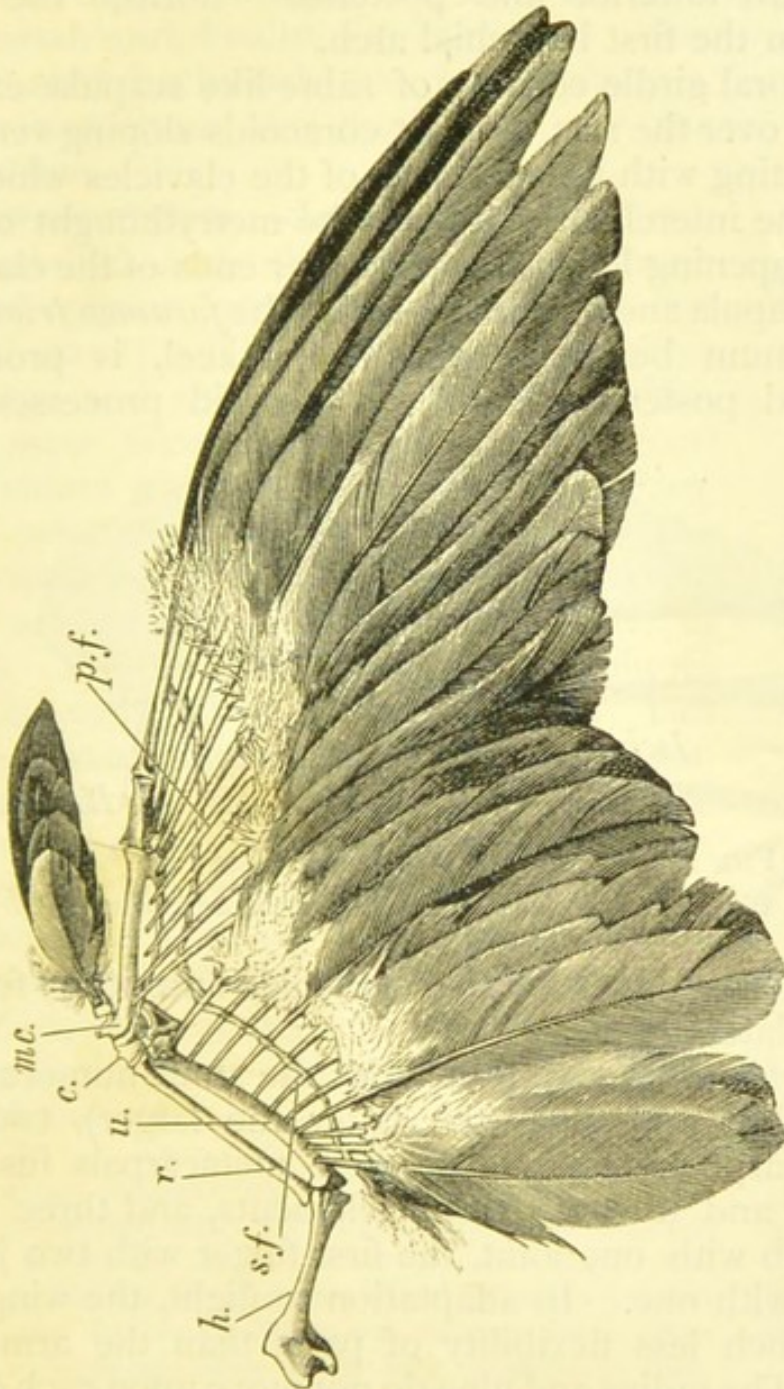


FIG. 263.—Wing of dove.

*h.*, Humerus; *s.f.*, secondary feathers; *r.*, radius; *u.*, ulna; *c.*, carpals; *m.c.*, carpo-metacarpus; *p.f.*, primary feathers.

rostrum are the pterygoids, in front of these lie the palatines. The vomer is vestigial. The bony front of the palate is formed from inward extensions of the premaxillæ and maxillæ. The interorbital septum is formed chiefly from the mesethmoid, but also from the presphenoid. From the



tympanum to the inner ear extends the rod-like columella. The lower jaw originally consists of four membrane bones—dentary, splenial, angular, and surangular; and one cartilage bone—the articular. The hyoid consists of a flat “body,” with anterior and posterior “horns,” the latter derived from the first branchial arch.

The pectoral girdle consists of sabre-like scapulæ extending dorsally over the ribs, of stout coracoids sloping ventrally and articulating with the sternum, of the clavicles which are united by the interclavicle to form the merrythought or furcula. The opening left where the upper ends of the clavicles touch the scapula and coracoid is called the *foramen triosseum*.

The sternum bears a conspicuous keel, is produced laterally and posteriorly into two xiphoid processes, and

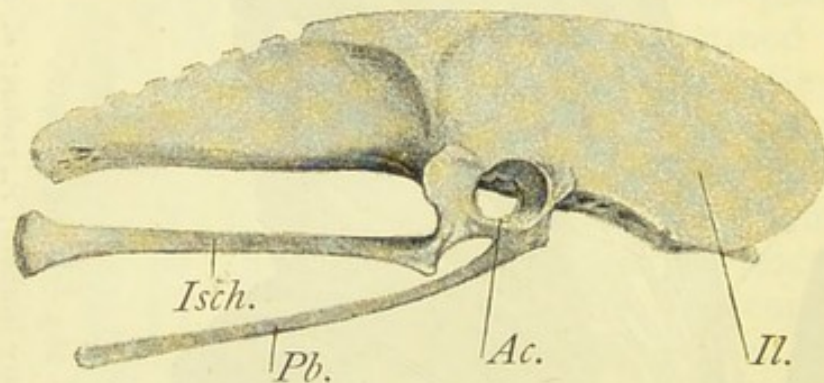


FIG. 264.—Side view of pelvis of cassowary.

*Il.*, Ilium; *Isch.*, ischium; *Pb.*, pubis; *Ac.*, acetabulum.

bears articular surfaces for the coracoids anteriorly, for the sternal ribs laterally.

The skeleton of the wing includes the stout humerus, the separate radius and ulna (the latter the larger), two free carpals, a carpo-metacarpus of three metacarpals fused to one another and to some carpal elements, and three digits—the thumb with one joint, the first finger with two joints, the second with one. In adaptation to flight, the wing of a bird has much less flexibility of parts than the arm of a Mammal. The radius and ulna do not move upon each other.

The pelvic girdle consists of dorsal ilia fused to the complex sacral region, of ischia sloping backwards, and of pubes running parallel to the ischia. The incomplete ossification of the acetabulum and the absence of ventral symphyses are noteworthy.



The hind-limb consists of a short stout femur, a tibia to which the proximal tarsals (astragalus and os calcis) are fused (forming a tibio-tarsus), an incomplete fibula joined to the tibia, three metatarsals fused to one another and to the distal tarsals (forming the tarso-metatarsus), a free first metatarsal, and, finally, the four toes. The first, turned backwards, has two phalanges, the second three, the third four, and the fourth five.

**Nervous system.**—In contrast to the brain of crocodiles and other Reptiles, the brain of the pigeon and other Birds fills the cranial cavity. The cerebral hemispheres are large and smooth. Their roof is thin, their main mass consists of the large corpora striata which bulge into the ventricles. They meet the cerebellum and throw the solid optic lobes to the sides. The olfactory lobes are very small (cf. deficient sense of smell). Between the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum, the pineal body rises to the surface, and a slight posterior separation of the hemispheres will disclose the region of the optic thalami. The cerebellum is ridged transversely and divided into a median lobe and two small lateral flocculi. The curvature of the brain is well marked in the adult, thus the medulla is quite hidden by, and descends almost vertically from, the cerebellum.

There are as usual twelve cranial nerves.

In connection with the spinal cord, the brachial plexus of nerves to the forearm, and the sacral plexus to the leg, should be noticed. In the lumbar region the halves of the cords diverge for a short distance, forming a wide space—the rhomboidal sinus—roofed only by membrane. The cervical part of the sympathetic nervous system is double on each side.

**Sense organs.**—The sense of smell is not well developed in birds. The nostrils are longitudinal slits overhung by the swollen, more or less tactile, cere. Apart from the cere

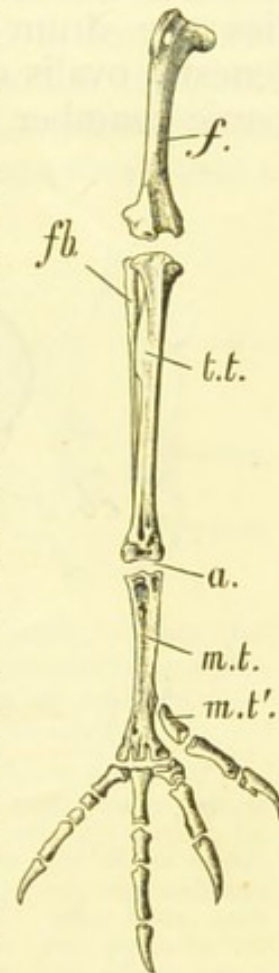


FIG. 265.—Bones of hind-limb of eagle.

*f.*, Femur; *t.t.*, tibio-tarsus; *fb.*, fibula; *a.*, ankle-joint; *m.t.*, tarso-metatarsus; *m.t.*, first metatarsal (free).



there is only a diffuse sense of touch, and the sense of taste is also slightly developed.

The sense of hearing is acute. Externally the ear is marked by an open tube—the external auditory meatus; the aperture of which lies behind the eye, concealed beneath the feathers. Within the tube, a little beneath the surface, lies the drum or tympanum; connecting this with the fenestra ovalis of the inner ear is the columella; the tympanic chamber is continued past the ear as the Eustachian

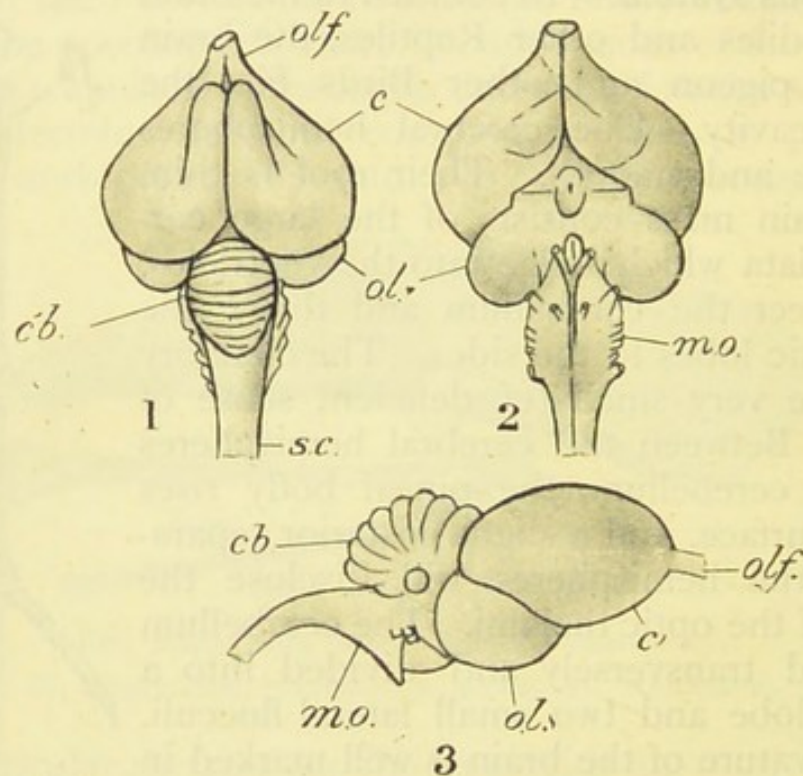


FIG. 266.—Brain of pigeon.

- (1) Dorsal, (2) ventral, and (3) side view. *olf.*, Olfactory lobes; *c.*, cerebral hemispheres; *ol.*, optic lobes; *cb.*, cerebellum; *mo.*, medulla oblongata.

tube, which unites with that of the opposite side, and opens into the mouth cavity in front of the basisphenoid bone. The cochlea, or curved protuberance of the sacculus, which is incipient in Amphibians, and larger in Reptiles, is yet more marked in Birds.

The eye has an upper, a lower, and a third eyelid or nictitating membrane. The last is frequently twitched across the eye, and helps to keep the front clean; it is present in many Reptiles and most Mammals. The front of the



sclerotic protrudes in a rounded cone, and is strengthened by a ring of little bones. Into the vitreous humour a vascular pigmented pecten protrudes from the region of the blind spot where the optic nerve enters. Birds have remarkable powers of optic accommodation.

**Alimentary system.**—The jaws are ensheathed in horn, and this sheath takes the place of teeth, and is sometimes ridged, as in ducks. It is interesting to notice that this horny beak was absent in some of the extinct toothed birds. In modern birds there are no hints of teeth, except that a "dental ridge" (see Mammals) has been detected in some embryos. A narrow tongue lies in the floor of the mouth; it is unimportant in the pigeon, but is often useful, as in parrots, woodpeckers, and humming-birds. Associated with the tongue there are numerous glands. On the roof of the mouth lie the posterior nares, and behind them the *single* aperture of the Eustachian tubes. The gullet expands into a thin-walled, slightly bilobed, non-glandular crop, in which the hurriedly swallowed seeds are stored and softened a little. Especially at the breeding season, the cells lining the crop degenerate, and form "pigeon's milk," which both males and females give to the young birds.

From the crop the food canal is continued into the glandular part of the stomach (the proventriculus), where gastric juice is secreted from large glands.

Beneath the proventriculus is the gizzard, in which the food is ground. The walls are very muscular, the fibres radiating from two tendinous discs; the internal surface is lined by a hard horny epithelium; and within the cavity are small stones which the bird has swallowed. In hawks and fish-eating birds the gizzard region is, naturally enough, fairly soft. The pyloric opening, from the gizzard into the duodenum, is very near the cardiac opening from the proventriculus into the gizzard.

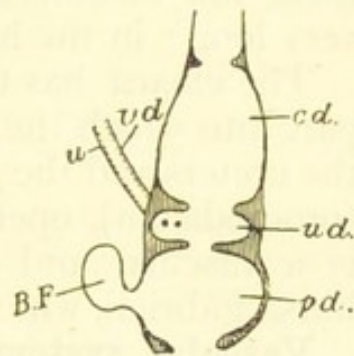


FIG. 267.—Diagrammatic section of cloaca of male bird.—After Gadow.

*cd.*, Upper region of cloaca into which rectum opens; *ud.*, median region into which ureter (*u.*) and vas deferens (*vd.*) open from each side; *pd.*, posterior region into which bursa Fabricii (*B.F.*) opens.



In the fold of the long duodenum lies the pancreas with three ducts, whose number points to the triple origin of the pancreatic rudiment in the embryo. Into the same region open two bile ducts from the two-lobed liver, which is without a gall-bladder in the common pigeon, though this is present in some birds, and even in some species of pigeon.

The small intestine is long; the large intestine is very short; in fact, it is not more than a rectum two inches in length. At the junction of the small and the large intestine there are two short cæca. In some birds, *e.g.* the fowl, these are of considerable length; in the ostrich they are very long; in the hornbills, etc., they are absent.

The cloaca has three divisions (*see* Fig. 267),—an upper part into which the rectum opens, a median part into which the ureters and the genital ducts open, and a posterior region (proctodæum), opening into which from the dorsal surface is a vascular and glandular sac of obscure function, the bursa Fabricii, which usually disappears during adolescence.

**Vascular system.**—The relatively large four-chambered heart, the complete separation of arterial and venous blood, the single aortic arch bending over to the *right* side, and the hot blood (about 38° C., 100° F.), are important characteristics. The heart beats are more rapid in birds than in other Vertebrates, being about 120 per minute when the bird is at rest, and far more when it is flying.

The impure blood returned by the venæ cavæ to the right auricle passes into the right ventricle through the auriculo-ventricular valve (which has two *muscular* flaps without chordæ tendineæ or papillary muscles). From the right ventricle it is driven to the lungs. From the lungs the purified blood returns to the left auricle, and passes through two *membranous* valves (with chordæ tendineæ and papillary muscles) into the left ventricle. Thence it is driven through the arterial trunk into the carotids, the subclavians, and the dorsal aorta. The bases of the aortic and pulmonary trunks are guarded by three semilunar valves. From the capillaries the impure blood is collected anteriorly in two superior venæ cavæ (precavals), and posteriorly in an inferior vena cava (postcaval), composed of veins from hind-legs and kidneys, and receiving as it approaches the heart the hepatic veins from the liver.



The right auricle of the heart is larger than the left ; the right ventricle has thin walls, and partly surrounds the more muscular left ventricle. The muscular right auriculo-ventricular valve does not quite encircle the opening from the auricle, an imperfect differentiation which recurs in the Monotreme Mammals.

The *arterial* system consists of the following vessels (Fig. 268) :—

- (a) The arterial trunk, as it rises from the heart, gives off on each side an innominate artery. Each innominate gives off a carotid and a subclavian, and the subclavian immediately divides into a brachial to the arm and a pectoral to the breast muscles.
- (b) The dorsal aorta, formed by a continuation of the arterial trunk bending round on the right side, gives off coeliac, mesenteric, renal, femoral, sciatic, iliac, and other arteries.
- (c) The pulmonary arteries carry impure blood from right ventricle to lungs.

The *venous* system consists of the following vessels (Fig. 268A) :—

- (a) Two superior venæ cavæ, each formed from the union of jugulars from the head, a brachial from the arm, and a pectoral from the breast.
- (b) The inferior vena cava is formed from the junction of two iliac veins just in front of the kidneys. Each of these iliacs results from the union of a femoral from the leg, an efferent renal from the kidney, and a renal-portal, or hypogastric, which passes upwards through the kidney. To understand this renal-portal, it is convenient to begin at the tail. A short caudal vein divides anteriorly into right and left branches, each of which receives an internal iliac from the sides of the pelvic region. Thus the hypogastric is formed at each side, and this, passing upwards through the kidney, receives the sciatic, and finally joins with the femoral and with the renal.
- (c) The pulmonary veins carry pure blood from lungs to left auricle.

The hepatic portal system is as usual,—mesenteric veins from the intestine combine in portal veins ; the blood filters through the liver ; and is collected in hepatic veins, which unite with the anterior end of the inferior vena cava.

A functional renal-portal system is represented by small renal-portal branches, which the femorals give off to the kidney.

From the transverse vein formed between the two hypogastriks or by the division of the caudal vein, a coccygeo-mesenteric arises, which receives vessels from the cloaca and large intestine, and is continued along the mesentery to join the hepatic portal system.

As there are rarely any valves in the renal-portal veins, the blood from the viscera and hind-limbs can pass freely either through the iliac veins and thence to the inferior vena cava, or through the coccygeo-mesenteric vein to the hepatic portal system.

The epigastric vein of the bird takes blood from the fat-laden sheet or great omentum which covers the abdominal viscera. It leads not into the liver, but into one of the hepatic veins.

Associated with the blood vascular system there is a lymphatic system with a few lymphatic glands.



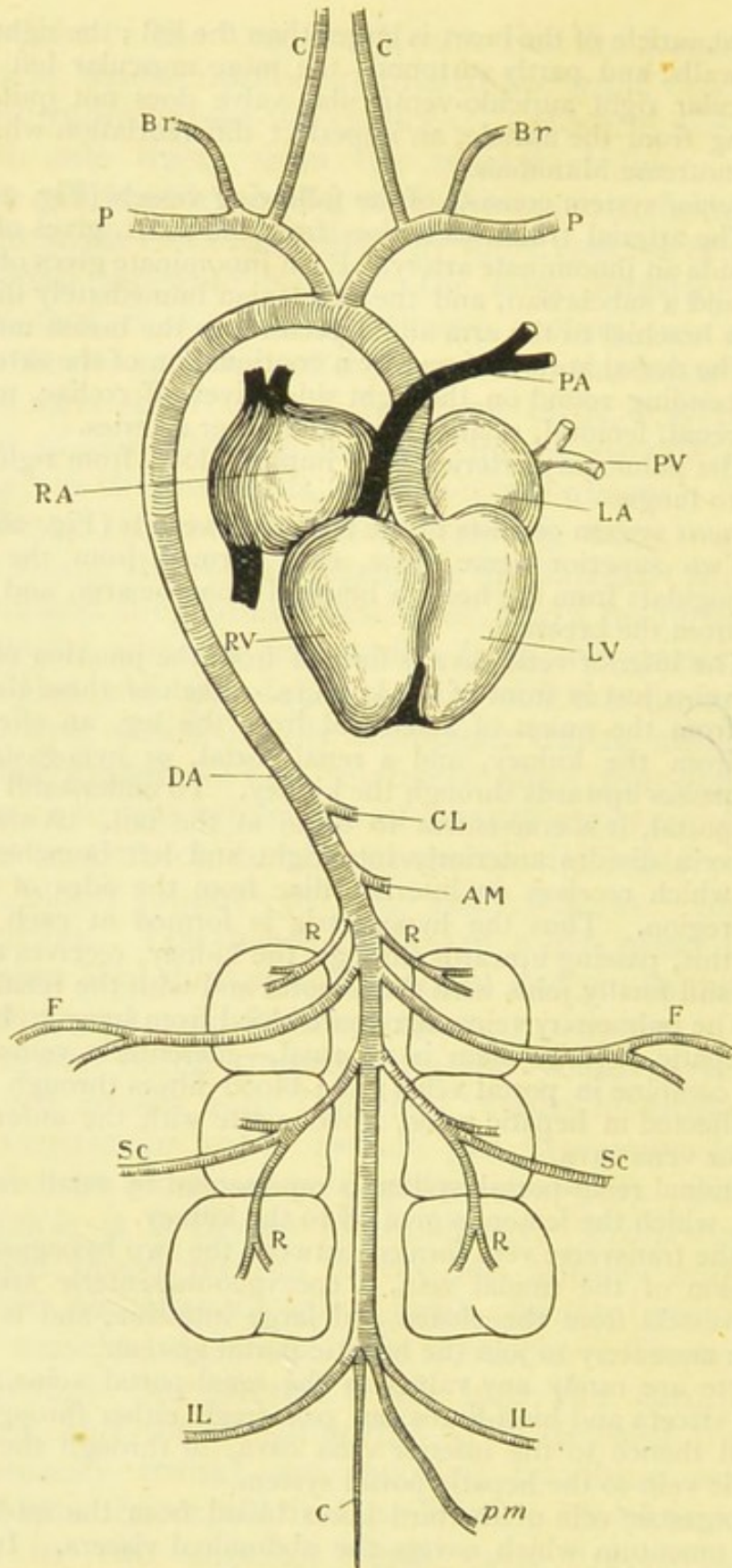


FIG. 268.—Heart and arterial system of pigeon.

*R.A.*, right auricle; *R.V.*, right ventricle; *L.V.*, left ventricle; *L.A.*, left auricle; *P.V.*, pulmonary veins; *P.*, pectoral artery; *Br.*, brachial artery; *C.*, carotid artery; *D.A.*, dorsal aorta; *CL.*, coeliac; *A.M.*, anterior mesenteric; *R.*, Renals; *F.*, femoral; *Sc.*, sciatic; *IL.*, iliac; *pm.*, posterior mesenteric; *C.*, caudal.



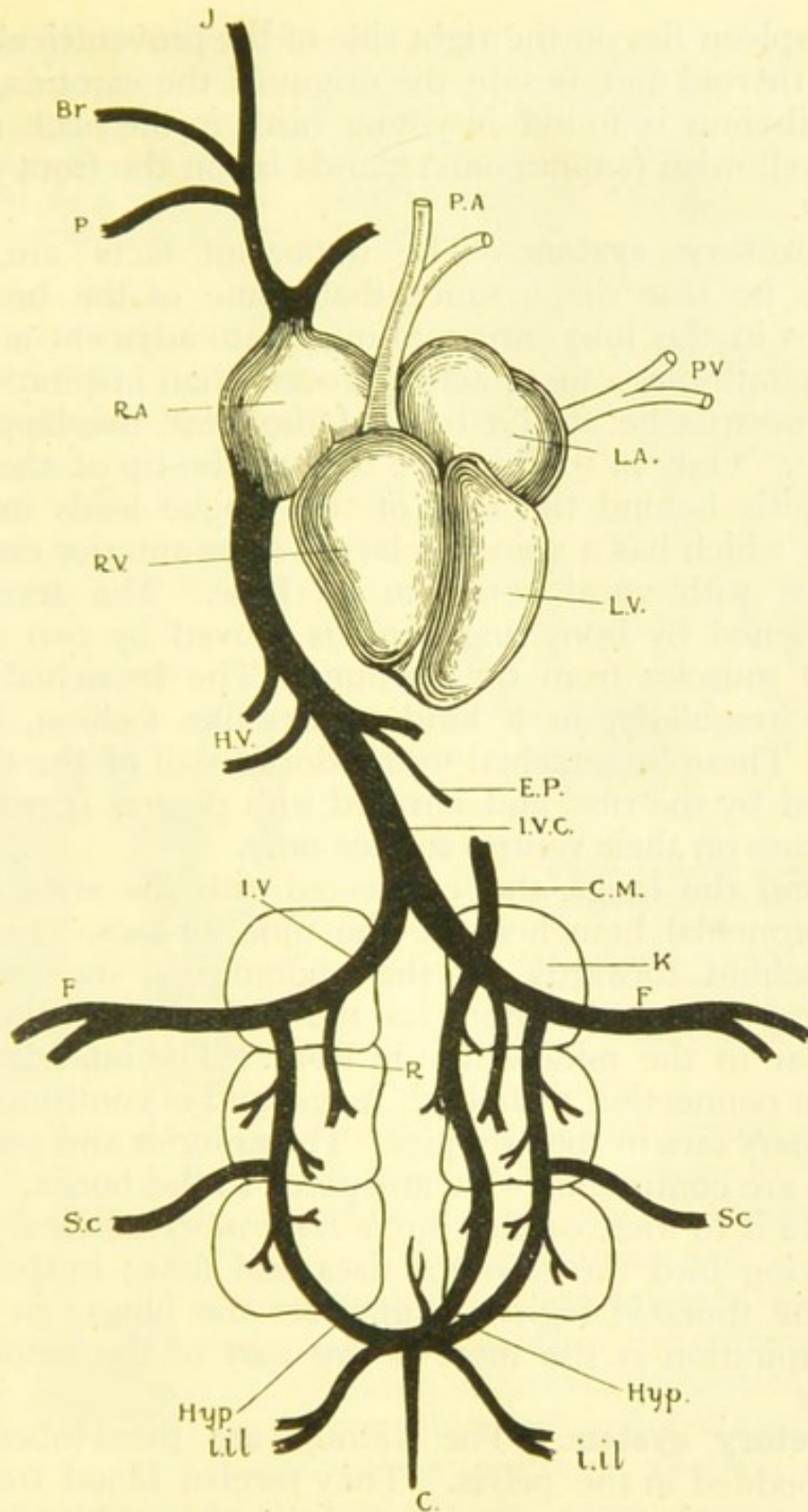


FIG. 268A.—Heart and venous system of pigeon.

*R.A.*, Right auricle; *R.V.*, right ventricle; *L.V.*, left ventricle; *L.A.*, left auricle; *P.V.*, pulmonary veins; *P.A.*, pulmonary arteries; *J.*, jugular; *Br.*, brachial; *P.*, pectoral; *H.V.*, hepatic; *E.P.*, epigastric; *I.V.C.*, inferior vena cava; *C.M.*, coccygeo-mesenteric; *I.V.*, iliac; *F.*, femoral; *R.*, renal; *Sc.*, sciatic; *Hyp.*, hypogastric or renal-portal; *i.il.*, internal iliac; *C.*, caudal.



The spleen lies on the right side of the proventriculus, the paired thyroid lies beside the origin of the carotids, and a paired thymus is found in young birds in the neck region. Small yellowish (suprarenals) glands lie on the front part of kidneys.

**Respiratory system.**—The important facts are,—that there is no true diaphragm; that some of the bronchial branches in the lungs are continued into adjacent air-sacs; that expiration is a more active process than inspiration.

The nostrils lie at the base of the beak overlapped by the cere. Only in the kiwi are they at the tip of the beak. The glottis behind the root of the tongue leads into the trachea, which has a voiceless larynx at its anterior end, and a syrinx, with vocal cords, at its base. The trachea is strengthened by bony rings, and is moved by two sternotracheal muscles from the sternum. The bronchial tubes branch irregularly, in a kind of tree-like fashion, in the lungs. These lie attached to the dorsal wall of the thorax, indented by the ribs, and covered with pleural (peritoneal) membrane on their ventral surface only.

Around the lungs, and connected with the ends of the main bronchial branches, are the nine air-sacs. In order from behind forwards, lie the abdominals, the posterior thoracics, the anterior thoracics, the cervicals, and the interclavicular in the middle line in front. The interclavicular sac is in connection with both lungs, and is continued into two axillary sacs in the arm-pits. The anterior and posterior air-sacs are continuous with air-spaces in the bones. Their chief use is to increase the bird's *respiratory* efficiency. In the resting bird the sternum rises and falls; in the flying birds the thoracic region compresses the lungs; in either case, expiration is the more active part of the respiratory process.

**Excretory system.**—The kidneys are three-lobed, and lie embedded in the pelvis. They receive blood from the dorsal aorta by renal arteries, and the filtered blood leaves them by renal veins which unite with femorals and renal portals to form the iliacs, or, we may almost say, the inferior vena cava. But the kidney also receives some venous blood from the femoral and renal-portal veins. Thus to a slight extent there is a renal-portal system, which does not



occur in Mammals. The kidneys are metanephric in origin.

The waste products, consisting for the most part of urates, pass in semi-solid form down the ureters into the median compartment of the cloaca.

In front of each kidney, at the base of the iliac vein, there lies a suprarenal body.

### Reproductive system.—

The testes lie in front of the kidneys. Like the ovary, they increase in size at the breeding season, and dwindle after-

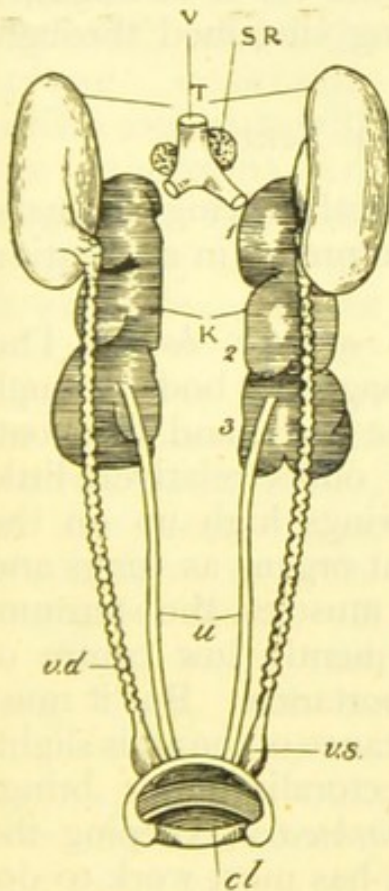


FIG. 269A.—Male urogenital organs of pigeon.

*T.*, testes; *V.*, base of inferior vena cava; *S.R.*, suprarenal bodies; *K.*, kidneys with three lobes (1, 2, 3); *u.*, ureter; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *v.s.*, seminal vesicle; *cl.*, cloaca.

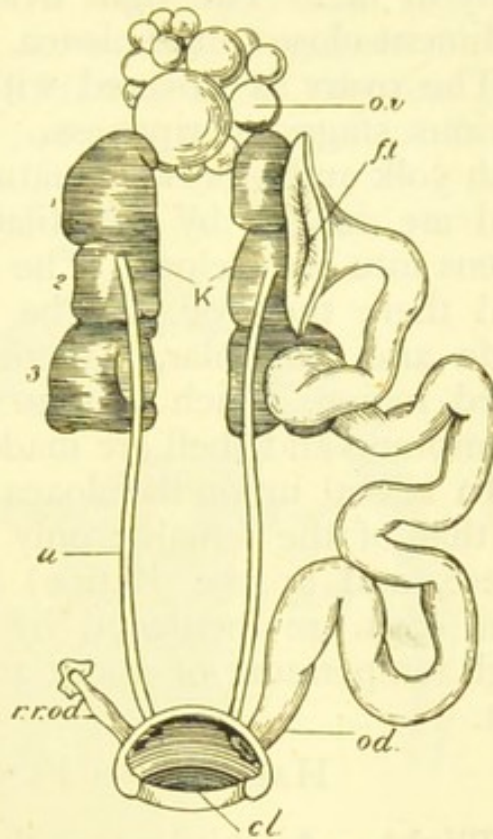


FIG. 269.—Female urogenital organs of pigeon.

*K.*, Kidney with three lobes; *u.*, ureter; *cl.*, cloaca; *ov.*, ovary; *od.*, oviduct; *f.t.*, funnel at end of oviduct; *r.r.od.*, rudimentary right oviduct.

wards; the sexual period in birds being much more narrowly limited than in most other Vertebrates.

The spermatozoa pass from the testis into a vas deferens, which lies to the outside of the corresponding ureter. The vasa deferentia, slightly convoluted when full of sperms, and with a posterior swelling or seminal vesicle, open separately into the median compartment of the cloaca.

In the adult pigeon, and in most birds, there is only one ovary; that of the right side usually atrophies



early in life. The right oviduct is represented by a small rudiment close to the cloaca.

The ovary is covered with follicles containing ova at various stages of ripeness. As these ova become dilated with yolk and otherwise mature, they burst from the ovary, and are caught by the dilated end of the oviduct which opens into the coelom. The first part of the duct is narrow, and there the ova may be fertilised; the second part is wide and glandular, secreting the white of egg; in the third region, which is muscular and glandular, the shell membrane and shell are made.

In sexual union the cloaca of the male is closely apposed to that of the female; only in a few cases (in ducks and geese, and in the Ratitæ) is there a copulatory organ. The eggs are incubated by the parents for a fortnight, a high temperature of about 40° C. being sustained throughout.

#### HABITS AND FUNCTIONS OF BIRDS.

**Flight.**—As birds are characteristically flying animals, many of their peculiarities may be interpreted in adaptation to this mode of motion.

(a) *Shape and general structure of the body.*—The resistance offered by the air to the passage of a body through it depends in part on the shape of the body, and the boat-like shape of the bird is such that it offers relatively little resistance. The attachment of the wings high up on the thorax, the high position of such light organs as lungs and air-sacs, the low position of the heavy muscles, the sternum, and the digestive organs, the consequently low centre of gravity, are also structural facts of importance. But it must be remembered that the frictional resistance of the air is slight.

(b) *The muscles of flight.*—The pectoralis major brings the wing *downward, forward, and backward*, keeping the bird up and carrying it onward. As it has most work to do, it is by far the largest. The pectoralis minor *raises* the wing for the next stroke. Besides these two main muscles, there are others of minor importance, the deltoides externus and three coraco-brachials, which help to *raise* the wing. On an average these muscles weigh about one-sixth of the whole bird, but the proportion is often much greater,



amounting to nearly one-half in some pigeons. Buffon noted that eagles disappeared from sight in about three minutes, and a common rate of flight is about fifty feet per second. In migration many birds fly at a rate of from 100 to 200 miles an hour.

(c) *The skeleton.*—The rigidity of the dorsal part of the backbone, due to fusion of vertebræ, is of advantage in affording a firm fulcrum for the wing-strokes, while the arched clavicles (meeting in an interclavicle and often fused in front to the sternum) and the strong coracoids (which articulate with the sternum) are adapted to resist the inward pressure of the down-stroke. As the keel of the breast-bone serves in part for the insertion of the two chief muscles, its size bears some proportion to the strength of flight. It is absent in the running birds, such as the ostriches, and has degenerated in the New Zealand parrot (*Stringops*), which has ceased to fly and taken to burrowing.

(d) *Air-sacs and air-spaces.*—The lungs of birds open into a number of air-sacs, which have a larger cubic content than the lungs, and in many cases these air-sacs are continued into the bones, among the viscera, and even under the skin. From a broken bone it is possible to inflate the air-sacs, and through a broken bone a bird with choked

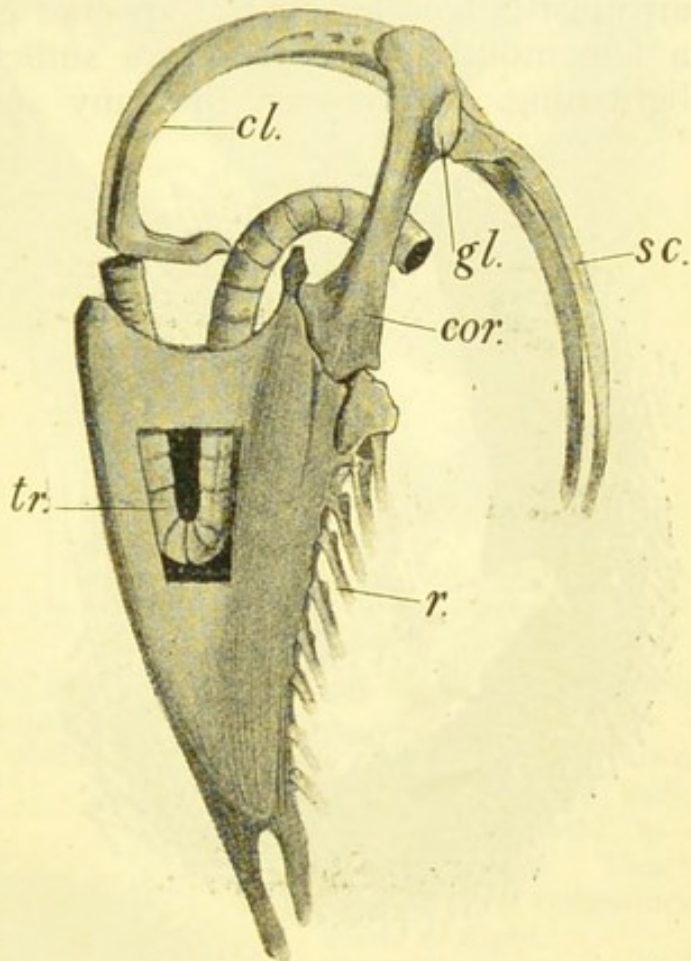


FIG. 270.—Pectoral girdle and sternum of swan.

A part of carina removed shows peculiar loop of trachea (*tr.*); *cl.*, clavicle; *cor.*, coracoid; *sc.*, scapula; *gl.*, glenoid cavity for head of humerus; *r.*, parts of sternal ribs.



windpipe may for a time breathe. The whole system of air-containing cavities is continuous, except in the case of the skull bones, whose spaces receive air from the nasal and Eustachian tubes. In view of these facts, it used to be supposed that a bird with heated air in the sacs and spaces was comparable to a balloon. But this is fallacious. The air must indeed lessen the specific gravity of the bird, but a few mouthfuls of food are sufficient to counteract the lightening. Moreover, in many small birds of powerful



FIG. 271.—Position of wings in pigeon at maximum elevation.—From Marey.

flight, all the large bones, or all except the humerus, contain marrow, and are therefore not "pneumatic"; and the hornbill, which has no great power of flight, is one of the most pneumatic of birds. It is certain that in ordinary flight the lightest of birds has to keep itself from falling by constant effort. The bird is not comparable to a balloon, but to a flying machine; "it has to be not a buoyant cork, but a buoyant bullet."

In short, the air-sacs

increase the bird's respiratory content, secure more perfect aëration of the lungs, and probably aid in regulating the body temperature.

Ruskin has compared the flight of a bird to the sailing of a boat. "In a boat the air strikes the sail; in a bird the sail strikes the air; in a boat the force is lateral, and in a bird downwards; and it has its sail on both sides." But, as he says, the sail of a boat serves only to carry it onwards, while wings have not only to waft the bird onwards, but to keep it up. To carry the weight of the bird the wings strike vertically, to carry the bird onwards they strike obliquely; sometimes the direction of the stroke is more vertical, and then the bird mounts upwards; sometimes it is more oblique, and then the bird speeds onwards; usually



both directions are combined. The raising of the wing after each stroke requires relatively little effort, the resistance to be overcome being very slight. In steering, the feathers of the tail often bear to the wings a relation comparable to that between rudder and sail.

*Modes of flight.*

—There are three chief modes of flight:—

1. By gliding or skimming, during which the bird has its wings spread, but does not flap them, depending for its movement on the velocity acquired by previous strokes, by descending from a higher to a lower level, or by the wind. This may be readily observed in

gull and heron, in a pigeon gliding from its loft to the ground, or in a falcon swooping upon its quarry.

2. By active strokes of the wings, in which the wings move downward and forward, backward and upward, in a complex curve. This is of course the commonest mode of flight.

3. By sailing or soaring with motionless spread wings, in which the bird does not necessarily lose in velocity, or in vertical position, as is the case in gliding. It is illustrated by such birds as crow, falcon, stork, and albatross, and has been observed only when there was wind. It is still imperfectly understood,

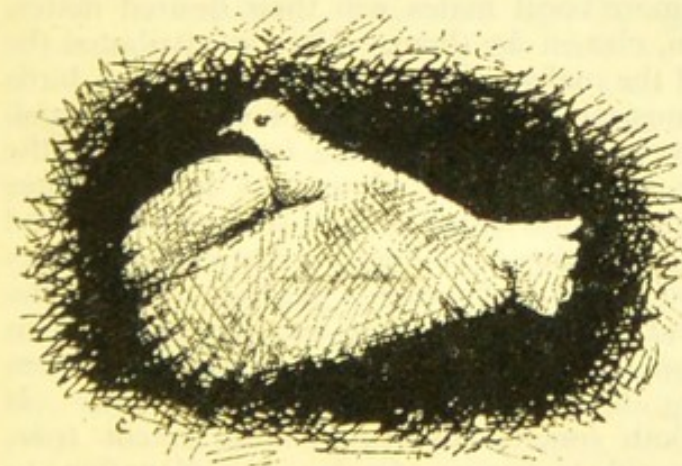


FIG. 273.—Wings completely depressed.  
—From Marey.

but it probably depends on the varying velocity of the wind at different heights. The bird probably sails along the line of two currents of different velocity.

**Song of birds.**—Singing is a natural expression of emotional



FIG. 272.—Wings coming down.—From Marey.



intensity. It is richest at the breeding season, and is always best and often solely developed in the males. But song in any excellence is the gift of comparatively few birds, though nearly all have a voice of some sort, often so characteristic that the species may be recognised by its call. The parrot and the jackdaw, and others, can be taught to pronounce articulate words; and the power of imitation is widespread among birds, which are notorious plagiarists. This power of imitation is important in relation to the general theory of instinct, for the song of all birds is probably in great part imitative, though to a limited extent inherited. Young birds taken away from their nests when very young, so that they have hardly heard the voices of their kind, may utter the characteristic note of the species, but they sing the song imperfectly.

Many birds, apart from those who have been educated, have "words," expressing pleasure, pain, sense of danger, presence of food, and the like. But there is a difference between this power of utterance and the possession of language, which implies the expression of a judgment, *e.g.* food is good.

The vocal organ of birds is not situated in the larynx, as it is in Mammals, but in the syrinx—a song-box at the base of the windpipe. In this syrinx there are vocal membranes or folds of skin; their vibration as the air passes over them causes sound; the note varies with the muscular tension of the folds, with the muscular state of the complex associated parts, and with the column of air in the windpipe.

**Courtship.**—Birds usually pair in the springtime, but there are many exceptions. Some, such as eagles, live alone except at the pairing time; others, notably the doves, always live together in pairs; many, such as rooks, parrots, and cranes, are sociable, gregarious birds. A few, like the fowls, are polygamous; the cuckoo is polyandrous.

In most cases, however, birds pair, and the mates are true to one another for a season. The pairing is often preceded by a courtship, in which the more decorative, more vocal males win their desired mates, being, according to Darwin, chosen by them. Darwin attributed the captivating characteristics of the males, well seen in peacocks and birds of paradise, or as regards musical powers in most of our own British songsters, to the sexual selection exercised by the females; for if the more decorative or the more melodious males always got the preference in courtship, the qualities which contributed to their success would tend to predominate in the race. He believed, moreover, that characteristics of male parents were entailed on male offspring. Wallace regarded the differences between males and females in another way, arguing that in the course of natural selection the more conspicuous females had been eliminated, brightness being disadvantageous during incubation. It seems likely enough that both conclusions are to some extent true, while there is much to be said in favour of a deeper explanation, to which Wallace inclines, that the secondary differences between the sexes are natural and necessary expressions of the fundamental constitutional differences involved in maleness and femaleness.

**Nests.**—After pairing, the work of nest-building is begun. Almost all birds build nests; the well-known habit is a characteristic expression of their parental care. Other creatures, indeed, such as sticklebacks among Fishes, and squirrels among Mammals, besides numerous Insects,



build nests, but the habit is most perfectly developed among Birds. As is well known, each species has its own peculiar style of nest, and builds it of special materials. Generally the nest is solitary, hidden in some private nook. The perfection of art which is reached by some birds in the making of their nests is marvellous; they use their bills and their feet, and smooth the inside by twisting round and round. Usually the hen does most of the work, but her mate sometimes helps, both in building the nests and in hatching the young.

The nest is a cradle rather than a house, for its chief use is to secure an approximately constant warmth for the young which are being formed within the eggs, and to afford protection for the helpless fledglings. At the same time, the nest secures the comfort of the parent-bird during the days and nights of brooding.

The variety of nests may be illustrated by mentioning the burrowed nests of sand-martins and kingfishers, the ground-nests of game-birds and gulls, the mud-nests of house-swallow and flamingo, the holes which the woodpecker fashions in the tree-stem, the platforms built by doves and eagles, storks and cranes, the basket-nests of most singing-birds, the structures delicately woven by the goldfinch, bullfinch, and humming-birds, the sewed nest of the tailor-bird, the mossy nests of the wrens, the edible nest of the *Collocalia*, which is chiefly composed of mucin secreted by the salivary glands.

**Eggs of Birds.**—When the nest is finished, the eggs are ready to be laid. After they are laid, the patience of brooding begins. With the great care that Birds take of their young we may associate the comparatively small number of the eggs; but there are probably other reasons why the number of offspring decreases as animals become more highly evolved.

The size of the egg usually bears some relation to the size of the bird. Of European birds, the swans have the largest eggs, the golden-crested wrens the smallest. It is said that the egg of the extinct *Moa* sometimes measured 9 in. in breadth and 12 in. in length; while that of the extinct *Aepyornis* held over two gallons, some six times as much as an ostrich's egg, or a hundred and fifty times as much as a fowl's. Yet the size of the egg is only generally proportional to that of the bird; for, while the cuckoo is much larger than the lark, the eggs of the two are about the same size; and while the guillemot and the raven are almost of equal size, the eggs of the former are in volume about ten times larger than those of the latter. The eggs of birds whose young are rapidly hatched and soon leave the nests are large. Professor Newton remarks that "the number of eggs to be covered at one time seems also to have some relation to their size," while from what one notices in the poultry-yard, and from a comparison of the habits of different birds, it seems probable that a highly nutritive, sluggish bird will have larger eggs than a bird of more active habit and sparser diet.

The shell of the egg is often very beautifully coloured; there is a predominant tint upon which are spots, streaks, and blotches of varied colour and disposition, so that the egg is almost always characteristic of the species. The colouring matter consists of pigments related to those of the blood and the bile, and is deposited while the shell is being



formed in the lower part of the oviduct. As the eggs may move before the pigments are fixed, blotchings and markings naturally result. But the most interesting fact in regard to the colouring of the egg-shells is that the tints are often protectively harmonious with those of the surroundings. Thus eggs laid almost on the ground are often brownish like the soil, those laid in rocky places by the sea often look very like stones, while conspicuous eggs are usually found in covered nests.

The state of the newly hatched young is very various. Some are born naked, blind, and helpless, and have to be carefully fed by their parents until they are fully fledged. This is true of the thrush and of many other song-birds. Others are born covered with down, but still helpless; while a few, like the chicks, are able to run about and feed themselves a few minutes after they leave the egg. Those which require to be fed and brooded over are sometimes called *Altrices* or *Insessores*, while those which are at once active and able to feed themselves are called *Præcoces* or *Autophagæ*.

**Moulting.**—Every year birds lose their old feathers. This moulting generally takes place after the fatigue of the breeding season, but in the case of the swallows, and the diurnal birds of prey and some others, the moult is in mid-winter. The process is comparable to the casting of scales in Reptiles, and to the shedding of hair in Mammals. Feathers are so easily injured that the advantage of the annual renewal is evident, especially when it takes place just before the time at which it may be necessary to set forth on a long migratory flight.

In moulting, the feathers fall out and are replaced gradually, but sometimes they are shed so rapidly that the bird is left very bare; thus moulting ducks are unable to fly. There are many birds that moult, more or less completely, more than once a year; thus the garden warbler sheds its feathers twice. The males of many bright birds assume special decorations after a partial moult, which occurs before the time of pairing. Most remarkable is the case of the ptarmigan, which changes its dress three times in the year: after the breeding season is over the plumage becomes grey; as the winter sets in it grows white, and suited to the surrounding snow; in the spring, the season of courtship, the wedding robes are put on.

**Diet.**—The food of birds varies greatly, not only in different kinds, but also at different seasons. Many are herbivorous, feeding on the soft green parts of plants, and in these birds the intestine is long. Some confine themselves to grain, and these have large crops and strong grinding gizzards, while those which combine cereals and insects have in most cases no crop. A few sip honey, and may even help in the cross-fertilisation of flowers; those that feed on fruits play an important part in the dissemination of seeds; those that devour insects are of great service to man. In fruit-eating and insectivorous birds the crop is usually small, and the gizzard only slightly muscular. But many birds feed on worms, molluscs, fishes, and small mammals; in these the glandular part of the stomach is more developed than the muscular part. It has been shown that the nature of the stomach in the Shetland gull changes twice a year, as the bird changes a summer diet of grain and seeds for a winter diet of fish, and *vice versa*. In the case of



canaries, bullfinches, parrots, etc., it has been noted that the food influences the colouring of the plumage.

**Migration of birds.**—Migration remains in no small degree a zoological mystery. On certain points we need more facts, and even where facts are abundant we but imperfectly understand them. Let us first state some of the outstanding facts.

1. Most birds seem to be more or less migratory, but the range differs greatly. It is said that the dotterel may sup on the North African steppe and breakfast next morning on the Arctic tundra, and although the alleged rate may not be demonstrable, there is no doubt that a distance of about 2000 miles is traversed by this bird and by many others. Indeed, flights of 7-10,000 miles are said to occur. In the Tropics, on the other hand, the migration may simply be from valley to hillside.

2. Observers in temperate countries long ago noticed that the birds they saw might be grouped in reference to their migrations. Thus (a) some arrive in spring from the South, remain to breed, and leave for the South in autumn, *e.g.* swallow and cuckoo in Britain; (b) some arrive in autumn, chiefly from the North, stay throughout the winter, and fly northwards again in spring, *e.g.* the fieldfare and the redwing in Britain; (c) some—the “birds of passage”—are seen only for a short time twice a year on their way to colder or warmer countries in spring or autumn, *e.g.* sand-pipers; and (d) some seem to deserve the name of “residents,” but really exhibit a partial migration, such as the song-thrush and redbreast in Britain. In the spring European migration is on the whole northwards and north-eastwards; in autumn southwards and south-eastwards, but the paths are great curves.

3. There is a striking regularity in the advent and departure of many of the migrants. In spite of the immense distances which many of our immigrants travel, and in spite of unpropitious weather, they are often punctual within a day or two to their average time of arrival for many years. Similarly some birds, such as the swifts, are hardly less precise in leaving our shores.

4. It is beyond all doubt that many individual birds find their way back to the same district, even to the same spot, where they had made their nest in previous years. Not less marvellous is the security with which the flight from country to country is continued in darkness, at great heights, and over the trackless sea. At the same time it must be noticed that the mortality during migration is very great.

Having stated a few of the outstanding facts, let us note some of the interpretations and suggestions which help us to understand them.

The impulse to migrate is instinctive; but it is likely that there are always immediate causes which prompt the instinct, such as scarcity of food, and, to a less degree, increasing cold in the case of many birds which leave us in autumn. It is more difficult to recognise the immediate causes prompting their return. In leaving Britain the young birds usually fly first; in returning, the sexual adults lead the way.

It seems likely that the origin of the migrating habit is wrapped up with the history of climates, and we can understand how the setting in of glacial conditions from the north would gradually force birds, century by century, to a longer flight southwards. And if the climatic condi-



tions limit the area of safe and comfortable breeding to one country (the more northerly), and the possibility of food during winter to another country (the more southerly), we can understand, with Wallace, "that those birds which do not leave the breeding area at the proper season will suffer, and ultimately become extinct; which will also be the fate of those which do not leave the feeding area at the proper time." In short, given environmental changes of climate on the one hand, and a measure of plasticity and initiative on the part of the organism, the instinct of migrating would be perfected in the course of natural elimination.

But while this view is so far satisfactory, it leaves us face to face with the problem how birds migrate as safely and surely as they do on their pathless way. For to point out that the merciless elimination which continually goes on keeps up the standard of racial fitness, leaves us still wondering how any became fit at all.

One welcomes therefore any suggestion as to the manner in which birds learn or have learned to find their way. The power has been compared to the "homing" faculty of some pigeons, but most believe that pigeons are guided solely by noticing landmarks, which could hardly be done over 10,000 miles of land, and obviously not over 1000 miles of sea, or during the night. Some have urged that birds follow river valleys, the lines of old "land bridges" connecting continents, the roll of the waves, and so forth, but the difficulty remains of flight by night and at very great heights. Attractive is the suggestion that birds are guided by what may be called a "tradition" based on experience; those guide well one year who have followed well in previous years. But some young birds fly apart from their parents, and some birds do not fly in flocks at all. Moreover, it is difficult to understand how the experience could be gained except by sight, which in many cases is excluded by the darkness. In face of these difficulties, some authorities, such as Professor Newton, have been led to believe that birds have, in an unusual degree, "a sense of direction."

### DEVELOPMENT OF THE CHICK.

The ovarian ovum of the hen is a large spherical body, consisting largely of yolk, but exhibiting at one region a disc of formative protoplasm with a large nucleus. The ripening of the egg is accompanied by the disappearance of the nuclear membrane, and also by the formation of polar bodies; but the details of the process are obscure.

Either before it leaves the ovary, or in the upper part of the oviduct, the egg is fertilised by a spermatozoon. During its passage down the oviduct it undergoes two sets of changes. On the one hand it becomes surrounded by various envelopes added to the delicate vitelline membrane with which it is already invested; on the other hand, segmentation goes on rapidly in the formative area.

The fully formed and laid egg is surrounded by a firm porous shell of carbonate of lime, and beneath this there is a double shell membrane, the two layers of which are separated at the broad end of the shell to form an air-chamber. This chamber grows larger as development proceeds, and is of some importance in connection with respiration, as an



intermediate region between the embryo and the external medium. Beneath the shell membranes lies the albumen, or "white of egg," which is secreted by the thin-walled region of the oviduct; in it lie two spirally-twisted cords or chalazæ, produced by the rotation of the egg in the oviduct. Within the enveloping albumen lies the ovum proper, with its enormous mass of yolk. The yolk is not homogeneous, but consists of two substances, known respectively as white and yellow yolk. The white yolk forms a central flask-shaped mass, and occurs also as thin concentric layers in the yellow yolk.

The minimum temperature at which a hen's egg will develop normally is  $28^{\circ}\text{C}$ . If the temperature fall below this, development stops. In early stages the interruption may last for days without fatal results, though always with a tendency to induce subsequent abnormalities. Towards the end of incubation more than a day's cooling is usually quite fatal.

On the upper surface of the yolk, in whatever position the egg be held, lies the segmented blastoderm, whose exact origin we must consider more precisely.

As we have seen, yolk is to be regarded as an inert and passive substance. In the hen's egg we have an increased specialisation along the line indicated by the egg of the frog. For there is a small patch of formative protoplasm at one pole, and a large aggregate of yolk composing the remainder of the egg. In consequence, the activity of the protoplasm is unable to overcome the inertia of the yolk, and segmentation is meroblastic and discoidal (cf. Elasmobranchs).

In the protoplasm of the egg horizontal and vertical furrows appear in rapid succession. The result, as exhibited by vertical sections, is to produce an upper epithelial layer of cells, separated by a small space from larger, more irregular cells, which are still in connection with the yolk on which they lie. At the circular border of the germinal disc the two sets of cells are continuous. According to some authorities, this stage represents the blastula, the upper layer of cells corresponding to the cells of the animal pole in the frog, the lower with the enormous mass of yolk on which they lie to the cells of the vegetative pole, the space to the segmentation cavity.

At the next stage there appears at the future posterior end a crescent-shaped groove. In this region there is an ingrowth of cells, which probably represents a modified process of gastrulation, and results in the obliteration of the segmentation cavity, and the formation of a "sub-germinal" cavity or archenteron. The floor of the sub-germinal cavity is formed by the yolk, in which, by a process of supplementary cleavage, yolk-nuclei appear.

This condition is that attained when the egg is laid. On surface view

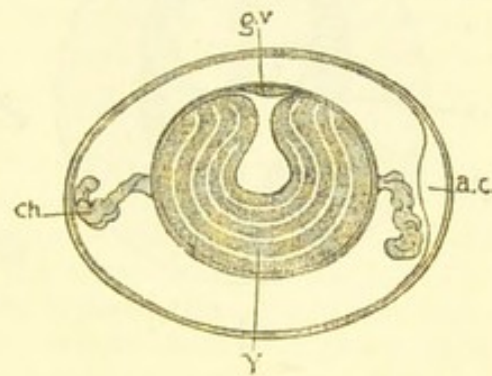


FIG. 274.—Diagrammatic section of egg.—After Allen Thomson.

*g.v.*, Position of germinal vesicle; *a.c.*, air-chamber; *Y.*, yolk (alternate layers of "yellow" and "white"); *ch.*, chalaza.



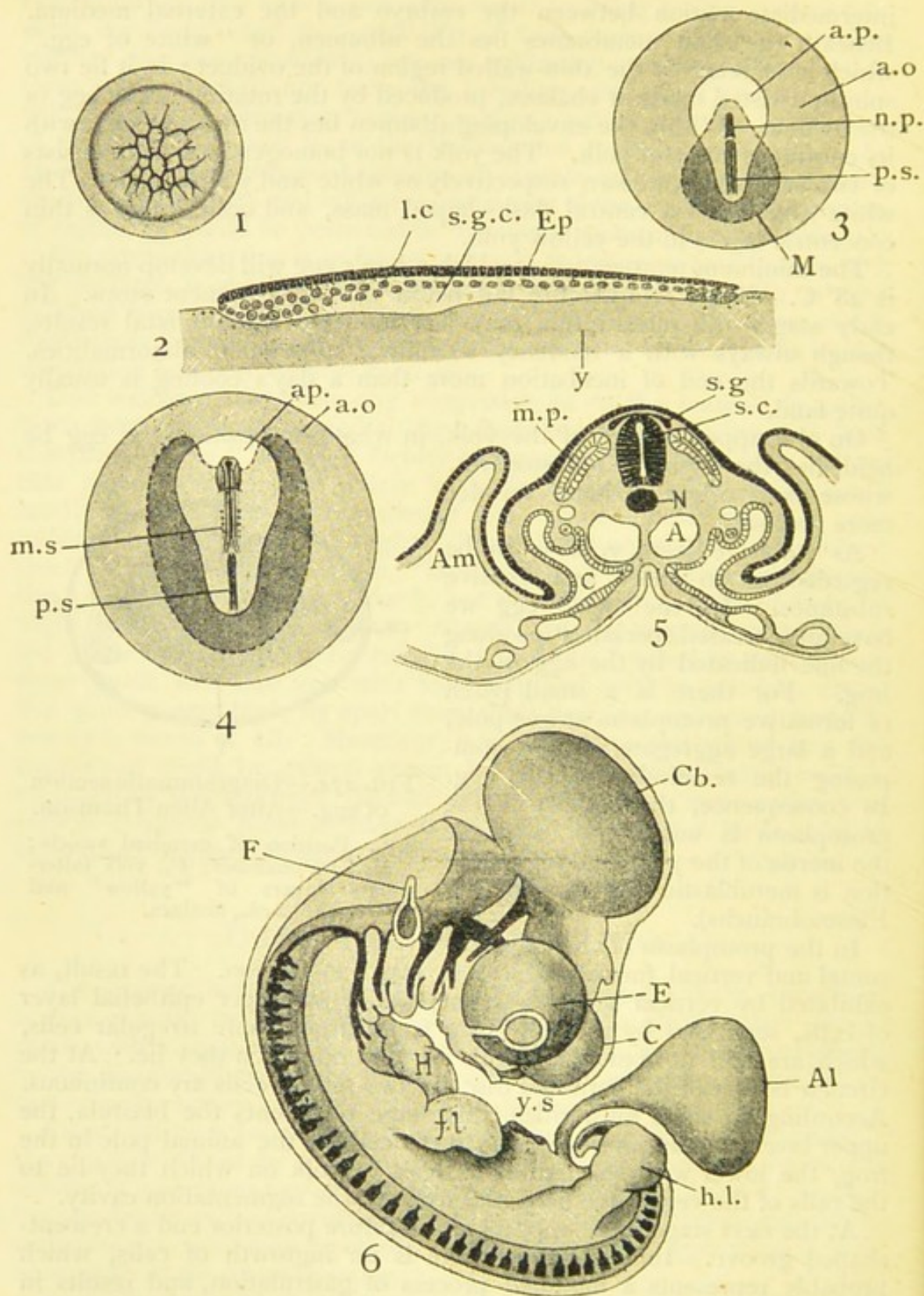


FIG. 275.—Stages in development of chick.—After Marshall.

1. Segmentation, superficial view of blastoderm.

2. Vertical section of blastoderm. *Ep.*, Epiblast; *l.c.* lower layer of cells; *s.g.c.*, sub-germinal cavity; *y.*, yolk.



we see a central ill-defined "pellucid area." This, which becomes much more distinct during the early hours of incubation, is the area of the blastoderm which overlies the sub-germinal cavity, and is contrasted with the surrounding "opaque area," which lies directly on the yolk. At the posterior region of the opaque area, as already noted, there is the crescentic groove, where the outer and inner layers are continuous.

After the commencement of incubation, the blastoderm spreads rapidly over the yolk, chiefly by the extension of the area opaca; the area pellucida meanwhile elongates and becomes oval.

Another important change which also occurs in the early hours of incubation is the conversion of the transverse crescentic groove into the longitudinal primitive streak. The precise meaning of this change is difficult and uncertain, but there seems no doubt that the primitive streak represents the anterior lip of the blastopore of the frog. It runs down the centre of the area pellucida, and is marked by a central furrow, the primitive groove. At its sides two wings of cells are obvious; these soon spread out laterally and anteriorly, and constitute the mesoblast. The precise origin of the constituents of this middle layer is uncertain, but it is important to notice that all three layers of the embryo are connected at the sides of the primitive streak, as at the margin of the blastopore in the frog.

In the region in front of the primitive streak, a row of hypoblast cells becomes differentiated to form the notochord. At its sides the sheets of mesoblastic cells split into an inner or splanchnic layer, and an outer or somatic layer. A little later the mesoblast divides into the segmentally arranged mesoblastic somites, lying at the sides of the notochord, and the unsegmented lateral plate, whose outer and inner walls form the corresponding boundaries of the coelom.

At the time when the notochord has appeared internally, the external epiblast becomes differentiated to form the medullary groove, which gives rise in the usual way to the medullary canal. The folds at first diverge posteriorly on either side of the primitive streak, but as the union travels backwards, this is included in the medullary canal, and so disappears.

During the course of the second day the embryo seems to sink further into the yolk, while both anteriorly and posteriorly double folds, known respectively as the head and tail folds, rise up. In the course of their development the embryo becomes completely "folded off" from the yolk. At a slightly later stage, side folds also appear; all the

- 
3. Diagrammatic surface view. *a.p.*, Area pellucida; *a.o.*, area opaca; *n.p.*, neural groove; *p.s.*, primitive streak; *M.*, mesoblast spreading over yolk.
  4. Diagrammatic surface view at later stage. *a.p.*, Area pellucida; *a.o.*, area opaca; *m.s.*, mesoblast segments; *p.s.*, primitive streak. The dark border shows the spreading of the mesoblast over the yolk.
  5. Cross-section. *s.c.*, Spinal cord; *s.g.*, rudiment of spinal ganglia; *N.*, notochord; *m.p.*, mesoblastic plates; *A.*, aorta; *Am.*, amnion fold; *c.*, coelom or pleuro-peritoneal cavity.
  6. Embryo. *Cb.*, Cerebellum; *F.*, ear; *H.*, heart; *f.l.*, fore-limb; *h.l.*, hind-limb; *y.s.*, stalk of cut-off yolk-sac; *Al.*, allantois; *E.*, eye; *C.*, cerebrum. On the dorsal surface the mesoblastic somites are indicated.



folds now consist of a double layer of somatopleure, covered externally by epiblast. The folds meet above the back of the embryo and coalesce. The inner layer forms the true amnion, the outer the false amnion or subzonal membrane. Into the space between the amniotic folds, a diverticulum from the posterior region of the gut, the allantois, grows out.

Before the end of the first day, blood vessels begin to be developed in the extra-embryonic region of the blastoderm. These form the beginning of the vitelline vessels, which are of great importance in the early stages of development, and have probably at first some respiratory importance. As development proceeds, the allantois increases greatly,

and, fusing with the subzonal membrane, approaches close to the egg-shell. It has a large blood supply, and functions as an organ of respiration; in addition it absorbs the white of egg, thus serving as an organ of nutrition; it also receives deposits of urates, thus functioning in connection with excretion.

We have spoken of the "folding off" of the embryo; it is important to realise that, as a result of this, the still small embryo is attached by a relatively narrow stalk to the large yolk-sac, over which the blastoderm is now slowly spreading. In this respect the embryo strongly resembles that of the dog-fish; it differs from the latter in the presence of the over-arching amniotic folds, and in the respiratory allantois, which functionally replaces the external gills of the young dog-fish. In the young tadpole the yolk lies heaped up on the floor of the gut, and causes a certain amount of distortion. In the chick, as in the embryo dog-fish, the amount of yolk is so great that it forms a hernia-



FIG. 276.—Diagrammatic section of embryo within egg.—After Kennel.

*D.*, Yolk-sac; *d.*, wall of yolk-sac; *da.*, gut of embryo; *al.*, *al'*, inner and outer wall of the allantois; *am.*, amnion proper (the reference line should extend further inwards); *a.*, within amniotic cavity; *s.*, subzonal membrane; *l.* is placed within the extra-embryonic body cavity into which the allantois grows.

like protrusion of the gut, and only at a very late stage is the greatly reduced sac withdrawn into the body cavity, after which the dermal and intestinal umbilical openings are closed.

With regard to the development of the various organs of the body, the conditions are much the same as for the frog. The chick embryo never exhibits any trace of gills, but the gill-clefts perforate the pharynx. The embryonic organ of respiration is the allantois, but that arrangement of aortic arches by means of which in the tadpole blood is carried to the gills, is repeated here.

About the twentieth day the beak perforates the membranes of the air-chamber, and, the air rushing in, expands the hitherto functionless lungs. At the same time important changes occur in the circulatory



system, "the umbilicus becomes completely closed, the allantois shrivels up, and the chick, piercing the broad end of the shell with repeated blows of its beak, steps out into the world."

## CLASSIFICATION OF BIRDS.

### I. Sub-Class ARCHÆORNITHES or SAURURÆ. Ancient extinct birds, connecting Birds and Reptiles.

The oldest known bird is *Archæopteryx*, two specimens of which have been found in the Solenhofen slates in the Upper Oolite (Jurassic) of Bavaria. "The stone is so fine grained, that, besides the bones of the wings, the furculum or merrythought, the pelvis, the legs, and the tail, we have actually casts or impressions on the stone (made when it was as yet only soft mud) of all the feathers of the wings, and of the tail."—(Nicholson and Lydekker.)

This link between Birds and Reptiles seems to have been a land bird about the size of a crow. The upper jaw shows thirteen pairs of conical teeth, the lower about three pairs. Each of the twenty vertebræ of the long tail bears a pair of lateral rectrices—a unique arrangement. There is no pygostyle. The vertebræ have flat ends; the ribs are very slender, without uncinatæ processes; there seem to have been "abdominal ribs"; the sternum is not known. There are separate metacarpals; the first finger has two phalanges, the second three, the third three or four, and all are clawed. There is a tarso-metatarsus and four toes, as in the pigeon.

### II. Sub-Class NEORNITHES.

The metacarpals are fused. The second finger is the longest, and the third is reduced. Only in *Opisthocomus* are the three digits of the fore-limb clawed; in most cases claws are confined to the thumbs. Caudal vertebræ are apparently not more than thirteen in number. There is usually a pygostyle.

#### I. Division RATITÆ. Running Birds with raft-like unkeeled breast-bone.

The African Ostrich (*Struthio*) is represented by two or three species, at home in the plains and deserts of Africa, and notable for their size, swiftness of foot, and beauty. There are but two toes, the third and the fourth, with stunted nails. There are no clavicles. The pubes form a ventral symphysis. The enormous size of rectum and cæca is a unique character. The ostrich is polygamous, and at the breeding season the hens lay the eggs, at intervals, in a hollow dug out in the sand by the male. The eggs are incubated by the parents alternately, the male sitting during the night, but in the hottest regions they are sometimes left during part of the day simply covered by the sand.

The American Ostrich (*Rhea*) is represented by three species in the S. American Pampas. In the *Rhea* there are three toes, all clawed, and the ischia form a ventral symphysis. There are no clavicles. Only here among Ratitæ is there a well-developed syrinx. The cæca are large. The male excavates a shallow nest in the ground, and there, surrounded by a few leaves and grasses, the numerous eggs are



usually laid. It seems that the male bird alone hatches the eggs. Single eggs are often laid here and there on the plains, but these are not incubated.

The Emu (*Dromæus*) is represented by two species in Australian deserts and plains. The fore-limb is greatly reduced, the feathers have long aftershafts. Nearly related are the Cassowaries (*Casuarius*) living in the Austral-Malayan region, eight species in the Papuan Islands, one in N.-E. Australia, and one in Ceram. They live in the forests and scrub. The fore-limb is very small, with the shafts of the wing feathers reduced to spines; the ordinary feathers have long aftershafts. On the top of the skull there is a horny helmet, covering a core of light spongy bone; this protects the bent head as the bird rushes through the scrub. There are three toes, the inner one with a long sharp claw—a formidable weapon. In both these genera the clavicles are rudimentary and the cæca small.

The Kiwi (*Apteryx*) forms a very distinct genus of Ratitæ, represented by four species, restricted to New Zealand. It is not larger than a hen, and has simple hair-like or bristle-like feathers, a long bill and terminal nostrils, a very rudimentary wing and no clavicles, and no distinct tail feathers. There are four clawed toes. The cæca are large. It is a nocturnal bird, swift and noiseless in its movements, feeding in great part on earthworms. The egg is very large for the size of the bird.

Among the extinct forms are the gigantic Moas (*Dinornis*), which seem to have been exterminated in New Zealand in comparatively recent times. The fore-limbs were almost completely reduced, the hind-legs were very large, and some forms attained a height of 10 ft. or even more.

Another recently lost order of giant birds is represented by remains of *Æpyornis* found in Madagascar. Some of these indicate birds as large as ostriches, but eggs have been found holding six times as much as that of an ostrich.

We may think of the Ratitæ, according to W. K. Parker, as "overgrown, degenerate birds that were once on the right road for becoming flying fowl, but through greediness and idleness never reached the 'goal,'—went back, indeed, and lost their sternal keel, and almost lost their unexercised wings."

2. Division ODONTOLCÆ. Represented by *Hesperornis* from N. American Cretaceous strata, somewhat like a swimming ostrich, with sharp teeth sunk in a groove, with saddle-shaped cervical vertebræ as in modern birds, with a rudimentary fore-limb, but with a powerful swimming leg. In an English representative—*Enaliornis*—the vertebræ are chiefly biconcave.

3. Division CARINATÆ. Flying Birds with a keeled breast-bone.

Apart from the extinct types of Carinatae, such as *Ichthyornis* (with teeth and biconcave vertebræ), there seem to be over 11,000 living species. These may be grouped in twenty-one orders, such as Passeres (thrushes, etc.), Accipitres (hawks, etc.), Columbæ (doves), Gallinæ (pheasants, etc.), Gaviæ (gulls, etc.), Psittaci (parrots). Of the twenty-one orders only three are unrepresented in Britain.



The old classification of birds into snatchers, perchers, climbers, scratchers, stilt-walkers, and swimmers was interesting and suggestive, but an arrangement of this sort is bound to be misleading, since birds of very different structure may have very similar habits.

It may be of interest to contrast the two divisions of living birds, but the distinctions are not all equally well grounded, and to most of them there are exceptions.

#### SOME CONTRASTS BETWEEN MODERN RATITÆ AND MODERN CARINATÆ.

RATITÆ.	CARINATÆ.
<p>Running Birds, with wings more or less degenerate and unused in flight, with a keelless raft-like breast-bone.</p> <p>The skull is dromæognathous, <i>i.e.</i> the vomer is interposed between the palatines, the pterygoids, and the basisphenoidal rostrum.</p> <p>The sutures in the skull remain for a long time distinct. The quadrate articulates with the skull by a single head.</p> <p>The long axes of the adjacent portions of the scapula and coracoid lie almost in the same line, or form a very obtuse angle, and the two bones are fused.</p> <p>The clavicles are small or absent.</p> <p>The ilium and ischium are not united behind, except in old <i>Rheas</i> and <i>Emus</i>. Pygostyle undeveloped.</p> <p>The feathers of the adult have free barbs. There is no oil gland, except in the kiwi. There are no pterylæ.</p> <p>The male has a penis.</p> <p>The young are always præcoces.</p>	<p>Flying Birds, with wings almost always well exercised in flight, with a keeled breast-bone.</p> <p>(The keel is rudimentary in the New Zealand parrot <i>Stringops</i>, in the exterminated Dodo (<i>Didus</i>), and in the extinct <i>Aptornis</i>—one of the rails. The penguins do not fly at all; the Tinamou, the Hoatzin, and some other birds, fly very little.)</p> <p>Except in the Tinamous, the skull is never dromæognathous, <i>i.e.</i> the vomer is not fused with the neighbouring bones of the palate, and the palatines articulate with the basi-sphenoidal rostrum.</p> <p>The sutures in the skull almost always disappear very early. The quadrate articulates by a double head.</p> <p>The scapula and coracoid meet almost at right angles, and are separate from one another.</p> <p>The clavicles are in most cases very well developed.</p> <p>The ilium and ischium unite, enclosing a sciatic foramen. Usually a pygostyle.</p> <p>The barbs of the feathers are generally united. There is an oil gland.</p> <p>The male has rarely a penis.</p> <p>The young may be præcoces or altrices.</p>



**Pedigree.**—Birds have many structural affinities with Reptiles; some of the ancient Dinosaurs present approximations to Birds; the extinct flying Pterodactyls show that it was possible for flight to be developed among Reptiles; the oldest bird — *Archæopteryx* — is in many ways a connecting link between the two classes; and the development of some Birds reveals many remarkable resemblances with that of Reptiles,—therefore, with the strength of the general argument for evolution to corroborate us, we conclude that birds evolved from a Reptile stock.

Speaking of his work on the development of the fowl, W. K. Parker wrote in 1868: "Whilst at work I seemed to myself to have been endeavouring to decipher a *palimpsest*, and one not erased and written upon again just once, but five or six times over. Having erased, as it were, the characters of the culminating type—those of the gaudy Indian bird—I seemed to be amongst the sombre Grouse; and then, towards *incubation*, the characters of the Sandgrouse and Hemipod stood out before me. Rubbing these away, in my downward work the form of the Tinamou looked me in the face; then the aberrant Ostrich seemed to be described in large archaic characters; a little while, and these faded into what could just be read off as pertaining to the Sea Turtle; whilst underlying the whole, the Fish, in its simplest Myxinoid form, could be traced in morphological hieroglyphics."

More than twenty years later, the same accomplished embryologist described the development of the "Reptilian Bird"—*Opisthocomus cristatus*. In this form the unhatched chick has a paw-like hand, three clawed fingers and a rudiment of a fourth, a wrist of numerous carpal elements, and many other features suggestive of reptilian descent. It is not surprising, then, that to Parker a bird seemed as "a transformed and, one might even say, a glorified Reptile."

It is likely, then, that Birds arose from an ancient Saurian stock, but by what steps and under what impulses we do not know. To some it seems enough to say that the evolution was accomplished gradually in the course of natural selection by the fostering of fit variations and the elimination of the disadvantageous; to others it seems that



the incipient birds were "*fevered* representatives of reptiles, progressing in the direction of greater and greater constitutional activity;" but both these suggestions leave much in the dark, leave us still to "wonder how the slow, cold-blooded, scaly beast ever became transformed into the quick, hot-blooded, feathered bird, the joy of creation."



## CHAPTER XXVI.

### MAMMALIA.

#### 1. PROTOTHERIA ; 2. METATHERIA ; 3. EUTHERIA.

BIRDS and Mammals have evolved along very different lines, Birds possessing the air and Mammals the earth, and it is difficult to say that either class is the higher. But apart from the fact, which prejudices us, that man himself is zoologically included among Mammals, this class is superior to Birds in two ways—in brain development, and in the relation between mother and offspring. In most Mammals there is a prolonged organic connection between the mother and the unborn young, which may have been, as Robert Chambers suggested, one of the conditions of progress. It is also characteristic of Mammals that the young are nourished after birth by their mother's milk, and it has been suggested that the usually prolonged infancy was one of the factors in the evolution of the humaner feelings. It is certain at least that the carefulness and sacrifice of the mothers has been one factor in the survival and success of Mammals, and we may find in the term *Mammalia*, which Linnæus first applied to the class, a hint of the idea that in the evolution of this class at least, the mothers led the way.

#### GENERAL SURVEY OF MAMMALS.

There are three grades of Mammalian evolution :—

*A.* The duckmole (*Ornithorhynchus*) and the spiny ant-eaters (*Echidna* and *Proechidna*) differ very markedly from all other Mammals. The young are hatched outside



of the body; in other words, the mothers are oviparous. The brain is poorly developed when compared with that of other Mammals. Some of the characteristics of the skeleton, etc., suggest Reptilian affinities. To this small sub-class the titles Prototheria and Ornithodelphia are applied.

*B.* The kangaroos and bandicoots, phalangers and opossums, and the like, form the second sub-class. In these the young are born prematurely after a short gestation, during which the organic connection between the mother and the young is comparatively slight. Most female Marsupials have an external pouch or marsupium, to which the tender young are transferred, and within which they are nourished and protected for some time. Moreover, the brains even of the most intelligent Marsupials are not so well developed as those of higher Mammals. To this heterogeneous sub-class the titles Metatheria, Didelphia, and Marsupialia are applied.

*C.* In all the other Mammals there is a well-developed allantoic placenta uniting the unborn young to the mother, while in Marsupials this is only known in *Perameles*, where it is of relatively little importance. It is among these placental Mammals that the brain begins to be much convoluted,—as it were, wrinkled with thought. To this sub-class the titles Eutheria, Placentalia, and Monodelphia are applied.

Among the orders of placental Mammals it seems likely that the Edentata and Sirenia should be placed lowest, for many of their characteristics are old-fashioned. The rest may be provisionally grouped in three sets, perhaps representing three main lines of evolution.

On one side we place the great series of hoofed animals or Ungulata, including—(*a*) those with an even number of toes (Artiodactyla), such as pigs, hippopotamus, camels, cattle, and deer; (*b*) those with an odd number of toes (Perissodactyla), such as tapir, rhinoceros, and horse; (*c*) the elephants (Proboscidea); (*d*) the Hyraxes (Hyracoidea). And near the Ungulata it seems legitimate to rank (*a*) the whales and dolphins (Cetacea), and (*b*) the rabbits and hares, rats and mice, etc. (Rodentia).

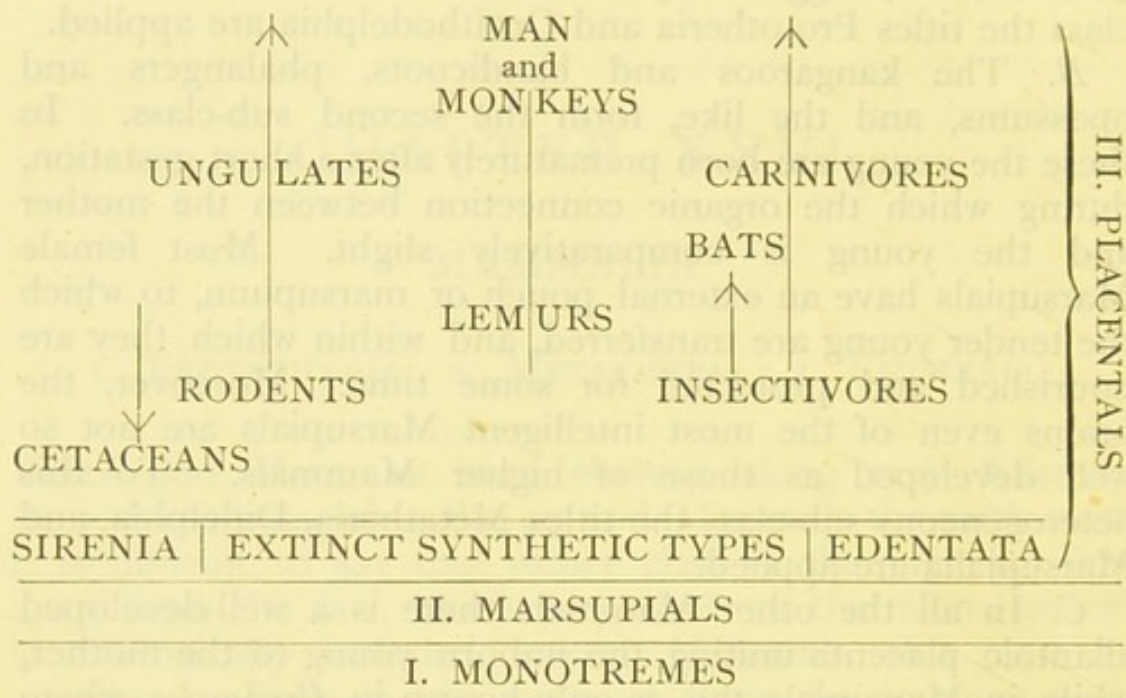
On the other side we place the great series of Carnivora, such as cats, dogs, bears, and seals. Beside these may be ranked the Insectivora, such as hedgehog, mole, and shrew, and the bats or Chiroptera, which seem to be specialised Insectivores.

In the middle we place the series which, beginning with the Lemurs, leads through various grades of monkeys to a climax in man.



But it must be carefully noted that these orders are often linked by extinct types. Thus, to take one instance only, it is believed by some that the extinct *Phenacodus* has affinities with Ungulates, Carnivores, and Lemurs.

We may summarise our general classification thus:—



### GENERAL CHARACTERS OF MAMMALS.

*All Mammals are quadrupeds, except the Cetaceans and Sirenians, in which the hind-limbs have disappeared, leaving at most internal vestiges. There is generally a distinct neck between the head and the trunk, and the vertebral column is, in most cases, prolonged into a tail.*

*Hairs are never entirely absent. In most they form a thick covering, but they are scanty in Sirenians and in the hippopotamus, and almost absent in Cetaceans, in which they are sometimes restricted to early stages in life. The skin has abundant sebaceous and sudorific glands. In the female, milk-giving or mammary glands develop as specialisations of sebaceous glands, except in Monotremes, where they are nearer the sudorific type.*

*A complete muscular partition or diaphragm separates the chest cavity, containing the heart and lungs, from the abdominal cavity, and is of great importance in respiration.*

*The vertebræ and long bones have terminal ossifications or epiphyses, absent or very rudimentary, however, in the vertebræ*



of *Monotremes* and *Sirenia*. The centra of the vertebræ have generally flat or slightly rounded faces, and there are usually seven cervical vertebræ.<sup>1</sup>

The bones of the skull are firmly united by sutures, which generally persist. Only the lower jaw, the ear ossicles, and the hyoid are movable. There are two occipital condyles, as in *Amphibians*. It may be noted, however, that for various reasons, e.g. that some *Birds* and *Reptiles* are not very clearly single-condyled, morphologists no longer attach so much importance to this character as they once did. The lower jaw on each side consists, in adult life, of a single bone which works on the squamosal; the quadrate which intervenes in *Sauropsida* has disappeared, or has been shunted to become one of the ear ossicles. For it is a plausible theory of the three ossicles—malleus, incus, and stapes—which connect the drum with the inner ear, that they correspond respectively to the articular, quadrate, and columella or hyo-mandibular of other *Vertebrates*.<sup>2</sup> The otic bones fuse with each other to form a compact periotic. A bony palate, formed from premaxillæ, maxillæ, and palatines, separates the buccal cavity from the nasal passages. In most cases there are teeth, borne in sockets by the premaxillæ, maxillæ, and mandible.

Except in *Monotremes*, the coracoid is represented by a small process from the scapula, and sometimes by a small ossification, forming part of the glenoid cavity in which the head of the humerus works. The sternum includes—(a) a præsternum, to which in *Monotremes* an “interclavicle” is fixed, and with which the clavicles (if well developed) articulate; (b) a mesosternum divided into segments, with which the sternal parts of the ribs articulate; and (c) a xiphisternum, often cartilaginous. There are generally two sacral vertebræ, but several caudals, and more rarely a lumbar, may be fused to these. The ilio-sacral articulation

<sup>1</sup> In the *Manatee* there are, however, only six; the pangolin *Manis* has sometimes eight; and it is often said that the two-toed sloth (*Choloepus hoffmanni*) has only six, and the three-toed sloth (*Bradypus tridactylus*) nine; but in the case of the sloths there is apparently considerable variation. It will be noticed that these deviations from type occur only in the case of the two most old-fashioned orders of *Eutherian Mammals*.

<sup>2</sup> There are many other theories as to the quadrate, that it forms malleus, or tympanic ring, or zygomatic process of squamosal, etc. etc.



is in front of the acetabulum. The ventral symphysis is usually restricted to the pubes, but in some Insectivores and Bats these do not meet. Except in *Echidna*, the acetabulum is completely ossified, and there is often a special acetabular bone. The ankle joint is cruro-tarsal.

The cerebral hemispheres have usually a convoluted surface, and always cover the optic thalami and the optic lobes (now four-fold corpora quadrigemina), and in higher forms the cerebellum as well. The commissural system is well developed, being especially represented by a large corpus callosum, except in Monotremes and Marsupials, in which the anterior commissure is large and the corpus callosum absent or very small. There is also an important set of longitudinal fibres called the fornix.

Except in Monotremes, in which there is a cloaca, the food canal ends separately from the urogenital aperture.

The heart is four-chambered, and the temperature of the blood is high, though lower than that of Birds. There is but one aortic trunk, which curves over the left bronchus. The red blood corpuscles are, when fully formed, non-nucleated, and are circular in outline, except in the Camelidæ, where they are elliptical. There is no renal-portal system.

The lungs are invested by pleural sacs, and lie freely in the chest cavity. Within the lungs the bronchial tubes fork repeatedly into finer and finer branches. At the top of the trachea there is a complex larynx with the vocal cords.

The kidneys are generally compact and rounded bodies; the ureters open into the bladder, except in Monotremes, in which they enter a urogenital sinus. Except in Monotremes, the outlet or urethra of the bladder unites in the male with the genital duct, to form a urogenital canal; in the female, except in Monotremes and a few other cases, the urethra and the genital duct open into a common vestibule.

In the more primitive Mammals the testes lie in the abdomen; in the majority they descend permanently (or in a few cases temporarily) into a single or paired scrotal sac, lying, except in Marsupials, behind the penis.

The ovaries are small. Except in Monotremes, the genital ducts of the female are differentiated into—(a) Fallopian tubes, which catch the ova as they burst from the ovaries; (b) a uterine portion in which the young develop; and (c) a vaginal



portion ending in the urogenital aperture. In Monotremes the two ducts are simple, and open separately into the cloaca; in Marsupials there are two uteri and two vaginæ; in Eutherian Mammals the uterine regions are more or less united, and the vaginal regions are always completely fused.

In Monotremes the eggs are large and rich in yolk; in all others they are small and almost yolkless. In the ovary each ovum lies embedded in a nest of cells, within a swelling or Graafian follicle, which eventually bursts and liberates the egg cell. In Monotremes the segmentation, as might be expected, is meroblastic; in other cases it is holoblastic. As in Sauropsida, there are two fœtal membranes—the amnion and the allantois, both of which share in forming the placenta of the Placental Mammals. In Marsupials the allantois is usually small and degenerate.

The Monotremes are oviparous; the Marsupials bring forth their young prematurely after a short gestation, but a true allantoic placenta may be represented, as in *Perameles*; the Eutherian Mammals have a longer gestation, during which the young are vitally connected to the wall of the uterus by means of the placenta, which is always well developed, and of great importance in the nutrition of the embryo.

In all Mammals the young are for a longer or shorter period dependent upon the milk secreted by the mammary glands of the mother; in Marsupials this dependence is especially marked.

#### THE RABBIT AS A TYPE OF MAMMALS.

The rabbit (*Lepus cuniculus*) is a familiar representative of the Rodent order, to which rats and mice, voles and beavers, lemmings and marmots, also belong. Like the hare (*Lepus timidus*) and other species of the same genus, and like the Picas or tailless hares (*Lagomys*), the rabbit has two pairs of incisors in the upper jaw, while other Rodents have a single pair. Therefore the genera *Lepus* and *Lagomys* are sometimes ranked as Duplicidentata, in contrast to all other Rodents (Simplicidentata).

With the rabbit's mode of life all are familiar. It is herbivorous, and often leaves softer food for the succulent bark of young trees; it is gregarious and a burrower; it is very



prolific, often breeding four to eight times in a year. It is said to live, in normal conditions, seven or eight years. The rabbit seems to have had its original home in the western Mediterranean region, but it has spread widely throughout Europe, and is now abundant in countries, such as Scotland and Ireland, in which, a few generations ago, it was rare. Introduced into Australia and New Zealand, it has multiplied exceedingly, and has become a scourge. There are many varieties of rabbit, some in isolated regions perhaps illustrating the effect of segregation in fostering divergent types. According to Darwin, the rabbits introduced early in the fifteenth century into Porto Santo, an island near Madeira, are now represented by a dwarf race of about half the normal size, and these are said to be incapable of breeding with the ordinary forms. But the varieties with which we are familiar in the breeds of tame rabbits, illustrate variation under domestication and the efficacy of artificial selection.

**External appearance.**—The head bears long external ears, which are freely movable. The black patch at the tip of the ears in the hare is either absent or very small in the wild rabbit. This external ear is characteristic of most Mammals, and collects the sound like an ear-trumpet. In the rabbit it is longitudinally folded, thin and soft towards its tip, firm and cartilaginous at its base. The eyes have two eyelids with few eyelashes, and a third eyelid or nictitating membrane—a white fold of skin—in the anterior upper corner. This third eyelid, which also occurs in Reptiles and Birds, is present in most Mammals, and is of use in cleaning the cornea. It is absent in Cetaceans, where the front of the eye is bathed by the water, and it is rudimentary in man and monkeys, where its absence is compensated for by the habitual winking of the upper eyelid. The nostrils are two slits at the end of the snout, and are connected with the mouth by a “hare-lip” cleft in the middle of the upper lip. In front of the mouth are seen the chisel-edged incisors, a pair on the mandibles, and two pairs on the pre-maxillæ—the smaller pair hidden behind the larger pair. The first milk incisors above and below never cut the gum, but are absorbed before birth; the second milk incisors above (there are none below) are functional, but are shed about the third week of extra-uterine life; the same is true



of the milk premolars. Into the toothless gap or diastema between the front and back teeth, the hairy skin of the lips projects into the mouth. This generally occurs in Rodents, and is said to prevent the inedible substances which they gnaw from passing backwards to the gullet. On the sides of the snout, and about the eyes, there are tactile hairs or vibrissæ.

The plump trunk is separated from the head by a short neck. The tail is very short, but in the scampering wild rabbit it is conspicuous as a white tuft, which some naturalists interpret as a directive signal. Beneath the base of the tail the food canal ends, and beside the anus are the openings of the perineal glands, whose secretion has a characteristic odour. In front of the anus is the urogenital aperture,—in the male at the end of an ensheathed penis, in the female a slit or vulva, with an anterior process or clitoris—the homologue of the penis. Beside the penis in the male lie the scrotal sacs, into which the testes descend when the rabbit becomes sexually mature. Along the ventral surface of the thorax and abdomen in the female there are four or five pairs of small teats or mammæ.

The limbs have clawed digits, five on the fore-feet, four on the hind-feet; they are very hairy.

**Skin and muscles.**—The skin is thickly covered with hair, and has the usual sebaceous and sudorific glands, besides special glands, such as the perineal glands beside the anus, the glands of the eyelids, the lachrymal glands, and the mammary glands developed in the females. Between the skin and the subjacent muscles there is a layer of fatty tissue, known as the panniculus adiposus; it is present in all Mammals except the common hare, and forms the blubber of whales and seals. Beneath the skin is a thin sheet of muscle (the panniculus carnosus), by means of which the skin can be twitched, as in horses, etc., and when this is removed with the skin, many of the muscles of head and neck, limbs and trunk, are disclosed (see Parker's "Zootomy").

**Skeleton.**—The bones, like those of other Vertebrates, are developed either as replacements of pre-existent cartilages, or independent of any such preformations, but in all cases through the agency of active periosteal membranes.



By themselves, however, must be ranked little sesamoid bones, which are developed within tendons and near joints, notably, for instance, the patella or knee-pan. There is no bony exoskeleton in any mammals except the armadillos, unless we rank the teeth, which develop in connection with the skin of the jaws, as in a sense exoskeletal.

The vertebræ may be grouped in five sets:—cervical (seven in number), thoracic (with well-developed ribs), lumbar (without ribs), sacral (fused to support the pelvis), and caudal. The faces of the centra are more or less flat, and between adjacent vertebræ there are intervertebral discs of fibro-cartilage. A vestige of the notochord is found in Mammals in the gelatinous nucleus pulposus in the centre of the intervertebral discs.

The first vertebra or atlas is ring-like, its neural canal being very large, its centrum unrepresented except by the odontoid process, which fuses to the second vertebra. The ring is divided transversely by a ligament, through the upper part the spinal cord passes, into the lower the odontoid process projects. The transverse processes are very broad; the articular surfaces for the two condyles of the skull are large and deep.

The second vertebra or axis has a broad flat centrum produced in front in the odontoid process. The neural spine forms a prominent crest, the transverse processes are small, the anterior articular surfaces are large.

A typical lumbar vertebra will show the centrum and its epiphyses, the neural arch and neural spine, the transverse processes, the anterior and posterior articular processes or zygapophyses, the median ventral hypapophysis, the small anapophyses from the neural arch below the posterior zygapophyses, below the anapophyses the posterior intervertebral notches—passages through which the spinal nerves pass out, and anteriorly a similar pair of notches. There are twelve or thirteen pairs of ribs which support the wall of the thorax, and aid in the mechanism of respiration. The first seven pairs articulate with the breast-bone, the eighth and ninth are connected to the ribs in front, the others are free. Any one of the first seven or more typical ribs consists of two parts, a vertebral portion articulating with a vertebra, an imperfectly ossified sternal portion connecting the end of



the vertebral portion with the sternum. Each of the first nine ribs has a double head—the capitulum articulating with the centrum of the corresponding vertebra, and partly with that of the one in front, the tubercle articulating with the transverse process of the corresponding vertebra. The posterior ribs have no tubercles, and the capitular articulations are restricted to the corresponding vertebræ.

The sternum is a narrow jointed plate, with a large keeled præsternum or manubrium, then five segments composing

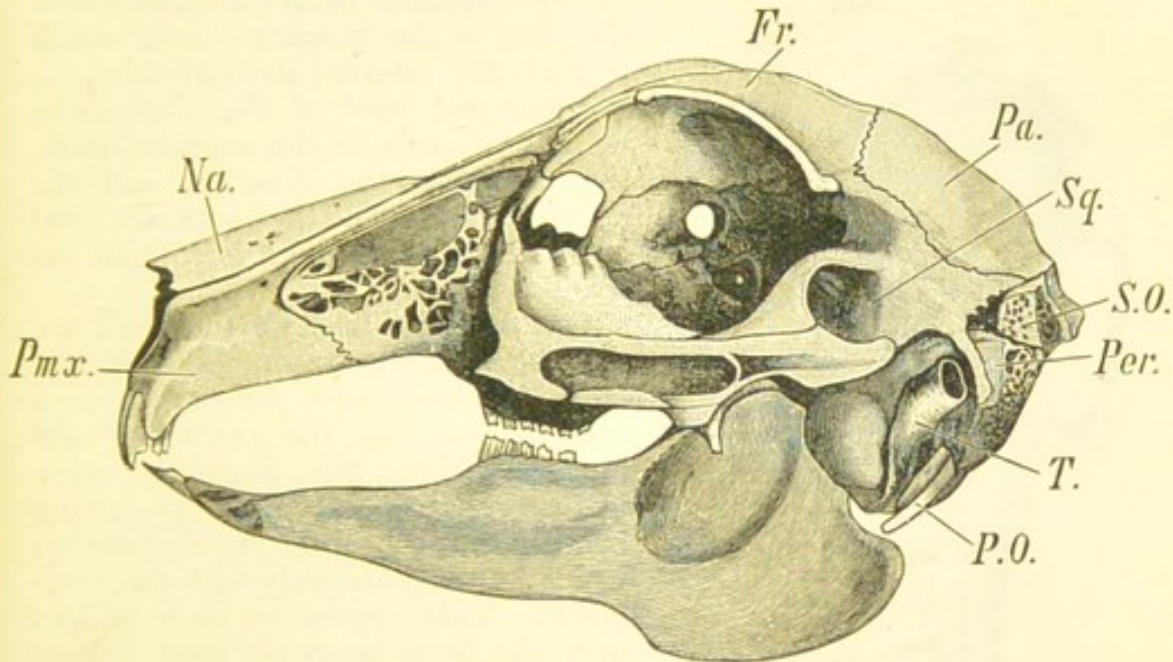


FIG. 277.—Side view of rabbit's skull.

*Pmx.*, Premaxilla; *Na*, nasal; *Fr.*, frontal; *Pa.*, parietal; *Sq.*, squamosal; *S.O.*, supraoccipital; *Per.*, periotic; *T.*, tympanic (the reference line points to the bony external auditory meatus, beneath it lies the inflated bulla); *P.O.*, paroccipital process.

the mesosternum, then a posterior xiphisternum ending in cartilage.

The *skull* consists, as in all the higher Vertebrates, of two sets of bones,—cartilage bones preformed in the cartilage of the original gristly brain-box and its associated arches, and membrane bones developing in the investing membrane and not preformed in cartilage. (The names of the membrane bones are printed in italics.)

We have already noticed the chief characteristics of the mammalian skull, such as the usual persistence of sutures, the two condyles, the bony palate, the fusion of the periotic bones, the articulation of the mandible with the squamosal,



the fusion of the parts of each ramus of the mandible into a single bone in the adult, and the three ossicles of the ear.

In studying the skull, it is convenient to consider the bones in groups.

On the posterior surface of the skull the foramen magnum, through which the spinal cord issues from the cranial cavity, is bounded by the basioccipital beneath, the exoccipital on the sides, the supraoccipital above. The exoccipitals form most of the occipital condyles, but the basioccipital contributes a small part. In many Mammals the exoccipitals alone form the condyles. From each exoccipital a paroccipital process descends, and is applied

to the tympanic bulla—a dilatation at the base of the *tympanic* bone which protects the external auditory tube.

Along the roof of the skull from behind forwards lie the supraoccipital, the *parietals*, the *frontals*, and the *nasals*. Between the supraoccipital and the *parietals* there is a small *interparietal*.

On the very front of the skull are the *premaxilla*, bearing the incisor teeth. Behind each *premaxilla* is a *maxilla*, bearing the premolars and molars; behind this, along the zygomatic or temporal arch projecting beneath the orbit, is the *jugal* or *malar*, which unites posteriorly with the *squamosal*. This zygomatic arch bridges over the deep temporal fossa behind the orbit, and serves for the insertion of muscles, and its "squamoso-maxillary" structure occurs outside of Mammalia in the Anomodont reptiles only. The fact that in Rodents the malar does not form part of the face is of considerable systematic importance.

The *squamosals* form a great part of the posterior side walls of the skull,

and articulate with the *parietals*, *frontals*, orbitosphenoids, and alisphenoids. At the posterior end of the zygomatic arch is the longitudinally elongated glenoid cavity in which the mandible moves backwards and forwards.

In connection with the floor of the skull and the roof of the mouth, there lie from behind forwards the following components:—The median basioccipital; the median basisphenoid, which lodges the pituitary body in a dorsal depression called the sella turcica; the paired alisphenoids fused to the sides of the basisphenoid; the median presphenoid, which forms the lower margin of the optic foramen between the two orbits; the paired orbitosphenoids, fused to the presphenoid, sutured to the alisphenoids and squamosals, and surrounding the optic foramen; the

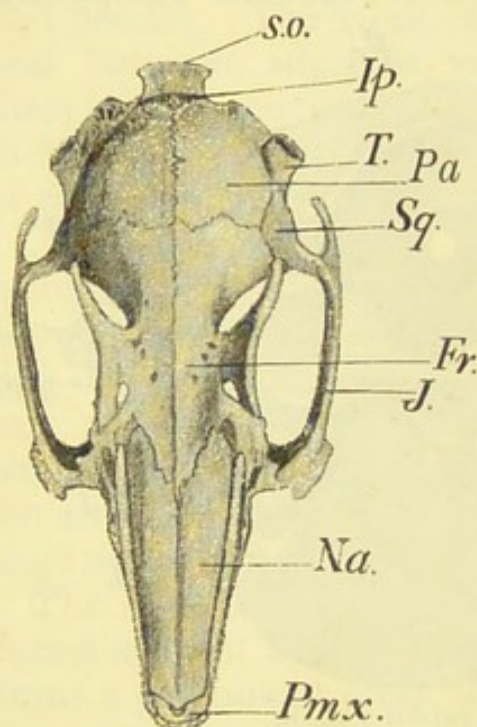


FIG. 278.—Dorsal view of rabbit's skull.

S.O., Top of supraoccipital; Ip., interparietal; T., tympanic; Pa., parietal; Sq., squamosal; Fr., frontal; J., jugal; Na., nasal; Pmx., premaxilla.



vertical *pterygoids* attached at the junction of basisphenoid and alisphenoids; the partly vertical *palatines*, united above to the presphenoid and behind to the *pterygoids* and alisphenoids, separating the posterior nasal passages from the orbits, and uniting to a slight extent in front to form the posterior part of the bony palate; the median vertical mesethmoid cartilage extending in front of the presphenoid, separating the two nasal cavities, posteriorly ossified and expanded into the sieve-like cribriform plates through the apertures of which the branches of the olfactory nerves pass to the nose; the paired *vomers* along the ventral edge of the mesethmoid; and lastly, the anterior bony palate (formed from inward extensions of *maxillæ* and *premaxillæ*), which in the rabbit is very incomplete.

Wedged in between the occipitals, the *squamosals*, and the bones of the basisphenoid region, there is on each side a periotic bone surrounding the internal ear. It ossifies from three centres in the cartilaginous auditory capsule, and consists of a dense petrous portion enclosing the essential part of the ear and a more external porous mastoid portion which is produced downwards into a mastoid process in front of the par-occipital process. From each periotic a *tympanic* bone extends outwards, swollen basally into a tympanic bulla in which the tympanum or drum of the ear is stretched, and continued around the external auditory meatus. From an aperture between the tympanic and the periotic the Eustachian tube passes to the pharynx. Stretching from the tympanum to the fenestra ovalis of the inner ear is the chain of minute ear ossicles, the three links of which—malleus, incus, and stapes—possibly correspond respectively to the articular, the quadrate, and hyo-mandibular or columella of most other Vertebrates.

The orbits are bounded anteriorly by the *lacrimal*s and the *maxillæ*, and above by the *frontals*. The interorbital septum is formed above and behind by the orbito-sphenoids, below by the presphenoid.

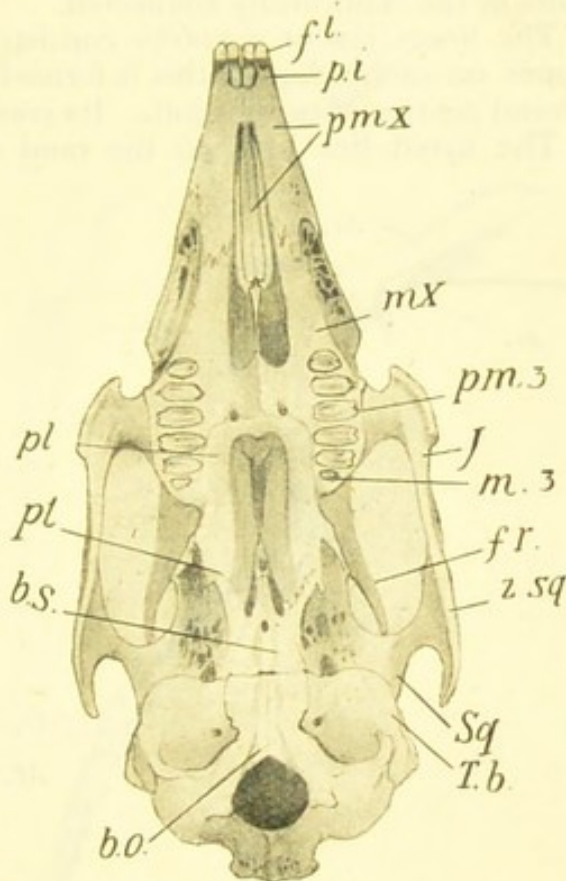


FIG. 279.—Under surface of rabbit's skull.

*f.i.*, Front incisors; *p.i.*, small posterior incisors; *pmx.*, premaxilla (the lower part of the reference line points to its palatal process); *mx.*, maxilla; *pm.3*, third pre-molar; *m.3*, third molar; *J.*, jugal; *fr.*, supra-orbital ridge of frontal (on dorsal surface); *z.sq.*, zygomatic process of squamosal; *Sq.*, squamosal; *T.b.*, tympanic bulla; *b.o.*, basioccipital; *b.s.*, basisphenoid; *pt.*, pterygoid; *pl.*, palatine.



Associated with the olfactory chambers are the *nasals* above, the *vomers* beneath, the mesethmoid in the median line, while internally there are several thin scroll-like turbinal bones. As special characters of the skull should be noted the incomplete ossification of certain of the bones, *e.g.* of the maxilla, and the development of slender rod-like processes from some of them, *e.g.* the squamosal, which help to keep the parts of the skull firmly connected.

The lower jaw or *mandible* consists in adult life of a single bone or ramus on each side, but this is formed around Meckel's cartilage from several centres of ossification. Its condyle works on the *squamosal*.

The hyoid lies between the rami of the mandible, in the back of the mouth, and consists of a median "body," and two pairs of horns or cornua extending backwards.

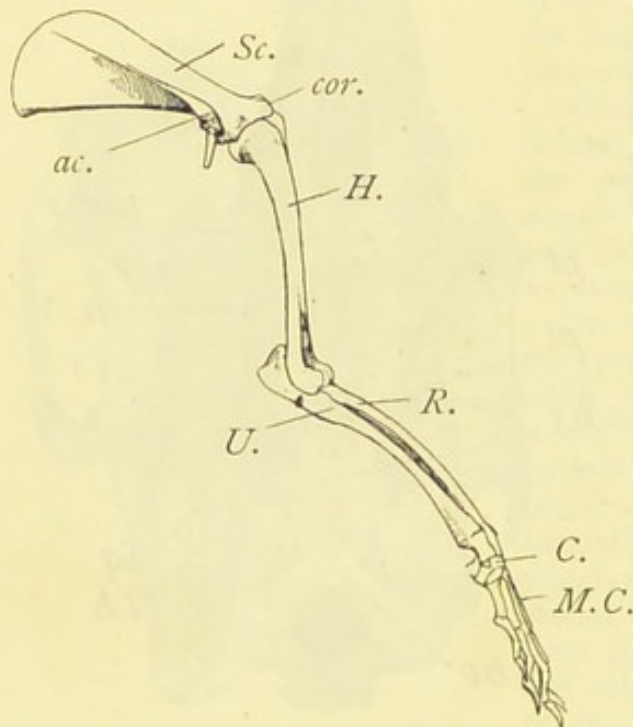


FIG. 280.—Rabbit's fore-leg.

Sc., Scapula; cor., coracoid process; ac., acromion; H., humerus; R., radius; U., ulna; C. carpal region; M.C., metacarpal region.

*The appendicular skeleton* consists of the bones of the limbs and the girdles.

The pectoral girdle, which supports the forelimbs, and is itself attached by muscles and ligaments to the vertebral column, virtually consists of one bone—the scapula—on each side. For in all Mammals, except Monotremes, the coracoid, though a distinct ossification, forms only a small (epicoracoid) process

overhanging the edge of the glenoid cavity in which the head of the humerus works. The last of a distinct metacoracoid is seen in Monotremes, though it may be sometimes represented by a small independent ossification on the ventral surface of the glenoid cavity. The clavicle is also much reduced in the rabbit, being only about an inch in length and very slender. It is a membrane bone, and lies in the ligament between the scapula and the sternum. The triangular scapula has a prominent external ridge or spine, continued ventrally into an acromion with a long meta-



cromion process. The scapula is usually strong, and the clavicle is as a rule present in mammals which grasp or climb or burrow.

The fore-limb consists of an upper arm or humerus, a forearm of two bones—the radius and the ulna, a wrist or

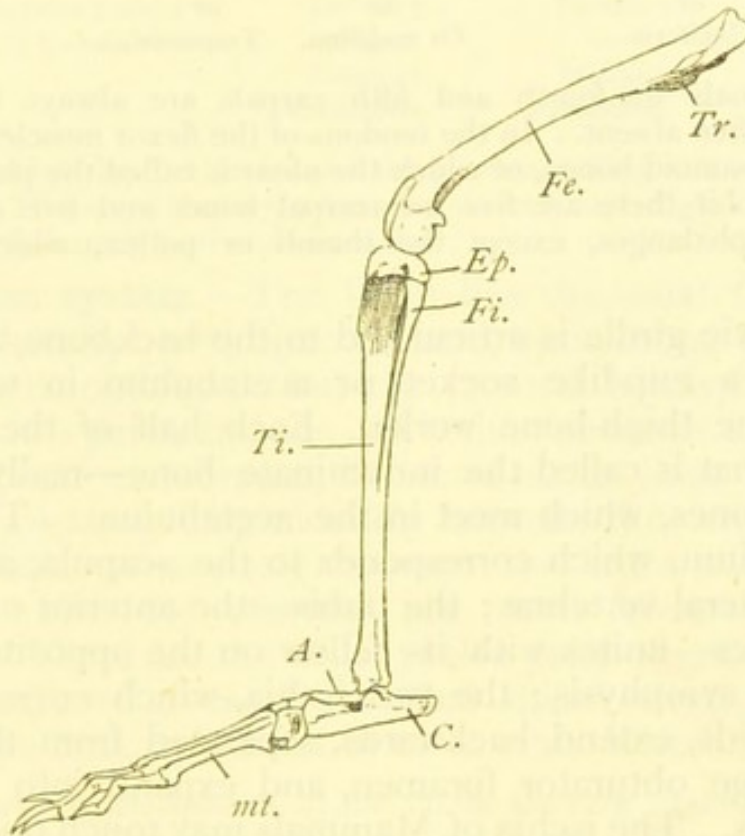


FIG. 281.—Rabbit's hind-leg.

*Fe.*, Femur; *Tr.*, third trochanter; *Ep.*, epiphysis at head of tibia (*Ti.*); *Fi.*, incomplete fibula; *C.*, calcaneum; *A.*, astragalus; *mt.*, metatarsals.

carpus, five palm-bones or metacarpals, and five digits with joints or phalanges.

The head of the humerus works in the glenoid cavity formed by the scapula.

When the arm of a mammal is directed outwards at right angles to the body, with the palm vertical and the thumb uppermost, the thumb and the radius are in a preaxial position, the little finger and the ulna are in a postaxial position. But in the normal position of the limb in most mammals, the radius and the ulna cross one another in the forearm, so that the preaxial radius is external at the upper end, internal at the lower end. The hand is borne by the expanded end of the radius.

The typical mammalian wrist or carpus consists of two rows of bones



with a central bone between the two rows. In the rabbit all the bones—nine in number—are present, viz. :—

FIRST ROW	Ulnare or Cuneiform.	Intermedium or Lunar. Centrale.	Radiale or Scaphoid.
SECOND ROW	Carpale 5 and 4 or Unciform.	Carpale 3 or Os magnum.	Carpale 2 or Trapezoid. Carpale 1 or Trapezium.

In Mammals the fourth and fifth carpals are always fused; the centrale is often absent. In the tendons of the flexor muscles there are often two sesamoid bones, of which the ulnar is called the pisiform.

In the rabbit there are five metacarpal bones and five digits, each with three phalanges, except the thumb or pollex, which has but two.

The pelvic girdle is articulated to the backbone, and bears externally a cup-like socket or acetabulum in which the head of the thigh-bone works. Each half of the girdle—forming what is called the innominate bone—really consists of three bones, which meet in the acetabulum. The dorsal bone or ilium, which corresponds to the scapula, articulates with the sacral vertebræ; the pubis—the anterior of the two lower bones—unites with its fellow on the opposite side in the pubic symphysis; the two ischia, which correspond to the coracoids, extend backwards, separated from the pubes by the large obturator foramen, and expand into posterior tuberosities. The ischia of Mammals may touch one another ventrally, but do not fuse in a symphysis; the pubic symphysis is almost invariably present. Only in Cetacea and Sirenia is the pelvis markedly rudimentary.

The hind-leg consists of a thigh or femur, a lower leg with two bones—the tibia and the fibula, an ankle or tarsus, the sole-bones or metatarsals, the toes with several joints or phalanges.

The head of the femur works in the acetabulum of the pelvis. Near the head are several processes or trochanters, serving for the insertion of muscles; in the rabbit there are three—the great trochanter, the lesser trochanter, and the third trochanter.

In front of the knee there is a sesamoid bone—the knee-pan or patella—and posteriorly there are smaller fabellæ.

In the lower leg, the tibia, which corresponds to the radius, is pre-axial, and in the normal position interior; the fibula, which corresponds to the ulna, is postaxial, and in the normal position exterior. There is no crossing of bones as in the forearm. In the rabbit the fibula is slender, and is fused distally with the tibia.



In the mammalian tarsus there are two rows of bones, and a central bone interposed between the two rows on the inner or tibial side.

FIRST ROW	} Calcaneum or Fibulare.	Astragalus (= Intermedium and Tibiale).			
		Centrale or Navicular.			
SECOND ROW	} Tarsalia 5 and 4 = Cuboid.	Tarsale 3	Tarsale 2	Tarsale 1	
		or External Cuneiform.	or Middle Cuneiform.	or Internal Cuneiform.	

In the rabbit the first tarsal and the corresponding toe or hallux are wanting. There are thus only four metatarsals and digits. Each digit has three phalanges, and ends in a claw.

**Nervous system.**—The brain has the usual five parts—cerebral hemispheres, optic thalami, optic lobes, cerebellum, and medulla oblongata, but the cerebral hemispheres cover the next two parts, and the cerebellum conceals the medulla. Of the brain membranes, the dura mater lines the cranial cavity, projecting longitudinally between the cerebral hemispheres, and transversely between the latter and the cerebellum, while the vascular pia mater invests the brain closely. There are the usual twelve pairs of cranial nerves. The spinal cord gives off the usual spinal nerves, and there is a sympathetic system as in most other Vertebrates.

The cerebral hemispheres of the rabbit are very slightly convoluted, and they leave the cerebellum quite uncovered. They are connected transversely by a broad bridge—the corpus callosum, and beneath this there is a longitudinal band of fibres—the fornix. The corpus callosum is readily disclosed by gently separating the hemispheres. The outer wall and floor of the anterior part of the cavity or ventricle of each hemisphere is formed by a thick mass, called the corpus striatum, and the internal cavity is lessened by a prominent convex ridge, called the hippocampus major. The ventricles of the cerebrum communicate with the third ventricle, between the optic thalami, by a small aperture, called the foramen of Monro. In front of the hemispheres two club-shaped olfactory lobes project. The thin cortical layer of the cerebrum consists of grey (ganglionic) matter, and so does the thick corpus striatum, while the central part consists of white matter (nerve fibres).

The thalamencephalon is entirely hidden, but gives origin as usual to the dorsal epiphysis, ending in a pineal body, which lies on the surface between the cerebrum and cerebellum, and to the ventral infundibulum, at the end of which the pituitary body lies, lodged in a fossa of the basisphenoid. Immediately in front of the infundibulum the optic nerves cross in a chiasma, from which optic tracts can be traced to the optic lobes. Immediately behind the infundibulum lies a rounded elevation, called the mammillary body. Anteriorly, on the ventral surface of each



side of the thalamencephalon, there is a rounded swelling, called the corpus geniculatum. The roof of the third ventricle is formed by a thin membrane or velum, with a plexus of blood vessels. In the anterior wall of the third ventricle lies the small anterior commissure; across the third ventricle the large middle commissure runs; in the roof of the hind part of the ventricle lies a small posterior commissure.

The optic lobes are fourfold—corpora quadrigemina. They are in

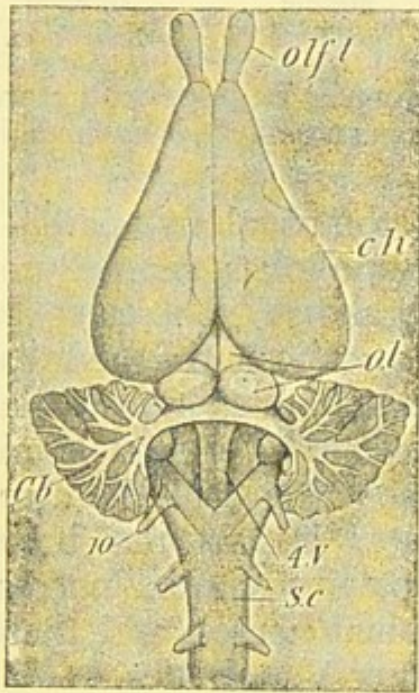


FIG. 282.—Dorsal view of rabbit's brain, with most of cerebellum cut away.—After Krause.

*olf.l.*, Olfactory lobes; *c.h.*, cerebral hemispheres; *o.l.*, optic lobes; *4v.*, fourth ventricle (exposed); *s.c.*, spinal cord; *10*, root of vagus; *Cb.*, lobe of cerebellum.

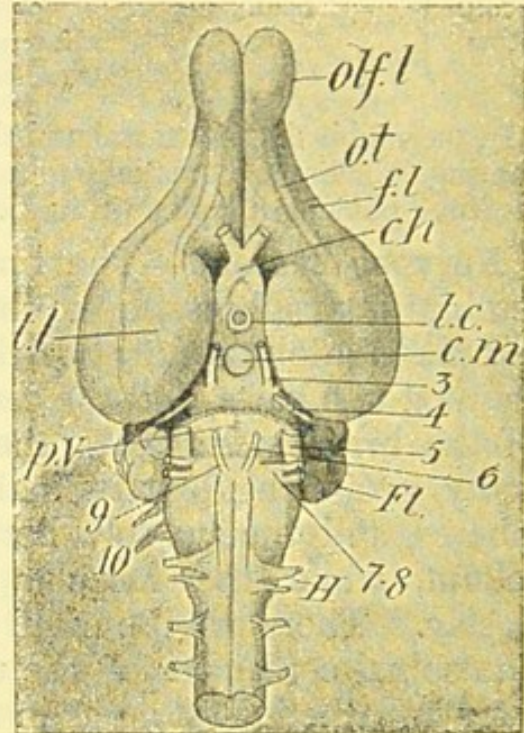


FIG. 283.—Under surface of rabbit's brain.—After Krause.

*olf.l.*, Olfactory lobes; *o.t.*, olfactory tract; *f.l.*, frontal lobe of cerebral hemisphere; *ch.*, optic chiasma; *l.c.*, infundibulum; *c.m.*, corpus mammillare; 3, root of oculomotor; 4, root of pathetic; 5, root of trigeminal; 6, root of abducens; 7-8, roots of facial and auditory; *FL.*, flocculus of cerebellum; *H.*, 12th or hypoglossal nerve; 10, roots of vagus; 9, the line runs in front of the root of the glosso-pharyngeal to the root of 6; *p.v.*, pons Varolii; *t.l.*, temporal lobe of cerebral hemisphere.

large part covered by the cerebrum. Between them runs the iter connecting the third ventricle and the fourth. The floor of this passage is formed by the thick crura cerebri which connect the medulla with the cerebrum.

The cerebellum is divided into a median and two lateral lobes, and is marked by numerous folds, mostly transverse. The two sides are connected ventrally by the pons Varolii, lying across the anterior ventral surface of the medulla.



The medulla oblongata lies beneath and behind the cerebellum, and is continued into the spinal cord. The cavity of the fourth ventricle is roofed by a thin membrane or velum, above which lies the cerebellum. On the ventral surface the medulla is marked by a deep fissure, bordered by two narrow bands or ventral pyramids.

The spinal cord presents its usual appearance, with its dorsal sensory nerve-roots with ganglia, its ventral motor nerve-roots apparently without ganglia, and the spinal nerves formed from the union of these. The ganglia of the adjacent sympathetic system perhaps belong to the ventral roots of the spinal nerves.

A large number of nerves pass down the neck. Of these the following are most important :—

1. The eleventh cranial nerve or spinal accessory, leaving the skull with the ninth and tenth, and distributed to the muscles of the neck.
2. The twelfth cranial nerve or hypoglossal, lying at first close to the ninth, tenth, and eleventh, turning, however, to the muscles of the tongue.
3. The tenth cranial nerve, the pneumogastric or vagus, lies outside the carotid artery, and gives off a superior laryngeal to the larynx with a depressor branch to the heart, an inferior or recurrent laryngeal, which loops round the subclavian artery and runs forward to the larynx, and other branches to the heart, lungs, and gullet.
4. The cervical part of the sympathetic, lying alongside of the trachea, with two ganglia.
5. The great auricular, a branch of the third spinal nerve, running to the outer ear.
6. The phrenic nerve, a branch of the fourth cervical nerve, with a branch from the fifth and sometimes from the sixth, runs along the backbone to the diaphragm.

For details as to these nerves, the student should consult the practical manuals of Marshall and Hurst and of Parker.

As to the sense organs little need be said, for their general structure is like that of other Vertebrates, while the detailed peculiarities are beyond our present scope.

The third eyelid is well developed. The lachrymal gland (absent in Cetacea) lies under the upper lid, and the lids are kept moist by the secretion of Harderian and Meibomian glands. The external ear or pinna is conspicuously large. The cochlea of the inner ear is large and spirally twisted. The nostrils are externally connected with the mouth by a characteristic cleft lip. The tongue bears numerous papillæ with taste bulbs. The long hairs or vibrissæ on the snout are tactile.

**Alimentary system.**—In connection with the cavity of the mouth we notice the characteristic dentition, the hairy pad of skin intruded in the gap between incisors and pre-molars, the long and narrow, in part bony, palate separating the nasal from the buccal cavity, the muscular tongue with its taste papillæ, the glottis which leads into the windpipe,



and the bilobed flap or epiglottis which guards the opening, the paired apertures of the Eustachian tubes opening into the posterior nasal passage, the end of this passage above the glottis, and the beginning of the pharynx. Less obvious are the organs of Jacobson, paired tubular bodies lying enclosed in cartilage in the front of the nasal chamber, and communicating on the one hand with the nostrils, and on the other hand with the mouth by two naso-palatine canals which open a little way behind the posterior incisors. Opening into the mouth and conducting the salivary juice, whose ferment alters the starchy parts of the food, are the ducts of four pairs of salivary glands. The parotid, which is largest,

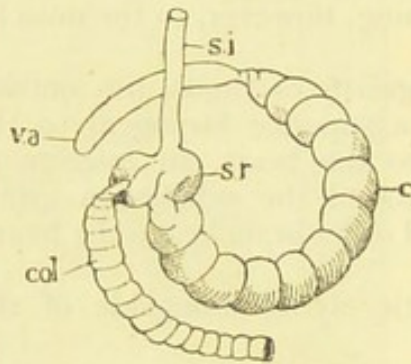


FIG. 284.—Diagram of caecum in rabbit.

*s.i.*, Small intestine; *s.r.*, sacculus rotundus; *col.*, sacculated colon; *c.*, caecum; *v.a.*, vermiform appendix.

lies between the external ear-chamber and the angle of the mandible; the infra-orbital lies below and in front of the eye; the sub-maxillary lies between the angles of the mandible; the small sub-linguals lie along the inner side of each ramus of the mandible.

The pharynx passes into the gullet, and that leads through the diaphragm to the expanded stomach, which is dilated at its upper or cardiac end, and narrows to the curved pyloric end.

Partly covering the stomach is the large liver. The first portion of the intestine, which is called the duodenum, receives the bile duct, and has the pancreas in its folds. Then follows the much-coiled small intestine, measuring many feet in length. The lower end of the small intestine is expanded into a sacculus rotundus. Here the large caecum—a blind diverticulum—is given off; it ends in a finger-like vermiform appendix. Its proximal end is continuous with the colon or first part of the large intestine, the beginning of which is much sacculated. The large intestine narrows into the long rectum, in which lie little faecal pellets. On the last two inches of the rectum there are paired yellowish glands. Beside the anus are two bare patches of skin, with the openings of the ducts of the perineal



glands, whose secretion has a characteristic and strong odour.

The liver is attached to the diaphragm by a fold of peritoneum—the glistening membrane which lines the abdominal cavity. In the liver there are five lobes. From these lobes the bile is collected by hepatic ducts into a common bile duct, which is also connected to the gall-bladder by the cystic duct.

The very diffuse pancreas lies in the mesentery of the duodenal loop. Its secretion is gathered by several tubes into the pancreatic duct which opens into the duodenum.

The mesentery, which supports the alimentary canal, is a double layer of peritoneum reflected from the dorsal abdominal wall.

The dark red spleen (of importance in connection with the blood) lies behind the stomach. In the mesentery, not far from the top of the right kidney, lie a pair of coeliac ganglia, which receive nerves from the thoracic sympathetic system, and give off branches to the gut.

**Vascular system.**—The four-chambered heart lies in the thoracic cavity between the lungs. It is surrounded by a thin pericardium, and immediately in front of it there lies the soft thymus, which is larger in the young than in the adult animal.

By two superior venæ cavæ, and by the inferior vena cava, the venous blood collected from the body enters the right auricle. Thence the blood passes into the right ventricle through a crescentic opening, bordered by a threefold (tricuspid) membranous valve (worked by chordæ tendineæ attached to papillary muscles projecting from the wall of the ventricle).



Fig. 285.—Duodenum of rabbit.  
—From Krause, in part after  
Claude Bernard.

P., Pyloric end of stomach; g.b., gall-bladder with bile duct and hepatic ducts; p.d., pancreatic duct.



The right ventricle is not so muscular as the left, which it partly surrounds. By its contraction the blood is driven into the pulmonary trunk, whose orifice is guarded by three semilunar valves. During contraction the tricuspid valves are pressed together, so that no regurgitation into the right auricle can take place.

The pulmonary trunk divides into two pulmonary arteries, which branch into capillaries on the walls of the lungs. There the red blood corpuscles gain oxygen, and the blood is freed from much of the

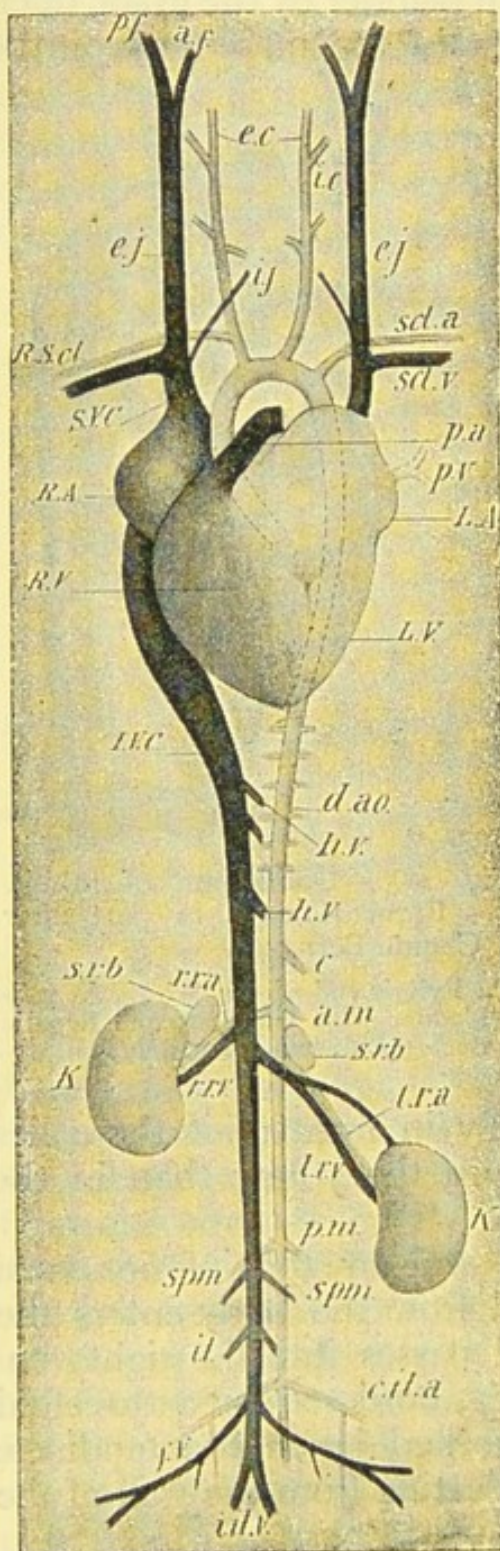


FIG. 286.—Circulatory system of the rabbit.—In part after Parker and Krause.

(a) Letters to right—

- e.c.* External carotid.
- i.c.* Internal carotid.
- e.j.* External jugular.
- scl.a.* Subclavian artery.
- scl.v.* Subclavian vein.
- p.a.* Pulmonary artery (cut short).
- p.v.* Pulmonary vein.
- L.A.* Left auricle.
- L.V.* Left ventricle.
- d.a.o.* Dorsal aorta.
- h.v.* Hepatic veins.
- c.* Coeliac artery.
- a.m.* Anterior mesenteric.
- s.r.b.* Suprarenal body.
- l.r.a.* Left renal artery.
- l.r.v.* Left renal vein.
- K.* Kidney.
- p.m.* Posterior mesenteric artery.
- spm.* Spermatic artery and vein.
- c.i.l.a.* Common iliac artery.

(b) Letters to left—

- p.f.* and *a.f.* Posterior and anterior facial.
- e.j.* External jugular vein.
- i.j.* Internal jugular.
- R.Scl.* Right subclavian artery.
- S.V.C.* Superior vena cava.
- R.A.* Right auricle.
- R.V.* Right ventricle.
- I.V.C.* Inferior vena cava.
- r.r.a.* Right renal artery.
- r.r.v.* Right renal vein.
- s.r.b.* Suprarenal body.
- s.p.m.* Spermatic artery and vein.
- i.l.* Ilio-lumbar vein.
- f.v.* Femoral vein.
- i.il.v.* Internal iliac veins.



carbonic acid gas which it has borne away from the tissues. The purified blood returns to the heart by two pulmonary veins, which unite as they enter the left auricle.

From the left auricle the pure blood passes into the left ventricle through a funnel-like opening, bordered by a (mitral) valve with two membranous flaps, with chordæ tendineæ and muscoli papillares as on the right side, but the muscles here are larger.

The left ventricle receives the pure blood and drives it to the body. During contraction the mitral valve is closed, so that no blood can flow back into the auricle. The blood leaves the left ventricle by an aortic trunk, whose base is guarded by three semilunar valves, just above which coronary arteries arise from the aortic trunk and supply the heart itself.

The aortic trunk bends over to the left, and passes backward under the backbone, dividing near the pelvis into two common iliac arteries, which supply the hind-legs and posterior parts. The chief blood vessels may be grouped as follows:—

The aortic trunk

gives off the innominate artery,

which divides into (a) the right subclavian, continued as the brachial to the fore-limb, but giving off the vertebral to the spinal cord and brain, and the internal mammary to the ventral wall of the thorax ;

(b) the right carotid, running along the trachea, dividing into the right internal carotid to the brain, and the right external carotid to the head and face ;

(c) the left carotid, with a similar course ;

thereafter the aorta gives off—

the left subclavian artery, which branches like the right,

the cœliac artery to the liver, stomach, and spleen,

the anterior mesenteric to the pancreas and intestine,

the renal arteries to the kidneys,

the spermatic or ovarian arteries to the reproductive organs,

the posterior mesenteric to the rectum,

the lumbar arteries to the posterior body-walls.

The aorta is continued terminally in the median sacral artery to the tail, and laterally in the common iliacs, which form the femorals of the hind-legs, and give off in the abdomen several branches to the abdominal walls, the pelvic cavity, the bladder, and the uterus.



The two superior venæ cavæ bring blood from the head, neck, thorax, and fore-limbs. Each is formed from the union of—  
 a subclavian from the shoulder and fore-limb,  
 an external jugular from the face and ear,  
 an internal jugular from the brain,  
 an anterior intercostal from the spaces between the anterior ribs,  
 an internal mammary from the ventral wall of the thorax ;  
 and the right superior vena cava also receives an azygos cardinal vein, which runs along the mid-dorsal line and collects blood from the posterior intercostal spaces.

The inferior vena cava is a large median vein lying beside the aorta beneath the backbone. Anteriorly it is embedded in the liver, and receives the hepatic veins. Thence it passes through the diaphragm into the right auricle. Posteriorly the inferior vena cava has the following components :—

Internal iliacs from the back of the thighs, forming by their union the beginning of the inferior vena cava ;  
 femoral veins from the inner borders of the thighs, continued into external iliacs which open into the inferior vena cava ;  
 paired ilio-lumbar from the posterior abdominal walls ;  
 spermatic or ovarian veins from the reproductive organs ;  
 renal veins from the kidneys.

There is no renal-portal system.

The food which has been digested—rendered soluble and diffusible—passes from the food canal into the vascular system by two paths :—

- (a) All except the fatty material is absorbed by veins from the stomach and intestine. These unite in a main trunk, the portal vein. The components of the portal vein are—the lieno-gastric from the stomach (and also from the spleen), the duodenal from the duodenum (and also from the pancreas), the anterior mesenteric from the intestine, the posterior mesenteric from the rectum. The portal vein breaks up into branches in the liver, whence the modified blood passes by hepatic veins into the inferior vena cava.
- (b) The fat passes through the intestinal villi into the lymphatic vessels, which combine to form a thoracic duct, which runs forward and opens into the left subclavian vein at its junction with the left external jugular. Here and there lie lymphatic glands.

**Respiratory system.**—The lungs are pink, spongy bodies, lying in the thorax, connected with the exterior by the bronchial tubes and the trachea, and with the heart by blood vessels. The pleural membrane which invests the surface of the lungs is reflected from the sides of the thoracic cavity. When the lungs expand, the pleural cavity—between the two folds of pleural membrane—is almost obliterated. The thoracic cavity is separated from the abdominal cavity by a partly muscular diaphragm, which is supplied by two phrenic



nerves, arising from the fourth cervical spinal nerves. By its contraction the diaphragm alters the size of the thoracic cavity, and thus shares in the mechanism of respiration. At the top of the trachea lies the complex larynx, the seat of the voice in Mammals.

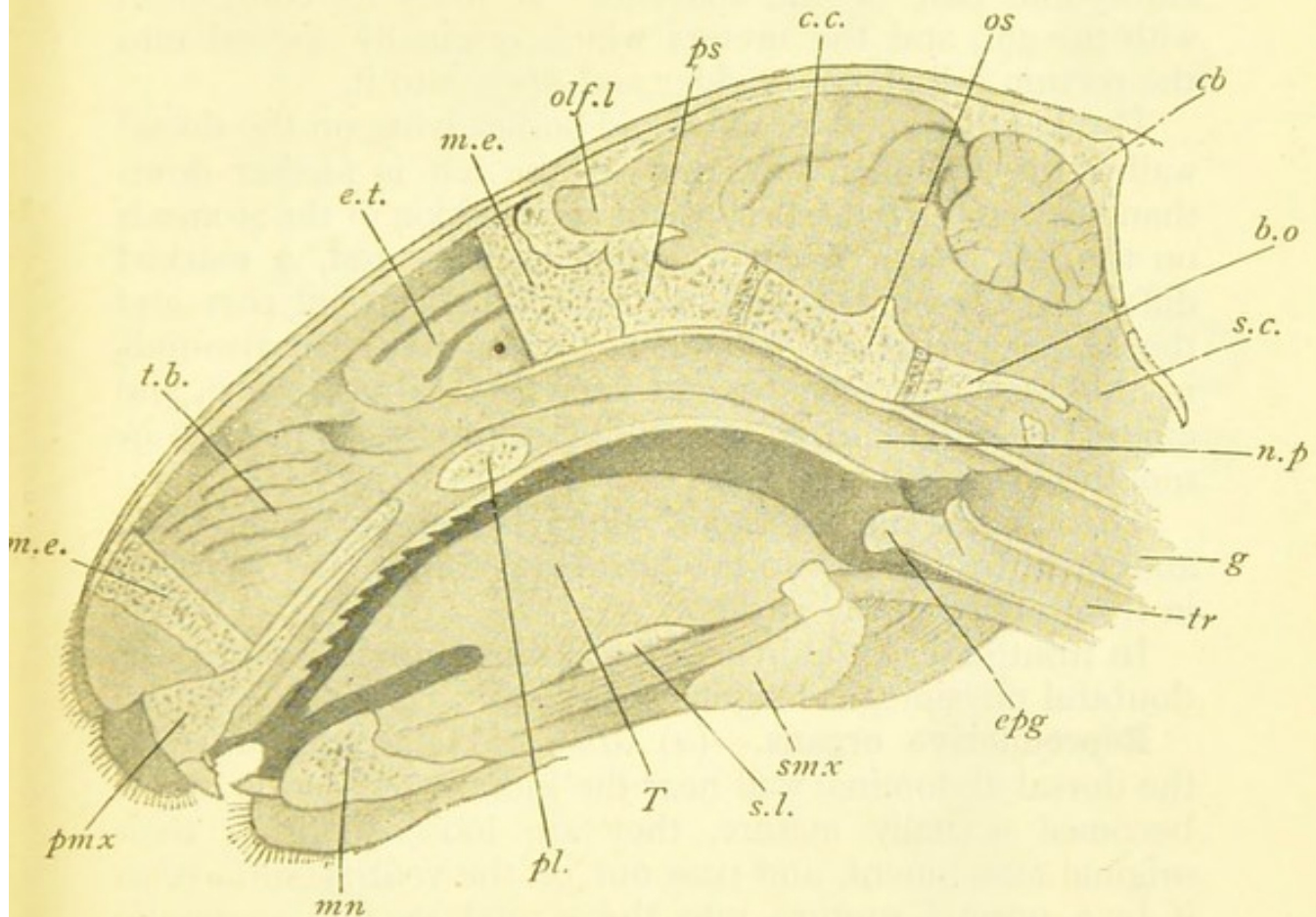


FIG. 287.—Vertical section through rabbit's head.—From a section, with help from Parker's "Zootomy" and Krause.

*mx.*, Premaxilla with incisors; *m.e.*, part of mesethmoid partition; *t.b.*, maxillary turbinals; *e.t.*, ethmoidal turbinal; *m.e.*, part of mesethmoid; *olf.l.*, olfactory lobe of cerebrum; *ps.*, presphenoid; *c.c.*, position of corpus callosum; *bs.*, basisphenoid with depression for pituitary body; *cb.*, cerebellum; *b.o.*, basioccipital; *s.c.*, spinal cord; *n.p.*, nasal passage; *g.*, gullet; *tr.*, trachea; *epg.*, epiglottis; *smx.*, submaxillary salivary gland; *s.l.*, sublingual salivary gland; *T.*, tongue; *pl.*, transverse portion of palatine; *mn.*, anterior end of mandible.

Anteriorly the larynx is supported on its sides and beneath by the thyroid cartilage; behind this lies the ring-like cricoid; dorsally to the cricoid are two small triangular arytenoids.

Within the larynx there are stretched membranous bands—the vocal cords. Beside the larynx is the paired thyroid gland.

**Excretory system.**—This includes the blood-filtering



kidneys, their ducts the ureters, and a reservoir or bladder, into which these open. The kidneys and their ducts are formed from the metanephros and metanephric ducts of the embryo. The bladder arises as a diverticulum from the hind end of the gut, being in fact a remnant of the intra-embryonic part of the allantois. It loses its connection with the gut, and the ureters which originally opened into the rectum follow the bladder and open into it.

The kidneys are dark red ovoid bodies lying on the dorsal wall of the abdomen; the one on the left is further down than that on the right, because of the position of the stomach on the left side. When a kidney is dissected, a marked difference is seen between the superficial cortical part and the deeper medullary substance. On papillæ or pyramids in the very centre the coiled excretory tubules open, and empty the water and waste products into the "pelvis" or mouth of the ureter.

The ureters run backward along the dorsal wall of the abdomen, and open into the bladder, a thin-walled sac lying in front of the pelvic girdle.

In front of each kidney lies a yellow suprarenal body of doubtful physiological significance.

**Reproductive organs.**—(a) *Male*.—The testes arise on the dorsal abdominal wall near the kidney, but as the rabbit becomes sexually mature, they are loosened from their original attachment, and pass out on the ventral surface, as if by a normal rupture, into the scrotal sac. A spermatic cord, consisting of an artery, a vein, and a little connective tissue, runs from the abdomen to the testis.

The testis is attached to the base of the scrotal sac, and is bordered by a mass of convoluted tubes—the epididymis—consisting of the caput epididymis anteriorly, the larger cauda epididymis posteriorly, and a narrow band between them. The cauda epididymis is connected to the scrotal sac by a short cord or gubernaculum.

Through the tubes of the epididymis (the modified mesonephros) the spermatozoa developed in the testis are collected into the vas deferens (the modified Wolffian duct), which arises from the cauda epididymis, ascends to the abdomen, loops round the ureter, and, passing dorsally to the bladder, opens beside its fellow into a median sac



called the uterus masculinus. In many Mammals, paired diverticula, known as seminal vesicles, are connected with

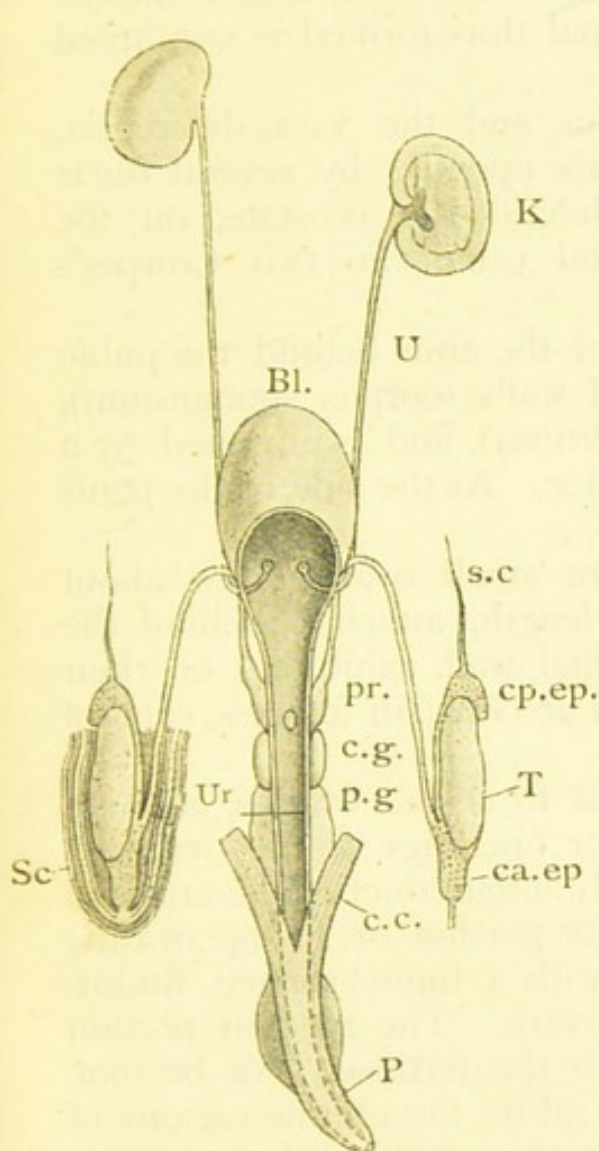


FIG. 288.—Urogenital organs of male rabbit.

*K.*, Kidney; *U.*, ureter; *Bl.*, bladder; *T.*, testis; *s.c.*, spermatic cord; *cp.ep.*, caput epididymis; *ca.ep.*, cauda epididymis; *Sc.*, scrotal sac; *pr.*, one of the lobes of the prostate; *c.g.*, Cowper's glands; *p.g.*, perineal glands; *Ur.*, urethra; *c.c.*, corpus cavernosum; *P.*, penis.

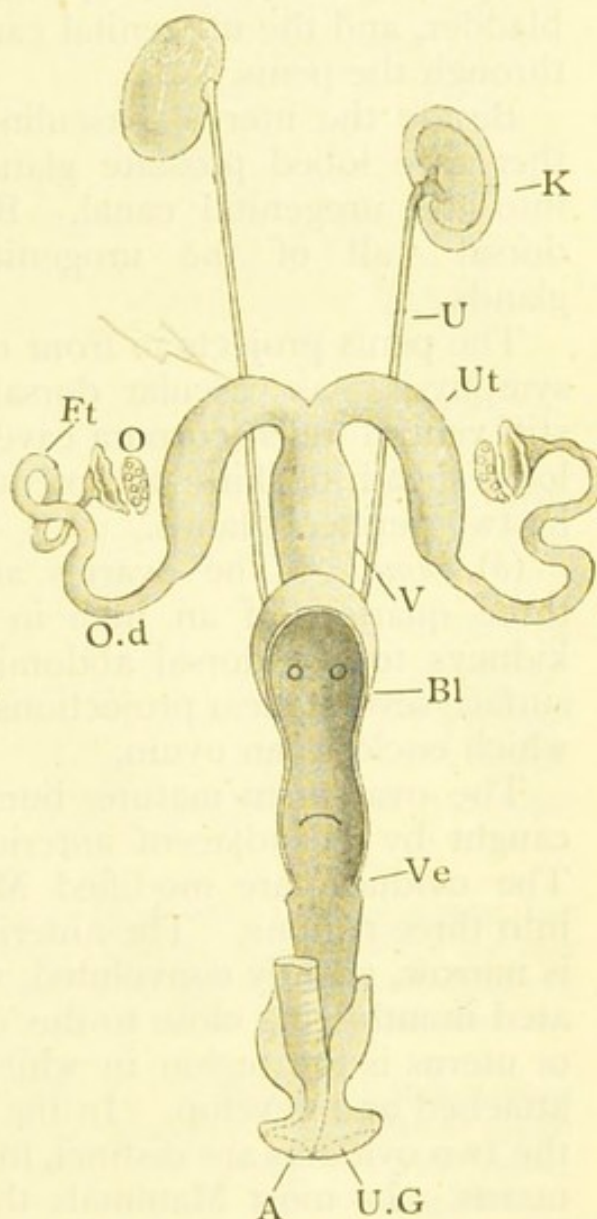


FIG. 289.—Urogenital organs of female rabbit.

*K.*, Kidney; *U.*, ureter; *O.*, ovary; *F.t.*, Fallopian tube; *O.d.*, oviduct; *Ut.*, uterus; *V.*, vagina; *Bl.*, bladder; *Ve.*, vestibule or female urethra; *U.G.*, urogenital aperture; *A.*, Anus. Bladder and vestibule are cut open.

the ends of the vasa deferentia, but they are not developed in the rabbit.



The uterus masculinus is the homologue of the vagina in the female, and seems to arise from the Müllerian ducts. It opens into the urethra, which runs backwards from the bladder, and the urogenital canal thus formed is continued through the penis.

Beside the uterus masculinus and the vasa deferentia, there are lobed prostate glands opening by several ducts into the urogenital canal. Behind the prostate, on the dorsal wall of the urogenital canal, lie two Cowper's glands.

The penis projects in front of the anus behind the pubic symphysis, has vascular dorsal walls (corpus spongiosum), stiff ventral walls (corpora cavernosa), and is invested by a loose sheath of skin—the prepuce. At the side of the penis lie two perineal glands.

(*b*) *Female*.—The ovaries are small oval bodies about three quarters of an inch in length, attached behind the kidneys to the dorsal abdominal wall, exhibiting on their surface several clear projections or Graafian follicles, each of which encloses an ovum.

The ova, when mature, burst from the ovaries, and are caught by the adjacent anterior openings of the oviducts. The oviducts are modified Müllerian ducts, differentiated into three regions. The anterior portion or Fallopian tube is narrow, slightly convoluted, with a funnel-shaped, fimbriated mouth lying close to the ovary. The median portion or uterus is the region in which the fertilised ova become attached and develop. In the rabbit the uterine regions of the two oviducts are distinct, forming what is called a double uterus. In most Mammals the uterine regions of the oviducts coalesce, forming a bicornuate or a single uterus, according to the completeness of the fusion. In all Mammals above Marsupials the posterior parts of the two oviducts unite in a median tube—the vagina.

The vagina unites with the neck of the bladder, and forms the wide but short urogenital canal or vestibule, which opens at the vulva, ventral to the anus. On the ventral wall of the vestibule lies the clitoris, a small rod-like body—the homologue of the penis. On the dorsal wall lie two small Cowper's glands, and there are also perineal glands as in the male.



The fertilised egg develops within the uterus, and in the rabbit, as in all Eutherian Mammals, the allantois of the embryo becomes intimately connected with the wall of the uterus to form the vascular placenta, the organ by means of which the nutrition and respiration of the embryo are provided for. In the rabbit, and in other Rodents, there is, before the development of the allantoic placenta, a provisional yolk-sac placenta—a structure of similar function but of much less morphological complexity. The details of the placentation of Mammals will be considered later.

#### NOTES ON COMPARATIVE ANATOMY OF MAMMALS.

**Skin.**—This consists of a superficial epidermis derived from the outer or ectodermic layer of the embryo, and of a subjacent mesodermic dermis or cutis.

The most characteristic modification of the mammalian epidermis is the hair. Each hair arises from the cornification of an ingrowing epidermic papilla of the Malpighian stratum of the epidermis, surrounded at its base by a moat-like follicle, and nourished during growth by a vascular projection of the dermis.

Each hair consists of a spongy central part and a denser cortex, but there are many diversities of form and structure, such as short fur and long tresses, the soft wool of sheep and the bristles of pigs, the spines of hedgehog, porcupine, and *Echidna*, the cilia of the eyelids and the tactile vibrissæ of the lips and cheeks.

It is generally believed that the hairs of Mammals are homologous with the feathers of Birds and the scales of Reptiles, but Maurer maintains that the facts of development upset the homology and point rather to a resemblance between hairs and the sensory papillæ of Amphibians. But this is still under discussion.

The hair keeps the animal dry and warm; in the practically hairless Cetacea the layer of fat or blubber underneath the skin also serves to sustain the temperature of the body. Like feathers, hairs die away and are cast off, being replaced by fresh growths. A few Mammals, such as the Arctic fox, the mountain hare, and the ermine, become white in winter, harmonising with the snow. In the case of Ross's lemming, the cold is the stimulus evoking this change, which depends in great part on the appearance of gas bubbles inside the hairs.

That the colouring is sometimes of protective advantage we have already noticed; but in many cases no utilitarian interpretation can be read into the stripes and markings. Those of related species often form regular series, and are superficial outcrops of constitutional changes hardly to be analysed. Sometimes there is considerable change during



the lifetime of the animal : thus most young deer have spots, but only the Fallow and Axis deer retain these when adult. To an excess of pigment is due the variation known as melanism or blackness, *e.g.* in black wolves and rabbits ; to a dearth of pigment albinism is due, as in white mice and white elephants. In tropical countries the skin is sometimes very darkly coloured, as in Indian cattle ; and many monkeys—especially males—are notable for the bright colours of the bare parts of the body.

Among other tegumentary structures are the scales which occur along with hairs on the pangolins (*Manis*) ; the scales on the tails of rats and beavers and some other forms ; the thickened skin-pads or callosities on the ischia of apes, the breast of camels, the legs of horses ; the nails, claws, or hoofs which ensheath the ends of the digits in all Mammals except Cetaceans. Unique is the armature of the armadillos, for it consists of bony plates developed in the dermis, overlaid by epidermic scales. The median solid horns of the rhinoceros are epidermic outgrowths, comparable to exaggerated warts ; the paired horns of the Ruminants consist of epidermic sheaths covering outgrowths of the frontal bones, but extending far beyond these ; the antlers of stags are outgrowths of the frontal bones, are cast and re-grown each year, and are possessed by the males only, except in the reindeer.

The skin of Mammals, unlike that of Birds, is rich in glands. Sebaceous glands are always associated with the hair follicles, and sudorific or sweat glands are scattered over the skin.

Specialised glands are also very common, especially those which secrete some strongly odoriferous stuff, scenting which the animals recognise their fellows, their foes, or their prey. Often they are most developed in the males, and their activity increases at the pairing season.

Among the numerous special glands may be noted those which are connected with a perforated spur on the hind-legs of male Monotremes, the sub-orbital glands of antelopes and deer, the anal glands of carnivores, the perineal glands of the civet, the preputial glands of the musk-deer and beaver, the inter-digital glands of the sheep.

Most characteristic, however, are the mammary glands, functional in female Mammals after parturition. They seem to be specialisations of sebaceous glands, except in Monotremes, in which they are nearer the sudorific type. They consist of branching tubes opening by one or several



apertures on the skin. From the white blood corpuscles of the abundant vascular supply, and from a degeneration of the cells lining the glandular tubes, the milk is produced. It begins to be produced when the young are born, when, in Placental Mammals, the demand upon the mother through the placenta has ceased.

In Monotremes the simple glands, compressed by muscles, open by many pores on a bare patch of skin. This is depressed into a slight cup, from which the young lick the milk. In Marsupials the glands open by teats or *mammæ*, generally hidden within a marsupium; and again the action of surrounding muscles forces the milk into the mouths of the young, which do not seem to be able to suck. An anterior prolongation of the larynx to meet the posterior nares, establishes a complete air passage, and enables the young to continue breathing while they are being fed. In Cetacea the milk-ducts are dilated into large reservoirs, the contents of which can be rapidly injected into the mouth of the young. In all other Mammals the young suck the milk from the *mammæ*.

**Dentition.**—The teeth of Mammals are developed in the gum or soft tissue which covers the borders of the pre-maxillæ, maxillæ, and mandibles. As in other animals, they are in part of epidermic, in part of dermic origin. In the course of their development their bases are usually enclosed in sockets formed in the subjacent bones.

In most teeth there are three or four different kinds of tissue. The greater part consists of *dentine* or ivory (of which about a third is organic matter); outside of this there is a layer of very hard glistening *enamel* (practically inorganic); in the interior there is a cavity which in growing teeth contains a gelatinous tissue or *pulp* supplied by blood vessels and by branches of the fifth nerve, and contributing to the increase of the dentine; lastly, around the narrowed bases or roots of the tooth, or between the folds of the enamel if these have been developed, there is a bone-like tissue called the *crusta petrosa* or *cement*.

The development of teeth begins with the formation of a dental ridge, an invagination of the ectodermic epithelium. From this ridge a number of "enamel germs" are next differentiated. Beneath each germ a papilla of the vas-



cular mesodermic dermis is defined off as the "dentine germ." The crown of this papilla becomes hard, and the ossification proceeds downwards and inwards, while above the dentine crown the enamel begins to form a hard cap. Meantime the tissue around the base of the tooth-papilla becomes differentiated into an enclosing follicle or sac, from the inner layer of which the cement is developed. The pulp is but the uncalcified core of the papilla.

The base of a tooth may remain unconstricted, and the core of pulp may persist. Such a tooth goes on growing, its growth usually keeping pace with the rate at which the apex is worn away with use, and it is described as "rootless" and "with persistent pulp." The incisors of Rodents and of elephants illustrate this condition.

In the development of most teeth, however, the base is narrowed and prolonged into a root or several roots which become firmly fixed in the socket. Through a minute aperture at the end of the root, blood vessels and nerves still enter the pulp-cavity and keep the tooth alive, but, as the limit of growth is reached, the residue of soft pulp tends to disappear.

The two most marked characteristics of the teeth of Mammals are, that they are typically *heterodont*, that is, different from one another in form and function, and that the succession is practically reduced to two sets, a condition described as *diphyodont* as contrasted with the *polyphyodont* condition seen in Fishes and Reptiles, where the succession is practically unlimited.

As exceptions, there are cases like that of the dolphins, where the teeth are uniform or *homodont* and very numerous. This, however, is not a primitive, but a secondarily acquired condition.

In the typical dentition of Mammals there are forty-four permanent teeth, eleven on each side above and below; but it is rare in the Eutherian Mammals to find the full number developed, and the dentitions of the Marsupials, of the Edentates, and of the Cetacea cannot be reduced to this type. The eleven on each of the upper jaws may be divided in the typical case into four sets. Most anteriorly, associated with the premaxilla, are three simple, single-rooted teeth, usually adapted for cutting or seizing. These are called incisors. Posteriorly there are crushing or grinding teeth, whose crowns bear cusps or cones, or are variously ridged, and which have two or more roots associated with the maxilla. But of these grinders the last three occur as one set, having no calcified successors, or, as others maintain, having no milk predecessors. They are therefore distinguished as true molars, from the four more anterior and



often simpler premolars, which usually occur in two sets, the milk set being replaced by a permanent set. In many cases, however, the first premolar seems to be only once represented. Finally, the tooth just behind the incisors, that is to say, immediately posterior to the suture between premaxilla and maxilla, is distinguished as the canine, and is often long and sharp.

This classification of teeth is in great part one of convenience; thus the distinction between incisors and grinding-teeth is anatomical, that between molars and premolars refers to the history of these teeth; the connection between the teeth and the subjacent bones is a secondary matter; there is often little to differentiate canine from premolar. Moreover, the teeth of the lower jaw, which is a single bone on each side, cannot be so certainly classified as those of the upper jaw. Here the lower canine is defined as the tooth which bites in front of the upper, and the incisors as the teeth in front of this tooth.

No part of a Vertebrate is more distinctive than the skull, and no mammalian characteristic is more useful in diagnosis than the dentition. It is convenient, therefore, to have some notation expressing the nature of the dentition. Thus we use "dental formulæ," in which the incisors, canines, premolars, and molars are enumerated in order, and in which the teeth of the upper jaw are ranked above the analogous teeth of the lower jaw. The typical mammalian dentition already referred to may be expressed as follows:—

$$\text{Incisors } \frac{3-3}{3-3}, \text{ canines } \frac{1-1}{1-1}, \text{ premolars } \frac{4-4}{4-4}, \text{ molars } \frac{3-3}{3-3} = \frac{11-11}{11-11} = \text{total } 44;$$

or, using initial letters:—

$$i. \frac{3-3}{3-3}, c. \frac{1-1}{1-1}, pm. \frac{4-4}{4-4}, m. \frac{3-3}{3-3} = 44;$$

or, recognising that the right and left side are almost invariably identical, and omitting the initial letters:— $\frac{3143}{3143}$ .

The formulæ for the adult dentition of some representative Mammals are the following:—

$$\text{Opossum } \frac{5134}{4134}, \text{ Thylacine } \frac{4134}{3134}, \text{ Kangaroo } \frac{3124}{1024}, \text{ Wombat } \frac{1014}{1014}, \text{ Pig } \frac{3143}{3143}, \text{ Camel } \frac{1133}{3123},$$

$$\text{Sheep } \frac{0033}{3133}, \text{ Horse } \frac{3143}{3143}, \text{ Rabbit } \frac{2033}{1023}, \text{ Cat } \frac{3131}{3121}, \text{ Dog } \frac{3142}{3143}, \text{ Bear } \frac{3142}{3143}, \text{ Seal } \frac{3141}{2141},$$

$$\text{Hedgehog } \frac{3133}{2123}, \text{ Marmoset } \frac{2132}{2132}, \text{ New World Monkey } \frac{2133}{2133}, \text{ Old World Monkey } \frac{2123}{2123},$$

$$\text{Man } \frac{2123}{2123}.$$

Useful as these formulæ are, they are often deceptive in practice, and should be regarded as merely a description of the dentition of the



adult, and not of ontogenetic importance. Thus in many cases, notably in Ungulates, the permanent molars cut the gum, and come into use long before any of the milk-teeth are shed. This fact not only makes it doubtful to which set the molars should be ascribed, but also shows that the members of two sets may function simultaneously. It is thus apparent that in any given case we cannot assert that because all the teeth in a skull have been functional at the same time, they necessarily all belong to the same set. Further, one or both sets may be aborted, and, apart from the molars, certain of the teeth may remain un-replaced. A macroscopic examination of the skull can therefore never determine to which set particular teeth belong. According to Leche, the one test which can be relied on is that the germs of the members of a dentition are differentiated simultaneously, or almost simultaneously, from the dental lamina. The test is obviously one that is not very easy to apply, and the following account must be received as merely tentative:—

In the first place, we may notice that the question to which dentition particular teeth or teeth rudiments belong, is one of considerable theoretic importance. Mammals are typically diphyodont, reptiles are polyphyodont, but Mammals arose from a reptilian stock, therefore one would naturally hope to find that the lowest Mammals showed traces of a polyphyodont condition. Of the teeth of the Monotremes little is known, they occur only in the young of *Ornithorhynchus*. The Marsupials have numerous well-developed teeth, and it has long been known that only one functional tooth is replaced—the last premolar. More recently it has been shown that in connection with certain of the other teeth there occur rudiments of precociously calcified teeth. The condition of the teeth in Marsupials was therefore quite recently described as follows:—Marsupials are potentially polyphyodont, for they show traces of three dentitions. Of these the first is in process of suppression, and is represented by “pre-lacteal” rudiments; the second or milk dentition is important and functional, but tends to diminish in importance in the Eutherian Mammals; the third is represented in Marsupials by the last premolar only, but in most Eutheria becomes the functional dentition of the adult. Still more recent work has, however, cast doubt upon this theory, and brought the Eutheria and Metatheria into much closer relationship with one another. According to Wilson and Hill, the vestigial teeth (“prelacteal” rudiments) of Marsupials are milk-teeth homologous with the milk premolar, and the permanent teeth of Marsupials are homologous with the second set of other Mammals. These authors therefore believe that Marsupials, no less than Eutherian Mammals, are primitively diphyodont, and that in Marsupials in general the milk-teeth are in process of suppression, just as they are also in certain of the Eutheria (seals, *Bradypus*, *Erinaceus*). This, taken in conjunction with the discovery of a true allantoic placenta in *Perameles* among Marsupials, tends to show that both Marsupials and Placentals must have arisen from a primitively proto-placental and diphyodont stock. In the Marsupials the placenta has become degenerate or aborted, the milk diet has become increasingly important, and, in adaptation to it, the young have lost or are losing the milk-teeth. In the Eutheria



the placenta has become greatly developed, and for a prolonged period serves to feed the embryo, thus reducing the importance of the milk diet. In connection with the theory that the adaptation of the mouth to the sucking function in Marsupials has led to the suppression of the milk-teeth, it is interesting to note that conversely in Ungulates, where the milk-teeth are exceedingly well developed, the milk diet, according to some observers, is often relatively unimportant, the young being able at a very early age to take other food.

Wilson and Hill believe that there are vestiges of teeth in connection with the permanent molars, and that these therefore belong to the second set. But Leche and others believe just as strongly that the molars are milk-teeth without calcified successors.

On the many other interesting problems connected with the teeth of Mammals we cannot dwell here, but it is interesting to note the relation in particular cases between the diet and the form of the teeth. Thus the dolphins, which feed on fish and swallow them whole, have numerous almost uniform, sharp, recurved, conical teeth, well suited to take a firm grasp of the slippery and struggling booty. To a slight extent the same piscivorous dentition may be seen in seals. In the more strictly carnivorous Mammals the incisors are small, the canines are long and sharp, piercing the prey with a deathful grip, while the back teeth have more or less knife-like edges, which sever flesh and bone. In typical insectivorous Mammals the upper and lower incisors meet precisely, "so as readily to secure small active prey, quick to elude capture but powerless to resist when once seized," while the crowns of the molars bear many sharp points. Herbivorous Mammals have front teeth suited for cropping the herbage or gnawing parts of plants, the canines are small or absent, the molars have broad grinding crowns with transverse ridges. In omnivorous Mammals the incisors are suited for cutting; the canines are often formidable weapons in the male sex; the molars have crowns raised into rounded tubercles. Teeth with broad rounded tubercles, as in pigs, are called bunodont; with crescentic ridges, as in sheep, selenodont; and there are many other terms.

It is likely that the most primitive type of mammalian tooth was a simple cone, such as may be seen in toothed whales. But as regards back teeth there is strong evidence that the type from which all forms may be derived was the tritubercular tooth, in which the crown bears three cusps, disposed in a triangle.

**Development and placentation.**—The ova of Mammals, except Monotremes, are small; even those of the Whales are "no larger than fern seed." They are formed from germinal epithelium, the cells of which grow inwards in clustered masses into the connective tissue or stroma of the ovary. In each cluster one cell predominates over its neighbours; it becomes an ovum; the others invest and nourish it, and are called follicle cells.

In the middle of each clump or Graafian follicle, a cavity



is formed containing fluid, and into this cavity the follicle cells immediately surrounding the ovum project, forming what is called the *discus proligerus*. (See Fig. 198, p. 467.)

When mature, the ovum protrudes on the surface of the ovary, and is liberated by the bursting of the Graafian follicle. Some blood, which fills up the empty follicle, degenerates into what is called the corpus luteum.

The spermatozoa are formed from germinal epithelium in the testes. The primitive male cells or spermatogonia give rise by division to daughter cells or spermatocytes, which, with or without further division, form spermatozoa.

The homologue of the ovum is the spermatogonium or mother-sperm-cell, but the physiological equivalent of the ovum is the spermatozoon.

No one has succeeded in satisfactorily observing an extrusion of polar bodies in the maturation of the mammalian ovum, but analogous processes occur at an early stage.

The ovum, having burst from the ovary, is immediately caught by the fimbriated mouth of the Fallopian tube, and begins to pass down the oviduct. There it is met by ascending spermatozoa, received by the female as the result of sexual union, and is

fertilised. One of the spermatozoa enters the ovum, and sperm nucleus unites with ovum nucleus in an intimate and orderly manner.

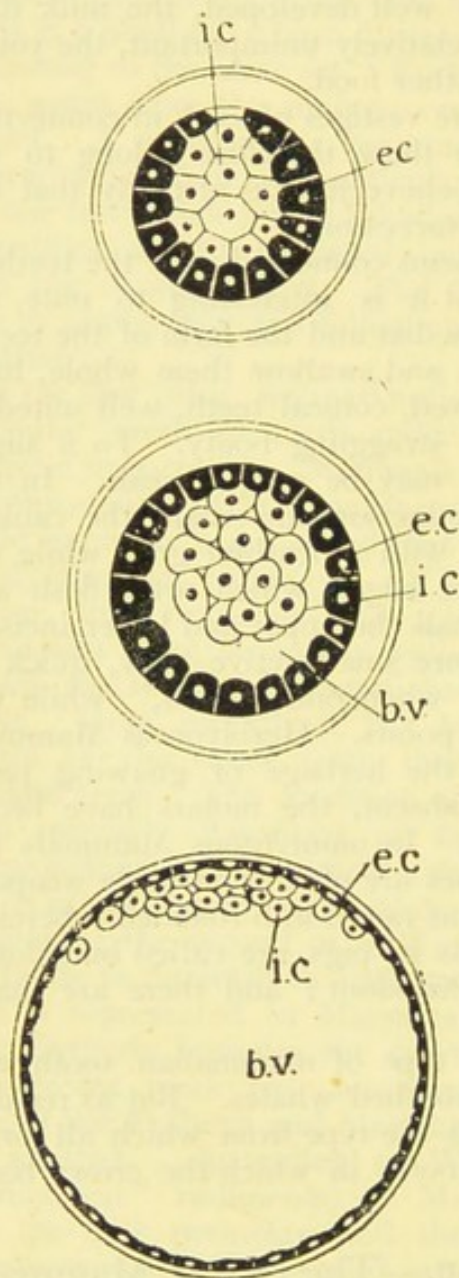


FIG. 290.—Segmentation of rabbit's ovum.—After Van Beneden.

*e.c.*, External cells (epiblast?); *i.c.*, internal cells (hypoblast?); *b.v.*, blastodermic vesicle.



**The connection between embryo and mother.**—(a) The lowest Mammals, the Duckmole (*Ornithorhynchus*) and the Porcupine Ant-Eater (*Echidna*), resemble Birds and most Reptiles in bringing forth their young as eggs, *i.e.* in being oviparous. The eggs are large, with a considerable quantity of yolk, and after fertilisation divide partially, *i.e.* exhibit meroblastic segmentation like the eggs of Birds and Reptiles. The tunic formed round about them in the Graafian follicles of the ovary consists, as in Birds and Reptiles, of a single layer of cells. Development begins in the oviducts, but the eggs are in no way attached to the wall. They are laid in a nest by the Duckmole; in the *Echidna* they are hatched in a slight, periodically developed, external pouch.

(b) In the Marsupials the connection between mother and offspring has become closer. The embryo is born alive, but prematurely and after a short gestation. Till recently it was believed that during its intra-uterine life it was either not attached to the wall of the uterus at all, or only to a slight extent by a yolk-sac placenta. It is now known, however, that, in *Perameles* at least, there is not only an efficient yolk-sac placenta, but a distinct, though small, allantoic placenta. The general absence of a placenta in Marsupials, and the small size of the allantois, must therefore be ascribed to degeneration, and not to a primitive condition. The presence of a yolk-sac placenta in Marsupials is not in itself of great importance, for a connection between the yolk-sac of the embryo and the wall of the oviduct exists in two Elasmo-

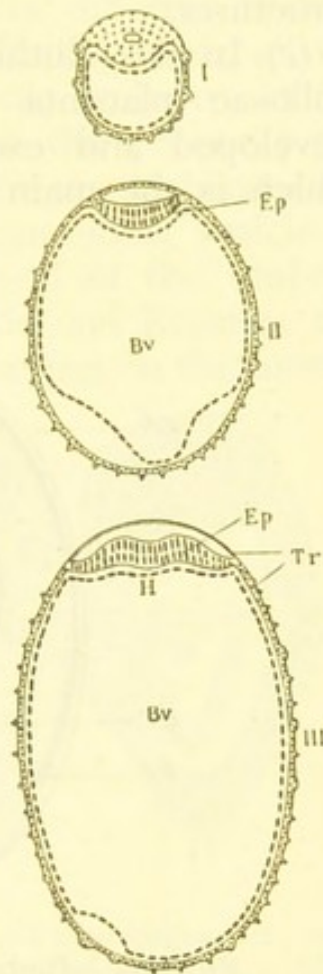


FIG. 291.—Development of hedgehog. Three early stages.—After Hubrecht.

- I. Shows internal vesicle of hypoblast; the disc and external sheath of epiblast.
- II. Shows villi arising from trophoblast; the disc of formative epiblast (*Ep.*); the blastodermic vesicle (*B.v.*).
- III. A more advanced stage; *Tr.*, trophoblast; *Ep.*, disc of formative epiblast; *B.v.*, blastodermic vesicle; *H.*, hypoblast.



branch fishes and in two lizards, but the similarity between the allantoic placenta of *Perameles* and that of the Eutheria seems to point indisputably to a common origin for the two structures.

(c) In the Eutherian Mammals, although a temporary yolk-sac placenta may occur, there is always a well-developed and exceedingly important allantoic placenta, which is the main organ for the nutrition of the embryo.

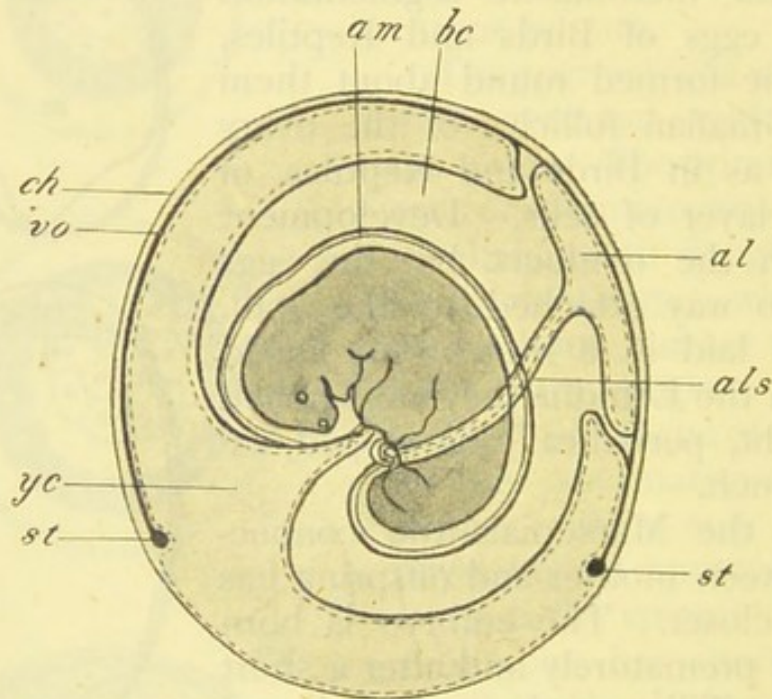


FIG. 292.—Embryo of *Perameles* with its foetal membranes.  
—After Hill.

*am.*, True amnion; *al.*, allantois; *al.s.*, allantoic stalk; *y.c.*, cavity of yolk-sac; *ch.*, chorion or false amnion; *s.t.*, sinus terminalis; *b.c.*, extra-embryonic body cavity; *vo.*, vascular omphalopleure, or area of non-separation between yolk-sac wall and chorion, constituting the yolk-sac placenta. The endoderm is dotted throughout. Note the large size of the yolk-sac, and the sinking of the embryo into it.

The placenta, in rough physiological language, is a double vascular sponge, partly embryonic, partly maternal, by means of which the blood of the mother nourishes and purifies that of the embryo. It is formed by the interlocking of foetal and maternal tissue.

In giving an account of the placentation of the Eutheria, we shall mainly follow Hubrecht in his account of the placentation of the hedgehog, which is at once a simple and central type.



Before doing so, it may be well to note briefly certain facts in regard to the early development of the egg. In Eutheria, segmentation is holoblastic and yolk is absent, but the process of development is very different from a simple case like that of *Amphioxus*. In the latter, all the cells of the blastosphere form part of the embryo; in the former a few only take a direct part in the process; the remainder form the wall of the embryonic sac or blastocyst, from which the yolkless yolk-sac or umbilical vesicle is later developed. A process of folding-off of the embryo occurs therefore in Mammals as in Birds and Reptiles, the chief difference being that, roughly speaking, in the former the yolk-sac has a cellular wall from the first, in the latter the germinal layers slowly spread over the yolk as development proceeds.

Bearing these facts in mind, let us then seek to define the embryonic and maternal structures which are associated with placentation. (1) At a very early stage the divided ovum of the hedgehog consists of a sac of cells, an outer layer, epiblastic or ectodermic, enclosing another aggregate—the future inner

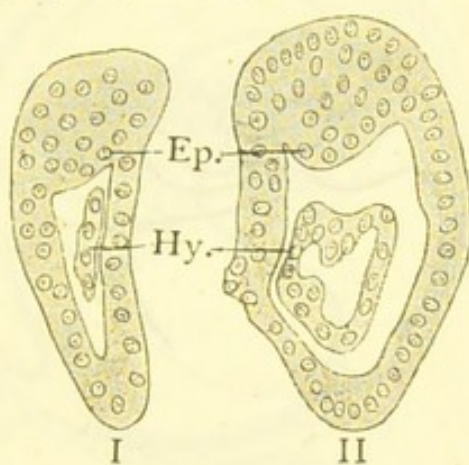


FIG. 293. — Two stages in segmented ovum of hedgehog.—After Hubrecht.

*Ep.*, Epiblast; *Hy.*, hypoblast.

layer, endoderm or hypoblast (Fig. 293, I.). (2) The epiblast divides into an embryonic disc, which will form the epidermis, nervous system, etc., of the embryo, and an external layer, the wall of the embryonic sac or blastocyst, with which the disc retains a slight connection until the protective amnion is formed. In the outer epiblastic wall lacunæ develop, which are bathed by the maternal blood, and the pillars of tissue between the lacunæ grow out into villi, which aid in this earliest connection between mother and offspring. Long before any vascular area or foetal placenta is developed, the outer epiblastic wall has the above nutritive function, and deserves its name of *trophoblast* (Fig. 291, *Tr.*). (3) The hypoblast



or inner mass, which is at first a solid aggregate of cells (Fig. 290, *i.c.*), becomes a sac, as a morula may become a

blastosphere. The upper part of this sac forms the lining of the incipient gut, while the lower portion, following the contour of the blastocyst wall, forms the lining of the umbilical vesicle (cf. the Chick). From this vesicle or yolk-sac the embryo becomes folded off, and the connection between the two is narrowed, just as in the chick, into a canal—the vitelline duct, which is part of the “umbilical cord,” entering the embryo at the future navel. (4) Between the epiblast and the hypoblast of the embryo, the mesoblast develops, splitting into an outer, parietal, or somatic, and an inner, visceral, or splanchnic layer. The cavity between these is the incipient body cavity. A double fold of somatic mesoblast, carrying with it a single sheet of epiblast, rises up round about

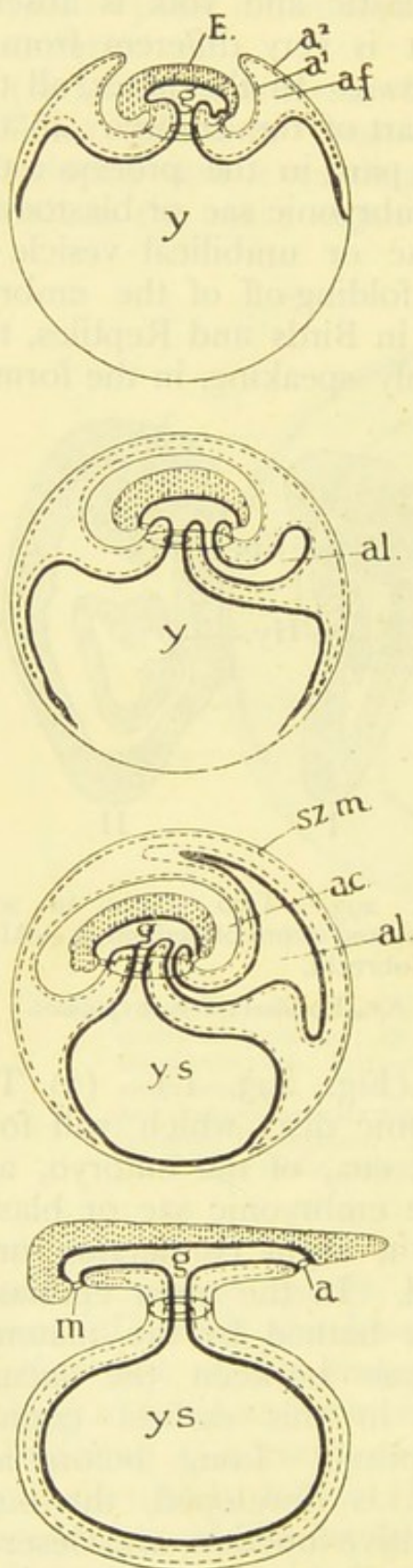


FIG. 294. — Development of foetal membranes. — After Hertwig.

Uppermost figure shows up-growth and down-growth of amnion folds. *E.*, Embryo; *a.f.*, amnion fold; *a*<sup>1</sup>, amnion proper; *a*<sup>2</sup>, subzonal membrane; *g.*, the gut; *y.*, umbilical vesicle or yolk-sac. The dotted line represents mesoderm; the dark, hypoblast. The second figure shows origin of allantois, and the amnion folds have met. The third figure shows increase of allantois (*al.*); the dwindling yolk-sac (*y.s.*); *a.c.*, amniotic cavity; *sz.m.*, subzonal membrane. The fourth figure shows the embryo apart from its membranes; *m.*, mouth; *a.*, anus. Note umbilical connection with yolk-sac.



the embryo, arching over it to form the amnion. Over the embryo the folds of amnion meet in a cupola, and the inner layers of the double fold unite to form the "amnion proper," while the outer layers also unite to form a layer lying internally to the epiblastic blastocyst wall,—and termed by Sir William Turner *the subzonal membrane*. The folds of amnion are continued, as the diagram shows, ventrally as well as dorsally, so that the subzonal membrane

surrounds the embryo beneath the blastocyst wall, while a splanchnic layer of mesoblast grows round about the hypoblastic yolk-sac.

The space between the two layers of mesoblast, which are termed somatopleure and splanchnopleure, is continuous with the body cavity of the embryo. The epiblastic outer wall or trophoblast, and the mesoblastic subzonal membrane, are included in Hubrecht's term — diplotrophoblast.

(5) From the hind-wall of the gut there grows out a hypoblastic sac, the allantois, insinuating itself and spreading out in the space between the two layers of mesoblast. As an outgrowth of the gut, homologous with the bladder of the frog, the allantois is lined by hypoblast or endoderm, but it is covered externally by a layer of mesoblast, which it bears with it as it grows. In all placental Mammals, the allantois, which becomes richly vascular, unites with the subzonal membrane, and therefore with the external epiblast as well, to form the foetal part of the placenta, with outgrowing

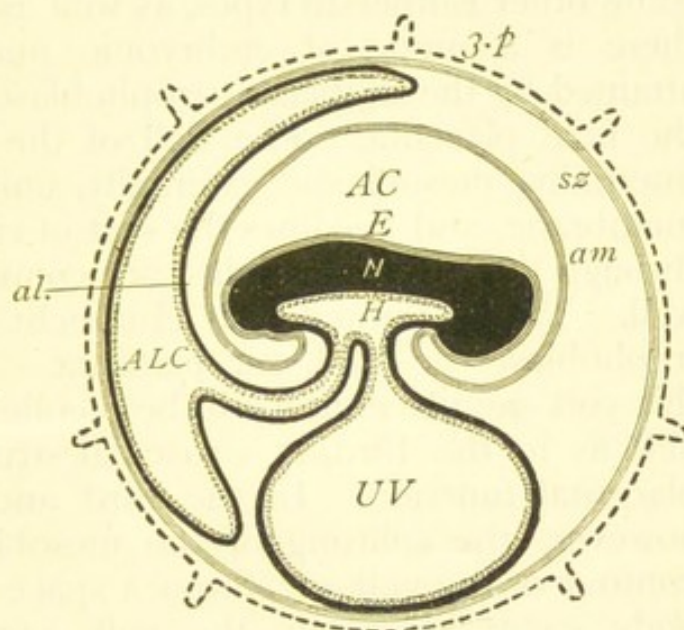


FIG. 295.—Diagram of foetal membranes.—  
After Turner.

E., Embryo; H., gut lined by hypoblast, dotted; the dark is mesoblast; UV., umbilical vesicle or yolk-sac; AC., amniotic cavity; am., amnion proper; sz., subzonal membrane; ALC., allantoic cavity; al., allantois; szp., may be here taken to represent the early epiblastic trophoblast. The figure does not show that the amnion folds consist of both epiblast and mesoblast.



vascular processes or villi, which fit into corresponding depressions or crypts on the wall of the uterus. [To the mesoblastic wall of the allantois, plus the subzonal membrane, the term "chorion" is sometimes applied, but as the word has been used in many different senses, its abandonment is almost imperative.] The complex union of allantois with diplotrophoblast, Hubrecht calls the allantoidean trophoblast. (6) But in the hedgehog, rabbit, and some other Eutherian types, as well as in certain Marsupials, there is a mode of embryonic nutrition between that attained by the epiblastic trophoblast and that effected by the final placenta. The wall of the yolk-sac, hypoblastic internally, mesoblastic externally, unites with the subzonal membrane, and becomes the seat of villous processes, which through the external epiblast are connected with the uterine wall. Thus is formed what Hubrecht calls an omphaloidean trophoblast or yolk-sac placenta. In connection with this yolk-sac placenta it will be recollected that the yolk-sac, here as in the Bird, is a vascular structure well fitted for a placental function. In the Bird and in most Mammals, however, the splitting of the mesoblast as it follows the contour of the yolk-sac, forms a space—the extra-embryonic body cavity, between the yolk-sac and the subzonal membrane. When a yolk-sac placenta is developed, the splitting of the mesoblast is retarded, so that the vascular yolk-sac comes to lie close under the subzonal membrane. This is especially well seen in *Perameles* (see Fig. 292), and is of much importance in the formation of an efficient yolk-sac placenta.

(7) The embryo lay at first in a groove of the uterine wall, moored by the preliminary blastocyst villi, which are as it were pathfinders for those subsequently developed from yolk-sac and allantoic regions. At the point of attachment the mucous lining of the uterus ceases to be glandular, and becomes much more vascular. As the embryo becomes fixed, the blastocyst almost eating its way in, the outer epithelium degenerates and disappears; below this the next layer of the mucous membrane becomes spongy and exhibits unique blood spaces, forming what Hubrecht calls the trophospongia; below this there is the vascular and vitally active remainder of the mucosa, less modified than



the above-mentioned sponge; below this again there are the muscular and other elements of the uterine wall, with which we are not now concerned. The most important fact to emphasise is, that the maternal blood in the spaces of the spongy outer layer of the mucous membrane directly bathes the foetal tissue represented by the trophoblast. By the activity of the trophoblast cells, the nutritive and respiratory advantages of the maternal blood are secured for the villi of the allantois and yolk-sac. It ought also to be mentioned that, mainly by a folding of the uterine wall, the hedgehog embryo is virtually enclosed in a maternal sheath, homologous with a fold called the decidua reflexa in human embryology, and analogous with a similar capsule in the rabbit.

To sum up—

1. At an early stage a wall of epiblast encloses an aggregate of hypoblast (Figs. 290, 291, I., 293).
2. The epiblast divides into an embryonic disc and an outer blastocyst wall, with fixing and nutritive functions,—the trophoblast (Figs. 291, I. and II.).
3. The hypoblast becomes a sac, of which the upper portion lines the gut, while the lower part forms the yolk-sac (Fig. 291, III.).
4. The mesoblast divides into somatic and splanchnic layers; a double fold of the somatic layer (along with a slight sheet of epiblast) forms the amnion, of which the outer limbs unite as the subzonal membrane, and form, along with the external epiblast, the diplotrophoblast. The splanchnic layer of the mesoblast is continued round the yolk-sac (Fig. 294).
5. The allantois grows out from the hind region of the gut, being lined internally by hypoblast, externally by splanchnic mesoblast. The allantois plus the diplotrophoblast always forms the true placenta (Fig. 295).
6. Part of the yolk-sac wall, uniting with the diplotrophoblast, also forms an efficient but temporary placenta.
7. At the area of fixing, the uterine epithelium degenerates, the glands disappear, vascularity increases. The outer part of the modified mucous membrane (or decidua) becomes a spongy tissue, with spaces filled with maternal blood. This maternal blood bathes the trophoblast, which is intermediate between it and the placental villi.

The three modes of embryonic nutrition are as follows:—

- (a) At first the maternal blood bathes the lacunæ in the epiblastic outer wall—the trophoblast with its preliminary pathfinding villi.
- (b) An efficient yolk-sac placenta functions for a time, but decreases and shrivels as the final allantoidean placenta develops. The



Again, the anatomical relations may be summed up in tabular form :—

EPIBLAST.	MESOBLAST.	HYPOBLAST.
(1) Embryonic (formative).	(1) Embryonic (formative).	(1) Embryonic (formative).
(2) Extra-embryonic (attaching, protective, nutritive).	(2) Extra-embryonic. Somatic + (a <sup>1</sup> ) Amnion proper.	(2) Extra-embryonic (lining allantois and yolk-sac).
(a) Thin sheet along with amnion.		
<i>Allantoic placenta.</i> { (b) Outer wall of blastocyst, the "trophoblast."	(b <sup>1</sup> ) Subzonal membrane.	(b <sup>3</sup> ) Inner lining of allantois.
<i>Yolk-sac placenta.</i> {	(b <sup>2</sup> ) Outer lining of allantois.	(c <sup>3</sup> ) Inner lining of yolk-sac.
Diplotrophoblast.		<i>Yolk-sac placenta.</i>
	(c <sup>2</sup> ) Outer layer of yolk-sac.	



maternal blood in the spaces of the outer layer of the mucous layer of the uterus bathes the trophoblast. Thus it comes into indirect connection with the vascular villi from the region where the yolk-sac wall unites with the diplotrophoblast. This yolk-sac placenta is well seen in Insectivora, Chiroptera, Rodentia, the horse, etc., and seems to be to some extent developed in all Mammals (except Monotremes) as yet examined.

(c) The final placenta is allantoidean.

In the above description the yolk-sac placenta has been emphasised on account of its comparative importance, but it must be clearly under-

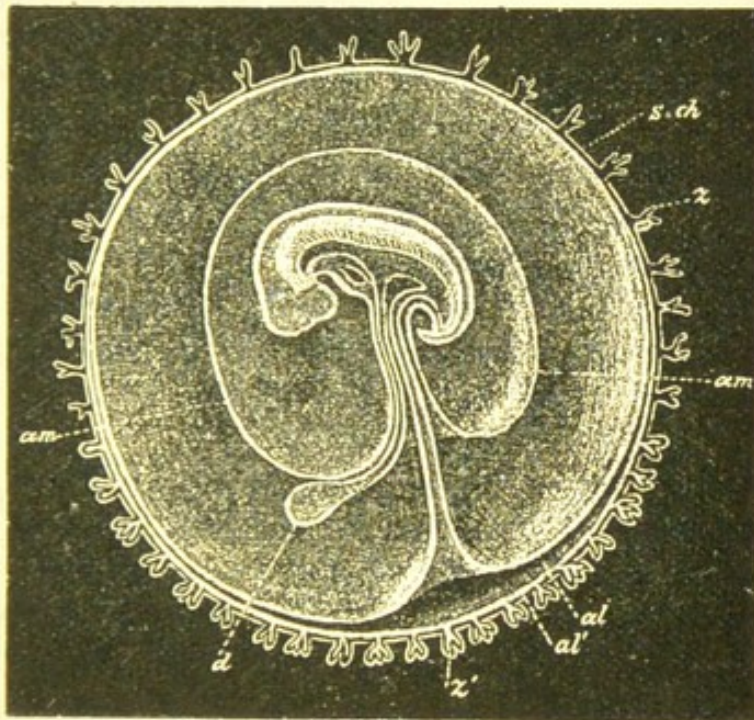


FIG. 296.—View of embryo, with its foetal membranes.  
—After Kennel.

*am.*, Amnion proper ; *d.*, dwindled yolk-sac ; *al.*, allantois ; *al'*, subzonal membrane ; *z.*, villi. Outside the subzonal membrane there is the delicate ectodermic trophoblast (*z'.*).

stood that the allantoic placenta is often the only one well developed, and is always of supreme importance in reference to the nutrition of the embryo.

From the comparative standpoint the most important variations in regard to the placenta are—first, the method of distribution of the villi on the surface of the allantois ; and second, the extent of the connection between maternal and foetal tissues. Where the connection is very intimate, parts of the maternal tissue come away at birth, and the placenta is said to be deciduate. Where there is a less close interlocking, the foetal villi are simply withdrawn from the maternal crypts, and the placenta is indeciduate. In *Perameles*, and to a less extent in the mole (*Talpa*), not only is there no loss of maternal tissue, but part—in



*Perameles* the greater part—of the foetal portion of the placenta is absorbed *in situ* by maternal leucocytes, a condition described by Hubrecht as contra-deciduate. The distinction between the deciduate and indeciduate forms is not perfectly sharp, and Hubrecht prefers the older terms, Caducous and Non-Caducous.

#### THE CUSTOMARY CLASSIFICATION OF PLACENTATION.

Caducous or Deciduate. (Vascular parts of maternal placenta come away at birth.)	{	<i>Meta-Discoidal</i> .—Villi, at first scattered, are } <i>Homo</i> and restricted to a disc. } Monkeys.
		Around the embryo the maternal mucous membrane forms a capsule ( <i>decidua reflexa</i> ), also seen in hedge- hog.
		<i>Discoidal</i> .—Villi on a circular cake-like disc. { Rodentia. Insectivora (in the mole inde- ciduate and in part contra- deciduate) and Chiroptera. Most Edentata. <i>Perameles</i> (contra-decidu- ate).
		<i>Zonary</i> .—Villi on a partial or complete girdle round the embryo. { Carnivora. Elephants and Hyrax. <i>Orycteropus</i> and <i>Dasytus</i> among Edentata. Dugong (wholly or in great part non-deciduate).
Non-Caducous or Indeciduate. (Maternal part of placenta does not come away at birth.)	{	<i>Cotyledonary</i> .—Villi in patches. Ruminants.
		<i>Diffuse</i> .—Scattered Villi. { Lemurs. Most Ungulates, except Ruminants. Cetacea. <i>Manis</i> among Edentata.

There is some uncertainty as to the primitive form of the placenta, but the fact that it is discoidal in *Perameles*, seems to confirm Balfour's view that this form must be placed lowest.

The formation of the allantoic placenta in *Perameles* is in essentials the same as in Eutherian Mammals, but in details there are some striking differences. The most noteworthy of these is, perhaps, that the cells of the uterine epithelium, instead of disappearing at an early stage, as in Eutherian Mammals, proliferate greatly, lose their cell outlines, and by the increase of the nuclei form what is known as a syncytium. Later this syncytial layer becomes highly vascular, and forms the maternal portion of the placenta, whereas, as already seen, in Eutheria



it is the uterine mucosa which forms the maternal part of the placenta. Into the vascular syncytium the allantoic capillaries grow down, until ultimately maternal and foetal vessels are separated merely by their endothelial walls and a mere trace of syncytial protoplasm. The connection between the yolk-sac wall and the uterus is effected in a similar manner.

### GENERAL LIFE OF MAMMALS.

Most Mammals live on dry land. The bats, however, have the power of flight, and various forms are able to take long swooping leaps from tree to tree. Thus there are "flying phalangers," such as *Petaurus*, among Marsupials; "flying squirrels," such as *Pteromys*, among Rodents; "flying lemurs" (*Galeopithecus*), allied to Insectivores. Not a few are aquatic,—all the Cetaceans, the two Sirenians, and the Pinniped Carnivores, such as seals and walruses; while water-voles, beavers, otters, polar bear, and many others are also at home in the water. Burrowers are well represented by moles and rabbits; arboreal forms by squirrels and monkeys.

As to diet, man, many monkeys, the pigs, and many others, may be called omnivorous; kangaroos, hoofed animals, and most rodents are herbivorous; the Echidna, the ant-eaters, hedgehogs and shrews, and most bats, are insectivorous; most of the Carnivora are carnivorous; dolphins and seals feed chiefly on fishes; but in most cases the diet varies not a little with the available food-supply.

The struggle for existence among Mammals is sometimes keen among fellows of the same kind; thus the brown rat (*Mus decumanus*) tends to drive away the black rat (*M. rattus*); but stress, due to over-population, is sometimes mitigated by migration, as in the case of the lemmings. The struggle seems to be keener between foes of different kinds, between carnivores and herbivores, between birds of prey and small mammals; but combination for mutual defence often mitigates the intensity of the conflict. Teeth and claws, hoofs and horns, are the chief weapons, while the scales of pangolins, the bony shields of armadillos, the spines of hedgehogs and porcupines, and the thick hide of the rhinoceros, may be regarded as protective armature. In keeping their foothold some Mammals are helped by the



harmony between their colouring and that of their surroundings ; thus the white Arctic fox and hare are inconspicuous on the snow, the striped tiger is hidden in the jungle, and many tawny animals harmonise with the sandy background of the desert.

The majority of Mammals are gregarious, witness the herds of herbivores, the cities of the prairie-dogs, the packs of wolves, the schools of porpoises, the bands of monkeys. Combinations for attack and for defence are common ; sentinels are posted and social conventions are respected ; such migrations as those of the lemming and reindeer are characteristically social. In the beaver village and among monkeys there is combination in work, and their communal life seems prophetic of that sociality which is distinctively human.

Among Birds, mates are won by beauty of song and plumage ; Mammals not less characteristically woo by force. Rival males fight with one another, and are usually larger and stronger than their mates. The antlers of male deer, the tusk of the male narwhal, the large canine teeth of boars, illustrate secondary sexual characters useful as weapons. But manes and beards, bright colours and odoriferous glands, are often more developed in the males than in the females, and may be of advantage in the rough mammalian courtship. At the breeding season a remarkable organic reaction often affects the animal : the timid hare becomes a fierce combatant, and love is often stronger than hunger. The courtship of Mammals is usually like a storm—violent but passing ; for, after pairing, the males return to their ordinary life, and the females become maternal. Some monkeys are faithfully monogamous ; and exceptional pairs, such as beavers and some antelopes, remain constant year after year ; but this is not the way of the majority.

The duckmole lays eggs and brings up her young in the shelter of the burrow ; the Echidna has a temporary pouch. In Marsupials the time of gestation is very short, and there is rarely a true placental union between the unborn young and the mother. The new-born Marsupials are very helpless, and are in most cases transferred to an external pouch or marsupium, within which they are nurtured. In Eutherian



Mammals the gestation usually lasts much longer than in Marsupials,—its duration varying to some extent with the rank in the mammalian series, but there are great differences in the condition of the young at birth. “In those forms,” Sir W. H. Flower says, “which habitually live in holes, like many Rodents, the young are always very helpless at birth; and the same is also true of many of the Carnivora, which are well able to defend their young from attack. In the great order of Ungulates or Hoofed Mammals, where in the majority of cases defence from foes depends upon fleetness of foot, or upon huge corporeal bulk, the young are born in a very highly developed condition, and are able almost at once to run by the side of the parent. This state of relative maturity at birth reaches its highest development in the Cetacea, where it is evidently associated with the peculiar conditions under which these animals pass their existence.”

The maternal sacrifice involved in the placental union between the mother and her “foetal parasite,” in the prolonged gestation, in the nourishment of the young on milk, and in the frequently brave defence of the young against attack, has been rewarded in the success of the mammalian race, and has been justified in the course of natural selection. But it is important to recognise that the maternal sacrifice—whatever its origin may have been—expresses a subordination of self-preserving to species-maintaining. Thus other-regarding as well as self-regarding activities have been factors in evolution.

**History of Mammals.**—As to the origin of Mammals we can only speculate. There are some remarkable resemblances between Monotremes and certain extinct Reptilian types, known as Anomodontia or Theromorpha, and these again exhibit affinities with the extinct Labyrinthodont Amphibians. Amphibians and Mammals agree in having two occipital condyles, small quadrates, large squamosals, and in certain characteristics of pectoral and pelvic girdles. Possibly the ancestral Mammals and the Theromorph Reptiles diverged from a common Amphibian stock.

The oldest known remains of Mammals are some fossils from Triassic rocks, and similar types have been found in Cretaceous and Jurassic beds; most of these Mesozoic fossils are but small pieces of small animals, and secure conclusions as to their nature are not readily reached. The earliest suggest affinities with Marsupials and Insectivora. Many of the Mesozoic Mammals belong to a group which has received the name of Multituberculata, on account of the longitudinal rows of tubercles on the back teeth. It is probable that these forms,



*e.g. Plagiaulax, Tritylodon, Polymastodon*, should be ranked beside the Monotremes.

Other Mesozoic forms, such as *Dromatherium, Triconodon, Amphilestes*, are often referred to the Marsupial series beside opossum, dasyure, and bandicoot.

The first certain remains of Eutherian Mammals are found in Eocene strata, and give evidence of the existence of generalised types connecting rather than referable to the modern orders. Many are characterised by the presence of three tubercles on the back teeth, and of five digits on the limbs, and by having brains relatively smaller than those of their modern successors.

Among extinct Tertiary types we may especially notice the ground sloths (*e.g. Megatherium*) and Glyptodonts allied to the modern Edentata, the Zeuglodonts sometimes included among Cetaceans, numerous ancestral Ungulates, and the Creodonts allied to modern Carnivores.

As already noticed, the recent discovery of an allantoic placenta in *Perameles*, and the researches on the teeth of the same genus, suggest that the Eutheria and Metatheria arose from a common stock; but the relation of these sub-classes to the Monotremes remains uncertain.

## SYSTEMATIC SURVEY OF THE ORDERS OF MAMMALIA.

- I. Sub-class PROTOTHERIA or ORNITHODELPHIA, Orders Monotremata, and Allotheria or Multituberculata.
- II. „ METATHERIA or DIDELPHIA, Orders Polyprotodontia and Diprotodontia.
- III. „ EUTHERIA or MONODELPHIA.

### Orders of EUTHERIA.

- 1. Edentata.
- 2. Sirenia.
- 3. Ungulata.
  - Artiodactyla. } Ungulata Vera.
  - Perissodactyla. }
  - Hyracoidea.
  - Proboscidea.
  - Extinct sub-orders.
- 4. Cetacea.
  - Mystacoceti—baleen cetaceans.
  - Archæoceti—(extinct types).
  - Odontoceti—toothed cetaceans.



5. Rodentia.  
Simplicidentata.  
Duplicidentata.
6. Carnivora.  
Carnivora Vera.  
Pinnipedia.  
Creodonta (extinct).
7. Insectivora.  
Insectivora Vera.  
Dermoptera.
8. Chiroptera.  
Megachiroptera.  
Microchiroptera.
9. Lemuroidea.     }
10. Anthropoidea. } = Primates.

Sub-class PROTOTHERIA (*Syn.* ORNITHODELPHIA),  
Orders Monotremata and Allotheria.

The Monotremes include the duckmole (*Ornithorhynchus anatinus*), the spiny ant-eater (*Echidna aculeata*), and a third form resembling *Echidna*, but often referred to a distinct genus as *Proechidna*. These are the lowest Mammals, very different from all the rest, and they exhibit affinities with Sauropsida, and perhaps even with Amphibia. It need hardly be said that they have no special affinities with Birds.

The duckmole is found in the rivers of Australia and Tasmania; *Echidna*, in Australia, Tasmania, and New Guinea; *Proechidna* in New Guinea.

In *Ornithorhynchus* the skin is covered with soft fur; in *Echidna* and *Proechidna* there are spines among the hairs. The mammary glands in the female *Ornithorhynchus* open on a flat patch; in *Echidna*, in a depressed area around which a temporary pouch seems to be developed. There are no distinct mammæ.

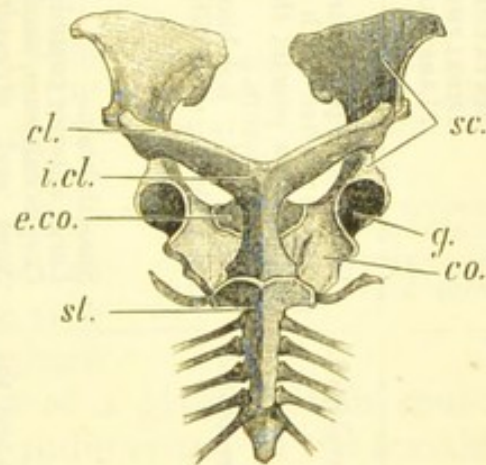


FIG. 297.—Pectoral girdle of *Echidna*.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

sc., Scapula; cl., clavicle; i.cl., interclavicle; co., metacoracoid; e.co., epicoracoid; st., sternum.



## SOME CONTRASTS BETWEEN THE THREE SUB-CLASSES OF MAMMALS.

PROTOTHERIA. ORNITHODELPHIA. MONOTREMES.	METATHERIA. DIDELPHIA. MARSUPIALS.	EUTHERIA. MONODELPHIA. PLACENTALS.
<p>Oviparous. No mammae are developed.</p> <p>Large ova, with much yolk; meroblastic segmentation.</p> <p>Smooth brain.</p> <p>Large anterior commissure.</p> <p>Corpus callosum small or absent.</p> <p>A cloaca into which the rectum and the urogenital sinus open.</p> <p>The vasa deferentia open into the urogenital sinus; the canal of the penis is not continuous with the vasa deferentia.</p> <p>The oviducts (without differentiated regions) open separately into the urogenital sinus; the ureters open not into the bladder, but into the urogenital sinus.</p> <p>The epi- and meta-coracoids reach the sternum. A strong interclavicle or episternum.</p> <p>Many other skeletal peculiarities, thus: the sutures of the skull close, the vertebral centra have indistinct epiphyses, or none.</p> <p>Two epipubic bones.</p> <p>..</p> <p>Blood temperature, 25°-28° C.</p>	<p>Young born prematurely after very short gestation; after birth they are usually nurtured in a pouch; there is rarely a true allantoic placenta.</p> <p>Small ova; holoblastic segmentation; large yolk-sac, with villi from its surface.</p> <p>Smooth brain.</p> <p>Large anterior commissure.</p> <p>Corpus callosum, small or absent.</p> <p>Anus and urogenital aperture surrounded by the same sphincter muscle; in the females there is a rudimentary cloaca, except in kangaroos.</p> <p>The scrotum is in front of the penis.</p> <p>Two uteri and two vaginae; sometimes the proximal portions of the vaginae fuse in a medium caecum or tube; ureters open into the bladder.</p> <p>The (epi-) coracoids are merely small processes of the scapulae. At most, hints of metacoracoids.</p> <p>..</p> <p>Generally two epipubic bones.</p> <p>The angle of the lower jaw is inflected (except in <i>Tarsipes</i>).</p> <p>Blood temperature, 32°-36° C.</p>	<p>During gestation the young are vitally united to the mother by a well-developed placenta.</p> <p>Small ova virtually without yolk; holoblastic segmentation. The yolk-sac is small, except in Rodentia, Insectivora, and Chiroptera, in which it forms a provisional yolk-sac placenta.</p> <p>More or less convoluted brain.</p> <p>Small anterior commissure.</p> <p>Large corpus callosum.</p> <p>Anus and urogenital aperture quite distinct.</p> <p>The scrotum (when present) is behind the penis.</p> <p>The uteri are generally more or less united in one; the vaginal portions are united; the ureters open into the bladder.</p> <p>The (epi-) coracoids are merely small processes of the scapulae. At most, hints of metacoracoids. Interclavicle only hinted at in some embryos.</p> <p>..</p> <p>Only hints of epipubic bones (some foetal Carnivores and Ungulates).</p> <p>Blood temperature, 35°-40° C.</p>



The vertebral centra have weak epiphyses in *Ornithorhynchus*, and apparently none in *Echidna*. In the duck-mole the post-sacral vertebræ are stronger than the pre-sacral. The skull is smooth and polished as in Birds, for the sutures disappear. The rami of the lower jaw do not unite in front, have no ascending process, and have a slightly inflected angle. In *Ornithorhynchus* there are true mammalian teeth, but only in the young; in *Echidna* none are present. Cervical ribs remain distinct for a time at least; the odontoid process of the second vertebra is for a long time free from the centrum. Except on the atlas of *Echidna*, the cervical vertebræ are without zygapophyses or articular processes. The (meta-) coracoids reach the præsternum; there are also large epicoracoids and a T-shaped interclavicle, the whole girdle resembling that of Lizards. An interclavicle is, however, recognisable in the embryos of some Placentals also. In *Ornithorhynchus* the ischia form a long ventral symphysis; in *Echidna* the acetabulum socket for the femur is incompletely ossified (reminding one of birds, though it is only a secondary peculiarity); the pubes bear epipubic bones, as in Marsupials. On the side of the tarsus, in the duckmole, there is a spur perforated by the duct of a gland. This spur is well developed in the males, but rudimentary in the females. The male *Echidna* has a similar but smaller spur. The fibula has a proximal process like an olecranon.

The brain is smooth, the cerebellum is not covered by the cerebrum, there is a large anterior commissure, and the corpus callosum is rudimentary, or, according to Symington, absent.

The food canal ends in a cloaca.

The right auriculo-ventricular valve in *Ornithorhynchus* is partly muscular as in Birds, while in other Mammals it is membranous and worked by papillary muscles attached to it by tendon-like cords (chordæ tendineæ). The temper-

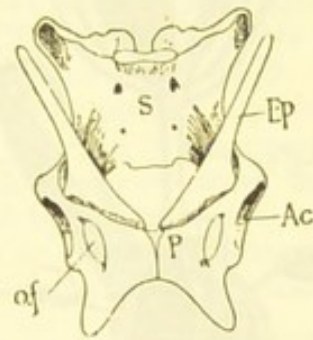


FIG. 298. — Pelvis of *Echidna*.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

S., Sacrum; Ep., epipubic bones; Ac., acetabulum; o.f., obturator foramen between ischium and pubis (p.).



ature of the blood is about  $25^{\circ}$ – $28^{\circ}$  C., and is noteworthy in being unusually variable.

The ureters open, not into the bladder, but into the urogenital canal, as they do in the embryos of higher Mammals.

The testes remain in the abdomen. The left ovary is larger than the right, as in Birds. The vasa deferentia open separately into the urogenital canal. So in the

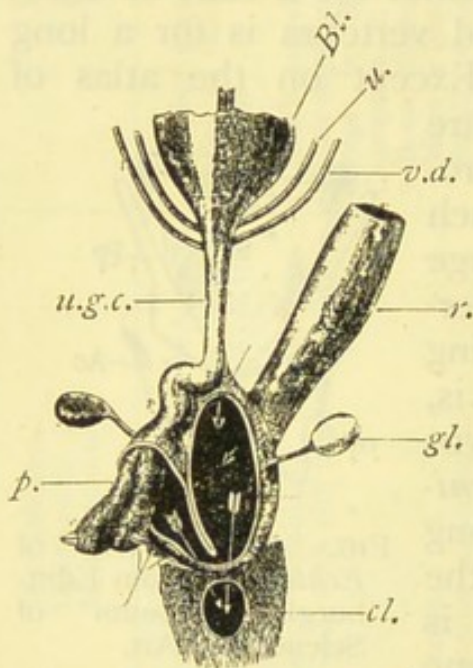


FIG. 299. — Urogenital organs of male duckmole. — After Owen.

*Bl.*, Bladder; *u.*, ureter; *v.d.*, vas deferens; *r.*, rectum; *gl.*, gland; *cl.*, cloaca; *p.*, penis; *u.g.c.*, urogenital canal.

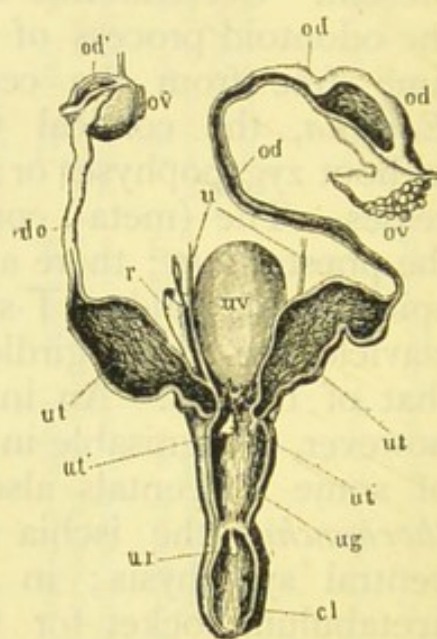


FIG. 300. — Urogenital organs of female duckmole. — After Owen.

*ov.*, Ovary; *od.*, oviduct; *od'*, internal opening of oviduct; *ut.*, "uterine" region; *ut'*, opening of "uterine" region into sinus; *u.*, ureter; *r.*, rectum; *uv.*, bladder; *ug.*, urogenital sinus; *cl.*, cloaca.

female do the oviducts, and these have no fringed fimbriated apertures nor distinct uterine region. The penis is attached to the ventral wall of the cloaca, and the urogenital canal communicates both with the cloaca and with the canal of the penis. The whole structure resembles in many ways the copulatory organ of certain Reptiles and Birds.

The ova are large, with abundant yolk, and undergo meroblastic segmentation. The Prototheria are oviparous.



The duckmole, or duck-billed platypus, lives beside lakes and rivers. It swims by means of its fore-limbs, which are webbed as well as clawed; it grubs for aquatic insects, crustaceans, and worms, in the mud at the bottom of the water. It collects small animals in its cheek pouches, and chews them at leisure with its eight horny jaw-plates. It makes long burrows in the banks, often with two openings, one above, one under the water. The animal is shy, and dives swiftly when alarmed. When about to sleep, it rolls itself into a ball. In the recesses of the burrows the eggs are laid, two at a time. The egg measures about three-quarters of an inch in length, and is enclosed in a "strong, flexible, white shell," through which the young animal has to break its way.

The full-grown duckmole measures from 18 to 20 in. in length; the male slightly exceeds his mate. The fur is short and soft, dark-brown above, lighter beneath. The jaws are flattened like the bill of a duck, and covered with naked skin, which forms a soft, sensitive collar around the region where the bill joins the skull. The eyes are very small; there is no external ear-flap or pinna; the nostrils lie near the end of the upper part of the bill. The tail is short and flat.

True teeth, three on each jaw above and below, are calcified, last for about a year, and are then lost, being replaced by horny plates, two on each jaw, above and below. The spur borne on the heel seems to be sometimes used as a weapon, and as it persists only in the males, is perhaps useful in contests between rivals.

*Echidna* and *Proechidna* live in rocky regions, are mainly nocturnal in habit, and burrow rapidly, legs foremost. They feed on ants, which are caught on the rapidly mobile, slender, viscid tongue. No traces of teeth have as yet been seen.

Strong spines occur thickly in *Echidna*, more sparsely in *Proechidna* among the hairs. The snout is prolonged into a slender tube. The limbs bear five toes, two of which in *Proechidna* are often without claws and somewhat rudimentary. In *Echidna* the eggs seem to be hatched in a temporarily developed pouch.

The Allotheria or Multituberculata include small extinct Mammals (from Triassic to Eocene) with multituberculate molars, *e.g.* *Plagiaulax*, *Microlestes*, *Tritylodon*.

### Sub-class METATHERIA, DIDELPHIA, OR MARSUPIALIA.

With the exception of the American opossums, and a little-known mouse-like animal (*Cænolestes*) from S. America, all the Marsupials now alive are natives of Australasia. But fossil remains found in Europe and America show that they once had a wide range. As there are no higher Mammals indisputably indigenous to Australasia, it seems as if the insulation of that region had occurred after the Marsupials had gained possession, but before higher mammalian competitors had arrived. Thus



saved and insulated, the Marsupials have evolved in many different directions.

The brain is less developed than in Eutherian Mammals, for the convolutions are simple or absent, the anterior commissure is large, the corpus callosum is practically absent. In the skeleton there are several peculiarities; thus the angle of the lower jaw is more or less inflected, except in the genus *Tarsipes*; the jugal reaches far back to share in making the glenoid cavity; there is practically only one set of teeth; there are more incisors above than below (except in the wombat), and the number of incisors sometimes exceeds three on each side. There are usually epipubic or marsupial bones in front of the pubic symphysis. These have no connection with the marsupium, as is evident from

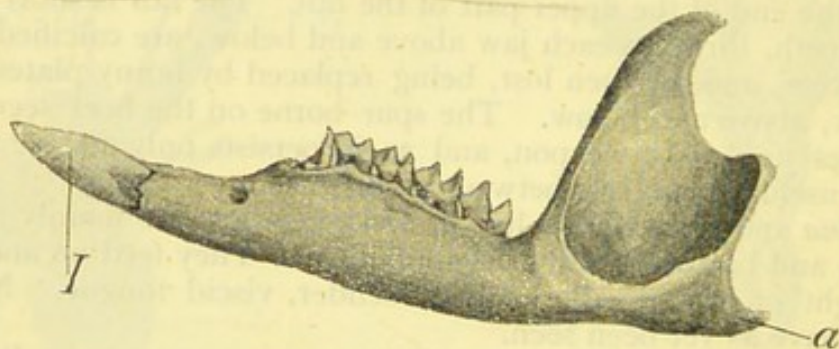


FIG. 301.—Lower jaw of kangaroo.

*a.*, Inflected angle; *I.*, single incisor.

the fact that they occur in both sexes; they are sesamoids developed in the inner tendon of the external oblique muscle of the abdomen.

The teeth cannot be readily reduced to the typical Eutherian formula. According to recent research, the milk set is degenerate, and is usually represented only by the last premolar, which in most cases cuts the gum, and is for a time functional. The other teeth correspond to the permanent set of the Eutheria. According to another view, the functional teeth are milk-teeth. In living Marsupials there seems to be a suppression of what, in typical placentals, would be called the second premolar.

A common sphincter muscle surrounds the anus and the urogenital aperture, and in the females (except kangaroos) the anus lies so much within the urogenital sinus that the arrangement may be described as cloacal. The scrotal sac containing the testes lies in front of the penis—a unique



position. The genital ducts of the females are often separate throughout, so that there are two uteri and two vaginae. But the bent proximal parts of the vaginae sometimes fuse and form a cæcum, which, according to the degree of fusion, may be a single tube or divided by a partition. Moreover, in Bennett's kangaroo, the cæcum opens independently into the cloaca between the apertures of the distal portions of the vaginae, and forms the so-called third vagina. In *Perameles*, although such a median passage does not exist in the young female, it is formed by a process of rupture at the period of parturition. The true vaginae are apparently too narrow to allow for the passage of the embryos.

The allantois in *Perameles*, as already seen, forms a true allantoic placenta; in *Phascolarctos* it fuses with the subzonal membrane, becomes highly vascular, and functions as an embryonic respiratory organ, but does not unite with the uterine wall; in all other Marsupials, so far as is known, it is small, only projects slightly into the extra-embryonic body cavity, and is apparently functionless. According to Hill, the condition seen in *Perameles* is primitive, and the other Marsupials show degeneration. The wall of the umbilical vesicle or yolk-sac is highly vascular, and may unite with the uterine wall to form a yolk-sac placenta.

The gestation is short, only lasting a fortnight in the opossum, about five weeks in the kangaroo; whereas that of the mare, for instance, is about eleven months. Except in some opossums, there is a marsupial pouch, usually with a forward-directed aperture. Within this pouch are the teats, and here the delicate young are nurtured after birth. As they are unable to suck, the milk is forced down their throat, the mammary gland being compressed by the cremaster muscle which covers it. Vague vestiges of a marsupium are said to be visible in some Placentals.

**Classification of Marsupials.**—The Marsupials are divided into two sub-orders, each of which contains four families. The two sets are defined by the characters of the teeth, which are, of course, adapted to habit. In the members of the first sub-order the incisors are numerous (not less than  $\frac{4}{3}$ ), small, and almost equal in size; while the canines are large, and the molars furnished with sharp cusps. The whole dentition presents a striking resemblance to that of the Eutherian Carnivores. To this group the name Polyprotodontia is applied, and the forms included in it are typically carnivorous or insectivorous. The cæcum is absent or very small.



In the remaining families the incisors are usually  $\frac{3}{1}$  in number, and those above are of unequal size, the centre ones being largest. The canines are usually small or absent; the molars are furnished with blunt tubercles, or transverse ridges. To these typically herbivorous forms the name Diprotodont is applied; they are more highly specialised than the Polyprotodonts, and are more modern. They have a cæcum.

#### A. POLYPROTODONTIA.

1. Family Didelphyidæ.—American opossums, distributed from the United States to Patagonia, arboreal in habit, usually carnivorous or insectivorous in diet. The limbs have five clawed digits; the hallux is opposable. The tail is generally long, and often prehensile. The stomach is simple; the cæcum small. The pouch is generally absent, but the young are often carried on the back of the mother, their tails coiled round hers. Dentition,

$$\frac{5134}{4134}$$

Examples.—The Virginian or crab-eating opossum (*Didelphys marsupialis*), with a pouch; the woolly opossum (*D. lanigera*); the aquatic Yapock (*Chironectes*), which feeds on fish and smaller water animals.

2. Family Dasyuridæ.—Carnivorous or insectivorous Marsupials. The limbs have clawed digits, five in front, four or five behind. The canines are generally large. The stomach is simple; there is no cæcum.

Examples.—The Tasmanian wolf (*Thylacinus*), of dog-like form, dentition  $\frac{4134}{3134}$ , and the Dasyure (*Dasyurus*), civet-like, dentition  $\frac{4124}{3124}$ , are specialised as carnivores. The members of the genus *Phascogale* are small and insectivorous. The banded ant-eater (*Myrmecobius*) of W. and S. Australia, a somewhat squirrel-like animal, has a long thread-like protrusible tongue, and more teeth than any other Marsupial  $\frac{4135 \text{ or } 6}{3135 \text{ or } 6}$ . It differs markedly from the other members of the family.

3. Family Notoryctidæ.—This family has been erected for the recently-discovered mole-like Marsupial (*Notoryctes typhlops*), found in the sandy deserts of S. Australia. It lives underground, is a rapid burrower, and in its rudimentary eyes, keeled sternum, and some other respects, markedly resembles the Eutherian mole. It is thus a good illustration of "convergence," i.e. the appearance of similar characters in forms not nearly related, apparently in indirect response to similar conditions of life.
4. Family Peramelidæ.—The burrowing bandicoots, all small in size, insectivorous or omnivorous in diet. In the fore-feet two or three of the middle toes are well developed and clawed, the others being rudimentary; in the hind-feet the hallux is small or absent, the second and third toes are very slender and united in the same fold of skin, the fourth toe is very large, the fifth



smaller,—the whole foot suggesting that of the kangaroo. The stomach is simple ; the cæcum not large. Clavicles are absent.

Dentition,  $\frac{4 \text{ or } 5}{3} \frac{13}{4}$ .

Examples.—The true bandicoot (*Perameles*), remarkable for its allantoic placenta ; the native rabbit (*Peragale lagotis*) ; the rat-like *Choropus*.

## B. DIPROTODONTIA.

1. Family Epanorthidæ.—The selvas, a family of S. American forms, till recently believed to be entirely extinct. The existing forms are included in the genus *Cenolestes*, and two specimens only have been found, but fossil remains are abundant. All are small, and are remarkable in having the upper jaw of the polyprotodont type, and the lower distinctly diprotodont ; and also in having all the digits of the hind-foot free, whereas in all other living Diprotodonts certain of these are united by skin (syndactylous). They are probably primitive forms, and their presence in S. America is highly important. There seems little doubt that the Diprotodonts have been evolved in the Australian area from a primitive widely-spread polyprotodont stock. If, therefore, the Epanorthidæ are really allied to the Diprotodonts, their existence in S. America seems to indicate a former connection between that continent and Australia.
2. Family Phascolomyidæ.—The wombats, terrestrial, vegetarian, nocturnal Marsupials, somewhat bear-like in appearance. The dentition is rodent-like,  $\frac{1014}{1014}$ , the teeth have persistent pulps, the incisors are chisel-edged, there being no enamel except in front. In the embryo, however, there are four upper incisors, of which the first persists, and five lower incisors, of which the third persists. The fore-feet have five distinct toes, with strong nails ; the hind-feet have a small nailless hallux, the second, third, and fourth toes partly united by skin, the fifth distinct. The tail is very short. The stomach is simple ; the cæcum very short.

There is but one genus—*Phascolomys*, with three species.

3. Family Phalangeridæ.—Small woolly arboreal nocturnal Marsupials, with vegetarian or mixed diet. The fore-feet have five distinct toes ; the hind-feet have a large, nailless, opposable hallux, the second and third toes are narrow and bound together by skin, the fourth and fifth free. The tail is generally long and prehensile. The stomach is simple, the cæcum usually large.

Average dental formula,  $\frac{3, 1, 2-3, 3-4}{1, 0, 0-2, 3-4}$ .

Examples.—The grey Cuscus (*Phalanger orientalis*) ; *Tarsipes*, a small mouse-like animal which feeds on honey, and is remarkable in having no inflection of the angle of the mandible and no cæcum ; the flying phalangers (*Petaurus*), with a parachute of skin extending from the little finger to the ankle ; the Koala, or “native bear” (*Phascolarctos cinereus*), a relatively



large form, about 2 ft. in length. An extinct form, *Thylacoleo*, of the late Tertiary period of Australia, is interesting in its extraordinary dentition, the functional teeth being reduced to large front incisors and the third premolars, both adapted for sharp cutting.

4. Family Macropodidæ.—Kangaroos, herbivorous terrestrial Marsupials. Dentition,  $\frac{3, 0-1, 2, 4}{1, 0, 2, 4}$ . The incisors are sharp, and suited for cropping herbage. The hind-legs are usually larger than the fore-legs, and the animals move by leaps.

Examples.—The true kangaroos, e.g. *Macropus*; the rat-kangaroos or potoroos (*Potorous*); the genus *Hypsiprymnodon*, with a foot approaching that of the Phalangers.

The true kangaroos, belonging to the genus *Macropus*, include the largest living Marsupials; but within the genus there is much difference in size.

The grey kangaroo (*M. giganteus*) lives on the grassy plains of Eastern Australia and Tasmania, and is as tall as a man; the Wallabies, at home in the bush, are smaller, and some are no bigger than rabbits.

The hind-limbs seem disproportionately long, and are well suited for rapid bounding. The long tail, carried horizontally, helps to balance the stooping body as the animal leaps, and it gives additional stability to the erect pose. The fore-limbs sometimes come to the ground when the animal is feeding, and in the largest species they are strong enough to throttle a man.

The fore-limbs bear five clawed digits; the hind-feet have only four. The hallux is absent; the fourth toe is very long; the fifth is about half as large; the third and second are too slender to be useful for more than scratching, and are bound together by the skin (syndactylous).

The length of the hind-limb is due to the tibia and fibula, and to the foot. The clavicles and fore-arm are well developed. The epipubic or marsupial bones are large.

The kangaroos feed on herbage, and are often hunted down on account of the damage which they do to pastures and crops. The sharp incisors are suited for cropping the grass and herbs, which the ridged and tuberculated molars crush.

As the kangaroos are exclusively herbivorous, it is not surprising to find that the stomach is large and complex, with numerous saccules on its walls. The whole gut is long, and there is a well-developed cæcum.

Numerous fossil forms related to the kangaroos are found in Australia, some considerably larger than the existing forms. The gigantic *Diprotodon australis*, which was as large as a rhinoceros, is

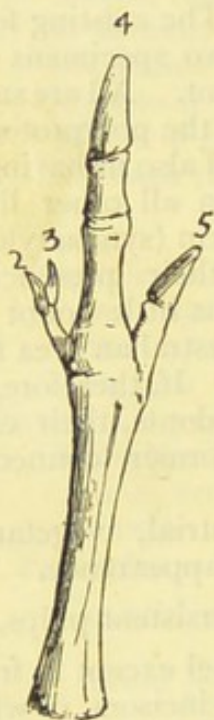


FIG. 302. — Foot of young kangaroo.

2, 3, Small syndactylous toes; 4, large fourth toe; 5, fifth toe.



related both to the kangaroos and the phalangers. Except the S. American forms already mentioned, Diprotodont marsupials are unknown, either living or fossil, outside the Australian area. Forms related to the Polyprotodonts are, on the other hand, common as fossils in both Europe and America. In S. America, further, fossil marsupials related to the Dasyuridæ occur; and as these are not known elsewhere, their presence affords a further confirmation of the view that Australia and Patagonia were once connected.

Sub-class EUTHERIA. Order EDENTATA.

This order includes five very distinct families with living representatives—the New World sloths, ant-eaters, and armadillos, the Old World pangolins and aard-varks. These modern forms are specialised survivors of a waning order, and they show many interesting protective peculiarities of structure and habit which secure their persistence. Thus some are arboreal, others are burrowers, and many are covered with strong armature of bone or of horn.

While the existing sloths, ant-eaters, and armadillos are not nearly related to one another, the numerous fossil Edentates found in S. America connect them to a common stock. It is otherwise, however, with the pangolins and the aard-varks, whose relations to each other and to the other Edentates are exceedingly uncertain. Some authorities separate them (as *Nomarthra* or *Effodientia*) from the American Edentates (*Xenarthra*); but according to others there is little evidence that the pangolins and aard-varks are related to each other. In view of the uncertainty, it will be readily understood that few "general characters" of Edentates can be given. Almost the only common characters of Edentates concern the dentition. Functional teeth may be absent, but the ant-eaters (*Myrmecophagidæ*) are the only forms which still appear strictly edentulous. When present, the teeth are uniform, usually simple, without roots, and with persistent pulp. They are never present in the fore part of the mouth, and they have not more than hints of enamel. Till recently the dentition was described as monophyodont, but there is evidence of two sets in *Tatusia*, *Orycteropus*, *Dasypus*, and others. It is the milk set which disappears.

The placenta shows much variation in character throughout the order, but the reproductive phenomena are somewhat imperfectly known. In the sloths and ant-eaters the placenta is usually described as dome-shaped; but according to some authorities this is merely a stage in the growth of a placenta, which is at first poly-cotyledonary, and later discoidal. The discoidal deciduate type appears again in the armadillos, but in *Dasypus* among them it is said to be zonary. In the pangolins it is diffuse and indeciduate; in *Orycteropus*, apparently by a suppression of the polar villi of a diffuse type, it is zonary, and doubtfully deciduate.



*Families of Edentata.*

1. Bradypodidæ—Sloths.—The three-toed sloths (*Bradypus*) and the two-toed sloths (*Cholæpus*) are restricted to the forests of S. and Central America. They are the most arboreal of mammals, passing their whole life among the branches, to which they hang, and along which they move back downwards. They are solitary, nocturnal, vegetarian animals, sluggish, as their name suggests, and with a very firm grip of life. Their shaggy hides harmonise with the mosses and lichens on the branches, and the protective resemblance is increased by the presence of a green alga on the hair. Their food consists of leaves and shoots and fruits.

The body is covered with coarse shaggy hair; the head is rounded, and bears very small external ears; the fore-limbs are longer than the hind-limbs, and the two or three digits are bound together by skin, and have long claws; the tail is rudimentary.

Concerning the skeleton we may note the rootless, unenamelled, peg-like teeth, the incomplete zygomatic arch with a descending process from the jugal, the presence of clavicles, the rod-like appearance of the embryonic stapes, the occurrence of nine cervical vertebræ in *Bradypus*, of six in *Cholæpus* (but see p. 635). The adult *Bradypus* has sometimes a separate coracoid or epicoracoid.

As in most herbivorous animals, the stomach is complex, but there is no cæcum. In the limbs the main blood vessels break up into numerous parallel branches. The uterus is simple; the vagina seems to be originally divided by a median partition; the placenta is deciduate, and changes in shape during development. One young one is born at a time.

2. Megatheriidæ or Ground Sloths—extinct forms of large size, intermediate between the sloths and the ant-eaters. Their remains are found in Pleistocene deposits in N. and S. America. *Megatherium* exceeded the rhinoceros in size. Near the Megatheriidæ the recently exterminated or still living *Neomylodon* may be included.
3. Myrmecophagidæ—the Ant-eaters, hairy animals, without even traces of teeth, with long thread-like protrusible tongues, viscid with the secretion of greatly enlarged submaxillary glands. One form, *Myrmecophaga jubata*, is terrestrial, the others, belonging to the genera *Tamandua* and *Cycloturus*, are arboreal. All feed on insects. All are Neotropical. The skull is long; the third finger is greatly developed, the others are small; the pes has four or five almost equal clawed toes; the clavicles are rudimentary; the tail is long and sometimes prehensile. The brain is well convoluted. The uterus is simple; the placenta is dome-like or discoidal.
4. Dasypodidæ—the Armadillos, all S. American except *Tatusia novemcincta*, which extends as far north as Texas. They are nocturnal, omnivorous animals, able to run and burrow rapidly. They are unique among living Mammals in having a dermal armature of bony scutes united into shields and rings, and covered by horny epidermis. The teeth are numerous, simple, and of persistent growth. Clavicles are well developed. The



digits have strong claws or nails. The brain has large olfactory lobes; the cerebral hemispheres have few convolutions. The tongue is long and protrusible, and the submaxillary glands are large. The stomach is simple. The uterus is simple; the placenta is discoidal and deciduate.

Examples.—*Dasypus*, *Chlamydophorus*, *Tatusia*.

5. Glyptodontidæ—extinct Pleistocene types, mostly S. American, but represented in Mexico and Texas. The body was often huge, and was covered by a solid carapace of great strength.
6. Manidæ—the Ethiopian and Oriental Pangolins, covered dorsally with overlapping horny scales. They are terrestrial, burrowing animals, but sometimes climb trees. They usually feed on termites. Teeth are rudimentary, the tongue is long and protrusible. The uterus is bicornuate; the placenta diffuse and non-deciduate. There is one extant genus, *Manis*.
7. Orycteropidæ—the Ethiopian Aard-varks, represented by two species of *Orycteropus*, ranging from S. Africa to Egypt. They are shy, nocturnal animals, living in burrows, feeding on termites. There are numerous complex teeth, differing in structure from those of any other known Mammal. The skin bears scanty bristles. The mouth is tubular, and the tongue is narrow and protrusible. The digits bear nails suited for digging. The uterus is bicornuate, the placenta broadly zonary. The relation to the other Edentates, or, indeed, to other Mammals, is uncertain.

### Order SIRENIA. Sea-Cows.

A small decadent order of sluggish, aquatic, vegetarian Mammals, in no direct way connected with Cetaceans, to which they have some superficial resemblance (convergence). There are two living genera,—*Halicore* (Dugong) and *Manatus* (Manatee), and one was recently exterminated (*Rhytina*).

The Sirenia are sluggish, with massive heavy bones, a plump body, some oil, and sparse hair on the thick tough skin. In adaptation to aquatic life, they have a fish-like form, a powerful tail with a "caudal fin," no external trace of hind-limbs, flipper-like fore-limbs, no external ear, valved nostrils at the end of the snout, networks (retia mirabilia) in the arteries (useful in prolonged immersion). They are herbivorous, feeding on algæ and estuarine plants; and, like others of similar habit, have a chambered stomach, a long intestine, and a cæcum.

They are primitive, and with this fact may be associated the abdominal testes, the absence of *distinct* epiphyses on the vertebræ (cf. Prototheria), and the small brain with few convolutions.



The paddle-shaped fore-limbs have, at most, rudimentary nails; the digits have never more than three phalanges, and the elbow and wrist joints are distinctly movable, whereas in the Cetacea the fore-limbs are more or less stiff from the shoulder. There are no hind-limbs. The skull is not like that of Cetaceans. The nasals are, at most, rudimentary. There are no canine teeth. There are chevron bones below the tail. There are no clavicles. The pelvis is rudimentary, and there is no sacrum. In the extinct *Halitherium* there was a vestigial femur.

The small eyes have imperfect eyelids, but have a nictitating membrane. In the mouth there are horny crushing plates. The ventricles are separated by a cleft. The uterus is bicornuate. Two teats lie behind the armpits. The placenta of the dugong is zonary, wholly or in great part non-deciduate. The placenta of the manatee has not yet been investigated.

MANATEE ( <i>Manatus</i> ).	DUGONG ( <i>Halicore</i> ).
Neck vertebræ reduced to six. Abortive incisors ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ) in both sexes. Molars ( $\frac{11}{11}$ ) six or so at a time, uniform, with square enamelled crowns, and tuberculated transverse grinding ridges. Premaxillæ almost straight. Tail rounded. Rudimentary nails on fingers. Cæcum divided. <i>M. australis</i> and <i>M. senegalensis</i> live in the mouths of great rivers which flow into the tropical Atlantic.	The usual seven neck vertebræ. Two tusk-like incisors persist in the male. Molars ( $\frac{5}{5}$ or $\frac{6}{6}$ , 2 or 3 at a time), primitive, with persistent pulps and no enamel. Premaxillæ crooked downwards. Deeply notched tail. Nailless digits. Thick and single cæcum. <i>H. tabernaculi</i> , E. African coast and Red Sea; <i>H. dugong</i> , Indian and Pacific Oceans, eastward from the home of the last species to the Philippines; <i>H. australis</i> , E. and N. Australia.

The genus *Rhytina* was toothless, with a slightly crooked snout, small head and arms, and thick naked skin. Steller's sea-cow (*R. stelleri*)—the only known species, from the North Pacific—seems to have been exterminated in the last century.

The order was once much larger. Fossil forms occur in Tertiary strata. The most important is *Halitherium*, a less specialised Sirenian than those still extant, *e.g.* with traces of hind-limbs.



## Order UNGULATA.

Hoofed Animals — Artiodactyla, Perissodactyla, Hyracoidea, Proboscidea, and extinct sub-orders.

This large and somewhat heterogeneous order includes pigs, hippopotamus, camels, cattle, deer, tapirs, rhinoceros, horses, hyrax, elephants, and some other distinct types.

They are terrestrial, and for the most part herbivorous animals. Their digits generally end in hoofs or at least in broad flat nails. In the adults of the modern types there are no clavicles. The teeth are diverse, the milk set in part persistent until the animal attains maturity.

## Ungulata Vera : ARTIODACTYLA and PERISSODACTYLA.

ARTIODACTYLA—PIGS, CAMELS, CHEVROTAINS, AND RUMINANTS.	PERISSODACTYLA—TAPIRS, RHINOCEROS, HORSES.
<p>The third and fourth digits of each foot are equally developed, and the line halving the foot runs between them.</p> <p>The premolars and molars are usually different, but generally bunodont or selenodont.</p> <p>There are nineteen dorso-lumbar vertebræ.</p> <p>The femur has no third trochanter.</p> <p>The astragalus has always equal articular facets for the navicular and for the cuboid. The calcaneum has an articular facet for the fibula, if that bone is fully developed.</p> <p>The stomach tends to be complex, and the cæcum is small.</p> <p>The mammæ are few and inguinal, or numerous and abdominal.</p> <p>The placenta is diffuse or cotyledonary.</p> <p>There are often bony outgrowths from the frontals.</p> <p>There is no alisphenoid canal.</p>	<p>The third digit occupies the middle of the foot, is largest, and is symmetrical on itself, so that the line halving the foot bisects the third digit.</p> <p>The premolars resemble the molars.</p> <p>There are almost always twenty-three dorso-lumbar vertebræ.</p> <p>The femur has a third trochanter.</p> <p>The astragalus has a large facet for the navicular, a small facet for the cuboid. The calcaneum does not articulate with the lower end of the fibula (except <i>Macrauchenia</i>).</p> <p>The stomach is always simple, and the cæcum is large.</p> <p>The mammæ are always inguinal.</p> <p>The placenta is always diffuse.</p> <p>There are never bony outgrowths from the frontals.</p> <p>There is an alisphenoid canal transmitting the external carotid artery.</p>



In these typical Ungulates the feet are never plantigrade. In modern types there are never more than four functional toes. The os magnum of the carpus articulates freely with the scaphoid. The brain is well convoluted. The testes descend into a scrotum. The uterus is bicornuate. The placenta is non-deciduate, and either diffuse or cotyledonary.

#### Sub-Order ARTIODACTYLA. Even-toed Ungulates.

Pigs and Hippopotamus (Suina), Camels (Tylopoda), Chevrotains (Tragulina), and Ruminants (Pecora) like Cattle and Deer.

The general characters of this sub-order have been stated above in contrast to those of Perissodactyla. The equal development of the third and fourth digits, the fact that the premolars have a single lobe while the molars have two, the nature of the tarsal bones, the tendency that the stomach has to be complex (as in Camels and Ruminants), are important characteristics. There are others of less obvious importance, such as the absence of the alisphenoid canal, which in Perissodactyla encloses the external carotid artery as it passes along the alisphenoid.

There are primitive extinct Artiodactyla which connect the four modern groups—Suina, Tylopoda, Tragulina, and Pecora. Thus they unite the bunodont types, such as pigs, with cone-like tubercles on the crowns of the molars, and the selenodont types, such as cattle, with the tubercles expanded from before backwards, and curved in crescents.

Group 1. Suina—hippopotamus, pigs, and peccaries. The molars are bunodont; the third and fourth metacarpals and metatarsals are not completely fused as “cannon bones.”

Hippopotamidæ.—Huge African mammals, included in the single genus *Hippopotamus*. They spend the day in the rivers and lakes, swimming and diving well, but usually remaining concealed. At night they come on land and browse on grass and herbage. The skin is extremely thick, with a few hairs restricted to the snout, head, neck, and tail. There are four toes on each foot, all reaching the ground. The rootless incisors continue growing; so do the large curved canines; the dental formula is  $\frac{2-3, 143}{1-3, 143}$ . The stomach has three chambers; there is no cæcum.



Suidæ.—The Old World boars and pigs, characterised by the mobile snout and terminal nostrils. There are four well-developed digits on the narrow feet, but the second and fifth do not reach the ground in walking. The incisors are rooted; the upper canine curves outwards or upwards. The stomach is almost simple, but has more or less of a cardiac pouch and several short blind saccules; there is a cæcum.

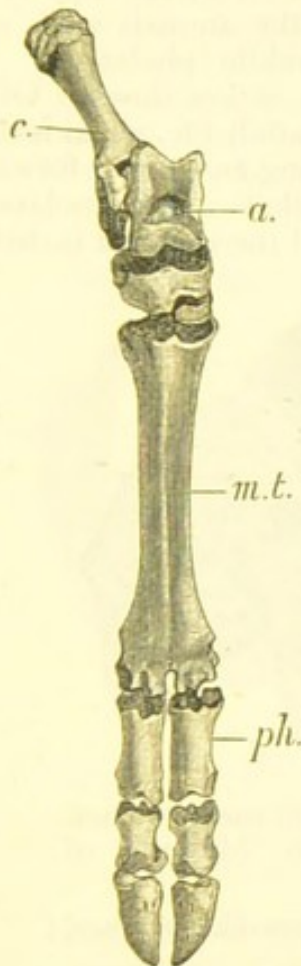


FIG. 303.—Foot of ox.

*a.*, Astragalus; *c.*, os calcis; *m.t.*, cannon bone (fused third and fourth metatarsals); *ph.*, a phalanx.



FIG. 304.—Fore-leg of pig.

*h.*, Humerus; *r.*, radius; *u.*, ulna; *s.*, scaphoid; *l.*, lunar; *c.*, cuneiform; *t.*, trapezoid; *m.*, os magnum; *u.*, unciform; 2-5, digits.

Examples.—*Sus*,  $\frac{3143}{3143}$ ; *Babirusa*,  $\frac{2123}{3123}$ , the male with remarkable canines, the upper pair growing upwards from their base through the skin, arching backwards as far as the forehead, and sometimes forwards and downwards again, the lower pair with a more or less parallel course; *Phacochoerus*, the wart-hog.

Dicotylidæ.—The New World peccaries (*Dicotyles*), with a snout like that of pigs, with four toes on the fore feet, and three behind. The incisors are rooted, the upper canines are directed down-



wards, the dental formula is  $\frac{2133}{3133}$ . The stomach is complex, and there is a cæcum.

Group 2.—Tylopoda, comprising the family Camelidæ—the camels of the Old World and the llamas of S. America. The limbs are long, with only the third and fourth digits developed; the two metacarpals and metatarsals are united for the greater part of their length, but there is a deep distal cleft; the tips of the digits have very incomplete hoofs, and the animals walk on a broad pad of skin surrounding the middle phalanges. The femur is long and vertical, and the knee is low down. Of the three upper incisors only one persists in adult life, as an isolated sharp tooth, those of the lower jaw are long and slope forwards. There are canines both above and below. The molars are selenodont. The animals ruminate, and the stomach is divided

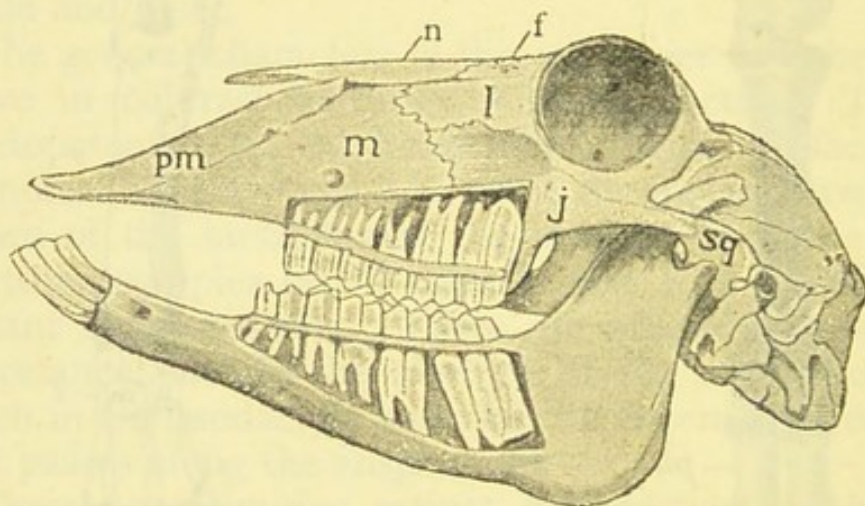


FIG. 305.—Side view of sheep's skull, with roots of back teeth exposed. — From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*f.*, Frontal; *n.*, nasal; *pm.*, premaxilla; *m.*, maxilla; *j.*, jugal; *sq.*, squamosal; *l.*, lachrymal.

into a rumen with several parts, a tubular psalterium, and an abomasum. The division between the two last is vague externally. On portions of the rumen there are peculiar glandular honeycomb-like cavities, or "water-cells." The Camelidæ are unique among Mammals in having oval instead of circular red blood corpuscles. The placenta is diffuse.

Examples.—*Camelus*,  $\frac{1133}{3123}$ , the Arabian camel (*C. dromedarius*) has a dorsal hump of fat, the Bactrian camel (*C. bactrianus*) has two humps. The genus *Auchenia*,  $\frac{1123}{3123}$ , includes the llama, alpaca, huanaco, and vicugna of S. America, smaller forms than the camels, and without humps.

Group 3.—Tragulina or Chevrotains, small animals, "intermediate in their structure between the deer, the camels, and the pigs." There are four complete toes on each foot, but the second and



fifth are slender; the third and fourth metacarpals and metatarsals are fused in *Tragulus*, free in the other genus *Dorcatherium*; the fibula is complete. There are no upper incisors, the upper canines are long and pointed, especially in the males; the lower canines are like incisors; the dental formula is  $\frac{0133}{3133}$ . The Chevrotains ruminate, and the stomach is divided into three chambers, the many-plies being rudimentary. The placenta is diffuse. The Chevrotains are often confusedly associated with the musk-deer (*Moschus*), with which they have no special affinities.

Species of *Tragulus* (smallest among living Ungulates) occur in Indo-Malaya, India, and Ceylon; one species of *Dorcatherium*, of aquatic pig-like habits, is found on the west coast of Africa.

Group 4.—Pecora or Cotylophora—the true Ruminants, including deer, giraffes, cattle, and sheep. Only the third and fourth

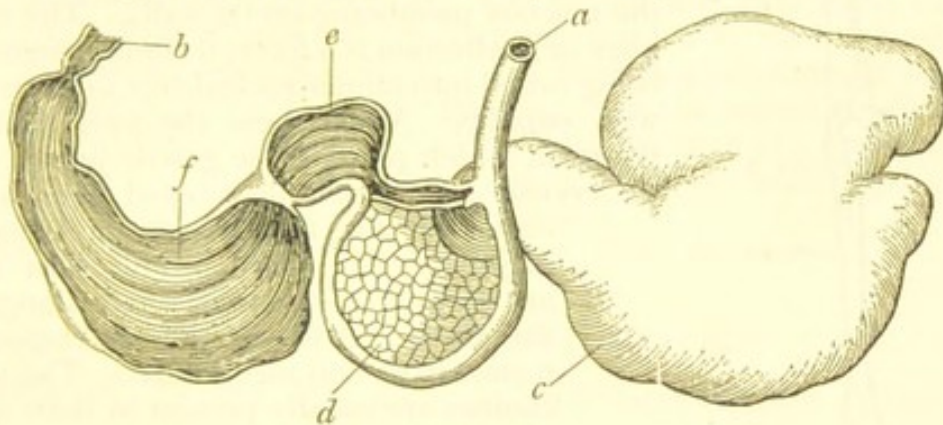


FIG. 306.—Stomach of sheep.—From Leunis.

*a.*, Esophagus; *c.*, rumen or paunch; *d.*, reticulum or honeycomb-bag; *e.*, psalterium or many-plies; *f.*, abomasum or reed; *b.*, beginning of duodenum.

digits are complete, the fused third and fourth metacarpals and metatarsals form "cannon bones." In the embryos of ox and sheep, the second and fifth metacarpals and metatarsals are also represented; the second metacarpal and fifth metatarsal are unstable and soon disappear; small traces of the fifth metacarpal and second metatarsal persist. The fibula is represented by a small nodular bone articulating with the lower end of the tibia, and forming the external malleolus. There may be in addition a rudiment of the proximal end attached to the upper part of the tibia, but the two parts are never united. Paired outgrowths of the frontal bones are common, capped with horny sheaths in the Bovidae, deciduous and restricted to the males in almost all Cervidae. There are no upper incisors, and rarely upper canines; there are three pairs of lower incisors, which bite against the hardened gum above; and the lower canine resembles and is in the same series as the incisors; the typical dentition is  $\frac{\infty 33}{3133}$ . The stomach has four distinct compartments. The



placenta is cotyledonary, the villi occurring on a number of distinct patches.

The process of rumination or chewing the cud cannot be understood without considering the complex stomach. It is divided into four chambers,—the paunch or rumen, the honeycomb-bag or reticulum, the many-plies or psalterium, the reed or abomasum. The swallowed food passes into the capacious paunch, the walls of which are beset with

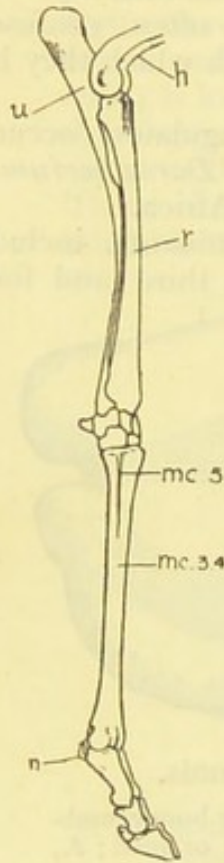


FIG. 307.—Side view of calf's fore-leg.

*h.*, Distal end of humerus; *u.*, olecranon process of ulna; *r.*, radius; *mc. 3, 4*, metacarpals 3 and 4 fused to form cannon bone; *mc. 5*, fifth metacarpal; *n.*, nodule.

close-set villi resembling velvet pile. After the food has been softened in the paunch, it is regurgitated into the mouth, where it is chewed over again and mixed with more saliva. Swallowed a second time, the food passes not into the paunch, but along a muscular groove on the upper wall of the globular honeycomb-bag into the third chamber or many-plies. The honeycomb-bag owes its name to the hexagonal pattern formed by the mucous membrane on its walls. The many-plies or psalterium is a filter, its lining membrane being raised into numerous leaf-like folds covered with papillæ. Along these the food passes to the reed, which secretes the gastric juice.

Cervidæ—the widely distributed deer, absent only from the Ethiopian and Australian regions. The second and fifth digits are usually represented, often along with the distal parts of the corresponding metacarpals and metatarsals. The upper canines are usually present in both sexes. The horns, if present, are antlers, deciduous, and usually confined to the males. In the reindeer they are possessed by both sexes. They are outgrowths of the frontal bones, are covered during growth by vascular skin—the velvet—and attain each year to a certain limit of growth. After the breeding season the blood supply ceases, the velvet dies off, and an annular absorption occurs near the base. Then the antlers are shed, leaving a stump, from which a fresh but larger growth takes place in the next

year. The earliest (Lower Miocene) deer had no antlers, thus resembling young stags of the first year; the Middle Miocene deer had simple antlers, with not more than two branches, thus resembling two-year-old stags. Thus there is a parallelism between the history of the race and the individual development.

Examples.—*Cervus*, most Old World deer; *Rangifer*, the reindeer; *Alces*, the elk or moose; *Capreolus*, the roe-deer; *Hydropotes*, the water-deer, without antlers; *Moschus*, the musk-deer, without antlers, with long sharp upper canines in the males, with large musk glands.



Giraffidæ, represented solely by the giraffe (*Giraffa camelopardalis*), a tall Ethiopian animal, notable for its enormously elongated cervical vertebræ, and for its long limbs. It is gregarious in its habits, and feeds on the leaves of trees. The lateral digits are entirely absent. The dental formula is  $\frac{0033}{3133}$ . On both sexes there are on the forehead short erect prominences, over the union of parietals and frontals, which arise from two distinct centres of ossification, but afterwards fuse with the skull. In front of these there is a median protuberance.

Antilocapridæ, represented solely by the prongbuck (*Antilocapra americana*), a North American animal, with most of the characteristics of Bovidæ. The horny sheath bears one branch, and is periodically detached from the bony core.

Bovidæ, the hollow-horned Ruminants, widely distributed throughout the world, but without indigenous representatives in Australia, South or Central America. The second and fifth digits may be completely absent, but are often represented by minute hoofs and supporting nodules of bone. The frontal appendages, if present, consist of a solid bony core growing from the frontal, and a much longer sheath of horn, which grows at the base as it is worn away at the tip. They are not deciduous, and are usually present in both sexes, though larger in the males.

Examples.—*Antelope, Gazella, Capra, Ovis, Bos.*

### Sub-Order PERISSODACTYLA.

Horses, Tapirs, Rhinoceros, and their extinct Allies.

The middle or third digit of fore- and hind-feet is larger than the others, and symmetrical on itself. It may be the only complete digit, as in the horse, or it may be accompanied by a second and a fourth, and in the fore-foot of tapirs and some extinct forms, by a fifth digit. No modern forms have any trace of a first digit. The astragalus has a pulley-like surface above for articulation with the tibia; its distal surface is flattened and unites to a much greater extent with the navicular than with the cuboid. The last-named bone is of less importance than in the Artiodactyla. The calcaneum does not articulate with the lower or distal extremity of the fibula. The femur has a third trochanter or process for the insertion of muscles. There are usually twenty-three dorso-lumbar vertebræ.

As to the dentition, the premolars and molars form a continuous series, with broad transversely ridged crowns, the last premolars often very like the molars.



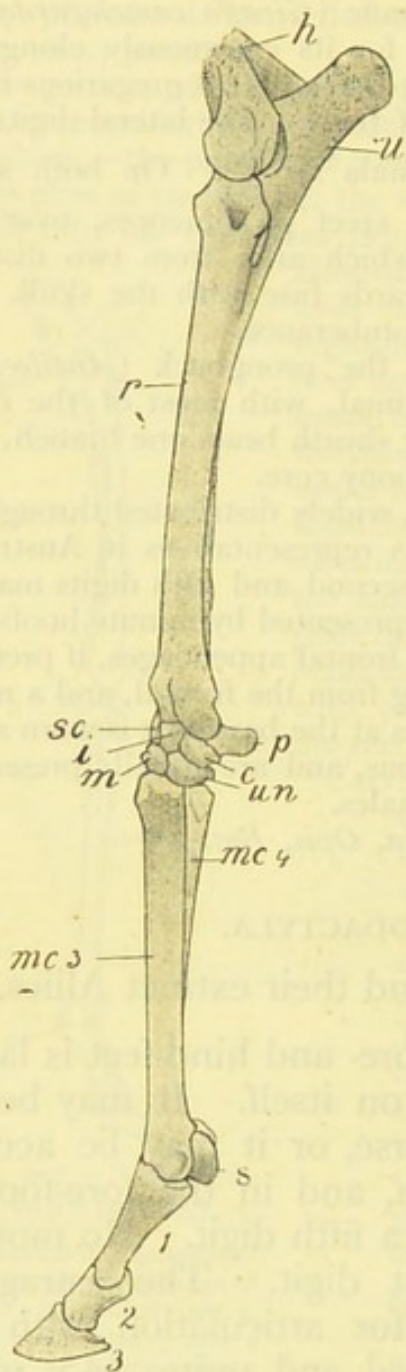


FIG. 308.—Side view of lower part of pony's fore-leg.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*h.*, Distal end of humerus; *u.*, olecranon process of ulna; *r.*, radius; *sc.*, scaphoid; *l.*, lunar; *c.*, cuneiform; *m.*, os magnum; *un.*, unciform; *p.*, pisiform; *mc.4.*, splint of fourth metacarpal; *mc.3.*, third metacarpal; *s.*, sesamoid; 1, 2, 3, phalanges of third digit.

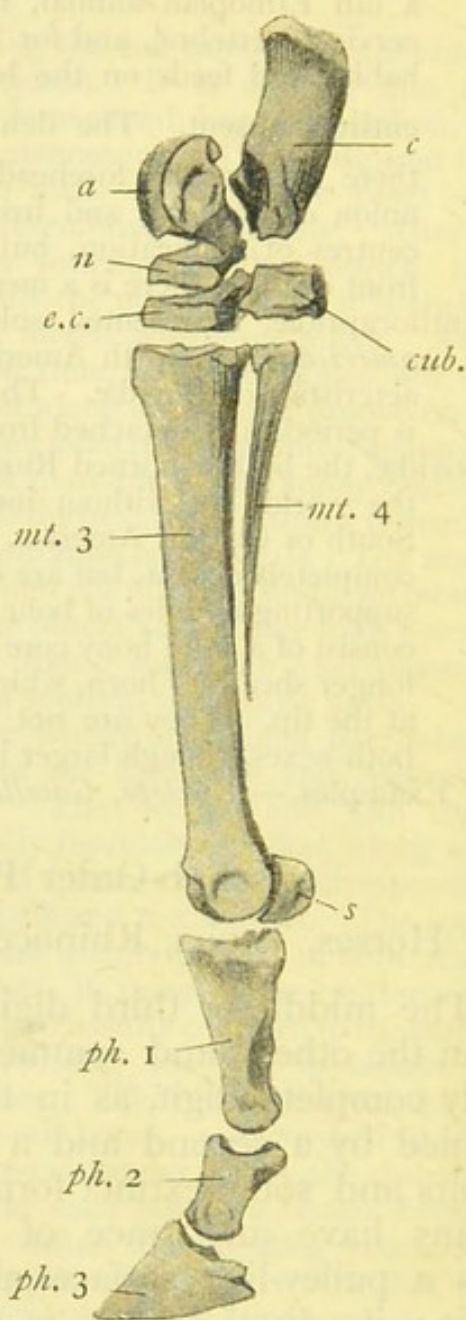


FIG. 309.—Side view of ankle and foot of horse.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*a.*, Astragalus; *c.*, calcaneum; *n.*, navicular; *e.c.*, external cuneiform; *cub.*, cuboid; *mt.3.*, third metatarsal; *mt.4.*, splint of fourth metatarsal; *s.*, sesamoid; *ph. 1-3.*, phalanges of third digit.



The stomach is simple ; the cæcum is large ; there is no gall-bladder.

The mammæ are inguinal ; the placenta is diffuse and non-deciduate.

### *Families of Perissodactyla.*

Family Tapiridæ.—In the tapirs (*Tapirus*) there are four digits in the manus, but the third finger is still practically median, as the fifth digit scarcely reaches the ground. The hind-foot has three digits. The dentition of the genus is  $\frac{3^{143}}{3^{133}}$ . The orbit and temporal fossa are continuous. The nose and upper lip form a

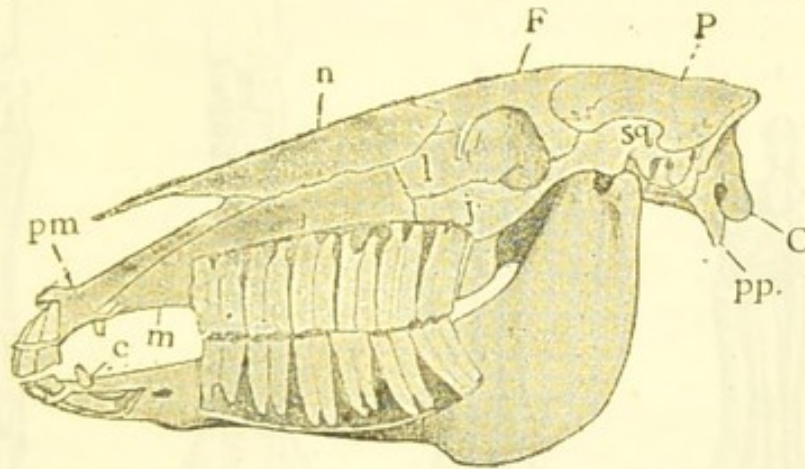


FIG. 310.—Side view of Horse's skull, roots of teeth exposed.  
—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*P.*, Parietal ; *F.*, frontal ; *n.*, nasal ; *pm.*, premaxilla ; *m.*, maxilla ; *j.*, jugal ; *l.*, lachrymal ; *sq.*, squamosal ; *pp.*, paroccipital process ; *c.*, canine ; *C.*, condyle.

short proboscis. The thick skin has but scanty hair. In habit, the tapirs are shy and nocturnal, fond of forests and water, feeding on tender shoots and leaves. The distribution is somewhat remarkable, for four species live in Central and South America, while a fifth is Malayan. The genus was once widespread, but has survived in these two far-separated regions.

Family Equidæ.—In the modern horses (*Equus*) there is on each foot one functional digit—the third, with splints representing the metacarpals and metatarsals of the second and fourth. Professor Cossar Ewart has recently found in the embryo of the horse the rudiments of the three phalanges of the second and fourth digits. The vestigial phalanges of these digits subsequently fuse with one another and with the respective metacarpals or metatarsals, forming “buttons” at the end of the splints. The ulna and fibula are incomplete, but the former is quite complete in the foetus. The dentition is  $\frac{3^{143}}{3^{143}}$ , but the first premolar is rudi-



mentary, and soon lost in both sexes, and the canines are rarely present in the mare. The orbit is complete.

The modern horses are connected by a very complete series of forms with ancestral Eocene types. The progress shows an increase of size, a diminution in the number of digits, an increased folding of the back teeth, and other differentiations. The Eocene *Phenacodus* is regarded by some as near the origin of the stock, it had five complete digits on each foot; *Hyracotherium* and *Systemodon* had only four functional digits in the manus; *Anchitherium* from the Miocene, an animal about the size of a sheep, had three digits, or three and a rudiment; *Hippotherium* and *Protohippus* from the Pliocene, were as large as donkeys,

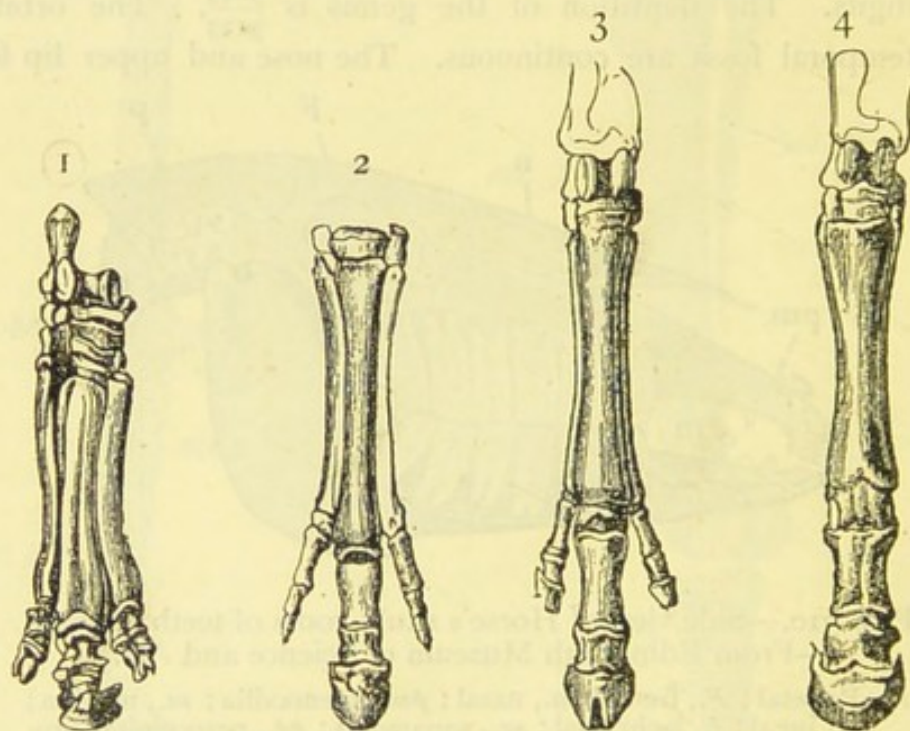


FIG. 311.—Feet of horse and its progenitors.  
—From Neumayr.

1. Palæotherium; 2. Anchitherium; 3. Hippotherium; 4. Equus.

and show a marked diminution of the second and fourth digits; finally, in the Pleistocene, the modern forms appeared.

The living species are the horses (*Equus caballus*), apparently originating in Asia, domesticated in prehistoric times, artificially selected into many breeds, sometimes reverting to wildness, as in the case of those imported into America and Australia by European settlers; the wild horse of Central Asia (*E. przewalskii*); the donkey (*E. asinus*) of African origin; the wild asses of Africa and Asia; the striped African species—the zebras and the (exterminated) quagga.

Family Rhinocerotidæ.—There is now but one genus *Rhinoceros*, species of which occur in Africa and in some parts of India and Indo-Malaya. They are large, heavy Ungulates, shy and nocturnal, fond of wallowing in water or mud, feeding on herbage, shoots, and leaves. The skin is very thick, with scanty hair.



One or two median horns grow as huge warts from the snout and forehead. The dentition is very variable, but the back teeth  $\begin{smallmatrix} 4, 3 \\ 4, 3 \end{smallmatrix}$  are almost uniform; there are no upper canines, but sometimes a large lower pair; there are a few incisors, but these are often small and deciduous.

There are several entirely extinct families of Perissodactyla, such as—

Lophiodontidæ (Eocene), *e.g.* *Lophiodon*, *Hyracotherium*, *Systemodon*,—a family perhaps ancestral to most of the modern Perissodactyla.

Palæotheriidæ (Eocene to Myocene), *e.g.* *Palæotherium* and *Anchitherium*.

Other remarkable types—

*Lambdotherium*, *Chalicotherium*, *Titanotherium*, of elephantine size, and the specialised *Macrauchenia*—are referred to distinct families.

### Sub-Order HYRACOIDEA.

An isolated order of small Rodent-like Ungulates, represented by *Hyrax* and *Dendrohyrax*, living in rocky regions and on trees in Africa and Syria. The species (14) are adept climbers.

The upper incisors have persistent pulps, and are curved as in Rodents, but they are sharply pointed, not chisel-edged. The outer lower incisors are straight, and have trilobed crowns. There are no canines in the second set, but the upper milk canine sometimes persists; and there is a wide space between incisors and premolars. The back teeth are very uniform, and like those of Perissodactyla. The milk dentition is  $\begin{smallmatrix} 314 \\ 214 \end{smallmatrix}$ , the permanent is  $\begin{smallmatrix} 1043 \\ 2043 \end{smallmatrix}$ . Hyrax is one of the few Mammals in which the first premolar is a replacing tooth. The jugal forms part of the glenoid cavity (cf. Marsupials).

In the fore-feet the thumb is rudimentary, the little finger is smaller than the median three, which are almost equal. In the hind-feet, which are like miniatures of those of the rhinoceros, the hallux is absent, and the fifth toe is rudimentary. There are no hoofs in the strict sense. There are no clavicles. The tail is very short.

The brain is like that of Ungulates. The stomach is divided into two parts by a constriction. In addition to the short but broad cæcum, there are two supplemental cæca



lower down on the intestine. The testes are abdominal. Of the mammæ, four are on the groin and two are axillary. The placenta is zonary, as in the Proboscidea and Carnivora. No extinct forms are known.

#### Sub-Order PROBOSCIDEA.

The sub-order is now represented by two species of elephant (*Elephas*). They occupy a somewhat isolated position, though distinctly Ungulates. As regards skull, proboscis, and teeth, they are highly specialised, but their limbs are of a generalised type.

The elephants are confined to the Ethiopian and Oriental regions. They feed on leaves, young branches, and herbage. By means of the mobile proboscis they gather their food, and they drink by filling the proboscis and then ejecting the water into the mouth.

The proboscis is a muscular extension of the nose, and bears the nostrils at its tip. The skin is strong, and the hair somewhat scanty.

In the limbs, radius and ulna, tibia and fibula, are quite distinct; the radius and ulna are fixed in a crossed position; owing to the length of the humerus, and yet more of the femur, and the vertical position in which they are carried, elbow and knee are lower than usual, and the gait is peculiar; the carpal and tarsal bones have flat surfaces; the feet are broad, and bear five hoofed toes embedded in a common integument. There are no clavicles.

The skull is very large, being adapted to support the proboscis and tusks, and to afford a broad insertion for the large muscles. In most of the bones there is during growth an extraordinary development of air-spaces, which communicate with the nasal passages. The supra-occipital is very large; the nasal bones are very short; the zygomatic arch is slender and straight, its anterior part is formed by the maxilla, for the elephant differs from the typical Ungulates in the fact that the jugal merely forms the median part of the zygoma, and does not extend on the face. The lachrymal is also small, and placed almost entirely within the orbit (cf. the Rabbit).



The dentition is unique. The two upper incisors or tusks are mainly composed of solid ivory; the enamel is restricted to the apex, and soon wears off. As the tusks grow, their roots sink through the premaxillæ into the maxillæ. There are no canines nor premolars. The molars are very large, and the enamel is very much plaited, forming a series of transverse ridges enclosing the dentine, and united to one another by cement. Thus on the worn tooth there are numerous successive layers of enamel, dentine, and cement. Extinct forms show transitions between this complex type and the horse's tooth. In a lifetime there may be six molar teeth on each side of each jaw, but of these only one, or portions of two, can find space at a time. The series gradually moves forward as the front parts are worn away and cast out.

The brain is highly developed.

The stomach is simple, and there is a large cæcum.

There are two superior venæ cavæ entering the right auricle.

The testes remain abdominal in position.

There are two pectoral mammæ; the uterus is bicornuate; the placenta is non-deciduate and zonary.

*Elephas*, <sup>106</sup>/<sub>006</sub>, now represented by the Indian Elephant (*E. indicus*), with parallel folds of enamel on the molars, and ears of moderate size, and the African Elephant (*E. africanus*), with lozenge-shaped folds of enamel, and very large ears.

The mammoth (*E. primigenius*) belonged to the Pleistocene period, and had a wide geographical range, occurring for instance in Britain.

The genus *Mastodon* is represented by fossil remains in Miocene, Pliocene, and even in Pleistocene strata, in Europe, India, and America. The molar teeth show transitions between those of elephants and those of other Ungulates.

In *Dinotherium*, found in Miocene and Pliocene strata in Europe and Asia, the lower jaw bore an enormous pair of tusks projecting vertically downwards, and all the back teeth seem to have been in use at the same time.

#### SEVERAL EXTINCT SUB-ORDERS.

Although we cannot describe the following remarkable types, it is important to notice their existence, for they serve to impress us with the original connectedness of what are now separate orders.

The huge Amblypoda, in Eocene formations in America and Europe,



had three pairs of remarkable protuberances on the top of the skull, no upper incisors, large upper canines, especially in the males, and six back teeth.

Example.—*Uintatherium*.

Some Tertiary American forms, *e.g.* *Toxodon* and *Nesodon*, varying in size from that of a sheep to that of a rhinoceros, form the sub-order Toxodontia.

Cope includes a number of generalised Eocene Ungulates under the title Condylarthra. Some seem ancestral to the Perissodactyla and Artiodactyla; some suggest a union of ancestral Ungulates and ancestral Carnivores. The genus *Periptychus* may be regarded as an ancestral Bunodont, and *Phenacodus* as near the origin of the horse stock. But *Phenacodus* is so generalised that Cope suggested affinities between it and not only Ungulates, but also Carnivores and Lemurs.

From the Eocene of N. America, Marsh has disinterred a group

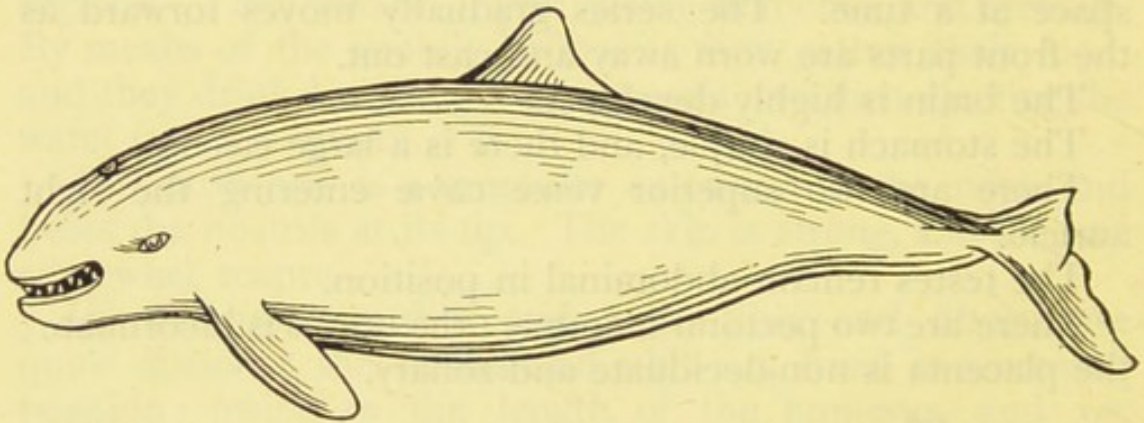


FIG. 312.—External appearance of common porpoise.

of animals which he calls Tillodontia, *e.g.* *Tillotherium*, which seem to combine the characters of the Ungulata, Rodentia, and Carnivora.

Few orders of Mammals are of more interest to the palæontologist than the Ungulates. Not only are fossil representatives numerous, but their usually large size, and the fact that the teeth are frequently an index of general structure, makes the determination of affinities much easier than in most cases. In consequence, problems like that of the origin of the horse, or the relations of the different proboscideans, have been worked out with a completeness rare elsewhere.

### Order CETACEA.

The Cetaceans, including whales and dolphins and their numerous relatives, are aquatic mammals of fish-like form.

The spindle-shaped body has no distinct neck between



the relatively large head and the trunk, and tapers to a notched tail, horizontally flattened into flukes. The forelimbs are paddle-like flippers, and there are no external hints of hind-limbs beyond mere button-like knobs in some embryos. Most forms have a median dorsal fin. Hairs are generally absent, though a few bristles may persist near the mouth. The thick layer of fat or blubber beneath the skin retains the warmth of the body, and compensates for the absence of hair. In one of the dolphins dermal ossicles occur, a fact which has suggested the idea that the toothed whales may have had mailed ancestors. Traces of dermal armour have also been found in the extinct Zeuglodonts.

The spindle shape, the absence of external ears, the absence of an eye-cleansing nictitating membrane, the dorsal position and valvular aperture of the single or double nostril, the sponginess of the bones, the retia mirabilia storing arterial blood in different parts of the body, may be associated with the aquatic life.

The cervical vertebræ are thin, and more or less fused. There is no union of vertebræ to form a sacrum, for the hindlimbs are at most very rudimentary. Under the caudal vertebræ there are wedge-shaped chevron bones.

The brain-case is almost spherical; the supraoccipital meets the frontals and shuts out the parietals from the roof of the skull; the frontals arch over the orbit; the snout or rostrum of the skull is composed of premaxillæ, maxillæ, and vomer, and of the mesethmoid cartilage. The periotic in whales is an exceedingly dense bone, and is of interest because it is the only part of the skeleton found at great

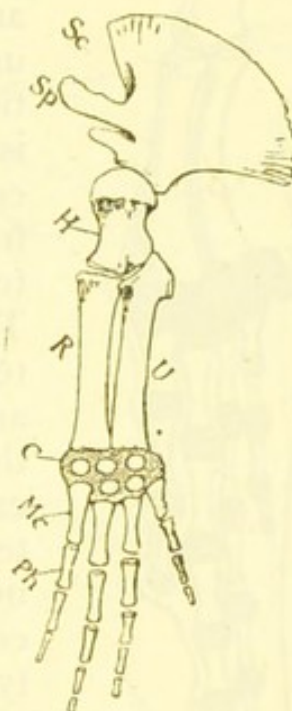


FIG. 313.—Left fore-limb of *Balænoptera*.

Sc., Scapula with spine (*sp.*); H., humerus; R., radius; U., ulna; C., carpals embedded in matrix; Mc., metacarpals; Ph., phalanges.



depths on the floor of the ocean, and is often preserved as a fossil.

There are at least rudiments of two sets of teeth, as in other Mammals, but in baleen whales only the teeth of the milk set are calcified, and they come withal to nothing,

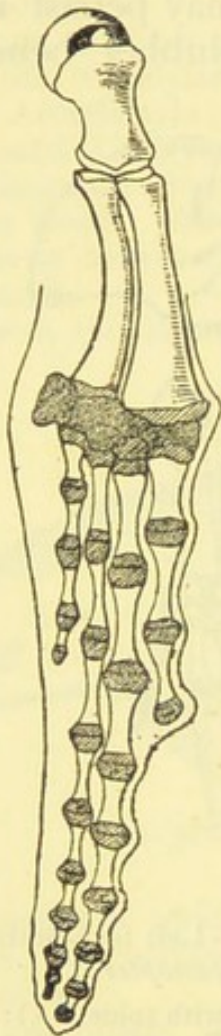


FIG. 314.—Fore-limb of whale (*Megaptera longimana*).—After Struthers.

being to some extent replaced by the horny baleen-plates developed on the palate. In toothed whales the two sets are said by Kükenthal to fuse, but the usual interpretation is that the functional teeth belong to the milk set. It is possible that the simple, homodont, conical teeth of Odontoceti have resulted from a splitting of more complex cusped teeth. No clavicles are developed. The bones of the fore-limb are flattened, and, except at the shoulder, articular surfaces are not developed, so that the limbs form stiff paddles. The carpals are fixed in a fibrous matrix, tend to be rudimentary, and are often unossified. They cannot be readily compared with the members of the typical mammalian carpus. In the absence of true joints, a slight flexibility is given by the absence of ossification. There are four or five nailless digits, of which the second and third, and sometimes the first, may have more than the usual number of phalanges (see Fig. 314), a peculiarity possibly due to a duplication and separation of epiphyses. The pelvis may exhibit a

rudimentary ischium, with small vestiges of femur and tibia.

The rounded brain is relatively large, with well-convoluted cerebral hemispheres.

As to the alimentary system,—salivary glands are rudimentary or absent, the stomach is chambered, the intestine has rarely a cæcum, the liver is but slightly lobed, there is no gall-bladder.



The heart is often cleft between the ventricles. Both arteries and veins tend to form retia mirabilia.

The larynx is elongated, so that it meets the posterior nares, and forms a continuous canal, down which air passes from nostrils to lungs. The inspiration and expiration occur at longer intervals than in terrestrial mammals. The water-vapour expelled along with the air from the lungs condenses into a cloud, which is sometimes increased, by an accidental puff of spray.

The kidneys are lobulated. The testes are abdominal. There are no seminal vesicles. The uterus is bicornuate. The placenta is non-deciduate and diffuse. The two mammæ lie in depressions beside the genital aperture, and the milk is squeezed from special reservoirs into the mouth of the young. Usually a single young one is born at a time, and there are never more than two.

All are carnivorous; but, while many feed on small pelagic animals, others swallow cuttles and fish, and *Orca* attacks other Cetaceans and seals. Most are gregarious, and live in schools or herds.

The living Cetaceans are ranked in two sub-orders—the Mystacoceti or Balænoidea, without functional teeth, but with whalebone or baleen-plates on the palate, and the Odontoceti or Delphinoidea, with functional teeth and without baleen.

Certain Eocene fossils, known as Zeuglodonts, are regarded by some (Lydekker, Dames) as primitive Cetaceans—Archæoceti—less specialised than modern forms, but Professor D'Arcy Thompson has advanced strong arguments in favour of their affinities with Pinniped Carnivores.

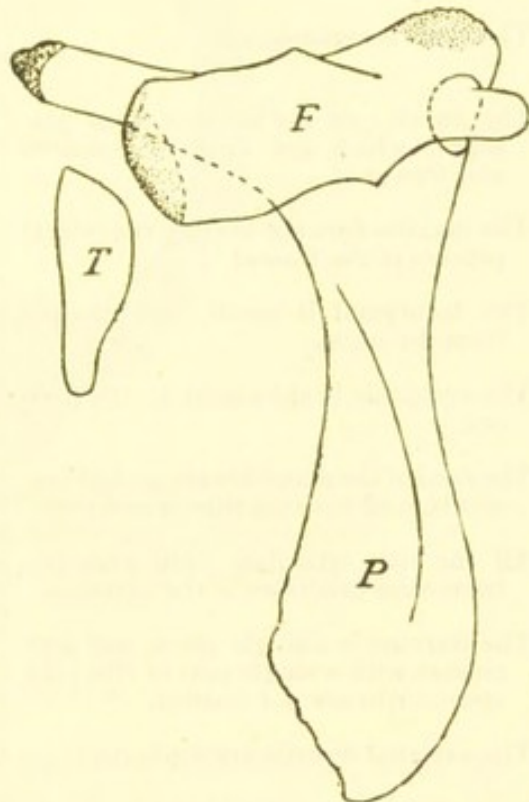


FIG. 315.—Pelvis and hind-limb of Greenland whale (*Balæna*)—After Struthers.

P., Pelvis; F., femur; T., tibia.



# CONTRASTS BETWEEN THE TWO SUB-ORDERS OF LIVING CETACEANS.

MYSTACOCETI or BALÆNOIDEA, baleen Cetaceans.	ODONTOCETI or DELPHINOIDEA, toothed Cetaceans.
The teeth are absorbed before birth.	The teeth persist after birth, and are generally numerous and functional.
Whalebone or baleen-plates develop as processes from the palate.	There is no baleen.
The skull is symmetrical.	The skull on its upper surface is more or less asymmetrical.
The nasals roof the anterior nasal passages, which are directed upwards and forwards.	The nasals, always small, do not roof the anterior nasal passages, which are directed upwards and backwards.
The maxilla does not overlap the orbital process of the frontal.	The maxilla covers most of the orbital process of the frontal.
The lachrymal is small, and distinct from the jugal.	The lachrymal is fused to the jugal, or is large, and helps to roof the orbit.
The tympanic is ankylosed to the periotic.	The tympanic is not ankylosed to the periotic.
The rami of the mandible are arched outwards, and have no true symphysis.	The rami of the mandible are straight, and form a symphysis.
All the ribs articulate only with the transverse processes of the vertebræ.	Several anterior ribs articulate by capitula with the centra of vertebræ.
The sternum is a single piece, and articulates with a single pair of ribs; the sternal ribs are not ossified.	The sternum has usually several segments, with which several usually ossified sternal ribs articulate.
The external nostrils are separate.	The nostrils unite in a single blow-hole on the top of the head.
The olfactory organ is distinctly developed.	The olfactory organ is rudimentary or absent.
There is a short cæcum.	There is no cæcum, except in <i>Platanista</i> .
Examples.— The right-whale ( <i>Balæna</i> ), the hump-back ( <i>Megaptera</i> ), the rorqual ( <i>Balænoptera</i> ).	Examples.— The Sperm-whale ( <i>Physeter</i> ), the dolphin ( <i>Delphinus</i> ), the porpoise ( <i>Phocæna</i> ), the "Grampus" ( <i>Orca</i> ), the Ca'ing-whale ( <i>Globicephalus</i> ), <i>Grampus</i> , the narwhal ( <i>Monodon</i> ), with a horn-like tusk in the male only, the beluga ( <i>Delphinapterus</i> ), the blind <i>Platanista</i> of the Ganges.

In regard to the possible affinities of the Cetacea, it seems probable that they are related, though not very closely, to the Ungulates.



It is possible that in their transition from terrestrial to marine life, the Cetaceans may have passed through a stage in which they lived in fresh water.

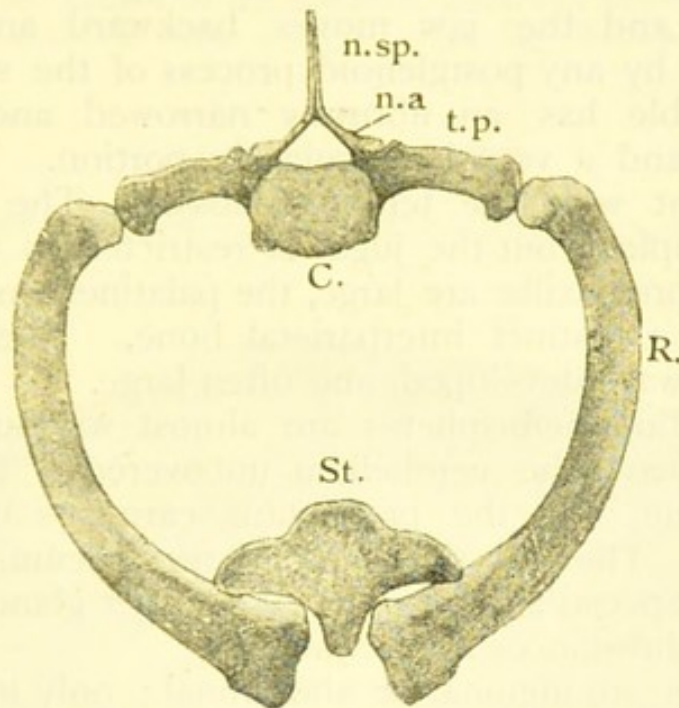


FIG. 316.—Vertebra, rib, and sternum of *Balænoptera*.—  
From specimen in Anatomical Museum, Edinburgh.  
C., Centrum; n.a., neural arch; n.sp., neural spine; t.p., transverse  
process; R., rib; St., sternum.

### Order RODENTIA.

Rodents are represented in all parts of the world, and by more species than any other order of Mammals. Most of them are small and terrestrial. They are typically vegetarian, and gnaw their food in a characteristic way.

The dentition is characteristic. The incisors are chisel-edged, for, as the enamel is either restricted to the front or is at most thin posteriorly, the back part wears away more rapidly. The incisors are rootless, growing from persistent pulps, and the same is sometimes true of the back teeth. There is never more than a pair of lower incisors, and in most cases the upper jaw has only a pair. There are no canines, and the skin projects as a hairy pad into the mouth through the gap between incisors and premolars.

The feet are plantigrade or semi-plantigrade, generally with five clawed or slightly hoofed digits. Clavicles, though often rudimentary, are generally present. The scapula has



usually a long acromion process, sometimes with a metacromion.

The condyle of the mandible is elongated from before backwards, and the jaw moves backward and forward (unimpeded by any postglenoid process of the squamosal). The mandible has an abruptly narrowed and rounded symphysis, and a very large angular portion. The orbits are confluent with the temporal fossæ. The zygomatic arch is complete, but the jugal is restricted to the middle of it. The premaxillæ are large, the palatines small. There is generally a distinct interparietal bone. The tympanic bullæ are always developed, and often large.

The cerebral hemispheres are almost without convolutions, and leave the cerebellum uncovered. The skin is generally thin, and the panniculus carnosus but slightly developed. The intestine has a large cæcum, except in *Myoxidæ*. Special anal or perineal or other glands secreting odoriferous substances are frequent.

The testes are inguinal or abdominal; only in the hares and rabbits do they completely descend into scrotal sacs.

The mammæ are on the abdomen, or on the abdomen and thorax. The uterus is double or very markedly bicornuate. There is a provisional yolk-sac placenta; the allantoic placenta is discoidal and deciduate.

The affinities are not well known. A relation to the elephants has been suggested by various authorities. The *Typotheria*, an extinct S. American sub-order of Ungulates, resemble Rodents in many respects; but, according to Lydekker, this is merely an example of convergence. Another possibly related sub-order is that of the *Tillodontia*.

The Rodents are very widely distributed, but are most abundant in S. America, where they form a very characteristic part of the fauna. Out of seventeen existing families, nine are represented there, and four are peculiar to it.

The Rodents are divided into four sub-orders:—

1. *Sciuromorpha*.—Squirrels (*Sciurus*), marmots (*Arctomys*), prairie-dogs (*Cynomys*), and beavers (*Castor*).
2. *Myomorpha*.—Rats and mice (*Mus*), voles (*Arvicola*), lemmings (*Myodes*), and jerboas (*Dipus*).
3. *Hystricomorpha*.—Porcupines (*Hystrix*), agoutis (*Dasyprocta*), guinea-pigs (*Cavia*), and the S. American capybara (*Hydrochærus*), the largest living Rodent, measuring about 4 ft. in length.
4. *Lagomorpha*.—Hares and rabbits (*Lepus*), and the picas or tailless hares (*Lagomys*).



In the first three sub-orders there is only a single pair of upper incisors, and the three may be united as *Simplicidentata*, in contrast with the *Duplicidentata*, where there are two pairs. Only in the latter does the enamel extend to the posterior surface of the incisors, which are also peculiar (in this order), in having well-developed milk predecessors.

### Order CARNIVORA.

This order includes—(a) the true Carnivores, such as lions

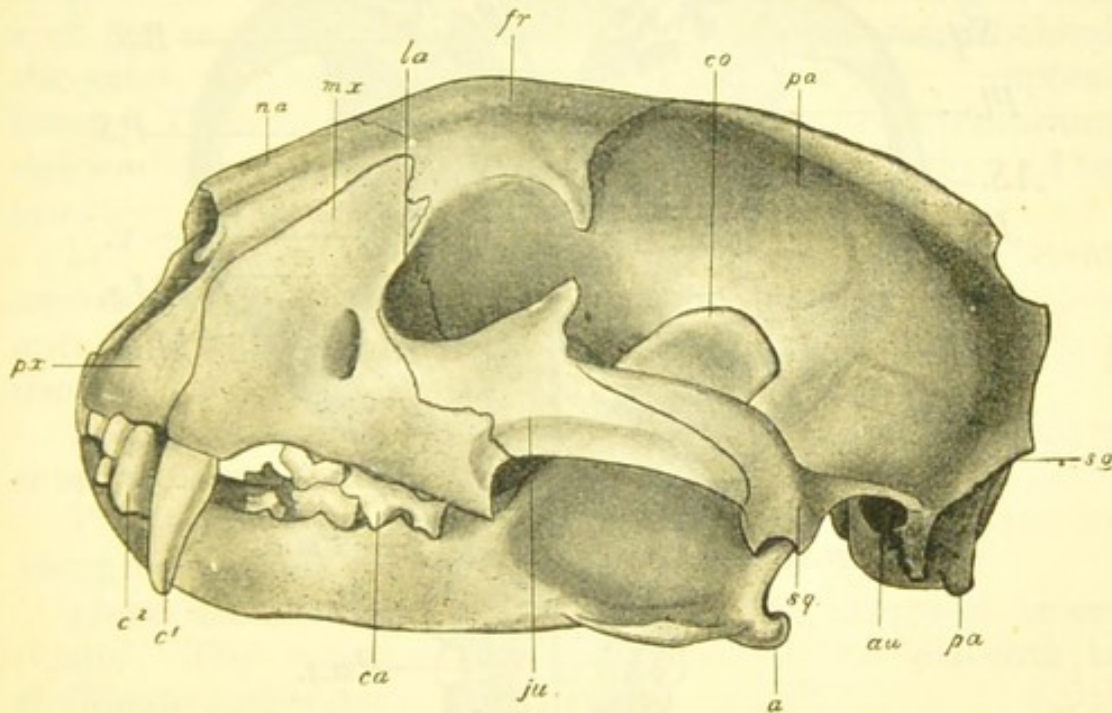


FIG. 317.—Skull of tiger, lateral view.

*px.*, Premaxilla; *mx.*, maxilla. Note the insertion of upper canine (*c.1*) just behind the suture line, and the fact that the lower canine (*c.2*) bites in front of it; *na.*, nasals; *la.*, lachrymal bone with foramen; *fr.*, frontal; *pa.*, parietal; *so.*, supra-occipital; *pa.*, paroccipital process; *au.*, auditory aperture (the reference line crosses the inflated bulla); *sq.*, zygomatic process of squamosal; *a.*, angle of lower jaw; *ju.*, jugal; *ca.*, carnassial tooth of upper jaw; *co.*, coronoid process of lower jaw.

and tigers, foxes and dogs, bears and otters; (b) the aquatic Pinnipedia, such as seals and walruses; and (c) the extinct Creodonta, with several generalised types.

Most of the Carnivora feed on animal food, and the most typical forms prey upon other animals and devour their warm flesh. Most are bold and fierce animals, with keen senses and quick intelligence, and often much beauty of form and marking.



Almost all have well-developed claws; there are never fewer than four toes. The teeth are always rooted, except

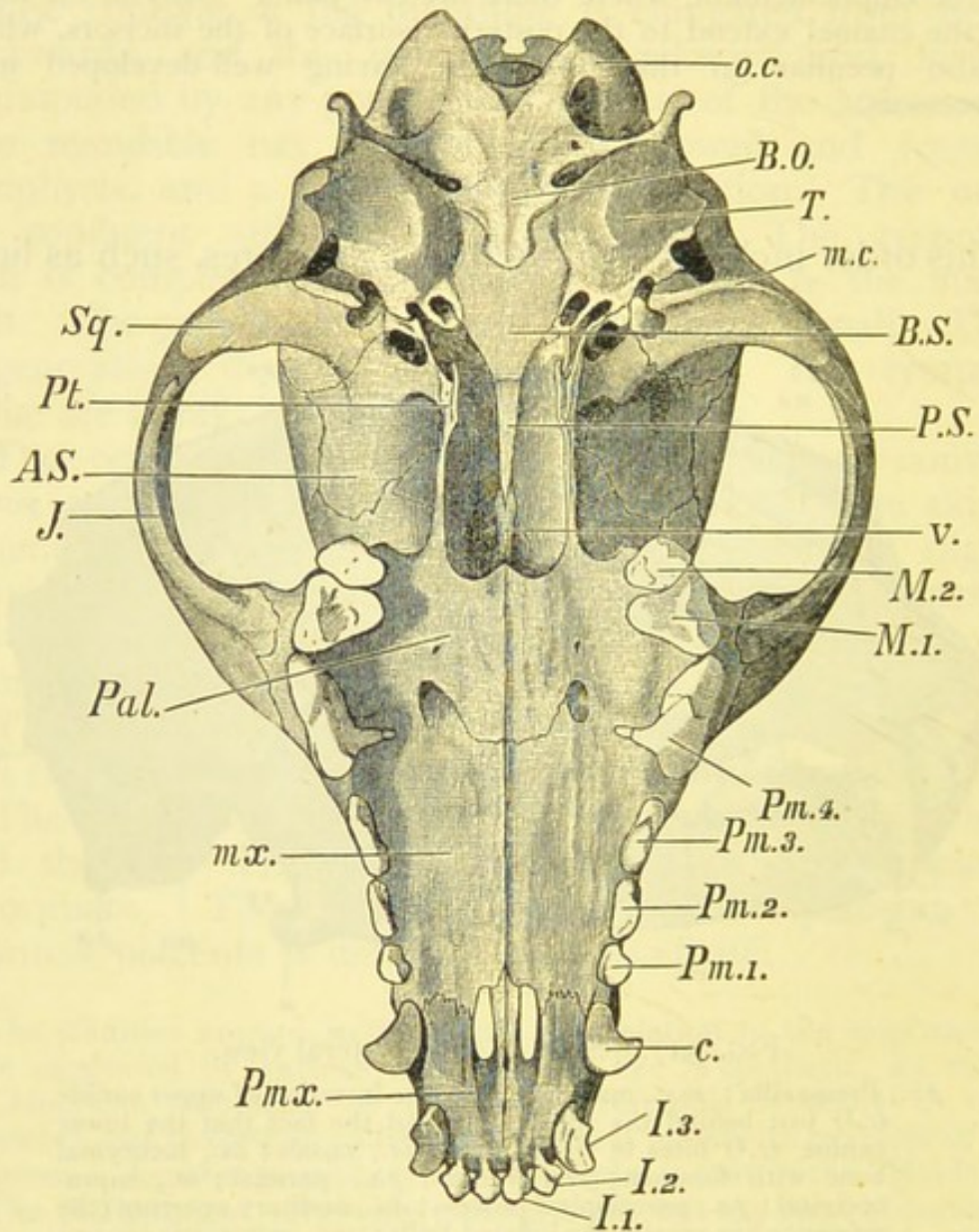


FIG. 318.—Lower surface of dog's skull.

*o.c.*, Occipital condyle; *B.O.*, basioccipital; *T.*, tympanic bulla; *m.c.*, postglenoid process behind fossa for condyle of mandible; *B.S.*, basisphenoid; *P.S.*, base of presphenoid; *V.*, vomer; *M.2.*, second molar; *M.1.*, first molar; *Pm.1-4.*, premolars, the 4th the large carnassial; *c.*, canine; *I.1-3.*, incisors; *Pmx.*, premaxilla; *mx.*, maxilla; *Pal.*, palatine; *J.*, jugal; *A.S.*, alisphenoid; *Pt.*, pterygoid; *Sq.*, squamosal (the reference line points to the glenoid cavity).

in the case of the tusks of the walrus; the canines are strong and sharp; some of the back teeth are generally sharp, and specially adapted for cutting.

There are generally strong occipital and sagittal crests for



the insertion of muscles of neck and jaw. The glenoid fossa for the articulation of the lower jaw is deeply concave, and bounded by a large postglenoid process, the result being that the lower jaw can only move up and down. This is important, as it minimises the risk of any failure of grip in seizing living prey. The muscles of the lower jaw are very strongly developed, and with this may be associated the strength and the protrusion of the zygomatic arch in the more specialised types. The widening of this arch has prevented the formation of a frontal bridge behind the orbit, so that the orbit is confluent with the temporal fossa. There is a strongly developed and ossified tentorium descending between cerebrum and cerebellum. The tympanic bullæ are in most cases large.

The clavicles are incomplete or absent (an important contrast with all Insectivora except *Potamogale*); the radius and ulna are always distinct; the fibula is slender but distinct.

The cerebrum is well convoluted, and the cerebellum is more or less covered by the cerebrum.

The stomach is always simple; the cæcum is absent, or short, or simple; the colon is not sacculated.

There are no vesiculæ seminales. The uterus is bicornuate. The mammae are abdominal. The placenta is deciduate and zonary.

Representatives of Carnivora are found in all parts of the world.

#### Sub-Order Carnivora Vera or Fissipedia.

The true Carnivores are for the most part terrestrial. The incisors are almost always  $\frac{3}{3}$ , the canines are usually large; one of the back teeth is modified as a trenchant carnassial or sectorial. The digits generally have sharp claws, which may be retractile. Within the sub-order there are three sections—Æluroides, Cynoidea, and Arctoidea—represented respectively by cat, dog, and bear, but these types are connected by extinct forms.

In retractile claws, the last phalanx of the digit with its attached claw is drawn back into a sheath on the outer side of the middle phalanx in the fore-foot, on the upper side in the hind-foot. When the animal is at rest or is walking, the claw is retained in this bent position by an elastic ligament, and is in this way protected from wear. When the animal straightens the phalanges, the claws are protruded.



(1) ÆLUROIDEA <i>e.g.</i> cat, civet, hyæna.	(2) CYNOIDEA <i>e.g.</i> dog, fox, wolf, jackal.	(3) ARCTOIDEA <i>e.g.</i> bear, otter.
Digitigrade.	Digitigrade.	Plantigrade or sub-plantigrade.
Typical dentition, $\frac{3^{131}}{3^{121}}$ .	Typical dentition, $\frac{3^{142}}{3^{143}}$ .	Typical dentition, $\frac{3^{142}}{3^{143}}$ .
The tympanic bulla is much dilated, rounded, and thin-walled, and is divided into two chambers by an internal septum (except in Hyænidæ).	The tympanic bulla is dilated, but the internal septum is rudimentary.	The tympanic bulla is often depressed, and there is no hint of an internal septum.
The paroccipital process of the exoccipital is applied to the hinder part of the tympanic bulla.	The paroccipital process is in contact with the bulla, but it is prominent.	The paroccipital process is quite apart from the bulla.
The cæcum is small, rarely absent.	The cæcum is sometimes short and simple, sometimes long and peculiarly folded.	The cæcum is absent.

Digitigrade animals walk on their toes only ; plantigrade forms plant the whole sole of the foot on the ground ; but between these conditions there are all possible gradations. Many Carnivores are sub-plantigrade, often when at rest applying the whole of the sole to the ground, but keeping the heel raised to a greater or less extent when walking.

#### (1) ÆLUROIDEA—Cat-like Carnivores.

Family Felidæ, including the most specialised forms. The canines are large, the molars are reduced to  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the carnassials are the last premolars above (with a three-lobed blade), and the molars beneath (with a two-lobed blade). The tuberculated upper molars are very small, and of little if any use in mastication. The skull is generally rounded, the zygomatic arches are wide and strong, and the tympanic bullæ are large and smooth. The limbs are digitigrade, the claws retractile. There is no alisphenoid canal. The dentition of the typical genus *Felis* is  $\frac{3^{131}}{3^{121}}$ . The cats are the most specialised of all Carnivores, and are exclusively adapted for a flesh diet. The sharp claws and pointed canines form powerful offensive



weapons; the cusped cheek teeth and rasping tongue are employed to separate the flesh from the bones of the prey.

Examples.—The lion (*Felis leo*), in Africa, Mesopotamia, Persia, N.-W. India; the tiger (*F. tigris*), widely distributed in Asia; the leopard (*F. pardus*) in Africa, India, Ceylon, Sumatra, Borneo, etc.; the wild cat (*F. catus*); the Caffre cat (*F. caffra*) of Africa and S. Asia, venerated and mummified by the Egyptians, perhaps ancestral to the domestic cat; the puma or cougar (*F. concolor*) from Canada to Patagonia; the jaguar (*F. onca*), also American.

A high degree of specialisation for carnivorous habit is well illustrated by the sabre-toothed tigers (*Machærodus*) of Tertiary ages, whose serrated upper canines were sometimes 7 in. long.

Family Viverridæ—Old World forms, such as civets (*Viverra*), of Africa and India; genets (*Genetta*), of S. Europe, Africa, and S.-W. Asia; ichneumons or mongooses (*Herpestes*), in Spain, Africa, India, Indo-Malaya. They differ from the true cats in having more cheek teeth — premolars  $\frac{3}{3}$  or  $\frac{4}{4}$ , molars  $\frac{1}{1}$  or  $\frac{2}{2}$ —and in some other respects. The Foussa (*Cryptoprocta ferox*) is peculiar to Madagascar, and forms the only type of a sub-family.

Family Proteleidæ—represented by *Proteles cristatus*, the hyæna-like aard-wolf of Cape Colony. The cheek teeth are small and degenerate, the animal is burrowing and nocturnal, and lives on carrion and termites. Though best known in S. Africa, it seems probable that it is widely distributed throughout the continent.

Family Hyænidæ—represented by the genus *Hyæna*, found in Africa and S. Asia. The tympanic bulla is not divided by a septum. The teeth are well developed, and resemble those of cats.

## (2) CYNOIDEA—Dog-like Carnivores.

Family Canidæ—including forms intermediate between the cats and the bears. The dentition is more generalised than in the

Felidæ, its usual formula is  $\frac{3^{142}}{3^{143}}$ . Within the tympanic bulla there is only a rudimentary septum. The paroccipital process in contact with the bulla is prominent. The cæcum is either short and simple or long and peculiarly folded upon itself.

Examples.—The genus *Canis* has representatives in all parts of the world,—the wolves (*C. lupus*, etc.), the jackals (*C. aureus*, *mesomelas*, etc.), the domestic dogs (*C. familiaris*), the foxes (*C. vulpes*, etc.), the Cape hunting dog (*Lycaon*), the bush-dog (*Icticyon*) of Guiana and Brazil, and the primitive *Otocyon megalotis* from S. Africa, with a dental formula of  $\frac{3, 1, 4, 3 \cdot 4}{3, 1, 4, 4}$ . The presence of a fourth molar in this case in both jaws is an exceedingly remarkable



character. Outside the Marsupials it is only known elsewhere in the Madagascar tailless hedgehog (*Centetes*), where there are sometimes four upper molars. In the dog the dental formula is  $\frac{3^{142}}{3^{143}}$ ; the upper carnassial or fourth premolar has a stout bilobed blade, the lower carnassial or first molar has a compressed bilobed blade. The skull is more elongated than in the cats; the orbits are very widely open posteriorly; the clavicles are very small; the limbs are digitigrade; there are five toes on the fore-feet, but the short thumb does not reach the ground; there are only four toes on the hind-feet, but in domestic dogs the rudiment of the hallux is sometimes enlarged as the "dew-claw"; the claws are non-retractile and blunt.

### (3) ARCTOIDEA—Bear-like Carnivores.

The tympanic bulla shows no trace of an internal septum; the paroccipital process of the exoccipital is quite apart from the bulla, and widely separated from the mastoid process of the periotic. The limbs are plantigrade or sub-plantigrade, and always bear five toes. There is no cæcum.

Family Ursidæ—Bears. The molars have broad tuberculated crowns used for grinding. The three anterior premolars are usually rudimentary. The auditory bulla is depressed. In relation to the character of the teeth, it should be noted that the diet is at least in part vegetarian; even the polar bear eats herbs in the summer. *Ursus*,  $\frac{3^{142}}{3^{143}}$ , absent from Ethiopian and Australian regions, represented in the Neotropical region by only one species, elsewhere widespread.

Family Procyonidæ—The Himalayan Panda (*Ælurus fulgens*), the American raccoon (*Procyon*). The true molars are  $\frac{2}{2}$ .

Family Mustelidæ—The otter (*Lutra*), the sea-otter (*Latax lutris*), the skunk (*Mephitis*), the badger (*Meles*), the ratel (*Mellivora*), the marten, sable, polecat, stoat, weasel (*Mustela*). The true molars are  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{1}$ .

### Sub-Order PINNIPEDIA. Seals, Eared Seals, and Walruses.

Marine Carnivores, unable to move readily on land, but coming ashore for breeding purposes. They feed for the most part on fish, molluscs, and crustaceans. Absent from the tropics, they are represented on most of the coasts in temperate and Arctic zones. Many are markedly gregarious.

The upper parts of the limbs are included within the skin and general contour of the body. There are five well-developed digits connected by a web of skin. In the hind-foot the first and fifth toes are generally stouter and longer than the rest. There are no clavicles. The tail is very short.

The small milk-teeth are absorbed before or immediately after



birth. The incisors are always fewer than  $\frac{3}{3}$ ; there are no carnassials; the back teeth have pointed cusps, often sloping slightly backwards.

The brain is large and well convoluted. The eyes are large and prominent, with a flat cornea. The external ear is small or absent.

The cæcum is very short. The kidneys are divided into lobules. The mammæ are two or four in number, and lie on the abdomen.

Family Otariidæ—Eared or fur-seals, connecting the Pinnipeds with the Fissipeds. The hind-feet can be turned forward and used on land in the usual fashion. The palms and soles are naked. There is a small external ear. The testes lie in an external scrotum.

The sea-lion *Otaria*,  $\frac{3, 1, 4, 1-2}{2, 1, 4, 1}$ , Pacific and S. Temperate seas.

Family Trichechidæ—Walruses, intermediate between the Otariidæ



FIG. 319.—The common seal.

and the seals. The hind-feet can be turned forwards and used on land. The upper canines form large tusks; the other teeth are small, single rooted, and apt to fall out; those generally in use are  $\frac{1130}{0130}$ , but the dentition of the foetus is  $\frac{3132}{3131}$ .

The jaw seems relatively short, an adaptation perhaps to mussel-crushing instead of fish-catching.

There are no external ears.

The walrus or morse, *Trichechus* (Arctic).

Family Phocidæ—Seals, the most specialised Pinnipeds. The hind-limbs are stretched out behind, and the strange jumping movements on land are effected by the trunk, sometimes helped by the fore-limbs. The palms and soles are hairy. There are well-developed canines; the upper incisors have pointed crowns; there are  $\frac{5}{5}$  back teeth. There is no external ear. The testes are abdominal.



The common seal (*Phoca*),  $\frac{3141}{2141}$ , the grey seal (*Halichærus*), the monk seal (*Monachus*), the large elephant seal (*Macrorhinus leoninus*).

#### Sub-Order CREODONTA (extinct).

In Eocene and early Miocene strata, in Europe and America, there are remains of what seem to be generalised Carnivora, ancestral to the modern types, and apparently related to Insectivora as well. Those included in the sub-order Creodonta have strong canines but no single carnassials, while the molars are often like those of Marsupials. The brain seems to have been small.

Examples.—*Hyænodon*, *Proviverra*, *Arctocyon*.

#### Order INSECTIVORA.

This order includes hedgehog, mole, shrews, and related mammals. There is much diversity of type, so that a statement of general characters is very difficult.

Most Insectivores run about on the earth; the mole (*Talpa*), and others like it, are burrowers; *Potamogale*, *Myogale*, and others are aquatic: *Tupaia* and its relatives live like squirrels among the branches; and the aberrant "flying Lemur"—*Galeopithecus*—takes swoops from tree to tree.

Most feed on insects, but *Galeopithecus* and some other arboreal forms eat leaves as well; the moles eat worms; *Potamogale* is said to feed on fish.

The body is usually covered with soft fur, but the hedgehog (*Erinaceus*) is spiny, and so to a less extent is *Centetes*, the groundhog of Madagascar. The digits, usually five in number, are clawed, and the animals walk in plantigrade or semi-plantigrade fashion. In most, the mammæ are thoracic or abdominal; in *Galeopithecus* there are two pairs in the axillary region.

The cranial cavity is small; the skull is never high; the facial region is long; the zygomatic arch is slender or incomplete. Except in *Potamogale*, there are clavicles.

There are never less than two pairs of lower incisors. The enamelled molars have tuberculated crowns and well-developed roots. In many cases it is not easy to distinguish the usual division of the teeth into incisors, canines, pre-molars, and molars, but in many the dentition is typical—

3, 1, 4, 3 = 44.



In the hedgehog, according to Leche, i. 3, pm. 2, m. 1-3, of the upper jaw, and i. 3, c., pm. 3, m. 1-3, of the lower jaw, are persistent milk-teeth, but, according to others, the milk-teeth are represented by mere rudiments ("prelacteal germs"), and the functional teeth correspond to the permanent set of other mammals.

The cerebral hemispheres are smooth, and leave the cerebellum uncovered; the olfactory lobes are large; the corpus callosum is short and thin. Thus, as regards the brain, the Insectivora represent a low grade of organisation.

Except in *Galeopithecus*, the stomach is a simple sac; the intestine is long and simple, but the vegetarian forms have a cæcum. In most there are odoriferous glands, axillary in shrews, but usually near the anus.

The testes are inguinal or in the groin, or near the kidneys, not in a scrotum. The penis may be pendent from the wall of the abdomen, but is usually retractile. There is a bicornuate or two-horned uterus. Except in *Galeopithecus*, several and usually many offspring are born at once.

The allantoic placenta is discoidal and deciduate. There is a provisional yolk-sac placenta.

Insectivora are represented in the temperate and tropical zones of both hemispheres, but not in S. America nor Australia. In the former continent their place is taken by the insectivorous opossums.

Sub-order Insectivora Vera.—Insectivores with free limbs suited for movement on land, climbing, burrowing, or swimming. The incisors are of normal form.

Examples.—The hedgehogs (*Erinaceus*), throughout Europe, Africa, and most of Asia, dentition  $\frac{3133}{2123}$ ; the shrews (*Sorex*), in Europe,

Asia, and N. America, dentition  $\frac{4123}{2013}$ ; the moles (*Talpa*), throughout the Palæarctic region; the tailless tenrec (*Centetes*) of Madagascar; the S. African golden moles (*Chrysochloris*); the African jumping shrews (*Macroscelides*); the Oriental tree-shrews (*Tupaia*).

Sub-Order Dermoptera.—Represented by the very divergent *Galeopithecus*, which almost requires an order for itself. The fore- and hind-limbs are connected by a parachute, and the animals can glide from tree to tree, "sometimes traversing a space of seventy yards with a descent of only about one in five." The structure of the incisors is unique among Mammals. They are expanded laterally, compressed from



before backwards, and furnished with many cusps. The lower are pectinated, the flattened crowns being penetrated by numerous vertical slits, and the outer of the two upper pairs have double roots. Two species of this genus live in the forests of the Malayan region. They are nocturnal, and feed on leaves and fruit. The dentition is  $\frac{2123}{3123}$ . There are numerous skeletal peculiarities.

### Order CHIROPTERA. Bats.

Bats are specialised Mammals related to Insectivores. They have the power of flight, the fore-limbs being modified as wings. The wing is formed by a fold of skin which usually begins from the shoulder, extends along the upper margin of the arm to the base of the thumb, thence between the long fingers, and along the sides of the body to the hind-legs or even to the tail. Contrasted with the wing of a bird, that of a bat has a rudimentary ulna beside a long curved radius, a wrist with six bones, five free digits, four of which have very long metacarpals, while the thumb is short. The phalanges are usually reduced to two. The pectoral girdle is strong; there is a long curved clavicle, a large triangular scapula, a long coracoid process; the pre-sternum bears a slight keel on which are inserted some of the muscles used in flight. The thumb is always clawed; the other digits are unclawed, except in most frugivorous bats, where the second digit bears a claw.

The hind-limb is relatively short and weak, the pelvic girdle is also weak, and in most cases the pubic symphysis is loose in the males, unformed in the females. The knee is turned backwards like the elbow; the ankle has a cartilaginous prolongation or calcar, which supports the fold of skin between limb and tail; the five toes are clawed.

The vertebral column is short; there is little mobility between the vertebræ; neural spines are absent behind the third cervical, except in Pteropidæ; the caudal vertebræ are very simple. The ribs are usually flat. The maximum dentition is  $\frac{2133}{3133}$ ; the milk-teeth are very different from the permanent set. All the bones are slender, and the long bones have relatively large medullary canals.

The cerebral hemispheres are smooth, and leave the cerebellum uncovered. The spinal cord is at first very broad,



but narrows rapidly behind the neck. The sense of touch is remarkably developed in the hot skin of the wing, the large mobile external ears, the whisker hairs of the snout, and in the strange plaited "nose leaves" around the nostrils. Even

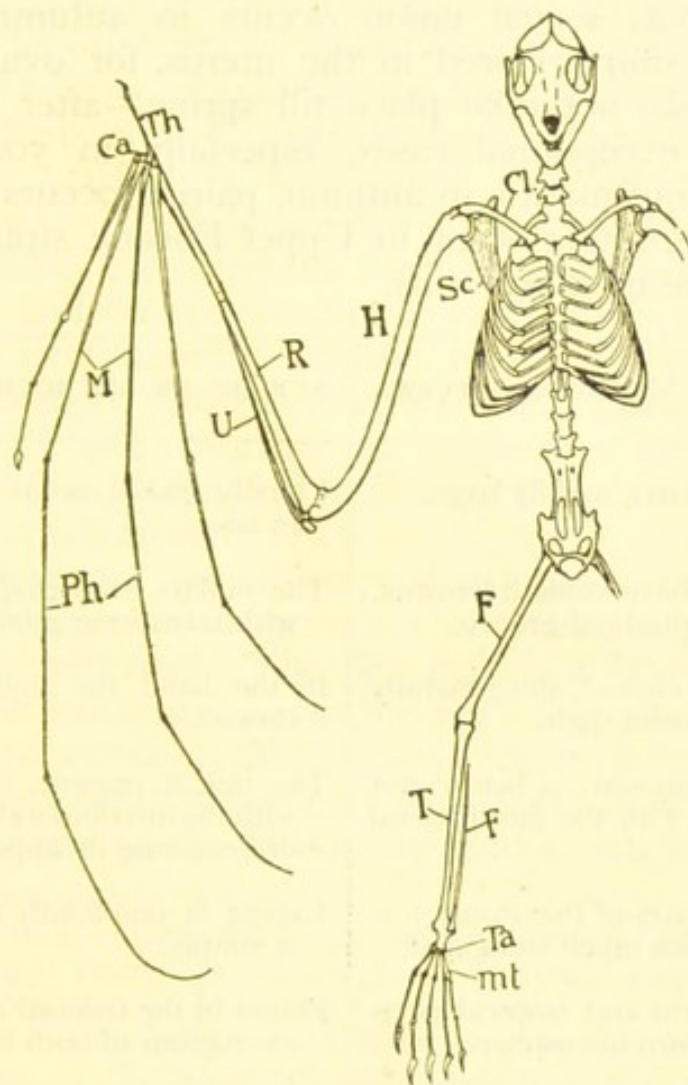


FIG. 320.—Skeleton of fox-bat—*Pteropus*.

*Cl.*, Clavicle; *H.*, humerus; *R.*, radius; *U.*, incomplete ulna; *Th.*, thumb; *Ca.*, carpals; *M.*, metacarpals 3 and 4; *Ph.*, phalanges; *F.*, femur; *T.*, tibia; *F.*, fibula; *Ta.*, tarsals; *mt.*, metatarsals.

when deprived of sight, hearing, and smell, bats will fly about in a room without striking numerous wires stretched across it.

The temperature of the body is high. The testes are abdominal or inguinal; the penis is pendent. The uterus is simple, with cornua generally short. There is usually but one offspring at a time, and there are never more than two.



The mammæ are two in number, thoracic, generally post-axillary in position. As in Insectivora and Rodentia, the yolk-sac forms a provisional placenta, and the allantoic placenta is discoidal and deciduate. What looks like menstrual flux has been noticed in some bats. In most European bats sexual union occurs in autumn, but the sperms are simply stored in the uterus, for ovulation and fertilisation do not take place till spring—after the winter sleep. In exceptional cases, especially in young forms which were not mature in autumn, pairing occurs in spring.

Fossil Chiroptera occur in Upper Eocene strata, but are quite like the modern forms.

SUB-ORDER MEGACHIROPTERA.	SUB-ORDER MICROCHIROPTERA.
Frugivorous bats, usually large.	Usually insectivorous bats, small in size.
The molars have smooth crowns, with a longitudinal groove.	The molars have cusped crowns, with transverse grooves.
The thumb is clawed, and generally also the second digit.	In the hand the thumb only is clawed.
The tail, if present, is below, not bound up with the interfemoral membrane.	The tail, if present, is bound up with the interfemoral membrane, or lies along its upper surface.
The pyloric part of the stomach is in most cases much elongated.	Except in one family the stomach is simple.
Found in warm and tropical parts of the Eastern hemisphere.	Found in the tropical and temperate regions of both hemispheres.
<p>Examples.—</p> <p>The "flying-foxes" or fox-bats (<i>Pteropus</i>), large, tailless bats, distributed from Madagascar to India, Ceylon, Malaya, S. Japan, Australia, Polynesia. The largest species (<i>P. edulis</i>) measures 5 ft. across its spread wings. Dentition, <math>\frac{2}{2}1\frac{3}{3}3\frac{2}{2}</math>.</p> <p>In India, <i>Cynopterus marginatus</i> is very common. <i>Xantharpyia ægyptiaca</i> inhabits the Pyramids.</p>	<p>Examples.—</p> <p>The horseshoe-bats (<i>Rhinolophus</i>); the common pipistrelle (<i>Vesperugo pipistrellus</i>); the genus <i>Vespertilio</i>, with four British species; <i>Vampyrus spectrum</i>, a large Brazilian form, which seems to have been erroneously credited with blood-sucking habits; the common vampire (<i>Desmodus rufus</i>), an American bat—a formidable blood-sucker.</p>



Order LEMUROIDEA (*Syn.* PROSIMIÆ, Lemurs).

These monkey-like animals are sometimes ranked with monkeys as a sub-order of Primates; but there seems more warrant for placing them in a separate order. They differ from monkeys and men (*Anthropoidea*) in the following points:—The orbit opens freely into the temporal fossa (except in *Tarsius*); the lachrymal foramen lies outside the orbit; the first pair of upper incisors is separated in the middle line (except in *Chiromys*); the second digit of the foot always bears a pointed claw, but all the others have flat nails; the cerebral hemispheres are but slightly convoluted, and do not completely overlap the cerebellum; the middle or transverse portion of the colon is almost always folded or convoluted on itself; there may be abdominal as well as thoracic mammæ; the uterus is bicornuate; the placenta is diffuse. The dentition varies greatly; the maximum is 2133.

The lemurs are small, furry quadrupeds, with fox-like faces but the general appearance of monkeys. Most are nocturnal, all arboreal. The first digit is always opposable. They feed on fruits and leaves, on eggs and small animals. Seven genera occur in Madagascar, three in the African continent, and other three here and there in the Oriental forests as far east as the Philippines and Celebes.

There are three chief types:—

- (a) That of the Lemuridæ, *e.g.* in Madagascar *Lemur*, and the large *Indris* (2 ft. long), in Africa *Galago*, in Malay *Nycticebus*, in India and Ceylon *Loris*.
- (b) *Tarsius*, a specialised Indo-Malayan type, with many peculiarities, *e.g.* the calcaneum and navicular are elongated like the calcaneum and astragalus in the frog.
- (c) *Chiromys*, the Aye-Aye, a specialised Madagascar type, with many peculiarities, *e.g.* with a Rodent-like rootless front tooth (incisor above, incisor or canine (?) below), and with a very much attenuated third finger, used for excavating insects from holes.

The lemurs are interesting, both because they link the *Anthropoidea* to lower Mammals, and because of their distribution. In Tertiary times they were abundant in Europe and N. America, and were then of generalised type. In the latter continent they became extinct; but in the Old World they appear to have migrated southwards at an early period into Africa and India. They reached Madagascar at a time when that island was connected to the continent, and before the advent of the larger carnivores. There they have been isolated and have



developed in a fashion comparable to that which has occurred in the case of the Australian Marsupials. Of fifty living species, thirty are confined to Madagascar, and the lemurs are there exceedingly numerous in individuals. Outside of Madagascar they only maintain a precarious footing in forests or islands, and are usually few in number. The absence of defensive weapons, the frequent slowness of movement, and the feeble intelligence apparently make them unable to hold their own against the more specialised carnivores.

### Order ANTHROPOIDEA (*Syn.* SIMIÆ).

This order includes five families.

Family 5. Hominidæ. Man.

„	4. Simiidæ. Anthropoid Apes.	} Old World
„	3. Cercopithecidæ. Baboons.	
„	2. Cebidæ. American Monkeys.	} New World
„	1. Hapalidæ. Marmosets.	

The following characteristics are generally true:—

The body is hairy, least so in man; the dentition is diphyodont and heterodont; the incisors do not exceed  $\frac{2}{2}$ ; the molars are  $\frac{3}{3}$ , except in the marmosets, where they are  $\frac{2}{2}$ ; the axis of the orbit is directed forward, and the orbit is completely closed off from the temporal fossa by ingrowths of frontal and jugal meeting the alisphenoid; the clavicles are well developed; the radius and ulna are never united; the scaphoid, the lunar, and usually the os centrale remain distinct from one another; there are usually five fingers and five toes, but the thumb may be absent or rudimentary; the hallux is opposable except in man, and has a flat nail except in the orang; the thumb is usually more or less opposable; the cerebral hemispheres have numerous convolutions, and overlap the cerebellum; the stomach is simple except in *Semnopithecus* and its relatives, in which it is sacculated, and there is a cæcum which is often large; there are two mammæ on the breast; the uterus is simple; the testes lie in a scrotum; the penis is pendent; the placenta is meta-discoidal, being developed by the concentration of the villi from a diffuse area into a well-defined disc.

Some of the characteristics in which the Anthropeidea differ from Lemuroidea may be re-emphasised: the orbit is separated from the



temporal fossa by a bony partition ; the lachrymal foramen is situated within the margin of the orbit ; the median upper incisors are in contact ; the cerebral hemispheres are richly convoluted, and hide or almost cover the cerebellum ; the transverse portion of the colon extends uninterruptedly across the abdomen ; the mammæ are never abdominal ; the uterus is not bicornuate but simple ; the placentation is meta-discoidal.

Family 1. HAPALIDÆ (= Arctopithecini). Marmosets.

The marmosets are the smallest monkeys, not much larger than squirrels. They live in companies in the Neotropical forests, especially in Brazil, and feed on insects and fruit.

Their dentition  $\frac{2132}{2132}$  is distinctive, for other Anthropeidea have  $\frac{3}{3}$  molars. There is a broad septum between the nostrils, as in the other New World monkeys ; the external auditory meatus is not bony. The parietal and jugal are in contact. The tail is long, hairy, and non-prehensile. The arms are not longer than the legs ; there are no cheek pouches nor ischial callosities. The thumb or pollex is long, but not opposable ; all the digits have a pointed claw except the great toe or hallux, which is very small. The marmosets often bear three young ones at a birth, whereas the other monkeys usually bear but one. There are two genera, *Hapale* and *Midas*.

Family 2. CEBIDÆ (= Platyrrhini). American Monkeys.

In the American monkeys the nose is flat, with a broad internarial septum. They occur throughout tropical America, but are most at home in Brazil. All are arboreal, and many have prehensile tails. The digits have nails, not claws ; the thumb is somewhat opposable, and divergent from the fingers, except in the spider monkey—*Ateles*—in which it is rudimentary. The skull is rounded, and the frontals form a V-shaped suture with the parietals. The external auditory meatus is not bony. The parietal and jugal are in contact, separating the frontal from the alisphenoid. The dentition is characteristic, for there are six back teeth ; the formula being 2133.

Examples.—The howling monkeys (*Myctes*), with large vocal organs protected by the expanded mandibles, and with an



inflated hyoid-bone forming a resonating chamber; the sakis (*Pithecia*) with very long tail; *Nyctipithecus*; *Chrysothrix*; the spider monkeys (*Ateles*) with exceedingly prehensile tail; the capuchins (*Cebus*), often imported into Europe.

These two New World families are related to each other, but their relation to the other monkeys is uncertain. Some authorities believe that the New World Primates have originated independently from the early N. American lemurs.

Family 3. CERCOPITHECIDÆ (= Cynomorph Catarrhini).  
Old World dog-like Apes.

The Old World apes of this family are still quadrupeds, and the snout or muzzle often justifies the term Cynomorph or dog-like. There is a narrow internarial septum, to which the term Catarrhini refers. The frontal and alisphenoid are in contact, separating the parietal from the jugal. The dentition is like that of the anthropoid apes and man, 2123. The external auditory meatus is bony. The thumb is opposable, except when it is rudimentary, as in *Colobus*. The tail is not prehensile. Over the rough surfaces of the everted ischia the skin forms callosities often brightly coloured. The breast-bone is narrow. The cæcum has no vermiform appendix.

In the sub-family Cercopithecidæ there are cheek pouches, the stomach is simple, and the fore- and hind-limbs are almost equal.

Examples.—The African baboons (*Cynocephalus*) e.g. the mandrill (*C. maimon*), notable for the bright colours of the face and hips in the adult males; the macaques (*Macacus*), all Asiatic except the tailless Barbary ape (*M. inuus*) of N. Africa and Gibraltar; the African *Cercopithecus*.

In the sub-family Semnopithecinae there are no cheek pouches, the stomach is sacculated in a complex fashion, and the hind-limbs are longer than the fore-limbs.

Examples.—The sacred Indian apes (*Semnopithecus*), the African *Colobus*, and the proboscis monkey (*Nasalis*) of Borneo.

Family 4. SIMIIDÆ (= Anthropomorph Catarrhini).  
Anthropoid Apes.

The Old World apes of this family are the Gibbons (*Hylobates*), the Orangs (*Simia*), the Chimpanzees (*Troglo-dytes* or *Anthropopithecus*), and the Gorillas (*Gorilla*). As



they are the highest apes and most like man, they are called Anthropoid.

These apes are less like quadrupeds than the others ; they have no distinct tail and no cheek pouches. The caudal vertebræ form the coccyx. Only in the Gibbon are there

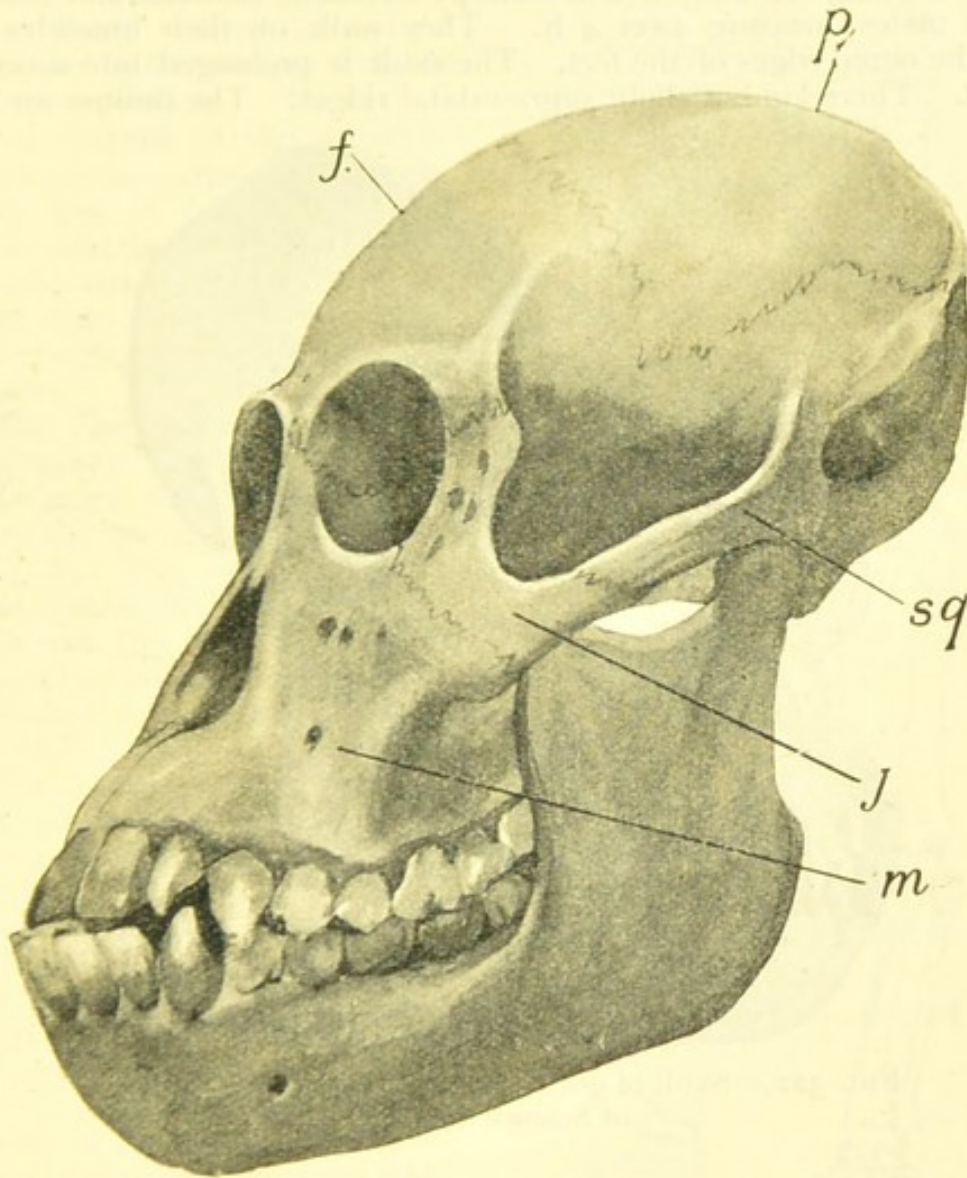


FIG. 321.—Skull of Orang-Utan.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

*p.*, Parietal ; *f.*, frontal ; *sq.*, squamosal ; *j.*, jugal ; *m.*, maxilla.

ischial callosities, and these are small. The arms are much longer than the legs. The sternum is broad. The cæcum has a vermiform appendix. As in the lower Old World apes, the dentition is like that of man—2123.

The Gibbons (*Hylobates*) live in S.-E. Asia, especially in the Malayan region. The largest attains a height of 3 ft. They walk erect



with the hands reaching the ground. The skull is not prolonged into a vertical crest. There is an os centrale in the carpus. The hallux is well developed. They are the highest apes with hints of ischial callosities. They are mainly arboreal in their habits. They feed on fruits, leaves, shoots, eggs, young birds, spiders, and insects. Their voice is powerful. As regards teeth, the gibbons are most like man.

The Orangs (*Simia*) live in swampy forests in Sumatra and Borneo. The males measure over 4 ft. They walk on their knuckles and on the outer edges of the feet. The skull is prolonged into a vertical crest. There are but slight supra-orbital ridges. The canines are very

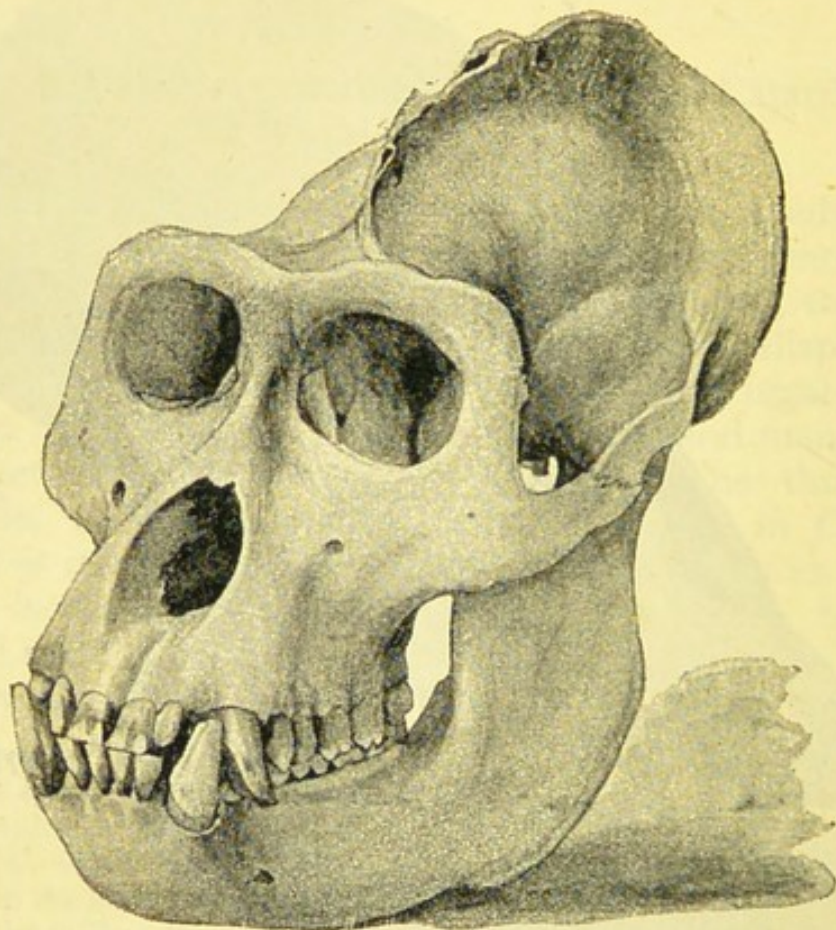


FIG. 322.—Skull of gorilla.—From Edinburgh Museum of Science and Art.

large. There are twelve ribs as in man, and sixteen dorso-lumbar vertebræ. The larynx is connected with two large sacs which unite ventrally. There are no ischial callosities. They are arboreal in their habits, and make nests in the branches. They are exclusively vegetarian. As regards the structure of the brain, the Orangs are most like man.

The Gorillas (*Gorilla*) live in Western Equatorial Africa. They are larger than all other apes, and larger than man, though not over  $5\frac{1}{2}$  ft. in height. The arms reach to the middle of the lower leg, and the animals walk with the backs of their closed hands and the flat soles of their feet on the ground. The skull is not prolonged into a vertical



crest. There are prominent supra-orbital ridges. The canines of the males are very large. The cervical vertebræ bear very high neural spines, on which are inserted the muscles which support the heavy skull. There are thirteen ribs, and seventeen dorso-lumbar vertebræ. There is no os centrale in the carpus. There are no ischial callosities. They live in families in the forest, and feed on fruits. As regards size, the gorillas are most like man. The males are much larger than the females.

The Chimpanzees (*Anthropopithecus*) live in Western and Central Equatorial Africa. They do not exceed a height of 5 ft. The arms reach a little below the knee. They walk on the backs of their closed hands and on their soles or closed toes. The skull has no high crests. The supra-orbital ridges are distinct. The canines are smaller than in Gorilla or Orang. There is no centrale in the carpus. There are no ischial callosities. The chimpanzees live in families in the forest, and are chiefly arboreal, making nests in trees. They seem to feed on fruits. In the sigmoid curvature of the vertebral column the chimpanzees are most like man.

In connection with the Anthropoid apes may be noticed *Pithecanthropus erectus*, a new genus erected by Dubois from a fragment of a skull and a femur found by him (fossil) in Java, and alleged to represent a form intermediate between man and the Anthropoid apes.

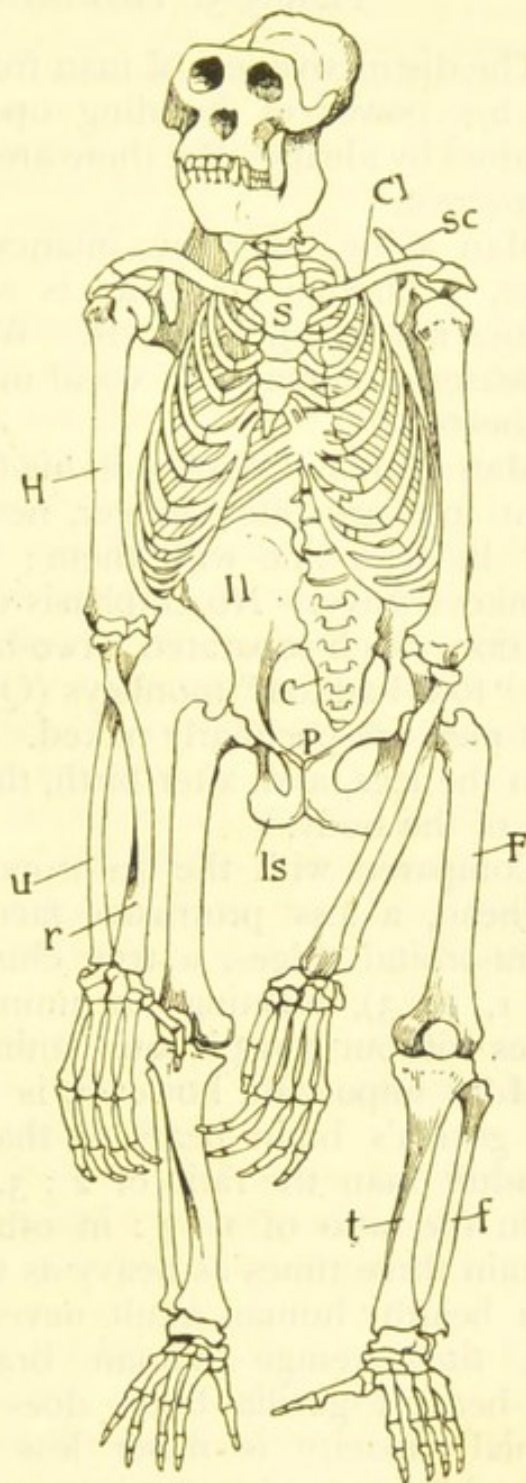


FIG. 323.—Skeleton of male gorilla.—  
From Edinburgh Museum of Science  
and Art.

*cl.*, Clavicle; *sc.*, tip of scapula; *S.*, præsternum; *H.*, humerus; *r.*, radius; *u.*, ulna; *Il.*, ilium; *C.*, coccyx; *P.*, pubis; *Is.*, ischium; *F.*, femur; *t.*, tibia; *f.*, fibula.



Family 5. HOMINIDÆ. Genus *Homo*.

The distinctiveness of man from his nearest allies depends on his power of building up ideas and of guiding his conduct by ideals. But there are some structural peculiarities of interest.

Man alone, after his infancy is past, walks thoroughly erect. Though his head is weighted by a heavy brain, it does not droop forwards. With his upright attitude, the increased command of vocal mechanism is perhaps in part connected.

Man plants the soles of his feet flat on the ground; the great toes are often longer, never shorter than the others, and lie in a line with them; he has a better heel than monkeys have. No emphasis can be laid on the old distinction which separated "two-handed" men (*Bimana*) from the "four-handed" monkeys (*Quadrumana*), nor on the fact that men are peculiarly naked. But "the arms are shorter than the legs, and, after birth, the latter grow faster than the rest of the body."

Compared with the anthropoid apes, man has a bigger forehead, a less protrusive face, smaller cheek-bones and supra-orbital ridges, a true chin, and more uniform teeth (2, 1, 2, 3), forming an uninterrupted horseshoe-shaped series without conspicuous canines.

More important, however, is the fact that the weight of the gorilla's brain bears to that of the smallest brain of an adult man the ratio of 2 : 3, and to the largest human brain the ratio of 1 : 3; in other words, a man *may* have a brain three times as heavy as that of a gorilla. The brain of a healthy human adult never weighs less than 31 or 32 oz.; the average human brain weighs 48 or 49 oz.; the heaviest gorilla brain does not exceed 20 oz. "The cranial capacity is never less than 55 cubic in. in any normal human subject, while in the Orang and Chimpanzee it is but 26 and 27½ cubic in. respectively."

But, as Owen allowed long since, there is an "all-pervading similitude of structure" between man and the anthropoid apes. As far as structure is concerned, there is much less difference between man and the gorilla than there is between the gorilla and the marmoset.



As regards the much-discussed question of a tail in man, it may be noted that if we define a tail as *that part of the body which contains postsacral vertebræ and sundry other parts of primitive caudal segments, and which is, moreover, completely surrounded by integument*, then such tails occur always in early embryos of man, and as abnormalities after birth. The abnormalities may be either altogether soft or they may contain bone, but in no case adequately known is there any increase in the number of vertebræ which normally fuse to form the terminal portion of the human vertebral column, known as the coccyx.

The arguments by which Darwin and others have sought to show that man arose from an ancestral type common to him and to the higher apes, are the same as those used to substantiate the general doctrine of descent. The "Descent of Man" is the expansion of a chapter in the "Origin of Species." The arguments may be briefly summarised:—

(1) Physiological. The bodily life of man is like that of monkeys; men and monkeys are subject to similar diseases; various human traits of gesture, expression, etc., are paralleled among the "brutes"; reversions and monsters corroborate the alliance sadly enough.

(2) Morphological. The structure of man is like that of the anthropoid apes; none of his distinctions, except that of a heavy brain, are momentous; there are about eighty vestigial structures in his muscular, skeletal, and other systems.

(3) Historical. Certainties in regard to remains of primitive man are few, but his individual development reads like a recapitulation of ancestral history.

To many, man seems too marvellous to have been naturally evolved, to others the evidence seems insufficient; but if the doctrine of descent is true for other organisms, it is likely to be true for man also.

As to the antiquity of the human race, it is certain that men lived in Europe in the latter stages of the Ice age, and there are indications of human life in Pliocene times. But, as it is certain that man could not have arisen from any of the known anthropoid apes, and as it is likely that he arose from an ancestral stock common to them and to him, it seems justifiable to date the antiquity of the human race not later than the time when the anthropoid apes are known to have been established as a distinct family. This takes us back to Miocene ages.



If man was naturally evolved, the factors in the process require elucidation, but in regard to these we can only speculate. From what we know of men and monkeys, it seems likely that, in the struggles of primitive man, wits were of more use than strength. When the habits of using sticks and stones, of building shelters, of living in families began—and they have begun among monkeys—it is likely that wits would grow rapidly. The prolonged infancy, characteristic of human offspring, would help to evolve gentleness. But even more important is the fact that among monkeys there are distinct societies. Families combine for protection, the combination favours the development of emotional and intellectual strength. "Man did not make society ; society made man."

Finally, it is plain that all repugnance to the doctrine of descent as applied to man should disappear when we clearly realise the great axiom of evolution, that "there is nothing in the end which was not also in the beginning."



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY.

THE comparative study of the Physiology of the Invertebrates has not as yet been carried far, though there have been several careful investigations of particular problems. This chapter is an attempt to gather up some of the most important facts, in order especially to show what is sometimes forgotten, that physiology has much to say upon the general problem of the origin and maintenance of particular characters. A short note on abnormal physiological conditions and their bearing upon evolution has also been added.

#### THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

We may say, in the most general way, that the function of the nervous system is to bring the organism into relation with the external world. The mechanism by which this is effected consists typically of three parts—(1) the peripheral nerve-endings, which receive the stimuli; (2) the nerves, or paths by which the stimuli are conveyed to or from (3) the central nerve cells. The peripheral end organs with which we are most familiar are those of eye, ear, and the other special senses; but we must not forget that the termination of nerve in muscle—the so-called end-plate—is equally a peripheral nerve-ending. All nerves are in communication on the one hand with a peripheral organ, and on the other with central cells.

It is obvious, from the above definition, that neither Protozoa nor Sponges possess a nervous *system*. For in a Protozoon the receptive and perceptive mechanism is contained in the single cell,—any part of the protoplasm will respond to external stimuli. In Sponges the transmission of



stimuli is effected by the general protoplasm of the cells—little division of labour being apparent, in spite of the fact that “nerve cells” have been described in several cases.

Among the Coelentera we find in *Hydra* special nerve cells, but, as proved by the familiar regeneration experiment, these are all similar and equivalent. On the other hand, among the “jelly-fish” we find nerve-centres and nerves quite distinctly differentiated. As we should expect, the nerve physiology differs in the Craspedota and the Acraspeda.

In the Craspedote forms the nervous system consists of a ring round the margin of the bell, giving off nerves which form a plexus among the muscles, and furnished with slight thickenings—the marginal bodies—at the bases of the tentacles. The ring controls the movements of the swimming bell: if it is totally destroyed the movement ceases, but the retention of a very small part is sufficient to maintain the movement. The parts of the ring are apparently equivalent to each other, any part being capable of transmitting motor impulses to the whole of the muscles effecting movement. The thickened areas of the ring seem to have a slightly more powerful effect than the undifferentiated parts, but the difference is not very marked; the marginal bodies are, however, distinctly sensitive to light. If a strong beam of light be thrown upon a swimming bell, it responds by more active contractions, and as the organisms are more active in light than in darkness, we may conclude that light (along with heat) acts as a constant stimulus. If the nerve-ring is totally destroyed, the animal becomes motionless, and does not recover itself; if stimulated electrically or mechanically, it responds by a single contraction, or occasionally, in very vigorous specimens, by several.

In the Acraspeda the eight separate nerve-centres preside over the swimming movements: if these are all destroyed, the movements cease. If the specimen is vigorous, however, it not infrequently, after a period of rest, resumes its movements, sometimes only feebly, sometimes with a speed quite comparable to that of an uninjured specimen. If stimulated during the latent period, the Medusa usually responds with more than one contraction, in this way also differing from the Craspedote forms. Sensitiveness to



light is exhibited in the same way as in the latter. The central nervous system is connected by a nerve-plexus with the muscles which effect movement. Although little is known histologically of the way in which the nerves end in the muscles, yet physiologically, in its relation to poisons, the peripheral termination shows a remarkable resemblance to the "end-plate" which characteristically occurs in the muscles of Vertebrates. We find here, therefore, even at this low stage, that the three distinct parts of a nervous system are quite clearly defined. It seems unlikely that division of labour has gone so far as to definitely differentiate sensory and motor nerves, but it is important to note that, as in higher forms with distinct afferent and efferent nerves, muscular contraction follows the application of a stimulus. The difference as to the effect of the removal of the nerve-centres in the two types is extremely interesting, but as yet unexplained.

In sea-anemones the nervous system has been less fully investigated than in the Medusæ. There are no specialised nerve-centres: nearly all parts of the body when separated seem to be able to respond to stimuli, so that the nerve-cells must be scattered. The relation of the muscles to the nervous tissue has the same physiological complexity as in the Medusæ. An interesting point is the absence of the spontaneous movement which is so characteristic of the Medusæ. We have the same contrast often presented even in the life history of the individual,—compare the sessile hydroid and the active swimming-bell, the fixed hydra-tuba and the pelagic jelly-fish; but the cause of the difference is as yet unknown. There are two rival explanations of rhythmic movements, such as those of the umbrella of the Medusæ. According to the first, it is caused by rhythmic stimuli passing out from the nervous centres to the muscles concerned, and thereby causing the contractions. The other view is that the regular contractions are due to the activity of the muscles themselves. On this hypothesis, building-up processes go on in the muscles until extremely unstable substances are produced; these explode and break down into simpler compounds, the process being accompanied by an evolution of energy manifested by the contraction of the muscle. The process, repeated at regular



intervals, causes the regular contractions. This view seems to minimise unduly the function of nerve-cells, but yet it is to be noticed that the destruction of the nerve-centres in *Aurelia* does not permanently arrest the movements.

In *Beroë*, representing the Ctenophora, it has been observed that the sense-organ, which is placed at the aboral pole, has to do with the movements. In contradistinction to the conditions found in the Medusæ, we find that special parts of the central nervous system preside over special areas of the organism. This is a distinct advance in the direction of division of labour, and recalls the state of affairs in higher forms, where clusters of brain cells form what are called *centres*, which preside over particular organs. It is of interest to note that in the Ctenophora the movement is due to cilia, as contrasted with the muscular movement of other Cœlentera.

Little is known of the nerve physiology of the members of the very heterogeneous group of "Worms." It is said that a decapitated earthworm can regenerate the anterior end with its cerebral ganglia. This would seem to indicate that there is little centralisation of the nervous system, and that the ganglia are all of nearly equal physiological importance. It seems more likely, however, that in, at any rate, most Annelids, the so-called "brain" does perform to some extent the function of a central nervous system, although the centralisation is only partial. In *Lumbricus* sensory and motor nerve-fibres are differentiated.

The nerve physiology of the Echinoderms has been very fully worked out, except in the case of the Holothurians.

As a type we may take the sea-urchin. Here the ring round the mouth has a co-ordinating function; only when it is intact do the segments of the body act in unison. The ambulacral nerves branch freely to form the inner nerve-plexus; from this nerves pass out through the shell to the outer nerve-plexus. If any spot on the outside of the shell be lightly stimulated, all the spines, pedicellariæ, and tube-feet in the neighbourhood bend towards the spot; if it be more strongly irritated, the spines and tube-feet of the other segments come into play, and by their co-ordinated activity move the animal in a straight line away from the point of injury. The spines and tube-feet thus exhibit two different



forms of activity—one a mere local response to stimuli, the other a more complicated and co-ordinated action. The first is presided over by the external plexus, but for its complete accomplishment the external plexus must be intact; a connection with the gullet is unnecessary, as the action is quite as efficiently performed when the ambulacral nerves are severed. Over the co-ordinated action of the spines and tube-feet the internal nerve-plexus presides, but connection with the gullet-ring is absolutely necessary. The gullet-ring is thus of great importance, but the co-ordinating action is not entirely limited to it. Each ambulacral nerve can co-ordinate the action of the tube-feet of its own segment, when quite detached from the ring and the other ambulacral nerves. This nervous system is a considerable advance on that of the jelly-fish, but the centralisation is still small.

In the Arthropods, as in the Annelids, the question of the value of the supra-oesophageal ganglia has been much debated. In Insects, according to Krukenberg, they are not of great importance as a co-ordinating centre, many complex movements being performed without the head. But this argument is hardly conclusive, for a decapitated tortoise may continue to walk along for several yards. The respiratory movements appear to be presided over by the ganglia of the abdomen; they are still performed by separated segments, though their depth or frequency is often disturbed by the separation from the brain. In spite, however, of the independence of the ganglia of the ventral chain, the brain here, as in higher animals, directs the movements. In the crayfish the voluntary movements and the maintenance of equilibrium depend on the supra-oesophageal ganglia; the infra-oesophageal contain the centres for the co-ordination of the movements of eating, and are reflex centres, like all the remaining ganglia. In the crab there is both morphologically and physiologically a much greater amount of concentration.

Among the Mollusca we find that in the Lamellibranchs the three sets of ganglia are of nearly equal importance. There is no defined central nervous system, a fact which we may correlate with the sedentary habit. The motor nerves to the great retractor muscles pass out from the adjacent ganglia; that is, the cerebral ganglia innervate the



anterior retractor, the visceral the posterior. The closing of the shell is active, and is caused by the passage of impulses to the muscles along the motor nerves. The opening is more passive, as the elastic ligament causes the valves to gape when the muscles relax. This relaxation is caused by *inhibitory* nerves, which inhibit the action of the motor nerves, and the muscles in consequence return to their former condition. The inhibitory nerves to both muscles pass out from the cerebral ganglia, but there is no evidence to justify the assumption that these have any "brain" function. The motor cells of the cerebral and visceral ganglia can be stimulated through many peripheral sensory nerves. The heart is innervated from the visceral ganglia, but some physiologists who minimise the importance of the innervation maintain that the heart's activity is largely protoplasmic, and that the nerves have chiefly or wholly an inhibitory or trophic function.

In the Cephalopoda the supra-oesophageal mass corresponds physiologically to the brain of Vertebrates. When it is destroyed, the ordinary vital functions, such as respiration, circulation, etc., are unaltered; the animal continues to respond to external stimuli, but the power of "volition" is gone; if left to itself, it remains in one position until death ensues. From this fact we see that the centres, or presiding nerve-cells for all the *automatic* functions, are placed elsewhere than in the brain, but that this originates all the "voluntary" muscular movements. Of the various centres, the respiratory is located in the pleural ganglia; from it nerves pass out which end in the stellate ganglia, and are both motor and sensory for the mantle. This centre is not self-acting, that is, not automatic, as are the corresponding centres in Vertebrates, but is only reflexly stimulated into activity by impulses borne by afferent nerves from some part of the body. It seems most reasonable to suppose that this condition is primitive, and that the automatic form of activity is derived. The centre for the movement of the chromatophores is in the sub-oesophageal mass. The activity of the heart is said by some to be purely "protoplasmic," but co-ordination of the parts of the heart, the branchial hearts, etc., is effected by means of the ganglia placed in the



course of the visceral nerves and their branches. The arms are very well innervated, containing a central nervous axis; even a severed arm is said to exhibit powerful reflex movements. This property is probably of some use in the free hecto-cotyliated arm of the male. If a "brain" be defined as the general motor centre associated with at least one of the higher sensory nerves, then the Crustaceans and Tracheata have "brains"; but this can hardly be said of Molluscs or of Annelids.

### THE PHYSIOLOGY OF NUTRITION.

We have seen that by means of the nervous system the animal is brought into relations with the external world. It is in consequence constantly evolving energy in the form of movement, heat, electrical energy (*Gymnotus*, etc.), or light (phosphorescent animals). We now proceed to consider the manner by which this loss of energy is made good, that is the Nutrition of the Tissues. Inasmuch, however, as the food of animals typically consists of very complex organic substances, the process of *digestion* must first be considered. Digestion is the process by which the organic substances of the food are broken down into simpler substances, which are soluble and diffusible, and capable of being assimilated and built up into the substance of the tissues.

**Digestion.**—In many of the Protozoa, as in the familiar case of *Amœba*, solid food particles are ingested, they are surrounded by fluid, and eventually the fluid is absorbed with the products of digestion, while the useless and indigestible residue is rejected. Primarily, this process differs from that found in Vertebrates, in that it is *intra-cellular*, instead of being the result of the action of *extra-cellular* ferments. There is some doubt as to whether the Protozoan type of digestion is also due to ferments, or whether the living protoplasm has the power of directly inducing changes in substances brought into contact with it. Krukenberg succeeded in extracting a peptic ferment from the plasmodium of "flowers of tan," but did not believe that it could have a digestive function; on account of the alkalinity of normal protoplasm. Metchnikoff, however, has demonstrated in some cases that the fluid of "food vacuoles" is acid, and



seems to hold that all digestion is due to ferment action. Miss Greenwood has also demonstrated an acid in the vacuoles of several Protozoa, and described the process of digestion. In any case we must note that the formation of ferments appears to be a characteristic of protoplasm; but that, as we ascend in the scale of being, these ferments are more and more utilised in the digestive processes, and tend to be limited to the walls and outgrowths of the alimentary canal. We may note here (as is more fully explained in the section on Comparative Pathology) that in most animals certain cells retain the primitive Protozoan capacity for taking up and digesting solid particles, while the general body cells have lost it.

It is a fact of common observation, that in parasites the alimentary canal tends to be absent or degenerate; nutrition is usually effected by simple absorption of the juices of the host. The exact physiological reason for the disappearance of the gut is not obvious. Further, the method by which such parasites are protected from the action of the ferments of their hosts is not clear. The reason is perhaps in part the thickness of the cuticle, which is composed of substances not amenable to ferment action. Again, Frenzel claims to have found an *anti-enzyme* in Gregarines, which neutralises the action of the host's intestinal juices. The problem is analogous to that suggested by the fact that the cells of the gut escape during life the action of its juices, by which they are often attacked after death. Frenzel, indeed, compares a Gregarine to an absorbing intestinal cell.

In the Coelentera, ferments have been extracted from the bodies of jelly-fish and sea-anemones. In some cases a tryptic ferment was extracted from the reproductive organs, a peptic from the tentacles and mesenteries. The secretion of ferment is thus not confined to the digestive region, and, according to Krukenberg, the ferments are not employed for the digestion of food outside the formative cells. In his experiments he found that solution and absorption of food particles only took place when the particles were in actual contact with the digestive region. In Sponges, digestion is purely intracellular; in *Hydra*, both intra- and extracellular digestion seem to occur.

Among the higher worms, *Hirudo* is distinguished by the



absence of an enzyme-containing secretion. The blood contained in its pouched gut is simply absorbed by the walls. The similarity of this method of nutrition to the purely parasitic one found in Cestodes and Trematodes, has been advanced as an additional reason for associating the leeches with flat-worms rather than with the Chætopoda. The habit of feeding on the blood of other animals may, however, have led to some of the leech's peculiarities.

In most of the other Annelida—*Aphrodite*, *Arenicola*, *Lumbricus*, etc.—a ferment capable of acting upon proteids has been found. It is closely allied to the tryptic ferment of Vertebrates, but is not identical with it in all its reactions. It has been termed *iso-trypsin*, and, like trypsin, it is only active in neutral or alkaline solutions. It appears to be confined to the Annelida. The intestinal "cæca" found in *Aphrodite* and others are not absorptive areas, but merely reservoirs of secretion. They are rendered necessary by the fact that the gland cells are constantly active, and not merely, as in Vertebrates, stimulated to action by the presence of food in the intestine. The process is therefore closely analogous to the secretion of bile by the vertebrate liver, where the liver cells are constantly active, and the gall-bladder, like the cæca of worms, serves as a store-chamber. But as the bile is probably not to any extent a digestive fluid, and as the true digestive glands of Vertebrates are not constantly active, the conclusion is suggested that the constant activity of the cells in the worm is a primitive condition. In most Annelida a diastatic ferment also occurs, which possesses, as usual, the power of converting starch into sugar.

In the Echinoderms we find that in star-fishes tryptic, peptic, and diastatic ferments are all found; the voluminous cæca serve as reservoirs for the secretion. In the Holothurians no digestive glands have been, as yet, found in connection with the gut, nor can any ferment be extracted from its walls. The contents of the gut are, however, mixed with a peptic ferment; this can also be extracted from extra-intestinal parts of the body, so that ferment-secreting glands must exist. A similar diffuseness in the occurrence of ferments is very common among the Echinoderma. It is therefore asserted that digestion must go on in various parts



of the body, and that it is not limited to the alimentary tract. Diastatic ferments are very frequently present.

In Arthropods, peptic, tryptic, and diastatic ferments are common. The peptic ferment is uniform throughout the group, and has been termed "homaropepsin," to indicate that it differs considerably from the pepsin of Vertebrates. On the other hand, the tryptic ferment is not distinguishable from that of Vertebrates. Both peptic and tryptic ferments are often secreted by the same gland. The reason for this and its physiological consequences are unknown. In the Crustacea the reduction of the digestive mid-gut is compensated for by the increasing development of the digestive gland, which is in reality a compact mass of cæca. In the cæca digestion and absorption go on, fats only being directly absorbed by the short mid-gut.

In the Mollusca, œsophageal glands, usually called "salivary," are very common, and often large. In some cases, as in *Dolium* and others, these glands secrete only mineral acids (sulphuric in *Dolium*). According to Bunge, these acids, like the hydrochloric of the Vertebrate stomach, have chiefly an antiseptic action, destroying Bacteria introduced with the food. If this be correct, the advantage of the œsophageal position is very obvious. The true digestive gland of Molluscs is the "liver," which is usually very large, and often secretes diastatic, peptic, and tryptic ferments. Its secretion, like the perivisceral fluid, is always neutral or slightly alkaline. Peptic digestion may be rendered possible (1) by the presence of acid derived from the œsophageal glands, or (2) by the acid nature of the food; but nothing is known with certainty.

**The nutrition of the tissues.**—After the complex food substances have been broken down into simpler ones, they must be carried to the tissues, there to be employed in repairing waste, or in growth. In a simple Protozoon there is no difficulty; like a primitive community, the single cell supplies its own wants, and the question of transport is never raised. In a Metazoon, on the other hand, as in a civilised state, there is much division of labour, and the question of the transport of manufactured material becomes very important.

In a Vertebrate the blood is the great transporting agent;



into it the products of digestion are ultimately poured; from it waste products are filtered. It is itself, however, confined to closed vessels, and does not come into close connection with the tissues; these are, strictly speaking, nourished by the lymph, which bathes the tissues throughout, and also communicates freely with the blood stream. Thus the lymph is the "middleman" between blood and tissues. In Vertebrates the lymph has not the respiratory significance which the blood has in virtue of its red corpuscles.

In most of the lower aquatic forms of life the fluid within the body differs little from that which surrounds it. Thus, as we should expect, the fluid which bathes the cavity of a sea-anemone or a jelly-fish, filling the hollow tentacles of the one and the canal system of the other, is little more than sea water. It contains no formed elements, no dissolved albumens, no organic substances capable of forming a loose combination with oxygen—that is, no respiratory pigment. It is thus certainly not a nutritive fluid; the tissues must be nourished by the products of digestion passing from cell to cell. It is, however, of use in respiration. Like other sea water, it contains dissolved oxygen; and we must suppose that the endoderm cells take up the oxygen they require directly from it, as the ectoderm cells do from the surrounding water. The fluid has also an excretory significance: it carries away waste products, both solid and gaseous, and removes these from the body.

The fluids of Ascidians, Lamellibranchs, and of a few Gasteropods, are all classed by Krukenberg as hydrolymph. They consist largely of water, but contain in addition formed elements, or dissolved proteids. In Ascidians the body fluid contains a small amount of dissolved proteids, and some pigmented corpuscles.

In Echinoderms we find that both a perivisceral fluid and blood enclosed in special blood vessels are present. Of the blood little or nothing is known, the technical difficulties in the way of isolation being very great. The perivisceral fluid contains numerous formed elements, and a small amount of dissolved proteids. It probably performs the functions of the lymph of Vertebrates, but is said to have a respiratory function in addition.



In Insects the blood is of the nature of Vertebrate lymph. It is very rich in dissolved proteids, and undoubtedly serves for the nutrition of the tissues. It has no respiratory function, in spite of the frequent occurrence of various pigments in it—a point of some theoretical interest. The tracheal tubes carry air, and so oxygen, to every part of the body; an oxygen-carrying fluid formed by the organism itself thus becomes quite unnecessary. We may, physiologically, compare the tracheal system of the Insect with the canal system of the Medusa. In both cases the external medium is carried by special channels to the tissues themselves; in both cases the body fluids have, in consequence, no respiratory significance.

In "Worms," Crustaceans, most Gasteropods, and Cephalopods, the blood is both respiratory and nutritive. It is "hæmolymph," combining the functions of the blood and the lymph in Vertebrates.

In Annelid worms the blood contains small formed elements, and a number of respiratory pigments, some of which will be discussed later.

In Cephalopods the blood contains formed elements similar to leucocytes, while in the plasma a respiratory pigment known as hæmocyanin is dissolved. This consists of a proteid substance united to copper, and is the only albuminoid present in the plasma. It is very widely spread among Gasteropods, Crustaceans, etc., but is not universal. Its absence in some crabs, which have apparently no compensating metal-containing pigment, perhaps indicates that too much stress should not be laid upon its respiratory significance. Lipochrome pigments are very frequently present in the blood of Crustaceans and Cephalopods; their use is unknown.

If we compare the condition seen in Cephalopods with that found in Vertebrates, we find that in the latter it is the red blood corpuscles which are the oxygen-carriers, while in the former the plasma alone subserves respiration. Even in Vertebrates, however, the waste carbonic acid is carried in the plasma in combination with its soda, so that the plasma is not entirely unconcerned with respiration. In both Vertebrates and Cephalopods the plasma has a nutritive function.



## PRODUCTS OF METABOLISM.

In the course of those processes of breaking down and building up of protoplasm, which constitute what is called the metabolism of the animal, we constantly find that certain by-products are formed. These may be simply waste matters, capable of subserving no useful purpose in the animal economy, or they may have important functions. As we ascend in the scale, we find that these by-products are more and more utilised for different purposes. Thus many pigments which are widely distributed seem to be practically functionless, but in particular cases they come to be of importance in producing protective coloration, and so on. Among the products of metabolism we will discuss here only two groups—the skeletal tissues and the colouring matters.

**The skeletal tissues of animals.**—Even in the very simplest forms of life we find that the soft protoplasm is frequently provided with protective structures. In many cases the organism merely takes up inorganic particles from the surrounding medium, and with these fashions a shell for itself, as we find in some of the Foraminifera. In most of the Foraminifera, however, a true shell of lime is “secreted” by the protoplasm. This taking up of inorganic particles is not the only way in which the tendency to form a tective covering is manifested in the Protozoa. The Corticata are encased in a firm sheath which shows many of the characters of true skeletal substances; while familiar organic compounds, such as cellulose, gelatine, and horny substances, are not unknown. Even in the Protozoa, therefore, we see in germ the power, so characteristic of higher animals, of producing by modifications of their protoplasm, specific substances capable of affording both support and protection.

Skeletal tissues are usually characterised by the physical property of being firm and often hard to the touch, while generally retaining some elasticity, and the chemical one of offering great resistance to ordinary chemical agencies. They are naturally passive and inert, and, so far as the internal skeleton is concerned, are formed in the connective tissues, and not in relation to important organs, except in pathological conditions. Lime salts are frequently associated



with some of the common skeletal substances, but this is by no means universal even for the same substance. Thus the collagen of the bones of Vertebrates is associated with abundant lime salts, while that of the cartilages contains an inconsiderable quantity. Again, chitin in the Crustacea is strongly impregnated with lime, while in Insecta lime salts are practically absent. Within the limits of the Cephalopoda, the conchiolin of the "shell" may be associated with lime in one genus and quite devoid of it in another. Within the Mollusca, indeed, we find every stage in shell development represented, from the papery "shell" of *Aplysia* to the enormous edifices seen in some of the tropical forms. It seems difficult in these cases to avoid the conclusion that the disproportionate bulk is due to necessities of growth, and has no relation to the needs of the animal.

The following is a brief account of some of the more important skeletal substances:—

**Tunicin.**—Tunicin, or animal cellulose, is a carbohydrate very similar to, if not identical with, the cellulose of plants. It occurs in the test of Tunicates as a cuticular product of the epidermal cells, and is said to have been also found in some cases in the body of the animal. Dr. Ambronn asserts that he has found a body giving similar chemical reactions in connection with the chitin of Arthropods, and also in some Molluscs.

**Chitin and Conchiolin.**—Chitin and Conchiolin (or Conchin) may serve as examples of skeletal substances containing nitrogen, but giving only one of the proteid reactions. Several other well-known substances are included in this group, such as spongin, byssus-substance, etc. All are characterised by their great resistance to chemical agents.

Chitin is characteristic of Arthropods, but also occurs in the shell of *Lingula* and in "cuttle-bone." It yields, on decomposition, reducing substances of the nature of sugar, and is a derivative of a carbohydrate. It is a product of ectodermal cells, and is the only organic skeletal substance in Arthropods. It is believed to be formed by the union of a substance of the ammonia group with a carbohydrate. In the Crustacea chitin is usually associated with lime salts and with various pigments.

Conchiolin is found in Bivalves, Gasteropods, and some Cephalopods. It strongly resists the action of mineral acids, and, like chitin, is unaffected by ferments. It varies greatly in composition, even within the limits of a species, and is probably a mixture of nearly related substances. The substance which forms the horny axis in *Gorgonida* and *Antipatharia* is closely allied to conchiolin.

**Collagen and Keratin.**—Collagen and Keratin are well-known examples of skeletal substances which contain sulphur as well as



nitrogen, and give some, though not all, of the chemical reactions of proteids. Collagen is found in the bones and cartilages of Vertebrates; it is characterised by yielding gelatin when boiled with water. Unlike the substances previously mentioned, it is readily digested by pepsin, but is not affected by tryptic ferments. In Vertebrates it is found as an intracellular matrix, secreted by little patches of formative cells. In Cephalopods in the head region there is a modified form of collagen which is readily acted on by trypsin. Collagen is said to have been found in *Sipunculus*, in Holothurians, and in Brachiopods.

The dead epidermal cells of many Vertebrates form a cuticle of keratin over the living cells below. The process is said to be one of dehydration; but it is not a simple drying up, as it occurs quite as markedly in aquatic animals. In the hairs and nails of mammals, the feathers of birds, the scales of fishes, keratin forms a protective covering; in some mammals it further furnishes powerful offensive "horns." Keratin is also found in the egg-shells of Birds, Reptiles, and Selachians; in the first group it is associated with lime salts. It also occurs in the sheath of nerve-fibres, which is explicable enough when we remember that in development the nerves arise from the ectoderm. Keratin has also been found among worms. It is extremely resistant to the action of ferments.

**The colouring matters of animals.**—Colour in animals is either due directly to pigments, or, as in the case of structural colours, is simply a light effect. To the latter division belong the often brilliant colours of some annelids, and the gorgeous metallic tints of the plumage of some birds. In this section we confine ourselves to the pigments.

Physiologically, we may classify pigments in various ways: there are the respiratory pigments, of which hæmoglobin is perhaps the best example; the waste products, such as the pigments of some butterflies' wings (which are allied to uric acid), and probably the pigments of bile; finally, there are numerous pigments of whose primary physiological meaning we can say nothing, but which may be secondarily of use in producing protective, warning, or sexual colouring. Such are the pigments of the skin in Crustacea, caterpillars, Amphibians, and so on.

The most important respiratory pigments are hæmoglobin, hæmocyanin, and hæmerythrin; some others have been named by different authors, but their respiratory significance seems uncertain.

*Hæmoglobin* occurs in all the Craniate Vertebrates, and also not infrequently among the different Invertebrate classes, usually in isolated members of groups. It consists of a pigment, hæmatin, united to a



proteid; the pigment contains iron in its molecule. In the higher Vertebrates, hæmoglobin is during life continually undergoing decomposition. The iron is mostly retained within the body, and is probably re-utilised in metabolism; the proteid is probably also utilised, while the iron-free hæmatin undergoes chemical changes, and is excreted as the pigments of bile and urine. In pathological conditions hæmatin may be deposited in the tissues in different forms. This deposition of pigments derived from hæmatin, which only occurs in disease in Vertebrates, is said to occur normally in certain Invertebrates, in the shells of some Gasteropods, the skin of star-fishes, etc., apparently in some cases in forms in which hæmatin itself does not occur. With regard to the distribution of hæmoglobin, we must note that the occurrence of the same pigment in widely separated forms indicates similar physiological processes, but not necessarily a similar function. Thus hæmoglobin is said to occur in considerable quantity in the perivisceral fluid of Holothurians, where we can hardly suppose that its respiratory importance is very well marked. In fact, the wide and irregular distribution of hæmoglobin among Invertebrata forbids the supposition that it can there possess the supreme importance which it has in higher Vertebrates.

The efficiency of hæmoglobin is due to its power of forming a loose combination with oxygen; it is, however, also capable of uniting with other gases, as CO and CO<sub>2</sub>.

*Hæmocyanin* is found in many Crustacea, also in other Arthropods, and in Molluscs. In the reduced state it is a colourless substance, but turns blue when oxidised. It is absent in the few Crustaceans (*Daphnia*, etc.) which contain hæmoglobin, and is a true respiratory pigment. It consists of a proteid united to copper, but in a few cases it is said that the copper is replaced by iron. There is said to be more difficulty in reducing hæmocyanin than there is with hæmoglobin. The question as to the fate of the copper of hæmocyanin is one of considerable interest, for it must be noted that, while iron is of supreme importance in cell-life, apart altogether from hæmoglobin, there is no evidence that copper has similar importance. In an interesting paper on poisonous green oysters, Professors Herdman and Boyce put forward evidence to show that normally copper is continually being eliminated from the body, and that its retention gives rise to pathological conditions, and incidentally to a green coloration; but there appear to be many kinds of green oysters.

*Hæmerythrin* occurs in the blood of Gephyreans; it undergoes a colour-change dependent on processes of oxidation and reduction.

The number of pigments which we can definitely classify as respiratory, or as waste products resulting from the decomposition of such, is very small; in the great majority of cases we can say nothing as to function. In some cases, however, we can point to the physical or chemical conditions which favour the development of pigments. Thus in some animals the pigments indicate the normal reaction of the tissues. For example, those sea-anemones which contain peptic ferments are red, those which contain tryptic, yellow or brown. Again, light and absence of oxygen are necessary for the development of certain of the black pigments; the black pigment in a frog's skin disappears in



an atmosphere of pure oxygen. It is a fact of common observation, that portions of animals' bodies which are shaded from the light tend to be pale in colour.

Most of the pigments fall into chemical groups; of these, the best defined and perhaps most widely spread is the *Lipochrome* group. The Lipochromes are characterised—(1) by their colour, which varies from yellow through orange to red; (2) by giving in the dry state a blue coloration with strong  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; (3) by their ready decomposition when exposed to light, when they lose their colour and yield cholesterin; (4) by the fact that they consist only of carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen. Among animals they are perhaps most abundant, and show the greatest variety of tint in the Crustacea, but they are also common in Echinoderms, Birds, Fishes, and many other classes, occurring both in the integument and the internal organs.

### COMPARATIVE PATHOLOGY.

Within recent years pathologists have begun to study diseased conditions comparatively—an obviously rational method which promises to lead to very important results, both practical and theoretical. For man has no monopoly of disease, and some of the processes by which unhealthy conditions are dealt with by the organism are more readily studied in lower animals than in him. Of this we shall give one illustration. In 1862, Haeckel observed that grains of indigo injected into the mollusc *Thetys* were surrounded by the amœboid blood corpuscles. Other observers followed the hint which this suggestive fact supplied, and Metchnikoff, above all others, has shown the important rôle which these amœboid cells fill in waging war against intruding germs and parasites, in surrounding irritant particles, in repairing injuries, and the like. In fact, Metchnikoff has worked out the evolution of the phagocyte, as he terms the amœboid cell, whose function it is to discharge the rôle above indicated. It is this evolution, as stated in Metchnikoff's lectures on the comparative pathology of inflammation (*Trans.*, London, 1893), which we shall take in illustration of comparative pathology.

The simplest conditions are, of course, illustrated by the Protozoa. These enjoy comparative immunity from the injurious effects of wounds and from infectious disease. For injuries are very rapidly repaired; a fragment, if nucleated, can usually regrow the whole; infecting organisms are in most cases digested, and irritant particles are got rid



of. This is particularly true of the amœboid Protozoa, the Rhizopods. Sometimes, moreover, the bacteria or other micro-organisms which produce disease are actually avoided, for some of the Protozoa exhibit that sensitiveness (or chemotaxis) which distinguishes the wandering amœboid cells or phagocytes of higher animals. Thus a Myxomycete will creep towards a decoction of dead leaves and away from a salt solution, and will "prefer" a nutritive fluid which is not swarming with bacteria to one that is.

In Sponges, infection is often avoided and parasites are excluded by the closure of the inhalant pores. But if entrance be effected, the microbe or irritant is dealt with by the amœboid cells of the middle stratum, which have also to do with ordinary digestion. Thus disease in Sponges is very rare. In *Hydra*, where there is virtually no mesogloea, the flagellate or amœboid cells lining the gut act as so many "stationary phagocytes." Thus in these two cases the functions of intracellular digestion and of "phagocytosis" are combined.

In other Coelentera, as in *Hydra*, the ordinary digestive functions are restricted to the endoderm cells lining the gut, but most of them have, what *Hydra* has not, wandering amœboid cells in the mesogloea, and these deal with microbes, parasites, and irritants. The same is true of simple worms, such as Turbellarians.

In higher worms and in Echinoderms, the phagocytic cells are usually situated on the peritoneal epithelium, or float in the perivisceral fluid. They may have many functions, respiratory and excretory, for instance, but the phagocytic function is of great importance, all the more so that the gut has now lost its power of intracellular digestion.

Crustaceans, insects, molluscs have a more or less well-developed blood vascular system, and there are often amœboid cells in the blood like the white blood corpuscles of most Vertebrates. But the phagocytic function still depends, largely at least, on wandering phagocytes in the body cavity or in the mesodermic tissues. But, as the vascular system in these forms is usually lacunar, no rigid distinction can be drawn between phagocytes in the blood and phagocytes in the body cavity. No case is known, however, in which the leucocytes or white blood corpuscles



of an Invertebrate exhibit the power of migrating through the walls of the blood vessels to the seat of irritation or injury; in Vertebrates this power is common.

Among Vertebrates, as the circulatory system becomes gradually more highly developed from Tunicates onwards, the number of extra-vascular phagocytes is reduced, and more and more devolves upon those of the blood. In the fin of a young newt an injury or an infection may be dealt with solely by the migratory phagocytes of the connective tissue; in the most frequently observed case—the tail of a tadpole, in which the blood vessels are formed—the extra-vascular phagocytes are greatly aided by leucocytes, which work their way through the walls of the vessels, or are liberated by a lesion; in other cases all may depend on these leucocytes. It is important also to notice that the endothelial cells of the blood vessels seem by their contractility to assist the passage (or diapedesis) of the leucocytes; sometimes, moreover, they may themselves leave the wall of the vessel to deal with Bacteria introduced into the blood.

We are not here concerned with Metchnikoff's thesis that "inflammation generally must be regarded as a phagocytic reaction on the part of the organism against irritants—a reaction carried out by the mobile phagocytes sometimes alone, sometimes with the aid of the vascular phagocytes or of the nervous system." We are immediately interested only in noticing how these mobile cells, retaining many of the qualities of the ancestral *Amœbæ*, perform in the animal body numerous functions, struggling with invading bacteria, surrounding and engulfing irritant particles, and repairing wounds. And from the most general point of view it is evident that one of the many factors determining the fate of an organism in the struggle for existence is its power of resisting bacteria. If phagocytes be not present, there must be some other means of defence.

The processes of disease in higher animals have been very carefully investigated from the evolutionist's point of view by Sutton. He points out that some of the causes which pathologists recognise as operating to produce disease (*viz.* hypertrophy or atrophy of organs or structures, and coalescence of parts originally distinct), are also "factors in evolution," which biologists recognise in their theories of



the progress of life. Thus, descending to particular cases, we find that the long claws of the sloth and bat, the great curved teeth of the Babirusa, are paralleled in pathological conditions by the elongated nails and hoofs of Birds and Ungulates kept in unnatural conditions, by the curved incisors of Rodents which have lost the corresponding teeth of the other jaw. It is unnecessary here to multiply examples of greatly hypertrophied organs, normally present in certain animals, but occurring in disease in others ; many will suggest themselves. In considering many of these cases, we must recognise the law of correlation, and realise that the structures of a particular animal are not commonly the best conceivable, but the best that can be attained under the given conditions.

Pathological new formations may arise in response to mechanical stimulation, as in the case of corns and warts, or may be due to aberrant physiological processes. Thus cancer is regarded by many as in origin an aberrant gland-formation, and only occurs in regions of the body where glands are normally found. It is a senile modification of an ordinary developmental process. Pathological bony growths seem to have their origin in patches of cartilage remaining from the primitive cartilage of limb or brain-case, and so are continuations of the ordinary process by which cartilage is replaced by bone.

Brief as the above comparative survey of Physiology and Pathology is, it may serve to give the student some impression of the intricacy of life, and act as a relief from mechanical theories of Variation, Selection, and Heredity. It is an attempt to look from the inner side upon the great problem which is constantly being worked out before us,—Given the potentialities of protoplasm and certain chemical and physical conditions, to find the best adaptation to a given environment.



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF ANIMALS.

As similar animals tend to occur where the conditions of life are similar, we are warranted in speaking of a *pelagic* fauna, an *abyssal* fauna, a *littoral* fauna, and so on. Let us briefly consider this grouping of animals according to their haunts.

**Pelagic.**—The pelagic fauna includes all the animals of the open sea, both drifters (*Plankton*) and swimmers (*Nekton*). The physical conditions in which they live are very favourable,—there is room for all, sunshine without risk of drought, and an even life throughout the day and throughout the year than is to be found elsewhere except in the abysses of the deep sea. Moreover, the minute pelagic Algæ afford an inexhaustible food-supply to the animals. It is not surprising, therefore, to find that the open sea has been peopled from the earliest times of which the rocks give us any life record.

The fauna is representative, exhibiting great variety of types, from the minute *Noctiluca* which sets the waves aflame in the short summer darkness, to the giants of modern times—the whales. It includes a few genera of Foraminifera, rich in species, all the Radiolarians, many Infusorians, Medusæ and Medusoids, Siphonophora and Ctenophora, many “worm” types and a Holothurian, a legion of Crustaceans and a few Insects (Halobatidæ), such Molluscs as Pteropods, Heteropods, and many of the Cephalopods, such Tunicates as *Salpa* and *Pyrosoma*, many fishes, a few turtles and snakes, besides some well-known birds and mammals.

The fauna of the open sea is representative, but there are



few of the types which we can suppose to have lived there always. It may be that forms like the minute water-fleas have been there almost from the first, but most bear the impress of lessons which the open sea could never have taught them.

Pelagic animals tend to be delicate and translucent; many are phosphorescent. The number of species, differing from one another within a relatively narrow range, is often enormous, thus about 5000 species of Radiolarians are known. The huge number of individuals, which frequently occur in great swarms, is equally characteristic. Perhaps both facts indicate that the conditions of life are relatively easy, as is also implied in the limitless food-supply afforded by the unicellular Algæ.

**Abyssal.**—Through the researches of the *Challenger* and similar expeditions, we know that there is practically no depth-limit to the distribution of animal life, though the population is denser at moderate depths than in the deepest abysses, and though there is probably a thinly peopled zone between the light-limit and the greatest depths. We know, too, that there are abyssal representatives of most types from Protozoa to Fishes, though Sponges and Echinoderms preponderate, and that the distribution tends to be cosmopolitan, in correspondence with the uniformity of the physical conditions.

The abyssal fauna includes many flinty sponges, some corals and sea-anemones, possibly a few medusæ, annelids and other "worms" on the so-called red clay, representatives of the five extant orders of Echinoderms, abundant Crustaceans, representatives of most of the Mollusc types, and peculiarly modified Fishes, many more than half-blind, others catching with darkness-eyes the fitful gleams of phosphorescence.

As to the physical conditions, the deep-sea world is in darkness, for a photographic plate is not influenced below 250-500 fathoms; it is extremely cold, about 34° F., for the sun's heat is virtually lost at about 150 fathoms; the pressure is enormous, thus at 2500 fathoms it is about 2½ tons per square inch; the cold water in sinking brings down much oxygen; it is quite calm, for even the greatest storms are relatively shallow in their influence; there are no plants



(except perhaps the resting phases of some Algæ), for typical vegetable life depends upon light, and not even bacteria, otherwise almost omnipresent, are known to flourish in the great depths. A strange, silent, cold, dark, plantless world! The animals feed upon one another and upon the débris which sinks from above.

We do not clearly know when the colonising of the depths began, but there is much to be said for the view that an abyssal fauna was, at most, scanty before Cretaceous ages. One of the arguments is as follows:—In ancient days, when warmth-loving plants flourished in the far north, when there was no ice-bound polar sea, the abyssal water cannot have been so cold as it is now; it would therefore contain less abundant oxygen, and this scantiness would make life more difficult. But whensoever the peopling of the abysses occurred, it must have been gradual. It is likely that most of the pioneers migrated outwards and downwards from the shore region (in a wide sense), following the drift of food; it is possible that others, *e.g.* some Crustaceans, sank from the surface of the open sea. The boreal character of many deep-sea animals has been often remarked, and it is plausible to suppose that there was a particularly abundant colonisation in the Polar regions, and a gradual spreading towards the Equator as the Poles became colder. Perhaps the richness of the fauna at the Equator may be thought of as in part due to the meeting of two great waves of life from the Poles.

The abyssal conditions of life tend to uniformity over vast areas, just as in the open sea. But, on the whole, life must always have been harder in the depths than on the surface. The absence of plants, for instance, involves a keener struggle for existence among animals. Thus, although many abyssal forms, *e.g.* sea-anemones, live a passive sedentary life, waiting for food to drop into their mouths, the majority are less easy-going. The deep sea has been a sterner school of life than the surface.

**Littoral.**—At a very early date the shores were peopled, and the fauna is very rich and representative. From the strictly Littoral zone, exposed at low tide, with its acorn-shells and periwinkles, limpets and cockles, to the Laminarian zone (to 15 fathoms), with its sea-slugs and oysters, where the great seaweeds wave listlessly amid an extraordinary keen battle, to the Coralline zone (15–40 fathoms), with its carnivorous buckies, what variety and abundance, what crowding and struggle!

There are Infusorians and Foraminifera, Sponges horny, flinty, and limy, zoophytes and sea-anemones, a mob of



worms, star-fishes and sea-urchins, crabs and shrimps, acorn-shells on the rocks and sandhoppers among the jetsam, a few insects about high-tide mark, sea-spiders clambering on the seaweeds, abundant bivalves and gasteropods, sea-squirts in their degeneracy, besides fishes, a few reptiles, numerous shore birds, and an occasional mammal. The shore fauna is thus very representative, rivalling in its range that of the open sea, far exceeding that of the abysses.

The conditions of life on the shore are in some ways the most stimulating in the world. It is the meeting-place of air, water, and land. Vicissitudes are not exceptional, but normal. Ebb and flow of tides, fresh-water floods and desiccation under a hot sun, the alternation of day and night felt much more markedly than on the open sea, the endless variations between gently lapping waves and blasting breakers, the slow changes of subsidence or elevation,—these are some of the vicissitudes to which shore animals are exposed. The shore is rich in illustrations of keen struggle for existence and of life-saving shifts or adaptations, such as masking, protective coloration, surrender of parts, and “death feigning.” We may think of it as a great school where many of the great lessons of life, such as moving head foremost, were learnt.

**Fresh water.**—Perhaps the most striking fact in regard to the animals which live in fresh water is their uniformity. The number of individuals in a lake is often immense, but the number of species is relatively small, the number of types still smaller. In widely separated basins and in different countries the same forms occur.

We may distinguish a littoral, a surface, and a deep-water lacustrine fauna. The deep-water forms are chiefly Rhizopods, Turbellarians, Nematodes, Leeches, Chætopods, Amphipods, Isopods, Entomostraca, a few Arachnids, some insect larvæ, and molluscs, and the general opinion is that these are derivable from the shore fauna of the lake, which includes similar forms, along with a few others, such as the fresh-water sponge and Hydra. On the other hand, the surface lacustrine fauna, consisting of water-fleas, Rotifers, Infusorians, etc., widely and uniformly distributed, is said not to be derivable from the shore forms. In transparency, in gregariousness, in nocturnal habit, and in other ways,



they present a marked analogy with the marine Plankton. How are we to account for their origin and wide distribution?

1. To explain the uniformity, Darwin referred to the birds which carry organisms from watershed to watershed, to the carrying power of the wind, and to changes of land level which bring different river beds into communication. But this is not enough.

2. It seems very likely that some of the fresh-water forms have migrated from the sea and seashore through brackish water to rivers and lakes. As the possibility of making the transition depends on the constitution of the animal, it is intelligible that similar forms should succeed in different areas.

3. There seems much force in what Credner and Sollas emphasise, that many lakes are dwindling relict-seas of ancient origin. Granted a fairly uniform Pelagic fauna, *e.g.* before Cretaceous times, we can understand that the conversion of land-locked seas into lakes would imply a decimating elimination, and, as the conditions of elimination would be much the same everywhere, the result would be uniformity in the survivors.

**Minor faunas.**—(a) *Of Brackish Water.*—We are warranted in speaking of a brackish-water fauna, because of its uniformity in widely separated regions. It does not seem to be a mere physiological assemblage, varying in each locality, but rather a transition fauna of ancient date, a relic of a littoral fauna once more uniform. The fact is that the power to live in brackish water is not very common; it runs in families.

(b) *Cave fauna.*—In America, thanks very largely to the labours of Packard, about 100 cave animals are known; in Europe the number is about 300, the increase being largely due to the occurrence of about 100 species of two genera of beetles in European caves. In the famous Mammoth Cave of Kentucky, which has over 100 miles of passages, with streams, pools, and dry ground, there are over 40 different species of animals. The temperature is very equable, varying little more than a degree throughout the year; it is, of course, dark; and there are no plants other than a few Fungi. Thus the conditions present some analogy with those of the deep sea. The fauna is of much interest to evolutionists, for we wonder how far the peculiarities of the cave-animals, *e.g.* absence of coloration and frequent blindness, are due to the cumulative effect of the environment and of disuse, or how far they represent the survival of fortuitous variations, and the result of the cessation of natural selection along certain lines. Have the seeing animals found their way out, leaving only the blind sports, which crop up even in daylight? or is the loss of eyes the result of disuse and absence of stimulus? Or again, if it be granted that pigment is an organic constitutional necessity, *e.g.* a waste product, while coloration is explicable as an adaptation wrought out in the course of natural elimination, then the question arises, whether the cessation of natural selection—a condition awkwardly called “panmixia”—which might account for the disappearance of the *coloration* when there is no premium set upon it, can also account for the loss of *pigment*, that is of



a character which was not acquired in the course of natural selection? (see Beddard's "Animal Coloration"). Our only answer at present is that there is need for experiment.

(c) *Parasitic fauna*.—It seems legitimate to rank together those animals whose habitat is in or on other organisms, from which they derive subsistence, without in most cases killing them quickly, if at all, or, on the other hand, rendering them any service. Among ectoparasites there are such forms as fish-lice and many other Crustaceans, numerous insects such as lice and fleas, and Arachnids such as mites. Among endoparasites there are Gregarines, some Mesozoa, many Nematodes, most Trematodes, all the Cestodes, many Crustaceans, insect larvæ, and Arachnids.

The parasitic habit implies degeneration, varying according to the degree of dependence, great nutritive security, prolific reproduction, and enormous hazards in the fulfilment of the life history.

Parasitic animals must be distinguished—(a) from epiphytic or epizoic animals which live attached to plants or animals, but are in no way dependent upon them, *e.g.* acorn-shells on Norway lobster; (b) from commensals (p. 154), who live in some degree of partnership, but without in any way preying upon one another, *e.g.* crab and sea-anemone; and (c) from symbions, who live in close partnership, or symbiosis (p. 110), *e.g.* Radiolarians and Algæ. But between these habits there are many gradations, and from close association there is always an easy transition to parasitism.

**Terrestrial.**—The colonising of dry land has doubtless been a gradual process, as different types wandered inland from the shore, or became able to survive the drying up of fresh-water basins. The fauna includes some Protozoa, *e.g.* *Amæba terricola*, which lives in moist earth, some of the Planarians, Nematodes, Leeches, Chætopods, and other "worms," a few Crustaceans like the wood-lice (*Oniscus*), many insects and Arachnids, a legion of slugs and snails, most adult Amphibians, most Reptiles, many Birds, and most Mammals. Among Vertebrates certain fishes are of interest in having learned to gulp mouthfuls of air at the surface of the water, to clamber on the roots of the mangrove trees, or to lie dormant through seasons of drought. But among Vertebrates, Amphibians were the first successfully to make the transition from water to dry land.

It is important to bear in mind that many a stock may, in the course of its evolution, have passed through a variety of environments. Thus the thoroughly aquatic Cetaceans were probably derived from a land stock common to them and to the Ungulates, and may have passed through a fresh-water stage. Without going further back, we have here an illustration of the zigzag course of evolution.



We cannot believe in any abrupt transition from the shore to *terra firma*. It has been a slow ascent, slow as the origin of dry land itself. Thus mud-inhabiting worms, dwellers in damp humus, bank-frequenting animals, those which find a safe retreat in rottenness or within bolder forms, dot the path from the shore inland. Many have lingered by the way, many have diverged into cul-de-sacs, many have been content to keep within hearing of the sea's lullaby, which soothed them in their cradles.

Simroth, in his work on the origin of land animals, seeks to show that hard skins, cross-striped muscle, brains worthy of the name, red blood, and so on, were acquired as the transition to terrestrial life was effected. Let us take the last point by way of illustration. Iron in some form seems essential to the making of hæmoglobin, but iron compounds are relatively scarce and not readily available in the sea; they are more abundant in fresh water, and yet more so as the land is reached. Therefore it is suggested that it was as littoral animals forsook the shore for the land, *viâ* fresh-water paths, that iron, in some form, entered into their composition, became part and parcel of them, helped to form hæmoglobin or some analogous pigment, and thus opened the way to a higher and more vigorous life.

**Aërial.**—The last region to be conquered was the air. Insects were the first to possess it, but it was long before they were followed. The flying-fishes vibrated their fins above the foam as they leapt; the web-footed tree-frogs, *Draco volans* with its skin spread out on elongated ribs, and various lizards, began to swoop from branch to branch; some of the ancient Saurians flopped their leathery skin-wings; a few arboreal mammals essayed what the bats perfected; and the feverish birds flew aloft gladly.

Perhaps a keen struggle among insects, or such events as floods, storms, and lava-flows, would prompt to flight, perhaps it was the eager males who led the way, perhaps the additional respiratory efficiency, produced by the outgrowth of wings, gave these a new use. Perhaps the high temperature of birds—an index to the intensity of their metabolism—may have had to do with the development of those most elaborate epidermic growths which we call feathers. But we must still be resigned to a more or less ingenious “perhaps.”

**Evolution of faunas.**—As we have already hinted, the problem of the evolution of faunas is still beyond solution, and as this is not the place for the marshalling of arguments, I shall content myself with stating various possibilities.

(a) According to Moseley, “the fauna of the coast has not only given origin to the terrestrial and fresh-water faunas, it has throughout all time, since life originated, given additions to the Pelagic fauna in return for having received from it its starting-point. It has also received



some of these Pelagic forms back again to assume a fresh littoral existence. The terrestrial fauna has returned some forms to the shores, such as certain shore-birds, seals, and the polar bear; and some of these, such as the whales and a small oceanic insect, *Halobates*, have returned thence to Pelagic life."

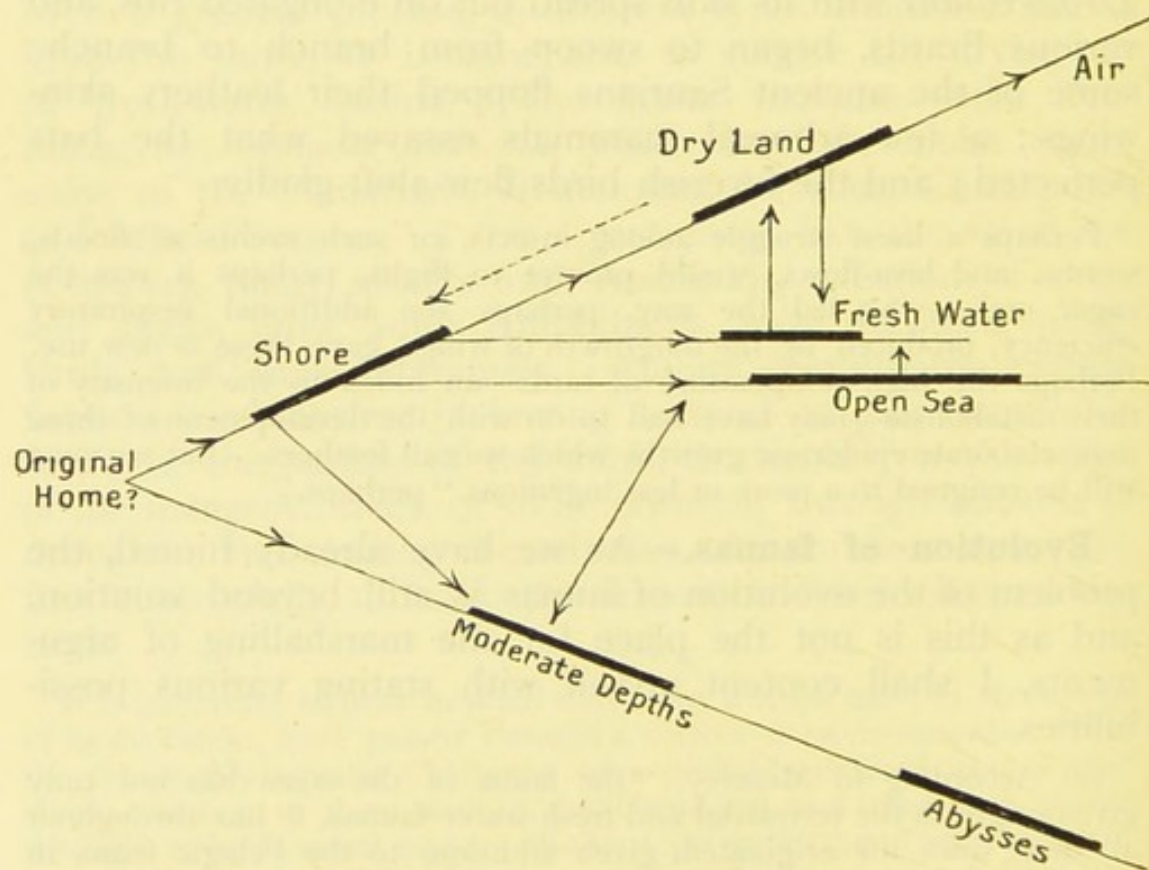
"The deep sea has probably been formed almost entirely from the littoral, not in the most remote antiquity, but only after food, derived from the débris of the littoral and terrestrial faunas and floras, became abundant in deep water."

"It was in the littoral region that all the primary branches of the zoological family tree were formed; all terrestrial and deep-sea forms have passed through a littoral phase, and amongst the representatives of the littoral fauna the recapitulative history, in the form of series of larval conditions, is most completely retained."

(b) According to Agassiz, Simroth, and others, if one may venture to compress their views into a sentence, a littoral fauna was the original one, whence have been derived, on the one hand, the Pelagic and abyssal faunas; on the other hand, the fresh-water and terrestrial faunas.

(c) According to Brooks, a Pelagic fauna was primitive, whence have been derived the tenants of the shore and the inhabitants of the deep sea. To the latter, however, a possibility of ascending again is not denied.

(d) Sir John Murray has emphasised the importance of "the mud-line"—the lower boundary of the littoral area—as an important headquarters of animal life, and as the area from which the abysses were peopled. The possibilities may be expressed in a diagram.





## MORE DETAILED PROBLEMS OF GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION.

Leaving the general, and at present very obscure, problem of the evolution of faunas, let us briefly notice some of the more detailed questions of distribution. We shall content ourselves with stating (1) a few of the outstanding facts; (2) the factors determining why some animals are here and others there; and (3) the usually recognised zoo-geographical regions.

**Outstanding facts.**—(a) Widely separated countries may have an essentially similar fauna. Thus, there is much in common between Britain and Northern Japan, and there is so much agreement between the North European (Palæarctic) and the North American (Nearctic) fauna, that many unite the two regions in one (Holarctic).

(b) Closely adjacent countries may have quite different faunas. Thus the Bahamas and Florida, Australia and New Zealand, are peopled by very different animals. Two little islands, Bali and Lombok, in the Malay Archipelago, which are separated by "Wallace's Line," a strait only fifteen miles wide at its narrowest part, differ from each other in their birds and quadrupeds more widely than Britain and Japan.

(c) Regions with very different faunas are in many cases connected by transition areas. Thus a journey from the North of Canada to Brazil would show a fairly *gradual* transition from an Arctic to a tropical fauna.

(d) At the same time there are regions whose fauna is exceedingly distinctive and sharply defined. Thus the Mammalian fauna of Australia is distinctively Marsupial, and nowadays only the American opossums and the *Cœolestes* occur beyond the Australasian limits.

(e) Another striking fact is the "discontinuous distribution" of certain types, by which we mean that examples of a type may occur in widely separated regions without there being any representatives in the intermediate area. The general explanation is, that the type in question once enjoyed a wide distribution, as the rock record shows, and that the conditions favourable to survival have been found in widely separated places. Thus of the genus *Tapir*



there are some four species in South and Central America, while the only other species occurs in Malacca and Borneo. Similarly the Camelidæ are represented by one genus in the Old World and another in South America, and the insectivorous Centetidæ are represented by five genera in Madagascar, and one in Cuba and Hayti.

**The factors determining distribution.**—There are six factors which combine to determine the particular distribution of an animal. These may be conveniently considered in pairs.

(a) Distribution is in part determined by the constitution of the animal and by the physical conditions of the region. Thus snakes diminish rapidly in numbers towards the poles, their constitution being in most cases ill adapted to withstand cold; thus crayfishes are absent from districts where the fresh water does not contain sufficient lime salts for their needs.

(b) Distribution is in part determined by the position of the animal's original home (which is often an unknown fact), and by the available means of dispersal. Thus, so far as we know, the Old World has been the exclusive home of the anthropoid apes, and there they have remained; thus bats, being able to fly, have a more cosmopolitan distribution than most other mammals; thus amphibians, being unable to withstand salt water, are absent from almost all oceanic islands.

(c) Distribution is in part determined by the actual changes (geological, climatic, etc.) which have affected different regions, and by "bionomic" factors, *i.e.* the relations between the animal in question and other organisms, whether animals, plants, or man. Thus it is plain that we cannot understand the fauna of Australia without knowing the geological fact that part of this island was once connected with the Oriental continent by a bridge of land across the Java Sea. The Australasian mammalian fauna consists of survivals and descendants of a Mesozoic mammalian fauna which has been exterminated everywhere else, except in the case of the American opossums. The original Australian mammals were saved, not by any virtue of their own, but by the earth-change which insulated them. Similarly, it is the geologist who helps us to understand the faunal diversity on the two sides of "Wallace's line," or the absence of amphibians, reptiles, and mammals from the Canaries. That much will also depend on the animal's power of surviving the struggle for existence in different regions, is too obvious to require exposition. We need only think of the way in which man has in a few years altered the distribution of many birds and mammals, sometimes indeed reducing it to *nil*, or increasing it with disastrous results.

To sum up: the chief factors determining geographical distribution are—(1) the constitution of the animal, (2) the physical conditions of the region, (3) the position of the original home, (4) the means of dispersal, (5) the historical changes of the earth and its climate, and (6) the bionomic relations.



**Zoo-geographical regions.**—I shall simply quote a paragraph from Professor Heilprin's work, "The Geographical and Geological Distribution of Animals" (Internat. Sci. Series. London, 1887), a very valuable book for the student, especially as it considers distribution in space and time together.

"By most naturalists (Wallace, Sclater, and others) the terrestrial portion of the earth's surface is recognised as consisting of six primary zoological regions, which correspond in considerable part with the continental masses of geographers. These six regions are :—

"1. The *Palæarctic*, which comprises Europe, temperate Asia (with Japan), and Africa north of the Atlas Mountains; also Iceland, and the numerous oceanic islands of the North Atlantic;

"2. The *Ethiopian*, embracing all of Africa south of the Atlas Mountains, the southern portion of the Arabian Peninsula, Madagascar, and the Mascarene Islands, and which, consequently, nearly coincides with the Africa of geographers;

"3. The *Oriental* or Indian, which embraces India south of the Himalayas, Farther India, Southern China, Sumatra, Java, Bali, Borneo, and the Philippines;

"4. The *Australian*, comprising the continent of Australia, with Papua or New Guinea, Celebes, Lombok, and the numerous islands of the Pacific;

"5. The *Nearctic*, which embraces Greenland, and the greater portion of the continent of North America (excluding Mexico);

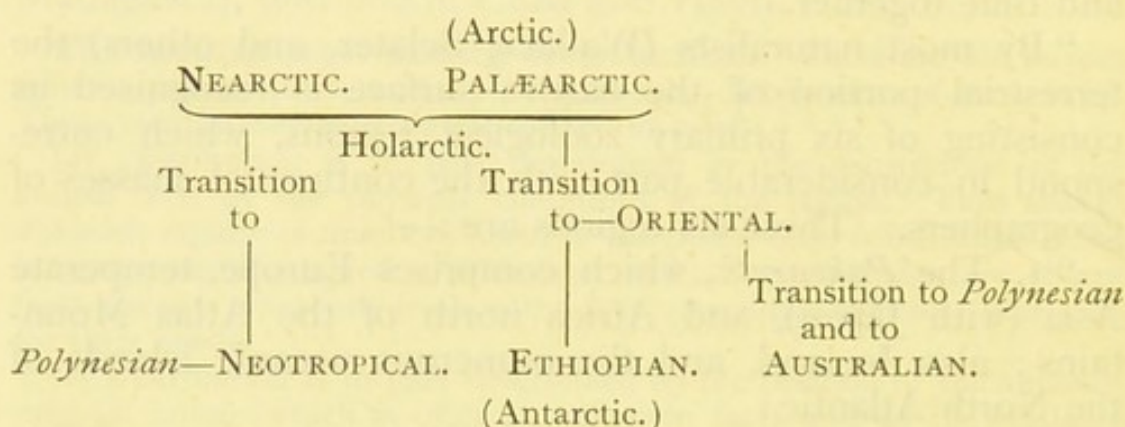
"6. The *Neotropical*, corresponding to the continent of South America, with Central America, the West Indies, and the greater portion of Mexico."

Professor Heilprin makes several modifications on this scheme of distribution: (*a*) uniting *Palæarctic* and *Nearctic* in one *Holarctic* realm; (*b*) establishing a special *Polynesian* realm for the scattered island groups of the Pacific; and (*c*) defining three transition regions—(1) around the Mediterranean, intermediate between *Palæarctic*, *Ethiopian*, and *Oriental*, (2) Lower California between *Western Holarctic* and *Neotropical*, and (3) the *Austro-Malaysian Islands* lying to the east of Bali and Borneo, inclusive of the



Solomon Islands, a region intermediate between Oriental, Australian, and Polynesian. It seems also convenient to recognise two polar regions,—Arctic and Antarctic. Of the last, we have had as yet only glimpses.

It may be useful to map out the divisions as follows :—



Many authorities use the following arrangement :—

#### NOTOGÆA OR SOUTHERN WORLD.

- I. Australian Region, including three sub-regions,—New Zealand, Australian, and Papuanian or Austro-Malayan.
- II. Neotropical Region, including two sub-regions,—South American and Antillean or West Indian.

#### ARCTOGÆA OR NORTHERN WORLD.

- III. Periarctic or Holarctic Region, including two sub-regions,—Palæarctic (Eurasian and Mediterranean) and Nearctic (Canadian and Sonoran).
- IV. Palæotropical Region, including two sub-regions,—African (Ethiopian and Malagasy) and Oriental (Indian and Malayan).



## CHAPTER XXIX.

### THEORY OF EVOLUTION.

IN Chapter VI. we indicated the nature of the evidence which has led naturalists all but unanimously to accept the doctrine of descent as a modal interpretation of organic nature. The data of physiology and morphology, combined with what is known of the history of the race and the development of the individual, have led us to believe that the forms of life now around us are descended from simpler ancestors (except in cases of degeneration), and these from still simpler, and so on, back to the mist of life's beginnings. In other words, we believe that the present is the child of the past and the parent of the future. This is the general idea of evolution.

But while this general idea, which is a very grand one, is usually recognised as the simplest interpretation of the facts, we remain in doubt as to the *factors* of the process by which the world of life has come to be what it is. This uncertainty is in part due to the complexity of the problem, in part to the relative novelty of the inquiry—for precise etiology is not yet fifty years old—in part also to the fact that, while there has been much theorising, there has been comparatively little experimenting or connected observation as to the modes and causes of evolution.

With the exception of Dr. Alfred Russel Wallace and a few others, who believe that it is necessary to postulate spiritual influxes to account for certain obscure beginnings, *e.g.* of the higher human qualities, evolutionists are agreed in seeking to explain the evolution of plants and animals as a continuous "natural" process, the end of which was implicit in the beginning. In so doing, they follow the



method of analysis, endeavouring to explain the facts in their lowest terms. But, as the biologist's lowest term is living matter, and as one aspect of this is, in favourable conditions, known as thought, there is no reason to call the evolutionist's analysis "materialistic"—if anything opprobrious be meant by that adjective. The common denominator of the biologist is as inexpressibly marvellous as the philosopher's greatest common measure, if, indeed, the two are not practically the same.

**Two great problems.**—Our uncertainty in regard to the factors of evolution is so great, that I cannot venture here to do more than indicate (*a*) what the great problems are, and (*b*) the general drift of the most important suggestions which have been made towards their solution.

The two great problems before the evolutionist are :—

- (1) What is the nature and origin of variations, *i.e.* of those organic changes which make an organism appreciably different from its parents or its species?
- (2) What are the directive factors which may operate upon given variations, determining their elimination or their persistence, and helping towards the familiar but puzzling result—the existence of distinct and relatively well-adapted species?

Secure answers to these two questions must be found in reference to the present ; as our data accumulate, it will be more possible to argue back to the past.

It may be convenient to speak of the factors which *cause* variation as *primary* or *originative*, and of the factors which operate upon or *direct* the course of variation as *secondary* or *directive*. As far as practical results are concerned, the two sets of factors are of equal importance.

**Nature of variations.**—We mean by variations those changes in organisms which make them appreciably different from their parents or from their species.

The term of course includes not only material differences, but also those whose only demonstrable expression is psychical. Thus an increase in maternal affection is as important and real a variation as the sharpening of a canine tooth.

It may also be useful to distinguish variations in size, symmetry, number of appendages, and so on, from more



*qualitative* variations in chemical composition, such as the appearance of a new pigment, but this distinction is only a matter of convenience, as it is only a matter of degree.

Again, variations occur which may be called *continuous*, being merely minute increments or diminutions of certain parental or specific characters. These are related to one another much in the same way as are the successive stages in the continuous growth of an individual.

But other variations occur which deserve to be called *discontinuous*. For, without the appearance of transitional stages, marked variations crop up, reaching with apparent suddenness to what must be called *new*, and may withal exhibit a measure of perfectness.

That both kinds of variations occur is a fact of life; the possibility of both is probably a primary quality of organisms; but we are only beginning to know the relative frequency of the two kinds and their respective limits, and we know almost nothing as to their causes (see Bateson's "Materials for the Study of Variation, 1894").

**Primary or originative factors.**—What causes variation? This is the fundamental question, but it is the least answerable.

It is, indeed, an axiom or a truism, that changes in any animate system are evoked by changes in the larger system of which the organism forms a part. In other words, the *stimulus* to organic change must always be ultimately traceable to the environment, but this is implied in our conception of living matter, and does not help us to understand the immediate conditions which lead to the change.

In the absence of sufficiently precise data, we can do little more than point out various possibilities:—

(a) *Changes due to Environment (= Environmental Modifications).*

There is abundant proof that changes in surrounding pressure, in the chemical composition of the medium, in food supply, in heat, light, etc., may be followed by changes in the organism upon which these influences play. Changes in the body of the organism follow changes in the environment. But (1) it is difficult to discriminate between changes which may be spoken of as the direct results of



environmental influence, and those to which the organism was already definitely predisposed, and to which the environmental change supplied only the stimulus. (2) We have not at present sufficient data to enable us to state that changes arising in or acquired by the *body* of an individual organism as the result of surrounding change, do as such in any degree specifically affect the reproductive cells. In other words, we cannot at present say that "environmental modifications" are transmissible. And if they are not, their importance in evolution is only indirect.

(b) *Changes due to Function (= Functional Modifications).*

It is an undoubted fact that the bodily structure of an animal may be changed by the increased use of certain parts, or the disuse of others,—in short, by some change of function. This change of or in function may be directly prompted by some change in the external conditions of life, or it may be the expression of a deeper variation in the animal's material constitution or mental character. But important as these functional changes and their results are to the *individual*, we are uncertain as to their importance for the *race*, for we do not know to what extent (if any) the results are transmissible.

(c) *Variations due to Changes in the Germ Cells.*

In many cases of variation, particularly those which appear in early life, it is not possible to suggest any environmental or functional condition which may be regarded as the stimulus or the cause. We are led in such cases to believe that the variation in bodily structure or habit is the expression of some novelty in the protoplasmic constitution of the germ cells. Then, hiding our ignorance, we say that the variation is germinal, constitutional, congenital, or blastogenic. It seems to lead to clearness if we call these germinal changes and their results *variations*, keeping the term *modifications* for those changes [(a) and (b)] wrought upon the body as the result of environmental or functional influences.

But why should there be changes in the germ cells? Perhaps because living matter is very complex and unstable, and because it is of its very nature to differentiate and integrate; perhaps because the immediate environment of



the germ cells (blood, body cavity fluid, sea water, etc.) is complex and variable. But it may be more important to recognise that every multicellular organism, reproduced in the usual way, arises from an egg cell fertilised by a spermatozoon, and that the changes involved in and preparatory to this fertilisation, or "amphimixis," make new permutations and combinations of living substances or vital qualities not only possible but necessary.

**Secondary or directive factors.**—1. *Natural Selection.*—The distinctive contribution which Charles Darwin and Alfred Russel Wallace made to etiology was their theory of Natural Selection.

By natural selection is meant that process whereby, in the ordinary course of nature, certain organisms, *e.g.* certain members of the same species, are more or less rapidly eliminated, while others are allowed to survive longer.

That some forms, *e.g.* in one family, should succeed less well than others, depends obviously on the fact that all are not born alike,—depends, in other words, on the fact of variation.

That there should be elimination is necessary—(*a*) because a pair of animals usually produce many more than a pair, and the population tends to outrun the means of subsistence; and (*b*) because organisms are at the best only relatively well adapted to their conditions of life, which are variable. These two primary facts and their subsequent consequences, *e.g.* that some animals feed upon others, that there may be more males than females, etc., render some struggle for existence necessary, though this phrase must be used, as Darwin said, "in a wide and metaphorical sense," including all endeavours for the well-being, not only of the individual, but of its offspring.

The facts then are—that variations constantly occur, that some members of a species or family are necessarily less fitly adapted than others, and that the course of nature is such that these relatively less fit forms will tend to be eliminated, while the relatively more fit will tend to survive. As many variations re-appear generation after generation, and may become gradually increased in amount, the continuance of the selective or eliminating process will work towards the origin of new adaptations and new species.



The importance of natural selection as a secondary factor in evolution will vary according to stringency of the eliminating process, and it must be noted that the "struggle for existence" varies in intensity within wide limits, that it requires to be investigated for each case, and cannot be postulated as a force of nature.

The importance of the factor will also depend on the number, nature, and limits of the variations which occur. Thus a new species might arise, either by the occurrence of a discontinuous variation of considerable magnitude, or by the eliminating process acting for many generations on a series of minute continuous variations.

Darwin also believed in the importance of sexual selection, in which the females choose the more attractive males, which, succeeding in reproduction better than their neighbours, tend to transmit their qualities to their numerous male heirs. But this and other forms of reproductive selection may be regarded as special cases of natural selection.

2. "*Isolation.*"—Under this title, Romanes, Gulick, and others include the various ways in which free intercrossing is prevented between members of a species, *e.g.* by geographical separation, or by a reproductive variation causing mutual sterility between two sections of a species living on a common area. Without some "isolation" tending to limit the range of mutual fertility within a species, or bringing similar variations to breed together, a new variation is liable, they say, to be "swamped" by intercrossing. But definite facts as to this "swamping," and in many cases as to the alleged "isolation," are hard to find, nor can we say that a strong variation will not persist unless it be "isolated." Romanes' view, however, was that, "without isolation, or the prevention of free intercrossing, organic evolution is in no case possible. Isolation has been the universal condition of modification. Heredity and variability being given, the whole theory of organic evolution becomes a theory of the causes and conditions which lead to isolation." It may also be noted that some forms of isolation may lead to inbreeding, and this to "prepotency," which often implies the persistence of individual variations.



## SUMMARY OF EVOLUTION THEORIES.

(Axiom or Truism.)		
Changes are all ultimately due to the External Influences and the Nature of the Organism, <i>i.e.</i> of Protoplasm.		
Primary (Originative) Factors.	( <i>Environment.</i> )	( <i>Organism.</i> )
	Changes in the environment are followed by changes in the organism, either — or (b) in (a) in its   its germ body,   cells, or (c) in (b) through (a) (?).	Constitutional, congenital, or germinal variations arising from the nature of protoplasm, or from the changes necessarily associated with fertilisation, may be continuous or discontinuous, quantitative or qualitative, etc.
		Use and disuse of parts, or change of function (due to change of environment or to germinal change), are followed by changes in—(a) the body of the organism, or (b) in the germ cells, either directly or (?) through (a).
Secondary (Directive) Factors.	( <i>Environmental Modifications.</i> )	( <i>Functional Modifications.</i> )
	Degree of transmissibility unknown.	Degree of transmissibility unknown.
	Such environmental <i>modifications</i> , IF transmissible, and if the originating conditions persist for some time, might perhaps give rise to new species, especially if favoured by natural selection and isolation. In the individual lifetime they may serve to shield the incipient stages of <i>variations</i> in a similar direction.	Such variations probably supply the usual material for the origin of new species, for the establishment of which, more or less natural selection (elimination) and isolation must be necessary, according to the nature of the variation.
Origin of Changes.	( <i>Variations.</i> )	( <i>Functional Modifications.</i> )
	Transmissible.	Degree of transmissibility unknown.
	Such variations probably supply the usual material for the origin of new species, for the establishment of which, more or less natural selection (elimination) and isolation must be necessary, according to the nature of the variation.	Such functional <i>modifications</i> , IF transmissible, and if the originating conditions persist for sometime, might perhaps give rise to new species, especially if favoured by natural selection and isolation. In the individual lifetime they may serve to shield the incipient stages of <i>variations</i> in a similar direction.
Origin of Species.		







## APPENDIX.

### SOME ZOOLOGICAL BOOKS.

#### INTRODUCTORY :—

- F. Jeffrey Bell, "Comparative Anatomy and Physiology. Lond. 1887).  
C. Lloyd Morgan, "Animal Biology" (Lond. 1889).  
T. H. Huxley and H. N. Martin, "A Course of Elementary Instruction in Practical Biology" (Lond. 1888 ; revised edition by G. B. Howes and D. H. Scott).  
A. Milnes Marshall and C. H. Hurst, "A Course of Practical Zoology (5th ed., Lond. 1899).  
T. Jeffrey Parker, "Elementary Biology" (2nd ed., Lond. 1893).  
J. Arthur Thomson, "The Study of Animal Life" (3rd ed., Lond. 1896).  
B. Lindsay, "An Introduction to the Study of Zoology" (Lond. 1895).

#### TEXT-BOOKS OF ZOOLOGY :—

- T. H. Huxley, "Anatomy of Invertebrates" (1877), and "Anatomy of Vertebrated Animals" (1871).  
T. J. Parker and W. A. Haswell, "Text-book of Zoology" (2 vols., Lond. 1898).  
C. Claus, "Grundzüge der Zoologie" (4th ed., 1880-82), and his smaller "Text-Book of Zoology" (translated by Sedgwick, 1884-85).  
Hatchett Jackson's edition of Rolleston's "Forms of Animal Life" (Oxford, 1888).  
A. Sedgwick, "Student's Text-Book of Zoology," Part I. (Lond. 1898).  
Text-Books (mostly with similar titles) by Boas, R. Hertwig, Kennel, H. A. Nicholson, A. S. Packard, R. Perrier, Shipley.  
J. Ritzema Bos, "Agricultural Zoology" (translated by Davis, Lond. 1894).

#### BOOKS AS GUIDES TO PRACTICAL WORK :—

- C. Vogt and E. Yung, "Traité d'Anatomie Comparée pratique" (Paris, 1885-95) ; also in German.



T. J. Parker, "Zootomy" (Lond. 1884).

Huxley and Martin, *op. cit.*

A. Milnes Marshall and C. H. Hurst, *op. cit.*

W. K. Brooks, "Handbook of Invertebrate Zoology for Laboratories and Seaside Work" (Boston, 1882).

P. Girod, "Manipulations de Zoologie" (1879-81).

A. Bolles Lee, "Microtomist's Vade-Mecum" (4th ed., 1896).

An Atlas will help the student greatly, if he does not use it too much, *e.g.* :—

G. B. Howes, "Atlas of Practical Elementary Biology" (Lond. 1885).

W. R. Smith and J. S. Norwell, "Illustrations of Zoology" (Edin. 1889).

A. de Vayssière, "Atlas d'Anatomie Comparée des Invertébrés" (Paris, 1889).

C. B. Brühl, "Zootomie aller Thierklassen" (Wien).

#### GENERAL MORPHOLOGY :—

Ernst Haeckel, "Generelle Morphologie" (Berlin, 1866).

Herbert Spencer, "Principles of Biology" (Lond. 1864-66).

W. His, "Unsere Körperform" (1875).

G. Jaeger, "Allgemeine Zoologie" (1878).

P. Geddes, article "Morphology" ("Encyclop. Brit.").

#### CLASSIFICATION; see—

E. Ray Lankester, article "Zoology" ("Encyclop. Brit.").

W. A. Herdman, "Phylogenetic Classification of Animals."

H. Gadow, "Classification of Vertebrata" (1898).

#### WORKS ON COMPARATIVE ANATOMY :—

Besides the classic works of Cuvier, Meckel, Milne Edwards, etc.—

Richard Owen, "Comparative Anatomy of Vertebrate Animals" (4th ed., 1871).

T. H. Huxley, *op. cit.*

C. Gegenbaur, "Elements of Comparative Anatomy" (trans. by F. Jeffrey Bell, Lond. 1878. New edition in German, 1898).

A. Lang, "Text-Book of Comparative Anatomy" (trans. by H. M. and M. Bernard).

R. Wiedersheim, "Comparative Anatomy of Vertebrata" (trans. by W. N. Parker, Lond. 1886; new ed. 1898); and a larger work untranslated.

B. Hatschek, "Lehrbuch der Zoologie" (1888).

F. Leydig, "Lehrbuch der Histologie" (Comparative) (1857).

#### WORKS ON COMPARATIVE PHYSIOLOGY :—

Claude Bernard, "Phénomènes de la Vie Commune aux Animaux et aux Végétaux" (1878).

Paul Bert, "Léçons sur la Physiologie comparée de la Respiration" (1870).



- C. F. W. Krukenberg, "Vergleichend-Physiologische Studien" and "Vorträge" (1881-89).  
 F. Jeffrey Bell, "Comparative Anatomy and Physiology" (Lond. 1887).  
 A. B. Griffiths, "Comparative Physiology" (1891).  
 Halliburton, "Physiological Chemistry" (1891).  
 Bunge, "Physiological and Pathological Chemistry" (translated 1890).  
 M. I. Newbigin, "Colour in Nature" (Lond. 1898).

## EMBRYOLOGY :—

- F. M. Balfour, "Comparative Embryology" (2 vols., Lond. 1880-81).  
 M. Foster and F. M. Balfour, revised by A. Sedgwick and W. Heape, "Elements of Embryology" (Lond. 1883).  
 A. C. Haddon, "Introduction to the Study of Embryology" (Lond. 1887).  
 O. Hertwig, "Lehrbuch der Entwicklungsgeschichte des Menschen und der Wirbelthiere" (translated by E. L. Mark, 3rd ed., 1893).  
 E. Korschelt and K. Heider, "Lehrbuch der Vergleichenden Entwicklungsgeschichte der Wirbellosen Thiere" (Jena, 1890-93; translated).  
 L. Roule, "Embryologie Générale" (Paris, 1892), and "Embryologie Comparée" (Paris, 1894).  
 A. Milnes Marshall, "Vertebrate Embryology" (1893).  
 C. S. Minot, "Human Embryology" (1892).

## PALÆONTOLOGY :—

- H. A. Nicholson and R. Lydekker, "Manual of Palæontology" (2 vols., Lond. and Edin. 1889).  
 K. A. von Zittel, "Handbuch der Palæontologie" (completed 1893).  
 A. Smith Woodward, "Vertebrate Palæontology" (1898).  
 M. Neumayr, "Die Stämme des Thierreichs" (vol. i., Wien und Prag, 1889).  
 Gaudry, "Les Enchainements du Monde Animal" (1889-90).  
 Carus Sterne (Ernst Krause), "Werden und Vergehen" (3rd ed., Berlin, 1886).  
 Also text-books by Bernard (1893), Koken (1893).

## GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION :—

- A. R. Wallace, "Geographical Distribution" (2 vols., Lond. 1876).  
 A. Heilprin, "The Geographical and Geological Distribution of Animals" (Lond. 1887).  
 R. Lydekker, "Geographical Distribution of Mammals" (Cambridge).  
 F. E. Beddard, "Geographical Distribution" (Oxford).



Trouessart, "La Geographie Zoologique" (Paris, 1890).

W. Marshall, in Berghaus' "Physikal Atlas" (Leipzig, 1887).

#### BOOKS OF NATURALIST TRAVELLERS, *e.g.* :—

Charles Darwin, "Voyage of the Beagle" (Lond. 1844; new ed., 1890).

H. W. Bates, "Naturalist on the Amazons" (new ed., Lond. 1892).

T. Belt, "Naturalist in Nicaragua" (2nd ed., 1888).

A. R. Wallace, "Malay Archipelago" (1869), "Tropical Nature" (1878), "Island Life" (1880).

Wyville Thomson, "The Depths of the Sea" (1873), "Voyage of the *Challenger*" (1885).

H. N. Moseley, "Naturalist on the *Challenger*" (1879, new ed., 1892).

W. H. Hudson, "Naturalist in La Plata."

A. E. Brehm, "From North Pole to Equator" (translation, edited by J. Arthur Thomson, with bibliography, 1895).

#### COMPARATIVE PSYCHOLOGY :—

G. J. Romanes, "Animal Intelligence" and "Mental Evolution of Animals."

C. Lloyd Morgan, "Animal Life and Intelligence"; "Introduction to Comparative Psychology" (Lond. 1894); "Habit and Instinct" (Lond. 1897).

#### GENERAL NATURAL HISTORY :—

Brehm's "Thierleben" (3rd ed., by Pechuel-Loesche, 10 vols., Leipzig und Wien, 1890-93).

Cassell's "Natural History" (edited by P. Martin Duncan, 6 vols., 1882).

"Standard or Riverside Natural History" (edited by J. S. Kingsley, 6 vols., 1888).

"Royal Natural History" (edited by R. Lydekker, 6 vols.).

#### BOOKS ON EVOLUTION :—

Charles Darwin, "Origin of Species" (1859, etc.).

Alfred Russel Wallace, "Darwinism" (1889).

Herbert Spencer, "Principles of Biology" (1866. New ed., vol. i., 1898).

Ernst Haeckel, "Generelle Morphologie" (1866, etc.).

For more recent books, see my "Study of Animal Life." To the list there given must be added three books in particular, Weismann's "Germ-Plasm" (1893), Bateson's "Materials for the Study of Variation" (1894), and Delage's "d'Hérédité" (1895).

#### GENERAL WORKS OF REFERENCE :—

W. Hatchett Jackson's edition of Rolleston's "Forms of Animal Life" (Oxford, 1888). A very valuable work, with special bibliographies,



- Leunis, "Synopsis des Thierreichs" (re-edited by Ludwig, Hanover, 1886).  
 Bronn, "Klassen und Ordnungen des Thierreichs" (1859-95).  
 E. Ray Lankester and others, "Zoological Articles reprinted from 'Encyclop. Brit.'" (Lond. 1891).  
 Yves Delage and others, "Traité de Zoologie Concrète" (Paris, many vols.).  
 Shipley and Harmer, "Cambridge Natural History."

MONOGRAPHIC SERIES, *e.g.* :—

- "Reports of the Voyage of H.M.S. *Challenger*."  
 "Fauna und Flora des Golfes von Neapel."  
 "Catalogues of the British Museum—Natural History."  
 "Ray Society Publications."

RECORDS OF RESEARCH :—

- Journal of Royal Microscopical Society* (6 parts in the year).  
*Zoological Record* (yearly).  
*Zoologisches Jahresbericht* (Naples ; yearly).  
*Anatomische Ergebnisse* (Merkel & Bonnet ; yearly).  
*L'Année Biologique* (Paris ; yearly).  
*Natural Science* (monthly).

HISTORY OF ZOOLOGY :—

- W. Whewell, "History of Inductive Sciences" (1840).  
 J. V. Carus, "Geschichte der Zoologie" (1872).  
 E. Perrier, "La Philosophie Zoologique avant Darwin" (1884).  
 E. Haeckel, "Natural History of Creation" (trans. Lond. 1870).  
 E. Ray Lankester, article "Zoology" ("Encyclop. Brit.").  
 H. A. Nicholson, "Natural History : its Rise and Progress in Britain" (1888).  
 E. Krause, "Die Allgemeine Weltanschauungen" (1889).  
 H. F. Osborn, "From the Greeks to Darwin" (1894).  
 J. Arthur Thomson, "The Science of Life" (1899).

BIBLIOGRAPHY :—

- Hatchett Jackson and Rolleston, *op. cit.*  
 L. von Graff, "Bibliothek des Professors der Zoologie und vergleichenden Anatomie" (Leipzig, 1891).  
 "Bibliotheca Historico-naturalis," Engelmann (1700-1846).  
 "Bibliotheca Zoologica," Carus and Engelmann (1846-61).  
 "Bibliotheca Zoologica," continued by Taschenberg (1861-80).  
 "Bibliotheca Zoologicae et Geologiae," L. Agassiz, edited by Strickland and Jardine (Lond. 1848-54).  
 Royal Society's "Catalogue of Scientific Papers" (from 1800).  
 Annual Bibliographies in *Zoological Record*, etc., cited above.  
 C. Davies Sherborn, "Books of Reference in the Natural Sciences," *Natural Science*, V. (August 1894).







# INDEX



INDEX



# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
AARD-VARK, . . . . .	693	Actinozoa, . . . . .	123, 153
Aard-wolf, . . . . .	719	Adambulacrals, . . . . .	225
Abdominal pores, . . . . .	476, 482	Adamsia, . . . . .	154
„ ribs, . . . . .	567, 583	Adder, . . . . .	581
Abducens nerve, . . . . .	444	Adhesive cells, . . . . .	152
Abomasum, . . . . .	698	Adrenal body of rabbit, . . . . .	656
Absorption, . . . . .	26	Æginopsis, . . . . .	151
Abyssal fauna, . . . . .	759	Æluroidea, . . . . .	718
Acanthias, . . . . .	516	Ælurus, . . . . .	720
Acanthobdella, . . . . .	215	Æpyornis, . . . . .	628
Acanthocephala, . . . . .	180	Ærial fauna, . . . . .	763
Acanthodei, . . . . .	518	Æthaliæ, . . . . .	98
Acanthopteri, . . . . .	521	Agamidæ, . . . . .	576
Acarina, . . . . .	330	Aglossa, . . . . .	556
Acephala, . . . . .	378	Agouti, . . . . .	714
Acetabulum, . . . . .	604, 646	Air-bladder of Fishes, . . . . .	506
Achromatin, . . . . .	44	Air-sacs of Birds, . . . . .	615
Acineta, . . . . .	102	„ „ of Lizards, . . . . .	574
Acinetaria, . . . . .	102	Albumen gland of snail, . . . . .	344
Acipenser, . . . . .	518	„ of bird's egg, . . . . .	614
Acipenseroidei, . . . . .	520	„ of frog's egg, . . . . .	548
Acœla, . . . . .	157	Alces, . . . . .	700
Acontia, . . . . .	147	Alcyonaria, . . . . .	151
Acorn-shell, . . . . .	269	„ and Zoantharia, . . . . .	149
Acquired characters, . . . . .	71, 771	Alcyonidium, . . . . .	221
Acrania = Cephalochorda, . . . . .	411	Alcyonium, . . . . .	149, 151
Acraspeda, . . . . .	138, 144, 151	Alecithal, . . . . .	64
Acrodont teeth, . . . . .	572	Alimentary system of—	
Acromion, . . . . .	644	„ Amphioxus, . . . . .	415
Actinia, . . . . .	151	„ Anodonta, . . . . .	350
Actiniaria, . . . . .	149, 151	„ Arenicola, . . . . .	197
Actinomma, . . . . .	101	„ Ascidian, . . . . .	399
Actinophrys, . . . . .	99	„ Aurelia, . . . . .	139
Actinosphærium, . . . . .	99	„ Balanoglossus, . . . . .	389
Actinotrocha (larva), . . . . .	220	„ bee, . . . . .	297



	PAGE		PAGE
Alimentary system of—		Ambulacral ossicles, . . .	225
" Birds, . . .	596	Ametabolic Insects, . . .	300
" cockroach, . . .	292	Amia, . . .	518
" crayfish, . . .	256	Amitosis, . . .	45
" Crinoidea, . . .	241	Ammocoetes, . . .	477
" Crustacea, . . .	276	Ammonites, . . .	385
" Distomum, . . .	159	Ammothea, . . .	336
" earthworm, . . .	186	Amnion, . . .	589, 625
" frog, . . .	540	Amniota, . . .	560
" haddock, . . .	505	Amœba, . . .	85
" Helix, . . .	342	" functions of, . . .	102
" Hirudo, . . .	211	" physiology of, . . .	20
" Holothurian, . . .	236	Amphibia, . . .	530
" Insects, . . .	305, 306	" classification of, . . .	556
" Limulus, . . .	333	" Fishes compared with, . . .	531
" Lizards, . . .	572	" history of, . . .	559
" Myxine, . . .	471	" life of, . . .	557
" Nematoda, . . .	175	" Mammals and, . . .	559
" Nemerteans, . . .	170	Amphiblastula, . . .	120
" Peripatus, . . .	283	Amphicœlous vertebra, . . .	568
" Petromyzon, . . .	475	Amphidiscs, . . .	118
" pigeon, . . .	607	Amphilina, . . .	169
" rabbit, . . .	649	Amphimixis, . . .	62, 773
" Rotifera, . . .	218	Amphineura, . . .	371
" scorpion, . . .	324	Amphioxus, . . .	411-423
" sea-urchin, . . .	234	Amphipoda, . . .	264, 271
" Sepia, . . .	359	Amphiporus, . . .	174
" skate, . . .	493	Amphisbœnidæ, . . .	576
" spider, . . .	327	Amphistylic, . . .	535
" starfish, . . .	227	Amphiuma, . . .	556
" Vertebrates, . . .	451	Amphiura, . . .	231
Alisphenoid canal, . . .	693	Ampullæ of starfish, . . .	225
Allantois, . . .	36, 589, 626	Anableps, "placenta" of, . . .	589
Alligators, . . .	582, 587	Anabolism, . . .	31
Alloiocœla, . . .	157	Anacanthini, . . .	521
Allotheria, . . .	685	Anaconda, . . .	582
Alpaca, . . .	698	Anal cerci of cockroach, . . .	290
Alternation of generations, . . .	54	Analogous organs, . . .	35
" in Aurelia, . . .	143	Anamnia, . . .	560
" in Cœlentera, . . .	128	Anapophyses, . . .	640
" in Distomum, . . .	161	Anchinia, . . .	410
" in Nematodes, . . .	177	Anchitherium, . . .	704
" in Spongilla, . . .	119	Ancylus, . . .	373
" in Tunicates, . . .	405	Anemonia, . . .	151
Altrices, . . .	620	Angiostomum, . . .	177
Ambiens muscle, . . .	599	Anguis, . . .	576
Amblypoda, . . .	707	Angular bone, . . .	434
Amblyrhynchus, . . .	576	Animalculists, . . .	60
Amblystoma, . . .	556	Animal Kingdom — General	
Ambulacral areas, . . .	232	survey of, . . .	1-17



	PAGE		PAGE
Animals and Plants contrasted,	20-23	Appendages of haddock,	501
Anisopoda, . . . . .	270	" of Insects, . . . . .	301
Annelids, . . . . .	181	" of Limulus, . . . . .	332
" development of, . . . . .	191	" of Myriopods, . . . . .	287
" and Vertebrates, . . . . .	428	" of Peripatus, . . . . .	282
Anodonta, . . . . .	347-355	" of Polychæta, . . . . .	203
Anolis, . . . . .	576	" of scorpion, . . . . .	324
Anomodontia, . . . . .	590	" of spider, . . . . .	326
Anoplodium, . . . . .	157	" of Trilobita, . . . . .	335
Ant-eaters, . . . . .	691	Appendicular skeleton of	
Antedon, . . . . .	239	Vertebrates, . . . . .	431
" structure of, . . . . .	241	Appendicularia, . . . . .	409
Antennæ of cockroach, . . . . .	290	Appendix vermiformis, . . . . .	650
" of crayfish, . . . . .	251	Apseudes, . . . . .	271
" of Myriopods, . . . . .	287	Apterygota, . . . . .	300
" of Peripatus, . . . . .	282	Apteryx, . . . . .	628
" of Trilobites, . . . . .	335	Aptornis, . . . . .	629
Antennules of crayfish, . . . . .	251	Apus, . . . . .	264
Anthomedusæ, . . . . .	150	Aquatic Mammals, . . . . .	677
Anthozoa, . . . . .	151	Aqueduct of Sylvius, . . . . .	440
Anthropoid Apes, . . . . .	728	Aqueductus Vestibuli, . . . . .	447
Anthropoidea, . . . . .	728	Aqueous humour of eye, . . . . .	449
Anthropomorph, . . . . .	730	Arachnoid fluid, . . . . .	442
Anthropopithecus, . . . . .	730	" membrane, . . . . .	442
Anti-enzyme, . . . . .	744	Arachnoidea, . . . . .	322
Antilocapra, . . . . .	701	Araneidæ, . . . . .	326
Antilope, . . . . .	701	Arca, . . . . .	379
Antipatharia, . . . . .	151	Arcella, . . . . .	98
Antiquity of man, . . . . .	735	Archæoceti, . . . . .	708
Antlers, . . . . .	700	Archæopteryx, . . . . .	627
Ant-lion, . . . . .	320	Archæornithes, . . . . .	593, 627
Ants, . . . . .	300	Archenteron, . . . . .	67, 421
Anura, . . . . .	556	Archerina, . . . . .	104
Anus of Vertebrates, . . . . .	452	Archi-Annelida, . . . . .	206
Apes, . . . . .	730	Archi-cerebrum, . . . . .	271
Aphides, . . . . .	300	Archi-Chætopoda, . . . . .	211
Aphrodite, . . . . .	204	Archicœle, . . . . .	170
Apis, . . . . .	294	Archigetes, . . . . .	164
Aplacophora, . . . . .	372	Archinephric duct = Segmental	
Aplysia, . . . . .	373	duct, . . . . .	463
Apneustic Insects, . . . . .	307	Archipterygium of Fishes, . . . . .	512
Apoda (Echinoderma), . . . . .	239	Archoplasm, . . . . .	44
Apoda = Gymnophiona, . . . . .	557	Arcifera, . . . . .	556
Apodemata (crayfish), . . . . .	257	Arctocyon, . . . . .	722
Appendages of Arachnoidea, . . . . .	321	Arctoidea, . . . . .	720
" of Arenicola, . . . . .	196	Arctomys, . . . . .	714
" of cockroach, . . . . .	290	Arctopithecini, . . . . .	729
" of crayfish, . . . . .	251, 253	Arenicola, . . . . .	194-200
" of Crustacea, . . . . .	250	Argonauta, . . . . .	385
" of Eurypterina, . . . . .	335	Argulus, . . . . .	264



	PAGE		PAGE
Argyroneta, . . . . .	330	Auditory nerve, . . . . .	444
Arion, . . . . .	373	,, organs of Insects, . . . . .	304
Aristotle's lantern, . . . . .	232	Aulostoma, . . . . .	216
Arius, . . . . .	510	Aurelia, . . . . . 138, 153, 156	
Armadillo (Crustacean), . . . . .	271	,, life history of, . . . . .	141
Armadillos, . . . . .	691	,, relatives of, . . . . .	143
Arrow-worms, . . . . .	216	Auricularia (of Holothuria), 237, 241	
Artemia, . . . . .	264	Australian region, . . . . .	767
Arterial arches of Vertebrates, 458		Autostylic, . . . . .	535
,, system. <i>See</i> Vascular		Aves ( <i>see</i> Birds), . . . . .	593
system.		Axial skeleton ( <i>see</i> Backbone), 431	
,, of embryo of		Axis vertebra, . . . . .	640
higher Vertebrates, . . . . .	459	Axolotl, . . . . . 556, 557	
Arthrobranchs of crayfish, . . . . .	258	Aye-Aye, . . . . .	727
Arthropoda, classes of, . . . . .	9	Azygobranchs, . . . . .	373
,, general charac-			
acters of, . . . . .	247	BABIRUSA, . . . . .	697
Arthrostraca, . . . . . 264, 270		Baboons, . . . . .	730
Articular, . . . . . 434, 604		Backbone, . . . . .	431
Artiodactyla, . . . . .	695	Bactrites, . . . . .	385
,, and Perissodac-		Baculites, . . . . .	385
tyla contrasted, . . . . .	695	Badger, . . . . .	720
Ascaridæ, . . . . .	174	Balæna, . . . . .	712
Ascaris, . . . . . 175, 176		Balænoidea, . . . . .	712
Ascetta, . . . . .	114	Balænoptera, . . . . .	712
Ascidia, . . . . .	397	Balanoglossus, . . . . . 387-394	
Asidiacea, . . . . .	409	,, Vertebrate charac-	
Ascon type (of sponge), . . . . .	115	ters of, . . . . .	393
Asellus, . . . . .	271	Balanus, . . . . . 264, 269	
Asexual reproduction, . . . . .	51	Baleen, . . . . .	712
Aspredo, . . . . . 510		Bandicoot, . . . . .	688
Astacus, . . . . . 248-264		Barbary ape, . . . . .	730
Asteracanthion, . . . . .	225	Barbule, . . . . .	500
Asterias, . . . . .	225	Barnacle, . . . . .	267
Asteroidea, . . . . .	225	Basiliscus, . . . . .	576
Astropecten, . . . . .	230	Basitemporal, . . . . .	594
Astrophyton, . . . . .	231	Batoidei, . . . . .	516
Astrorhizidæ, . . . . .	106	Bats, . . . . .	724
Atavisms or reversions, . . . . .	82	Bdellostoma, . . . . .	473
Atax, . . . . .	331	Bears, . . . . .	720
Ateles, . . . . .	729	Beaver, . . . . .	714
Athecæ, . . . . .	566	Bees, . . . . .	294
Atlanta, . . . . .	373	Beetles, . . . . .	320
Atlas vertebra, . . . . .	640	Belemnites, . . . . .	385
Atrial cavity, . . . . . 399, 417		Belinurus, . . . . .	334
Atriopore of Amphioxus, . . . . .	417	Beroë, . . . . .	152
Attidæ, . . . . .	330	Bilateral symmetry, . . . . .	33
Atypus, . . . . .	330	Bile, . . . . . 26, 745	
Auchenia, . . . . .	698	Bilharzia, . . . . .	163
Auditory capsules of skull, . . . . .	431	Bimana, . . . . .	734



	PAGE		PAGE
Bionomics—		Body cavity of Insects, . . .	308
"    Birds, . . .	618	"    "    of lamprey, . . .	477
"    Cœlentera, . . .	125	"    "    of scorpion, . . .	324
"    Crustacea, . . .	279	"    "    of spider, . . .	327
"    Fishes, . . .	514	"    "    of Teleostean, . . .	456
"    Insects, . . .	317	"    "    of Vertebrates, . . .	456
"    Mollusca, . . .	361	Bone, . . . . .	40
"    Sponges, . . .	113	Bonellia, . . . . .	205
Bipalium, . . . . .	158	Bony pike, . . . . .	518
Bipinnaria, . . . . .	230	Book scorpions, . . . . .	325
Bird lice, . . . . .	321	Bopyridæ, . . . . .	271
Birds, . . . . .	593	Bos, . . . . .	701
"    and Reptiles, . . .	562	Bothriocephalus, . . . . .	168
"    classification of, . . .	627	Botryllus, . . . . .	405, 410
"    courtship of, . . .	618	Bougainvillea, . . . . .	150
"    diet of, . . . . .	620	Bovidæ, . . . . .	701
"    eggs of, . . . . .	619	Brachiolaria, . . . . .	244
"    feathers of, . . . . .	597	Brachionus, . . . . .	218
"    flight of, . . . . .	614	Brachiopoda, . . . . .	219, 220
"    general characters of, . . .	593	Brachyura, . . . . .	273
"    migration of, . . . . .	621	Brackish water fauna, . . . . .	761
"    moulting of, . . . . .	620	Bradypodidæ, . . . . .	692
"    nests of, . . . . .	618	Bradypus, . . . . .	692
"    pedigree of, . . . . .	630	Brain, definition of, . . . . .	743
"    song of, . . . . .	627	"    of skate, . . . . .	487
Birgus, . . . . .	273	"    of Vertebrates, . . . . .	438
Bivalves, . . . . .	378-381	"    summary of parts of, . . . . .	442
Bivium of starfish, . . . . .	225	Branchellion, . . . . .	216
Bladder of frog, . . . . .	541	Branchiæ = Gills, . . . . .	352
"    of Mammals, . . . . .	656	Branchial arches, . . . . .	434
"    worms, . . . . .	165	"    sense organs, . . . . .	446
Blastocyst, . . . . .	669	Branchiobdella, . . . . .	203, 215
Blastoderm, . . . . .	63	Branchiopoda, . . . . .	265
Blastoidea, . . . . .	241	Branchiostegal rays, . . . . .	503
Blastomere, . . . . .	423	Branchipus, . . . . .	264
Blastopore, . . . . .	66	Branchiura, . . . . .	202
Blastosphere, . . . . .	64	Breast bone, . . . . .	436
Blastula, . . . . .	65	Brisinga, . . . . .	230
Blatta, . . . . .	289	Brittle-stars, . . . . .	230
Blind spot of eye, . . . . .	450	Bryozoa, . . . . .	219, 220
Blood, . . . . .	26	Buccinum, . . . . .	373
"    of frog, . . . . .	542	Buckie = Buccinum, . . . . .	373
"    functions of, . . . . .	746	Budding, . . . . .	51
Boa, . . . . .	382	Bugs, . . . . .	300
Body cavity, . . . . .	308	Bulbus arteriosus, . . . . .	506
"    "    of Amphioxus, . . . . .	417	Bulla, . . . . .	373
"    "    of Arenicola, . . . . .	198	Bunodont, . . . . .	696
"    "    of Balanoglossus, . . . . .	389	Bursa Fabricii, . . . . .	608
"    "    of crayfish, . . . . .	257	Butterflies, . . . . .	320
"    "    of earthworm, . . . . .	184	Byssus, . . . . .	355



	PAGE		PAGE
CADDIS flies, . . . . .	320	Cassowary, . . . . .	628
Cæca, . . . . .	608, 745	Castor, . . . . .	714
Cæcilia, . . . . .	557	Casuarium, . . . . .	628
Cæcum of rabbit, . . . . .	650	Cat, . . . . .	719
Ca'ing whale, . . . . .	712	Catallacta, . . . . .	98
Calamoichthys, . . . . .	518	Catarrhini, . . . . .	730
Calcareæ, . . . . .	113	Caterpillar, . . . . .	315
Calcispongiae, . . . . .	113	Caudata, . . . . .	556
Callorhynchus, . . . . .	517	Cave fauna, . . . . .	761
Calymene, . . . . .	335	Cavia, . . . . .	715
Calyptriblastic, . . . . .	150	Caviidae, . . . . .	715
Camelidae, . . . . .	698	Cebidae, . . . . .	729
Camelus, . . . . .	698	Cebus, . . . . .	730
Campanularia, . . . . .	150	Cell cycle among Protozoa, . . . . .	96
Campodea, . . . . .	300	,, division, . . . . .	45-48
Campodeiform larva, . . . . .	315	,, ,, rationale of, . . . . .	47
Cancer, . . . . .	273	,, nucleus of, . . . . .	43
Canidae, . . . . .	719	,, substance of, . . . . .	43
Canis, . . . . .	719	,, theory, . . . . .	38, 67
Cannon-bone, . . . . .	699	,, wall of, . . . . .	44, 45
Capitellidae, . . . . .	204	Cells, . . . . .	42
Capitulum of rib, . . . . .	601	,, forms of, . . . . .	42
Capra, . . . . .	701	,, structure of, . . . . .	42
Caprellidae, . . . . .	271	Cellulose in Tunicates, . . . . .	397
Capreolus, . . . . .	700	Centetes, . . . . .	723
Capybara, . . . . .	714	Centipedes, . . . . .	287
Carapace of Chelonia, . . . . .	563	,, and millipedes, . . . . .	288
Carcharias, . . . . .	516	Central corpuscles, . . . . .	42
Carchesium, . . . . .	92	Centrolecithal, . . . . .	64
Carcinus, . . . . .	273	Centrosomes, . . . . .	44
Cardium, . . . . .	379	Cephalaspis, . . . . .	479
Cardo, . . . . .	300	Cephalochorda, . . . . .	411
Caretta, . . . . .	566	Cephalodiscus, . . . . .	394
Carina of Cirripedia, . . . . .	267	Cephalopoda, . . . . .	381-386
,, or keel of Birds, . . . . .	595, 615	Cephalothorax of crayfish, . . . . .	249
Carinaria, . . . . .	373	Cephalothrix, . . . . .	174
Carinatae, . . . . .	628	Ceratiocaris, . . . . .	270
,, and Ratitæ con- trasted, . . . . .	629	Ceratites, . . . . .	385
Carinella, . . . . .	171, 172	Ceratodus, . . . . .	522
Carinoma, . . . . .	174	Ceratospongiae, . . . . .	121
Carmarina, . . . . .	151	Cercariae, . . . . .	163
Carnassial teeth, . . . . .	717	Cerci of cockroach, . . . . .	290
Carnivora, . . . . .	715	Cercopithecidae, . . . . .	730
Carpo-metacarpus, . . . . .	595, 604	Cercopithecus, . . . . .	730
Carpus, . . . . .	438	Cere of pigeon, . . . . .	605
Cartilage, . . . . .	40	Cerebellum, . . . . .	442
,, -bones, . . . . .	433	Cerebral hemispheres, . . . . .	439
Caryophyllæus, . . . . .	164	Cerebratulus, . . . . .	173
Cassiopeia, . . . . .	144	Cerianthus, . . . . .	145
		Cervidae, . . . . .	700



	PAGE		PAGE
Cervus, . . . . .	700	Choroid of eye, . . . . .	449
Cestoda, . . . . .	164	,, plexus, . . . . .	440
Cestracion, . . . . .	516	Chromatin, . . . . .	44
Cestum Veneris, . . . . .	152	Chromosomes, . . . . .	44
Cetacea, . . . . .	709	Chrysalis, . . . . .	315
Cetochilus, . . . . .	266	Chrysaora, . . . . .	144
Chætoderma, . . . . .	372	Chrysochloris, . . . . .	723
Chætognatha, . . . . .	216	Chrysothrix, . . . . .	730
Chætopoda, . . . . .	181, 194	Chyle, . . . . .	27
Chætopterus, . . . . .	205	Chyme, . . . . .	26
Chalicotherium, . . . . .	705	Cicada, . . . . .	300
Chalina, . . . . .	121	Cidarid, . . . . .	235
Chamæleo, . . . . .	576	Cilia, . . . . .	102
Chamæleontes, . . . . .	576	Ciliary nerve, . . . . .	444
Charybdea, . . . . .	151	,, processes of the chor-	
Cheiropterygium, . . . . .	512	oid, . . . . .	449
Chelicerae of Limulus, . . . . .	332	Ciliata, . . . . .	102
,, scorpion, . . . . .	324	Ciona, . . . . .	410
,, spider, . . . . .	326	Circulatory system. <i>See</i> Vas-	
Chelifer, . . . . .	325	cular system.	
Chelone, . . . . .	566	Cirri of Chætopods, . . . . .	203
Chelonia, . . . . .	563	,, of Crinoids, . . . . .	239
Chelonidae, . . . . .	566	Cirripedia, . . . . .	264, 267
Chelydidae, . . . . .	566	Cirrus sac, . . . . .	160
Chelydra, . . . . .	567	Cladocera, . . . . .	266
Chelys, . . . . .	566	Claspers of skate, . . . . .	497
Chemotaxis, . . . . .	103, 754	Classification of Animals, . . . . .	16
Chernes, . . . . .	325	,, grades of, . . . . .	14
Chevron bones, . . . . .	709	,, the basis of, . . . . .	14
Chevrotain, . . . . .	697	,, of organs, . . . . .	38
Chiasma of optic nerves, . . . . .	488	Clavelina, . . . . .	405
Chilognatha, . . . . .	288	Clavicle, . . . . .	438, 604
Chilopoda, . . . . .	288	Clemmys, "placenta" of, . . . . .	590
Chimæra, . . . . .	517	Clepsine, . . . . .	215, 216
Chimpanzee, . . . . .	730	Clio, . . . . .	374
Chiromys, . . . . .	727	Clione, . . . . .	122
Chiroptera, . . . . .	724	Clitellum of earthworm, . . . . .	183
Chitin, . . . . .	750	Clitoris, . . . . .	658
Chiton, . . . . .	371	Cloaca of Vertebrates, . . . . .	454
Chlamydomyxa, . . . . .	99	Clypeaster, . . . . .	235
Chlamydosaurus, . . . . .	576	Cnidoblasts, . . . . .	130
Chlorophyll, . . . . .	23	Cnidocil, . . . . .	132
Choeropus, . . . . .	689	Cobra, . . . . .	582
Cholæpus, . . . . .	692	Coccidia, . . . . .	102
Chondracanthus, . . . . .	267	Coccus Insects, . . . . .	300
Chondrocranium, . . . . .	431	Cochlea, . . . . .	447
Chordæ tendineæ, . . . . .	651	Cockle, . . . . .	378
Chordata and Non-chordata, . . . . .	8	Cockroach, . . . . .	289-292, 305
Chordotonal organs, . . . . .	304	Cocoon, . . . . .	315
Chorion, . . . . .	672	Cod, . . . . .	501



	PAGE		PAGE
Codosiga, . . . . .	102	Corals, . . . . .	129, 150
Cœlentera, . . . . .	125	Cordylophora, . . . . .	150, 154
Cœliac ganglia, . . . . .	651	Corium, . . . . .	429
Cœlom ( <i>see</i> Body cavity), . . . . .	308	Cornea, . . . . .	449
Cœlomata and Cœlentera, . . . . .	12	Coronary, . . . . .	604
Cœnurus, . . . . .	168	Coronella, . . . . .	582
Coleoptera, . . . . .	300	Corpora adiposa, . . . . .	549
Collagen, . . . . .	750	Corpus callosum, . . . . .	647
Collembola, . . . . .	300	,, geniculatum, . . . . .	648
Collozoum, . . . . .	100	,, striatum, . . . . .	443, 647
Colobus, . . . . .	730	Correlation of organs, . . . . .	34
Colon, . . . . .	650	Corrodentia, . . . . .	300
Colouring matters of Ani-		Corticata, . . . . .	97
mals, . . . . .	751	Cotylophora, . . . . .	699
Colubrifomes, . . . . .	582	Couguar, . . . . .	719
,, venenosi, . . . . .	582	Courtship of Birds, . . . . .	618
Columba, . . . . .	597	,, of Spiders, . . . . .	329
,, livia, . . . . .	82, 597	Cowper's glands, . . . . .	678
Columella of Vertebrate ear, . . . . .	448	Coxa, . . . . .	290
,, or epi-ptyergoid, . . . . .	572	Coxal glands of Limulus, . . . . .	333
,, in corals, . . . . .	154	,, ,, of scorpion, . . . . .	324
,, in snail, . . . . .	340	,, ,, of spider, . . . . .	327
Comatula, . . . . .	239	Crab, . . . . .	273
Commensalism among Crus-		Crangon, . . . . .	273
tacea, . . . . .	279	Crania, . . . . .	221
,, ,, Fishes, . . . . .	511	Cranial nerves, . . . . .	442
Commissures of Mammalian		Craniota, . . . . .	16, 425
brain, . . . . .	636	Craspedon of swimming-bell, . . . . .	136
Complemental males among		Craspedota, . . . . .	136
Cirripedia, . . . . .	267	,, and Acraspeda, . . . . .	144
,, Myzostomata, . . . . .	207	Crayfish, the fresh-water, . . . . .	248-264
Conchifera, <i>see</i> Bivalves, . . . . .	378	,, the sea, . . . . .	248
Conchin = Conchiolin, . . . . .	750	Creodonta, . . . . .	722
Conchiolin, . . . . .	750	Cribrella, . . . . .	230
Condylarthra, . . . . .	708	Cribriform plate, . . . . .	643
Conjugation, dimorphic, . . . . .	108	Cricket, . . . . .	300
,, multiple, . . . . .	108	Crinoidea, . . . . .	239-241
,, of Paramœcium, . . . . .	92	Cristatella, . . . . .	221
,, of Protozoa, . . . . .	108	Crocodyles, Alligators, and	
,, of Vorticella, . . . . .	108	Gavials, . . . . .	587
Conjunctiva, . . . . .	449	Crocodylia, . . . . .	582
Connective tissue, . . . . .	39	Crop of earthworm, . . . . .	186
Contractile vacuoles, . . . . .	85	,, leech, . . . . .	211
Contraction of muscle, . . . . .	40	,, pigeon, . . . . .	607
Conus arteriosus, . . . . .	494	Crossopterygii, . . . . .	520
Convergence, . . . . .	688	Crotalus, . . . . .	582
Convoluta, . . . . .	157	Crumb of bread sponge, . . . . .	121
Copelata = Larvacea, . . . . .	409	Crura cerebri, . . . . .	442
Copepoda, . . . . .	264, 266	Crural glands, . . . . .	284
Coracoid, . . . . .	437, 604	Crustacea, . . . . .	247-280



	PAGE		PAGE
Crustacea, general characters		Dasypodidæ, . . . . .	692
of, . . . . .	248	Dasyprocta, . . . . .	714
,, systematic survey		Dasypus, . . . . .	691
of, . . . . .	264-274	Dasyuridæ, . . . . .	688
Cryptobranchus, . . . . .	556	Dasyurus, . . . . .	688
Cryptoniscidæ, . . . . .	271	Dead-man's-fingers, . . . . .	151
Crystalline style, . . . . .	350	Decapoda (Cephalopods), . . . . .	385
Ctenidia, . . . . .	352	,, (Crustacea), . . . . .	272
Cteniza, . . . . .	330	Decidua reflexa, . . . . .	675
Ctenoid scale, . . . . .	513	Deciduate, . . . . .	675
Ctenophora, . . . . .	151, 153	Deep sea, . . . . .	758
Cubomedusæ, . . . . .	151	Deer, . . . . .	695
Cucullanus, . . . . .	177	Degeneration, . . . . .	37
Cucumaria, . . . . .	236	Delamination, . . . . .	66
Cuma, . . . . .	264	Delphinapterus, . . . . .	712
Cumacea, . . . . .	272	Delphinoidea, . . . . .	712
Cunina, . . . . .	151	Delphinus, . . . . .	712
Cuscus, . . . . .	689	Demodex, . . . . .	330
Cuticle, . . . . .	249	Demospongiæ, . . . . .	113
Cutis, . . . . .	429	Dendrocœlum, . . . . .	158
Cuttlebone, . . . . .	358	Dentalium, . . . . .	377
Cuttlefish, . . . . .	355-363	Dentary, . . . . .	434, 604
Cuvierian organs, . . . . .	237	Dentition of Mammals, . . . . .	661
Cyamidæ, . . . . .	271	Dermal denticles, . . . . .	483
Cyanea, . . . . .	144, 151	Dermaptera, . . . . .	300
Cyanosoma, . . . . .	235	Dermis of Vertebrates, . . . . .	429
Cyclas, . . . . .	379	Dermoptera, . . . . .	723
Cyclodus, "placenta" of, . . . . .	589	Descent, doctrine of, . . . . .	80, 735
Cycloid scale, . . . . .	513	Desmodus, . . . . .	726
Cycloporus, . . . . .	158	Desmognathus, . . . . .	556
Cyclops, . . . . .	264	Desmosticha, . . . . .	235
Cyclostomata, . . . . .	469-479	Deutoplasm, . . . . .	62
Cycloturus, . . . . .	692	Development of—	
Cy dippe, . . . . .	152	,, Amphioxus, . . . . .	420
Cymbulia, . . . . .	373	,, Annelids, . . . . .	202
Cymothoa, . . . . .	271	,, Anodonta, . . . . .	353
Cymothoidæ, . . . . .	271	,, Ascidia, . . . . .	403
Cynocephalus, . . . . .	730	,, Balanoglossus, . . . . .	391
Cynoidea, . . . . .	719	,, Chætognatha, . . . . .	217
Cynomorph Monkeys, . . . . .	730	,, chick, . . . . .	622
Cypridina, . . . . .	264	,, crayfish, . . . . .	261
Cypris, . . . . .	264	,, Crustacea, . . . . .	277
Cysticercus, . . . . .	168	,, earthworm, . . . . .	191
Cystoidea, . . . . .	242	,, Echinoderma, . . . . .	242-244
Cysts of Protozoa, . . . . .	106	,, eye, . . . . .	450
Cytoplasm, . . . . .	42	,, feather, . . . . .	598
		,, frog, . . . . .	549
DAPHNIA, . . . . .	264	,, haddock, . . . . .	507
Dart sac of snail, . . . . .	346	,, hair, . . . . .	659
Dasypeltis, . . . . .	579	,, Hydra, . . . . .	134



	PAGE		PAGE
Development of—		Dipnoi, . . . . .	522
„ Insects, . . . . .	311	Diprotodon, . . . . .	689, 690
„ Mammalian teeth, . . . . .	661	Diptera, . . . . .	300
„ Mammals, . . . . .	659	Dipterus, . . . . .	522
„ Nemerteans, . . . . .	173	Direct division, . . . . .	45
„ Peripatus, . . . . .	285	Discoidal segmentation, . . . . .	64, 623
„ Petromyzon, . . . . .	476	Discomedusæ, . . . . .	151
„ placenta, . . . . .	668	Discophora, . . . . .	208
„ Polychæta, . . . . .	202	Distomum, . . . . .	158, 163
„ Reptilia, . . . . .	588	Distribution, geographical, . . . . .	757
„ scorpion, . . . . .	325	„ geological, . . . . .	78
„ skate, . . . . .	498	Division of labour, . . . . .	19, 20
„ skull, . . . . .	431	Dochmius, . . . . .	177
„ Sponges, . . . . .	119	Doctrine of descent, . . . . .	80, 765
„ Tunicata, . . . . .	403	Dodo, . . . . .	629
„ Vertebrata, . . . . .	429	Dog, . . . . .	719
Diapedesis, . . . . .	755	Dogfish, . . . . .	517
Diaphragm, . . . . .	634	Dogwhelk, . . . . .	373
Diastatic ferments, . . . . .	745	Dolabella, . . . . .	373
Dibranchiata, . . . . .	384	Doliolum, . . . . .	406
Dichogamy in Tunicata, . . . . .	403	Dolphin, . . . . .	712
Dicotyles, . . . . .	697	Donkey, . . . . .	704
Dicyema, . . . . .	124	Dorcatherium, . . . . .	699
Dicyemidæ, . . . . .	124	Doris, . . . . .	374
Didelphyidæ, . . . . .	688	Draco, . . . . .	576
Didelphys, . . . . .	688	Dracunculus, . . . . .	178
Differentiation, . . . . .	34	Dragon-flies, . . . . .	300
Diffugia, . . . . .	99	Dreissena, . . . . .	379
Digenetic Trematodes, . . . . .	163, 170	Drepanophorus, . . . . .	170
Digestion, . . . . .	25, 26, 737	Dromæognathous, . . . . .	629
„ comparative physi-		Dromæus, . . . . .	628
„ ology of, . . . . .	743	Dromia, . . . . .	273
„ intracellular in		Duckmole, . . . . .	684
„ Protozoa, . . . . .	86	Ductus botalli, . . . . .	573
Digitigrade, . . . . .	718	„ endolymphaticus, . . . . .	447
Dimorphism of sexes, . . . . .	49	Dugong, . . . . .	693, 694
Dinoflagellata, . . . . .	102	Duodenum, . . . . .	651
Dinophilus, . . . . .	206	Duplicidentata, . . . . .	637
Dinornis, . . . . .	628	Dura mater, . . . . .	442
Dinosauria, . . . . .	591		
Dinotherium, . . . . .	707	EAR of Arenicola, . . . . .	196
Diodon, . . . . .	521	„ of crayfish . . . . .	255
Diotocardia, . . . . .	373	„ of Myxine, . . . . .	471
Diphycercal, . . . . .	512	„ of Vertebrates, . . . . .	447
Diphyes, . . . . .	151	Earthworm, . . . . .	182-194
Diphyodont dentition, . . . . .	664	Earwigs, . . . . .	300
Diploblastic, . . . . .	113	Ecardines, . . . . .	222
Diplopoda = Millipedes, . . . . .	287	Ecaudata, . . . . .	556
Diplostrophoblast, . . . . .	672	Ecdysis or moulting of Ar-	
Diplozoon, . . . . .	162	thropods, . . . . .	249



	PAGE		PAGE
Echidna, . . . . .	681	Ephyra, . . . . .	143
Echinococcus, . . . . .	168	Epiblast, . . . . .	38, 67
Echinoderma, . . . . .	10, 223-246	Epibolé, . . . . .	66
,, contrast between		Epicrium, . . . . .	557
the classes of, . . . . .	245	Epidermis of Vertebrates, . . . . .	429
Echinoidea, . . . . .	231-235	Epididymis of rabbit . . . . .	656
Echinorhynchus, . . . . .	174, 180	,, of skate, . . . . .	497
Echinus, . . . . .	231	Epimeron (crayfish), . . . . .	252
Echiuridæ, . . . . .	181, 205	Epiphragm of snail, . . . . .	340
Ectoderm, . . . . .	38, 67	Epiphyses, . . . . .	634
Ectoplasm, . . . . .	106	Epiphysis = Pineal body, . . . . .	440
Ectoprocta, . . . . .	220	Epipodite of crayfish, . . . . .	258
Edentata, . . . . .	691	Epipubic bones, . . . . .	686
Edriophthalmata, . . . . .	270	Epistoma (crayfish), . . . . .	252
Egg-case of skate, . . . . .	489	Epithelial tissue, . . . . .	38
,, cell, . . . . .	55	Equidæ, . . . . .	703
Eggs of Birds, . . . . .	619	Equus, . . . . .	703
Elasipoda, . . . . .	239	Erinaceus, . . . . .	723
Elasmobranchii, . . . . .	515	Eruciform larva, . . . . .	315
Electric organ of skate, . . . . .	483	Estheria, . . . . .	273
,, organs of Teleostei, . . . . .	483	Ethiopian region, . . . . .	767
Eledone, . . . . .	385	Eucyrtidium, . . . . .	100
Elephant's tooth shells, . . . . .	377	Euglena, . . . . .	102
Elephas, . . . . .	706	Eulamellibranchia, . . . . .	379
Elimination, . . . . .	773	Eupagurus, . . . . .	273
Elpidia, . . . . .	239	Euphausia, . . . . .	272
Elytra, . . . . .	300	Euplectella, . . . . .	121
Embolé, . . . . .	66	Euryalida, . . . . .	231
Embryology, . . . . .	55	Eurypharynx, . . . . .	522
,, physiological, . . . . .	67	Eurypterina, . . . . .	334
Emu, . . . . .	628	Eurypterus, . . . . .	334
Encystation, . . . . .	89	Euscorpio, . . . . .	325
End-plate, . . . . .	737	Euspongia, . . . . .	121
Endoderm, . . . . .	38, 67	Eustachian tube, . . . . .	448
Endolymph, . . . . .	448	Eustrongylus, . . . . .	179
Endoplasm, . . . . .	106	Eutheria, . . . . .	691
Endopodite (crayfish), . . . . .	250	Euthyneura, . . . . .	373
Endoprocta, . . . . .	220	"Evolution," . . . . .	49
Endostyle of Tunicates, . . . . .	400	Evolution, evidences of, . . . . .	81
Enoplidæ, . . . . .	177	,, factors in, . . . . .	770
Enterocœle, . . . . .	217	,, of sex, . . . . .	52, 53
Enteron = gut, . . . . .	454	,, summary of theories	
Enteropneusta, . . . . .	387-395	of . . . . .	775
Entomostraca, . . . . .	264	Excretion in Animals, . . . . .	28, 29
Entoprocta, . . . . .	220	Excretory system of—	
Entosternite, . . . . .	324	,, Amphioxus, . . . . .	419
Eolis, . . . . .	374	,, Anodonta, . . . . .	353
Epanorthidæ, . . . . .	689	,, Arenicola, . . . . .	199
Epeira, . . . . .	330	,, Balanoglossus, . . . . .	391
Ephemeridæ, . . . . .	300	,, bee, . . . . .	299



	PAGE		PAGE
Excretory system of—		Filaria, . . . . .	178
„ cockroach, . . . . .	293	Filibranchia, . . . . .	379
„ crayfish, . . . . .	259	Fins, . . . . .	511
„ Crocodilia, . . . . .	586	Firmisternia, . . . . .	556
„ Crustacea, . . . . .	276	Fishes, abyssal, . . . . .	511
„ earthworm, . . . . .	188	„ and Amphibians com-	
„ frog, . . . . .	547	„ pared, . . . . .	531
„ haddock, . . . . .	507	„ colour of, . . . . .	508
„ Helix, . . . . .	344	„ commensalism in, . . . . .	511
„ Hirudo, . . . . .	213	„ contrasts between, . . . . .	528
„ Insects, . . . . .	309	„ fins of, . . . . .	511
„ Lizards, . . . . .	574	„ flat, . . . . .	514
„ Myxine, . . . . .	473	„ food of, . . . . .	509
„ Peripatus, . . . . .	283	„ general characters of, . . . . .	481
„ Petromyzon, . . . . .	476	„ hermaphrodite, . . . . .	509
„ pigeon, . . . . .	612	„ orders of, . . . . .	515, 528
„ rabbit, . . . . .	655	„ parental care among, . . . . .	510
„ scorpion, . . . . .	324	„ relationships of, . . . . .	527
„ sea-urchin, . . . . .	235	„ reproduction of, . . . . .	509
„ Sepia, . . . . .	361	„ senses of, . . . . .	509
„ skate, . . . . .	496	„ viviparous, . . . . .	510
„ starfish, . . . . .	229	Fission, . . . . .	51
„ Tunicates, . . . . .	402	Fissipedia, . . . . .	717
„ Vertebrates, . . . . .	461	Flagella, . . . . .	102
Exopodite (crayfish), . . . . .	250	Flagellata, . . . . .	102
Exoskeleton of Vertebrates, . . . . .	429	Flagellum of snail, . . . . .	345
Extinct Reptiles, . . . . .	590	Fleas, . . . . .	320
Extinction of Animals, . . . . .	77	Flies, . . . . .	320
Eyes of Insects, . . . . .	304	Flight of Birds, . . . . .	614
„ of pigeon, . . . . .	606	Floridine in Sponges, . . . . .	118
„ of Tunicata, . . . . .	448	Floscularia, . . . . .	218
„ of Vertebrata, . . . . .	448	Flounder, . . . . .	514
„ „ develop-		Flustra, . . . . .	221
„ ment of, . . . . .	450	Flying Foxes, . . . . .	726
FACIAL NERVE, . . . . .	444	„ Mammals, . . . . .	677
Fæces, . . . . .	26	„ Phalangers, . . . . .	689
Fallopian tube, . . . . .	658	Fœtal membranes of Birds, . . . . .	625
Fangs of Ophidia, . . . . .	579	„ „ of Mammals, . . . . .	668
Fasciola, . . . . .	158	„ „ of Reptiles, . . . . .	589
Feather-stars, . . . . .	239	Follicle cells, . . . . .	467
Feathers, development of, . . . . .	598	Food vacuoles, . . . . .	87
„ of pigeon, . . . . .	597	Foot of Anodonta, . . . . .	349
Felidæ, . . . . .	718	„ of Cephalopoda, . . . . .	376
Felis, . . . . .	719	„ of Gasteropoda, . . . . .	375
Femur, . . . . .	438	„ of Molluscs, . . . . .	364
Ferments, . . . . .	25, 31, 744	„ of Scaphopoda, . . . . .	377
Fertilisation, . . . . .	53, 59-62	Foramen of Munro, . . . . .	647
Fibula, . . . . .	438	„ of Panizzæ, . . . . .	586
Fierasfer, . . . . .	237	„ triosseum, . . . . .	599
		Foraminifera, . . . . .	100



	PAGE		PAGE
Fore-brain = Prosencephalon,	439	Geodia,	117
Fore-gut = Stomodæum,	451	Geographical distribution,	757
Fornix,	636	Geological record,	73
Fossils,	74, 75	Geophilus,	287
Fox,	719	Gephyrea,	218
Fresh-water fauna,	760	Germ cells,	50
,, mussel,	347	,, plasm,	71
Fritillaria,	409	Germinal vesicle,	58
Frog,	532	Geryonia,	128, 151
Fuligo,	98	Gharials = Gavials,	587
Functions, change of,	35	Gibbon,	730
,, of Animals,	22	Gill-clefts,	452
,, secondary, of organs,	36	Gills. <i>See</i> Respiratory system.	
GAD-FLY,	320	Giraffe,	701
Gadus,	501	Gizzard of cockroach,	291
Galago,	727	,, of crayfish,	257
Galathea,	273	,, of earthworm,	186, 192
Galea,	300	,, of pigeon,	607
Galeodes,	326	Glass-rope sponge,	121
Galeopithecus,	723	Globe fishes,	521
Gall-bladder,	651	Globigerina,	99
Gall-fly,	320	Glochidium of Anodonta,	355
Galls on Plants,	330	Glossopharyngeal nerve,	444
Gamasus,	330	Glossophora,	369
Gammarus,	271	Glycogen,	27
Ganglion,	41	Glyptodontidæ,	693
Ganoid scales,	513	Gnathobdellidæ,	216
Ganoidei,	518	Gnathostomata,	16
Garden spider,	330	Gnats,	320
Gasteropoda,	372-377	Gonads = Reproductive organs,	38
,, classification of,	373	Gonapophyses of cockroach,	290
,, food of,	375	Goniaster,	230
,, life history of,	376	Gonophores,	150
,, parasitic,	376	Gordiacea,	174, 180
,, torsion of,	374	Gordiidae,	174, 180
Gastræa theory,	68	Gorgonia,	151
Gastric juice,	26	Gorgonocephalus,	231
,, mill of crayfish,	257	Gorilla,	730
Gastroliths of crayfish,	257	Graafian follicle,	466
Gastrula,	64-66	Graafilla,	157
Gavials,	587	Grampus,	712
Gazella,	701	Grantia,	121
Gecarcinus,	273	Graptolites,	152
Geckones,	576	Grass snake,	582
Gemmation = Budding,	51	Green gland of crayfish,	259
Gemmules in pangensis,	70	Gregarina,	86
Genealogical tree,	15	Grey matter of brain,	443
Genetta,	719	Gromia,	99
Geodesmus,	158	Guinea-pig,	714
		,, -worm,	178



	PAGE		PAGE
Gunda, . . . . .	158	Hemiptera, . . . . .	300
Gymnoblastic, . . . . .	150	Hepatopancreas, . . . . .	257
Gymnomyxa, . . . . .	97	Heredity, . . . . .	70
Gymnophiona, . . . . .	557	Hermaphrodite duct of snail, . . . . .	346
Gymnosomata, . . . . .	374	Hermaphroditism, . . . . .	53
Gyrodactylus, . . . . .	163	,, of Cestodes, . . . . .	167
		,, of Chætognotha, . . . . .	217
HADDOCK, . . . . .	500-508	,, of Cirripedia, . . . . .	267
Hæmadipsa, . . . . .	216	,, of Crustacea, . . . . .	267
Hæmatin, . . . . .	751	,, of earthworm, . . . . .	188
Hæmerythrin, . . . . .	752	,, of Fishes, . . . . .	509
Hæmocœle, . . . . .	257	,, of leech, . . . . .	214
Hæmocyanin, . . . . .	748, 752	,, of Myxine, . . . . .	473
Hæmoglobin of blood, . . . . .	28, 751	,, of tadpole, . . . . .	555
Hæmolymp, . . . . .	748	,, of Trematoda, . . . . .	159
Hæmopis, . . . . .	216	,, of Tunicata, . . . . .	403
Hag, . . . . .	469	,, of Turbellaria, . . . . .	156
Hair, . . . . .	641, 659	,, of Vertebrates, . . . . .	466
Halichœrus, . . . . .	722	Herpestes, . . . . .	719
Halichondria, . . . . .	121	Hesperornis, . . . . .	628
Halicore, . . . . .	693	Heterocercal, . . . . .	512
Halicryptus, . . . . .	219	Heterocœla, . . . . .	121
Haliotis, . . . . .	373	Heterodera, . . . . .	179
Halisarca, . . . . .	122	Heterodont dentition, . . . . .	662
Halitherium, . . . . .	694	Heteropods, . . . . .	373
Halobates, . . . . .	318, 764	Heteronereis, . . . . .	204
Hapale, . . . . .	729	Hexacoralla, . . . . .	149
Hapalidæ, . . . . .	729	Hexactinellida, . . . . .	121
Harderian gland, . . . . .	451	Hind-gut = Proctodæum, . . . . .	452
Hare, . . . . .	714	Hippocampus, . . . . .	521
Harelip, . . . . .	482, 638	,, of brain, . . . . .	647
Harvest bugs, . . . . .	326	Hippolyte, . . . . .	273
,, men, . . . . .	326	Hippopotamus, . . . . .	696
,, mites, . . . . .	331	Hippotherium, . . . . .	704
Hastigerina, . . . . .	100	Hippurites, . . . . .	379
Hatteria, . . . . .	507	Hirudinea, . . . . .	208-216
Heart of Vertebrates, . . . . .	457	Hirudo, . . . . .	208-215
Hectocotylus of cuttlefish, . . . . .	363	Histology, . . . . .	42
Hedgehog, dentition of, . . . . .	723	Histriodrilus, . . . . .	206
,, development of, . . . . .	672	Hoatzin = Opisthocomus, . . . . .	627
,, placenta of, . . . . .	723	Holoblastic segmentation, . . . . .	64
Heliopora, . . . . .	149	Holocephali, . . . . .	517
Heliozoa, . . . . .	99	Holophytic, . . . . .	94
Helix, . . . . .	339-347	Holopneustic, . . . . .	307
,, shell of, . . . . .	340	Holopus, . . . . .	241
Heloderma, . . . . .	576	Holothuria, . . . . .	238
Hemiaspis, . . . . .	334	Holothuroidea, . . . . .	235-239
Hemiaster, . . . . .	235	Holotricha, . . . . .	90
Hemichorda, . . . . .	387-395	Homaropepsin, . . . . .	746
Hemimetabolic Insects, . . . . .	314	Homarus, . . . . .	273



	PAGE		PAGE
Homo, . . . . .	734-736	Hyracotherium, . . . . .	704
Homocercal, . . . . .	512	Hyrax, . . . . .	705
Homocoela, . . . . .	121	Hystricomorpha, . . . . .	714
Homodont dentition, . . . . .	662	Hystrix, . . . . .	714
Homology of organs, . . . . .	35		
Homoplastic, . . . . .	35	IANTHINA, . . . . .	373
Honeycomb bag, . . . . .	700	Ichneumon, . . . . .	719
Hoplonemertea, . . . . .	174	Ichthyodorulites, . . . . .	516
Horns, . . . . .	700	Ichthyomyzon, . . . . .	478
Horse, . . . . .	703	Ichthyophis, . . . . .	557
Huanaco, . . . . .	698	Ichthyopsida, . . . . .	531
Humerus, . . . . .	438	,, Sauropsida, and	
Hyæna, . . . . .	719	Mammalia contrasted, . . . . .	561
Hyænodon, . . . . .	722	Ichthyopterygium of Fishes, . . . . .	572
Hyalea, . . . . .	373	Ichthyornis, . . . . .	628
Hyalonema, . . . . .	121	Ichthyosauria, . . . . .	591
Hydatina, . . . . .	219	Idotea, . . . . .	271
Hydra, . . . . .	40, 130	Iguanidæ, . . . . .	576
,, budding of, . . . . .	50	Iguanodon, . . . . .	591
,, development of, . . . . .	134	Ilium, . . . . .	438
,, minute structure of, . . . . .	132	Incus of ear, . . . . .	448
,, physiology of, . . . . .	20	Indirect development, . . . . .	224
,, reproduction of, . . . . .	50, 134	,, division, . . . . .	45
Hydractinia, . . . . .	128	Indris, . . . . .	727
Hydra-tuba of Aurelia, . . . . .	142	Inflammation, . . . . .	753
Hydrochærus, . . . . .	714	Infundibulum, . . . . .	440
Hydrocorallinæ, . . . . .	150	Infusoria, . . . . .	84
Hydroid colonies, . . . . .	136	,, ciliary movement in, . . . . .	102
Hydro-lymph, . . . . .	747	Ink-bag of Cephalopods, . . . . .	360
Hydromedusæ, . . . . .	125-136, 153	Innominate bone, . . . . .	646
Hydrophis, . . . . .	582	Insecta, . . . . .	288-321
Hydrophora, . . . . .	150	,, classification of, . . . . .	300, 320
Hydropotes, . . . . .	700	Insectivora, . . . . .	722
Hydrozoa, . . . . .	125, 153	Insects and flowers, . . . . .	317
Hydrozoon and Scyphozoon		,, injurious, . . . . .	318
contrasted, . . . . .	144	,, pedigree of, . . . . .	319
Hylobates, . . . . .	730	Integration of individual, . . . . .	34
Hymenaster, . . . . .	230	Intracellular digestion, . . . . .	25, 743
Hymenocaris, . . . . .	270	Invagination, . . . . .	66
Hymenoptera, . . . . .	300	Invertebrata, classes of, . . . . .	8-12
Hyoid arch of Vertebrates, . . . . .	431	,, and Vertebrata, . . . . .	8
Hyo-mandibular arch, . . . . .	432	Iris, . . . . .	449
Hyostylic, . . . . .	535	Ischium, . . . . .	438
Hypapophysis, . . . . .	640	Isis, . . . . .	149
Hypoblast, . . . . .	38	Isolation, . . . . .	774
Hypodermis = Epidermis, . . . . .	249	Isopleura, . . . . .	369
Hypophysis, . . . . .	440	Isopoda, . . . . .	271
Hypostome, . . . . .	131	Isotrypsin, . . . . .	745
Hypural bone, . . . . .	501	Iter, . . . . .	438
Hyracoidea, . . . . .	705	Ixodes, . . . . .	331



	PAGE		PAGE
JACKAL, . . . . .	719	Larva of Ascidian, . . . . .	410
Jacobson's organ, . . . . .	650	,, of Aurelia, . . . . .	148
Jaguar, . . . . .	719	,, of Chætopods, . . . . .	202
Jellyfish, . . . . .	138	,, of Crustaceans, . . . . .	264
Jerboa, . . . . .	714	,, of Holothuria, . . . . .	243
Jugal, . . . . .	434	,, of Insects, . . . . .	315
Julus, . . . . .	287	,, of lamprey, . . . . .	475
KANGAROO, . . . . .	690	,, of Molluscs, . . . . .	368
Karyokinesis, . . . . .	45	,, of Nemerteans, . . . . .	173, 180
Katabolism, . . . . .	31	,, of Ophiuroids, . . . . .	244
Keber's organ, . . . . .	352	,, of Polygordius, . . . . .	207
Keratin, . . . . .	750	,, of sea-urchin, . . . . .	235
Kidney, functions of, . . . . .	28	,, of starfish, . . . . .	230
,, of Vertebrates, . . . . .	463	Larvacea, . . . . .	409
King-crab, . . . . .	332	Larynx, . . . . .	655
Kiwi, . . . . .	628	Lateral line system, . . . . .	505, 525
Kolga, . . . . .	239	Laurer-Stieda canal, . . . . .	161
Kowalevskia, . . . . .	409	Layers of Cœlomata and Hy-	
LABIAL cartilages of skull, . . . . .	485	,, dra contrasted, . . . . .	134
,, palp of cockroach, . . . . .	290	,, the germinal, . . . . .	38
,, ,, of Insects, . . . . .	301	Leech, . . . . .	208
Labium of Insects, . . . . .	301	Lemming, . . . . .	714
Labrum of Insects, . . . . .	290	Lemur, . . . . .	727
Labyrinth of ear, . . . . .	447	Lemuridæ, . . . . .	727
Labyrinthodontia, . . . . .	557	Lemuroidea, . . . . .	727
Labyrinthulidea, . . . . .	97	Lens of eye, . . . . .	449
Lacerta, . . . . .	569	Leopard, . . . . .	719
Lacertæ, . . . . .	576	Lepas, . . . . .	264, 267
Lacertilia, . . . . .	568	Lepidoptera, . . . . .	300
Lace-winged flies, . . . . .	320	Lepidosiren, . . . . .	527
Lachrymal gland, . . . . .	451	Lepidosteus, . . . . .	518
Lacinia, . . . . .	300	Lepisma, . . . . .	300
,, of cockroach, . . . . .	290	Leptocardii = Cephalochorda, . . . . .	411
Lacteals, . . . . .	27	Leptodera, . . . . .	177
Lactic acid, . . . . .	25	Leptodora, . . . . .	266
Lagena = Cochlea, . . . . .	447	Leptoplana, . . . . .	156
Lagomys, . . . . .	637, 714	Leptostraca, . . . . .	264
Lambdotherium, . . . . .	705	Lepus, . . . . .	637, 715
Lamellibranchiata, . . . . .	378-381	Lernæa, . . . . .	267
Lamprey, . . . . .	473	Leucocytes of blood, . . . . .	457
Lamp shells, . . . . .	221	Leucon type of sponge, . . . . .	115
Lancelet, . . . . .	411	Leucosolenia, . . . . .	121
Langia, . . . . .	170	Lice, . . . . .	300
Language, . . . . .	618	Life history of Amœba, . . . . .	86
Lanice, . . . . .	204, 205	,, of Anodonta, . . . . .	354
Larva of Amphibians, . . . . .	551	,, of Aurelia, . . . . .	141
,, of Anodonta, . . . . .	355	,, of Cestodes, . . . . .	168
,, of Antedon, . . . . .	243	,, of Distomum, . . . . .	161
		,, of Fishes, . . . . .	510
		,, of frog, . . . . .	551



	PAGE		PAGE
Life history of Gregarina, . . . . .	87	Loligo, . . . . .	385
"    of Insects, . . . . .	313	Lophiodontidæ, . . . . .	705
"    of Monocystis, . . . . .	89	Lophobdella, . . . . .	216
"    of Nematodes, . . . . .	176	Lophobranchii, . . . . .	521
"    of Paramœcium, . . . . .	91	Lophogaster, . . . . .	272
"    of Spongilla, . . . . .	118	Lophophore, . . . . .	221
"    of Tænia, . . . . .	165	Lophopus, . . . . .	221
"    of Trichina, . . . . .	177	Loxosoma, . . . . .	221
"    of Tunicates, . . . . .	404	Lucernaria, . . . . .	144, 151
"    of Vorticella, . . . . .	94	Luidia, . . . . .	230
"    of Volvox, . . . . .	94	Lumbricus, . . . . .	182-194
Ligula, . . . . .	290	Lung-books of scorpion, . . . . .	325
Lima, . . . . .	379	Lungs, . . . . .	453
Limax, . . . . .	373	"    and air-bladder, . . . . .	453
Limbs and girdles of—		"    function of, . . . . .	28
"    "    Chelonia, . . . . .	564	Lutra, . . . . .	720
"    "    Crocodilia, . . . . .	584	Lycaon, . . . . .	719
"    "    frog, . . . . .	535	Lycosa, . . . . .	330
"    "    haddock, . . . . .	504	Lymnæus = Limnæus, . . . . .	375
"    "    lizard, . . . . .	572	Lymph, . . . . .	27, 747
"    "    pigeon, . . . . .	604	"    hearts, . . . . .	545
"    "    rabbit, . . . . .	644	Lymphatic system of frog, . . . . .	545
"    "    skate, . . . . .	487	"    "    of rabbit, . . . . .	654
"    "    Theories as to origin of, . . . . .	437	"    "    of Vertebrates, . . . . .	460
Limnæus, . . . . .	161, 347, 373	MACACUS, . . . . .	730
"    movement of, . . . . .	375	Machairodus, . . . . .	719
Limnocodium, . . . . .	136, 154	Macrauchenia, . . . . .	705
Limnoria, . . . . .	271	Macrobdella, . . . . .	216
Limpet, . . . . .	373	Macromere, . . . . .	420
Limulus, . . . . .	332	Macronucleus, . . . . .	108
Lineus, . . . . .	170	Macropodidæ, . . . . .	690
Linguatulida, . . . . .	331	Macropus, . . . . .	690
Lingula, . . . . .	222	Macrorhinus, . . . . .	722
Lion, . . . . .	719	Macroscelides, . . . . .	723
Lipocephala, . . . . .	369	Macrura, . . . . .	273
Lipochrome pigments, . . . . .	753	Madreporaria, . . . . .	149
Lithobius, . . . . .	287	Madreporic plate of brittle-star, . . . . .	230
Lithodomus, . . . . .	379	"    "    of sea-urchin, . . . . .	234
Littoral life, . . . . .	579	"    "    of starfish, . . . . .	228
Littorina, . . . . .	373	Magosphæra, . . . . .	98
Liver fluke, . . . . .	158	Malacobdella, . . . . .	174
"    functions of, . . . . .	72	Malacostraca, . . . . .	270
"    of Vertebrates, . . . . .	454	Malapterurus, electric organ of, . . . . .	483
Lizards, . . . . .	569	Malar or jugal, . . . . .	434
Llama, . . . . .	698	Malleus of ear, . . . . .	448
Lobosa, . . . . .	85, 97	Malpighian body of kidney tubule, . . . . .	463
Lobster, . . . . .	273		
Lobworm, . . . . .	194-200		
Locust, . . . . .	321		



	PAGE		PAGE
Malpighian tubules of cockroach,	293	Megascolides,	203
Mammalia, . . . . .	632	Megatherium, . . . . .	680, 692
,, development of, . . . . .	665	Meibomian gland, . . . . .	451
,, general characters . . . . .	634	Meles, . . . . .	720
,, ,, classifica- . . . . .	634	Melicerta, . . . . .	218
,, ,, tion of, . . . . .	634	Mellivora, . . . . .	720
,, ,, life of, . . . . .	677	Membrane bones, . . . . .	432
,, ,, survey of, . . . . .	632	Membranipora, . . . . .	221
,, history of, . . . . .	679	Menognatha, . . . . .	300
Mammary glands, . . . . .	661	Menorhyncha, . . . . .	300
Mammoth, . . . . .	707	Mento-meckelian, . . . . .	535
,, cave, . . . . .	761	Mentum of cockroach, . . . . .	290
Manatee (Manatus), . . . . .	693	,, of Insects, . . . . .	300
,, vertebræ of, . . . . .	694	Mephitis, . . . . .	720
Mandible of crayfish, . . . . .	251	Mermaid's purse, . . . . .	498
Mandibular arch of Vertebrates, . . . . .	431	Mermis, . . . . .	177
Mandrill, . . . . .	730	Meroblastic segmentation, . . . . .	64
Manidæ, . . . . .	693	Mesencephalon, . . . . .	442
Manis, . . . . .	693	Mesenchyme cells, . . . . .	39, 66
,, vertebræ of, . . . . .	635	Mesenteric filaments, . . . . .	147
Mantle of Molluscs, . . . . .	365	Mesenteries of sea-anemone, . . . . .	146
Manubrium of sternum, . . . . .	661	Mesenteron, . . . . .	455
,, of swimming-bell, . . . . .	136	Mesentery, . . . . .	651
Many-plies, . . . . .	700	Mesoderm (or mesoblast), . . . . .	38, 67
Marmosets, . . . . .	729	,, segments, . . . . .	435
Marmot, . . . . .	714	Mesogloea of Cœlentera, . . . . .	126
Marsipobranchii ( <i>see</i> Cyclo- . . . . .	469	,, of Sponges, . . . . .	114
stomata), . . . . .	469	Mesonephros, . . . . .	463
Marsupial bones, . . . . .	686	,, in the different . . . . .	
Marsupials, . . . . .	685	Vertebrate groups, . . . . .	465
,, families of, . . . . .	688	Mesopterygium, . . . . .	487
Marten, . . . . .	720	Mesosoma (of scorpion), . . . . .	323
Mastodon, . . . . .	707	Mesozoa, . . . . .	123
Mastoid process, . . . . .	663	Metabola, . . . . .	304
Maxillæ of cockroach, . . . . .	290	Metabolism, . . . . .	19
,, of crayfish, . . . . .	251	,, products of, . . . . .	749
,, of Insects, . . . . .	301	Metacarpals, . . . . .	438
,, of Myriopods, . . . . .	288	Metagenesis, or alternation of . . . . .	
Maxillipedes of crayfish, . . . . .	251	generations, . . . . .	54
May-flies, . . . . .	300	Metagnatha, . . . . .	300
Meckel's cartilage, . . . . .	432	Metakinesis, . . . . .	46
Medulla, . . . . .	442	Metamere, . . . . .	501
Medullary canal, . . . . .	443	Metamorphosis of— . . . . .	
,, groove, . . . . .	443	,, Anodonta, . . . . .	355
Medusæ, . . . . .	143	,, Crustacea, . . . . .	278
Medusoids, . . . . .	136	,, Echinoderma, . . . . .	243
Megachiroptera, . . . . .	726	,, frog, . . . . .	553
Megalobatrachus, . . . . .	556	,, Insects, . . . . .	313-317
Megalopa, . . . . .	278	,, lamprey, . . . . .	477
		,, Tunicata, . . . . .	404



	PAGE		PAGE
Metanephros, . . . . .	463	Monomeniscous eyes, . . . . .	304
,, in the different		Monostomum, . . . . .	163
Vertebrate groups, . . . . .	465	Monotocardia, . . . . .	313
Metapleural fold, . . . . .	323	Monotremata, . . . . .	681
Metapterygium, . . . . .	487	Monoxenia, . . . . .	151
Metasoma (scorpion), . . . . .	323	Moose, . . . . .	700
Metatarsals, . . . . .	438	Morphology, . . . . .	31
Metatheria, . . . . .	685	Morse, . . . . .	721
Metazoa, . . . . .	13	Morula, . . . . .	64
,, and Protozoa, . . . . .	111	Moschus, . . . . .	699
Metencephalon, . . . . .	442	Mother of pearl, . . . . .	367
Microchiroptera, . . . . .	726	Moths, . . . . .	320
Microhydra, . . . . .	136, 154	Moulting of cuticle of crayfish, . . . . .	249
Micromere, . . . . .	420	Mouth of Lopadorhynchus, . . . . .	452
Micronucleus, . . . . .	208	,, origin of Vertebrate, . . . . .	452
Micropyle, . . . . .	312	Mucous canals of skate, . . . . .	482
Microstoma, . . . . .	157	,, glands of Myxine, . . . . .	470
Microzooids, . . . . .	94	,, ,, of snail, . . . . .	340
Midas, . . . . .	729	Mud Fishes, . . . . .	522
Midge, . . . . .	320	,, line, . . . . .	764
Mid-gut = Mesenteron, . . . . .	455	Müllerian duct, . . . . .	466
Migration of Birds, . . . . .	621	,, ,, in different Ver-	
Milk, . . . . .	661	tebrate groups, . . . . .	465
Millepora, . . . . .	151	Multiple conjugation, . . . . .	188
Millipedes, . . . . .	287	Multituberculata, . . . . .	479
Milt, . . . . .	510	Murex, . . . . .	377
Mites, . . . . .	330	Mus, . . . . .	714
Mitosis, . . . . .	45	Muscle, contraction of, . . . . .	40
Moa, . . . . .	628	,, fibres, . . . . .	24, 40
Modification, . . . . .	771, 772	,, smooth, . . . . .	24, 40
Modiola, . . . . .	379	,, striped, . . . . .	24, 40
Moina, . . . . .	264	Muscular activity in Animals, . . . . .	24, 739
Molars, . . . . .	663	Muscular system of—	
Mole, . . . . .	723	,, Amphioxus, . . . . .	414
,, cricket, . . . . .	321	,, Anodonta, . . . . .	349
Mollusca, . . . . .	337-386	,, Arenicola, . . . . .	195
,, classification of, . . . . .	368	,, Ascidian, . . . . .	398
,, general characters of, . . . . .	337	,, Aurelia, . . . . .	139
,, ,, notes on, . . . . .	363	,, Balanoglossus, . . . . .	388
,, shell of, . . . . .	347	,, Birds, . . . . .	598, 614
Molluscoidea, . . . . .	221	,, cockroach, . . . . .	291
Moloch, . . . . .	576	,, crayfish, . . . . .	252
Monachus, . . . . .	722	,, Crocodilia, . . . . .	585
Monaxonida, . . . . .	113, 121	,, earthworm, . . . . .	184
Monera, . . . . .	105	,, frog, . . . . .	537
Monitor, . . . . .	576	,, haddock, . . . . .	501
Monkeys, . . . . .	728	,, Helix, . . . . .	340
Monobystis, . . . . .	100	,, Hirudo, . . . . .	209
Monodon, . . . . .	712	,, Insects, . . . . .	303
Monogenetic Trematodes, . . . . .	163		



	PAGE		PAGE
Muscular system of—		Nearctic region, . . .	767
,, Myxine, . . .	470	Nebalia, . . .	264
,, Peripatus, . . .	283	Nebendarm, . . .	204
,, Petromyzon, . . .	474	Nectonemidæ, . . .	174
,, pigeon, . . .	598	Necturus, . . .	556
,, rabbit, . . .	639	Nekton, . . .	757
,, Sepia, . . .	357	Nematocysts, . . .	132
,, skate, . . .	483	Nematoda, . . .	174
,, starfish, . . .	226	Nematohelminthes, . . .	174
,, Vertebrates, . . .	430	Nemertea or Nemertines, . . .	169-174
Muscular tissue, . . .	40	Nemertes, . . .	174
Musk deer, . . .	700	Neomenia, . . .	372
,, glands, . . .	701	Neornithes, . . .	593
Mussel, . . .	347	Neotropical region, . . .	767
,, fresh-water, . . .	54	Nephelis, . . .	216
Mustela, . . .	720	Nephridia of crayfish, . . .	259
Mustelidæ, . . .	720	,, of earthworm, . . .	188
Mustelus, . . .	516	,, of leech, . . .	213
Mya, . . .	379	,, of mussel, . . .	353
Mycetes, . . .	729	,, of Peripatus, . . .	283
— Mycetozoa, . . .	98	,, of Vertebrates, . . .	461
Myelencephalon, . . .	442	Nephridioblast, . . .	191
Mygale, . . .	330	Nephrops, . . .	273
Myodes, . . .	714	Nephrostoma of kidney, . . .	463
Myomeres or Myotomes, . . .	501	Nephthys, . . .	210
Myomorpha, . . .	714	Nereis, . . .	182, 187, 203
Myotomes, . . .	501	Nerve cells, . . .	41
Myoxidæ, . . .	714	,, fatigue, . . .	24
Myriopoda, . . .	286-288	,, fibres, . . .	42
Myrmecobius, . . .	688	,, tissue, . . .	41
Myrmecophagidæ, . . .	692	Nerves, cranial, . . .	444
Myrmecophagus, . . .	692	,, origin of, . . .	41
Mysis, . . .	264, 282	,, structure of, . . .	41
Mystacoceti, . . .	712	Nervous activities in Animals, . . .	22, 737
Mytilus, . . .	379	Nervous system of—	
Myxine, . . .	469	,, Amphioxus, . . .	414
,, and Petromyzon con-		,, Anodonta, . . .	349
trasted, . . .	477	,, Arenicola, . . .	196
Myxospongiæ, . . .	122	,, Ascidian, . . .	400
Myzostomata, . . .	207	,, Aurelia, . . .	139
NAIS, . . .	203	,, Balanoglossus, . . .	389
Narwhal, . . .	712	,, bee, . . .	299
Nasal capsule, . . .	431	,, Birds, . . .	594
Nasalis, . . .	730	,, Cephalopoda, . . .	381
Naso-buccal groove, . . .	493	,, Chaetognatha, . . .	216, 222
,, palatine canal, . . .	650	,, cockroach, . . .	291
Natural Selection, . . .	773	,, crayfish, . . .	252
Nauplius, . . .	264	,, Crinoid, . . .	241
Nautilus, . . .	381, 382	,, Distomum, . . .	159



	PAGE		PAGE
Nervous system of—		Nymph, . . . . .	314
„ earthworm, . . . .	184	Nymphon, . . . . .	336
„ frog, . . . . .	538	OBELIA, . . . . .	150
„ haddock, . . . . .	504	Obstetric toad, . . . .	558
„ Helix, . . . . .	340	Ocellatæ, . . . . .	137
„ Hirudo, . . . . .	210	Ocelli, . . . . .	304
„ Holothurian, . . . .	236	Octnemus, . . . . .	410
„ Hydra, . . . . .	132	Octocoralla, . . . . .	149
„ Insects, . . . . .	303	Octopoda, . . . . .	385
„ Limulus, . . . . .	333	Octopus, . . . . .	385
„ Lizards, . . . . .	572	Oculomotor nerve, . . .	441
„ Myxine, . . . . .	471	Odonata, . . . . .	300
„ Nematoda, . . . . .	175	Odontoceti, . . . . .	712
„ Nemerteans, . . . .	169	Odontoid process, . . .	640
„ Peripatus, . . . . .	283	Odontolcæ, . . . . .	628
„ Petromyzon, . . . .	474	Odontophora ( <i>see</i> Glosso-	
„ pigeon, . . . . .	605	phora), . . . . .	369
„ rabbit, . . . . .	647	Odontophore of Cephalopoda,	381
„ scorpion, . . . . .	324	„ of snail, . . . . .	342
„ sea-urchin, . . . . .	233	Œsophagus of Vertebrates,	453
„ Sepia, . . . . .	358	Oikapleura, . . . . .	409
„ skate, . . . . .	488	Olfactory lobes, . . . .	439
„ spider, . . . . .	327	„ nerves, . . . . .	442
„ starfish, . . . . .	226	„ tracts, . . . . .	648
„ Vertebrates, . . . .	436	Oligochæta, . . . . .	182, 202
Nervures, . . . . .	302	Omentum, . . . . .	611
Nests of Birds, . . . .	618	Ommastrephes, . . . .	384
Neurapophysis = Neural spine,	436	Oniscus, . . . . .	271
Neurilemma, . . . . .	41	Ontogeny, . . . . .	69
Neuroblast, . . . . .	199	Ooze, Atlantic, . . . .	99
Neuro-muscular cells, . .	41	Opalina, . . . . .	105
Neuropodium, . . . . .	203	Opalinopsis, . . . . .	105
Neuroptera, . . . . .	320	Operculum of Gasteropods,	340
Newts, . . . . .	556	„ of Limulus, . . . .	332
Nictitating membrane of eye,	451	„ of scorpion, . . . .	324
Noctiluca, . . . . .	102	„ of Teleostei, . . . .	504
Nose, the, . . . . .	446	Ophidia, . . . . .	577
„ of Myxine, . . . . .	452	Ophiocoma, . . . . .	231
Notochord of Balanoglossus,	389	Ophiopholis, . . . . .	230
„ origin of, . . . . .	435	Ophiothrix, . . . . .	231
„ sheath of, . . . . .	435	Ophiuroidea, . . . . .	230
Notommata, . . . . .	218	Ophryodendron, . . . .	102
Notopodium, . . . . .	203	Opisthobranchs, . . . .	373
Notoryctes, . . . . .	688	Opisthocœlotis, . . . .	518
Nucleus, . . . . .	43	Opisthocomus, . . . .	630
„ division of, . . . .	45	Opossums, . . . . .	688
Nucula, . . . . .	379	Optic chiasma, . . . .	488
Nudibranchs, . . . . .	374	„ foramen, . . . . .	642
Nummulites, . . . . .	100	„ lobes, . . . . .	441
Nycticebus, . . . . .	727		



	PAGE		PAGE
Optic nerves, . . . . .	440	Oviparous Vertebrates, . . . . .	467
„ thalami, . . . . .	440	Ovis, . . . . .	701
„ „ structures con-		Ovists, the, . . . . .	59
„ nected with, . . . . .	442	Ovo-testis of snail, . . . . .	344
Orang, . . . . .	732	Ovo-viviparous Vertebrates, . . . . .	468
Orca, . . . . .	712	Ovum, the, . . . . .	55
Orchestia, . . . . .	271	„ maturation of the, . . . . .	58
Organs, . . . . .	34	„ membranes around	
„ origin of, . . . . .	66	„ the Vertebrate, . . . . .	466
„ rudimentary, . . . . .	37	„ theory, . . . . .	67
Oriental region, . . . . .	767	Oxyuris, . . . . .	176
Ornithodelphia, . . . . .	681	Oyster, . . . . .	379
Ornithorhynchus, . . . . .	681		
Orthagoriscus, . . . . .	521	PACHYMATISMA, . . . . .	125
Orthoptera, . . . . .	300	Pagurus, . . . . .	273
Orycteropus, . . . . .	693	Palæarctic region, . . . . .	767
Oscarella, . . . . .	117	Palæmon, . . . . .	273
Osculum, . . . . .	116	Palæo-Crinoidea, . . . . .	241
Osphradium of Molluscs, . . . . .	350	„ Echinoidea, . . . . .	235
Ossicles of ear, . . . . .	448	Palæonemertea, . . . . .	174
Osteoblasts, . . . . .	40	Palæoniscidæ, . . . . .	520
Ostracion, . . . . .	521	Palæontological series, . . . . .	75
Ostracoda, . . . . .	266	Palæontology, . . . . .	73
Ostracodermi, . . . . .	479	Palæospondylus, . . . . .	478
Ostrea, . . . . .	379	Palæostraca, . . . . .	331
Ostriches, . . . . .	627	Palæotherium, . . . . .	705
Otaria, . . . . .	720	Palato-pterygo-quadrate car-	
Otocyon, . . . . .	719	„ tilage, . . . . .	432
Otocysts = Otoliths, . . . . .	409	Palinurus, . . . . .	273
Otoliths of Vertebrates, . . . . .	447	Palisade worm, . . . . .	179
Otter, . . . . .	720	Pallium, . . . . .	337
Ova of—		Palmipes, . . . . .	226
„ Anodonta, . . . . .	353	Palp, . . . . .	301
„ Birds, . . . . .	615	Paludicella, . . . . .	221
„ cockroach, . . . . .	293	Paludina, . . . . .	76
„ crayfish, . . . . .	260	Pancreatic juice, . . . . .	26
„ earthworm, . . . . .	191	Panda, . . . . .	720
„ Echinoderms, . . . . .	242	Pandalus, . . . . .	273
„ Fishes, . . . . .	509	Pangenesiis, . . . . .	70
„ fluke, . . . . .	161	Pangolin, . . . . .	693
„ frog, . . . . .	548	Panmixia, . . . . .	761
„ Hydra, . . . . .	131	Panniculus adiposus, . . . . .	639
„ Monotremes, . . . . .	684	„ carnosus, . . . . .	639
„ Myxine, . . . . .	473	Panorpata, . . . . .	320
„ Peripatus, . . . . .	285	Pantopoda, . . . . .	336
„ Placental Mammals, . . . . .	665	Parachordals of skull, . . . . .	434
„ Reptilia, . . . . .	588	Paraglossæ, . . . . .	301
„ Vertebrates, . . . . .	467	Paramœcium, . . . . .	90, 104
Oviducal gland of skate, . . . . .	498	Parapodia, . . . . .	203, 373
Oviduct of Vertebrates, . . . . .	466	Parasitic fauna, . . . . .	762



	PAGE		PAGE
Parasitism of—		Pedipalpi, . . . . .	325
„ Acarina, . . . . .	330	Pedipalps of scorpion, . . . . .	324
„ Cestoda, . . . . .	168	„ of spider, . . . . .	326
„ Cirripedia, . . . . .	267	Pelagia, . . . . .	151
„ Copepoda, . . . . .	266	Pelagic life, . . . . .	759
„ Crustacea, . . . . .	279	Pelagonemertes, . . . . .	170, 174
„ Cyamidæ, . . . . .	271	Pelagothuria, . . . . .	236
„ Cymothoidæ, . . . . .	271	Pelecypoda ( <i>see</i> Bivalves), . . . . .	378
„ Gasteropods, . . . . .	376	Pelias, . . . . .	581
„ Insects, . . . . .	318	Pelican fish, . . . . .	522
„ Nematoda, . . . . .	178	Pelomyxa, . . . . .	98
„ Nemertea, . . . . .	174	Pelvic girdle, . . . . .	438
„ Pentastomum, . . . . .	331	Penæus, . . . . .	273
„ Trematoda, . . . . .	161	Penella, . . . . .	267
Parasphenoid, . . . . .	534	Penis of Mammals, . . . . .	658
Parenchymula, . . . . .	121	Pennatula, . . . . .	149, 151
Parental care in—		Pentacrinus, . . . . .	239
„ Amphibians, . . . . .	558	Pentastomum, . . . . .	331
„ Asteroids, . . . . .	236	Pepsin, . . . . .	26
„ Birds, . . . . .	618, 619	Peptic digestion, . . . . .	743
„ crayfish, . . . . .	264	Peragale, . . . . .	689
„ crocodiles, . . . . .	587	Perameles, . . . . .	672
„ Fishes, . . . . .	510	Peramelidæ, . . . . .	688
„ Mammals, . . . . .	637	Perch, . . . . .	521
Paroccipital process, . . . . .	642	Perching of Birds, . . . . .	599
Parovarium = Wolffian body in		Perennichordata ( <i>see</i> Larvacea), . . . . .	409
female, . . . . .	465	Peribranchial cavity, . . . . .	399
Parthenogenesis, . . . . .	51, 54	Pericalpa, . . . . .	151
„ in Apus, . . . . .	265	Pericardium, . . . . .	457
„ in Artemia, . . . . .	265	Perigenesis, . . . . .	70
„ in Crustacea, . . . . .	277	Perilymph, . . . . .	448
„ in Insects, . . . . .	310	Perineal glands, . . . . .	658
Patella, . . . . .	373	Peripatus, . . . . .	282-285
Pathetic nerve, . . . . .	444	„ and Annelids, . . . . .	286
Pathology, comparative, . . . . .	753	Peripheral segmentation, . . . . .	64
Paunch, . . . . .	699	Periplaneta, . . . . .	289
Pauropoda, . . . . .	287	Peripthychus, . . . . .	708
Pauropus, . . . . .	287	Perissodactyla, . . . . .	701
Peccaries, . . . . .	697	Peristaltic action, . . . . .	26
Pecora, . . . . .	699	Peritoneum, . . . . .	651
Pecten, . . . . .	379	Perivisceral fluids, . . . . .	747
„ of eye of Birds, . . . . .	607	Periwinkle, . . . . .	373
Pectines of scorpion, . . . . .	324	Perla, . . . . .	321
Pectoral girdle, . . . . .	437	Peromedusæ, . . . . .	151
Pedal ganglion, . . . . .	341, 350, 359	Petalosticha, . . . . .	235
Pedalion, . . . . .	218	Petaurus, . . . . .	689
Pedata, . . . . .	239	Petromyzon, . . . . .	473
Pedicellariæ of sea-urchin, . . . . .	233	„ and Myxine con-	
„ of starfish, . . . . .	225	trasted, . . . . .	477
Pedicellina, . . . . .	221	Phacochærus, . . . . .	697



	PAGE		PAGE
Phacops, . . . . .	335	Pinnotheres, . . . . .	273
Phagocytes, . . . . .	754	Pipa, . . . . .	556
Phagocytosis, . . . . .	755	Pipe-fishes, . . . . .	521
Phalanger, . . . . .	689	Pipistrelle, . . . . .	726
Phalangeridæ, . . . . .	689	Pisces ( <i>see</i> Fishes), . . . . .	5, 480
Phalanges, . . . . .	438	Pisiform, . . . . .	646
Phalangidæ, . . . . .	326	Pithecanthropus, . . . . .	732
Phalangium, . . . . .	326	Pituitary body, . . . . .	440
Phallusia, . . . . .	410	„ „ Hypotheses re-	
Pharyngobranchii, . . . . .	411	garding, . . . . .	440
Pharyngognathi, . . . . .	521	Placenta, Hints of a, before	
Pharynx, . . . . .	452	Mammalia, . . . . .	589
Phascogale, . . . . .	688	„ of Mammals, . . . . .	668
Phascolarctos, . . . . .	689	Placentation, classification of, . . . . .	675
Phascolomyidæ, . . . . .	689	Placoid scales, . . . . .	483
Phascolomys, . . . . .	689	Plakina, . . . . .	125
Phascolosoma, . . . . .	219	Planaria, . . . . .	156
Phenacodus, . . . . .	704	Plankton, . . . . .	757
Phoca, . . . . .	722	Planorbis, . . . . .	373
Phocæna, . . . . .	712	Plantigrade, . . . . .	718
Phocidæ, . . . . .	721	Plants and Animals, . . . . .	20-22
Pholas, . . . . .	379	Planula larva, . . . . .	141
Phoronidea, . . . . .	219	Plasmodium, . . . . .	98
Phoronis, . . . . .	220	Plasticity of organisms, . . . . .	81
Phrynosoma, . . . . .	576	Plastidules, . . . . .	70
Phrynus, . . . . .	325	Plastron, . . . . .	564
Phyllopoda, . . . . .	264	Platanista, . . . . .	712
Phyllopteryx, . . . . .	521	Platydictylus, . . . . .	576
Phyllosoma, . . . . .	273	Platyhelminthes, . . . . .	164
Phylloxera, . . . . .	300	Platyrrhini, . . . . .	729
Phylogeny, . . . . .	69	Plecoptera, . . . . .	321
Physalia, . . . . .	151	Plectognathi, . . . . .	521
Physeter, . . . . .	712	Plesiosaur, . . . . .	590
Physiology, . . . . .	18, 737	Pleuracanthus, . . . . .	506
Physoclisti, . . . . .	521	Pleura of crayfish, . . . . .	252
Physostomi, . . . . .	521	Pleural membrane, . . . . .	654
Phytoptus, . . . . .	330	Pleurobranchs of crayfish, . . . . .	259
Phytozoa, . . . . .	125	Pleurodont teeth, . . . . .	572
Pia mater, . . . . .	442	Pleuronectidæ, . . . . .	514
Pica, . . . . .	714	Pliosaurus, . . . . .	590
Pigs, . . . . .	697	Ploughshare bone, . . . . .	601
Pigeon, . . . . .	597	Plumularia, . . . . .	150
Pigeon's milk, . . . . .	607	Pluteus larva, . . . . .	224
Pigments, . . . . .	751	Pneumatic bones, . . . . .	616
Pilema, . . . . .	144	Pneumoderma, . . . . .	374
Pilidium larva, . . . . .	170	Pneumogastric nerve, . . . . .	444
Pineal body, . . . . .	440	Podical plate of cockroach, . . . . .	290
„ in Hatteria, . . . . .	440	Podobranchs of crayfish, . . . . .	259
„ in Iguana, . . . . .	441	Podophthalmata, . . . . .	272
Pinnipedia, . . . . .	720	Podura, . . . . .	300



	PAGE		PAGE
Poison gland of snakes, . . .	591	Proctodæum, . . .	452
Polar globules, . . .	58	Procyon, . . .	720
„ „ in earthworm, . . .	191	Procyonidæ, . . .	720
„ „ in Vertebrates, . . .		Proechidna, . . .	681
Polecat, . . .	720	Proneomenia, . . .	372
Polian vesicle (Holothuria), . .	236	Pronephros, . . .	464
Polychæta, . . . 194, 202, 203-205		„ in the different	
Polycladida, . . .	158	Vertebrate groups, . . .	465
Polyclinum, . . .	410	Prongbuck, . . .	698
Polygordius, . . .	206	Propterygium, . . .	487
Polymastodon, . . .	680	Prosclex, . . .	165
Polymeniscous eyes, . . .	304	Prosencephalon, . . .	439
Polyodon, . . .	518	Prosobranchiata, . . .	373
Polyphemus, . . .	264	Prostate glands, . . .	658
Polyplacophora, . . .	371	Protandrous, . . .	466
Polypodium, . . . 136, 154		Protective colouring of Insects, .	317
Polyprotodontia, . . .	688	Proteleidæ, . . .	719
Polypterus, . . .	518	Proteles, . . .	719
Polyspermy, . . .	62	Proteomyxa, . . .	98
Polystomum, . . .	163	Proterosauria, . . .	568
Polyzoa, . . . 219, 220		Proterospongia, . . .	112
Pond snail, . . .	347	Proteus, . . .	556
Pons Varolii, . . .	648	„ animalcule. <i>See</i> Amœba, .	85
Pontobdella, . . .	216	Protobranchia, . . .	378
Porcellenaster, . . .	230	Protocercal, . . .	512
Porcellio, . . .	271	Protodrilus, . . . 206, 207	
Porcupine, . . .	714	Protoelastin, . . .	86
Porifera, . . .	113	Protogynous, . . .	466
Porpita, . . .	151	Protohippus, . . .	704
Porpoise, . . .	712	Protohydra, . . .	136
Portal vein, . . .	654	Protomyxa, . . .	98
Portuguese man-of-war, . . .	151	Protoplasm, . . . 29, 42, 48	
Portunus, . . .	273	Protopterus, . . .	524
Post-anal gut, . . .	453	Protospongia, . . .	122
„ caval vein, . . .	608	Prototheria, . . .	681
Potamogale, . . . 717, 722		Prototracheata, . . .	281
Præcoces, . . .	620	Protovertebræ = Mesoblastic	
Prairie-dog, . . .	714	segments, . . .	433
Prawn, . . .	273	Protozoa, . . . 84-112	
Precaval veins, . . .	608	„ classification of, . . .	97
Preen gland of pigeon, . . .	596	„ functions in the, . . . 102-104	
Priapulidæ, . . .	218	„ general interest of, . . .	111
Priapulidæ, . . .	218	„ history of the, . . .	110
Primary vesicles of brain, . . .	439	„ immortality of, . . .	111
Primates, . . .	681	„ and Metazoa, . . .	111
Primitive streak, . . .	625	„ reproduction in, . . .	106
Pristis, . . .	516	„ structure of, . . .	105
Proboscidea, . . .	706	„ survey of the, . . .	97
Procavia, . . .	705	Psalterium, . . .	699
Procoelous, . . .	533	Pseudobranchus, . . .	556



	PAGE		PAGE
Pseudogastrula, . . . . .	120	Rangifer, . . . . .	700
Pseudolamellibranchia, . . . . .	378	Rat, . . . . .	714
Pseudonavicellæ, . . . . .	89	Ratitæ, . . . . .	627
Pseudopodia, . . . . .	86	Rattlesnake, . . . . .	582
Pseudopus, . . . . .	576	Ray, . . . . .	482
Pseudoscorpionidæ, . . . . .	325	Razor-shell, . . . . .	379 3
Psolus, . . . . .	239	Recapitulation of ancestral	
Pteranodon, . . . . .	592	history, . . . . .	68, 69
Pteraster, . . . . .	230	Rectal gland, . . . . .	493
Pterichthys, . . . . .	479	Red coral, . . . . .	151
Pterodactyl, . . . . .	592	Redia, . . . . .	161
Pteropods, . . . . .	373	Reducing division, . . . . .	58
Pteropus, . . . . .	726	Reed, . . . . .	700
Pterosauria, . . . . .	591	Reindeer, . . . . .	700
Pterotrachea, . . . . .	373	Relative antiquity of Animals, 77-79	
Pterygota, . . . . .	300	Reproduction, . . . . .	49
Ptyalin, . . . . .	25	,, of Amphibia, . . . . .	558
Ptychodera, . . . . .	388	,, of Aurelia, . . . . .	140
Puff-adder, . . . . .	582	,, of Crustacea, . . . . .	277
Pulmonary sacs of Arachnids, . . . . .	321	,, of Echinoderms, . . . . .	242
,, of scorpion, . . . . .	325	,, of Fishes, . . . . .	509
,, of spider, . . . . .	328	,, of Hydra, . . . . .	134
Pulmonata, . . . . .	373	,, of Insects, . . . . .	310
Puma, . . . . .	719	,, of Mammals, . . . . .	678
Pupa, . . . . .	314	,, modes of, . . . . .	51
Pupil of eye, . . . . .	449	,, of Rotifers, . . . . .	218
Purpura, . . . . .	373	,, of Sponges, . . . . .	118
Pycnogonidæ, . . . . .	336	,, of Tænia, . . . . .	167
Pycnogonum, . . . . .	336	Reproductive system of—	
Pygostyle, . . . . .	601	,, Amphioxus, . . . . .	420
Pyloric cæca of Insects, . . . . .	306	,, Anodonta, . . . . .	353
Pyrosoma, . . . . .	405, 410	,, Arenicola, . . . . .	199
Python, . . . . .	582	,, Ascidian, . . . . .	403
Pythonomorpha, . . . . .	591	,, Aurelia, . . . . .	140
QUADRATE, . . . . .	434	,, Balanoglossus, . . . . .	391
Quadrupana, . . . . .	734	,, bee, . . . . .	299
Quagga, . . . . .	704	,, Chætognatha, . . . . .	217
RABBIT, . . . . .	637	,, cockroach, . . . . .	293
Raccoon, . . . . .	720	,, crayfish, . . . . .	259
Radial symmetry, . . . . .	31	,, Crinoid, . . . . .	241
Radials of a fin, . . . . .	512	,, Crocodilia, . . . . .	586
Radiolaria, . . . . .	100	,, Distomum, . . . . .	159
Radius, . . . . .	438	,, earthworm, . . . . .	188
Radula of cuttlefish, . . . . .	360	,, frog, . . . . .	547
,, of gasteropods, . . . . .	368	,, haddock, . . . . .	507
,, of snail, . . . . .	342	,, Helix, . . . . .	344
Raja. See Skate.		,, Hirudo, . . . . .	214
Rana. See Frog.		,, Holothurian, . . . . .	237
		,, Insects, . . . . .	309, 310
		,, Limulus, . . . . .	334



	PAGE		PAGE
Reproductive system of—		Respiratory system of—	
„ Lizards, . . .	575	„ sea-urchin, . . .	235
„ Myxine, . . .	473	„ Sepia, . . .	361
„ Nematoda, . . .	176	„ skate, . . .	493
„ Nemerteans, . . .	173	„ spider, . . .	328
„ Ophiuroids, . . .	230	„ starfish, . . .	228
„ Peripatus, . . .	284	„ Tracheata, . . .	307
„ Petromyzon, . . .	476	„ Vertebrates, . . .	460
„ pigeon, . . .	613	Retia mirabilia of Cetacea, . . .	709
„ rabbit, . . .	656	„ „ of Sirenia, . . .	693
„ scorpion, . . .	325	Reticulum, . . .	698
„ sea-urchin, . . .	235	Retina, . . .	449
„ Sepia, . . .	362	Reversion, . . .	82
„ skate, . . .	496	Rhabdocœlida, . . .	157
„ spider, . . .	328	Rhabdonema, . . .	177
„ starfish, . . .	229	Rhabdopleura, . . .	394
„ Vertebrates, . . .	466	Rhamphorhynchus, . . .	592
Reptilia, . . .	560	Rhea, . . .	627
„ and Birds, . . .	562	Rhinoceros, . . .	704
„ development of, . . .	588	Rhinoderma, . . .	558
„ extinct, . . .	590	Rhinolophus, . . .	726
„ relationships of, . . .	592	Rhizocrinus, . . .	241
Respiration in Animals, . . .	28	Rhizopoda, . . .	85
Respiratory system of—		Rhizostoma, . . .	151
„ Acarina, . . .	330	Rhomboidal sinus, . . .	605
„ Amphioxus, . . .	415	Rhopalodina, . . .	239
„ Anodonta, . . .	352	Rhopalura, . . .	123
„ Arenicola, . . .	199	Rhynchobdellidæ, . . .	216
„ Ascidian, . . .	399	Rhynchocephalia, . . .	567
„ Balanoglossus, . . .	390	Rhynchoflagellata, . . .	102
„ bee, . . .	299	Rhynchota, . . .	300
„ Cephalopoda, . . .	384	Rhytina, . . .	694
„ cockroach, . . .	292	Ribs of Vertebrates, . . .	436
„ crayfish, . . .	258	Rock-dove, . . .	597
„ Crinoid, . . .	241	Rodentia, . . .	713
„ Crocodilia, . . .	586	Roe-deer, . . .	700
„ Crustacea, . . .	276	Rorqual, . . .	712
„ frog, . . .	546	Rostrum of crayfish, . . .	252
„ haddock, . . .	505	Rotatoria = Rotifers, . . .	217
„ Helix, . . .	344	Rudimentary organs, . . .	37
„ Holothurian, . . .	236	Rudistæ, . . .	381
„ Insects, . . .	307	Rumen, . . .	698
„ Limulus, . . .	334	Ruminants, . . .	699
„ Lizards, . . .	574	Rumination, . . .	700
„ Myxine, . . .	472	SABELLARIA, . . .	205
„ Peripatus, . . .	283	Sable, . . .	720
„ Petromyzon, . . .	476	Saccocirrus, . . .	212
„ pigeon, . . .	612	Sacculina, . . .	269, 270
„ rabbit, . . .	654	Sacculus of ear, . . .	447
„ scorpion, . . .	325		



	PAGE		PAGE
Sacculus of rotundus, . . . . .	650	Scutes, . . . . .	430, 513
Sacrum, . . . . .	604, 640	Scyllium, . . . . .	516
Sagitta, . . . . .	216, 217	Scyphistoma, . . . . .	142
Salamander, . . . . .	556	Scyphomedusæ, . . . . .	145, 151
Salinella, . . . . .	123	Scyphozoa, . . . . .	145, 151
Saliva, . . . . .	25	Sea-anemone, . . . . .	145
Salivary glands of ant-eaters, . . . . .	692	„ butterflies, . . . . .	373
„ „ of cockroach, . . . . .	292	„ cows, . . . . .	693
„ „ of Collocalia, . . . . .	619	„ cucumbers, . . . . .	238
„ „ of Helix, . . . . .	342	„ horse, . . . . .	521
„ „ of Hirudo, . . . . .	218	„ lion, . . . . .	720
„ „ of Insects, . . . . .	306	„ mouse, . . . . .	204
„ „ of Molluscs, . . . . .	746	„ otter, . . . . .	720
„ „ of rabbit, . . . . .	650	„ pen, . . . . .	151
Salmon, . . . . .	510	„ snakes, . . . . .	582
Salpa, . . . . .	406, 410	„ squirts ( <i>vide</i> Tunicata), . . . . .	396
Sapphirina, . . . . .	266	„ urchin, . . . . .	231
Sarcolemma, . . . . .	41	Seals, . . . . .	720
Sarcoptes, . . . . .	330	Sebaceous glands, . . . . .	660
Sarsia, . . . . .	150	Sedentaria, . . . . .	204
Sauropsida, Ichthyopsida, and		Segmental duct of Vertebrates, . . . . .	463
Mammalia, . . . . .	561	„ organs, . . . . .	185
Saururæ, . . . . .	593	„ papillæ, . . . . .	209
Saw-flies, . . . . .	320	Segmentation of Ovum, . . . . .	62
Scales of Birds, . . . . .	598	„ in Amphioxus, . . . . .	420
„ of Fishes, . . . . .	512	„ „ Anodonta, . . . . .	347
„ of Mammals, . . . . .	660	„ „ Ascidian, . . . . .	403
„ of Reptiles, . . . . .	577	„ „ Balanoglossus, . . . . .	391
Scallop, . . . . .	379	„ „ Chætognatha, . . . . .	217
Scalpellum, . . . . .	269	„ „ Crustacea, . . . . .	272
Scaphirhynchus, . . . . .	518	„ „ Dipnoi, . . . . .	523
Scaphopoda, . . . . .	377	„ „ earthworm, . . . . .	191
Scapula, . . . . .	438	„ „ Echinoderms, . . . . .	242
Schizocardium, . . . . .	388	„ „ fowl, . . . . .	623
Schizocœle, . . . . .	170	„ „ frog, . . . . .	550
Schizognathæ, . . . . .	620	„ „ Ganoids, . . . . .	519
Schizonemertea, . . . . .	174	„ „ Gasteropoda, . . . . .	347
Schizopoda, . . . . .	272	„ „ haddock, . . . . .	507
Scincidæ, . . . . .	576	„ „ Hydra, . . . . .	135
Sciuromorpha, . . . . .	714	„ „ Insects, . . . . .	312
Sciurus, . . . . .	714	„ „ Lamprey, . . . . .	476
Sclerotic, . . . . .	449	„ „ Monotremata, . . . . .	684
„ ossicles, . . . . .	606	„ „ placental Mammals, . . . . .	669
Scolex, . . . . .	165	„ „ Reptilia, . . . . .	588
Scolopendra, . . . . .	288	„ „ scorpion, . . . . .	325
Scolopendrella, . . . . .	287	„ „ skate, . . . . .	498
Scorpion, . . . . .	323	„ „ Teleosteans, . . . . .	507
„ flies, . . . . .	320	„ „ Vertebrata, . . . . .	467
Scrotum, . . . . .	656	Seison, . . . . .	218
Scuta, . . . . .	267	Selachii = Elasmobranchs, . . . . .	515



	PAGE		PAGE
Selachoides, . . . . .	516	Sexual selection among Spiders, . . . . .	329
Selection, . . . . .	773	„ reproduction, . . . . .	49
Selenodont, . . . . .	665	„ „ divergent	
Self-fertilisation in Hydra, . . . . .	134	„ modes of . . . . .	53
„ „ Serranus, . . . . .	466	Sharks, . . . . .	516
„ „ tapeworms, . . . . .	167	Shell of—	
„ „ Trematoda, . . . . .	161	„ Anodonta, . . . . .	347
Sella turcica, . . . . .	642	„ Argonauta, . . . . .	383
Semicircular canals of ear, . . . . .	447	„ Cephalopoda, . . . . .	382
Seminal vesicle, . . . . .	657	„ Chiton, . . . . .	371
Semnopithecinae, . . . . .	730	„ Helix, . . . . .	340
Semnopithecus, . . . . .	730	„ Nautilus, . . . . .	382
Sense organs of—		„ Planorbis, . . . . .	384
„ Amphioxus, . . . . .	415	„ Scaphopoda, . . . . .	379
„ Anodonta, . . . . .	350	„ Spirula, . . . . .	383
„ Ascidian, . . . . .	400	Shell gland or sac, . . . . .	367, 386
„ Aurelia, . . . . .	137	Shrews, . . . . .	723
„ crayfish, . . . . .	254	Shrimp, . . . . .	273
„ Crocodilia, . . . . .	585	Sida, . . . . .	266
„ Crustacea, . . . . .	275	Silicispongiae, . . . . .	121
„ frog, . . . . .	540	Simia, . . . . .	730
„ haddock, . . . . .	505	Simiidae, . . . . .	730
„ hag, . . . . .	471	Simplicidentata, . . . . .	715
„ Helix, . . . . .	342	Sinews, . . . . .	21
„ Hirudo, . . . . .	210	Sinupallia, . . . . .	372
„ Holothurian, . . . . .	236	Sinus venosus, . . . . .	454
„ Insects, . . . . .	304	Siphon of Cephalopods, . . . . .	384
„ Lamprey, . . . . .	475	„ of Gasteropods, . . . . .	375
„ Limulus, . . . . .	333	„ of Lamellibranchs, . . . . .	379
„ pigeon, . . . . .	606	Siphonaptera, . . . . .	320
„ rabbit, . . . . .	649	Siphonoglyphes, . . . . .	147
„ scorpion, . . . . .	324	Siphonophoræ, . . . . .	151
„ sea-urchin, . . . . .	234	Siphonops, . . . . .	557
„ Sepia, . . . . .	359	Siphuncle of Nautilus, . . . . .	382
„ skate, . . . . .	492	Sipunculidea, . . . . .	218
„ spider, . . . . .	327	Sipunculus, . . . . .	218
„ starfish, . . . . .	226	Siren, . . . . .	556
„ Vertebrates, . . . . .	446	Sirenia, . . . . .	693
Sepia, . . . . .	355-362	Skate, . . . . .	482-499
Sepiostaire, . . . . .	358	„ development of, . . . . .	498
Seps, . . . . .	576	Skeletal tissues of Animals, . . . . .	749
Serpents, . . . . .	577	Skeleton of—	
Serpula, . . . . .	205	„ Amphioxus, . . . . .	414
Serranus, . . . . .	466	„ Balanoglossus, . . . . .	389
Sertularians, . . . . .	150	„ bat, . . . . .	725
Sesamoid bones, . . . . .	640	„ Birds, . . . . .	599
Setæ, . . . . .	181	„ Chelonia, . . . . .	564
Sex, evolution of, . . . . .	52	„ crayfish, . . . . .	249
Sexual selection, . . . . .	770	„ Crinoids, . . . . .	240
„ „ among Birds, . . . . .	618	„ Crocodilia, . . . . .	583



SKELETON OF—		PAGE	SKULL OF—		PAGE
„	frog, . . .	533	„	Mammals, . . .	635
„	haddock, . . .	501	„	pigeon, . . .	602
„	Hatteria, . . .	567	„	rabbit, . . .	641
„	Holothurian, . . .	239	„	skate, . . .	484
„	Limulus, . . .	332	„	snakes, . . .	579
„	Lizards, . . .	570	Skunk, . . .		720
„	Mammals, . . .	635	Sloth animalcules, . . .		331
„	Myxine, . . .	470	Sloths, . . .		692
„	Petromyzon, . . .	474	„	vertebræ of, . . .	692
„	pigeon, . . .	601	Slow-worm, . . .		576
„	rabbit, . . .	639	Slug, . . .		373
„	sea-urchin, . . .	232	Smynthurus, . . .		300
„	Sepia, . . .	357	Snail ( <i>see</i> Helix), . . .	339–347	
„	skate, . . .	483	Snails, . . .		373
„	Snakes, . . .	578	Snakes, . . .		577
„	starfish, . . .	226	Solaster, . . .	225, 230	
„	Vertebrates, . . .	431	Solen, . . .		379
Skin of—			Solenomya, . . .		379
„	Amphioxus, . . .	412	Solenostoma, . . .		510
„	Anodonta, . . .	348	Solpuga, . . .		326
„	Balanoglossus, . . .	388	Solpugidæ or Solifugæ, . . .		326
„	Birds, . . .	597	Somatic cells, . . .		96
„	cockroach, . . .	291	Somatopleure, . . .		671
„	crayfish, . . .	249	Somites = Segments, . . .	184, 433	
„	Crocodilia, . . .	582	Sorex, . . .		723
„	earthworm, . . .	184	Spadella, . . .		216
„	Fishes, . . .	481	Spatangus, . . .		235
„	frog, . . .	532	Spatularia, . . .		518
„	haddock, . . .	500	Species, . . .		14
„	Helix, . . .	341	Spermathecæ, . . .	184, 346	
„	Insects, . . .	303	Spermatophores, . . .		345
„	Leech, . . .	209	Spermatozoa, . . .		57
„	Lizards, . . .	569	Sphæridia, . . .		237
„	Mammals, . . .	659	Sphærozoum, . . .		100
„	Myxine, . . .	470	Sphærulearia, . . .		177
„	Peripatus, . . .	283	Sphargidæ, . . .		566
„	Petromyzon, . . .	474	Sphenethmoid, . . .		534
„	rabbit, . . .	639	Sphenodon, . . .		567
„	Sepia, . . .	356	Sphenotic, . . .		502
„	skate, . . .	483	Sphincter muscles, . . .		146
„	Tunicate, . . .	397	Spicules (of sponge), . . .		117
„	Vertebrates, . . .	429	Spiders, . . .		326
Skull, . . .		431–434	„	classification of, . . .	330
Skull of—			Spider Monkeys, . . .		730
„	Crocodilia, . . .	583	Spinal cord, . . .		440
„	frog, . . .	534	„	ganglia, . . .	445
„	haddock, . . .	501	„	nerves, . . .	445
„	Hatteria, . . .	567	Spinning glands of Insects, . . .		306
„	Lizard, . . .	570	„	„ of Spiders, . . .	328



	PAGE		PAGE
Spiracles of skate, . . . .	494	Struggle for existence, . . . .	773
Spiracular cartilage, . . . .	494	Struthio, . . . . .	627
Spiral valve, . . . . .	493	Sturgeon, . . . . .	518
Spirula, . . . . .	385	Stylaster, . . . . .	151
Splanchnopleure, . . . . .	671	Stylifer, . . . . .	376
Spleen, . . . . .	460	Suberites, . . . . .	122
,, of frog, . . . . .	546	Submentum, . . . . .	290, 300
,, of pigeon, . . . . .	609	Sub-neural gland of Ascidian, . . . .	401
,, of rabbit, . . . . .	651	Substitution of organs, . . . . .	36
,, of skate, . . . . .	496	Subzonal membrane, . . . . .	671
Splenic, . . . . .	584	Sudorific glands, . . . . .	660
Sponge, development of a, . . . .	119	Suidæ, . . . . .	697
Sponges, . . . . .	113	Suina, . . . . .	696
Spongicola, . . . . .	144	Sun animalcules, . . . . .	99
Spongilla, . . . . .	121	,, fish, . . . . .	521
Sporocyst, . . . . .	161	Suprarenal bodies, . . . . .	463
Sporozoa, . . . . .	97	,, body of pigeon, . . . . .	613
Spring-tails, . . . . .	300	Surangular, . . . . .	584
Squalus, . . . . .	516	Surinam toad, . . . . .	558
Squamosal, . . . . .	434, 642	Sus, . . . . .	696
Squilla, . . . . .	264	Suspensorium, . . . . .	434
Squirrels, . . . . .	714	Swim-bladder, . . . . .	513
Stapes of ear, . . . . .	448	Sycandra, . . . . .	121
Starfish, . . . . .	225-230	Sycon type (of sponge), . . . . .	115
Stegocephali, . . . . .	557	Sycones, . . . . .	121
Stegosaurus, . . . . .	592	Syllids, . . . . .	204
Steller's sea-cow, . . . . .	694	Symbiosis, . . . . .	122
Stephanoceros, . . . . .	218	Symmetry of Animals, . . . . .	33
Sterno-tracheal muscles, . . . .	612	Sympathetic nervous system, . . . .	446
Sternum of Crustacean seg-		Symphyla, . . . . .	287
ment, . . . . .	252	Symplectic, . . . . .	502
,, of pigeon, . . . . .	604	Synangium, . . . . .	542
Stickleback, . . . . .	510	Synapta, . . . . .	236
Stigmata, . . . . .	307	Syncoryne, . . . . .	150
Sting of scorpion, . . . . .	323	Syngamus, . . . . .	179
Stinging animals, . . . . .	125	Syngnathus, . . . . .	521
,, cells, . . . . .	130	Syrinx, . . . . .	612
Stipes, . . . . .	300	Systemodon, . . . . .	704
Stoat, . . . . .	720		
Stomatodæum = Stomodæum, . . . .	451	TADPOLE of frog, . . . . .	552
Stomato-gastric nerves, . . . . .	254	Tænia, . . . . .	165-168
Stomatopoda, . . . . .	272	Tail of Fishes, . . . . .	512
Stomodæum, . . . . .	451	Talitrus, . . . . .	271
Stone canal of starfish, . . . . .	228	Talpa, . . . . .	723
Strepsiptera, . . . . .	302	Tamandua, . . . . .	692
Streptoneural, . . . . .	373	Tanais, . . . . .	271
Stringops, . . . . .	629	Tape-worms, . . . . .	165-168
Strobila, . . . . .	143	Tapir, . . . . .	703
Strongylocentrotus, . . . . .	231	Tarantula, . . . . .	330
Strongylus, . . . . .	177	Tardigrada, . . . . .	331



	PAGE		PAGE
Tarsipes, . . . . .	689	Thoracostraca, . . . . .	264, 272
Tarsius, . . . . .	727	Thornback, . . . . .	482
Tarsus, . . . . .	438	Thread cells=Stinging cells, .	130
Tarso-metatarsus, . . . . .	594	Thread-worms, . . . . .	174
Tasmanian wolf, . . . . .	688	Thrips, . . . . .	321
Tatusia, . . . . .	692	Thylacinus, . . . . .	688
Tealia, . . . . .	145, 151	Thymus, . . . . .	453
Tectibranchia, . . . . .	373	,, of frog, . . . . .	546
Teeth of Crocodilia, . . . . .	583	,, of rabbit, . . . . .	651
,, of extinct Birds, . . . . .	627	,, of skate, . . . . .	496
,, of leech, . . . . .	211	Thyroid, . . . . .	453
,, of lizards, . . . . .	572	,, of frog, . . . . .	546
,, of Mammals, . . . . .	661	,, of rabbit, . . . . .	655
,, of Myxine, . . . . .	471	,, of skate, . . . . .	496
,, of Ornithorhynchus, . . . . .	686	Thysanoptera, . . . . .	320
,, of skate, . . . . .	493	Thysanozoon, . . . . .	158
,, of snakes, . . . . .	579	Thysanura, . . . . .	300
Tegenaria, . . . . .	330	Tibia, . . . . .	438
Teleostei, . . . . .	520	Tibio-tarsus, . . . . .	596
Telolecithal, . . . . .	64	Ticks, . . . . .	330
Telphusa, . . . . .	273	Tiedemann's bodies, . . . . .	228
Telson, . . . . .	252	Tiger, . . . . .	719
Temperature of Birds, . . . . .	596	Tillotherium, . . . . .	708
Temporal ( <i>see</i> Squamosal), . . . . .	434	Tinamou, . . . . .	629
Tenrec, . . . . .	723	Tissues, . . . . .	38-42
Tentaculocysts, . . . . .	143	,, nutrition of, . . . . .	746
Terebratula, . . . . .	222	Titanotherium, . . . . .	705
Teredo, . . . . .	379	Toads, . . . . .	556
Tergum, . . . . .	252	Tornaria, . . . . .	392
Termites, . . . . .	300	Torpedo, . . . . .	516
Terrestrial fauna, . . . . .	762	,, electric organ of, . . . . .	516
Test of Ascidian, . . . . .	397	Tortoises, . . . . .	563
Testicardines, . . . . .	222	Toxodon, . . . . .	708
Testudinidæ, . . . . .	566	Trabeculæ of skull, . . . . .	434
Testudo, . . . . .	566	Tracheæ, . . . . .	307
Tetrabranchiata, . . . . .	384	,, of Arachnoidea, . . . . .	321
Tetractinellida, . . . . .	113	,, of Mites, . . . . .	330
Tetrapneumones, . . . . .	330	,, of Peripatus, . . . . .	283
Tetrarhynchus, . . . . .	331	,, of spider, . . . . .	328
Tetrodon, . . . . .	521	Tracheal gills, . . . . .	307
Tetronerythrin, . . . . .	258	Tracheata, . . . . .	281
Thalamencephalon, . . . . .	442	Trachomedusæ, . . . . .	151
Thalassema, . . . . .	205	Trachymedusæ, . . . . .	151
Thalassicola, . . . . .	100	Tragulina, . . . . .	698
Thaliacea, . . . . .	410	Tragulus, . . . . .	699
Thecophora, . . . . .	566	Trematoda, . . . . .	158
Thecosomata, . . . . .	373	Trematoda, classification	
Thelyphonus, . . . . .	325	of, . . . . .	163
Theromorpha, . . . . .	590	Treptoplax, . . . . .	124
Thoracic duct, . . . . .	654	Triceratops, . . . . .	594



	PAGE		PAGE
Trichechidæ, . . . . .	721	Typhlopidae, . . . . .	581
Trichechus, . . . . .	721	Typhlosole, . . . . .	186
Trichina, . . . . .	177	Tyroglyphus, . . . . .	330
Trichocysts, . . . . .	91		
Trichodes, . . . . .	177	UINTATHERIUM, . . . . .	707
Trichoplax, . . . . .	124	Ulna, . . . . .	438
Trichoptera, . . . . .	320	Umbilical cord, . . . . .	670
Tricladida, . . . . .	157	"    vesicle, . . . . .	670
Triconodon, . . . . .	680	Umbo, . . . . .	347
Trigeminal, . . . . .	444	Umbrella, . . . . .	373
Trilobites, . . . . .	331, 335	Uncinate processes, . . . . .	602
Trionychidæ, . . . . .	567	Ungulata, . . . . .	695
Trionyx, . . . . .	567	Unio, . . . . .	347
Tristomum, . . . . .	163	Ureters, . . . . .	465
Triton, . . . . .	556	Urethra, . . . . .	658
Tritylodon, . . . . .	680	Urinogenital ducts = Urogenital	
Trivium, . . . . .	225	ducts, . . . . .	465
Trochanter, . . . . .	290, 646	Urnatella, . . . . .	221
Trochoceras, . . . . .	385	Urochorda, . . . . .	396
Trochlear nerve, . . . . .	444	Urodela, . . . . .	556
Trochosphere, . . . . .	202, 368	Urogenital ducts, . . . . .	465
Troglodytes, . . . . .	730	Urostyle, . . . . .	512, 534
Trombidium, . . . . .	326	Ursidæ, . . . . .	720
Trophoblast, . . . . .	672	Ursus, . . . . .	720
Trophospongia, . . . . .	672	Uterus, . . . . .	658
Tropidonotus, . . . . .	582	"    masculus, . . . . .	658
Truncus arteriosus, . . . . .	542	Utricle of ear, . . . . .	447
Trunk Fishes, . . . . .	521		
Trypsin, . . . . .	26, 745	VACUOLES, . . . . .	85
Tube-feet of brittle-star, . . . . .	229	"    contractile, . . . . .	106
"    of sea-urchin, . . . . .	232	"    food, . . . . .	106
"    of star-fish, . . . . .	228	Vagina, . . . . .	658
Tuber cinereum, . . . . .	539	Vagus nerve, . . . . .	442
Tubercle of rib, . . . . .	601	Vampire bat, . . . . .	726
Tubifex, . . . . .	203	Vampyrella, . . . . .	98
Tubipora, . . . . .	149, 151	Vampyrus, . . . . .	726
Tubularia, . . . . .	136, 150	Varanidæ, . . . . .	576
Tunicata, . . . . .	396	Variation, . . . . .	770
"    classification of, . . . . .	409	Vas deferens, . . . . .	656
Tunicin, . . . . .	750	Vascular system of—	
Tupaia, . . . . .	723	"    Amphioxus, . . . . .	419
Turbellaria, . . . . .	156	"    Anodonta, . . . . .	351
"    classification		"    Arenicola, . . . . .	199
of, . . . . .	157	"    Ascidian, . . . . .	402
Turrilites, . . . . .	385	"    Balanoglossus, . . . . .	390
Turtles, . . . . .	563	"    bee, . . . . .	299
Tylenchus, . . . . .	177	"    cockroach, . . . . .	293
Tylopoda, . . . . .	698	"    crayfish, . . . . .	257
Tympanic bulla, . . . . .	643, 717	"    Crinoid, . . . . .	241
Tympanum, . . . . .	448	"    Crocodylia, . . . . .	586



	PAGE		PAGE
Vascular system of—		Vertebrata, affinities of Nemer-	
„ Dipnoi, . . . .	526	teans with, . . . .	429
„ earthworm, . . .	187	„ ancestry of, . . .	427
„ frog, . . . .	541	„ development of, . .	429
„ haddock, . . . .	506	„ general characters	
„ Helix, . . . .	343	of, . . . .	425
„ Hirudo, . . . .	212	„ „ classifica-	
„ Insects, . . . .	308	tion of, . . . .	427
„ Limulus, . . . .	333	„ gill-clefts of, . . .	542
„ Lizards, . . . .	573	„ heart of, . . . .	457
„ Mammalia, . . . .	671	„ and Invertebrata, .	8
„ Myxine, . . . .	472	„ nervous system of, .	436
„ Nemerteans, . . .	173	„ notochord of, . . .	431
„ Peripatus, . . . .	283	„ segmental symme-	
„ Petromyzon, . . .	476	try of, . . . .	425
„ pigeon, . . . .	608	„ structure of, . . .	429
„ rabbit, . . . .	651	Vesiculæ seminales. See Re-	
„ scorpion, . . . .	325	productive system.	
„ sea-urchin, . . . .	234	Vesiculatæ, . . . .	137
„ Sepia, . . . .	361	Vespertilio, . . . .	726
„ skate, . . . .	494	Vesperugo, . . . .	726
„ spider, . . . .	328	Vestigial structures, .	37
„ starfish, . . . .	228	Vibrissæ, . . . .	649
„ Vertebrates, . . .	456, 460	Vicugna, . . . .	698
Velarium, . . . .	138	Villi, . . . .	27
Velella, . . . .	151	Vipera, . . . .	582
Veliger, . . . .	368	Viperiformes, . . . .	582
Velum, . . . .	136, 368	Visceral arches, . . .	431
Venous system. See Vascular		„ clefts, . . . .	452
system.		„ nerves, . . . .	191
Ventricles of brain, . .	439	Vitelline membrane of ovum, 56,	622
„ of heart, . . . .	457	Vitreous humour, . . .	449
Venus, . . . .	379	Viverra, . . . .	719
„ flower-basket, . . .	121	Viviparous Fishes, . .	510
„ girdle, . . . .	153	„ Insects, . . . .	311
Vermiform appendix, . .	650	„ Lizards, . . . .	575
Vertebra, parts of a, . .	436	„ Vertebrates, . . . .	468
Vertebral column, . . .	435	Voice of Birds, . . . .	612
„ „ of crocodile, . . .	584	Vole, . . . .	714
„ „ of frog, . . . .	533	Volvox, . . . .	68, 95
„ „ of haddock, . . .	501	Vortex, . . . .	157
„ „ of lizard, . . . .	570	Vorticella, . . . .	92
„ „ of pigeon, . . . .	599	WALDHEIMIA, . . . .	222
„ „ of rabbit, . . . .	640	Walking-stick insect, .	321
„ „ of skate, . . . .	483	„ leaf, . . . .	321
„ „ of snakes, . . . .	578	Wallace's line, . . . .	765
„ theory of skull, . . .	433	Walrus, . . . .	720
Vertebrata, . . . .	425	Wasps, . . . .	320
Vertebrata, affinities of Annelids		Water bears, . . . .	331
with, . . . .	428		



	PAGE		PAGE
Water scorpion, . . . . .	321	Xiphisternum, . . . . .	537
„ vascular system of—		Xiphosura, . . . . .	332
„ Crinoid, . . . . .	241	Xylophaga, . . . . .	379
„ Holothurian, . . . . .	237		
„ Ophiuroid, . . . . .	231	YAPOCK, . . . . .	688
„ sea-urchin, . . . . .	235	Yellow cells, . . . . .	108
„ starfish, . . . . .	228	Yolk, . . . . .	56
Weasel, . . . . .	720	„ sac, . . . . .	673
Web of spiders, . . . . .	329	„ „ placenta, . . . . .	675
Whales, . . . . .	708	„ spherules (in Hydra), . . . . .	134
Wheel animalcule, . . . . .	214		
Whelk, . . . . .	373	ZEBRA, . . . . .	704
Whip scorpions, . . . . .	325	Zeugobranchs, . . . . .	373
White matter of brain, . . . . .	443	Zoæa, . . . . .	277
„ „ of spinal cord, . . . . .	444	Zoantharia, . . . . .	153
Wing of bat, . . . . .	724	Zona radiata of ovum, . . . . .	466
„ of Birds, . . . . .	604	Zoochlorellæ, . . . . .	108
„ of insect, . . . . .	302	Zoo-geographical regions, . . . . .	765
„ of pterodactyl, . . . . .	592	Zoonerythrin, . . . . .	118
Wolf, . . . . .	719	Zoophytes, . . . . .	125
Wolfian duct, . . . . .	465	Zootoca, . . . . .	576
Worms, . . . . . 11, 12, 155-222		Zygæna, . . . . .	516
		Zygapophyses, . . . . .	640
XANTHARPYIA, . . . . .	726	Zygomatic arch, . . . . .	717







# YOUNG J. PENTLAND'S PUBLICATIONS.

---

**SYSTEM of GYNECOLOGY and OBSTETRICS.** By AMERICAN AUTHORS. Edited by MATTHEW D. MANN, A.M., M.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Gynecology in the Medical Department of the University of Buffalo, N.Y.; and BARTON COOKE HIRST, M.D., Associate Professor of Obstetrics in the University of Pennsylvania; Obstetrician to the Philadelphia Maternity Hospital; Gynecologist to the Orthopædic Hospital. In 8 very handsome volumes, Royal 8vo, Cloth, of about 400 pages each, fully Illustrated with Engravings and Coloured Plates. Price 12s. 6d. each, nett. For sale by Subscription only.

**TEXT-BOOK of GENERAL BOTANY.** By Dr. W. J. BEHRENS. Translation from the Second German Edition. Revised by PATRICK GEDDES, F.R.S.E., Professor of Botany in the University of Dundee. 8vo, Cloth, pp. viii., 374, with 408 Illustrations, finely engraved on Wood, and 4 Analytical Tables, New Edition. Price 5s. (1893.)

**THE ELEMENTS OF OPHTHALMOSCOPIC DIAGNOSIS.** FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS ATTENDING OPHTHALMIC PRACTICE. By GEORGE A. BERRY, M.B., F.R.C.S.ED., Ophthalmic Surgeon, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Lecturer on Ophthalmology, Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 83. Price 3s. 6d. (1891.)

**DISEASES of the EYE.** A PRACTICAL TREATISE FOR STUDENTS OF OPHTHALMOLOGY. By GEORGE A. BERRY, M.B., F.R.C.S.ED., Ophthalmic Surgeon, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Senior Surgeon, Edinburgh Eye Dispensary; Lecturer on Ophthalmology, Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh. Second Edition revised and enlarged. 8vo, Cloth, gilt top, pp. xvi., 730, Illustrated with many Coloured Plates and Wood Engravings. Price 25s. (1893).

*(Pentland's Medical Series, Volume Second.)*

**THE NATIONAL MEDICAL DICTIONARY.** INCLUDING ENGLISH, FRENCH, GERMAN, ITALIAN, AND LATIN TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN MEDICINE AND THE COLLATERAL SCIENCES, AND



A SERIES OF TABLES OF USEFUL DATA. By JOHN S. BILLINGS, A.M., M.D., LL.D., Harv. and Edin., D.C.L., Oxon., Member of the National Academy of Sciences, Surgeon, U.S.A., &c. With the collaboration of W. O. ATWATER, M.D., FRANK BAKER, M.D., JAMES M. FLINT, M.D., R. LORINI, M.D., S. M. BURNETT, M.D., J. H. KIDDER, M.D., H. C. YARROW, M.D., WILLIAM LEE, M.D., C. S. MINOT, M.D., WASHINGTON MATTHEWS, M.D., W. T. COUNCILMAN, M.D. In Two very handsome Imperial 8vo volumes, containing about 1600 pages. Price 50s. nett. (1890.)

**DISEASES of the HEART and THORACIC AORTA.** By BYROM BRAMWELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Lecturer on the Principles and Practice of Medicine, and on Practical Medicine and Medical Diagnosis, in the Extra-Academical School of Medicine, Edinburgh; Assistant Physician, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary. Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 783. Illustrated with 226 Wood Engravings, and 68 pages of Lithograph Plates, exhibiting 91 Figures—317 Illustrations in all. Price 25s. (1884.)

**INTRACRANIAL TUMOURS.** By BYROM BRAMWELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Lecturer on the Principles and Practice of Medicine in the Extra-Academical School of Medicine, Edinburgh; Assistant Physician to the Edinburgh Royal Infirmary. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 270, with 116 Illustrations. Price 14s. (1888.)

**ILLUSTRATIONS of the NERVE TRACTS in the MID AND HIND BRAIN, AND THE CRANIAL NERVES ARISING THEREFROM.** By ALEXANDER BRUCE, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Lecturer on Pathology in the School of Medicine, Edinburgh; Assistant Physician (formerly Pathologist), Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Pathologist to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children. Oblong 4to, Cloth, in a series of 27 Coloured Plates from Original Drawings, with Descriptive Letterpress, and 27 Engravings throughout the Text. Price 50s. nett. (1892.)

**DISEASE in CHILDREN: A MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS.** By JAMES CARMICHAEL, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Physician, Royal Hospital for Sick Children; University Lecturer on Disease in Children, Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 520. Illustrated with Charts. Price 10s. 6d. (1892.)

*(Pentland's Students' Manuals.*



**TUBERCULOUS DISEASE of the BONES and JOINTS.**

By W. WATSON CHEYNE, M.B., F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Professor of Surgery, King's College, London. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 374. Illustrated with numerous Wood Engravings throughout the Text. Price 14s. nett. (1895.)

**SUPPURATION and SEPTIC DISEASES. THREE LECTURES DELIVERED AT THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS OF ENGLAND.**

By W. WATSON CHEYNE, M.B., F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Professor of Surgery, King's College, London. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 102, with 4 Illustrations. Price 5s. (1889.)

**THE TREATMENT of WOUNDS, ABSCESES, and ULCERS.**

By W. WATSON CHEYNE, M.B., F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Professor of Surgery, King's College, London. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 200. Price 3s. 6d. (1897.)

**ATLAS of the DISEASES of the SKIN.**

By H. RADCLIFFE CROCKER, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician to the Department for Diseases of the Skin, University College Hospital, London. In 16 Fasciculi, containing 96 plates, exhibiting 238 Figures in colours from Original Drawings specially prepared for the work, with Descriptive Letterpress. Price 21s. each nett. Or in Two large handsome Folio Volumes, Half Morocco, gilt tops. Price £18, 18s. nett. (1897.)

\* \* *Subscribers' Names can be received for the Parts.*

**MANUAL OF PRACTICAL ANATOMY.**

By D. J. CUNNINGHAM, M.D., Professor of Anatomy and Chirurgery, University of Dublin. Second Edition. In two Vols., Crown 8vo, Cloth. Volume First—Upper and Lower Limb ; Abdomen. Volume Second—Thorax ; Head and Neck. Illustrated with 372 Engravings and 2 full-page Plates. Price 12s. 6d. each. (1896.)

(*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*)

**HYGIENE AND DISEASES OF WARM CLIMATES,**

IN A SERIES OF ARTICLES BY EMINENT AUTHORITIES. Edited by ANDREW DAVIDSON, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., late Visiting and Superintending Surgeon, Civil Hospital ; Professor of Chemistry, Royal College, Mauritius ; Author of "*Geographical Pathology.*" Royal 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 1016. Illustrated with Engravings throughout the Text and full-page Plates. Price 31s. 6d. (1893.)



**GEOGRAPHICAL PATHOLOGY.** AN INQUIRY INTO THE GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF INFECTIVE AND CLIMATIC DISEASES. By ANDREW DAVIDSON, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., late Visiting and Superintending Surgeon, Civil Hospital; Professor of Chemistry, Royal College, Mauritius. Two vols. Large 8vo, Cloth. pp. xvi., 1008. Illustrated with Maps and Charts. Price 31s. 6d. (1891.)

**TEXT-BOOK of NERVOUS DISEASES.** By AMERICAN AUTHORS. Edited by FRANCIS X. DERCUM, M.D., PH.D., Clinical Professor of Nervous Diseases in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia. Royal 8vo, pp. xvi., 1056, with 341 Engravings in the Text, and 7 Coloured Plates. Price 25s. nett. (1895.)

## THE "COMPEND" SERIES.

*A Series of Handbooks to assist Students preparing for Examinations.*

**COMPEND of HUMAN ANATOMY,** INCLUDING THE ANATOMY OF THE VISCERA. By SAMUEL O. L. POTTER, M.A., M.D., Cooper Medical College, San Francisco. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 233, with 117 Engravings and 16 full-page Plates. Price 5s.

**COMPEND of the PRACTICE of MEDICINE.** By DANIEL E. HUGHES, M.D., late Demonstrator of Clinical Medicine in the Jefferson Medical College of Philadelphia. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 328. Price 7s. 6d.

**COMPEND of OBSTETRICS.** By HENRY G. LANDIS, A.M., M.D., late Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Women in Starling Medical College. Fourth Edition, thoroughly revised, enlarged, and improved, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 118, with 17 Illustrations. Price 4s. 6d.

**COMPEND of SURGERY.** By ORVILLE HORWITZ, B.S., M.D., Chief of the Outdoor Surgical Department, Jefferson Medical College Hospital. Fourth Edition, revised, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 272, with 136 Illustrations. Price 5s.

**COMPEND of GENERAL PATHOLOGY and MORBID ANATOMY.** By H. NEWBERRY HALL, Ph.G., M.D., Professor of Pathology and Medical Chemistry, Post-Graduate Medical School; Surgeon to the Emergency Hospital, &c., Chicago. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 204, with 91 Illustrations. Price 4s. 6d.



**COMPEND of DISEASES of CHILDREN.** By MARCUS P. HATFIELD, A.M., M.D., Professor of Diseases of Children, Chicago Medical College. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 186, with Coloured Plate. Price 4s. 6d.

**COMPEND of DENTAL PATHOLOGY and DENTAL MEDICINE.** By GEO. W. WARREN, D.D.S., Clinical Chief, Pennsylvania College of Dental Surgery. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 109, Illustrations. Price 4s. 6d.

**CYCLOPÆDIA of the DISEASES of CHILDREN, MEDICAL AND SURGICAL.** The Articles written especially for the Work by American, British, and Canadian Authors. Edited by JOHN M. KEATING, M.D. In 8 Vols., Royal 8vo, of about 500 pages each, Illustrated with Wood Engravings in the Text, and numerous full-page Plates. Price 12s. 6d. per Volume nett, Carriage Free.

\* \* *Detailed Prospectus on application.*

**A TREATISE on OBSTETRICS,** FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. By EDWARD P. DAVIS, A.M., M.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Infancy in the Philadelphia Polyclinic; Clinical Professor of Obstetrics, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. 533, Illustrated with 217 Engravings, and 30 Plates in colours and monochrome. Price 16s. nett. (1897.)

**EDINBURGH HOSPITAL REPORTS.** PUBLISHED UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF AN EDITORIAL COMMITTEE ELECTED BY THE MEDICAL AND SURGICAL OFFICERS OF THE ROYAL INFIRMARY, ROYAL HOSPITAL FOR SICK CHILDREN, AND ROYAL MATERNITY AND SIMPSON MEMORIAL HOSPITAL. Edited by G. A. GIBSON, M.D., D.Sc., C. W. CATHCART, M.A., M.B., JOHN THOMSON, M.D., and D. BERRY HART, M.D. To be issued annually, 8vo, pp. xvi., 650 or thereby, handsomely printed, illustrated with full-page Plates and Engravings. Price per Volume, 12s. 6d. nett. Carriage free. Volumes I. to V. now ready.

**DISEASES of the STOMACH.** By DR. C. A. EWALD, Extraordinary Professor of Medicine at the University of Berlin; Director of the Augusta Hospital. Authorised Translation, with Special Additions by the Author, by MORRIS MANGES, A.M., M.D., Attending Physician, Mount Sinai Hospital, New York City, 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 498, with 30 Illustrations. Price 16s. (1892.)



**THE EDINBURGH MEDICAL JOURNAL.** Edited by G. A. GIBSON, M.D., D.Sc., F.R.C.P.Ed., Assistant Physician, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary. Issued monthly. Price 2s. each part; Subscription 21s. per annum (in advance), post free. For the Colonies and Abroad, 24s. per annum (in advance), post free.

**EXAMINATION QUESTIONS, SET FOR THE PROFESSIONAL EXAMINATIONS IN EDINBURGH UNIVERSITY DURING THE PAST TEN YEARS, SELECTED FROM THE CALENDARS.** By W. RAMSAY SMITH, M.B., C.M., B.Sc., Formerly Demonstrator of Anatomy, Edinburgh School of Medicine, Minto House; late Senior Assistant to the Professor of Natural History, University of Edinburgh.

NATURAL HISTORY, arranged and annotated. Price 1s.

BOTANY, arranged and annotated. Price 1s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY, answered and annotated. Price 2s.

ANATOMY, answered and annotated. Price 2s.

PHYSIOLOGY, answered and annotated. Price 2s.

MATERIA MEDICA, answered and annotated. Price 2s.

MIDWIFERY AND GYNECOLOGY, answered and annotated.  
Price 1s. 6d.

SURGERY, answered and annotated. Price 1s. 6d.

PRACTICE OF PHYSIC, answered and annotated. Price 1s. 6d.

MEDICAL JURISPRUDENCE AND PUBLIC HEALTH, answered and annotated. Price 2s.

**THE FUNDUS OCULI, with an OPHTHALMOSCOPIC ATLAS, ILLUSTRATING ITS PHYSIOLOGICAL AND PATHOLOGICAL CONDITIONS.** By W. ADAMS FROST, F.R.C.S., Ophthalmic Surgeon, St. George's Hospital; Surgeon to the Royal Westminster Ophthalmic Hospital, London. In one handsome 4to Volume, extra Cloth, gilt top, with 47 Plates, exhibiting 107 beautifully Coloured Figures and numerous Engravings in the Text. Price £3, 3s. nett. (1896.)

**PHYSICAL DIAGNOSIS: A GUIDE TO METHODS OF CLINICAL INVESTIGATION.** By G. A. GIBSON, M.D., D.Sc., F.R.C.P.Ed., Assistant Physician, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Lecturer on the Principles and Practice of Medicine in the Edinburgh Medical School; and WILLIAM RUSSELL, M.D., F.R.C.P.Ed., Assistant Physician, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary. Second Edition, thoroughly revised, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 383, with 109 Illustrations, some Coloured. Price 10s. 6d. (1893.)

*(Pentland's Students' Manuals.*



**HYDATID DISEASE IN ITS CLINICAL ASPECTS.**

By JAMES GRAHAM, M.A., M.D., late Demonstrator of Anatomy, Sydney University; Medical Superintendent, Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney. 8vo, Cloth, gilt top, pp. xvi., 204, with 34 full-page Coloured Plates. Price 16s. (1891.)

**A SYSTEM OF PRACTICAL THERAPEUTICS.** By

Various Authors. Edited by HOBART AMORY HARE, M.D., Clinical Professor of Diseases of Children, and Demonstrator of Therapeutics in the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to St. Agnes's Hospital, Philadelphia. 3 Vols., Royal 8vo, of about 1000 pages each. Price per vol. 22s. 6d. *nett*, carriage free.

**HANDBOOK OF OBSTETRIC NURSING.** By F. W. N.

HAULTAIN, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Physician to the Royal Dispensary; late Clinical Assistant to Physician for Diseases of Women, Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh; and J. HAIG FERGUSON, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Physician to the New Town Dispensary; late Resident Physician, Royal Maternity Hospital, Edinburgh. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged, Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 244, with Coloured Plate and 33 Wood Engravings. Price 5s. (1894.)

**HUMAN MONSTROSITIES.** By BARTON COOKE HIRST, M.D.,

Professor of Obstetrics in the University of Pennsylvania; and GEORGE A. PIERSOL, M.D., Professor of Embryology and Histology in the University of Pennsylvania. In 4 Fasciculi, folio size, Illustrated with Engravings and full-page Photographic Plates from Nature. Price 25s. each Fasciculus. *Sold only by Subscription.*

**THE URINE AND THE COMMON POISONS, MEMO-**

**RANDA, CHEMICAL AND MICROSCOPICAL, FOR LABORATORY USE.** By J. W. HOLLAND, M.D., Professor of Medical Chemistry and Toxicology, Jefferson Medical College, Philadelphia. Second, Edition, Revised and Enlarged, oblong Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. 65, with 28 Illustrations. Price 4s. (1889.)

**DISEASES OF THE SKIN: A MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND**

**PRACTITIONERS.** By W. ALLAN JAMIESON, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Extra Physician for Diseases of the Skin, Edinburgh Royal



Infirmery; Consulting Physician, Edinburgh City Hospital; Lecturer on Diseases of the Skin, School of Medicine, Edinburgh. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged, 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 676, with Coloured Illustrations. Price 21s. (1894.)

*(Pentland's Medical Series, Volume First.*

**BOTANY:** A CONCISE MANUAL FOR STUDENTS OF MEDICINE AND SCIENCE. By ALEXANDER JOHNSTONE, F.G.S., Lecturer on Botany, School of Medicine, Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 260, with 164 Illustrations and a series of Floral Diagrams. Price 6s. (1891.)

*(Pentland's Students' Manuals.*

**A NEW PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY of MEDICAL TERMS.** By JOHN M. KEATING, M.D., Fellow of the College of Physicians of Philadelphia, Visiting Obstetrician to the Philadelphia Hospital, and Lecturer on Diseases of Women and Children. Handsome 8vo, Cloth, pp. 818. Price 18s. (1892.)

**CLINICAL GYNÆCOLOGY, MEDICAL and SURGICAL.**

By AMERICAN AUTHORS. Edited by JOHN M. KEATING, M.D., LL.D., and HENRY C. COE, M.D., M.R.C.S., Professor of Gynæcology, New York Polyclinic. Two Volumes, Royal 8vo, Cloth, pp. xviii., 994, Illustrated with Full-page Plates and Engravings in the Text. Price 25s. nett. (1895.)

**TEXT-BOOK of ABDOMINAL SURGERY:** A CLINICAL MANUAL FOR PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS. By SKENE KEITH, F.R.C.S.Ed.; assisted by GEORGE E. KEITH, M.B. 8vo, Cloth, gilt top, pp. xvi., 508. Price 16s. (1894.)

*(Pentland's Medical Series, Volume Fourth.*

**THE ESSENTIALS of MEDICAL ANATOMY.** By H. R. KENWOOD, M.B., C.M., L.R.C.P. (Lond.) 12mo, Cloth, pp. 52. Price 2s. (1889.)

**THE PARASITES of MAN, AND THE DISEASES WHICH PROCEED FROM THEM.** A TEXT-BOOK FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS. By RUDOLF LEUCKART, Professor of Zoology and Comparative Anatomy in the University of Leipsic. Translated from the German, with the Co-operation of the Author, by WILLIAM E. HOYLE, M.A. (Oxon.), M.R.C.S., F.R.S.E., Curator of the Museums, Owens College, Manchester. NATURAL HISTORY OF



PARASITES IN GENERAL—SYSTEMATIC ACCOUNT OF THE PARASITES INFESTING MAN—PROTOZOA—CESTODA. Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. xxviii., 772, Illustrated with 404 Engravings. Price 31s. 6d. (1886.)

**FIRST AID to the INJURED and MANAGEMENT of the SICK.** By E. J. LAWLESS, M.D., Surgeon-Major, 4th V.B., E. Surrey Regiment. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 262, Illustrated with numerous Wood Engravings. Price 3s. 6d. (1894.)

**TRAUMATIC INFECTION.** HUNTERIAN LECTURES DELIVERED AT THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS OF ENGLAND. By CHARLES BARRETT LOCKWOOD, F.R.C.S., Hunterian Professor, Royal College of Surgeons of England ; Assistant Surgeon to St. Bartholomew's Hospital ; Surgeon to the Great Northern Central Hospital. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 138, Illustrated with 27 Wood Engravings in the Text. Price 3s. (1896.)

**ASEPTIC SURGERY.** By CHARLES BARRETT LOCKWOOD, F.R.C.S. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 233. Price 4s. (1896.)

**STUDENTS' POCKET MEDICAL LEXICON,** GIVING THE CORRECT PRONUNCIATION AND DEFINITION OF ALL WORDS AND TERMS IN GENERAL USE IN MEDICINE AND THE COLLATERAL SCIENCES. By ELIAS LONGLEY. New Edition, 18mo, Cloth, pp. 303. Price 4s. (1891.)

**DISEASES of the THROAT, NOSE, and EAR.** By P. M'BRIDE, M.D., F.R.C.P.Ed., Lecturer on the Diseases of the Ear and Throat, Edinburgh School of Medicine ; Aural Surgeon and Laryngologist, Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh ; Surgeon, Edinburgh Ear and Throat Dispensary. Second Edition, thoroughly revised. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 682, with Coloured Illustrations from Original Drawings. Price 25s. (1894.)

*(Pentland's Medical Series, Volume Third.)*

**REGIONAL ANATOMY** IN ITS RELATION TO MEDICINE AND SURGERY. By GEORGE MCCLELLAN, M.D., Lecturer on Descriptive and Regional Anatomy at the Pennsylvania School of Anatomy. In Two Handsome Volumes, large 4to, Illustrated with 100 full-page facsimile Chromo-lithographic Plates, reproduced from Photographs taken by the Author of his own Dissections, expressly designed and prepared for this work, and coloured by him after nature. Price 42s. each nett.



**ATLAS of VENEREAL DISEASES.** A SERIES OF ILLUSTRATIONS FROM ORIGINAL PAINTINGS, WITH DESCRIPTIONS OF THE VARIED LESIONS, THEIR DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS AND TREATMENT. By P. H. MACLAREN, M.D., F.R.C.S. ED., Surgeon, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Formerly Surgeon in Charge of the Lock Wards, Edinburgh Royal Infirmary; Examiner in the Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh. In one handsome Royal 4to Volume, Extra Cloth. Price 63s. nett.

**FUNCTIONAL and ORGANIC DISEASES of the STOMACH.** By SIDNEY MARTIN, M.D., F.R.S., F.R.C.P., Assistant Physician and Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine at University College Hospital; Assistant Physician to the Hospital for Consumption and Diseases of the Chest, Brompton. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 506, Illustrated with numerous Engravings throughout the Text. Price 16s. (1895.)

*(Pentland's Medical Series, Volume Fifth.)*

**A SYSTEM OF GENITO-URINARY DISEASES, SYPHILOLOGY, AND DERMATOLOGY.** Edited by PRINCE A. MORROW, M.D. 6 Vols., large 8vo, of about 550 pages each, fully Illustrated. Price per vol. 14s. carriage free.

**MANUAL of BACTERIOLOGY.** By ROBERT MUIR, M.D., F.R.C.P. ED., Lecturer on Pathological Bacteriology, Edinburgh University; Pathologist to the Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh; and JAMES RITCHIE, M.D., B.Sc., Lecturer in Pathology, University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 500, with 108 Illustrations in the Text. Price 12s. 6d. [*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*]

**PRESCRIBING and TREATMENT IN THE DISEASES OF INFANTS AND CHILDREN.** By PHILIP E. MUSKETT, L.R.C.P. & S. ED., late Surgeon to the Sydney Hospital; formerly Senior Resident Medical Officer, Sydney Hospital. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged, 18mo, pp. xx., 336, in Flexible Leather binding for the pocket. Price 6s. 6d. (1894.)

**PRACTICAL TREATISE on MEDICAL DIAGNOSIS.** By JOHN H. MUSSER, M.D., Assistant Professor of Clinical Medicine in the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to the Philadelphia and the Presbyterian Hospitals. Royal 8vo, Cloth, pp. viii., 881, Illustrated with 162 Woodcuts and 2 Coloured Plates. Price 24s. (1894.)



**MALIGNANT DISEASE of the THROAT and NOSE.** By DAVID NEWMAN, M.D., Laryngologist to the Glasgow Royal Infirmary; Assistant Surgeon to the Western Infirmary; Examiner in Pathology in the University of Glasgow. 8vo, pp. xvi., 212, with 3 Illustrations. Price 8s. 6d. (1892.)

**TEXT-BOOK of OPHTHALMOLOGY.** By W. F. NORRIS, A.M., M.D., and C. A. OLIVER, A.M., M.D. Royal 8vo, pp. viii., 622, Illustrated with 5 Coloured Plates and 357 Woodcuts. Price 25s. (1893.)

**LEAD POISONING, ACUTE AND CHRONIC. BEING THE GOULSTONIAN LECTURES DELIVERED AT THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS.** By THOMAS OLIVER, M.D., F.R.C.P., Physician Royal Infirmary, Newcastle-on-Tyne; Professor of Physiology, University of Durham; Honorary Physician, Newcastle-on-Tyne Dispensary and Industrial Schools. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 121, with Coloured Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d. (1891.)

**THE PRINCIPLES and PRACTICE of MEDICINE,** Designed for the Use of Practitioners and Students of Medicine. By WILLIAM OSLER, M.D., F.R.C.P., Professor of Medicine in the Johns Hopkins University, and Physician-in-Chief to the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore. Second Edition, thoroughly Revised and partly Re-written. Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 1080, Illustrated with Charts. Price 24s.

**LECTURES on ANGINA PECTORIS and ALLIED STATES.** By WILLIAM OSLER, M.D., F.R.C.P., Professor of Medicine in the Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore. 8vo, Cloth, pp. viii., 160. Price 6s. *nett.* (1897.)

**TREATISE on SURGERY.** By AMERICAN AUTHORS. FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS OF SURGERY AND MEDICINE. Edited by ROSWELL PARK, A.M., M.D., Professor of the Principles and Practice of Surgery and of Clinical Surgery in the Medical Department of the University of Buffalo, Buffalo, New York; Surgeon to the Buffalo General Hospital, etc. Two Volumes, Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. 1603, with 707 Engravings and 38 full-page Plates in Colours and Monochrome. Price 34s. *nett.* (1897.)

**THE SCIENCE and ART of OBSTETRICS.** By THEOPHILUS PARVIN, M.D., LL.D., Professor of Obstetrics and Diseases of Women and Children in Jefferson Medical College, Phila-



delphia, and one of the Obstetricians to the Philadelphia Hospital. Third Edition, thoroughly revised, large 8vo, Cloth, pp. 701, with 269 Wood Engravings, and 2 Coloured Plates. Price 18s. (1895.)

**BERI BERI :** RESEARCHES CONCERNING ITS NATURE AND CAUSE AND THE MEANS OF ITS ARREST. By C. A. PEKELHARING, Professor in the Faculty of Medicine, University of Utrecht ; and C. WINKLER, Lecturer in the University of Utrecht. Translated by JAMES CANTLIE, M.A., M.B., F.R.C.S. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 160, Illustrated with full-page Coloured Plates from Original Drawings. Price 10s. 6d. nett. (1893.)

**REPORTS from the LABORATORY of the ROYAL COLLEGE OF PHYSICIANS, EDINBURGH.** Edited by J. BATTY TUKE, M.D., G. SIMS WOODHEAD, M.D., and D. NOEL PATON, M.D.

VOLUME FIRST, 8vo, Cloth, pp. 212, with 23 full-page Plates, and 19 Engravings. Price 7s. 6d. nett.

VOLUME SECOND, 8vo, Cloth, pp. xiv., 280, with 43 full-page Plates, consisting of Lithographs, Chromo-Lithographs, and Micro-Photographs. Price 10s. 6d. nett.

VOLUME THIRD, 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 304, with 11 Plates and Folding Charts. Price 9s. nett.

VOLUME FOURTH, 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 254, with 25 Plates and Folding Charts. Price 10s. 6d. nett.

**PEDIATRICS :** THE HYGIENIC AND MEDICAL TREATMENT OF CHILDREN. By THOMAS MORGAN ROTCH, M.D., Professor of Diseases of Children, Harvard University. Two Vols., large 8vo, pp. 1124, with 450 Illustrations in the Text, and 8 full-page Coloured Plates. Price 25s. nett. (1896.)

**TEXT-BOOK of PHYSIOLOGY.** By BRITISH PHYSIOLOGISTS. Edited by E. A. SCHAFER, F.R.S., Jodrell Professor of Physiology, University College, London. Two Volumes, Royal 8vo, each pp. xxiv., 950 or thereby, with numerous Illustrations in the Text. *In Press.*

\* \* The following, among others, will contribute :—Professor BURDON SANDERSON (Oxford), Professor GAMGEE, Dr. GASKELL (Cambridge), Professor GOTCH (Oxford), Professor SHERRINGTON (Liverpool), Professor M'KENDRICK (Glasgow), Professor HALLIBURTON (King's College), Professor HAYCRAFT (Cardiff), Dr.



PEMBREY (Charing Cross), Dr. STARLING (Guy's), Dr. RIVERS (Cambridge), J. N. LANGLEY (Cambridge), the EDITOR, etc. etc.

**DISEASES of the MOUTH, THROAT, and NOSE**, including RHINOSCOPY AND METHODS OF LOCAL TREATMENT. By PHILIP SCHECH, M.D., Lecturer in the University of Munich. Translated by R. H. BLAIKIE, M.D., F.R.S.E., formerly Surgeon, Edinburgh Ear and Throat Dispensary; late Clinical Assistant, Ear and Throat Department, Royal Infirmary, Edinburgh. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii., 302, with 5 Wood Engravings. Price 9s. (1886.)

**ELEMENTS of PHARMACOLOGY.** By Dr. OSWALD SCHMIEDEBERG, Professor of Pharmacology, University of Strasbourg. Translated by THOMAS DIXSON, M.B., Lecturer on Materia Medica in the University of Sydney, N.S.W. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xii. 223, with 7 Illustrations. Price 9s. (1887.)

**SURGICAL ANATOMY. A MANUAL FOR STUDENTS.** By A. MARMADUKE SHEILD, M.B. (Cantab.), F.R.C.S., Senior Assistant Surgeon, Aural Surgeon and Teacher of Operative Surgery, Charing Cross Hospital. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 212. Price 6s. (1891.) *(Pentland's Students' Manuals.)*

**MEDICAL GYNECOLOGY: A TREATISE ON THE DISEASES OF WOMEN FROM THE STANDPOINT OF THE PHYSICIAN.** By ALEXANDER J. C. SKENE, M.D., Professor of Gynecology in the Long Island College Hospital, Brooklyn, New York. 8vo, Cloth, pp. vi., 530, with Illustrations in the Text. Price 21s.

**ILLUSTRATIONS of ZOOLOGY, INVERTEBRATES AND VERTEBRATES.** By WILLIAM RAMSAY SMITH, B.Sc., and J. STEWART NORWELL, B.Sc. New and Cheaper Edition. Crown 4to, extra Cloth, gilt top, with 70 Plates, exhibiting over 400 Figures. Price 7s. 6d.

**EXAMINATION of the EYE.** By SIMEON SNELL, F.R.C.S.ED., Ophthalmic Surgeon, Sheffield General Infirmary. Crown 8vo, pp. 150 or thereby, with numerous Illustrations. *In Press.*

**DISEASES of the DIGESTIVE ORGANS in INFANTS AND CHILDREN.** WITH CHAPTERS ON THE INVESTIGATION OF DISEASE AND ON THE GENERAL MANAGEMENT OF CHILDREN. By LOUIS STARR, M.D., late Clinical Professor of Diseases of Children in the Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania; Physician to



the Children's Hospital, Philadelphia. Second Edition, Post 8vo, Cloth, pp. 396, with Illustrations. Price 10s. (1891.)

**EPIDEMIC OPHTHALMIA: ITS SYMPTOMS, DIAGNOSIS, AND MANAGEMENT.** By SYDNEY STEPHENSON, F.R.C.S.Ed., Surgeon, Ophthalmic School, Hanwell. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 278, Illustrated throughout the Text. Price 9s. nett. (1895.)

**APPENDICITIS and PERITYPHLITIS.** By CHARLES TALAMON, Physician to the Tenon Hospital, Paris. Translated from the French by RICHARD J. A. BERRY, M.B., C.M., late President of the Royal Medical Society, Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. viii., 239. Price 6s. (1893.)

**THE PATHOLOGY and TREATMENT of VENEREAL DISEASES.** By ROBERT W. TAYLOR, M.D., Clinical Professor of Venereal Diseases at the College of Physicians and Surgeons (Columbia College) New York; Surgeon to Bellevue Hospital; and Consulting Surgeon to the City (Charity) Hospital, New York. Royal 8vo, Cloth, pp. 1002, Illustrated with 230 Engravings in the Text, and 7 Coloured Plates. Price 22s. nett. (1896.)

**MINOR SURGERY and BANDAGING. INCLUDING THE TREATMENT OF FRACTURES AND DISLOCATIONS, ETC. ETC.** By HENRY R. WHARTON, M.D., Demonstrator of Surgery and Lecturer on Surgical Diseases of Children in the University of Pennsylvania. Post 8vo, Cloth, pp. 496, with 403 Engravings. Price 12s. 6d. (1891.)

**OUTLINES of ZOOLOGY.** By J. ARTHUR THOMSON, M.A., Lecturer on Zoology, School of Medicine, Edinburgh. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xx., 820, with 266 Illustrations in the Text. Price 15s. (1895.)

*(Pentland's Students' Manuals.*

**CLINICAL TEXT-BOOK of MEDICAL DIAGNOSIS, BASED ON THE MOST RECENT METHODS OF EXAMINATION.** By OSWALD VIERORDT, M.D., Professor of Medicine at the University of Heidelberg. Translated, with additions from the second enlarged German edition, with the Author's permission. By FRANCIS H. STUART, M.D., Member of the Medical Society of the County of Kings, New York. Large 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 700, with 178 fine Engravings, many in Colour. Price 18s. (1891.)



**PRACTICAL GUIDE to MEAT INSPECTION.** By THOMAS WALLEY, M.R.C.V.S., formerly Principal of the Edinburgh Royal (Dick) Veterinary College ; Professor of Veterinary Medicine and Surgery, &c. Third Edition, thoroughly Revised, pp. xvi., 198, with 44 Figures, mostly in Colours. Price 10s. 6d. (1896.)

**DISEASES of the LIVER, GALL BLADDER and BILIARY SYSTEM: THEIR PATHOLOGY, DIAGNOSIS, AND SURGICAL TREATMENT.** By H. J. WARING, M.S., B.Sc., F.R.C.S., Demonstrator of Operative Surgery and Senior Demonstrator St. Bartholomew's Hospital ; Senior Assistant Surgeon, Metropolitan Hospital ; Surgeon to the Belgrave Hospital for Children, London. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 386, with 58 Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d. nett. (1897.)

**MANUAL of OPERATIVE SURGERY.** By H. J. WARING, M.S., B.Sc., F.R.C.S., Demonstrator of Operative Surgery and Senior Demonstrator of Anatomy, St. Bartholomew's Hospital ; Surgeon, Metropolitan Hospital ; Surgeon to the Belgrave Hospital for Children, London. Crown 8vo, pp. 550 or thereby, with 400 Illustrations in the Text. *In Press.* (*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*)

**ECTOPIC PREGNANCY.** By J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, M.D., F.R.C.P.Ed., Formerly Assistant to the Professor of Midwifery and Diseases of Women and Children in the University of Edinburgh. 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 374, with 22 pages of Plates and Figures throughout the Text. Price 12s. 6d. nett. (1895.)

**RESEARCHES in FEMALE PELVIC ANATOMY.** By J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, B.A., M.D., M.R.C.P.Ed., Demy 4to, Cloth. Illustrated with 26 full-page Coloured Plates from Original Drawings. Price 30s. nett. (1892.)

**TUBO-PERITONEAL ECTOPIC GESTATION.** By J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, B.A., M.D., M.R.C.P.Ed. Demy 4to Cloth, Illustrated with 11 full-page Plates, several Coloured, exhibiting numerous Figures. Price 16s. nett. (1892.)

**PRACTICAL and OPERATIVE GYNECOLOGY.** By J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, M.D., F.R.C.P.Ed., formerly Assistant to the Professor of Midwifery and Diseases of Women, University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo, Cloth, pp. xvi., 296, with 54 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d. (1896.) (*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*)



**MANUAL of DISEASES of WOMEN.** By J. CLARENCE WEBSTER, B.A., M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Demonstrator of Gynecology, McGill University; Assistant Gynecologist, Royal Victoria Hospital, Montreal. Crown 8vo, pp. 650 or thereby, with 300 Illustrations. *In Press.* (*Pentland's Students' Manuals.*)

**DIABETES MELLITUS: ITS SYMPTOMS, PATHOLOGY, AND TREATMENT.** By RICHARD T. WILLIAMSON, M.D., M.R.C.P., M.R.C.S., Medical Registrar, Manchester Royal Infirmary. 8vo, pp. xvi., 400 or thereby. *In Press.*

**TEXT-BOOK of OBSTETRICS, INCLUDING THE PATHOLOGY AND THERAPEUTICS OF THE PUERPERAL STATE. DESIGNED FOR PRACTITIONERS AND STUDENTS OF MEDICINE.** By Dr. F. WINCKEL, Professor of Gynæcology and Director of the Royal Hospital for Women. Translated under the supervision of J. CLIFTON EDGAR, A.M., M.D., Adjunct Professor of Obstetrics, University of the City of New York. Royal 8vo, Cloth, pp. 927, Illustrated with 190 Engravings, mostly Original. Price 28s. (1890.)

**PRACTICAL PATHOLOGY. A MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS.** By G. SIMS WOODHEAD, M.D., F.R.C.P.ED., Director of the Laboratories of the Royal Colleges of Physicians (London) and Surgeons (England). Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged, 8vo. Cloth, pp. xxiv., 652, with 195 Coloured Illustrations, mostly from Original Drawings. Price 25s. (1892.)

**THE JOURNAL of PATHOLOGY and BACTERIOLOGY.** Edited, with the collaboration of distinguished British and Foreign Pathologists, by GERMAN SIMS WOODHEAD, M.D., Director of the Laboratories of the Royal Colleges of Physicians (London) and Surgeons (England). Assisted in special departments by SIDNEY MARTIN, M.D., Lond. (*Pathological Chemistry*); G. E. CARTWRIGHT WOOD, M.D., Edin. (*Bacteriology*); C. S. SHERRINGTON, M.D., Cantab. (*Experimental Pathology*); S. G. SHATTOCK, F.R.C.S. (*Morbid Anatomy and Histology*). Issued at Quarterly Intervals. Subscription 21s. per Volume (in advance) post free.

---

YOUNG J. PENTLAND,  
EDINBURGH: 11 TEVIOT PLACE.  
LONDON: 38 WEST SMITHFIELD, E.C.



C/R

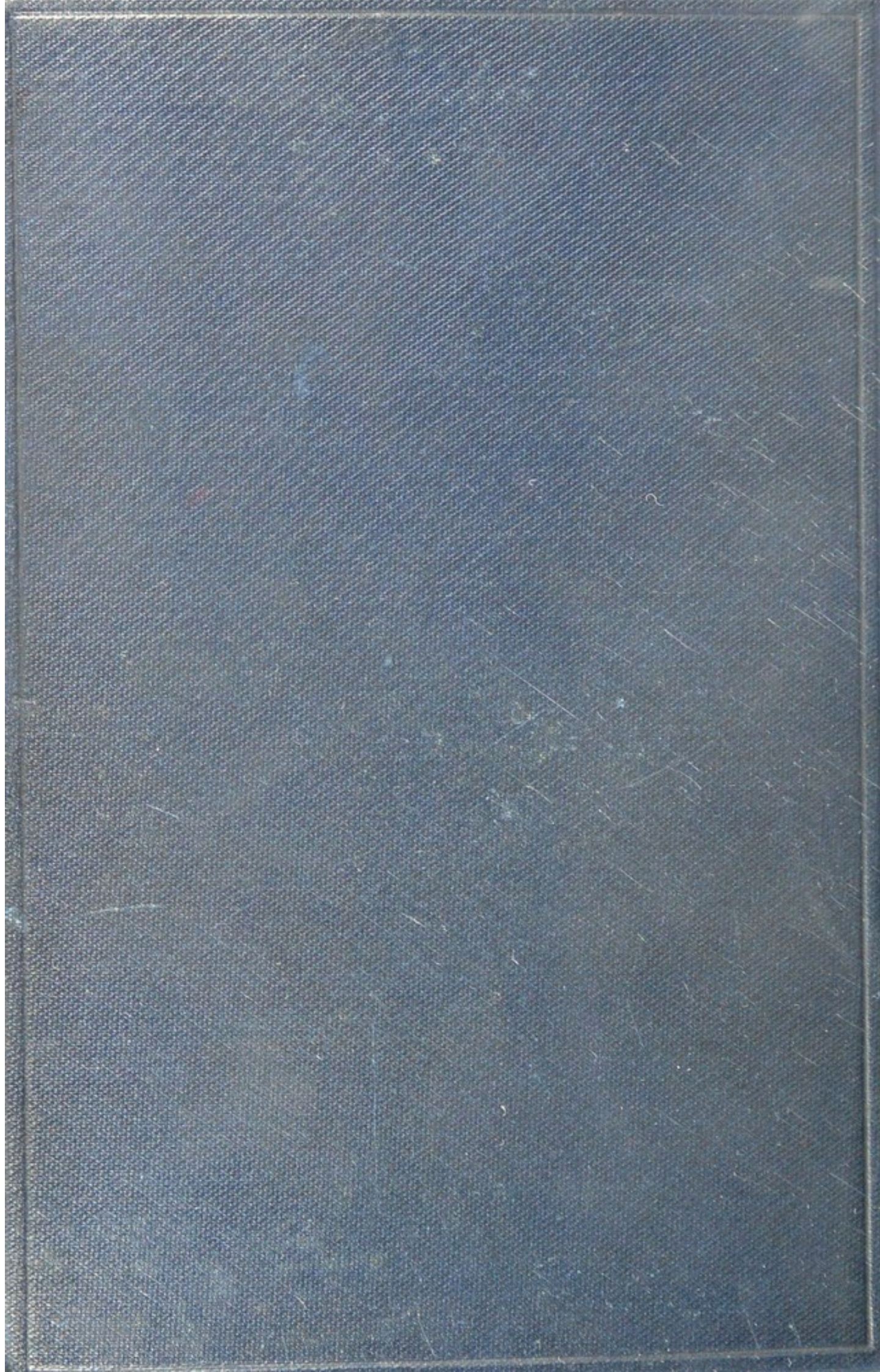




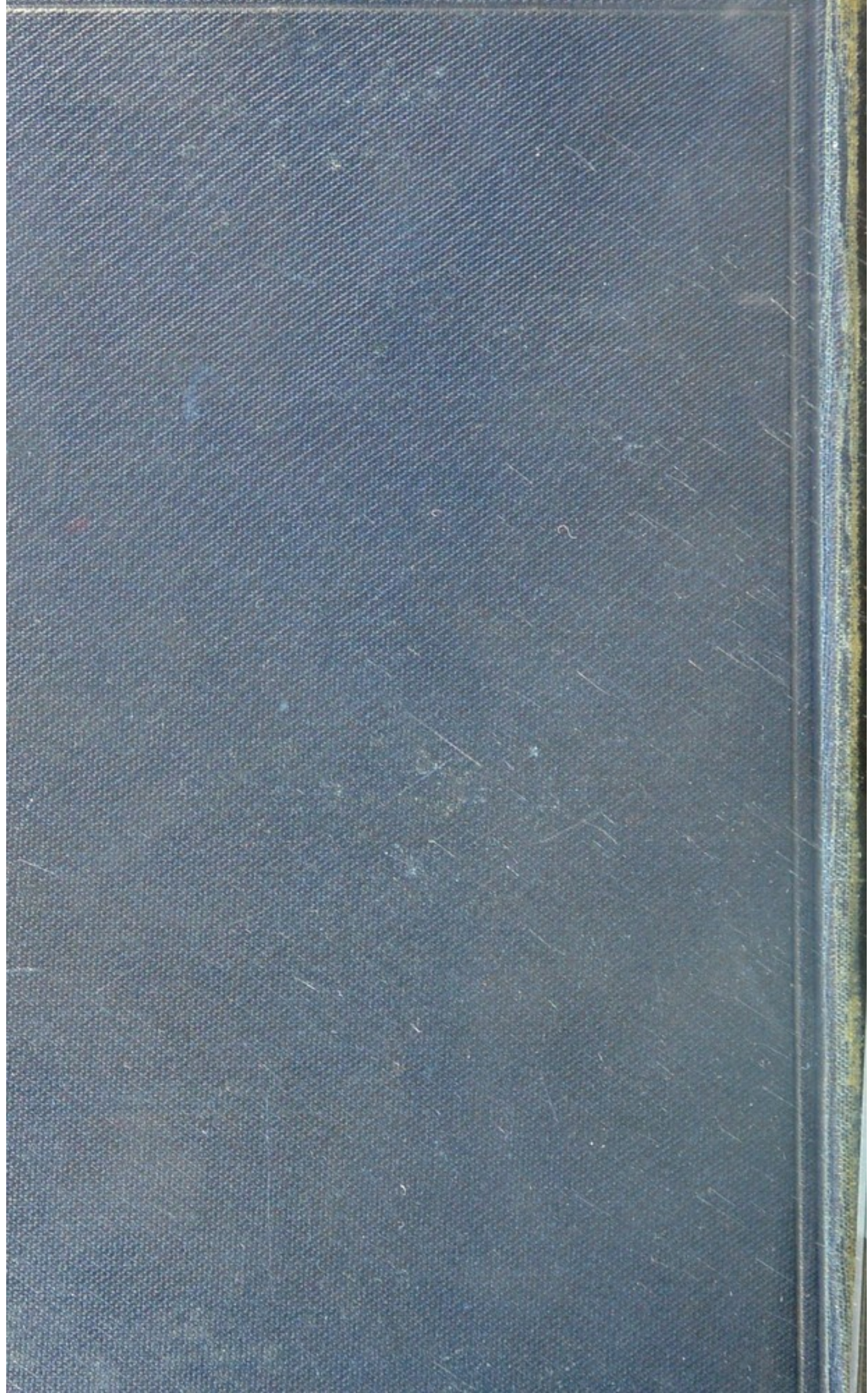
















24ColorCard CameraTray.com

TABLE(S)  
RUN INTO  
GUTTER